GEOGRAPHY

El Paso Independent School District
CK12

Default Text

This text is disseminated via the Open Education Resource (OER) LibreTexts Project (https://LibreTexts.org) and like the thousands of other texts available within this powerful platform, it is freely available for reading, printing, and "consuming."

The LibreTexts mission is to bring together students, faculty, and scholars in a collaborative effort to provide an accessible, and comprehensive platform that empowers our community to develop, curate, adapt, and adopt openly licensed resources and technologies; through these efforts we can reduce the financial burden born from traditional educational resource costs, ensuring education is more accessible for students and communities worldwide.

Most, but not all, pages in the library have licenses that may allow individuals to make changes, save, and print this book. Carefully consult the applicable license(s) before pursuing such effects. Instructors can adopt existing LibreTexts texts or Remix them to quickly build course-specific resources to meet the needs of their students. Unlike traditional textbooks, LibreTexts' web based origins allow powerful integration of advanced features and new technologies to support learning.



LibreTexts is the adaptable, user-friendly non-profit open education resource platform that educators trust for creating, customizing, and sharing accessible, interactive textbooks, adaptive homework, and ancillary materials. We collaborate with individuals and organizations to champion open education initiatives, support institutional publishing programs, drive curriculum development projects, and more.

The LibreTexts libraries are Powered by NICE CXone Expert and was supported by the Department of Education Open Textbook Pilot Project, the California Education Learning Lab, the UC Davis Office of the Provost, the UC Davis Library, the California State University Affordable Learning Solutions Program, and Merlot. This material is based upon work supported by the National Science Foundation under Grant No. 1246120, 1525057, and 1413739.

Any opinions, findings, and conclusions or recommendations expressed in this material are those of the author(s) and do not necessarily reflect the views of the National Science Foundation nor the US Department of Education.

Have questions or comments? For information about adoptions or adaptions contact info@LibreTexts.org or visit our main website at https://LibreTexts.org.

This text was compiled on 03/29/2026

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Licensing

1: Physical Patterns and Processes (15 days)

- 1.1: Geography Basics (8 Days)
- 1.2: Human Activity and the Environment (7 Days)

2: Human Geographic Systems (15 days)

- 2.1: Population and Culture (5 Days)
- 2.2: Globalization and Development (5 Days)
- 2.3: Celebrate Freedom Week- Foundations of the United States (5 Days)

3: United States and Canada (10 days)

- 3.1: Physical Geography of the United States and Canada (2 Days)
- 3.2: Early Development and Globalization (2 days)
- 3.3: Regions of the United States and Canada (2 Days)
- 3.4: United States- Population and Religion (2 Days)
- 3.5: Canada (2 Days)

4: Latin America (10 days)

- 4.1: Pre-Colonial and Post-Colonial Middle America (1 Day)
- 4.2: Mexico (2 Days)
- 4.3: Central America (1 Day)
- 4.4: The Caribbean (1 Day)
- 4.5: South America- Physical Geography (1 Day)
- 4.6: South America- The Urban North and Andean West (1 Day)
- 4.7: Brazil (2 Days)
- 4.8: South America- The Southern Cone (1 Day)

5: Europe (10 days)

- 5.1: Europe- Physical Location and Climate (2 Days)
- 5.2: European Historical Development Patterns (2 Days)
- 5.3: European Union and Supranationalism (2 Days)
- 5.4: Western Europe (2 Days)
- 5.5: Eastern Europe (2 Days)

6: Russia, the Caucasus and Central Asia (10 days)

- 6.1: Russia- Physical Characteristics (2 Days)
- 6.2: The USSR and the Russian Federation (3 Day)
- 6.3: Exploring the Regions of Russia (3 Days)
- 6.4: Central Asia (2 Days)

7: Southwest Asia (10 days)

- 7.1: Southwest Asia- Introducing the Realm (2 Days)
- 7.2: The Prophet Muhammad and Islam (2 Days)
- 7.3: Israel and Its Neighbors (2 Days)
- 7.4: Arabs, Islam, and Oil (2 Days)
- 7.5: Iraq, Turkey, and Iran (2 Days)

8: Africa (10 days)

- 8.1: Africa- Introducing the Realm (1 Day)
- 8.2: North Africa and the African Transition Zone (1 day)
- 8.3: Human Geography of Sub-Saharan Africa (2 Days)
- 8.4: West Africa (2 Days)
- 8.5: Central Africa (1 Day)
- 8.6: East Africa (1 Day)
- 8.7: Southern Africa (2 Days)

9: South Asia (10 days)

- 9.1: South Asia- Introducing the Realm (2 Days)
- 9.2: South Asia- The Peripheral States (2 Days)
- 9.3: Pakistan and Bangladesh (2 Days)
- 9.4: India (2 Days)
- 9.5: Religions of South Asia (2 Days)

10: Southeast Asia (10 days)

- 10.1: East Asia- Introducing the Realm (1 Day)
- 10.2: Emergence of Modern China (2 Days)
- 10.3: China's Periphery (2 Days)
- 10.4: Japan, North Korea, and South Korea (2 Days)
- 10.5: Southeast Asia- Introducing the Realm (1 Day)
- 10.6: Islands of Southeast Asia (1 Day)
- 10.7: The Mainland Countries- Vietnam, Laos, Cambodia, Thailand, and Myanmar (1 day)

11: Oceania (10 days)

- 11.1: Australia and New Zealand- Introducing the Realm (1 Day)
- 11.2: Australia (3 Days)
- 11.3: New Zealand (2 Days)
- 11.4: The Pacific Islands (2 Days)
- 11.5: Antarctica (2 Days)

Index

Glossary

Detailed Licensing

Licensing

*A detailed breakdown of this resource's licensing can be found in **Back Matter/Detailed Licensing**.*

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

1: Physical Patterns and Processes (15 days)

1.1: Geography Basics (8 Days)
1.2: Human Activity and the Environment (7 Days)

This page titled 1: Physical Patterns and Processes (15 days) is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by CK12 via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

1.1: Geography Basics (8 Days)

Chapter Challenges

- Summarize the focus of geography and the two main branches of the discipline.
- Describe the tools geographers use to study the earth's surface.
- Summarize the grid system of latitude and longitude and how it relates to seasons and time zones.
- Explain the difference between the different types of regional distinctions recognized in geography.
- Describe the spatial nature of geography and how each place or region is examined, analyzed, and compared with other places or regions.
- Describe the basic geographic realms and their locations.

Learning Objectives

TEKS Regional Unit 01 Physical Patterns and Processes Chapter 1.1 Geography Basics

WG.2B Explain how changes in societies such as population shifts, technological advancements, and environmental policies have led to diverse uses of physical features over time such as terrace farming, dams, and polders.

WG.3A Explain weather conditions and climate in relation to annual changes in Earth-Sun relationships.

WG.3B Describe the physical processes that affect the environments of regions, including weather, tectonic forces, erosion and soil-building processes.

WG.3C Describe how physical processes such as hurricanes, El Nino, earthquakes, and volcanoes affect the lithosphere, atmosphere, hydrosphere, and biosphere

WG.4A Explain how elevation, latitude, wind systems, ocean currents, position on a continent, and mountain barriers influence temperature, precipitation, and distribution of climate regions.

WG.4B Describe different landforms, such as plains, mountains, and islands, and the physical processes that cause their development.

WG.4C: Explain the influence of climate on the distribution of biomes in different regions.

WG.19A Evaluate the significance of major technological innovations in the areas of transportation and energy that have been used to modify the physical environment.

WG.20A Describe the impact of new information technologies such as the Internet, Global Positioning System (GPS), or Geographic Information Systems (GIS).

WG.21A Analyze and evaluate the validity and utility of multiple sources of geographic information such as primary and and secondary sources, aerial photographs, and maps.

WG.21C Create and interpret different types of maps to answer geographic questions, infer relationships, and analyze change.

WG.22A Create appropriate graphics such as maps, diagrams, tables, and graphs to communicate geographic features, distributions, and relationships.

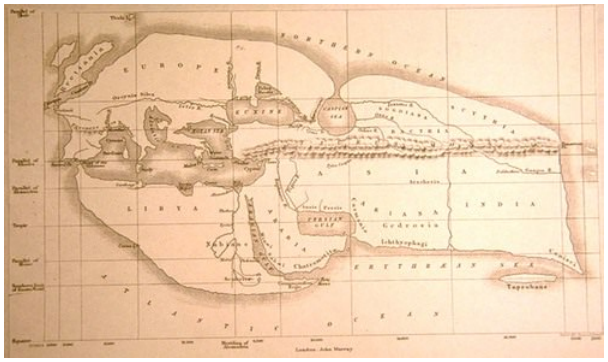
WG.22C Use social studies terminology correctly.

TEKS and ELPS for Regional World Geography Unit 01--Physical Patterns and Processes from TEKS Resource System

What Is Geography?Geography Basics

Geography is the spatial study of the earth's surface (from the Greek *geo*, which means "Earth," and *graphein*, which means "to write"). Geographers study the earth's physical characteristics, its inhabitants and cultures, phenomena such as climate, and the earth's place within the universe. Geography examines the spatial relationships between all physical and cultural phenomena in the world. Geographers also look at how the earth, its climate, and its landscapes are changing due to cultural intervention.

The first known use of the word *geography* was by Eratosthenes of Cyrene (modern-day Libya in North Africa), an early Greek scholar who lived between 276 and 194 B.C.E. He devised one of the first systems of longitude and latitude and calculated the earth's circumference. Additionally, he created one of the first maps of the world based on the available knowledge of the time. Around the same time, many ancient cultures in China, southern Asia, Polynesia, and the Arabian Peninsula also developed maps and navigation systems used in geography and cartography.



19th-century reconstruction of Eratosthenes map of the known world, circa 194 B.C.E.

The discipline of geography can be broken down into two areas of focus: physical geography and human geography. These two main areas use a spatial perspective, include the study of place, and the comparison of one place with another.

Physical geography is the spatial study of natural phenomena in the environment, such as rivers, mountains, landforms, weather, climate, soils, plants, and any other physical aspects of the earth's surface. Physical geography focuses on geography as a form of earth science. It tends to emphasize the main physical parts of the earth—the lithosphere (surface layer), the atmosphere (air), the hydrosphere (water), and the biosphere (living organisms)—and the relationship of these parts.

The major forms of study within physical geography include the following:

- Geomorphology (the study of the earth's surface features)
- Glaciology (the study of glaciers)
- Coastal geography (the study of the coastal regions)
- Climatology (the study of climates and climate change)
- Biogeography (the study of the geographic patterns of species distribution)

Some physical geographers study the earth's place in the solar system. Others are environmental geographers, part of an emerging field that studies the spatial aspects and cultural perceptions of the natural environment. Environmental geography requires an understanding of both physical and human geography, as well as an understanding of how humans measure their environment and the physical landscape.

Physical landscape is the term used to describe the natural terrain at any one place on the planet. The forces of erosion, weather, tectonic plate action, and water have formed the earth's physical features. Many state and national parks in the United States preserve the land for the public to enjoy.



The Grand Canyon is a national park located in Arizona in the United States.

Human geography is the study of human activity and its relationship to the earth's surface. Human geographers examine the spatial distribution of human populations, religions, languages, ethnicity, political systems, economics, urban dynamics, and other human activity. They study patterns between human cultures and various environments and focus on the causes and consequences of human settlement and distribution over the landscape. While the economic and cultural aspects of humanity are the primary focuses of human geography, these aspects cannot be understood without describing the landscape on which economic and cultural activities take place.

Cultural landscape is the term used to describe the parts of the earth's surface that have been altered or created by people. For example, the urban cultural landscape of a city includes buildings, streets, signs, parking lots, and vehicles. Rural cultural landscape includes fields, orchards, fences, barns, and farms. Cultural forces unique to a given place—such as religion, language, ethnicity, customs, and heritage—influence the cultural landscape of that place at a given time. The colors, sizes, and shapes of the cultural landscape usually symbolize meaning regarding societal norms. Spatial dynamics help in identifying and evaluating cultural differences.

The field of cartography is an important discipline for geographers. While cartography continues to be a significant part of geography, geographers also look at spatial (space) and temporal (time) relationships of many types of data, such as physical landscape types, economies, and human activity. Geography also examines the relationships between the processes of humans and their physical and cultural environments.

Because maps are powerful graphic tools that allow us to illustrate relationships and processes at work in the world, cartography and Geographic Information Systems have become important in modern science. Maps are the most common method of illustrating different spatial qualities, and geographers create and use maps to communicate spatial data about the earth's surface.

Geospatial techniques are tools used by geographers to illustrate, manage, and manipulate spatial data. Cartography is the art and science of making maps, which illustrate data in a spatial form and are invaluable in understanding what is going on at a given place and time.

Making maps and verifying a location have become more exact with the development of the Global Positioning System (GPS). A GPS unit can receive signals from orbiting satellites and calculate an exact location in latitude and longitude, which is helpful for determining where one is located on the earth or for verifying a point on a map. GPS units are standard equipment for many transportation systems and have found their way into products such as cell phones, handheld computers, fish finders, and other mobile equipment. GPS technology is widely implemented in the transport of people, goods, and services around the world.

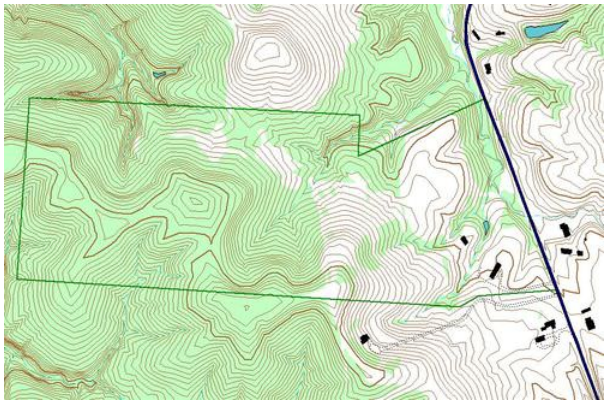
CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org



An artist's conception of GPS Block II-F satellite in Earth's orbit by NASA.

Remote sensing technology acquires data about the earth's surface through aerial photographs taken from airplanes or images created from satellites orbiting the earth. Remotely sensed images allow geographers to identify, understand, or explain a landscape and determine the land use of a place. These images can serve as important components in the cartographic process. These technologies provide the means to examine and analyze changes on the earth's surface caused by natural or human forces.

Geographic Information Science (GIS), often referred to as Geographic Information Systems, uses a computer program to assimilate and manage many layers of map data, which then provide specific information about a place. GIS data are usually in digital form and arranged in layers. The GIS computer program can sort layers of data to illustrate a specific feature or activity. GIS programs are used in a wide range of applications.



The forest-cover layer (light green) forms the bottom layer, with the topographic layer (contour lines) over it. Next is a standing water layer (pond, lake) and then a flowing water layer (stream, river), followed by the boundary layer, and finally the road layer on top. The order is important to display the final result.

GIS specialists often create and analyze geographical information for government agencies or private businesses. They use computer programs to take raw data to develop the information these organizations need for making decisions. For example, in business applications, GIS can be used to find a good location for a retail store based on the analysis of spatial data layers such as population distribution, highway or street arrangements, and the locations of similar stores. GIS can integrate a number of maps into one to help analysts understand a place that best suits their needs.

GIS also focuses on storing information about the earth (both cultural and natural) in computer databases that can be retrieved and displayed in the form of specialized maps for specific purposes. GIS specialists require knowledge about computer and database systems. Over the last ten years, GIS has revolutionized the field of cartography, and nearly all cartography is now done with the

assistance of GIS software. GIS software and specialized maps are an important part of urban planning and other social and physical sciences because they help to track patterns in people and the physical world. GIS can also refer to techniques used to represent, analyze, and predict spatial relationships of different phenomena.

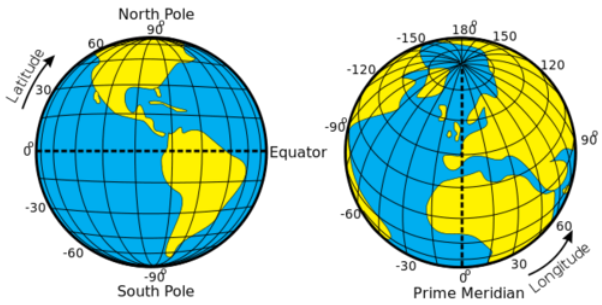
Geography is a much broader field than many people realize. Geography is the study of the earth, including how human activity has changed it. Geography involves studies that are much broader than simply understanding the shape of the earth's landforms. Physical geography involves all the planet's physical systems. Human geography incorporates studies of human culture, spatial relationships, interactions between humans and the environment, and many other areas of research.

The Earth and Graticule Location

When identifying a region or location on the earth, the first step is to understand its relative and absolute locations. Relative location is the location on the earth's surface with reference to other places, taking into consideration features such as transportation access or terrain. Relative location helps one compare the advantages of one location with those of another. Absolute location refers to an exact point on the earth's surface without regard to how that point is related to any other place. Absolute location is vital to the cartographic process and to human activities that require a method of identifying a place.

Just as you were taught in geometry that there are 360 degrees in a circle or a sphere, the earth also has 360 degrees, and they are measured using a grid pattern called the graticule. Lines of latitude and longitude allow any absolute location on the earth to have an identifiable address of degrees north or south and east or west, which allows geographers to accurately locate, measure, and study spatial activity.

Geographers and cartographers organize locations on the earth using a series of imaginary lines that encircle the globe. The two primary lines are the equator and the prime meridian. From these lines, the systems of longitude and latitude are formed, allowing you to locate yourself anywhere on the planet. The line is the longest when you travel along in an east-west direction. At the equator, the sun is directly overhead at noon on the two equinoxes, which occur in March and September.



Latitude and Longitude of the Earth

Parallels or Lines of Latitude

The equator is the largest circle of latitude on Earth. The equator divides the earth into the Northern and Southern Hemispheres and is called 0 degrees latitude. The other lines of latitude are numbered from 0 to 90 degrees going toward each of the poles. The lines north of the equator toward the North Pole are north latitude, and each of the numbers is followed by the letter "N." The lines south of the equator toward the South Pole are south latitude, and each of the numbers is followed by the letter "S." The equator (0 latitude) is the only line of latitude without any letter following the number.

Notice that all lines of latitude are parallel to the equator (they are often called parallels) and that the North Pole equals 90 degrees N and the South Pole equals 90 degrees S. Noted parallels include both the Tropic of Cancer and the Tropic of Capricorn, which are 23.5 degrees from the equator. At 66.5 degrees from the equator are the Arctic Circle and the Antarctic Circle near the North and South Pole, respectively.

Meridians or Lines of Longitude

The prime meridian sits at 0 degrees longitude and divides the earth into the Eastern and Western Hemispheres. The prime meridian is defined as an imaginary line that runs through the Royal Observatory in Greenwich, England, a suburb of London. The Eastern Hemisphere includes the continents of Europe, Asia, and Australia, while the Western Hemisphere includes North and South America. All meridians (lines of longitude) east of the prime meridian (0 and 180) are numbered from 1 to 180 degrees east (E); the lines west of the prime meridian (0 and 180) are numbered from 1 to 180 degrees west (W). The 0 and 180 lines do not have a letter attached to them.



Royal Observatory, Greenwich. A time ball sits atop the Octagon Room.

The meridian at 180 degrees is called the International Date Line. The International Date Line (180 degrees longitude) is opposite the prime meridian and indicates the start of each day. Each day officially starts at 12:01 a.m. at the International Date Line. Do not confuse the International Date Line with the prime meridian (0 longitude). The actual International Date Line does not follow the 180-degree meridian exactly. A number of alterations have been made to the International Date Line to accommodate political agreements to include an island or country on one side of the line or another.

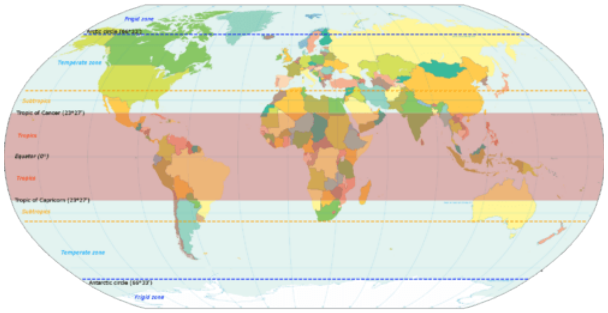


A map illustrating the current (post 2011) International Date Line.

Climate and Latitude

The earth is tilted on its axis 23.5 degrees. As it rotates around the sun, the tilt of the earth's axis provides different climatic seasons because of the variations in the angle of direct sunlight on the planet. Places receiving more direct sunlight experience a warmer climate. Elsewhere, the increased angle of incoming solar radiation near the earth's poles results in more reflected sunlight and a cooler climate. The Northern Hemisphere experiences winter when sunlight is reflected off the earth's surface and less of the sun's energy is absorbed because of a sharper angle from the sun.

The Tropic of Cancer is the parallel at 23.5 degrees north of the equator, which is the most northerly place on Earth, receiving direct sunlight during the Northern Hemisphere's summer. Remember that the earth is tilted 23.5 degrees, which accounts for seasonal variations in climate. The Tropic of Capricorn is the parallel at 23.5 degrees south of the equator and is the most southerly location on Earth, receiving direct sunlight during the Southern Hemisphere's summer.



A world map illustrating the Tropic of Cancer and the Tropic of Capricorn.

The tropics (Cancer and Capricorn) are the two imaginary lines directly above in which the sun shines on the two solstices, occurring on or near June 20 or 21 (summer solstice in the Northern Hemisphere) and December 21 or 22 (winter solstice in the Northern Hemisphere). The sun is directly above the Tropic of Cancer at noon on June 20 or 21, marking the beginning of summer in the Northern Hemisphere and the beginning of winter in the Southern Hemisphere. The sun is directly above the Tropic of Capricorn at noon on December 21 or 22, marking the beginning of winter in the Northern Hemisphere and the beginning of summer in the Southern Hemisphere.

Solstices are the extreme ends of the seasons, when the line of direct sunlight is either the farthest north or the farthest south that it ever goes. The region between the Tropics of Cancer and Capricorn is known as the tropics. This area does not experience dramatic seasonal changes because the amount of direct sunlight received does not vary widely. The higher latitudes (north of the Tropic of Cancer and south of the Tropic of Capricorn) experience significant seasonal variation in climate.



A sign depicting that the Tropic of Cancer passes through Madhya Pradesh in India.



A monument marking the Tropic of Capricorn just north of Antofagasta, Chile

The Arctic Circle is a line of latitude at 66.5 degrees north. It is the farthest point north that receives sunlight during its winter season (90 N − 23.5 = 66.5 N). During winter, the North Pole is away from the sun and does not receive much sunlight. At times, it is dark for most of the 24-hour day. During the Northern Hemisphere's summer, the North Pole faces more toward the sun and may receive sunlight for longer portions of the 24-hour day.



A map of the Arctic with the Arctic Circle in blue.



A sign along the Dalton Highway marking the location of the Arctic Circle in Alaska.

The Antarctic Circle is the corresponding line of latitude at 66.5 degrees south. It is the farthest location south that receives sunlight during the winter season in the Southern Hemisphere (90 S − 23.5 = 66.5 S). When it is winter in the north, it is summer in the south.

https://k12.libretexts.org/@go/page/1865



A map of the Antarctic with the Antarctic Circle in blue.

The Arctic and Antarctic Circles mark the extremities (southern and northern, respectively) of the polar day (24-hour sunlit day) and the polar night (24-hour sunless night). North of the Arctic Circle, the sun is above the horizon for 24 continuous hours at least once per year and below the horizon for 24 continuous hours at least once per year. This is true also near the Antarctic Circle, but it occurs south of the Antarctic Circle, toward the South Pole. Equinox, when the line of direct sunlight hits the equator and days and nights are of equal length, occurs in the spring and fall on or around March 20 or 21 and September 22 or 23.

Time Zones

Universal Time (UT), Coordinated Universal Time (UTC), Greenwich Mean Time (GMT), or Zulu Time (Z) are defined as the local time at 0 degrees longitude, which is the prime meridian located in Greenwich, England. This is the same time under which many military operations, international radio broadcasts, and air traffic control systems operate worldwide. UTC is set in zero- to 24-hour time periods, as opposed to two 12-hour time periods (a.m. and p.m.). The designations of a.m. and p.m. are relative to the central meridian: a.m. refers to *ante meridian*, or “before noon,” and p.m. refers to *post meridian*, or “after noon.” UT, UTC, GMT, and Z all refer to the same 24-hour time system that assists in unifying a common time in regard to global operations. For example, all air flights use the 24-hour time system so the pilots can coordinate flights across time zones and around the world.

The earth rotates on its axis once every 24 hours at the rate of 15 degrees per hour (15 × 24 = 360). Time zones are established roughly every 15 degrees longitude so that local times correspond to similar hours of day and night. With this system, the sun is generally overhead at noon in every time zone that follows the 15-degree-wide system. The continental United States has four main time zones.



CIA World Fact Book map of the standard time zones in the world.

The 24 time zones are based on the prime meridian in regard to Universal Coordinated Time (UTC), Greenwich Mean Time (GMT), or Zulu Time (Z), which all operate on the 24-hour time clock. Local time zones are either plus or minus determined by the distance from the prime meridian.

The eastern standard time zone is five hours earlier than the time at the prime meridian (UTC) because it is about 75 degrees west of 0 degrees (5 × 15 = 75). For example, if it is noon in London, then it is 7 a.m. in New York. If it is 1 p.m. in New York, it is 10 a.m. in San Francisco, which is three times zones to the west. Since there are 24 hours in a day, there are 24 time zones on Earth. Each time zone is 15 degrees wide.

A problem with the 15-degree time zones is that the zones do not necessarily follow state, regional, or local boundaries. The result is that time zones are seldom exactly 15 degrees wide and usually have varied boundary lines. In the United States, the boundaries between the different time zones are inconsistent with the lines of longitude. In some cases, time zones zigzag to follow state lines or to keep cities within a single time zone. Other countries address the problem differently. China, for example, is as large in land area as the United States, yet it operates on only one time zone for the entire country.

Regions in Geography

A region is a basic unit of study in geography—a unit of space characterized by a feature such as a common government, language, political situation, or landform. A region can be a formal country governed by political boundaries, such as France or Canada. A region can also be defined by a landform, such as the drainage basin of all the water that flows into the Mississippi River. Moreover, a region can be defined by the area served by a shopping mall. Cultural regions can be defined by similarities in human activities, traditions, or cultural attributes. Geographers use the regional unit to map features of particular interest, and data can be compared between regions to help understand trends, identify patterns, or assist in explaining a particular phenomenon.

Regions are traditionally defined by internal characteristics that provide a sense of place. Their boundaries vary with the type of region, whether it is formal, functional, or vernacular, and each type has its own meaning and defined purpose. A formal region has a governmental, administrative, or political boundary and can have political as well as geographic boundaries that are not open to dispute or debate. Formal boundaries can separate states, provinces, or countries from one another. Physical regions can be included within formal boundaries, such as the Rocky Mountains or New England. An official boundary, such as the boundary of a national park, can be considered a formal boundary. School districts, cities, and county governments have formal boundaries.

Natural physical geographic features have a huge influence on where political boundaries of formal regions are set. If you look at a world map, you will recognize that many political boundaries are natural features, such as rivers, mountain ranges, and large lakes. For example, between the United States and Mexico, the Rio Grande makes up a portion of the border. Between Canada and the United States, a major part of the eastern border is along the Saint Lawrence Seaway and the Great Lakes. Alpine mountain ranges in Europe create borders, such as the boundary between Switzerland and Italy.



The Himalayan Mountains form a natural boundary separating India and China.

While geographic features can serve as convenient formal borders, political disputes will often flare up in adjacent areas, particularly if valuable natural or cultural resources are found within the geographic features. Oil drilling near the coast of a sovereign country, for example, can cause a dispute between countries about which one has dominion over the oil resources. The exploitation of offshore fisheries can also be disputed. A Neolithic mummy of a man who died in 3300 B.C.E. caused tension between Italy and Switzerland. The body was originally taken to Innsbruck, Switzerland, but when it was determined that the body was found about 90 meters (180 feet) inside the border of Italy, Italian officials laid claim to the body.

Functional regions have boundaries related to a practical function within a given area. When the function of an area ends, the functional region ends and its boundaries cease to exist. For example, a functional region can be defined by a newspaper service or delivery area. If the newspaper goes bankrupt, the functional region no longer exists. Church parishes, shopping malls, and business service areas are other examples of functional regions. They function to serve a region and may have established boundaries for limits of the area to which they will provide service. An example of a common service area—that is, a functional region—is the region to which a local pizza shop will deliver.

Vernacular regions have loosely defined boundaries based on people's perceptions or thoughts. Vernacular regions can be fluid—that is, different people may have different opinions about the limits of the regions. Vernacular regions include concepts such as the region called the "Middle East." Many people have a rough idea of the Middle East's location but do not know precisely which countries make up the Middle East. Also, in the United States, the terms *Midwest* or *South* have many variations. Each individual might have a different idea about the location of the boundaries of the South or the Midwest.

Whether the state of Kentucky belongs in the Midwest or in the South might be a matter of individual perception. Similarly, various regions of the United States have been referred to as the Rust Belt, Sun Belt, or Bible Belt without a clear definition of their boundaries. The limit of a vernacular area is more a matter of perception than of any formally agreed-upon criteria. Nevertheless, most people would recognize the general area being discussed when using one of the vernacular terms in a conversation.

Using a State as a Comparison Guide

In comparing one formal political region with another, it is often helpful to use a familiar country, state, province, or political unit as a reference or guide. Wherever you are located, you can research the statistical data for a formal region familiar to you to provide a common reference. The US state of Kentucky is one example that can be used to compare formal political regions. Kentucky ranks close to the middle range of the 50 US states in terms of its population of approximately 4.5 million people. Kentucky is also within the median range of the 50 states in the overall physical area. The state's 40,409-square-mile physical area ranks it thirty-seventh in size in the United States.

Kentucky is not as large in physical area as the western states, but it is larger in physical area than many of the eastern states. Kentucky includes part of the rural peripheral region of Appalachia. However, the state also has cosmopolitan core urban centers such as Lexington and Louisville. Kentucky also borders the metropolitan city of Cincinnati. The rural peripheral regions of the state are home to agriculture and mining. The urban core areas are home to industry and service centers. Other US states could also be used as examples. Identifying a state's geographical attributes provides readers both in and outside the United States with a comparison indicator for geographic purposes.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org



Use the state of Kentucky to compare world regions. Kentucky ranks in the middle range of the 50 US states.

World Regional Geography

World regional geography studies various world regions as they compare with the rest of the world. Factors for comparison include both the physical and the cultural landscape. The main questions are: Who lives there? What are their lives like? What do they do for a living? Physical factors of significance can include location, climate type, and terrain. Human factors include cultural traditions, ethnicity, language, religion, economics, and politics.

World regional geography focuses on regions of various sizes across the earth's landscape and aspires to understand the unique character of regions in terms of their natural and cultural attributes. Spatial studies can play an important role in regional geography. The scientific approach can focus on the distribution of cultural and natural phenomena within regions as determined by many natural and cultural factors. The focus is on the spatial relationships within any field of study, such as regional economics, resource management, regional planning, and landscape ecology.

Once again, this textbook takes a regional approach focusing on the globalization process, which in turn helps us to better understand our world. The regions studied in world regional geography can be combined into larger areas called realms. Realms are large areas on our planet, usually with multiple regions, that share the same general geographic location. Regions outlined are cohesive areas within each realm. You will explore the following realms in the upcoming chapters:

1. Europe
2. Russia
3. North America
4. Middle America
5. South America
6. North Africa, Middle East, and Central Asia
7. Sub-Saharan Africa
8. Southern Asia
9. Eastern Asia
10. Southeast Asia
11. Australia
12. Pacific

Key Takeaways

- Geography is the spatial study of the earth's surface.
- The discipline of geography bridges the social sciences with the physical sciences.
- The two main branches of geography include physical geography and human geography.
- GIS, GPS, and remote sensing are tools that geographers use to study the spatial nature of physical and human landscapes.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

- A grid system called the graticule divides the earth by lines of latitude and longitude that allow for the identification of absolute location on the earth's surface through geometric coordinates measured in degrees.
- There are 24 time zones that are set at 15-degree intervals each and organize time intervals around the world.
- The tilt of the earth's axis at 23.5 degrees helps create the earth's seasonal transitions by either absorbing or reflecting the sun's energy. The line of direct sunlight always hits the earth between 23.5 degrees north (Tropic of Cancer) and 23.5 degrees south (Tropic of Capricorn), depending on the time of year.
- A region is the basic unit of study in geography.
- Three main types of boundaries define a region: formal, functional, and vernacular.
- World regional geography is the study of a particular group of world regions or realms as each compares with the rest of the world.

Vocabulary Terms

Vocabulary Quizlet: Regional Unit 01: Physical Patterns and Processes Chapter 1

1. **atmosphere:** the gaseous area of air surrounding Earth
2. **biomes:** large ecosystems characterized by common climate, common vegetation, and common animal life
3. **biosphere:** the areas of Earth that support plant and animal life
4. **climate:** a pattern of the combination of precipitation and temperature over time
5. **erosion:** the wearing away of the Earth's surface caused by the movement of water, ice, or wind
6. **geographic factors:** physical and human conditions that impact the environments of places and regions.
7. **geography:** the study of the Earth's people, places, features, and environment from a spatial perspective
8. **human geography:** the study of human activities related to interaction with the environment and control of the Earth's surface
9. **hydrosphere:** the water areas of Earth, including oceans, lakes, rivers, groundwater, glaciers, and water vapor
10. **landforms:** a specific physical feature of the Earth's surface
11. **lithosphere:** the solid surface of Earth, including the soil and landforms
12. **patterns:** an observable model, style or trend, generally observed on maps in geography
13. **physical geography:** physical and human conditions that impact the environments of places and regions
14. **processes:** a particular method that brings changes to the physical or human geography
15. **soil building process:** the creation of organic matter formed from weathered rock, air, and water
16. **tectonic forces:** a physical process involving the movement of the Earth's crust

Applying Knowledge

Interactive Notebook Activities

1. Summarize the focus of geography and the two main branches of the discipline.
2. List the tools geographers use to study the earth's surface.
3. Summarize how the grid system of latitude and longitude relates to seasons and time zones.
4. Describe the difference between the different types of regional distinctions recognized in geography.
5. Explain the spatial nature of geography and how each place or region is examined, analyzed, and compared with other places or regions.
6. List the basic geographic realms and their locations.

Discussion and Study Questions

1. How does the discipline of geography provide a bridge between the social sciences and the physical sciences?
2. How does the cultural landscape assist in indicating the differences between a wealthy neighborhood and a poverty-stricken neighborhood?
3. How can remote sensing technology assist in determining what people do for a living?
4. What is the significance of the Tropic of Cancer and the Tropic of Capricorn?
5. What occupations depend on knowledge of the seasons for their success?

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

6. If it is 4 p.m. in San Francisco, what time is it in London, England?
7. How would GIS, GPS, or remote sensing technology be used to evaluate the destruction caused by a tornado in Oklahoma?
8. How is the cultural landscape influenced by the physical landscape?
9. Can you list a formal region, a functional region, and a vernacular region that would include where you live?
10. What methods, topics, or procedures would be helpful to include in the study of world geography?

Real-World Geography Exercise

Using Google Maps, locate the places on the list below. Next, using NASA Latitude and Longitude Finder, determine the latitude and longitude for each location. Be prepared to share your answers.

- Arctic Circle
- Antarctic Circle
- Equator
- International Date Line
- North Pole
- Prime meridian
- Tropic of Cancer
- Tropic of Capricorn
- South Pole

Tech Activities

1. Use Google Earth to locate your current school or residence.
2. Draw a map of your home state or province and include lines of latitude and longitude.
3. Compile the statistical data on your home state, province, or territory to use in comparing formal political regions.

Mapping Exercise

Mapping Our World ESRI- ARGIS Online Module 1 Lesson 1

The Basics and Geographic Inquiry Method: This computer activity will show students how to start the ArcGIS Online program. Students will be guided through the basics of using the ArcGIS Online map viewer to explore maps. After students do this activity, they will be prepared to complete other GIS activities.

Student Supplemental Materials-download

Student Answer Doc-Download

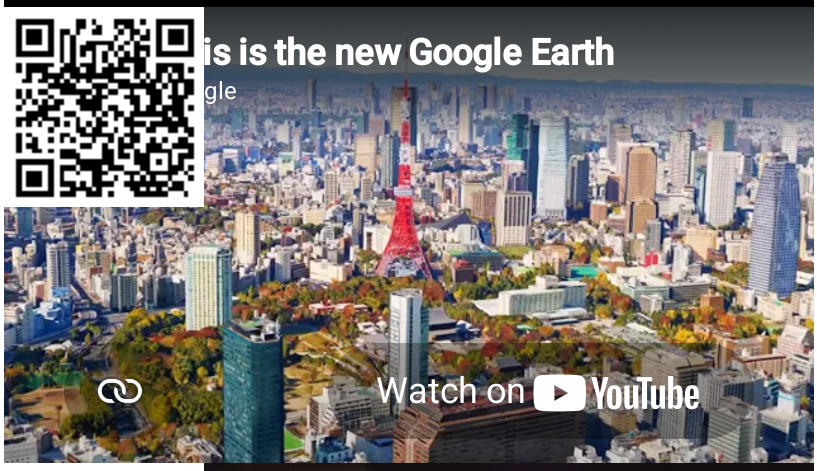
Student Assessment Doc-Download

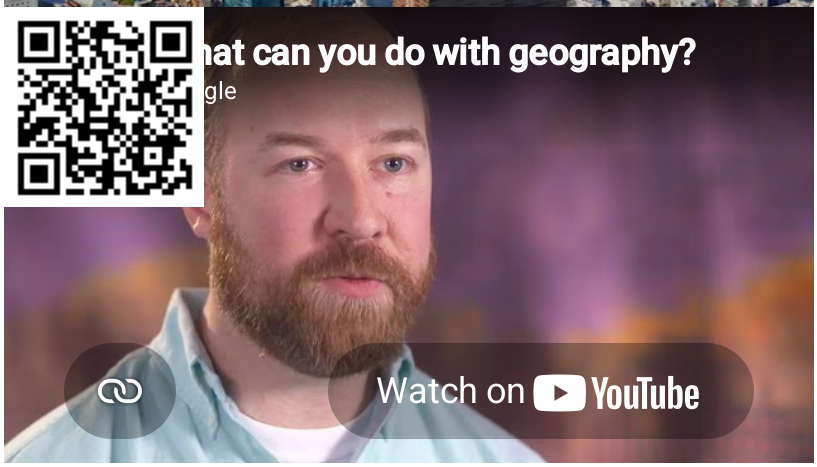
Teacher Materials-download

Videos for Geography Enrichment









Helpful Websites for the Study of Geography

Canadian Encyclopedia is an encyclopedia funded by the Canadian government covering all branches of knowledge. Their scholarly collection includes interactive materials.

CIA World Factbook provides information on the people, history, government, economy, energy, geography, communications, transportation, military, and transnational issues for the world's entities.

Congress.gov is a US government website where you can find federal legislation, past and present, as well as information about the US legal system.

Drug Enforcement Administration (DEA) is a government agency website that provides current news, resources, topics of interest, information about drugs, careers in the DEA, and a tip hotline.

ESRI-GIS Online Online mapping software and activities for the classroom

ESRI The Science of Where



https://www.esri.com/en-us/about/about-esri/overview

Library of Congress is the largest library in the world and provides manuscripts, files, information, pictures, and videos.

NASA Earth Observatory (NEO) is a US government agency website that allows users to search for and retrieve satellite images of Earth.

National Archives is a US government website that provides historical documents, photos, records, publications, and educator resources.

National Oceanic and Atmospheric Association (NOAA) is a US government agency website that provides weather-related information and ocean research.

National Map is a website by the United States Geological Survey and other federal, state, and local agencies that delivers topographic information for the United States.

NationMaster is a massive central data source and a handy way to graphically compare nations.

Real-Time World Air Quality Index is a website that measures most locations in the world for air pollution in real time.

StateMaster is a unique statistical database, which allows you to research and compare a multitude of different data on US states.

United Nations (UN) is an international organization founded in 1945 and made up of 193 member states. The UN maintains international peace and security, protects human rights, delivers humanitarian aid, promotes sustainable development, and upholds international law.

United States Census Bureau is a US government agency that provides a population clock, data, surveys, statistics, a library with information and infographics, news about the economy, and much more.

United States Geological Survey (USGS) is a US government agency website that provides scientific information about the natural hazards that threaten lives, the natural resources we rely on, the health of our ecosystems and environment, and the impacts of climate and land-use change.

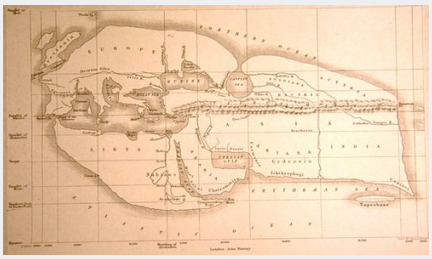
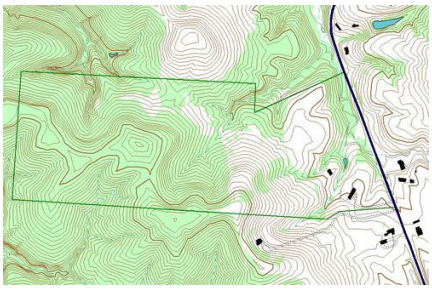
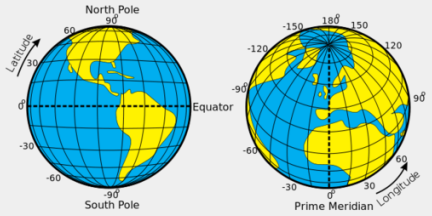
Whitehouse.gov is a US government website that provides the latest presidential news, information about the budget, policy, defense, and many more topics.

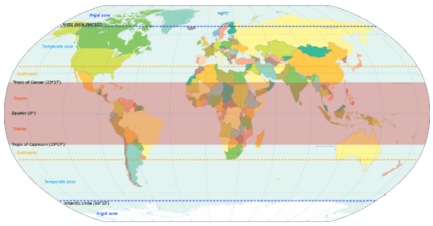
World Health Organization (WHO) is under the United Nations and provides leadership on matters critical to health; shapes the research agenda on health; and monitors the health situation and assessing health trends around the world. Their website provides information on the state of health around the world, outbreaks, current health news, and more.

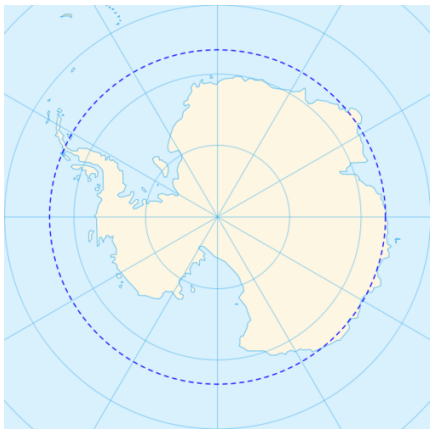
World Trade Organization (WTO) is an intergovernmental organization that regulates international trade. The website provides

https://k12.libretexts.org/@go/page/1865

information on the history of the multilateral trading system, featured videos, news and events, trade topics, and more.

Image	Reference	Attributions
	**[Figure 1]**	**Credit:** By Bunbury, E.H. (1811-1895) / Eratosthenes? [Public domain], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File%3AMappa_di_Eratostene.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 2]**	**Credit:** By Essiebailey (Own work) [CC BY-SA 3.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0) or GFDL (http://www.gnu.org/copyleft/fdl.html)], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File%3AGrandCanyonWinter.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 3]**	**Credit:** By NASA [Public domain], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File%3AGPS_Satellite_NASA_art-iif.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 4]**	**Credit:** Jaknouse at English Wikipedia [GFDL (http://www.gnu.org/copyleft/fdl.html) or CC BY 3.0 (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/3.0)], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File%3AGislayers.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 5]**	**Credit:** By Djexplo (Own work) [CC0], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File%3ALatitude_and_Longitude_of_the_Earth.svg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

	**[Figure 6]**	**Credit:** Royal Observatory, Greenwich Image by ChrisO ja:image:Royal_observatory_greenwich.jpg **Source:** commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Royal_observatory_greenwich.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 7]**	**Credit:** By First file version uploader was User:Jailbird [GFDL (http://www.gnu.org/copyleft/fdl.html) or CC-BY-SA-3.0 (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0/)], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File%3AInternational_Date_Line.png **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 8]**	**Credit:** By KVDP (Own work) [CC BY-SA 3.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0)], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File%3AWorld_map_indicating_tropics_and_subtropics.png **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

	**[Figure 9]**	**Credit:** By santosh bharati (Own work) [CC BY-SA 3.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0)], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File%3ATropic_of_cancer_passes_through_Madhay_Pradesh.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 11]**	**Credit:** By CIA World Fact Book (File:Arctic.svg, from the CIA World Fact Book) [Public domain], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File%3AArctic_circle.svg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 12]**	**Credit:** By Ixfd64 [Public domain], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File%3AArctic_Circle_sign.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 13]**	**Credit:** By Thesevenseas (Antarctica blank.svg) [GFDL (http://www.gnu.org/copyleft/fdl.html) or CC BY-SA 4.0-3.0-2.5-2.0-1.0 (creativecommons.org/licenses....0-2.5-2.0-1.0)], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File%3AAntarctic_circle.svg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

	**[Figure 14]**	**Credit:** By Hellerick, based on earlier image by CIA with many modifications by other contributors, TimeZonesBoy (Based on File:CIA WorldFactBook Time Zones.svg) [Public domain], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File%3AStandard_World_Time_Zones.png **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 15]**	**Credit:** By Marialiszkai (Own work) [CC BY-SA 4.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0)], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File%3AJ0189597-1-.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 16]**	**Credit:** By Marialiszkai (Own work) [CC BY-SA 4.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0)], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File%3AJ0189597-1-.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

This page titled 1.1: Geography Basics (8 Days) is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by CK12 via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

1.2: Human Activity and the Environment (7 Days)

Human Activity and the Environment

Chapter Challenges

- Explain how climate and human habitation are related and distinguish between the main climate types.
- Explain the dynamics of tectonic plates and their relationship to earthquakes and volcanic activity.
- Outline the main causes of and problems with deforestation. Explain the relationship between deforestation and climate change.
- Describe where the rain shadow effect takes place and explain why it occurs in those places and how it may influence human activity.
- Summarize how climate change occurs and the relationship between greenhouse gasses such as carbon dioxide and the planet's temperature regulation.

Learning Objectives

TEKS Regional Unit 01 Physical Patterns and Processes; Chapter 1.2 Human Activity and the Environment

WG.2B Explain how changes in societies led to the diverse use of resources

WG.3A Explain weather conditions and climate in relation to annual changes in Earth-Sun relationships

WG.3C Examine the physical processes that affect the lithosphere, atmosphere, hydrosphere, and biosphere.

WG.4B Describe different landforms and the physical processes that cause their development

WG.4C Explain the influence of climate on the distribution of biomes in different regions

WG.8A Compare ways that humans depend on, adapt to, and modify the physical environment, including the influences of culture and technology.

WG.8B Describe the interaction between humans and the physical environment and analyze the consequences of extreme weather and other natural disasters such as El Niño, floods, tsunamis, and volcanoes.

WG.8C Evaluate the economic and political relationships between settlements and the environment, including sustainable development and renewable/non-renewable resources. sustainable development and renewable/non-renewable resources

WG.11C Assess how changes in climate, resources, and infrastructure (technology, transportation, and communication) affect the location and patterns of economic activities.

WG.19A Evaluate the significance of major technological innovations in the areas of transportation and energy that have been used to modify the physical environment

WG.19C Evaluate the significance of major technological innovations in the areas of transportation and energy that have been used to modify the physical environment.

TEKS and ELPS for Regional World Geography Unit 01--Physical Patterns and Processes from TEKS Resource System

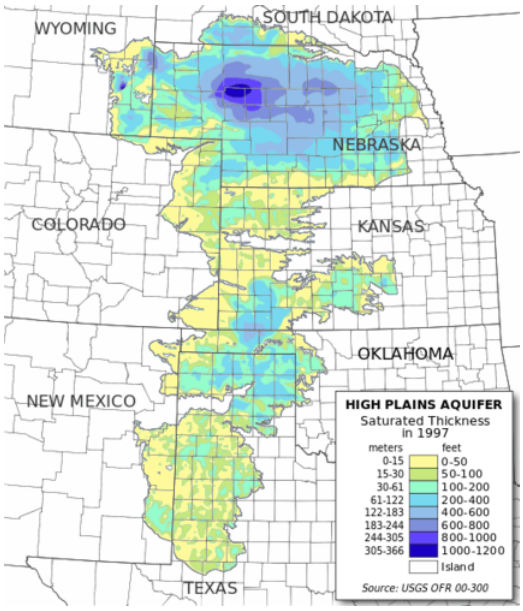
Climate and Human Habitation

The earth's ability to receive and absorb sunlight is a primary factor in the earth's environment, and it also has a big impact on human populations. There are no large cities or human communities in Antarctica because it is so cold. Most of the sunlight filtering down to Antarctica is reflected off the earth at that latitude because of the tilt of the earth's axis and the resulting angle of incoming solar radiation. Answering the basic questions of where most humans live on Earth and why they live there depends on understanding climate.

Since the region between the Tropic of Cancer and the Tropic of Capricorn receives the most direct sunlight throughout the year, it is favorable to plant and animal life, provided there is adequate moisture or precipitation. Humans have been living in the tropics

for a long time, even when the ice sheets were covering parts of the mid-latitudes. The problem with the tropics is that the soils are usually of poor quality and the nutrients have been leached out. Today, when we look at the earth and the distribution of human population, the two main factors that attract human habitation are moderate climates and access to water.

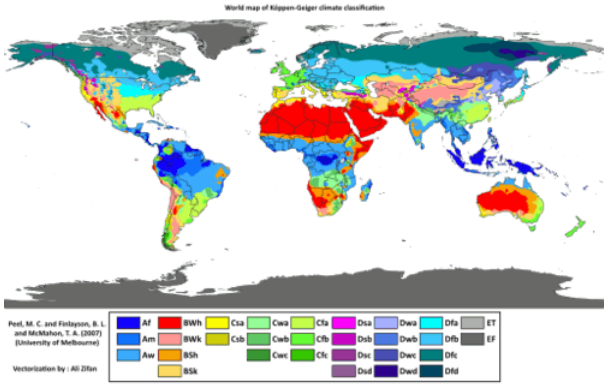
More than 70 percent of the earth's surface is covered with water. The only problem is that less than three percent of the water is fresh, and most of that fresh water is stored in ice caps at the North or South Pole. This leaves less than one percent of the world's fresh water for human use, usually in lakes, rivers, streams, or groundwater and underground aquifers. Climate plays an important role in where humans live because precipitation is necessary for growing crops, raising livestock, and supplying fresh water to urban communities.



Digital map of the saturated thickness of the High Plains aquifer in parts of Kansas, Nebraska, New Mexico, Oklahoma, South Dakota, Texas, and Wyoming

Several geographers have developed categories to identify climate types. Climate can be defined as a long-term average weather pattern evident in a particular region of the world. Weather is a term usually used to define conditions on a short-term or even daily basis. The two main elements in climate conditions are temperature and precipitation. For the purposes of this overview of world geography, the various climate types have been broken down into six basic types—A, B, C, D, E, and H—after the Köppen-Geiger classification system. Type H climates are actually a subset of the type E climate category.

- Type A: Tropical or equatorial climates
- Type B: Dry or arid climates
- Type C: Moderate or temperate climates
- Type D: Cold or continental climates
- Type E: Polar or extreme climates
- Type H: (Unclassified) highland climates



Köppen-Geiger climate classification is one of the most widely used climate classification systems. It was first published by Russian German climatologist Wladimir Köppen in 1884.

Type A: Tropical or Equatorial Climates

The humid tropical type A climate, usually found in the tropics, has warm temperatures year round with a high level of precipitation, typically in the form of rain. Type A climates have various subgroups that indicate how variably the rainfall is distributed throughout the year. Some type A climates produce a dry season and a wet season (monsoon), while others receive consistent rainfall throughout the year.



Costa Rica, a country located in Central America, is a type A climate.

Type B: Dry or Arid Climates

The dry type B climate is exemplified by the earth's desert regions. Temperatures can be extreme, with little precipitation. Type B climate regions experience low rainfall and high temperatures during the day and cooler temperatures at night or during the winter season. Terrain in type B climates can range from sand deserts to prairie grasslands or steppes. Type B climates have fewer trees than most other climate areas.



Threemile and Fivemile Mountains near Van Horn, Texas, are in the Chihuahuan Desert. The Chihuahuan Desert is a type B climate.

There is a direct relationship between highlands and type B climates in various places in the world. This climate condition, known as the rain shadow effect, or more accurately, the precipitation shadow effect, occurs when one side of a mountain range receives abundant rainfall while the region on the other side of the mountain range has a more arid climate. This phenomenon is evident wherever there is terrain with enough elevation to restrict the movement of precipitation bearing clouds.

Rain Shadow Effect

Rain shadows are created when prevailing winds carrying moisture rise quickly in elevation up a mountainside, where the air cools and condenses to precipitate out its moisture in the form of rain or snow. By the time the air mass hits the top of the mountain, its moisture is reduced. The dried air rushes down the other side of the mountain range, where it increases in temperature. The warm, dry air coming off the mountains continues to pull moisture out of the land, resulting in arid climate conditions.

The Hawaiian island of Kauai is an example of the rain shadow effect. The island's windward side receives more rain than almost any other place on Earth: as much as 460 inches (almost 40 feet) a year. Only a part of the island, however, receives that amount of rain. The height of the mountains causes a rain shadow on the dry leeward side, creating semi-desert conditions and type B climates.



Kauai's origins are volcanic, the island having been formed by the passage of the Pacific Plate over the Hawaii hotspot. At approximately six million years old, it is the oldest of the Hawaiian islands. The highest peak on this mountainous island is Kawaikini at 5,243 feet (1,598 m).

Death Valley in California is also a result of the rain shadow effect. Little rain falls on Death Valley because any moisture in the prevailing winds falls on the western side of the bordering mountain ranges. The whole state of Nevada is dry because of the rain

shadow effect. All the rain coming off of the Pacific Ocean falls on the coastal mountains and the Sierra Nevada in California. The mountains are high enough to shadow that region of Nevada, and the basin and ranges further the rain shadow effect on a local basis.



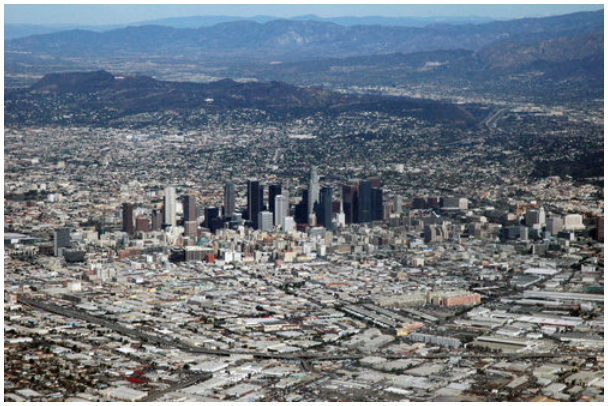
Death Valley is a desert valley located in Eastern California, in the northern Mojave Desert bordering the Great Basin Desert. It is one of the hottest places in the world at the height of summertime.

On the other side of the earth, the Himalayas are an excellent example of mountains that create the rain shadow effect. Most of western China has a type B climate because of the rain shadow effect caused by high mountains that stop precipitation-bearing clouds from ever reaching the region. The southern side of the Himalayas receives extensive rainfall because of monsoon rains arriving from the Indian Ocean, but western China is essentially a desert. It is sparsely inhabited compared with the high-density regions in China Proper to the east, where rainfall is plentiful.

Type C: Moderate or Temperate Climates

Often described as moderate in temperature and precipitation, type C climates are the most favorable to human habitation in that they host the largest human population densities on the planet. Type C climates are found mostly in the mid-latitudes bordering the tropics. Seasonal changes are pronounced, with distinct winters and summers. Winters are cool to cold and summers are usually warm. Precipitation varies from low to high, depending on location. In the United States, C climates dominate the southeast and the West Coast.

Type C climates are not the most widespread on the planet, but they have attracted the largest human populations. One reason for the attraction has been the abundance of forests, farmland, and fresh water found in type C regions. The main population centers of the planet are in type C climates. With over seven billion people on the planet and growing, humans have populated most of the regions with type C climates and are now filling up the other areas that have A, B, or D climate types.



Los Angeles, California, in the United States, is a type C climate.

Type D: Cold or Continental Climates

Type D climate regions are often found in the interiors of continents away from the moderating influence of large bodies of water. They are often farther north than type C regions, resulting in colder winters. Seasonal variations exist, with cool to hot summers and cold winters. Precipitation is usually in the form of rain in summer and snow in winter. Regions with type D climates can be found in the Great Lakes region of the United States, much of Canada, and a large portion of Russia.



Minneapolis, Minnesota, in the United States, is a type D climate.

Type E: Polar or Extreme Climates

Type E is an extreme climate type found in the Polar Regions near or to the north of the Arctic Circle and near or to the south of the Antarctic Circle. Regions with type E climates are cold with permanent ice or permafrost year round. Vegetation is minimal, and there are no trees. Temperatures may warm slightly during the short summer months; however, they rarely rise above 50 degrees.



Antarctica is a type E climate.

Type H: Highland Climates

Type H highland climates are usually listed as a subcategory of type E climates. Mountain ranges can create a variety of climate types because of the change in elevation from the base of the range to the summit. Different climate types can be found on the same mountain at different elevations. Type H climates designate highlands or mountain terrain, although variations in climate exist on most mountain ranges. Climates at the base of mountains will vary depending on whether the mountains are found in the tropics or in the higher latitudes.

High mountains near the equator may have a type A climate at their base and a type E climate at their summit with various type C and type D climates between them. Type H climates are found where elevation differences are profound enough to provide different climate zones. Higher elevation relief can reach above the tree line and have permanent snow cover at the summit. The term *relief* is used in geography to indicate elevations of a land surface. Elevation zones with permanent ice or snow can resemble a type E polar climate.



The Andes Mountains are located in South America and are a type H climate.

El Nino

El Niño is the warm phase of the El Niño Southern Oscillation (ENSO). This happens when a band of warm ocean water develops in the central and east-central equatorial Pacific, including off the Pacific coast of South America. El Niño refers to the cycle of warm and cold temperatures, as measured by Sea Surface Temperature (SST) of the tropical central and eastern Pacific Ocean. The characteristics of El Niño are high air pressure in the western Pacific and low air pressure in the eastern Pacific.

The cool phase of ENSO, called La Niña, happens when SST in the eastern Pacific is below average. Moreover, air pressure is high in the eastern Pacific and low in the western Pacific. The ENSO cycle of El Niño and La Niña causes global changes in both temperatures and rainfall.

Economies that engage in farming and fishing in the regions impacted by El Niño are especially at risk. However, no matter where you are in the world, El Niño has the potential to affect you, from fires, drought, and flooding, to crop failures, insect explosions, plague and higher prices on goods and services.

Deforestation

The planet's growing population has increased demands on natural resources, including forest products. Humans have been using trees for firewood, building homes, and making tools for millennia. Trees are a renewable resource, but deforestation occurs when they are removed faster than they can be replenished. Most people in rural areas in developing countries rely on firewood to cook their food. Many of these areas are experiencing a fast decline in the number of trees available. People living in mainly type B climates may not have access to a lot of trees to start with; therefore, when trees are cut down for firewood or for building materials, deforestation occurs.

In the tropical areas, it is common for hardwood trees to be cut down for lumber to gain income or to clear the land for other agricultural purposes, such as cattle ranching. Countries that lack opportunities and advantages look to exploit their natural resources—in this case, trees—for either subsistence agriculture or economic gain. Deforestation has increased across the globe with the rapid rise in the worldwide population.

During the Industrial Revolution, European countries chopped down their forests at a rapid rate. Much of the British Isles was forested at one point, but today few forests remain on the British Isles, and they are typically protected. Colonialism brought the Europeans to the Americas. The United States, in its early development, pushed west from the original thirteen colonies, and many old growth forests were cut down in the process. As railroad tracks were laid down and pioneer development pushed west into the Great Plains, where there were few trees, the great cutover occurred in the eastern and central forests.

Cutover is a term indicating the systematic deforestation of the eastern and central forests. Michigan and Wisconsin saw their trees removed in systematic deforestation. Some areas were allowed to grow back, but many other areas were turned into farmland. Few old-growth forests remain in the United States. Today there are conflicts over how the timber industry is handling the forests in places such as the Pacific Northwest region of the United States.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

Countries that are better off economically no longer have to cut down their own trees and can afford to substitute other resources or import lumber from other places. Developing regions of the world in Latin America, Africa, and parts of Asia, are experiencing serious problems with deforestation. Deforestation is widespread; for example, citizens of Haiti have cut down about 99 percent of the country's forests and most of the wood has been used as fuel to cook food. People in Afghanistan have cut down about 70 percent of their forests. Nigeria has lost about 80 percent of its old-growth forests since 1990. Ethiopia has lost up to 98 percent of its forested acreage, and the Philippines has lost about 80 percent of its forests.



Illegal slash and burn practice in the region west of Manantenina, Madagascar.

Brazil's Amazon basin has undergone many projects that have driven deforestation. For example, about half the state of Rondônia in western Brazil has been deforested since 1990. The countries of Central America have lost about half their original forests, and deforestation continues on a systematic basis. Tropical regions of Southeast Asia and Africa are being exploited for their timber at unsustainable rates. This will have consequences that the next generation will have to resolve.

India, with more than one billion people, has a high demand for firewood and building materials. Their forests are declining faster than they can be replanted. China has been attempting to address its deforestation problems by implementing a massive replanting program and conservation measures. Other countries are starting to adopt similar measures.

Tropical rain forests only make up about five percent of the earth's surface, but contain up to 50 percent of the earth's biodiversity. These forests are cut down for a variety of reasons. Norman Meyers, a British environmentalist, estimated that about five percent of deforestation in tropical regions is caused by the push for cattle production. Nineteen percent of these forests are cut down by the timber industry, 22 percent are cut down for the expansion of plantation agriculture, and 54 percent are removed due to slash-and-burn farming. Most tropical rain forests are located in the Amazon basin of South America, in central Africa, and in Southeast Asia. All these areas are looking for advantages and opportunities to boost their economies. Unfortunately, they often target their tropical rain forests as a way to make money.

What Are the Problems with Deforestation?

Deforestation causes more than the loss of trees for fuel, building materials, paper products, or manufacturing. Another related issue with deforestation is soil erosion. Without the trees to hold the soil during heavy rains, soils are eroded away. In tropical areas, soils are often degraded and lack nutrients. Most of the nutrients in the tropical areas rest in decaying material at the base of the trees that supply energy back into the ecosystem. Once the trees are removed, there is little replenishing of this energy supply. Soil erosion in tropical areas makes it hard for forests to grow back once they have been removed.

Landslides can be a more severe component of the soil erosion problem. After heavy rainfall, entire hillsides saturated with water can slide downward, causing serious structural damage to buildings, homes, and agricultural plots. Tree roots help hold hillsides together and therefore help prevent landslides.

Forests play an important role in the water cycle. Trees pull up moisture with their roots from the soil and transpire it through their leaves back into the atmosphere. Moisture in the atmosphere collects into clouds, condenses, and falls back to Earth. Not only do

trees store water, but organic matter at the base of the trees also stores water and makes it available to the larger ecosystem, which may slow down water runoff. Forest canopies disperse water during rainfall and create another layer of moisture in their leaves and branches, which either is used by other organisms or evaporates back into the atmosphere.

Deforestation eliminates the role that forests play in the water cycle. Forest ecosystems provide for a diverse community of organisms. Tropical rain forests are one of the most vibrant ecosystems on the planet. Their abundant biodiversity can provide insight into solutions for the future. Plants and organisms in these habitats may hold the key to medical or biological breakthroughs. Sadly, wildlife and vegetation will be lost as deforestation eliminates their habitat and speeds up the extinction of endangered species.

Trees and plants remove carbon dioxide from the atmosphere and store it in the plant structure through the process of photosynthesis. Carbon dioxide is a major greenhouse gas that is a part of the climate change process. Carbon dioxide and other similar gases reduce the amount of heat that escapes from the earth's atmosphere, resulting in increased temperatures on the planet. As more carbon dioxide is emitted into the atmosphere, climate change occurs. The removal of trees through deforestation results in less carbon dioxide being removed from the atmosphere, which contributes to climate change.

Climate Change

Climate change has been a constant activity in Earth's evolution. The increase in temperature in our environment is the activity that has gained the most attention in recent years. Questions have been raised about the rate and extent of climate change around the world. Understanding the dynamics of the temperature increase can help us to understand how it is related to human activity.

The atmosphere is the gaseous layer that surrounds the earth and marks the transition between its surface and space. The atmosphere consists of a mixture of gases, composed of nitrogen (77 percent), oxygen (21 percent), and minor elements (1 percent) including argon, helium, carbon dioxide, and water vapor. The small amount of carbon dioxide is a critical component in the control of the earth's temperature. The atmosphere extends over three hundred miles above the earth's surface, and the lower level makes up the earth's climatic system. This lowest level is called the troposphere and is responsible for the conditions that allow life to exist on the planet's surface.

Since the 1960s, scientists have been concerned about the concentrations of carbon dioxide, methane, nitrous oxide, and chlorofluorocarbons in the atmosphere. These so-called greenhouse gases can trap heat energy emitted from the earth's surface and may increase global temperatures and cause climate change. Since the Industrial Revolution, human activity—the burning of fossil fuels and large-scale deforestation—has increased the amount of heat-trapping greenhouse gases in the atmosphere. Carbon dioxide and similar gases act like the glass panels of a greenhouse that allow shortwave radiation from the sun to enter but do not allow the long-wave radiation of heat to escape into space.

An increase in carbon dioxide and greenhouse gases in the atmosphere will normally cause an increase in the temperature of the planet's climate, which in turn may cause changes in weather conditions on Earth. Temperature changes may affect precipitation patterns and alter weather patterns. This may affect agricultural outputs and influence energy needs that can create increasing economic instability. Changes in climate also impact environmental conditions for organisms adapted to specific habitat ranges. When climates change, an organism's habitable zone may also change, which in turn can impact entire ecosystems.

Burning of fossil fuels can also contribute to climate change. Fossil fuels such as coal, oil, and natural gas are created when dead plant and animal life are under pressure, decay for long periods, and retain their carbon component. Burning fossil fuels releases the carbon back into the atmosphere. The increasing need for energy by human activity will continue to contribute to climate change unless alternatives can be found. The increase in temperatures may result in the melting of the ice caps, which in turn may raise sea levels, impacting human activity around the world.

Tectonic Plates

The movement of tectonic plates is another aspect of the earth's dynamics that affects human activity. The earth's crust, which is between 10 and 125 miles thick, is a series of plates that cover a molten iron core at the center of the planet. The plates that cover the earth's surface slowly shift and move. Plates can slide away from each other or they can collide, and they can slide parallel to each other in opposite directions. When two plates collide and one plate slides under an adjacent plate, the process is called subduction. Movement or shift where two plates meet can cause earthquakes and is usually associated with volcanic activity.

Mountain chains, such as the Himalayas, are a result of two plates colliding. The collision pushes up the earth into a mountain chain, either by direct pressure or by volcanic activity. Plates can move up to an inch a year in active regions. Driven by the earth's internal heat, these plates have created the planet's mountain landscapes. Earthquakes and volcanic action along plate boundaries (called faults) continue to affect human activity and can cause serious economic damage to a community. Plate boundaries can be found near many natural edges of continents.

The continuous action of the plates causes serious earthquakes and volcanic eruptions that can devastate the daily activities of people. Earthquakes near the sea often trigger tsunamis, waves that bring destruction to coastal regions in their path. The earthquake off the east coast of Japan in 2011 created a tsunami that brought additional destruction to nuclear energy facilities, exposing parts of Japan and the rest of the world to radiation.

Key Takeaways

- Human activity on the planet correlates with the type of climate and terrain that presents itself to humans in the form of natural resources or habitability.
- Six basic climate zones (A, B, C, D, E, and H) describe the earth's climate types.
- Temperature and precipitation are the two main variables that create a climate zone and its corresponding environmental attributes.
- The earth's crust consists of a number of separate plates that move, creating earthquakes and volcanic activity.
- Most mountain ranges on Earth are a product of tectonic plate activity.
- Removing trees faster than they can grow back is called deforestation.
- Humans are cutting down the forests in many areas at an unsustainable rate.
- Deforestation can result in soil erosion, changes in weather patterns, and the loss of habitats.
- Trees are being cut down for firewood, building materials, or profit.
- Mountains or high elevation relief can restrict the passage of rain clouds and cause the clouds to lose their precipitation as the air mass increases in elevation creating a rain shadow effect.
- The other side of the mountain or range does not receive any precipitation and is reduced to a more arid or drier region, creating desert conditions.
- Climate change is a phenomenon whereby gases such as carbon dioxide and methane increase in the troposphere and restrict long-wave radiation from escaping the planet, which can result in warmer temperatures on Earth.
- Trees remove carbon dioxide from the atmosphere, which may reduce climate change.

biome	A large ecosystem characterized by common climate, common vegetation, and common animal life
El Nino	A warm ocean current the flows off the west coast of South America every few years. An El Nino event changes weather patterns around the world and may cause extreme weather in some regions
crop rotation	The practice of rotating use of different fields from crop to crop each year to avoid exhausting the soil
deforestation	Removing of or clearing away the trees from a forest often done to clear land for farming and ranching
fault	A line on Earth’s surface the results from a deep crack in the crust
fossil water	Water that has been contained in some undisturbed space, in an aquifer, for millennia
global warming	Gradual warming of Earth's surface caused by the accumulation of greenhouse gasses in the atmosphere
groundwater	Water lying deep under the ground that supplies wells and springs
irrigation	The supply of water to land or crops to help growth, typically by means of channels. This allows dry areas to support crops
La Nina	A cooling of the water in the equatorial Pacific that occurs at irregular intervals and is associated with widespread changes in weather patterns complementary to those of El Niño, but less extensive and damaging in their effects
over-farming	Planting the same crops every year causing the degradation of nutrients in the soil and yielding fewer crops
plate-tectonics	A large piece of Earths crusts that floats on the liquid mantle
permafrost	A layer of soil beneath the earth's surface that is always frozen
rain shadow effect	The land on the leeward side of hills or mountains that gets little rain from the descending dry air
renewable energy	Energy from a source that is not depleted when used, such as wind or solar power
smog	A haze in the air caused by air pollution, especially the exhaust from cars and other vehicles
subduction	The sideways and downward movement of the edge of a plate of the earth's crust into the mantle beneath another plate
tsunami	A huge, destructive wave caused by the displacement of a large volume of a body of water, typically by an earthquake or volcanic eruption
watershed	An area of land that is drained by a river and its tributaries
zones of latitude	The three main latitude regions of the Earth's surface comprise geographical zones, divided by the major circles of latitude. The

	differences between them relate to climate. Low latitudes, tropical; middle latitudes, temperate; high latitudes, polar

Applying Knowledge

Interactive Notebook Activities

1. Explain how climate and human habitation are related and distinguish the main climate types.
2. Describe the dynamics of tectonic plates and their relationship to earthquakes and volcanic activity.
3. Outline the main causes of deforestation. Explain the relationship between deforestation and climate change.
4. Describe where the rain shadow effect takes place. Explain why it occurs in those places and how it may influence human activity.
5. Summarize how climate change occurs and the relationship between greenhouse gases such as carbon dioxide and the planet's temperature regulation.

Discussion and Study Questions

1. What climate type do you live in?
2. What are the main attributes of each climate type?
3. What two main climatic qualities do humans gravitate toward?
4. What is the difference between weather and climate?
5. How can the main causes of deforestation be alleviated or diminished?
6. What are tectonic plates, and how do they help shape the planet?
7. How does tectonic plate movement affect human activities?
8. Who is responsible for addressing the problems caused by climate change? What can you do about it?
9. What causes a rain shadow effect? Name some examples of this phenomenon.
10. Which regions of the planet are being affected the most by deforestation?

Tech Activities

1. Research and determine when the last three earthquakes nearest where you live occurred. What damage did they cause?
2. Chart the annual average temperature for where you live for the past one hundred years to illustrate any trend in climate change.
3. Using the Internet, determine the nearest location to where you live that is impacted by a rain shadow effect.

Mapping Exercise

Mapping Our World ESRI- ARGIS Online

The Earth Moves Module 2 Lesson 1: In this activity, students will observe worldwide patterns of seismic activity (earthquakes) and volcanic activity (volcanoes). Students will analyze the relationships of those patterns to tectonic plate boundaries and major physical features of the earth's surface. Then students will identify cities at risk.

Student Supplemental Material-download

Student Answer Doc- Download

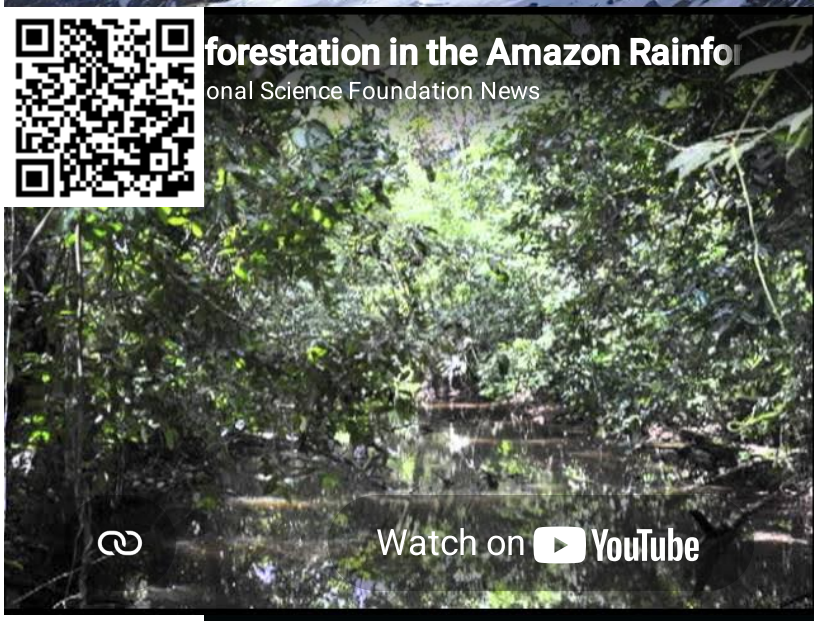
Student Assessment-Download

Teacher Materials-download


C Geography - Plate Tectonics
ns Woolfe Media
Watch on YouTube


mate 101: Deforestation | Nationa
onal Geographic
Watch on YouTube


mate change: A diagnostic from s
pean Space Agency, ESA
Watch on YouTube


forestation in the Amazon Rainfo
onal Science Foundation News
Watch on YouTube


Nino - What is it?
Office - UK Weather
Watch on YouTube


eans of Climate Change
SA Jet Propulsion Laboratory
Watch on YouTube


in Shadow
versity of Illinois Extension
The warming is caused by the air getting squeezed together
into higher air pressure
Watch on YouTube


ate of the Union and Climate Chan
SA
Watch on YouTube



Helpful Websites for the Study of Geography

Canadian Encyclopedia is an encyclopedia funded by the Canadian government covering all branches of knowledge. Their scholarly collection includes interactive materials.

CIA World Factbook provides information on the people, history, government, economy, energy, geography, communications, transportation, military, and transnational issues for the world's entities.

Congress.gov is a US government website where you can find federal legislation, past and present, as well as information about the US legal system.

Drug Enforcement Administration (DEA) is a government agency website that provides current news, resources, topics of interest, information about drugs, careers in the DEA, and a tip hotline.

Library of Congress is the largest library in the world and provides manuscripts, files, information, pictures, and videos.

NASA Earth Observatory (NEO) is a US government agency website that allows users to search for and retrieve satellite images of Earth.

National Archives is a US government website that provides historical documents, photos, records, publications, and educator resources.

National Oceanic and Atmospheric Association (NOAA) is a US government agency website that provides weather-related information and ocean research.

National Map is a website by the United States Geological Survey and other federal, state, and local agencies that deliver topographic information for the United States.

NationMaster is a massive central data source and a handy way to graphically compare nations.

Real-Time World Air Quality Index is a website that measures most locations in the world for air pollution in real time.

StateMaster is a unique statistical database, which allows you to research and compare a multitude of different data on US states.

United Nations (UN) is an international organization founded in 1945 and made up of 193 member states. The UN maintains international peace and security, protects human rights, delivers humanitarian aid, promotes sustainable development, and upholds international law.

United States Census Bureau is a US government agency that provides a population clock, data, surveys, statistics, a library with information and infographics, news about the economy, and much more.

United States Geological Survey (USGS) is a US government agency website that provides scientific information about the natural hazards that threaten lives, the natural resources we rely on, the health of our ecosystems and environment, and the impacts of climate and land-use change.

Whitehouse.gov is a US government website that provides the latest presidential news, information about the budget, policy, defense, and many more topics.

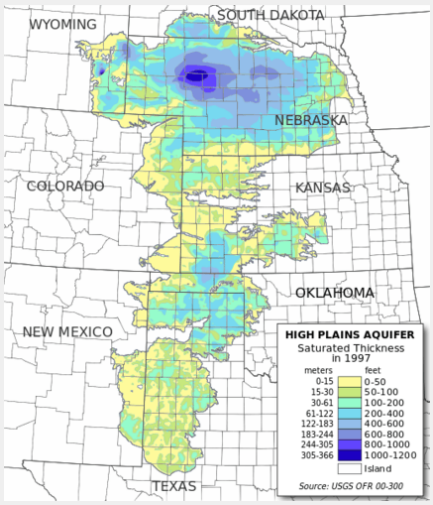
World Health Organization (WHO) is under the United Nations and provides leadership on matters critical to health, shapes the research agenda on health, and monitors the health situation and assessing health trends around the world. Their website provides information on the state of health around the world, outbreaks, current health news, and more.

LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

World Trade Organization (WTO) is an intergovernmental organization that regulates international trade. The website provides

https://k12.libretexts.org/@go/page/1866

information on the history of the multilateral trading system, featured videos, news and events, trade topics, and more.

Image	Reference	Attributions
	**[Figure 1]**	**Credit:** By Kbh3rd (Own work) [CC BY-SA 3.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0) or GFDL (http://www.gnu.org/copyleft/fdl.html)], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File%3AOgallala_saturated_thickness_1997-sattk97.svg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 3]**	**Credit:** By Arturo Sotillo from La Canada, CA, USA (Costa Rica... No artificial ingredients!) [CC BY-SA 2.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/2.0)], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File%3ACosta_Rica..._No_artificial_ingredients!_(673029449).jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 4]**	**Credit:** By Leaflet (Own work) [CC BY-SA 3.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0)], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File%3AVanHornTX_2008.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 6]**	**Credit:** By This Photo was taken by Wolfgang Moroder. Feel free to use my photos, but please mention me as the author and send me a message. This image is not public domain. Please respect the copyright protection. It may only be used according to the rules mentioned here. This specifically excludes use in social media, if applicable terms of the licenses listed here not appropriate. Please do not upload an updated image here without consultation with the Author. The author would like to make corrections only at his own source. This ensures that the changes are preserved.

		Please if you think that any changes should be required, please inform the author. Otherwise you can upload a new image with a new name. Please use one of the templates derivative or extract. (Own work) [CC BY-SA 3.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0)], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File%3AZbriskie_Point_South_Panorama_2012.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 8]**	**Credit:** Pixabay **Source:** pixabay.com/en/minneapolis-winter-bridge-downtown-2347321/ **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 9]**	**Credit:** By Jason Auch (originally posted to Flickr as IMG_0760) [CC BY 2.0 (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/2.0)], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File%3AAdelie_Penguins_on_iceberg.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 11]**	**Credit:** By Diorit (Own work) [CC BY-SA 3.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0) or GFDL (http://www.gnu.org/copyleft/fdl.html)], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File%3AManantenina_bushfire.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

This page titled 1.2: Human Activity and the Environment (7 Days) is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by CK12 via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

2: Human Geographic Systems (15 days)

2.1: Population and Culture (5 Days)

2.2: Globalization and Development (5 Days)

2.3: Celebrate Freedom Week- Foundations of the United States (5 Days)

This page titled 2: Human Geographic Systems (15 days) is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by CK12 via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

2.1: Population and Culture (5 Days)

Chapter Challenges

- Explain the demographic transition process. Understand the concept of carrying capacity as it relates to the planet's human population.
- Outline the relationship between urbanization and family size. Show how the rural-to-urban shift relates to industrialization and the change in rural populations.
- Draw or paste a population pyramid from this section, and interpret and infer trends from a population pyramid.
- Determine if the population is increasing or declining and if the pace of growth is intensifying or slowing.
- Explain the difference between the concepts of culture and ethnicity as referenced in this book.
- Explain the difficulty in determining the number of languages and religions existing on Earth.
- List the main language families and the world's major religions.

Learning Objectives

TEKS Regional Unit 02 Human Geographic Systems Chapter 2.1 Population and Culture

WG.5A Analyze how the character of a place is related to its political, economic, social, and cultural elements

WG.5B Interpret political, economic, social, and demographic indicators (gross domestic product per capita, life expectancy, literacy, and infant mortality) to determine the level of development and standard of living in nations using the terms Human Development Index, less developed, newly industrialized, and more developed

WG.6B Explain the processes that have caused changes in settlement patterns, including urbanization, transportation, access to and availability of resources, and economic activities.

WG.7A Construct and analyze population pyramids and use other data, graphics, and maps to describe the population characteristics of different societies and to predict future population trends

WG.7C Describe trends in world population growth and distribution.

WG.9A Identify physical and/or human factors such as climate, vegetation, language, trade networks, political units, river systems, and religion that constitute a region

WG.13B Compare maps of voting patterns or political boundaries to make inferences about the distribution of political power.

WG.14BCompare how democracy, dictatorship, monarchy, republic, theocracy, and totalitarian systems operate in specific countries

WG.16C Explain ways various groups of people perceive the characteristics of their own and other cultures, places, and regions differently.

WG.17B Describe major world religions, including Animism, Buddhism, Christianity, Hinduism, Islam, Judaism, Sikhism, and their spatial distribution.

WG.21B Describe the rights and responsibilities of citizens and noncitizens in civic participation throughout history

WG.21C Create and interpret different types of maps to answer geographic questions, infer relationships, and analyze change

TEKS and ELPS for Regional World Geography Unit 02--Human Geographic Systems from TEKS Resource System

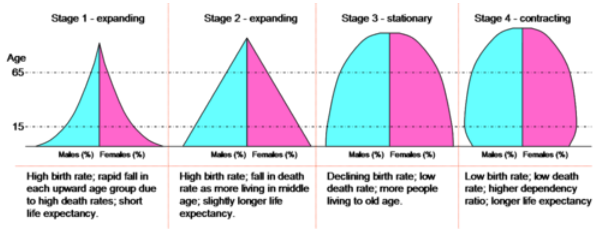
Population and Culture

Demographic Transition

Demography is the study of how human populations change over time and space. It is a branch of human geography related to population geography, which is the examination of the spatial distribution of human populations. Geographers study how populations grow and migrate, how people are distributed around the world, and how these distributions change over time. For

most of human history, relatively few people lived on Earth and the world population grew slowly. Only about 500 million people lived on the entire planet in 1650 (that's less than half of India's population in 2000).

Things changed dramatically during Europe's Industrial Revolution in the late 1700s and into the 1800s when declining death rates due to improved nutrition and sanitation allowed more people to survive to adulthood and reproduce. The population of Europe grew rapidly. However, by the middle of the twentieth century, birth rates in developed countries declined, as children had become an economic liability rather than an economic asset to families. Fewer families worked in agriculture, more families lived in urban areas, and women delayed the age of marriage to pursue education, resulting in a decline in family size and a slowing of population growth. In some countries (e.g., Russia and Japan), the population is actually in decline, and the average age in developed countries has been rising for decades. The process just described is called the demographic transition.



The Demographic Transition Model is the transition from higher birth and death rates to lower birth and death rates as a country or region develops from pre-industrial to an industrialized economic system.

At the beginning of the 20th century, the world's population was about 1.6 billion. One hundred years later, there were roughly six billion people in the world, and as of 2018, the population is approximately 7.6 billion. This rapid growth occurred as the demographic transition spread from developed countries to the rest of the world. During the 20th century, death rates due to disease and malnutrition decreased in nearly every corner of the globe. In developing countries with agricultural societies, however, birth rates remained high. Low death rates and high birth rates resulted in rapid population growth.

Meanwhile, birth rates and family size have also been declining in most developing countries as people leave agricultural professions for urban areas. This means that population growth rates—while still higher in the developing world than in the developed world—are declining. Although the exact figures are unknown, demographers expect the world's population to stabilize by 2100 and then decline somewhat.

In 2010, the world's population was growing by about 80 million people per year, a growth rate found almost exclusively in developing countries, as populations are stable or in decline in places such as Europe and North America. World population increase is more pronounced on the continent of Asia. Moreover, China and India are the most populous countries in the world, each with more than a billion people. Pakistan is an emerging population giant with a high rate of population growth. The continent of Africa has the highest fertility rates in the world, with countries such as Nigeria—Africa's most populous and the world's eighth most populous country—growing rapidly each year.

The most striking paradox within population studies is that while there has been marked decline in fertility (a declining family size) in developing countries, the world's population will grow substantially by 2030 because of the compounding effect of a large number of people already in the world—that is, even though population growth rates are in decline in many countries, the population is still growing. A small growth rate on a large base population still results in the birth of many millions of people.

Earth's human population is growing at a rate of about 1.4 percent per year. If the current growth rate continues, the human population will double in about 50 years to more than 12 billion. The current population increase remains at about 80 million per year. A change in the growth rate will change the doubling time. Between 2010 and 2050, world population growth will be generated exclusively in developing countries.

The three largest population clusters in the world are the regions of eastern China, South Asia, and Europe. Southeast Asia also has large population clusters. Additional large population centers exist in various countries with high urbanization. An example is the urbanized region between Boston and Washington, DC, which includes New York City, Philadelphia, Baltimore, and neighboring metropolitan areas, resulting in a region often called a megalopolis. The coastal country of Nigeria in West Africa or the island of Java in Indonesia are good examples of large population clusters centered in the tropics.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org



Jakarta, Indonesia, is located on the northwest coast of the world's most populous island of Java.

Social dynamics and geography will determine where the new additions to the human family will live. Providing food, energy, and materials for these additional humans will tax many countries of the world. Poverty, malnutrition, and disease are expected to increase in regions with poor sanitation, limited clean water, and lack of economic resources. In 2018, more than one-third of the planet's population live in poverty and earn less than the equivalent of two US dollars per day. The carrying capacity of the planet is not and cannot be known. How many humans can the earth sustain in an indefinite manner? There is the possibility that we have already reached the threshold of its carrying capacity.

Human population will continue to grow until it either crashes due to the depletion of resources or stabilizes at a sustainable carrying capacity. Population growth exacts a toll on the earth as more people use more environmental resources. The areas most immediately affected by increased populations include forests (a fuel resource and a source of building material), fresh water supplies, and agricultural soils. These systems get overtaxed, and their depletion has serious consequences.

Type C climates, which are moderate and temperate, are usually the most productive and are already vulnerable to serious deforestation, water pollution, and soil erosion. Maintaining adequate food supplies will be critical to supporting a sustainable carrying capacity. The ability to transport food supplies quickly and safely is a major component of the ability to manage the conservation of resources. Deforestation by humans using wood for cooking fuel is already a serious concern in the arid and dry type B climates.

Urbanization and Family Size

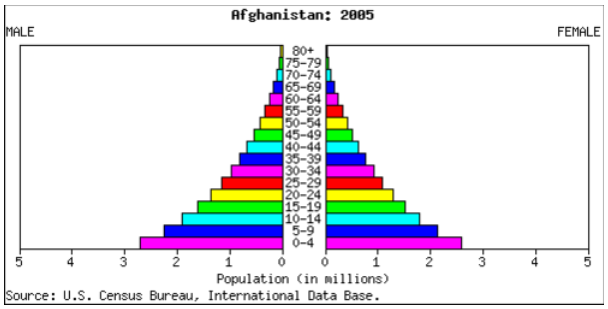
As countries move from an agricultural to an industrial economy, there is a major shift in population from rural to urban settings. The Industrial Revolution of the 19th century ushered in major technological developments and changes in labor practices, which encouraged migration from the farm to the city. Because of increased mechanization, fewer farm workers are needed to produce larger agricultural yields. At the same time, factories in urban areas have a great need for industrial workers. This shift continued into the information age of the late 20th century and continues in many parts of the developing world in the current century.

A basic principle of population growth that addresses this rural-to-urban shift states that as countries industrialize and urbanize, family size typically decreases and incomes traditionally increase. Though this may not be true in all cases, it is a general principle that is consistent across cultural lines. Agricultural regions generally have a larger average family size than that of their city counterparts. The fertility rate is the average number of children a woman in a particular country has in her lifetime, whether or not they all live to adulthood.

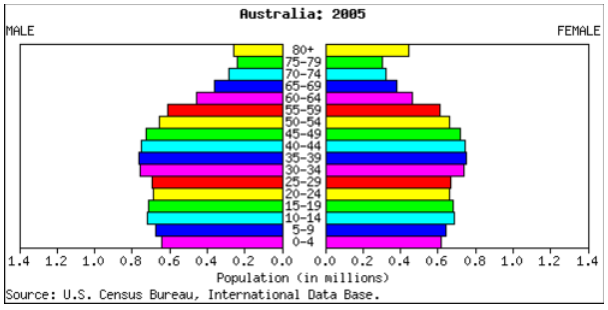
If a fertility rate for a given country is less than 2.1—the replacement level—the population of that country is in decline, unless there is significant immigration. A fertility rate greater than 2.1 indicates that the country's population is increasing. Some children will never reach reproductive age or have children of their own, so the replacement rate has to be slightly greater than two. The concept of fertility rate is slightly different from the term family size, which indicates the number of living children raised by a parent or parents in the same household. In this textbook, family size is used to illustrate the concept of population growth and decline.

Population Demands

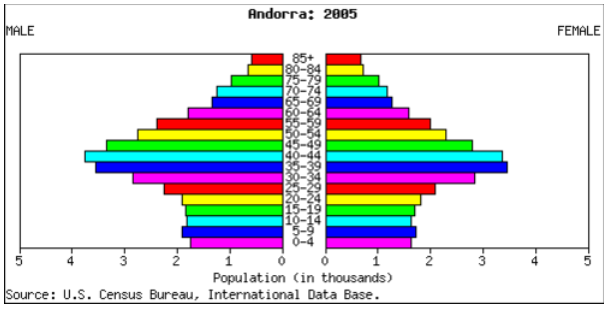
A country's demographic statistics can be illustrated graphically by a population pyramid. A population pyramid is essentially two bar graphs that depict male and female age cohorts either in absolute size or as a percentage of the total population. Male cohorts are typically shown on the left side of the pyramid and females are on the right side. The three pyramid types are rapid growth, slow growth, and negative growth.



This population pyramid of Afghanistan is an example of rapid growth.



This population pyramid of Australia is an example of slow growth.



This population pyramid of Andorra is an example of negative growth.

The shape of a country's population pyramid tells a story about the history of its population growth. For example, a high-growth-rate country has a pyramid that is narrow at the top and wide at the bottom, showing that every year more children have been born than the year before. As family size decreases and women in a society have fewer children, the shape of the pyramid changes. A

population pyramid for a post-industrialized country that has negative growth would be narrower at the bottom than in the middle, indicating that there are fewer children than middle-aged people. These shapes also illustrate the percentage of a population under the age of 15 or over the age of 65, which are standard indicators of population growth. Many post-industrial countries have a negative population growth rate. Their population pyramids are narrow at the bottom, indicating an urbanized population with small family sizes.

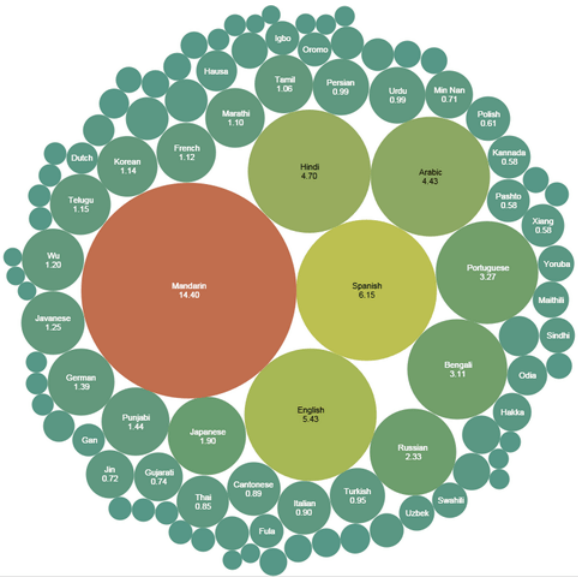
Culture and Ethnicity

The term culture is often difficult to differentiate from the term ethnicity. In this textbook, ethnicity indicates traits people are born with, including genetic backgrounds, physical features, or birthplaces. People have little choice in matters of ethnicity. The term culture indicates what people learn after they are born, including language, religion, and customs or traditions. Individuals can change matters of culture by individual choice after they are born. These two terms help us identify human patterns and understand a country's driving forces.

The terms culture and ethnicity might also be confused in the issue of ethnic cleansing, which refers to the forced removal of a people from their homeland by a stronger force of a different people. Ethnic cleansing might truly indicate two distinct ethnic groups: one driving the other out of their homeland and taking it over. On the other hand, ethnic cleansing might also mean cultural cleansing if both the aggressor and the group driven out are of the same ethnic stock but hold different cultural values, such as religion or language. The term ethnic cleansing has been used to describe either case.

Languages of the World

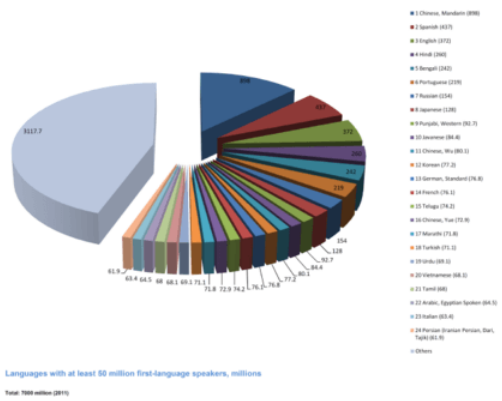
Language is the communication mode of human culture and it represents the complete diversity of thought, literature, and the arts. All the billions of people on the planet speak at least one language. While *Ethnologue*, a publication pertaining to the world's languages, estimates that there were 6,909 living languages in the world as of 2009, the exact number may never be determined. Other data sets count languages differently, but most agree that there are more than 6,000. There are communities in various parts of the world where people can communicate by whistling messages to each other or by using clicking sounds.



This bubble chart illustrates the languages by the proportion of native speakers worldwide from Mikael Parkvall, "Världens 100 största språk 2007" (The World's 100 Largest Languages in 2007).

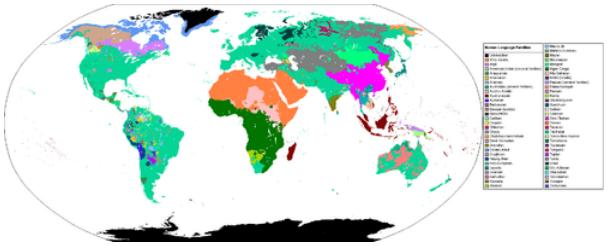
Of the more than 6,000 languages, about a dozen are spoken by more than 100 million people each. These are the world's main languages used in the most populous countries. However, the vast majority of the world's languages are spoken by a relatively small number of people. In fact, many languages have no written form and are spoken by declining numbers of people. Language experts estimate that up to half the world's living languages could be lost by the end of the 21st century as a result of globalization.

New languages form when populations live in isolation, and in the current era, as the world's populations are increasingly interacting with each other, languages are being abandoned and their speakers are switching to more useful tongues.

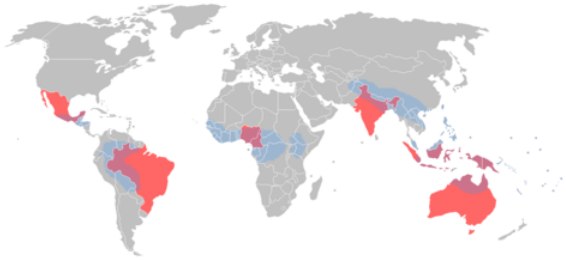


This pie chart shows the languages of the world with at least 50 million first-language speakers (in millions).

There are nine dominant language families in the world. Each of the languages within a language family shares a common ancestral language. An example of a language family is the Indo-European family, which has a number of branches of language groups that come from the same base: a language called Proto-Indo-European that was probably spoken about 6,000 years ago. As populations migrated away from the ancestral homeland, their language evolved and separated into many new languages. The three largest language groups of the Indo-European family used in Europe are the Germanic, Romance, and Slavic groups. Other Indo-European languages include Hindi (spoken in India) and Persian (spoken in Iran).



This map of the world shows the primary human languages and the locations where they are dominant.



Together, the eight countries in red contain more than 50 percent of the world's languages. The areas in blue are the most linguistically diverse in the world, and the locations of most of the world's endangered languages.

Language Characteristics

The following terms are used to describe language characteristics.

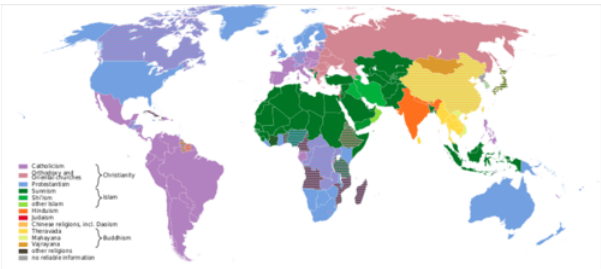
- An accent is the pronunciation of words within a language that is different from that used by a different group of the same language. For example, people in Mississippi pronounce words differently from people in North Dakota, but the differences are less severe than dialects.
- Similar to pidgin, a Creole language arises from contact between two other languages and has features of both. However, Creole is a pidgin that becomes a primary language spoken by people at home. Creole languages are often developed in colonial settings as a dialect of the colonial language (usually French or English). For example, in the former French colony of Haiti, a French-based Creole language was developed that is spoken by people at home, while French is typically used for professional purposes.
- A dead language is one that is no longer used for local communication. For example, Latin is no longer used by local people to communicate but is still used by the Roman Catholic Church in some of its services.
- A dialect is a regional variety of a language that uses different grammar or pronunciation. Examples include American English versus British English. Linguists suggest that there are three main dialects of the English language in the United States: a Southern dialect, a Midland dialect, and a Northern dialect. Television and public media communication have brought a focus on more uniform speech patterns that have diminished the differences between these three dialects.
- An isolated language is one not connected to any other language on Earth. For example, Basque is not connected to any other language and is only spoken in the region of the Pyrenees between Spain and France.
- A lingua franca is a second language used for commercial purposes with others outside a language group but not used in personal lives. For example, Swahili is used by millions in Africa for doing business with people outside their own group but is not used to communicate within local communities.
- The official language is the language that is on record by a country to be used for all its official government purposes. For example, in India, the official language is Hindi, though in many places the lingua franca is English and several local languages may be spoken.
- A pidgin is a simplified, created language used to communicate between two or more groups that do not have a language in common. For example, Residents of New Guinea mix English words with their own language to create a new language that can bridge speakers of different local language groups. Though the words are in English, the grammar and sentence structure is mixed up according to local vocabulary. There are many English-based pidgin languages around the world.
- Slang is the local use of informal words or phrases that are not part of the official language. For example, a lot of musicians use slang in their lyrics.

Religions of the World

Religious geography is the study of the distribution of religions and their relationship to their place of origin. Religious geographers recognize three main types of religions: universal (or universalizing), ethnic (or cultural), and tribal (or traditional) religions. Universal religions include Christianity, Islam, and various forms of Buddhism. These religions attempt to gain worldwide acceptance and appeal to all types of people, and they actively look for new members or converts. Ethnic religions appeal to a single ethnic group or culture. These religions do not actively seek out converts.

Broader ethnic religions include Judaism, Shintoism, Hinduism, and Chinese religions that embrace Confucianism and Taoism. Finally, traditional religions involve the belief in some form of supernatural power that people can appeal to for help, including ancestor worship and the belief in spirits that live in various aspects of nature, such as trees, mountaintops, and streams (this is often called animism). Sub-Saharan Africa is home to many traditional religions.

Although the world's primary religions are listed here, many other religions are practiced around the world, as well as many variations of the religions outlined here. The top four religions by population are Christianity, Islam, Hinduism, and Buddhism. Because the official doctrine of Communism was nonreligious or atheist, there are actually many more followers of Buddhism in China than demographic listings indicate. The percentage of the world's population that follows Buddhism is probably much higher than the six percent often listed for this religion.



This world map is color-coded to denote the major religions found worldwide.

Buddhism is a religion or way of life based on the teachings and life of Siddhartha Gautama, also known as the Buddha, who lived in what is now India and Nepal around the 5th century B.C.E. There are three main branches of Buddhism: (1) southern or Theravada Buddhism; (2) eastern or Mahayana Buddhism; (3) and northern or Vajrayana Buddhism. Followers of Buddhism are called Buddhists. Buddhists follow the Eightfold Path and aspire to know and understand the Four Noble Truths.

Christianity originated out of Judaism in the eastern Mediterranean and the Arabian Peninsula. It is a monotheistic religion that looks to the Jewish patriarch Abraham as the founder. Christianity, based on the life and teachings of Jesus Christ, who lived in Palestine in the first century C.E., spread rapidly through the Roman Empire. Followers of Christianity are called Christians. The central religious text for Christians is The Bible.

Hinduism, a religious tradition that originated on the Indian subcontinent, is one of the oldest major religions in the world. It may date back to as far as 2000 B.C.E. or earlier. Unlike other world religions, Hinduism has no single founder and has diverse beliefs and traditions. Followers of Hinduism are called Hindus. Hinduism has a large body of scripture, including the Vedas, the Upanishads, and epic tales such as the Mahabharata and the Ramayana.

Islam also originated out of Judaism and is based on the teachings of Muhammad, a seventh-century religious and political figure who lived on the Arabian Peninsula. Islam spread rapidly across North Africa, east across southern Asia, and north to Europe in the centuries after Muhammad's death. Followers of Islam are called Muslims. The central religious text for Muslims is the Koran.

Judaism is the religion of the Jewish people, whose traditions and ethics are embodied in the Tanakh and the Talmud. According to Jewish tradition, Judaism began with the covenant between God and Abraham around 2000 B.C.E. The second covenant happened 450 years later when Moses led the Jews out of slavery in Egypt and gave them the 10 Commandants.

:Human Geographic Systems Chapter 2.1 Population and Culture

1.**Activity space:** The area within which people move freely on their rounds of regular activity

2.**Agricultural revolution:** The time when human beings first domesticated plants and animals and no longer relied entirely on hunting and gathering

3.**AIDS:** A serious (often fatal) disease of the immune system transmitted through blood products especially by sexual contact or contaminated needles

4.**Arable land:** land suitable for growing crops

5.**Arithmetic growth:** population growth where population increases by the same amount over each time interval

6.**Arithmetic population density:** The total number of people divided by the total land area

7.**Assimilation:** the social process of absorbing one cultural group into harmony with another

8.**Authenticity:** In the context of local cultures or customs, the accuracy with which a single stereotypical or typecast image or experience conveys an otherwise dynamic and complex local culture or its customs

9.**Awareness space:** Knowledge of opportunity activities well beyond the normal activity space

10.**Carrying capacity:** The largest number of individuals of a population that an environment can support

11.**Commodification:** Giving a price tag or value to something that was not previously perceived as having a money-related value.

12.**Crude birth rate:** The total number of live births in a year for every 1,000 people alive in the society.

13.**Crude death rate:** The number of deaths per year per 1,000 people.

14.**Cultural Appropriation:** the process by which cultures adopt customs and knowledge from other cultures and use them for their own benefit

15.**Cultural Landscape:** the visible imprint of human activity and culture on the landscape

16.**Custom:** Practices followed by the people of a particular cultural group

17.**Demographic equation:** The formula that calculates population change. The formula finds the increase (or decrease) in a population. The formula is found by doing births minus deaths plus (or minus) net migration. This is important because it helps to determine which stage in the demographic transition model a country is in

18.**Demographic momentum:** this is the tendency for a growing population to continue growing after a fertility decline because of their young age distribution. This is important because once this happens a country moves to a different stage in the demographic transition model

19.**Demographic transition theory:** Multistage model, based on Western Europe's experience, of changes in population growth exhibited by countries undergoing industrialization. High birth rates and death rates are followed by plunging death rates, producing a huge net population gain; this is followed by the convergence of birth rates and death rates at a low overall level

20.**demography:** The scientific study of population characteristics

21.**Diffusion routes:** The spatial trajectory through which cultural traits or other phenomena spread

22.**distance decay:** The decline of activity or function with increasing distance from its point of origin

23.**Dot maps:** Thematic maps that use points to show the precise locations of specific observations or occurrences, such as crimes, car accidents, or births

24.**Doubling rate:** The length of time needed to double the population

25.**endemic:** confined to a particular country or area

26.**Epidemiologic transition:** distinctive causes of death in each stage of the demographic transition

27.**Ethnic neighborhood:** a neighborhood, typically situated in a larger metropolitan city and constructed by or comprised of a local culture, in which a local culture can practice its customs

28.**Exponential growth:** Growth pattern in which the individuals in a population reproduce at a constant rate

29.**Female infanticide:** the intentional killing of baby girls due to the preference for male babies and from the low value associated with the birth of females

30.**Folk Culture:** Culture traditionally practiced by a small, homogeneous, rural group living in relative isolation from other groups

31.**Folk-Housing Regions:** A region in which the housing stock predominantly reflects styles of building that are particular to the culture of the people who have long inhabited the area

32.**Geometric growth:** an increase in quantity by a constant proportion each year

33.**Global-Local Continuum:** notion that what happens at the global scale directly effects what happens at the global scale directly effects what happens at a local scale, and vice versa

34.**Glocalization:** The process by which people in a local place mediate and alter regional, national, and global processes

35.**Hearth:** The region from which innovative ideas originate

36.**Hierarchical Diffusion:** A form of diffusion in which an idea or innovation spreads by passing first among the most connected places or peoples

37.**Infant mortality rate:** The percentage of children who die before their first birthday within a particular area or country

38.**Life expectancy:** The average number of years an individual can be expected to live, given current social, economic, and medical conditions. Life expectancy at birth is the average number of years a newborn infant can expect to live

39.**Local Culture:** A set of common experiences or customs that shape the identity of a place and the people who live there. Local cultures are often the subjects of preservation or economic development efforts

40.**Material culture:** the art, housing, clothing, sports, dances, foods, and other similar items constructed or created by a group of people

41.**Natural increase:** Population growth measured as the excess of live births over deaths; does not reflect either emigrant or immigrant movements

42.**Neolocalism:** A renewed interest in sustaining and promoting the uniqueness of a place

43.**Neo-Malthusians:** A group who built on Malthus' theory and suggested that people wouldn't just starve for lack of food, but would have wars about food and other scarce resources

44.**Non-material culture:** Human creations, such as values, norms, knowledge, systems of government, language, and so on, that are not embodied in physical objects

45.**One-child policy:** A program established by the Chinese government in 1979 to slow population growth in China

46.**Overpopulation:** The number of people in an area exceeds the capacity of the environment to support life at a decent standard of living

47.**Pandemic:** Disease that occurs over a wide geographic area and affects a very high proportion of the population.

48.**Physiological population density:** The number of people per unit of area of arable land, which is land suitable for agriculture

49.**Placelessness:** the loss of uniqueness of place in the cultural landscape so that one place looks like the next

50.**Popular Culture:** cultural patterns that are widespread among a society's population

51.**Population concentrations:** Areas of the world with a large population density

52.**Population density:** A measurement of the number of people per given unit of land

53.**Population explosion:** a sudden increase or burst in the population in either a certain geographical area or worldwide

54.**Population geography:** the study of spatial variations among populations and population-environment interactions

55.**Population pyramid:** A bar graph representing the distribution of the population by age and sex

56.**Restrictive population policies:** Government policies designed to reduce the rate of natural increase

57.**Reterritorialization:** with respect to popular culture, when people within a place start to produce an aspect of popular culture themselves, doing so in the context of their local culture and making it their own

58.**Stationary population level:** The level at which a national population ceases to grow

59.**sustainability:** The use of Earth's renewable and nonrenewable natural resources in ways that do not constrain resource use

Key Takeaways

- The human population is moving closer to eight billion in 2018 and is increasing rapidly, mainly in developing regions of Asia and Africa.
- There is no agreement on the earth’s carrying capacity for our human population, but unless the growth rate changes, the human population will double in about 50 years.
- Since the Industrial Revolution, humans have been moving from rural areas to urban areas.

- Workers were needed in the factories and fewer workers were needed on the farms because of improved technology. This trend continues in many rural areas of developing countries.
- Population pyramids are one method of illustrating demographic data for a country to show if the population is declining or increasing and at what rate.
- Though often interchangeable in general terms, ethnicity is what you are born with and culture is what you learn after you are born.
- There are about 6,000 languages in the world today, with about 13 of them spoken by over 100 million people or more.
- Of the main language families, nine include at least one percent or more of the human population.
- There are thousands of religions or variants of them in the world.
- Religious geographers recognize three main types of religions: universal, ethnic, and traditional.
- The four main religions of the world are Buddhism, Christianity, Hinduism, and Islam.

Interactive Notebook Activities

Applying Knowledge

1. Describe the demographic transition process and define the concept of carrying capacity as it relates to the planet's human population.
2. Outline the relationship between urbanization and family size. Show how the rural-to-urban shift relates to industrialization and the change in rural populations.
3. Draw or paste a population pyramid from this section, and interpret and infer trends from it.
4. Analyze your population pyramid to determine whether the population is increasing or declining and if the pace of growth is intensifying or slowing.
5. Explain the difference between the concepts of culture and ethnicity as these terms are used in this textbook.
6. Summarize the difficulty in determining the number of languages and religions existing on Earth.
7. List the main language families and the world's major religions.

Discussion and Study Questions

1. What is the planet's current human population?
2. What happens when overpopulation occurs? Do we know the earth's carrying capacity?
3. Where are the earth's three main high-density population regions?
4. Outline the four basic shapes of population pyramids. What do they indicate?
5. What is the difference between culture and ethnicity?
6. What is ethnic cleansing? Where has ethnic cleansing occurred in the world during your lifetime?
7. Approximately how many languages are there in the world? Which continent has the most?
8. What are the five most widely spoken languages in the world? Where would each be mainly spoken?
9. What are the four major world religions by the percentage of followers?
10. What is the difference between an ethnic, universal, or a traditional religion? Give an example of each.

Real-World Geography Exercise

1. *Create* a population pyramid for your state, province, or country using the population data available at census.gov.
2. *Compare* population pyramids for countries from each world region found at the census.gov International Data Base.
3. Using Google Translator, learn five common phrases in a language you do not speak.

Mapping Exercise

Mapping Our World ESRI-ARGIS Online

World Population: Students will explore the patterns of the world population in terms of total population, arithmetic density, total fertility rate, natural increase rate, and infant mortality rate. The activity uses a web-based map.

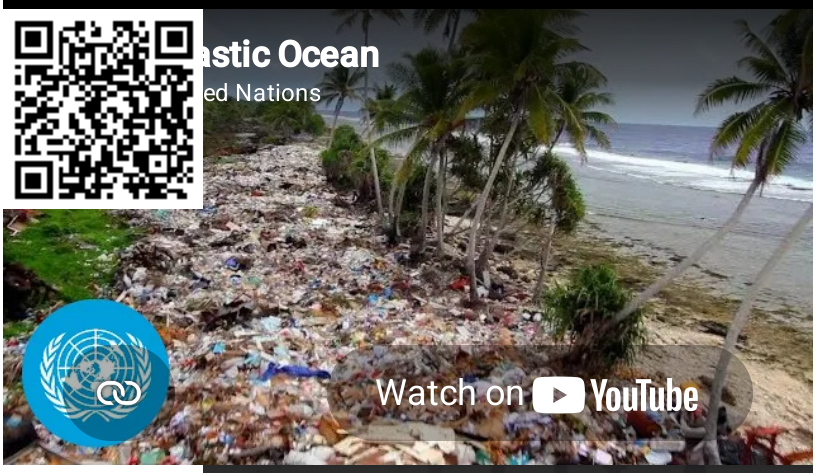
Language and Religion: Students will explore patterns of cultural diffusion through linguistic and religious data. The activity uses a web-based map.

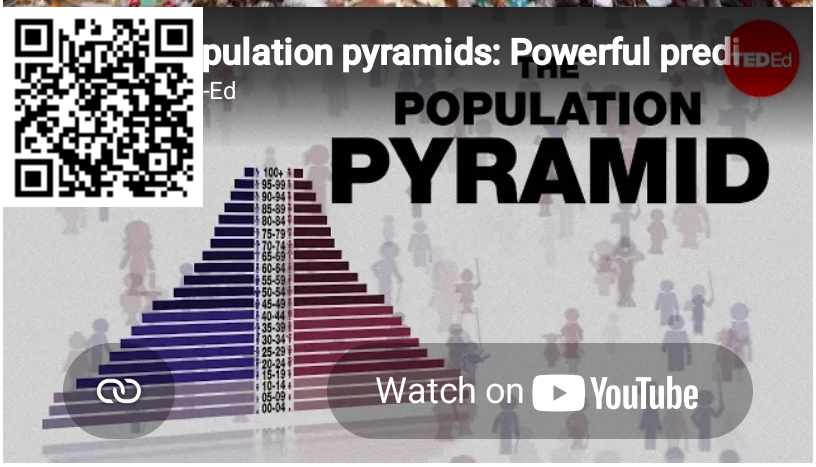

mographic structure of society- ra
nacademymedicine
ace, ethnicity:
society
structure
Khan Academy
Watch on YouTube

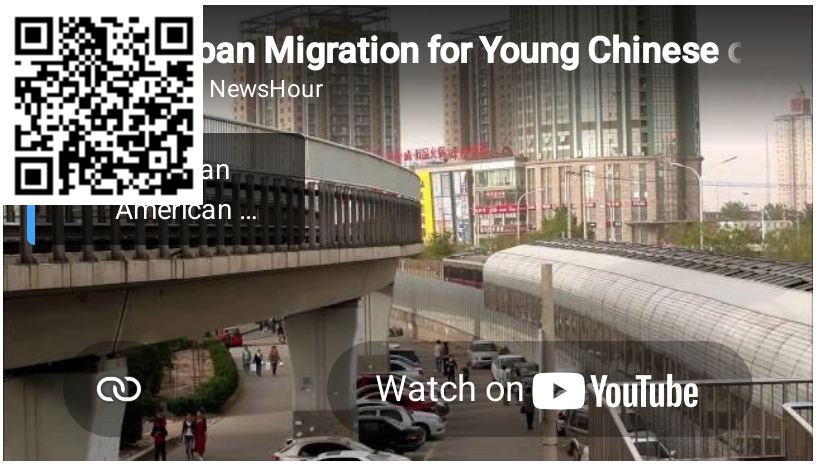

e five major world religions - John
-Ed
TED-Ed
THE
FIVE MAJOR
WORLD RELIGIONS
Watch on YouTube


llo in 50 languages
rnational Students House
Madagascar
Malagasy
Manahoana
Tompoko
Watch on YouTube


man Population Through Time #d
erican Museum of Natural History
Watch on YouTube


astic Ocean
ed Nations
Watch on YouTube


pulation pyramids: Powerful predi
-Ed
THE
POPULATION
PYRAMID
Watch on YouTube



Helpful Websites for the Study of Geography

Canadian Encyclopedia is an encyclopedia funded by the Canadian government covering all branches of knowledge. Their scholarly collection includes interactive materials.

CIA World Factbook provides information on the people, history, government, economy, energy, geography, communications, transportation, military, and transnational issues for the world's entities.

Congress.gov is a US government website where you can find federal legislation, past and present, as well as information about the US legal system.

Drug Enforcement Administration (DEA) is a government agency website that provides current news, resources, topics of interest, information about drugs, careers in the DEA, and a tip hotline.

Library of Congress is the largest library in the world and provides manuscripts, files, information, pictures, and videos.

NASA Earth Observatory (NEO) is a US government agency website that allows users to search for and retrieve satellite images of Earth.

National Archives is a US government website that provides historical documents, photos, records, publications, and educator resources.

National Oceanic and Atmospheric Association (NOAA) is a US government agency website that provides weather-related information and ocean research.

National Map is a website by the United States Geological Survey and other federal, state, and local agencies that delivers topographic information for the United States.

NationMaster is a massive central data source and a handy way to graphically compare nations.

Real-Time World Air Quality Index is a website that measures most locations in the world for air pollution in real time.

StateMaster is a unique statistical database, which allows you to research and compare a multitude of different data on US states.

United Nations (UN) is an international organization founded in 1945 and made up of 193 member states. The UN maintains international peace and security, protects human rights, delivers humanitarian aid, promotes sustainable development, and upholds international law.

United States Census Bureau is a US government agency that provides a population clock, data, surveys, statistics, a library with information and infographics, news about the economy, and much more.

United States Geological Survey (USGS) is a US government agency website that provides scientific information about the natural hazards that threaten lives, the natural resources we rely on, the health of our ecosystems and environment, and the impacts of climate and land-use change.

Whitehouse.gov is a US government website that provides the latest presidential news, information about the budget, policy, defense, and many more topics.

World Health Organization (WHO) is under the United Nations and provides leadership on matters critical to health, shapes the research agenda on health, and monitors the health situation and assessing health trends around the world. Their website provides information on the state of health around the world, outbreaks, current health news, and more.

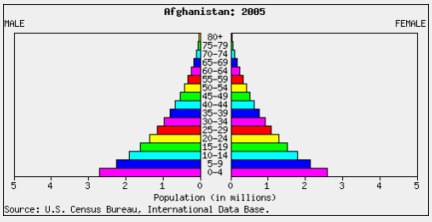
LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

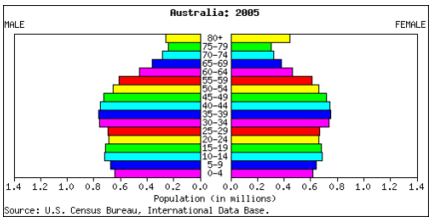
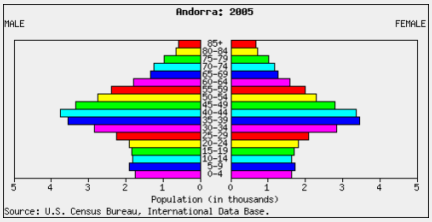
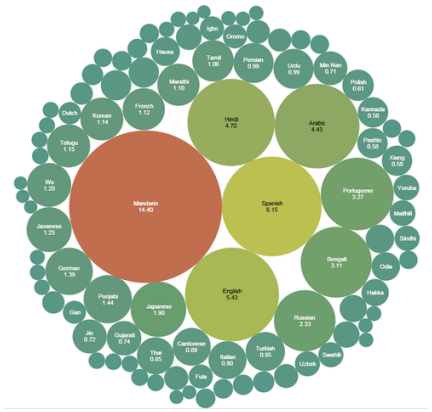
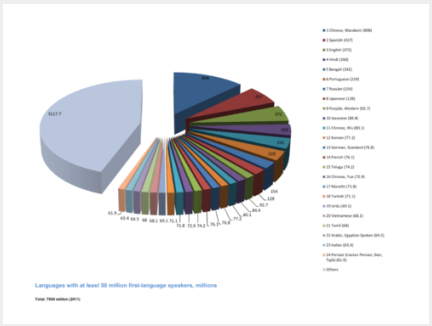
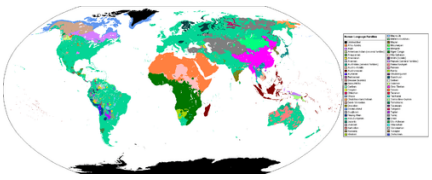
World Trade Organization (WTO) is an intergovernmental organization that regulates international trade. The website provides

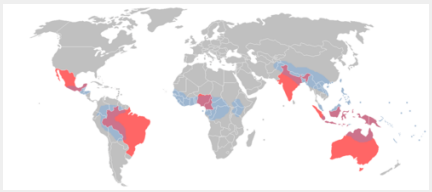
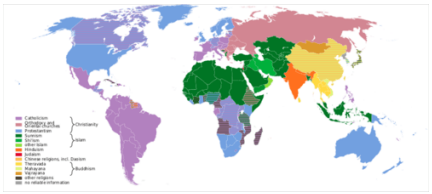
https://k12.libretexts.org/@go/page/1945

information on the history of the multilateral trading system, featured videos, news and events, trade topics, and more.

#	Answer Key	Region	Topic
11	1B 2C 3C 4D 5B 6D 7B 8A	Poland	Reading A Map
12	1C 2B 3D 4A 5C 6D 7C	Europe	Interpreting Map Data
13	1D 2B 3B 4B 5B 6A 7D	World	Reading Line Graphs
14	1B 2D 3D 4C 5A 6D 7A 8D 9B 10C	World	Reading Tables
15	1A 2A 3C 4A 5B 6A 7B 8A 9C 10D	France	Finding Routes and Distances

Image	Reference	Attributions
	**[Figure 1]**	**Credit:** By User:SuzanneKn [Public domain], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File%3ADtm_pyramids.png **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 2]**	**Credit:** By Sanko (Own work) [CC BY-SA 3.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0)], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File%3AJalanJenderalSudirmanJakarta.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 3]**	**Credit:** U.S. Census Bureau [Public domain], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Afghanistan_population_pyramid_2005.png **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

	**[Figure 4]**	**Credit:** U.S. Census Bureau [Public domain], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Australia_population_pyramid_2005.png **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 5]**	**Credit:** U.S. Census Bureau [Public domain], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Andorra_population_pyramid_2005.png **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 6]**	**Credit:** Mikael Parkvall, "Världens 100 största språk 2007" (The World's 100 Largest Languages in 2007), in Nationalencyklopedin. Asterisks mark the 2010 estimates for the top dozen languages. **Source:** en.Wikipedia.org/wiki/List_of_languages_by_number_of_native_speakers **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 7]**	**Credit:** By Nikolay Omonov (Own work) [CC BY-SA 4.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0)], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** en.Wikipedia.org/wiki/List_of_languages_by_number_of_native_speakers#/media/File:Languages_with_at_least_50_million_first-language_speakers.png **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 8]**	**Credit:** By PiMaster3 (Own work) [CC BY-SA 3.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0)], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File%3APrimary_Human_Language_Families_Map.png **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

	**[Figure 9]**	**Credit:** By Davius (Own work) [Public domain], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File%3ALinguistic_diversity.png **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 10]**	**Credit:** By World religions map ru.svg: Tetromino et al. derivative work: — Obsuser [CC BY 3.0 (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/3.0) or GFDL (http://www.gnu.org/copyleft/fdl.html)], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File%3AWorld_religions_map_en.svg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

This page titled 2.1: Population and Culture (5 Days) is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by CK12 via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

2.2: Globalization and Development (5 Days)

Chapter Challenges

- Explain how the concepts of opportunity and advantage create a stronger rural-to-urban shift and fuel migration in various regions of the world.
- Describe the dynamics of the core-periphery spatial relationship and determine whether a country is a part of the core or periphery by its respective attributes.
- Explain how countries gain national income and which activities are renewable or have value-added profits. Understand the vital roles that labor and resources play in the economic situation for each country.
- Describe the patterns illustrated in the index of economic development—especially in terms of how it illustrates a country's development status in regard to family size and economic indicators.
- Define the concepts of rural-to-urban shift, core-periphery spatial relationships, opportunity and advantage, and "haves" and "have-nots".

Learning Objectives

TEKS Regional Unit 02 Human Geographic Systems Chapter 2.2

WG.9B Describe different types of regions, including formal, functional, and perceptual regions

WG.10A Describe the forces that determine the distribution of goods and services in free enterprise, socialist, and communist economic systems.

WG.10B Classify where specific countries fall along the economic spectrum between free enterprise and communism.

WG.10C Compare the ways people satisfy their basic needs through the production of goods and services such as subsistence agriculture versus commercial agriculture or cottage industries versus commercial industries.

WG.10B Compare global trade patterns over time and examine the implications of globalization, including outsourcing and free trade zones.

WG. 10B Compare global trade patterns over time and examine the implications of globalization, including outsourcing and free trade zones.

WG.11A Understand the connections between levels of development and economic activities (primary, secondary, tertiary, and quaternary).

WG.11B Identify the factors affecting the location of different types of economic activities, including subsistence and commercial agriculture, manufacturing, and service industries.

WG.16B Describe elements of culture, including language, religion, beliefs and customs, institutions and technologies.

WG.22A Design and draw appropriate graphics such as maps, diagrams, tables, and graphs to communicate geographic features, distributions, and relationships, features, distributions, and relationships

TEKS and ELPS for Regional World Geography Unit 02--Human Geographic Systems from TEKS Resource System

Globalization and Development

Globalization

US President George H. W. Bush gave a speech during his presidency (1988–92) indicating the real possibility of a New World Order. This speech, given during the Persian Gulf War when Iraq occupied Kuwait, was surprising to many people. What did the president mean by New World Order? This term has been used before to refer to times in history when great changes were taking place and a collective effort was needed to address problems. The goal in geography is to understand globalization and to make sense of what is happening. The better we understand the world and human dynamics, the better prepared we will be for our future. Geography provides a means to examine these changes.

Globalization is a process with a long history. People have been exploring, migrating, and trading with each other throughout human history. These activities have created networks connecting the different parts of the planet and producing dependent economic relationships. In modern times, globalization is shown when corporations, such as Walmart, McDonald's, or Ford, trade across international borders and use labor and resources from different countries to sell products and services in the global marketplace.

European colonialism was the first wave of globalization that shaped the world in many ways. Propelled by the Industrial Revolution, this conquest spread technology, food products, and ideas across the globe. The European colonial empires of Europe were mainly Britain, Spain, France, Portugal, and the Netherlands. Once the United States became independent of these European colonial powers, it also began to extend its power and influence around the world.

In many countries, people have protested the building of global corporations. Such protests cause concern about globalization and the growing expansion of a dominant global economy into local communities. These iconic corporations represent interests that are concerned with high profits. Because of this, what matters to these businesses is how these countries and communities function as markets, sources of labor, or raw materials. The main force that encourages globalization is economic activity based on technological advancements. As the world becomes more global, cultural and societal changes occur as a result.

Political geography examines geography's influence on political systems and globalization. There is a link between the history of colonialism and the development of capitalism. Eric Wolf, in his book *Europe and the People without History*, details the expansion of European powers throughout the world to control human and natural resources, expand a country's world power, and promote Christianity. In the past, the British Empire exported its parliamentary system throughout the world. The parliamentary system continues to be used around the world in former British colonies and the British Commonwealth. Additionally, colonialism helped spread the English language in such places as India and the United States.

The Space Race and the Information Age in the late 20th century caused a second wave of globalization. The space race was a competition between the United States and the Soviet Union to develop space-related technologies. The end of the Cold War, which happened with the collapse of the Soviet Union in 1991, occurred at the same time as advancements in computer technology. These two forces have moved globalization forward at an unprecedented rate of speed. Moreover, these forces have had huge consequences on the environment.

European colonialism and multinational corporations have similarities and differences. Corporations do not own a country or run a government. They are not concerned with who is in power as long as they can operate and make a profit. This neocolonialism (new colonialism or corporate colonialism), like European colonialism, continues to use natural resources, labor, and markets, for profit. Critics claim that neocolonialism is nothing more than a legal method of pillaging and plundering. Supporters claim it is the most efficient use of labor and resources to supply the world with low-priced products.

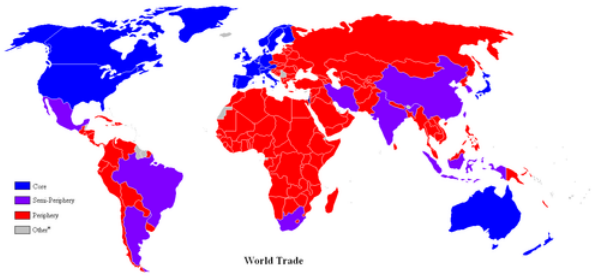
Opportunity and Advantage

People with access to opportunities and advantages typically have a higher standard of living than people who do not. This can be true for individuals, global corporations, or countries. Opportunities and advantages are determined by various factors such as natural or human resources, arable land for farming, forests for timber, fresh water for fishing, or a location that provides access to world markets. Examples of human resources are a large labor pool or a high percentage of educated professionals. Individuals seek to gain opportunities or advantages by increasing their education, learning new skills that can translate into higher earning power, or migrating to a place with good jobs.

The rural-to-urban shift occurs when people move from rural areas to cities. Individuals moving to a city in search of a better life (i.e., employment) is an example of a migration pattern based on people seeking greater opportunities or advantages. When people migrate from a poorer country to a post-industrial country, they are seeking opportunities or advantages in life. The "have" countries are those with opportunities and advantages. The "have-not" countries are those with fewer opportunities and advantages for their people or for their country's future. Migration patterns around the world usually shift people from places without resources to places with resources. These migration patterns, which are evident in rural-to-urban shift and periphery-to-core migration, allow individuals to seek greater opportunities or advantages for the future.

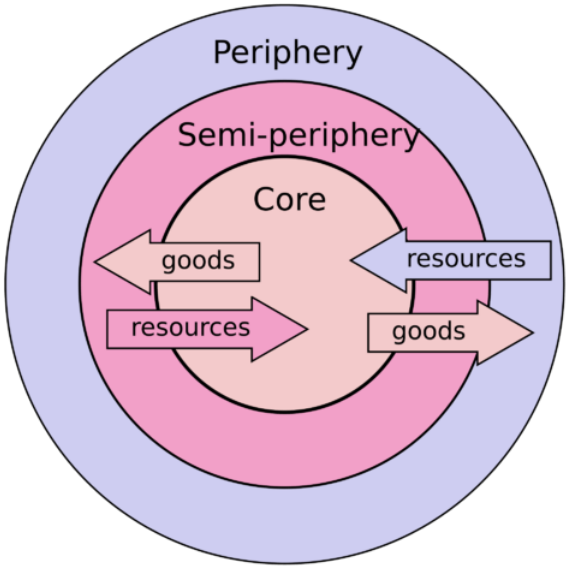
Core-Periphery Spatial Relationship

Economic conditions vary across the globe. There are wealthy countries and there are poor countries. Countries that are wealthy versus countries that are poor have generally been determined by the availability of economic opportunities and advantages. The three core areas of wealthy industrialized countries are located in North America, Western Europe, and eastern Asia. The main market centers of these regions are New York City, London, and Tokyo. These three core areas and their rich neighbors make up the centers of economic activity that drive the global economy. Other wealthy countries are found in regions with large amounts of natural resources, such as the Middle East, or strategic locations, such as Singapore. The world's poorer countries make up the peripheral countries. A few countries share qualities of both and may be called semi-peripheries.



This World Trade map illustrates the countries that are in the core, the semi-periphery, and the periphery.

The periphery countries and the core countries each have unique characteristics. Peripheral locations are providers of raw materials and agricultural products. In the periphery, more people earn their living in occupations related to securing resources like farming, mining, or harvesting forest products. Workers in these jobs tend to make less money and have less chance for promotions. In the periphery, there is a condition known as brain drain, which describes a loss of educated or professional individuals. Young people leave the peripheral areas for the cities to earn an education or to find better employment. Very few of these individuals return.



The Core-periphery Model illustrates how power (economic, political, cultural) is distributed.

Brain drain also happens on an international level. Students from periphery countries might go to college in core countries, such as the United States or countries in Europe. Many international college graduates do not return to their poorer countries of origin. Instead, they choose to stay in the core country because of employment opportunities. This is especially true in the medical field. There is little political power in the periphery because centers of political power are usually located in the core areas or at least

dominated by the core cities. The core areas pull in people, skills, and wealth from the periphery. Lack of opportunities in the periphery pushes people to relocate to the core.

Power, wealth, and opportunity historically have been centered in the core areas of the world. These locations are urbanized and industrialized and hold immense economic and political power. Moreover, cultural activity thrives in these core areas. Influential people, who live in the core, are the ones who hold political power. Core countries, in general, have the best standards of living. According to the World Economic Forum, the countries with the highest quality of life are New Zealand, Iceland, United Kingdom, Netherlands, Norway, Sweden, Switzerland, Australia, Denmark, Canada, and Finland. The core depends on the periphery for raw materials, food, and cheap labor. On the other hand, the periphery depends on the core of manufactured goods, services, and governmental support.

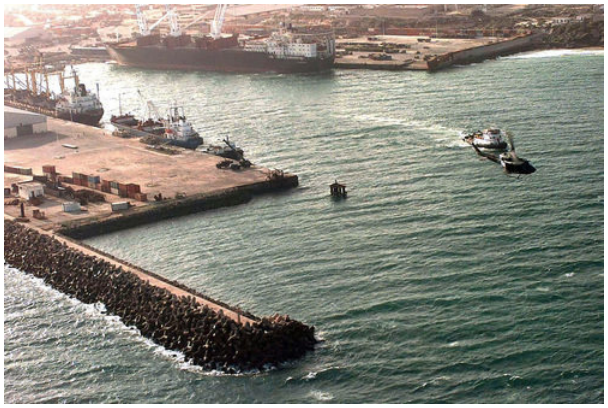
The core-periphery spatial relationship is multifaceted. On a local level, the city of Morehead in eastern Kentucky is an example. Morehead has a population of about 7,000 people and is the only town in the region with a university, regional hospital, retail services, and serves as a core hub for the surrounding periphery. The hinterland of Morehead has an economy based on agriculture, coal mining, and timber, which is typical of a peripheral region. Morehead has the political, economic, and educational power that serves the people of its local area.

Entire regions of the United States are peripheral areas. The agricultural Midwest, rural Appalachia, and the mountain ranges and basins of the western United States are examples of peripheral areas. The large metropolitan areas of the east and west coasts and the Industrial Belt act as the core areas. Los Angeles and New York City anchor each coast, and cities such as Chicago, St. Louis, Denver, and Indianapolis represent the heartland. All the other large cities in the United States act as core areas for their surrounding peripheral hinterlands. Southern cities such as Atlanta, Memphis, Dallas, or Phoenix act as core centers of commerce for the South in a region known as the Sun Belt.



This map illustrates the major core cities in the United States.

On a global scale, we can understand why North America, Western Europe, and eastern Asia represent the three main economic core areas of the world. They all possess the most advanced technology and the greatest economic resources. Core regions control the corporate markets that energize and fuel global activity. Peripheral regions include portions of Africa, Asia, Latin America, and all the other places that primarily make their living from local resources and support the economic core. These peripheral regions may include key port cities.



Somalia is a periphery country. The city of Mogadishu in Somalia has an estimated population between 1.5 to 3 million people. It is a key port city.

A semi-periphery would be a transitional area between the core and the periphery, which could include countries such as Russia, India, or Brazil that are not exactly in the core and not really in the periphery but might have qualities of both. World migration patterns follow the core-periphery spatial relationship in that people and wealth usually shift from the peripheral rural regions to the urban core regions. The “have” countries of the world are in the core regions, while the “have-not” countries are most likely in the peripheral regions.



Mexico is considered a semi-periphery country because it is industrializing and is positioned between a core and a periphery country.

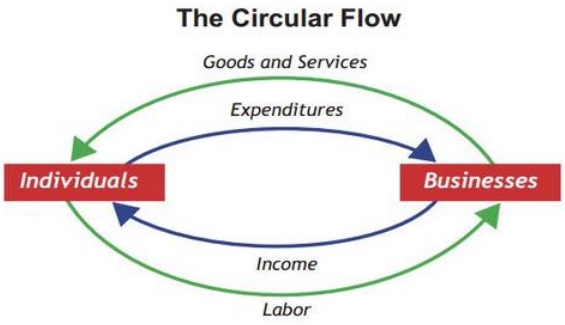
National Income Methods

It is easier to understand why people move from rural to urban or from periphery to core when one begins to understand the global economy. Economic conditions are connected to how countries gain national income, opportunities, and advantages. One way of gaining wealth is simply by taking the wealth that belongs to another. This method has been common practice throughout human history when a group of armed individuals attacks another group and takes their possessions or resources. Pillaging and plundering have been a standard way of gaining wealth throughout human history. The global economic community frowns on the taking of resources by force or by war. Nonetheless, it is still happening in places around the world, such as off the coast of Somalia with piracy.



A visit, board, search and seizure team from the guided-missile destroyer USS Truxtun approaches a dhow in the Gulf of Aden.

The main methods countries use to gain national income are based on sustainable national income models and value-added principles. The traditional three areas of agriculture, extraction/mining, and manufacturing are a result of primary and secondary economic activities. Natural resources, agriculture, and manufacturing are targeted as the means to gain national income. Postindustrial activities in the service sector would include tertiary, quaternary, and quinary economic activities, which make up a large part of a nation's economy but might not hold the same value-added quotient for national income as the traditional three areas.



In this circular flow National Income Model, the Bureau of Economic Analysis with the US Department of Commerce illustrates a sustainable way that a country earns money.

Agriculture is the method of growing crops or trees or raising livestock that provides food and some raw materials. This is a renewable method of gaining wealth, as long as conditions are favorable. Profits for agricultural products might be low because of global competition. Countries with minerals, oil, or other natural resources can earn income from the extraction and sale of those items. Saudi Arabia and other countries with abundant petroleum reserves can gain wealth by selling that resource to other countries. Since these resources are not renewable, once the minerals or oil runs out, the country must turn to other activities to gain national income.

Many places around the world are named for what they produce. The Gold Coast of western Africa received its label because of the abundance of gold in the region. The term breadbasket often refers to a region with abundant agricultural surpluses. The Champagne region of France is well known by the beverage made from the grapes grown there. The Banana republics earned their name because the large fruit plantations were the main income source for the large corporations that operated them. Places such as Copper Canyon and Silver City are examples of towns, cities, or regions named after the natural resources found there. The United States had its Manufacturing Belt, referring to the region from Boston to St. Louis, which was the core industrial region that generated wealth through heavy manufacturing for the greater part of 19th and 20th centuries.



This photo shows a few vineyards in the Champagne wine region of France.

Manufacturing has offered the industrialized world the opportunity for the greatest value-added profits. From the beginning of the Industrial Revolution, profits were made by turning raw materials into products that could be sold in high quantities. The core areas of the world have all made enormous wealth from manufacturing profits. Today, information technology and high-tech manufactured products generate substantial wealth. The Microsoft Corporation manufactures information by placing data in the form of computer programs on inexpensive disks or in digital files that are then sold at a profit to a world computer market. The geographic region of California south of San Francisco was labeled Silicon Valley after this type of information-generating activity.

For a country to gain national wealth, income must be brought in from outside the country or generated from within. Other than the big-three methods of agriculture, extraction/mining, and manufacturing, countries can create wealth through tourism and services. The service sector contributes to a large percentage of employment opportunities in industrialized countries and generates income to national economies.

However, the service sector does not have the high value-added profits traditionally provided by the manufacturing sector. In the gaming industry, for example, casinos do not have a large wealth-generating potential for the country unless they can either attract gamblers from other countries or provide for other wealth-generating services. Gambling shifts wealth from one person to another and provides little national income. A benefit of the gambling industry is that it creates service jobs.

National Debt

Countries with few opportunities to gain wealth to support their governments often borrow money to provide services for their people. The national debt is a major problem for national governments. National income can be consolidated into the hands of a minority of the population at the top of the socioeconomic strata. These social elites have the ability to dominate the politics of their countries or regions.

The elites may hold most of a country's wealth, while at the same time their government might not always have enough revenue to pay for public services. To pay for public services, the government might need to borrow money, which then increases that country's national debt. The government could have a high national debt even when the country is home to a large number of wealthy citizens or a growing economy.

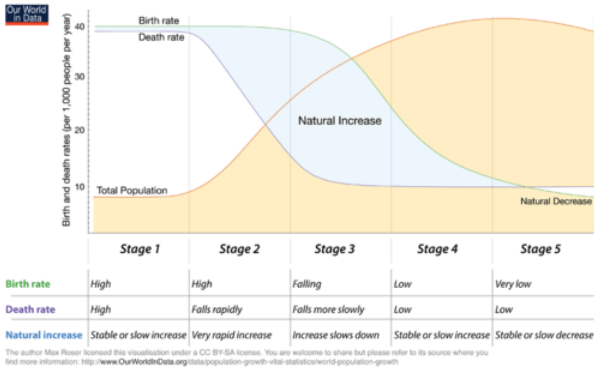
Taxes are a standard method for governments to collect revenue. If economic conditions decline, the amount of taxes collected can also decline, which could leave the government in a shortfall. Again, the government might borrow money to continue operating and to provide the same level of services. Political corruption and the mismanagement of funds can also cause a country's government to lack revenue to pay for the services it needs to provide its citizens.

The national debt, defined as the total amount of money a government owes, is a growing concern across the globe. Many governments have problems paying their national debt or even the interest on their national debt. Governments whose debt has surpassed their ability to pay have often inflated their currency to increase the amount of money in circulation, a practice that can lead to hyperinflation and eventually the collapse of the government's currency, which could have serious negative effects on the country's economy. In contrast to the national debt, the term budget deficit refers to the annual cycle of accounting of a government's excess spending over the amount of revenue it takes in during a given fiscal year.

Development and Demographics

The Industrial Revolution, which prompted the shift in population from rural to urban, also encouraged market economies, which have evolved into modern consumer societies. Various theories and models have been developed over the years to help explain these changes. For example, in 1929, the American demographer Warren Thompson developed the Demographic Transition Model (DTM) to explain population growth based on an interpretation of demographic history. A revised version of Thomson's model outlines five stages of demographic transition, from traditional rural societies to modern urban societies:

- Stage 1: High birth and death rates; rural pre-industrial society
- Stage 2: Declining death rate; developing country
- Stage 3: Declining birth rate; high urbanization rate
- Stage 4: Low birth and death rates; stabilized population
- Stage 5: Declining population; urban post-industrial society



This diagram of the Five Stages of the Demographic Transition Model traces the development from rural, pre-industrial society to urban, post-industrial society.

In the 1960s, economist Walt Rostow outlined a pattern of economic development that has become one model for growth in a global economy. Rostow's model outlined the five stages of growth in the economic modernization of a country. In this model, a society begins at stage 1 called "traditional society" and moves up the ladder until becoming a stage 5 "age of high mass consumption" society.

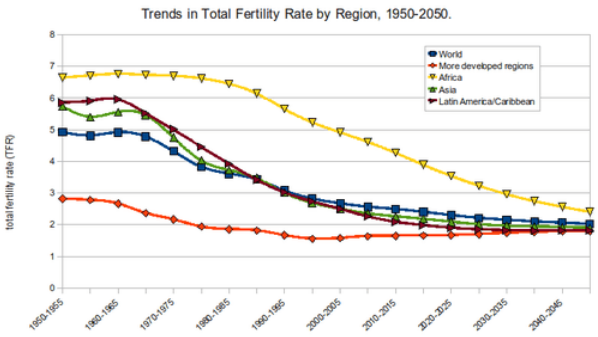
- Stage 1: Traditional society
- Stage 2: Preconditions for take-off
- Stage 3: Take-off
- Stage 4: Drive to maturity
- Stage 5: Age of high mass consumption

The Human Development Index (HDI) was developed in 1990 and used by the United Nations Development Programme to measure a standard of human development. Human development refers to the widening opportunities available to individuals for education, health care, income, and employment. The HDI incorporates variables such as standards of living, literacy rate, and life expectancy to indicate a measure of well-being or the quality of life for a specific country. The HDI is an indicator of a country's economic and technological development.

The basic principles of Rostow's DTM and the HDI can be illustrated in a general index for understanding development. Two variables of the DTM's correlating five stages are family size and economic income, which illustrates the population pattern or development potential. All countries of the world are at one of the five stages. The general index addresses how population growth rates relate to rural-to-urban shift, which has traditionally been a result of industrialization. By tracking both family size and economic conditions, a pattern of population growth and economic development can be illustrated and more clearly understood.

The number of children born to a woman in her lifetime is the fertility rate. Fertility rate may (or may not) vary from family size, which is an indication of the number of living children raised by a parent or parents in the same household. A high infant mortality rate may account for a fertility rate that is greater than family size. To simplify the understanding, family size is used in this

textbook to illustrate economic dynamics. Though the statistical data may vary slightly between the two terms, this should not present any problem in understanding basic patterns of development.



This graphic illustrates the total fertility rate worldwide from 1950 until 2050.

As a general trend, when a country experiences increasing levels of industrial activity and greater urban growth, the outcome is usually a higher standard of living for its people. Additionally, a rural-to-urban shift takes place, driven by the pull of opportunities and advantages in the industrializing and urbanizing areas. Though there are exceptions, a decrease in family size usually coincides with a higher level of urbanization. There are cases in which only core regions within a country transition through the five development stages without the peripheral regions experiencing the coinciding levels of economic benefit. The five stages of the index of economic development assist in illustrating these general patterns.

Stage 1 indicates traditional rural societies, which are usually based on agriculture and not as dependent on the outside world. Stage 1 families are larger, their income levels are low, and their advantages and economic development opportunities are low. Health care, education, and social services are in short supply or nonexistent. High birth and death rates maintain a high fertility rate/family size and a low population-growth status. Populations in stage 1 development have a stationary population pyramid. Although there may be regions of the world that exhibit stage 1 development patterns, few if any entire countries fall into this category as of the year 2000.

Stage 2 countries experience high population growth rates because family size remains high but modern medicine or improved nutrition allows people to live longer, which lowers the death rate. The population is exploding in countries in stage 2. During this stage, young people from rural areas often migrate to the cities looking for employment. Rural stage 2 regions are starting to urbanize and integrate their economic activities with the outside world. Regions in stage 2 often have a surplus of cheap labor. Income levels remain low and family size continues to be large. Countries in this stage often have a rapidly expanding population pyramid.

Societies that have made business connections that provide for the manufacturing of products, industrial activities, or an increased service sector might progress to stage 3, the rural-to-urban shift stage. These regions are experiencing a high rate of rural-to-urban shift in their populations. These regions are often targeted by multinational corporations for their labor supply As people migrate from rural areas to the cities looking for employment, urban populations grow and core or central cities experience high rates of self-constructed housing (slums). Income levels start to increase and family size starts to drop significantly. Stage 3 countries have an expanding population pyramid.

Societies that have urbanized and industrialized and are members of the global marketplace might enter stage 4. Members of an urban workforce assist in building a networked economy. Family size is lower as urban women enter the workforce and have fewer children. Health care, education, and social services become more available, and income levels continue to rise. In stage 4, there is typically a high level of growth in the industrial and service sectors with a great need for infrastructure in the form of transportation, housing, and human services. Countries in stage 4 development have populations that resemble a stationary population pyramid.

As incomes increase and family size decreases, a consumer society emerges, creating stage 5, where high mass consumption can drive the economy. Many countries in stage 5 can eventually experience a negative population growth rate in which the fertility rate (family size) is below replacement levels (statistically around 2.1 children). With a low number of young people entering the

workforce, stage 5 regions become an attractive magnet for people looking for opportunities and advantages in the job market. Illegal immigration might become an issue. Europe and the United States are now experiencing this condition. Japan has the same low family size, but because of their island location and strict laws, they have a different set of illegal immigration issues compared with Europe or the United States. Populations in stage 5 development have a contracting population pyramid.

The four basic shapes of population pyramids parallel the various stages of a country's economic development. Many of the concepts used in this textbook are interrelated. The various methods, models, or theories used in geography are often used by other disciplines as well. In this case, the stages of economic development and the population pyramids illustrate the contrast between rural and urban societies and the changes in family size during the industrialization process.

Geography of Opportunity

Highly industrialized countries in western Europe, eastern Asia, or North America can offer more economic opportunities compared with developing countries. The push-pull factors that push people out of poorer countries and pull them to an industrialized country are strong. Portions of the population of countries in the earlier stages of the index of economic development often migrate to countries in the latter stages of the index looking for work and other opportunities.

This transition has created differences between people who have opportunities and advantages and those who do not. People who do not have opportunities and advantages often want to move to places that do have them so they can work to attain greater economic security for themselves and their families. The haves and have-nots are general categories of economic status and not necessarily cultural values.

Countries in stage 4 or 5 of the index of economic development are often attractive places for those seeking greater economic opportunities or advantages. Populations in these stages generally have fewer children, so the demand for entry-level workers is often higher. Immigrants with fewer skills take entry-level jobs to enter the workforce. An established country with a long history and culture does not always welcome the arrival of new immigrants.

An immigrant labor pool often includes individuals who hold different cultural traditions or customs than those of the mainstream society. Social tensions arise if different ethnic groups are competing for the same cultural spaces and opportunities such as are seen in Europe and the United States. The immigration issue is one that will continue to be debated for as long as we have people leaving their countries for better opportunities and advantages.

Opportunities in Geography

The following information on careers in geography is from the website of the Association of American Geographers (AAG), which is a resource for those interested in pursuing employment in the field of geography. Many occupations require knowledge of and skills in geography. Geographers work in many different areas, such as environmental management, education, disaster response, city and county planning, community development, and more. Geography is an interdisciplinary field that offers diverse career opportunities. Many geographers pursue rewarding careers in business, local, state, or federal government agencies, nonprofit organizations, and schools. Geographers with graduate degrees may become educators in higher education such as community colleges and universities.

Using information from the US Department of Labor, the AAG has compiled data on a broad list of occupations related to geography. Using this online career database, you can explore the diverse career opportunities available to geographers, as well as retrieve data on salaries, projected growth, demand for key skills, and much more to guide your career planning. Go to AAG Guide to Jobs and Careers in Geography to explore what kinds of jobs are available in the field of geology.

Key Takeaways

- The search for cheap labor and resources drives the need for profits by multinational corporations that fuel the global economy. This activity is creating a second major wave of globalization, often referred to as neocolonialism or corporate colonialism.
- The concepts of opportunity and advantage provide a means to understand the attractiveness or unattractiveness of a place to immigrants or economic activities.
- Opportunities and advantages drive rural-to-urban shift, migration, and movement of corporate activity.
- Core areas are usually urban with high levels of industrial and economic development.

- Peripheral areas are typically suppliers of food and raw materials used in the core.
- Political and economic power is held in the core, while the periphery suffers from lower incomes and brain drain.
- National income methods are based on standard economic practices and value-added principles.
- Agricultural activities are renewable, but extractive activities are not.
- Manufacturing has historically provided the highest value-added profits and has been the main means of the core economic regions of the world to gain income.

Vocabulary Terms

Chapter 2.2 Globalization and Development

core country	More economically developed countries--ex. Germany, Japan, Canada
developed country	A country which has progressed adequately with regard to economic, mortality and demographic indicators
developing country	A country which has not progressed adequately with regard to economic, mortality and demographic indicators
fertility rate	The number of children a woman of childbearing years will have in her lifetime
gross domestic product	The value of only goods and services produced in a country within a given time
gross national income	A measure that reflects the economic state of a country. GNI is the total income generated by a country in 12 months after expenses owing to their countries have been paid
human development index	A measure of human development which combines indicators of life expectancy, educational levels, and income
infant mortality rate	The number of deaths per 1000 between ages 0-1
mortality rate	The number of deaths per 1000 people in the population
peripheral country	A country that is considered less economically developed. Ex. many countries found in Sub-Saharan Africa
population pyramid	A graphic device that shows sex and age distribution of a population
rate of natural increase	Determines if a country's population is increasing or decreasing. Subtract mortality rate from birth rate
semi-peripheral country	These countries fall between the core and periphery, most of them newly industrialized--ex. Mexico, India, Russia, Brazil
sustainability	Meeting the needs of the present without compromising the ability of future generations to meet their own needs

Applying Knowledge

Interactive Notebook Activities

1. Explain how the concepts of opportunity and advantage create a stronger rural-to-urban shift and fuel migration in various regions of the world.
2. Describe the dynamics of the core-periphery spatial relationship and determine whether a country is a part of the core or periphery by its respective attributes.
3. Explain how countries gain national income and which activities are renewable or have value-added profits.

4. Illustrate in a chart or diagram the relationship between labor and resources in the economic situation for each country.
5. Describe the patterns illustrated in the index of economic development—especially in terms of how it illustrates a country's development status about family size and economic indicators.
6. Define the concepts of rural-to-urban shift, core-periphery spatial relationships, opportunity and advantage, and haves and have-nots.

Discussion and Study Questions

1. What prompted the first major wave of rural-to-urban migration in modern history?
2. What human economic activities would you find in a core region? What human economic activities would you encounter in the periphery?
3. What does *opportunity* and *advantage* mean? How do these terms help us understand world geography?
4. What are the three main traditional methods through which a country can gain national income? Of the three, which has traditionally provided the highest value-added profits?
5. What are the three main economic core areas of the world that have dominated the global economy?
6. What are the main elements of business that global corporations seek in terms of a geographic location to make the highest profits?
7. What is the main human migration pattern between the core and the periphery?
8. What does each stage of the index of economic development represent or illustrate?
9. Would minimum wage tend to go up or down for countries moving from stage 4 to stage 5 of the index of economic development?
10. How is it that countries with strong or stable economies run up a high national debt?

Real-World Geography Exercise

1. Using the Internet, *compare* the main opportunities and advantages for the place you live with another place either in the same country or in another country with a similar population pyramid profile.
2. *Research* and *list* the main economic activities for your city or country. Do any of the activities you found compare with what you learned in this textbook?
3. *Research* and *describe* the main migration pattern for people moving into or out of your current location.

Mapping Exercise

Mapping Our World ESRI-ARGIS Online

Understanding Globalization: Students will investigate how connections are made across Earth, focusing on advancements in transportation and technology. The activity uses a web-based map.

Videos for Geography Enrichment

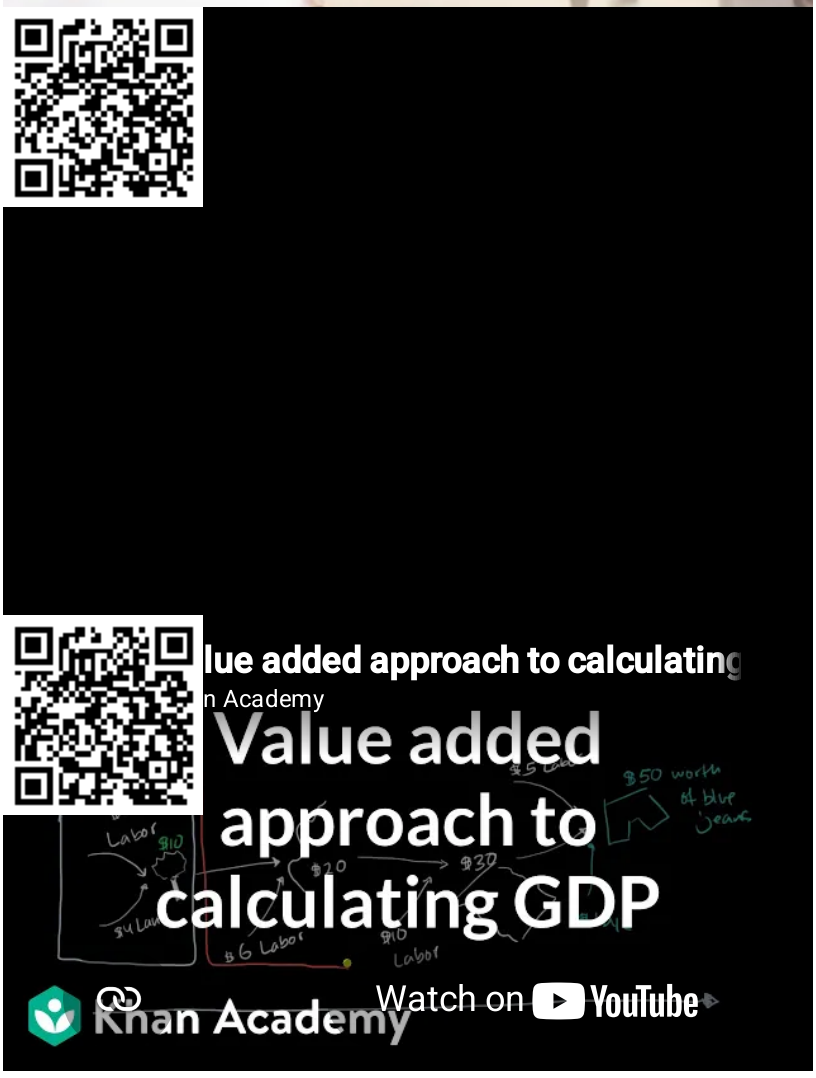


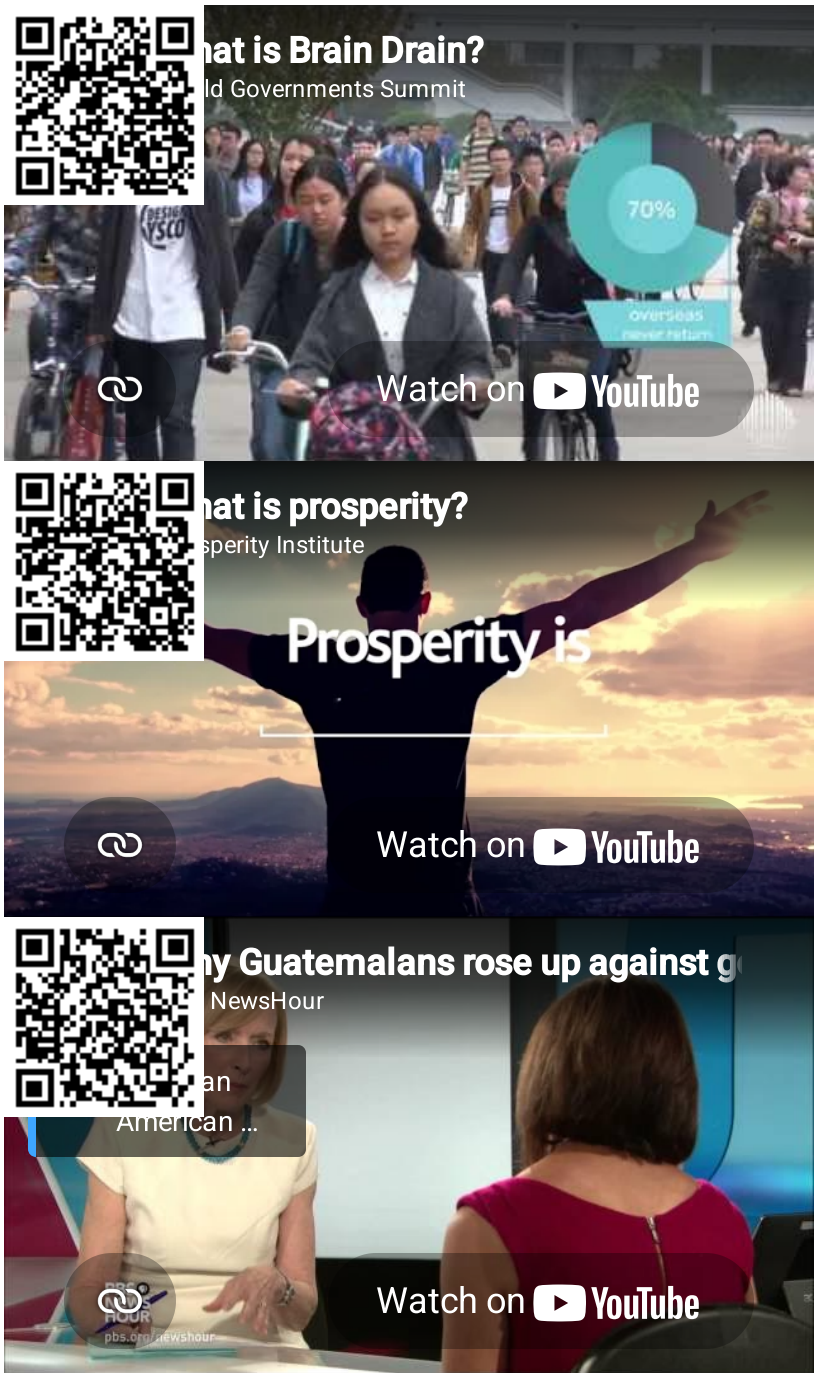

y at Work: GIS Analyst
nectEd
Watch on YouTube


e Federal Debt: All You Need to K
okings Institution
TREASURY
Watch on YouTube




man Development for Everyone –
ed Nations Development Programme (UNDP)
Watch on YouTube


lue added approach to calculating
n Academy
Value added approach to calculating GDP
Watch on YouTube
Khan Academy



Helpful Websites for the Study of Geography

Canadian Encyclopedia is an encyclopedia funded by the Canadian government covering all branches of knowledge. Their scholarly collection includes interactive materials.

CIA World Factbook provides information on the people, history, government, economy, energy, geography, communications, transportation, military, and transnational issues for the world's entities.

Congress.gov is a US government website where you can find federal legislation, past and present, as well as information about the US legal system.

Drug Enforcement Administration (DEA) is a government agency website that provides current news, resources, topics of interest, information about drugs, careers in the DEA, and a tip hotline.

Library of Congress is the largest library in the world and provides manuscripts, files, information, pictures, and videos.

NASA Earth Observatory (NEO) is a US government agency website that allows users to search for and retrieve satellite images of Earth.

National Archives is a US government website that provides historical documents, photos, records, publications, and educator resources.

National Oceanic and Atmospheric Association (NOAA) is a US government agency website that provides weather-related information and ocean research.

National Map is a website by the United States Geological Survey and other federal, state, and local agencies that delivers topographic information for the United States.

NationMaster is a massive central data source and a handy way to graphically compare nations.

Real-Time World Air Quality Index is a website that measures most locations in the world for air pollution in real time.

StateMaster is a unique statistical database, which allows you to research and compare a multitude of different data on US states.

United Nations (UN) is an international organization founded in 1945 and made up of 193 member states. The UN maintains international peace and security, protects human rights, delivers humanitarian aid, promotes sustainable development, and upholds international law.

United States Census Bureau is a US government agency that provides a population clock, data, surveys, statistics, a library with information and infographics, news about the economy, and much more.

United States Geological Survey (USGS) is a US government agency website that provides scientific information about the natural hazards that threaten lives, the natural resources we rely on, the health of our ecosystems and environment, and the impacts of climate and land-use change.

Whitehouse.gov is a US government website that provides the latest presidential news, information about the budget, policy, defense, and many more topics.

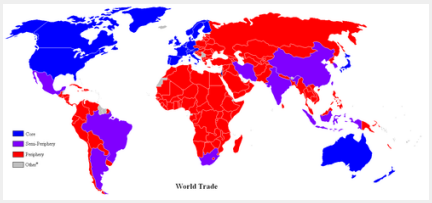
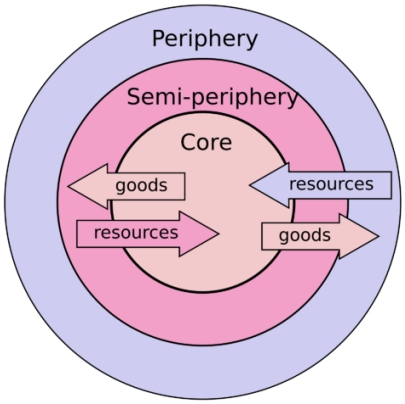
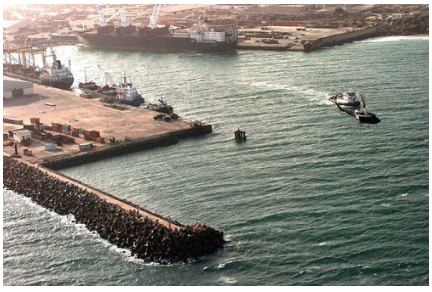
World Health Organization (WHO) is under the United Nations and provides leadership on matters critical to health, shapes the research agenda on health, and monitors the health situation and assessing health trends around the world. Their website provides information on the state of health around the world, outbreaks, current health news, and more.

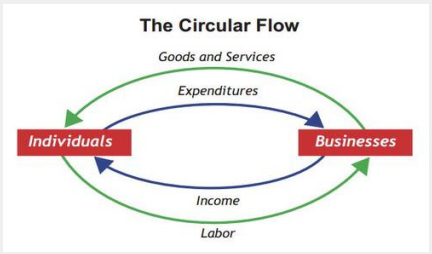
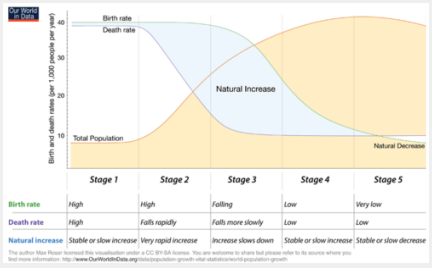
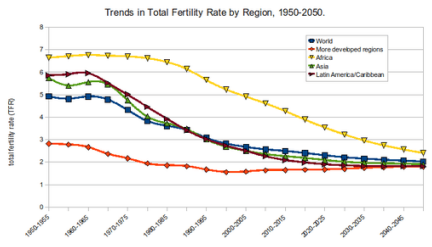
World Trade Organization (WTO) is an intergovernmental organization that regulates international trade. The website provides information on the history of the multilateral trading system, featured videos, news and events, trade topics, and more.

Students will investigate how connections are made across Earth, focusing on advancements in transportation and technology. The

LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

activity uses a web-based map.

Image	Reference	Attributions
	**[Figure 1]**	**Credit:** By Lou Coban (Based on File:Anglosphere_map.png.) [Public domain], via Wikimedia Commons) **Source:** By Lou Coban (Based on File:Anglosphere_map.png.) [Public domain] ; via Wikimedia Commons) **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 2]**	**Credit:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeograp...-to-the-world/ **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/part/chapter-1-introduction-to-the-world/ **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 3]**	**Credit:** Source: https://mapswire.com/countries/united-states/ **Source:** Source: https://mapswire.com/countries/united-states/ **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 4]**	**Credit:** By TSGT PERRY HEIMER [Public domain], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** By TSGT PERRY HEIMER [Public domain] ; via Wikimedia Commons **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 5]**	**Credit:** By Lidia Lopez [CC BY 2.0 (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/2.0)], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** By Lidia Lopez [CC BY 2.0 (creativecommons.org/licenses/by/2.0)] ; via Wikimedia Commons **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

	**[Figure 6]**	**Credit:** Source: U.S. Navy photo by Mass Communication Specialist 2nd Class Tony D. Curtis/Released **Source:** Source: U.S. Navy photo by Mass Communication Specialist 2nd Class Tony D. Curtis/Released **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 7]**	**Credit:** Source: By Bureau of Economic Analysis (BEA), U.S. Department of Commerce, October 2014 [Public domain], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** Source: By Bureau of Economic Analysis (BEA) ; U.S. Department of Commerce ; October 2014 [Public domain] ; via Wikimedia Commons **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 8]**	**Credit:** By Rob & Lisa Meehan (originally posted to Flickr as Champagne Vineyards) [CC BY 2.0 (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/2.0)], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** By Rob &#38 ; Lisa Meehan (originally posted to Flickr as Champagne Vineyards) [CC BY 2.0 (creativecommons.org/licenses/by/2.0)] ; via Wikimedia Commons **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 9]**	**Credit:** By Max Roser [CC BY-SA 4.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0)], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** By Max Roser [CC BY-SA 4.0 (creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0)] ; via Wikimedia Commons **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 10]**	**Credit:** By Rcragun [CC BY 3.0 (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/3.0)], from Wikimedia Commons **Source:** By Rcragun [CC BY 3.0 (creativecommons.org/licenses/by/3.0)] ; from Wikimedia Commons **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

This page titled 2.2: Globalization and Development (5 Days) is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by CK12 via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

2.3: Celebrate Freedom Week- Foundations of the United States (5 Days)

Learning Objectives

TEKS Regional Unit 02 Human Geographic Systems; Chapter 2.3 Celebrate Freedom Week

US.1A Analyze and evaluate the text, intent, meaning, and importance of the Declaration of Independence and the US Constitution, including the Bill of Rights.

US.1B Analyze and evaluate the application of these founding principles to historical events in US history.

US.1C Explain the meaning and historical significance of the mottos "*E Pluribus Unum*" and "*In God We Trust*"

WG.14C Analyze the human and physical factors that influence the power to control territory and resources, create conflict/war, and impact international political relations of sovereign nations such as China, the United States, Japan, and Russia and organized nation groups such as the United Nations (UN) and the European Union (EU.

WG.21C Create and interpret different types of maps to answer geographic questions, infer relationships, and analyze change.

WG.22D Use standard grammar, spelling, sentence structure, and punctuation.

Vocabulary Terms

Chapter 2.3 Celebrate Freedom Week: Foundations of the United States

1. **Abdicate**: Give up, such as power, as of monarchs and emperors
2. **Absolve**: Grant remission of a sin to
3. **Allegiance**: Act of binding yourself to a course of action
4. **Assent**: Agree or express agreement
5. **Civil**: Of or occurring between or among citizens of the state
6. **Declaration**: Statement that is emphatic and explicit
7. **Despotism**: Dominance through threat of punishment and violence
8. **Dissolve**: Pass into a solution
9. **Jurisdiction**: Territory within which power can be exercised
10. **Jury**: Body of citizens sworn to give a verdict in a court of law
11. **Legislative**: Relating to a lawmaking assembly
12. **Levy**: Impose and collect
13. **Liberty**: Freedom of choice
14. **Mercenary**: Person hired to fight for another country than their own
15. **Naturalization**: Proceeding whereby a foreigner is granted citizenship
16. **Plundered**: Wrongfully emptied or stripped of anything of value
17. **Representation**: Standing in for someone and speaking on their behalf
18. **Sufferance**: Patient endurance especially of pain or distress
19. **Tyranny**: Government in which the ruler is an absolute dictator
20. **Unalienable**: Incapable of being repudiated

The Geography of the American Revolution

Geography played a major role in the American Revolution. Watch this video and see the Revolutionary War unfold on an animated map. As you view this video, think of the ways in which geography was a factor in the American Revolution. Draw or print the Bubble Map Diagram, and complete the bubbles with facts on how geography aided the colonists in their victory. Write the term American Revolution in the center bubble and complete the remaining bubbles with the geography facts. Share your findings with your classmates.

Now that you have brainstormed the importance of geography in the American Revolution, you will create a map using Google My Maps. Your assignment is to imagine that you are a tour guide for a battle that took place during the American Revolution and your map is one you will give to tourists. First, you will research the different battles that took place in the American Revolution. Get started with your research at the Revolutionary War: Major Battles and Campaigns page at the Lloyd Sealy Library. Second, you will choose a battle that interests you. Third, you will design a map that depicts the location of the American Revolution battle. Fourth, save and/or print your document.

Below is a tutorial that teaches you how to create a map using Google My Maps:



This tutorial from Google will show you how to design your own map using Google My Maps.

The Declaration of Independence



Listen to and understand this reading of the Declaration of Independence.

"We hold these truths to be self-evident, that all men are created equal, that they are endowed by their Creator with certain unalienable Rights, that among these are Life, Liberty and the pursuit of Happiness. --That to secure these rights, Governments are instituted among Men, deriving their just powers from the consent of the governed."

Go to the Declaration of Independence page at the National Archives website and examine the document. Then, click the links on the right-hand-side of the page titled "What Does It Say?" and "How did It Happen?" Read the information and then answer the following question:

Consider what the Declaration of Independence meant to the early colonists. What does it mean to you in the 21st century?

If you would like to add your signature to the Declaration of Independence, go here.

The Founding Fathers



Watch this video by the Aspen Institute to learn and understand information about the Founding Fathers of the United States.

Go to the Framers of the Constitution page at the National Archives website and read the paragraph at the top of the page. Then, choose one of the Founding Fathers who were present at the Constitutional Convention and read his biography.

Compare and contrast your choice with yourself using the Venn Diagram below (click the link). Draw or print the Venn Diagram. How are you the same as a Founding Father you chose? How are you different?

Venn Diagram

The US Constitution



Watch this video by Khan Academy to learn about and understand the Constitution of the United States.

Go to the Constitution of the United States page at the National Archives website and examine the document. Then, click the links on the right-hand side of the page titled "What Does It Say?" and "How Did It Happen?" Read the information and then assess your knowledge of the US Constitution below. Choose a study mode.

The Bill of Rights



Watch this video to learn about and understand the Bill of Rights of the United States.

Go to the Bill of Rights page at the National Archives website and examine the document. Then, click the links on the right-hand side of the page titled "What Does It Say?" and "How did It Happen?" Read the information and then complete the activity below:

Visit the National Archives Building and the Rotunda for the Charters of Freedom. The Google Arts and Culture page states: "Architect John Russell Pope's design for the National Archives Building incorporates symbols of American unity, freedom, protection, and democracy to convey the importance of the National Archives' mission to preserve America's historical documents. Learn more about the history of the building's interior and the symbolism found in its paintings, sculptures, and decorations."

Think about your virtual visit and answer the following questions:

What are your thoughts on this building and the symbolism found in its paintings, sculptures, and decorations? What do you think it means to citizens of the United States of America? What do you think it means to individuals who would like to become citizens of the United States of America?

The Abolitionist Movement



Watch this video by the James H. Smith Center for the Constitution to learn about and understand the history of the Abolitionist Movement.

Go to American Experience: The Abolitionists webpage and click a topic of interest to you. Watch the video. Then, click "Support Materials." Read the background article and answer the discussion questions.

Watch the next three videos and complete the assignment that follows.

The Civil Rights Amendments



Watch this video to learn about and understand the Civil Rights amendments.

Civil Rights Laws



Watch this video to learn about and understand the history of the Civil Rights Movement.

The Emancipation Proclamation



Watch and interpret this reenactment of the writing of the Emancipation Proclamation.

After watching these videos, go to the National First Ladies Library "The Debate on Slavery" and follow the instructions.

Equality for Women



Watch this video by the National Women's History Museum to learn about and understand the history of women's suffrage.

Consider the history of women, especially in the last 100 years. Complete the following assignment: Find three women from three different generations (for example, a woman in her 20s, a woman in her 40s, and a woman in her 60s, etc.). Ask each woman the following question: What is your interpretation of women's rights? Write down and analyze the information from your interviews. How are the responses of these women the same? How are they different? Consider the information you have learned about women's rights from the video. Do you think that the women you interviewed are aware of the history of women's rights in the United States? Why or why not? Share your findings with your classmates.

Scholarly Internet Resources

The Library of Congress "Women's Suffrage" primary documents page.

The National Park Service "The American Revolution" page.

Smithsonian Magazine "Myths of the American Revolution" article.

The American Revolution website provides comprehensive materials on topics in the American Revolution, from a timeline to representations of artifacts from the war, to backgrounds of important people, and much more.

Yale University "The American Revolution" course.

The PBS "Liberty: The American Revolution" site chronicles the American Revolution with a comprehensive narrative about the war, a teacher's guide, and resources.

The Martin Luther King, Jr. Research and Education Institute website by Stanford University offers a lesson plan titled "Civil Rights or Human Rights". Included in this lesson are an introduction, an essential question, sub-questions, and lesson activities.

This page titled 2.3: Celebrate Freedom Week- Foundations of the United States (5 Days) is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by CK12 via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

3: United States and Canada (10 days)

3.1: Physical Geography of the United States and Canada (2 Days)
3.2: Early Development and Globalization (2 days)
3.3: Regions of the United States and Canada (2 Days)
3.4: United States- Population and Religion (2 Days)
3.5: Canada (2 Days)

Thumbnail: Orthographic projection of the United States and Canada (Cc BY-SA 3.0; Keepscases via Wikipedia)

This page titled 3: United States and Canada (10 days) is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by CK12 via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

3.1: Physical Geography of the United States and Canada (2 Days)

Chapter Challenges

- Define the physiographic regions of Canada and the United States.
- Explain the two dominant climate patterns in Canada and the United States.
- List the three European countries that had the most significant early influence on Canada and the United States.
- What parts of the region did the three European countries listed above dominate in Canada and the United States?
- Describe a few of the long-term impacts these three European countries have had in Canada and the United States.
- Map the population distribution of Canada and the United States.

Learning Objectives

TEKS Regional Unit 03 The United States and Canada Chapter 3.1 Physical Geo of US and Canada

WG.1A: analyze significant physical features and environmental conditions that have influenced the past and migration patterns and have shaped the distribution of culture groups today

WG.1B: trace the spatial diffusion of phenomena such as the Columbian Exchange or the diffusion of American popular culture and describe the effects on regions of contact

WG.4C: explain the influence of climate on the distribution of biomes in different regions

WG.5A: analyze how the character of a place is related to its political, economic, social, and cultural elements

WG.5B: interpret political, economic, social, and demographic indicators (gross domestic product per capita, life expectancy, literacy, and infant mortality) to determine the level of development and standard of living in nations

WG.6A: locate and describe human and physical features that influence the size and distribution of settlements

WG.6B: explain the processes that have caused changes in settlement patterns, including urbanization, transportation, access to and availability of resources, and economic activities

WG.7B: explain how physical geography and push and pull forces, including political, economic, social, and environmental conditions, affect the routes and flows of human migration

WG.7C: describe trends in world population growth and distribution

WG.7D: analyze how globalization affects connectivity, standard of living, pandemics, and loss of local culture

WG.9A: identify physical and/or human factors such as climate, vegetation, language, trade networks, political units, river systems, and religion that constitute a region

WG.9B: describe different types of regions, including formal, functional, and perceptual regions

WG.13A: interpret maps to explain the division of land, including man-made and natural borders, into separate political units such as cities, states, or countries

WG.16A: describe distinctive cultural patterns and landscapes associated with different places in Texas, the United States, and other regions of the world and how these patterns influenced the processes of innovation and diffusion

WG.16C: describe life in a variety of urban and rural areas in the world to compare political, economic, social, and environmental changes

WG.17D: evaluate the experiences and contributions of diverse groups to multicultural societies

WG.18D: evaluate the spread of cultural traits to find examples of cultural convergence and divergence such as the spread of democratic ideas, language, foods, technology, or global sports

WG.19A: evaluate the significance of major technological innovations in the areas of transportation and energy that have been used to modify the physical environment

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

WG.21C: create and interpret different types of maps to answer geographic questions, infer relationships, and analyze change

WG.22A: create appropriate graphics such as maps, diagrams, tables, and graphs to communicate geographic features, distributions, and relationships

WG.22C: use social studies terminology correctly

WG.22D: create original work using effective written communication skills, including proper citations and understanding and avoiding plagiarism

TEKS and ELPS for Regional World Geography Unit 03--United States and Canada from TEKS Resource System

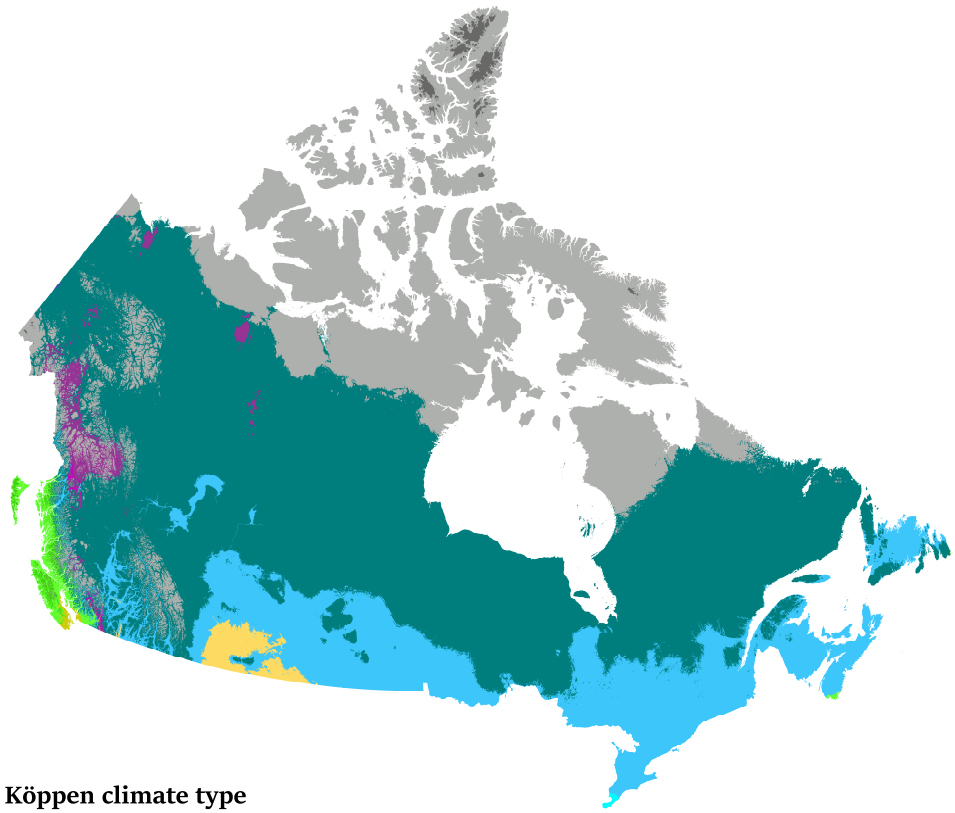
Physical Geography and Regions of the United States and Canada

Canada and the United States are divided into a number of physiographic provinces with distinct landforms. A physiographic province is a geographic region with characteristic geomorphology, and often a specific subsurface rock type or structural elements. The western part of the continent is marked by north-south mountain ranges in the Rocky Mountains, Pacific Mountains, the Valley and Ridge Geologic Province, the Intermontane Basins and Range, and the Plateaus in between.

The eastern portion of North America is defined by the ancient Appalachian Highlands, a mountain range that is much less rugged than the Rockies, but with no less influence on the history and development of the United States. The interior of the continent is characterized by plains—the Interior Lowlands and the Great Plains. To the north is the Canadian Shield, geologically the oldest part of North America, and a sparsely populated area with poor soils. At the southern and eastern edge of the continent is the Atlantic Coastal Plain, a relatively flat zone that extends from New York to Texas.

There are various climates types in Canada and the United States. The climates include type A, type B, type C, and type E. In general, there are two different climate patterns common in North America. The first pattern is that temperatures get warmer as you travel from north to south and get closer to the equator. The second pattern is that there is a decrease in precipitation as you move from east to west across the continent until you reach the Pacific Coast, where rainfall is abundant again.

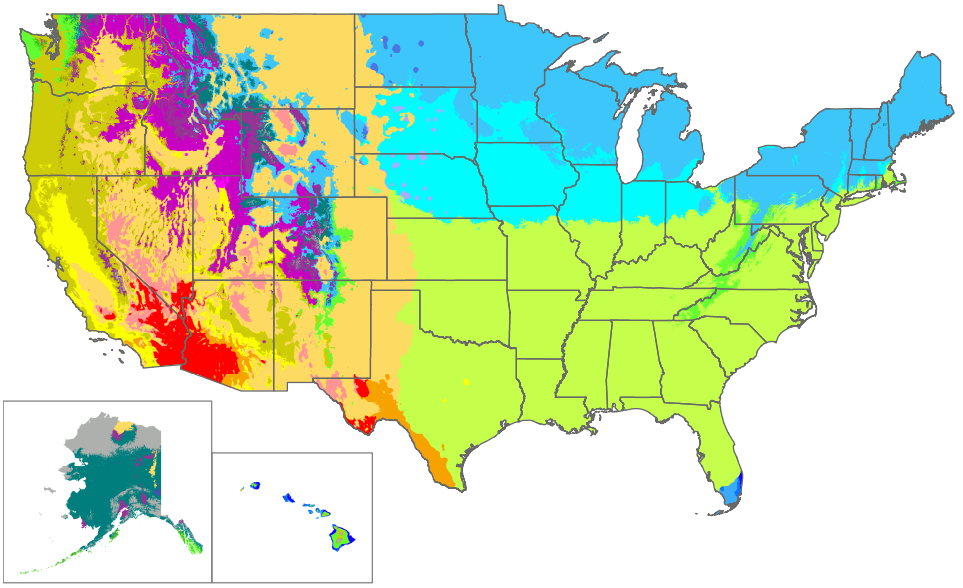
Köppen climate types of Canada



This Köppen climate map illustrates the climate types found in Canada.

https://k12.libretexts.org/@go/page/1956

Köppen climate types of the United States



This Köppen climate map illustrates the climate types found in the United States.

The rain shadow effect of the western mountain ranges creates the second climate pattern. As wet air masses move from the Pacific Ocean over the North American continent, they run into the Cascades and the Sierra Nevada mountain ranges. The Cascade ranges of Washington and Oregon cut off moisture from falling on the leeward side of the mountains creating a semi-arid condition in eastern Washington and eastern Oregon.

The western United States experiences a strong rain shadow effect. As the air rises over the mountains, water vapor condenses and returns to the earth as rain or snow. This means that west of these mountain ranges there is much more precipitation than to their east, resulting in arid and semi-arid lands. The entire Great Plains of the western United States is a semi-arid, type B climate because of the rain shadow effect.

European Realms in Canada and the United States

Both the United States and Canada are products of European colonialism. Many Native American groups inhabited North America before the Europeans arrived. Complex native societies, federations, and traditional local groups faced the European invasion. While the indigenous population of North America was robust at the time of the European encounter, within a few generations, the diseases, weapons, and sheer numbers of the European arrivals overwhelmed the native peoples.

The Europeans—mainly the Spanish, French, and British—left a strong imprint on their North American colonies. The oldest colonial city in North America is St. Augustine, Florida, founded by Spain in 1565 when Florida was a remote portion of the

Spanish Americas. Spain also had outposts in what are now California, Arizona, New Mexico, and Texas. The forms of settlement characteristic of those areas were similar to the Spanish colonies of Central America.



This picture is of the historic Alcazar Hotel, located in St. Augustine, Florida. It is an 1898 photochrome postcard published by the Detroit Photographic Company. This hotel shows the Spanish influence on St. Augustine, Florida.

While Spain governed what is now the southern United States, France ruled Canada and much of the interior of the North American continent. The French first came to Canada in the late 1500s to engage in fishing in the North Atlantic and soon expanded their reach by creating a fur trade in the area surrounding the Great Lakes and throughout the Mississippi River system.

Although there were fewer settlers from France than from other European countries—especially in what became the United States—this French era left behind place names like Baton Rouge and Detroit, patterns of land use, and a French-speaking population in Canada. Despite the early influence of Spain and France in Canada and the United States, most of the population speaks English as their native language because of Britain's colonial dominance. Jamestown, the earliest permanent British colony, was founded in 1607.

The British built up a successful empire in the New World. Their 13 American colonies became populous, economically robust, and militarily strong enough to gain independence in 1776. Canada functions as an independent country, but it remains part of the British Commonwealth.



This map illustrates the colonial empire of the English, French, and Spanish in North America.

Population Distribution in North America

The population of the United States surpassed the 325 million mark in 2017. Canada now has over 36 million people. From 2015 to 2016, 2.2 million people were added to the US population. A little less than half of the growth is due to immigration and the rest is to birth rates. The pace of growth is slower than the world average but more rapid than many other industrialized countries such as those in Europe. In fact, the US is the third most populous country in the world.

The population is not uniformly spread over North America. Most Canadians live in proximity to the US border. The North American population tends to be clustered in cities, with about 80 percent of US citizens living in urban and suburban areas. Additionally, over time, the population has been moving southward and westward. States in the US experiencing the greatest rates of population growth include those located on the southern portion of the eastern seaboard, as well as Texas, Nevada, Utah, California, Oregon, and Washington.

Three states—California, Texas, and Florida—account for about one-third of the entire US population growth since 1990. Nonetheless, the Northeast is the most densely populated area of the country. This is due in large part to the megalopolis that forms the corridor from Washington, D.C. to Boston. The largest concentration of Canadians lives in the most southern-reaching province of Ontario. For this reason, Ontario is often referred to as South Canada.

In general, the population of minorities is growing most rapidly. Some of the fastest-growing populations in the United States are Hispanics. Another interesting factor in population growth is the increase in life expectancy. As more people live longer, the growth of the segment of the population aged 65 has doubled in the last 50 years. However, it appears that the growth of this population segment is slowing. Of this group, the greatest increase was seen in people aged 85 years and older.

The American population tends to be on the move, although moving fell to an all-time low according to 2016 data from the US Census Bureau. Data also indicates that Americans will move to a metropolitan area. Urbanization has been a trend since the 1950s. Until that time, most Americans lived in small towns or rural settings. The population density of the cities, especially the suburban areas, has grown steadily since that time, bringing about a rural-to-urban population shift. Now, a significant majority of people in North America live in suburban areas.

Urbanization has brought some challenges. The layout of cities and their suburbs often makes owning a car a necessity. Thus, traffic congestion is a major problem. Other issues that have arisen are overcrowded schools, racial tensions, and a widening economic gap between the rich and the poor. As people move to cities, housing and other resources might not be able to meet demand, forcing prices to be more expensive. The margin between the cost of living in an urban area and the population's ability to

afford it has contributed to poverty and homelessness. Environmental issues also abound, including how to reduce or eliminate smog, manage waste, and ensure clean drinking water.

Key Takeaways

- The United States and Canada have mountain ranges along their eastern and western portions, with lowlands in the middle.
- In general, temperatures get cooler as you move from south to north, and the climate gets more arid as you move from east to west across the continent.
- The Spanish were the earliest Europeans to establish a permanent settlement in North America. They controlled the territory in the southern edge of what is now the United States, and their influence is still felt today through the Mexican American culture in that region.
- The French colonized eastern Canada, the Great Lakes, and the Mississippi River Valley.
- Although the number of settlers was small outside Quebec, French place names, and French land-use patterns are still evident.
- The British colonized the eastern coast of what became the United States. The number of English-speaking settlers was so high that the English culture dominated the region and left a strong long-term impact in terms of language, religion, and many other cultural aspects.
- The millions of people living in both Canada and the United States are not evenly distributed.
- More of the population continues to migrate into urban areas.
- Minority groups are the fastest-growing segment of the population.

Vocabulary Terms

Chapter 3.1 Physical Geography of the US and Canada

1. cultural convergence: a process of cultures becoming more alike
2. cultural diffusion: the process by which culture is spread
3. cultural divergence: a process in which cultural groups distinguish themselves from other culture groups
4. demographics: statistical data about human populations
5. indigenous: originating in a particular region
6. megalopolis: a very large urban region consisting of several adjoining cities and suburbs
7. migration: movement from one place to another
8. multicultural: inclusion of a variety of cultures
9. settlement patterns: the spatial distribution of where humans inhabit the Earth
10. urbanization: the process of increasing human settlement in cities

Applying Knowledge

Interactive Notebook Activities

List the physiographic regions of Canada and the United States.

1. List the two dominant climate patterns in Canada and the United States.
2. Identify the three European countries that had the most significant early influence on Canada and the United States.
3. Describe the region that the three European countries listed above dominated early on in Canada and the United States.
4. Summarize the legacies these three European countries have had in Canada and the United States.
5. Map the population distribution of the United States and Canada.

Discussion and Study Questions

1. Who were the three main European colonizers of what became the United States and Canada?
2. Where was each European colonizer most influential?
3. Describe the long-term impacts of each European power in Canada and the United States.
4. What is the main reason the Great Plains and the western part of the United States are so arid?

5. What three states had the highest population growth since 2000?
6. What segment of the population has doubled in the past 50 years?
7. What are the current populations of Canada and the United States?
8. What problems has urbanization caused in Canada and the United States?
9. Why do millions of people move within the United States each year?
10. Why do most Canadians live near the US border?

Real-World Geography Exercise

Using Google Maps, locate each one of the places below. Calculate the distance and how long it would take you to drive from your house to each one of these locations (or the nearest metropolis located in the region). Next, using NASA Latitude and Longitude Finder, determine the latitude and longitude for each location. Be prepared to share and discuss your answers.

- Appalachian Highlands
- Canadian Shield
- Great Lakes
- Great Plains
- Atlantic Coastal Plain
- Interior Lowlands
- Intermontane Basins and Plateaus
- Mississippi River
- Pacific Mountains and Valleys
- Rocky Mountains

Mapping Exercise

Mapping Our World ESRI-ARGIS Online Module 3 Lesson 2

Seasonal Differences: In this activity, students will analyze the variable patterns of precipitation in South Asia that result from the region's seasonal monsoon winds. As the students investigate those patterns, they will explore relationships between rainfall and physical features and analyze the climate's impact on agriculture and population

Student Answer Doc-download

Student Assessment Doc-download

Teacher Materials download

Videos for Geography Enrichment




aver Pelt Trade
iculum Services Canada
Watch on YouTube


nsus: U.S.'s Aging Population to D
Wall Street Journal
Watch on YouTube


ies With the Worst Traffic
Wall Street Journal
The Top Five Cities with the Worst Traffic
Watch on YouTube





Helpful Websites for the Study of Geography

Canadian Encyclopedia is an encyclopedia funded by the Canadian government covering all branches of knowledge. Their scholarly collection includes interactive materials.

CIA World Factbook provides information on the people, history, government, economy, energy, geography, communications, transportation, military, and transnational issues for the world's entities.

Congress.gov is a US government website where you can find federal legislation, past and present, as well as information about the US legal system.

Drug Enforcement Administration (DEA) is a government agency website that provides current news, resources, topics of interest, information about drugs, careers in the DEA, and a tip hotline.

Library of Congress is the largest library in the world and provides manuscripts, files, information, pictures, and videos.

NASA Earth Observatory (NEO) is a US government agency website that allows users to search for and retrieve satellite images of Earth.

National Archives is a US government website that provides historical documents, photos, records, publications, and educator resources.

National Oceanic and Atmospheric Association (NOAA) is a US government agency website that provides weather-related information and ocean research.

National Map is a website by the United States Geological Survey and other federal, state, and local agencies that delivers topographic information for the United States.

NationMaster is a massive central data source and a handy way to graphically compare nations.

Real-Time World Air Quality Index is a website that measures most locations in the world for air pollution in real time.

StateMaster is a unique statistical databas,e which allows you to research and compare a multitude of different data on US states.

United Nations (UN) is an international organization founded in 1945 and made up of 193 member states. The UN maintains international peace and security, protects human rights, delivers humanitarian aid, promotes sustainable development, and upholds international law.

United States Census Bureau is a US government agency that provides a population clock, data, surveys, statistics, a library with information and infographics, news about the economy, and much more.

United States Geological Survey (USGS) is a US government agency website that provides scientific information about the natural hazards that threaten lives, the natural resources we rely on, the health of our ecosystems and environment, and the impacts of climate and land-use change.

Whitehouse.gov is a US government website that provides the latest presidential news, information about the budget, policy, defense, and many more topics.

World Health Organization (WHO) is under the United Nations and provides leadership on matters critical to health, shapes the research agenda on health, and monitors the health situation and assessing health trends around the world. Their website provides information on the state of health around the world, outbreaks, current health news, and more.

World Trade Organization (WTO) is an intergovernmental organization that regulates international trade. The website provides information on the history of the multilateral trading system, featured videos, news and events, trade topics, and more.

Image	Reference	Attributions
	**[Figure 4]**	**Credit:** By Pinpin [GFDL (http://www.gnu.org/copyleft/fdl.html) or CC BY-SA 3.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0)], via Wikimedia Commons. **Source:** By Pinpin [GFDL (or CC BY-SA 3.0 (creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0)]http://www.gnu.org/copyleft/fdl.html) ; via Wikimedia Commons. **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

This page titled 3.1: Physical Geography of the United States and Canada (2 Days) is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by CK12 via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

3.2: Early Development and Globalization (2 days)

Chapter Challenges

- Explain how the United States acquired its geographic boundaries.
- List patterns of immigration to and migration within the United States through the period of westward settlement.
- Describe urban growth and its connection to development of new forms of transportation.
- Explain which economic patterns helped the United States become the world's largest economy.
- Describe how the concept of the American Dream has been exported globally.

Learning Objectives

TEKS Regional Unit 03: United States and Canada Chapter 3.2

WG.5B Interpret political, economic, social, and demographic indicators (gross domestic product per capita, life expectancy, literacy, and infant mortality) to determine the level of development and standard of living in nations using the terms Human Development Index, less developed, newly industrialized, and more developed

WG.6A Locate and describe human and physical features that influence the size and distribution of settlements

WG.6B Explain the processes that have caused changes in settlement patterns, including urbanization, transportation, access to and availability of resources, and economic activities

WG.9A Identify physical and/or human factors such as climate, vegetation, language, trade networks, political units, river systems, and religion that constitute a region

WG.10D Compare global trade patterns over time and examine the implications of globalization, including outsourcing and free trade zones

WG.11A Understand the connections between levels of development and economic activities (primary, secondary, tertiary, and quaternary)

WG.11B Identify the factors affecting the location of different types of economic activities, including subsistence and commercial agriculture, manufacturing, and service industries

WG.11C Assess how changes in climate, resources, and infrastructure (technology, transportation, and communication) affect the location and patterns of economic activities

WG.12A how the creation, distribution, and management of key natural resources affects the location and patterns of movement of products, money, and people

WG.13A Interpret maps to explain the division of land, including man-made and natural borders, into separate political units such as cities, states, or countries

WG.14C Analyze current events to infer the physical and human processes that lead to the formation of boundaries and other political divisions

WG.16A Describe distinctive cultural patterns and landscapes associated with different places in Texas, the United States, and other regions of the world and how these patterns influenced the processes of innovation and diffusion.

WG.16D Compare life in a variety of urban and rural areas in the world to evaluate political, economic, social, and environmental changes

WG.18D Evaluate the spread of cultural traits to find examples of cultural convergence and divergence such as the spread of democratic ideas, US-based fast-food franchises, the English language, technology, or global sports.

WG.19A Evaluate the significance of major technological innovations in the areas of transportation and energy that have been used to modify the physical environment

TEKS and ELPS for Regional World Geography Unit 03--United States and Canada from TEKS Resource System

United States: Early Development and Globalization

Early Development Patterns

Canada and the United States is divided into a number of physical regions with distinct landforms. The western part of the continent is marked by north-south mountain ranges in the Rocky Mountains and Pacific Mountains and Valley's physiographic provinces, with the Intermontane Basins and Plateaus in between. The eastern portion of the United States is defined by the ancient Appalachian Mountains, a mountain range that is much less rugged than the Rockies but with no less influence on the history and development of this region. The interior of North America is characterized by plains—the Interior Lowlands and the Great Plains. To the north is the Canadian Shield, geologically the oldest part of North America, and a sparsely populated area with poor soils. At the southern and eastern edge of the continent is the Atlantic Coastal Plain, a relatively flat zone that extends from New York to Texas.

Manifest Destiny

The concept of Manifest Destiny came from the works of John O'Sullivan in 1839. O'Sullivan wrote, *"The far-reaching, the boundless future will be the era of American greatness. In its magnificent domain of space and time, the nation of many nations is destined to manifest to mankind the excellence of divine principles; to establish on earth the noblest temple ever dedicated to the worship of the Most High—the Sacred and the True. Its floor shall be a hemisphere—its roof the firmament of the star-studded heavens, and its congregation an Union of many Republics, comprising hundreds of happy millions, calling, owning no man master, but governed by God's natural and moral law of equality, the law of brotherhood—of "peace and good will amongst men"* (John L. O'Sullivan on Manifest Destiny, 1839).

As the United States developed, it acquired external colonial possessions. With the victory over Spain in the Spanish-American War of 1898, the US government gained control of the Philippines, Cuba, Puerto Rico, Guam, and various Pacific islands. Cuba and the Philippines later became independent countries, but Puerto Rico and Guam continue to be part of the United States. The US Virgin Islands were purchased from Denmark in 1918 after World War I as a location to provide strategic military support to protect the shipping lanes through the Caribbean and the Panama Canal.

Westward Settlement Patterns and European Immigration

The 13 original colonies are often grouped into three regions, each with its own economic and cultural patterns. These three areas —New England, the Mid-Atlantic, and the South—are considered culture hearths, or places where culture formed and from which it spread. The three regions were source areas for westward migration, and migrants from these regions carried with them the cultural traditions of their culture hearths. The New England colonies were characterized by poor soils, subsistence agriculture, and fishing communities. They were also the birthplace of North America's Industrial Revolution. Boston was the largest city in the region.



This is a photographic reproduction of an 1807 map of Boston and its immediate vicinity drawn by J. N. Buache for inclusion in the 1807 French edition of Marshall's Life of Washington.

Settlers from New England traveled west across New York State and into the upper Midwest and the Great Lakes region. The Mid-Atlantic region, focused on Philadelphia, Pennsylvania, was known for its fertile soils, prosperous small-scale agriculture, and multinational population. Prosperous farming led to a vibrant economy and a robust network of towns and cities. People who

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

migrated west from this region traveled down the Great Valley into the Appalachian Mountains and across the Cumberland Gap into Kentucky, or they crossed Pennsylvania and traveled west via the Ohio River valley. The heart of the South was Virginia, a region oriented around plantation agriculture. The South was overwhelmingly rural, and in time the bulk of its agricultural workforce consisted of slaves brought to the United States from Sub-Saharan Africa.

Westward migration was spurred along by the California Gold Rush of 1849 and by the completion of the Transcontinental Railroad in 1869. The settlement frontier pushed westward during the course of the 19th century and was declared "closed" by the Bureau of the Census in 1890. This did not mean that settlers were spread uniformly across the continent by 1890. Vast areas of the Great Plains and the mountain west remained sparsely populated by Europeans at that time. The Homestead Act of 1862 also encouraged westward migration by offering 160 acres of free land to households willing to move west. The continental United States had been organized into official states by the end of the 19th century with the exception of Oklahoma, Arizona, and New Mexico.

Most US residents at the beginnings of the country in 1776 had roots in Great Britain. Large numbers were also from other northern and western European countries. Moreover, the south had a substantial population from Africa, most of whom were slaves. During the 19th century, migrants continued to immigrate to the United States as its economy grew, especially after the 1830s. The German and Irish began arriving in large numbers, joining others from Britain and other countries.

As the century progressed, immigrants from Italy, Russia, and Austria came to the United States in masses. The new arrivals were different from the early British immigrants. They practiced Roman Catholic or Eastern Orthodox Christianity. They primarily moved to urban areas, and they found work in the new manufacturing sector growing rapidly in the Northeast and around the Great Lakes. Very few immigrants came from Latin America or Asia at that time. For a more detailed history of immigration in the United States, go to the Statue of Liberty - Ellis Island Immigration Timeline website.

Industrial Development and Urbanization

The Industrial Revolution that began in Great Britain in the late 18th century eventually moved across the Atlantic and took hold in the United States. Rapid industrial growth emerged in the 19th century and was focused in the northeastern United States around the Great Lakes. This area is called the Manufacturing Belt. Mechanized manufacturing began with textiles in New England. Then it moved to steel and other metals in Pennsylvania and Indiana. Later, it was dominated by the manufacturing of automobiles in Michigan. Manufacturing would not have been possible without an abundant supply of power. Coal mining became an important industry in western Pennsylvania and in Appalachia.

Manufacturing took place in the cities and towns of the Manufacturing Belt. Not until the second half of the 20th century did manufacturing move to rural areas. Until then, it was almost entirely an urban activity. As the United States went through its Industrial Revolution, the population shifted from being almost entirely rural to being mostly urban. In 1790, only about 5 percent of the US population lived in urban areas. By 1920, about 50 percent lived in cities. As the rural to urban shift took place, the function and form of US cities also changed.



Pittsburgh, Pennsylvania was an important city in the Manufacturing Belt in the 1900s.

From the colonial era until the late 19th century, US cities were walking cities. Because most Americans lived on farms, cities were small, compact, and centrally located as well as most activities were within walking distance. Only wealthy people had access to

transportation by horse. City dwellers needed to live within a short distance of where they worked, shopped, and lived their daily lives.



This photograph was taken on Mulberry Street on the Lower East Side in New York City in the early 1900s. It depicts a walking city.

The invention of the electric streetcar in 1888 allowed cities to increase in size. People could live farther from their place of employment as long as they lived within walking distance of a streetcar line. Streetcar suburbs grew up along streetcar lines. These neighborhoods were often segregated by ethnicity and race. Fewer people lived in downtown areas, which became dedicated to retail and manufacturing. Cities remained oriented around a Central Business District (CBD), which was often located near the railway station. Factories needed to be near modes of transportation for both shipping in parts and shipping out completed products so that workers could easily get to work.



This picture of three street cars in New Orleans, Louisiana, shows the prevalence of street cars in the early 1900s.

Large numbers of middle-class Americans began acquiring automobiles after 1920. This eventually led to a complete rethinking of the spatial layout of cities. Automobile suburbs sprang up outside the traditional city limits as people were able to buy homes far from streetcar lines or railway stations. Cities became increasingly decentralized. People could go shopping in suburban malls instead of downtown department stores.

Factories could be built at highway interchanges and not just near rivers and railroads. People could live in one suburb and work in another, instead of living in the suburbs and working downtown. Neighborhoods became even more racially and economically segregated than they had in the past, as middle-class whites moved into the new suburbs. Economically disadvantaged African Americans were left behind in the urban cores.



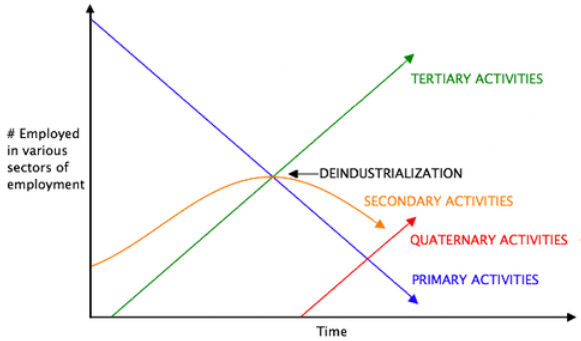
By the 1940s, the car culture was taking hold. This picture was taken in Minneapolis, Minnesota, in 1940.

By the late 20th century, the automobile had led to a new urban form called the "edge city". Edge cities are areas of dense urban development outside the boundaries of traditional cities. They often form at the intersection of major interstate highways and contain shopping malls, office complexes, high-rise apartment buildings, industrial parks, restaurants, and hotels. Sometimes edge cities are called suburban downtowns. Edge cities have supplanted the CBD as the place Americans call home.

Economic Changes

For the purpose of understanding economic geography, all economic activities can be grouped into one of four categories, each with its respective terms, depending on the nature of what is being produced:

1. Primary economic sector activities include everything that pertains to the collection of raw materials, such as agriculture, forestry, fishing, and mining.
2. Secondary economic sector activities involve the processing of those raw materials through manufacturing.
3. Tertiary economic sector activities are those that produce services, not physical products.
4. Quaternary economic sector activities are those that deal with information collecting and processing, as well as management.



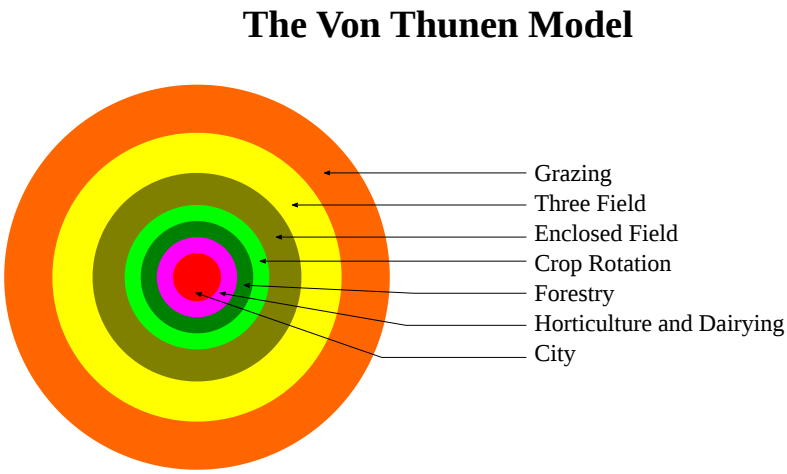
Clark's Sector Model illustrates the trends of the different economic sectors. With industrialization, the primary sector is in a decline and the tertiary sector is on an incline.

The tertiary and quaternary economic sectors are often thought of together as the service sector. In the explanation of how countries gain national income, only primary and secondary activities produce actual physical products. Manufacturing traditionally earns the highest value-added profits. Tertiary activities are selective in gaining national wealth. For example, service activities such as tourism can bring in national wealth if the visitors are from outside the country. Tourism within a country can also influence economic conditions by increasing the amount of consumer spending.

During the colonial era and into the 19th century, when the majority of Americans lived on farms and worked in agriculture, most economic activity in the United States took place within the primary economic sector. Today, the primary sector is still an important component of the US economy, but far fewer people are employed in it. For example, less than 1 percent of Americans make their living by farming, but agricultural output has continued to grow because of advancements in mechanization and the development of

high-tech seeds, fertilizers, and pesticides. The United States has been able to export surplus agricultural output to other parts of the world. Fewer people work in coal mines than in the past, but because of new mining technologies and methods such as mountaintop removal, coal production remains high.

The geographic distribution of primary activities depends both on the location of natural features such as physical geography and climate and on the location of the market for a particular crop or resource. The 19th-century German economist Johann von Thünen created a model that predicted land use around a central market. In his theory, the land closest to the market would be used to produce crops that were expensive to transport, such as dairy. Land far from the market would be used for the production of crops that were less expensive to transport and less perishable, such as grain.



This diagram shows the Von Thünen's model of distribution of different types of farming at different distances from a city.

The Von Thünen model predicts a series of concentric rings surrounding a central market, with each ring producing a different kind of crop. If the Von Thünen model is applied at a much larger scale to the United States as a whole, with the densely populated urban zone from Boston to Washington, D.C., the model is fairly accurate in predicting the United States' agricultural land use. Dairy farms are found close to the market, grain farms are farther away, and ranch lands used for livestock production are even farther away.

Anything that involves the processing of raw materials, known as manufacturing, is a secondary activity. As the United States moved into the Industrial Revolution and into the mid-20th century, the percentage of the US workforce involved in manufacturing grew from almost nothing until it peaked in the late 1970s. It was the main area of economic growth for decades.

Although manufacturing was present in most areas of the country, it was focused in the northeastern United States and along the Great Lakes. Factories were close both to the reserves of labor and to the markets for manufactured products found in the densely populated Northeast. The steel industry was located in Pittsburgh and its environs because of the area's access to raw materials. Iron ore was mined in Minnesota and transported via the Great Lakes. Coal was mined in Pennsylvania, West Virginia, and other parts of Appalachia.

LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org



Ore docks of the Duluth, Missabe and Northern Railway loading ships in Duluth, Minnesota. The ship at the left front is George H. Russel, launched 1905, in Ecorse, Michigan. This picture was taken between 1900 and 1915.

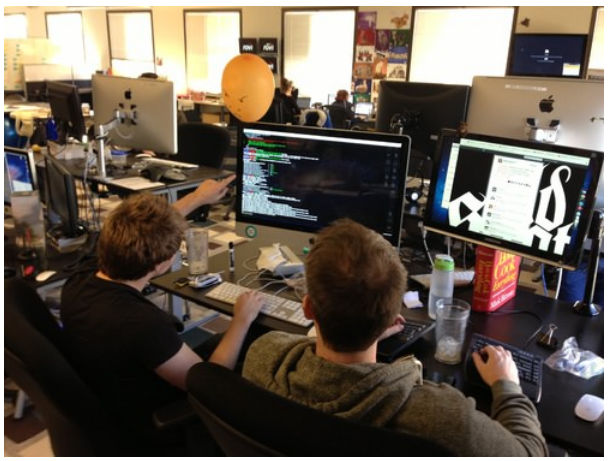
As manufacturing has grown in other parts of the world, the secondary economic sector has declined in the United States. US labor statistics indicate that the United States lost about five million manufacturing jobs between 2000 and 2010. Many of these jobs were lost to countries with lower labor costs, such as Mexico or China.

The third group of economic activities takes place in the tertiary and quaternary sectors, known as the service sector. Tertiary and quaternary activities create services, not physical products. Service jobs include everything from engineering to finance, restaurants to sports, and childcare to medicine. The tertiary sector makes up more than three-quarters of the US economy, as measured by its share of the gross domestic product (GDP), which is the total value of all goods and services produced in a country in a given year. The GDP is then divided by the country's population to provide a GDP per capita statistic. Current data for GDP composition by Industry for the United States can be accessed at the US Bureau of Economic Analysis.



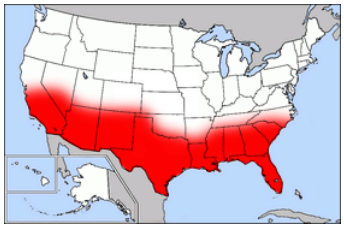
This picture of a waitress taking an order at Kahala Hilton Hotel in Hawaii is an example of a service job in the tertiary sector.

These figures show that the United States has shifted to a postindustrial service economy. The rise of the information age in the latter part of the 20th century shifted the workforce into the information sector. By the beginning of the 21st century, less than 2 percent of the US workforce was employed in agriculture, 15 percent in industry, 18 percent in services, and 65 percent in information activities.



This picture of engineers programming on computers is an example of the quaternary sector.

The locations of service-sector jobs are much more flexible than are jobs in the primary or secondary sectors. Another term for service-sector jobs is footloose jobs. For example, an accountant can live in New York or in Denver. Whereas it is much more difficult for factories to move from one place to another, and it is impossible for farms to relocate. Many of the information-technology jobs are emerging in the southern regions of the United States called the Sun Belt. Southern cities such as Atlanta, Dallas, and Phoenix are centers of innovation and population growth.



This map of the United States with the area highlighted in red depicts the Sun Belt.

The warmer climate, combined with a lower cost of living and less congestion, makes the Sun Belt an attractive location for emerging information-based companies. Note that the popularity of the South and West for service-sector jobs only came about after the invention and adoption of air-conditioning. Air-conditioning was not widespread until after World War II in the 1950s.

While the population of the Southern states has increased, the population of some Northern states has decreased. The Sun Belt has always been a destination for people escaping the harsh winters of the Northern states. This has usually been only a seasonal transition. However, the new trend is one of permanent growth because of the increase in information technologies and in the service industry. Emerging companies looking to establish their businesses have targeted major cities from the Carolinas to the Southwest.

Houston, Texas is an example of a city in which companies and people are moving. According to the worldpopulationreview.com website, Houston is the fourth largest city in the United States and the largest in Texas. Currently, the population in Houston is more than 2.2 million people and rapidly growing. It is a global and multicultural city, and only New York City has more Fortune 500 company headquarters.



Houston is the 4th largest city in the US and the largest in Texas. Only New York City has more Fortune 500 company headquarters.

Migration Patterns

The United States has undergone a massive rural-to-urban shift in its population. Moreover, intermigration within the United States from one region to another has also been prevalent. Each of the US regions has witnessed changes in demographics because of migration patterns.

In the agricultural regions of the United States, such as the Midwest, the migration pattern has been caused by changes in farm technology. Portions of the United States were opened up for agriculture because of the Homestead Act of 1862, where each person was given 160 acres from the government to start a farm. They could keep the acres if they lived on them and farmed them for a period of years. In the 1800s, 160 acres was enough land to support a family if environmental conditions were good.

The Industrial Revolution brought about improved farm equipment and technology. Larger and more expensive tractors and improved farming methods pushed the small farmers to sell out. Farms increased in size and fewer people were required to operate them. Since fewer farm workers are needed in rural areas, there has been a major rural-to-urban shift in the population. Central cities are increasing in population, while small towns and rural areas in the Midwest and across the nation are decreasing in population.

Americanism and Globalization

The freedom of personal expression in the United States has supported individual ingenuity to create the largest economy in the world. Citizens of the United States have pushed American corporations to become a major force in the world markets. Products and franchises from the US are distributed throughout the world. Items such as fast food, computers, news networks, and Hollywood movies have become the products of choice in countries across the globe.



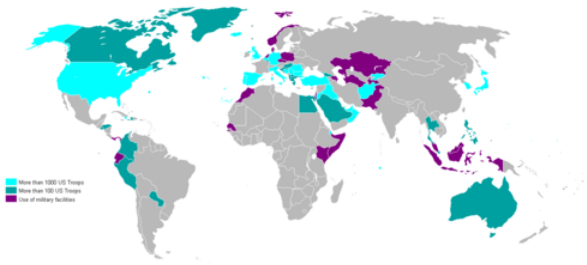
McDonald's has fast-food restaurants all over the world. This McDonald's operates in Moscow, Russia.

The English language dominates the Internet, which has been heavily influenced by US corporations. The power of the American Dream—the idea that through hard work anyone can achieve upward mobility and financial success—as it is portrayed in the US media, holds sway in the minds of people in the United States and abroad.

News networks in the United States are so dominant that small countries, having no resources to create networks, rely on the US networks to deliver their news. Fast food franchises from the US exist in over 100 countries. Despite humble beginnings in

Arkansas, Walmart grew to become the world's largest corporation. It has become the buyer and seller of retail trade that shapes and molds cultural attitudes and fashions internationally.

The size of the US population and the country's vast resources have allowed it to become a world military superpower. After the fall of the Soviet Union, the United States became the most powerful military force in the world. The United States has also dominated the world's economy and its communications networks. The advancements of multinational corporations have in essence enabled the sale of America to the rest of the world. The selling of American products and the large consumer market in the United States have provided the profits that have fueled global economic markets.



This 2007 world map shows the locations of US military bases.

The United States has become a worldwide franchise of its own. Corporate colonialism has advanced the American brand to a level that is now synonymous with consumerism, success, and power, worldwide. The reaction of the global community includes both admiration and disdain. Many view Americanism as interchangeable with globalization. Some welcome it; others reject it. The country of Iran is an example of this dichotomy. Young people in Iran wearing blue jeans gather in secret to watch American television programming from a hidden illegal satellite dish, while at the same time the anti-American forces in their government condemn America as decadent and imperialistic.

Corporate colonialism has become a dominant force impacting the global cultural fabric. Supporters appreciate access to American goods and services, while opponents claim that the English language and the American corporate franchise system are destroying the culture and heritage of untold millions who see their unique traditional ways of life being overshadowed and destroyed.

Some argue that American television advertisements promote conformity and uniformity in American culture. They contend that America's unique cultural diversity, which historically has provided originality is being eroded by the franchising of similar retail products, fast food, professional sports, and Hollywood entertainment that stifle the creative will of the American people. Others continue to see opportunities to pursue the American Dream and believe that innovation and ideas continue to emerge in spite of these trends.

Many people worry about the future of the American Dream. American culture continues to evolve as people face changing economic and social conditions. Over the course of their history, Americans have faced both difficult and prosperous times, and now the future of this vibrant country is in the hands of the current generation. The United States has developed into one of the most powerful countries on the planet. Will the American Dream continue to motivate people in the future? Only time will tell.

Key Takeaways

- The United States' territory expanded gradually through various treaties and land acquisitions and was influenced by the concept of Manifest Destiny.
- The three main colonial regions in the United States—New England, the Mid-Atlantic, and the South—had their own distinct economic foundations, settlement patterns, and social structures. People from these regions moved westward in particular migration patterns.
- In the beginning of the 19th century, most immigrants were from western and northern Europe.
- By the end of the 19th century and the beginning of the 20th century, immigrants were coming in large numbers from southern and Eastern Europe and moving to industrial cities of the Northeast.
- City structure changed from the walking cities of colonial America, to the railroad and streetcar cities of the late 19th century, to the automobile cities of the mid- and late-20th century.

- The US economy was initially based in the primary economic sector (particularly farming), then was based in the secondary economic sector (manufacturing), and is now oriented around the tertiary and quaternary economic sectors (services and information).
- The diverse immigrants who have created American society have been unified by common aspirations and common ideals that created the concept of the American Dream. The concept indicates that regardless of one's station in life, by working hard, applying oneself, and following the rules, one can obtain upward economic mobility.

Vocabulary Terms

Chapter 3.2 Early Development and Globalization

Appalachian Mountains A mountain range that stretches from eastern Canada south to Alabama

cash crop Crops grow to be sold (examples are indigo, tobacco, cotton)

diversity A variety or a wide range of differences

Mid-Atlantic Region New York, New Jersey, Pennsylvania, Delaware

subsistence farming farmers produced just enough food for themselves and sometimes a little extra to trade in town

Applying Knowledge

Discussion and Study Questions

1. What did "Manifest Destiny" mean for the United States?
2. From what European region did most early 19th century immigrants come? How did that change by the end of the 19th century?
3. How did modes of transportation affect the layout of American cities?
4. What is an edge city, and how did edge cities form?
5. How does the Von Thünen model relate to the spatial pattern of land use in the United States?
6. How have economic sectors shifted in the United States in the past two hundred years?
7. What is the American Dream, and how has it been expanded globally?
8. What has been the major migration pattern in the Midwest region of the United States? Why is this occurring?
9. What part of the United States has been a target for the location of the information age–based businesses? What was the role of air-conditioning technology in making this possible?
10. Outline some examples of how US culture influences the rest of the world.
11. Explain how the United States acquired its geographic boundaries.
12. List patterns of immigration to and migration within the United States through the period of westward settlement.
13. Describe urban growth and its connection to the development of new forms of transportation.
14. Explain which economic patterns helped the United States become the world's largest economy.
15. Describe how the concept of the American Dream has been exported globally.

Real-World Geography Exercise

Using Google Maps, find a megalopolis located in one of the regions from the list below. Calculate the distance and how long it would take you to drive from your house to each one of these locations. Next, using NASA Latitude and Longitude Finder, determine the latitude and longitude for each megalopolis you chose.

- Cumberland Gap
- Great Valley
- Manufacturing Belt
- Midwest
- Original thirteen colonies
- Sun Belt

Mapping Exercise

ESRI GEO Inquiry

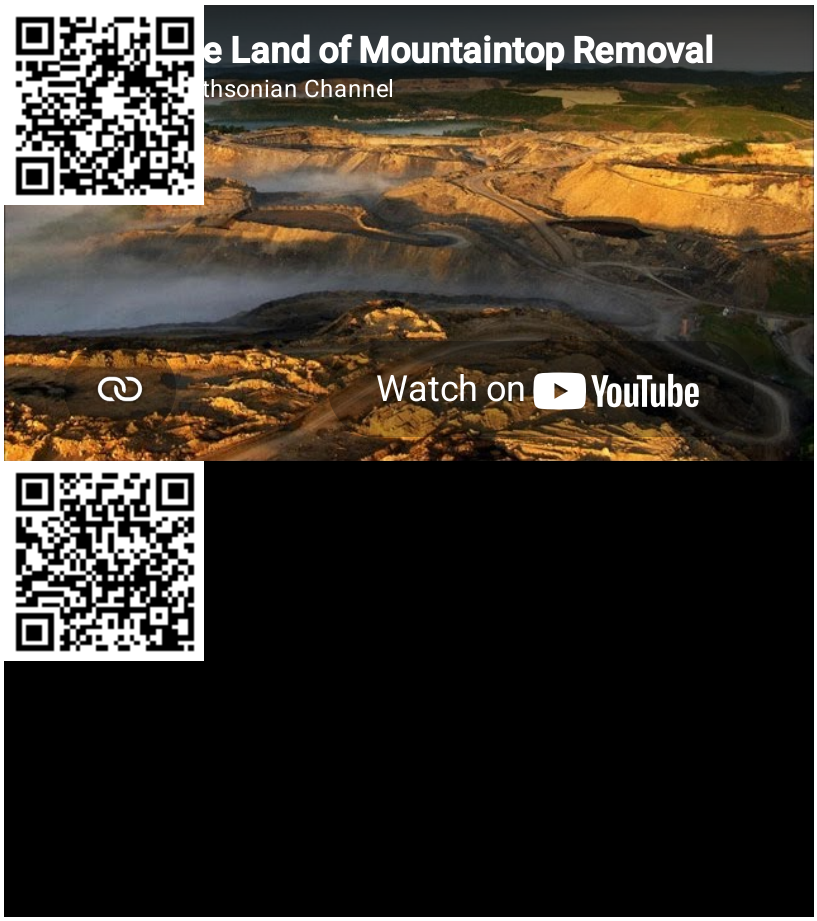
USA Demographics: Students will explore US census data to see the spatial differences in the United States' population. The activity uses a web-based map

Videos for Geography Enrichment









Helpful Websites for the Study of Geography

Canadian Encyclopedia is an encyclopedia funded by the Canadian government covering all branches of knowledge. Their scholarly collection includes interactive materials.

CIA World Factbook provides information on the people, history, government, economy, energy, geography, communications, transportation, military, and transnational issues for the world's entities.

Congress.gov is a US government website where you can find federal legislation, past and present, as well as information about the US legal system.

Drug Enforcement Administration (DEA) is a government agency website that provides current news, resources, topics of interest, information about drugs, careers in the DEA, and a tip hotline.

Library of Congress is the largest library in the world and provides manuscripts, files, information, pictures, and videos.

NASA Earth Observatory (NEO) is a US government agency website that allows users to search for and retrieve satellite images of Earth.

National Archives is a US government website that provides historical documents, photos, records, publications, and educator resources.

National Oceanic and Atmospheric Association (NOAA) is a US government agency website that provides weather-related information and ocean research.

National Map is a website by the United States Geological Survey and other federal, state, and local agencies that delivers topographic information for the United States.

NationMaster is a massive central data source and a handy way to graphically compare nations.

Real-Time World Air Quality Index is a website that measures most locations in the world for air pollution in real time.

StateMaster is a unique statistical database, which allows you to research and compare a multitude of different data on US states.

United Nations (UN) is an international organization founded in 1945 and made up of 193 member states. The UN maintains international peace and security, protects human rights, delivers humanitarian aid, promotes sustainable development, and upholds international law.

United States Census Bureau is a US government agency that provides a population clock, data, surveys, statistics, a library with information and infographics, news about the economy, and much more.

United States Geological Survey (USGS) is a US government agency website that provides scientific information about the natural hazards that threaten lives, the natural resources we rely on, the health of our ecosystems and environment, and the impacts of climate and land-use change.

Whitehouse.gov is a US government website that provides the latest presidential news, information about the budget, policy, defense, and many more topics.

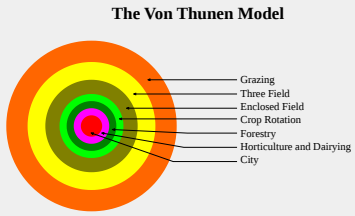
World Health Organization (WHO) is under the United Nations and provides leadership on matters critical to health, shapes the research agenda on health, and monitors the health situation and assessing health trends around the world. Their website provides information on the state of health around the world, outbreaks, current health news, and more.

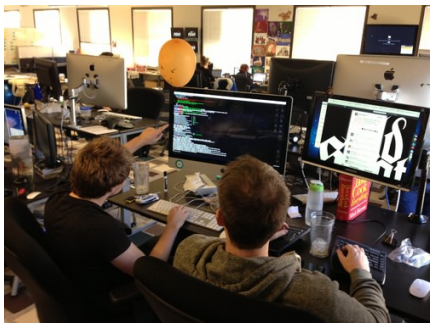
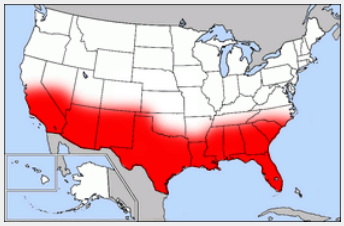
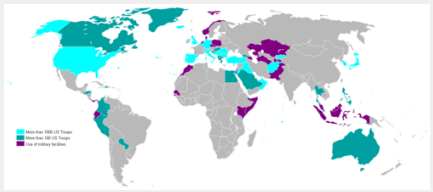
LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

World Trade Organization (WTO) is an intergovernmental organization that regulates international trade. The website provides

https://k12.libretexts.org/@go/page/1950

information on the history of the multilateral trading system, featured videos, news and events, trade topics, and more.

Image	Reference	Attributions
	**[Figure 3]**	**Credit:** See page for author [Public domain], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Mulberry_Street_NYC_c1900_LOC_3g04637u_edit.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 4]**	**Credit:** By Photographer not credited. [Public domain], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:CanalMagazineStreetcarsPrytaniaAnnunciation.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 7]**	**Credit:** By Ytx21cn [CC0], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Von_Thunen_Model.svg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 8]**	**Credit:** By Detroit Publishing Co. [Public domain], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Duluth_Ore_Docks.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 9]**	**Credit:** photo by Alan Light [CC BY 2.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/2.0)], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Waitress_taking_an_order.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

	**[Figure 10]**	**Credit:** By Vajrapani666 [GFDL (http://www.gnu.org/copyleft/fdl.html) or CC BY-SA 3.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0)], from Wikimedia Commons **Source:** commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Pair_Programming_3.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 11]**	**Credit:** Public domain map courtesy of [http://www.lib.utexas.edu/ The General Libraries, The University of Texas at Austin], modified (by • Benc • 00:36, 13 Aug 2004 (UTC)) to highlight regions via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** upload.wikimedia.org/Wikipedia/commons/c/c3/Map_of_USA_highlighting_Sun_Belt.png **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 12]**	**Credit:** By Henry Han [CC BY-SA 3.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0)], from Wikimedia Commons **Source:** commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Uptown_Houston.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 14]**	**Credit:** By Tree Sign at English Wikipedia (Transferred from en.Wikipedia to Commons.) [Public domain], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:US_military_bases_in_the_world_2007.PNG **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

This page titled 3.2: Early Development and Globalization (2 days) is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by CK12 via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

3.3: Regions of the United States and Canada (2 Days)

Chapter Challenges

- Name the key characteristics of the regions of the United States and Canada.
- Describe the patterns of population growth or decline for the various regions.
- List which regions have significant minority groups and why.
- Explain the environmental and social costs to rapid growth in the West.
- Summarize how physical geography has contributed to economic activities.

Learning Objectives

TEKS Regional Unit 03: The United States and Canada Chapter 3.3 Regions of the US and Canada

WG.1B describe the human and physical characteristics of the same regions at different periods of time to evaluate relationships between past events and current conditions

WG.4A Explain how elevation, latitude, wind systems, ocean currents, position on a continent, and mountain barriers influence temperature, precipitation, and distribution of climate regions

WG.4C Explain the influence of climate on the distribution of biomes in different region

WG.5A Analyze how the character of a place is related to its political, economic, social, and cultural elements

WG.7D Examine the benefits and challenges of globalization, including connectivity, standard of living, pandemics, and loss of local culture

WG.9A Identify physical and/or human factors such as climate, vegetation, language, trade networks, political units, river systems, and religion that constitute a region

WG.9B Describe different types of regions, including formal, functional, and perceptual regions

WG.14C Analyze current events to infer the physical and human processes that lead to the formation of boundaries and other political divisions

TEKS and ELPS for Regional World Geography Unit 03--United States and Canada from TEKS Resource System

Regions of the United States and Canada

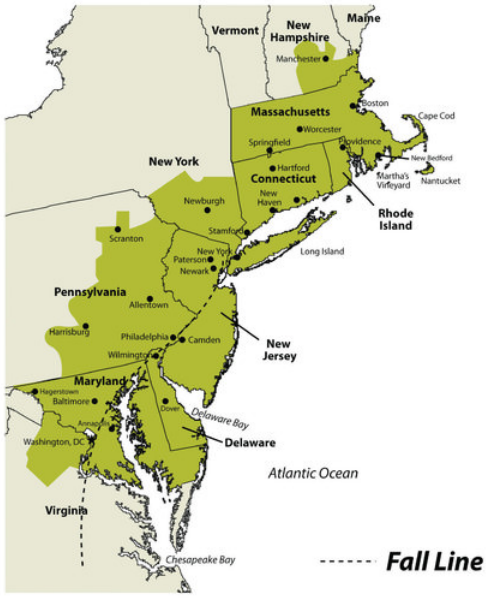


Main regions of the United States and Canada

The Northeastern Core

The Northeastern Core includes the upper Midwest (Illinois, Indiana, Ohio, and Michigan); the mid-Atlantic states of Pennsylvania, New York, Maryland, and New Jersey plus northern Virginia; and the southern New England states of Connecticut, Rhode Island, and Massachusetts. It also includes southern Ontario, Canada's capital (Ottawa), and its largest city (Toronto). The physical environments of the Northeastern Core are diverse, including the northern Gulf-Atlantic Coastal Plain, the northern Appalachians, and the area surrounding the Great Lakes.

This region, anchored by North America's largest metropolis, New York, is the economic heart of the United States and Canada and home to more than a third of each country's population. The megalopolis—the built-up area from Washington, D.C., to Boston—is part of this region. The core region contains the Rust Belt, which was once the main manufacturing region for North America, but suffered decline with the advent of the information age. The core region hosts the headquarters of countless corporations, banks, financial markets (e.g., Wall Street), universities, cultural institutions (e.g., Broadway, world-class museums, dance and music organizations), and even global organizations such as the United Nations.



Megalopolis



Downtown Philadelphia's city hall is an example of the urban qualities of the megalopolis that extends from Boston to Washington, DC.

This large region includes geographic swaths of both wealth and poverty. Eight of the United States' ten wealthiest counties are in this region, most of them in the Washington, D.C. area. Many billionaires live in New York City as well. Meanwhile, cities such as Detroit and Cleveland have suffered from deindustrialization and have experienced a major population decline since the 1950s. Detroit, for instance, has lost 61 percent of its population since 1950. Moreover, from 2000 to 2010, the city's population decreased by 25 percent.

New England and the Canadian Maritimes

New England and the Canadian Maritimes overlap with the Northeastern Core because its major city—Boston—is considered to be the northern edge of the megalopolis. South of Boston, the low-lying states of New England were the center of colonial settlement in the region and the birthplace of America's Industrial Revolution. Southern New England began as an agricultural and fishing colony, and as the industry developed in the 19th century, the region attracted European immigrants to work in its factories.

The highly skilled workforce helped maintain a strong economy in southern New England, although there have been times of increased unemployment and economic hardship. Today the region has a more diverse economic base, including recreation,

tourism, finance, telecommunications, and healthcare. The mountains of western New England have been attractive for the development of ski resorts. The coasts of New England are popular destinations for summer vacations.

As you move north from Boston, the terrain becomes more rugged and the soil less fertile. There are fewer economic reasons for people to live in northern New England. The states of Vermont, New Hampshire, and Maine have always been less populated than the southern New England states. Maine is the least populated state in this region. About 90 percent of its land is forested, making it the most forested of the United States. The vast Empty Quarter in western Maine consists of five million acres of privately owned forest and no permanent human inhabitants. Maine's leading economic activity is manufacturing, and the bulk of it is oriented around paper and other wood products.

Northern New England transitions to the even more rugged and remote uplands of the Canadian Maritimes: New Brunswick, Nova Scotia, Prince Edward Island, Newfoundland, and Labrador. The soil quality is quite poor, as glaciers removed most of it during the various ice ages. The region has a harsh climate and is removed from the major population centers of Canada and the eastern United States.

In the Maritime Provinces, fishing and other sea-oriented businesses have historically been strong here. However, in recent decades overfishing of the North Atlantic has caused a decline in the fishing economy. Tourism has been increasing as a source of revenue, especially in places such as Prince Edward Island, in which tourism is the dominant economic activity. Newfoundland, including Labrador, is Canada's poorest province.

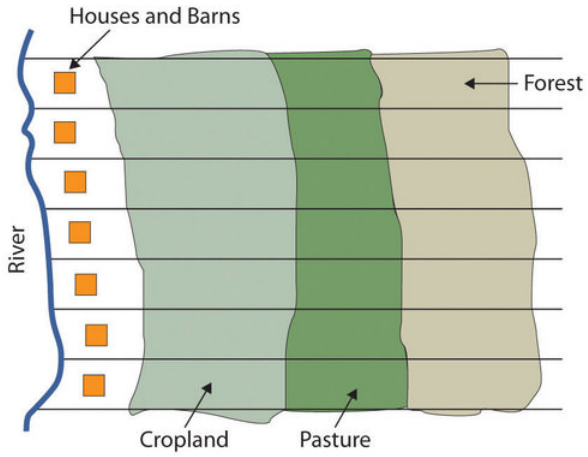
French Canada

West of the Canadian Maritimes lies the province of Quebec, the heart of which is the St. Lawrence River valley, a lowland separating the Appalachian Mountains to the south from the inhospitable Canadian Shield to the north. France was the first European country to colonize the coastal regions of what is now Canada, the St. Lawrence River Valley (most of the land surrounding the Great Lakes), and the Ohio and Mississippi River valleys, south to the Gulf of Mexico. Although Great Britain obtained all the land from France in 1763 following the French and Indian War, enough French inhabitants occupied part of the territory that the region did not automatically become English speaking.

The core of French Canada today is the St. Lawrence Valley from Montreal to the Atlantic coast and west of Montreal to Ottawa and north to the Hudson Bay. These French speakers, the descendants of the early French settlers, created a vibrant French-Canadian culture. About 21 percent of Canadians speak French as their native language, including about 80 percent of Canadians living in the province of Quebec.

Throughout most of its history, the people of Quebec have been rural farmers, making a living on mostly unproductive land in a place with a short growing season. One unique characteristic of the farms in French Canada is their size and shape. Early on, the farms were laid out as long lots, maximizing the number of farms that would have access to the transportation artery—usually a river, but sometimes a road.

Each farm was about 10 times longer than it was wide and had a small access point to the river, some fertile riverfront land, and a woodlot at the rear of the farm. This land-use pattern was common throughout French Canada and can be seen today in the United States in former French colonies such as Tennessee and Louisiana.



Long lot farms typical in French Canada.

Since then, Quebec's economy has developed to include a manufacturing sector (fueled by abundant hydroelectricity), tourism, and a variety of tertiary and quaternary industries. Montreal, Canada's second-largest metropolitan area with over 4 million, is the largest French-speaking city in the Western hemisphere. It developed as the region's most important city in the mid-19th century, as it controlled access through the St. Lawrence River and the Great Lakes. It became a diverse industrial center, with oil refineries, steel mills, flour and sugar refineries, and shop yards for railroad companies.

Montreal attracted English speakers as well as the local French-speaking people. At times in its history, Montreal has had more English speakers than French speakers, despite being surrounded by a Francophone countryside. Most of northern Quebec is sparsely populated because of the lack of quality soil for agriculture. However, a paper and pulp industry based on its forests as well as the generation of hydroelectric power has developed over the 20th century.

The American South

The South includes the entire southeastern portion of the United States from Kentucky south to Louisiana, east to Florida, and north to Virginia. The South consists of most of the Gulf-Atlantic Coastal Plain and the southern portion of the Appalachian Highlands. Before the Civil War, the coastal plain was dedicated to plantation agriculture using African slave labor.

Land not used for plantation crops such as tobacco, cotton, and rice was typically farmed by poor whites and later by poor blacks. Some were sharecroppers, while others farmed their own small plots, especially on the lesser-quality land in the Appalachia region. The South had little urbanization or industrialization at the time of the Civil War. Well into the 20th century, the region remained rural and economically deprived.

Coal mining was a major source of employment in places such as West Virginia and eastern Kentucky for the first two-thirds of the 20th century. Increased mechanization of mining methods, as well as new mining techniques such as mountaintop removal mining, decreased the number of minors needed, even as coal production increased.

The Appalachian South has high unemployment, poverty, and difficult social conditions. Other areas of the rural South are amongst the poorest in the nation, including the Mississippi Delta and the lower Mississippi River valley. Despite the continued poverty in the South, parts of the region have prospered in the past generation. This is because northern migrants have moved to places such as Atlanta, Charlotte, Tampa, Miami, and many smaller cities in the south. This has fueled a period of urbanization and economic growth, and the newfound prosperity has helped the South move upward in the nation's economy.

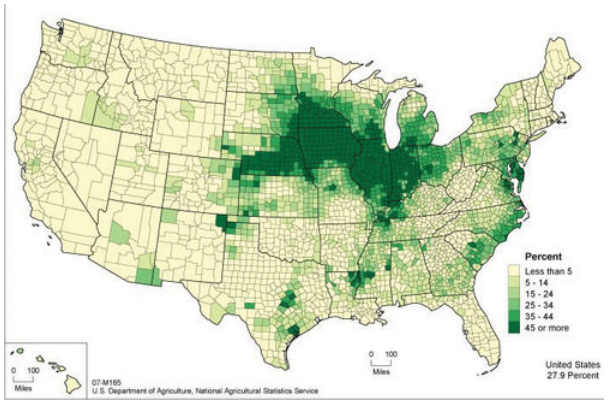


Names often reflect the cultural region of their location. Business names with "Dixie" in them can be found throughout the South. The Dixie Grill restaurant is located in Morehead, Kentucky.

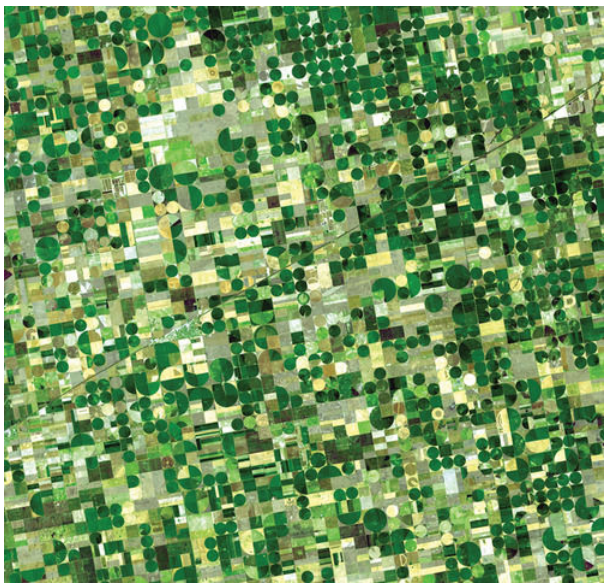
The Midwest and Great Plains

The center of the continent contains a relatively level agricultural region: the Midwest and the Great Plains. This land includes some of the most fertile agricultural land in the entire world. This vast land is known as America's breadbasket. The climate gets progressively more arid as you move to the west within this region, and the type of agriculture changes with the decrease in precipitation. Closer to the Rocky Mountains, the land is typically used for raising cattle. Grain farms are found where water is available, especially through irrigation.

The water for irrigation comes from the continent's largest aquifer, the Ogallala Aquifer. Water is often pumped to the surface using a system called center pivot irrigation. The heart of the spring wheat belt is North Dakota, and the crop is also common in eastern Montana and in Canada's Prairie Provinces of Alberta, Saskatchewan, and Manitoba. Winter wheat is common in Kansas and surrounding states. The corn belt is located farther to the east, mostly in Iowa and Illinois, where rainfall is more abundant.



This map shows the extent of the Corn Belt.



The circular fields are between a half-mile and mile in diameter and are characteristic of fields that use center-pivot irrigation.

The dominant city in this region is Chicago, which developed as a market town for the livestock and grain produced in the surrounding states and was linked to its hinterland through a complex network of rail lines. In fact, nearly all the major cities of this region developed as places for the buying, selling, and processing agricultural products. Today the Midwest and the Great Plains remain the most important food-producing areas in North America, although as agriculture has become increasingly mechanized and farms have gotten larger, the number of farmers has decreased. This region, especially the Great Plains, is experiencing a period of long-term population decline and aging.

The American Southwest

The states of Texas, New Mexico, and Arizona are considered the Southwest. The climate of the Southwest is more arid and receives a high amount of sunlight throughout the year. Desert conditions are integrated with higher elevations in the mountainous areas. Eastern Texas receives more rainfall from the Gulf of Mexico. Western Texas and the states of New Mexico and Arizona are arid and receive less rainfall. These conditions are more favorable to cattle ranching than to other agricultural activities. Large farming operations exist where water is available for irrigation. The warmer climate has been attractive for development and people emigrating from the colder regions of the north.



There is no grass to mow, and cactus and palm trees are common.

The Southwest has a strong Hispanic heritage and was part of Spain's Mexican colony before England established colonies on the East Coast. The first Spanish settlers arrived in New Mexico in 1598. All three states have a large population of Hispanic residents.

Some of the families have been in these states before they became part of the United States, and others are recent immigrants. According to the United States Census Bureau, the Hispanic or Latino population in New Mexico is 48.5 percent; in Texas it is 39.1 percent; and, in Arizona, it is 30.9 percent.

The Southwest also has a strong Native American presence, especially in New Mexico and Arizona. Twenty-one federally recognized tribes with more than 250,000 people (4.9 percent of the state's population) live in Arizona. Their reservations and traditional communities make up more than one-fourth of the state's land. The Navajo tribe is the largest in the United States, with more than 100,000 members in Arizona alone and others in surrounding states. The considerable Native American and Hispanic population in the Southwest means that non-Hispanic whites make up a minority of the population in New Mexico and Texas.



One of the Pollen Trail Dancers, a Navajo group near Joseph City, Arizona, performs the Eagle Dance on September 21, 2010, on the scenic South Rim of Grand Canyon National Park between Hopi House and Verkamp's Visitor Center.

The three Southwestern states have been recipients of Sun Belt migrations over the past few decades, as people have moved to the Southwest for tertiary-sector jobs and for the region's warm climate. The region is urbanized, and most of the new migrants are moving to cities. Three-fourths of Arizona's population lives in the Phoenix or Tucson metropolitan area. The most populous metropolitan area in the Southwest is Dallas-Fort Worth-Arlington, Texas. According to a report released on March 22, 2018, by the US Census Bureau, this area is the fastest growing metro area in the entire United States.

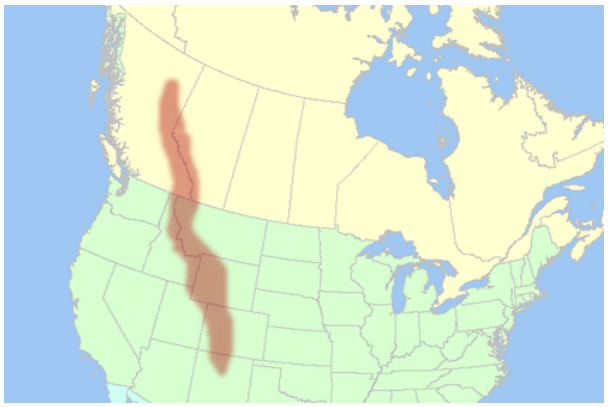
The economy of Texas used to be based on oil and natural gas, but it has since become more diversified. Residents of these cities work in high-tech manufacturing, health care, business, and information. One of the most famous high-tech industries in Texas is space. Houston is home to the National Aeronautics and Space Administration's (NASA) Lyndon B. Johnson Space Center, where astronauts and thousands of others work in the space industry.

The Mountain West

From the Rocky Mountains to the Sierra Nevada, the Cascades, and Intermontane Basins and Plateaus in between, this part of North America has gone from the old Wild West to an area of rapid economic and population growth. The region encompasses western Colorado, western Wyoming, western Montana, Idaho, Nevada, Utah, the eastern portions of Washington, Oregon, and California, and the southern portion of the Canadian Rockies.



The Rocky Mountains are a major mountain range in western North America.



The Rocky Mountains formed 80 million to 55 million years ago.

The population of the Mountain West is growing much faster than the population of the United States as a whole. For example, Nevada's population grew 32.3 percent from 2000 to 2009, which is more than three times as much as the United States as a whole (9.1 percent). All US states in this region, except for Montana, grew at faster rates than the US average. Utah grew 24.7 percent, Idaho grew 19.5 percent, and Colorado grew 16.8 percent.

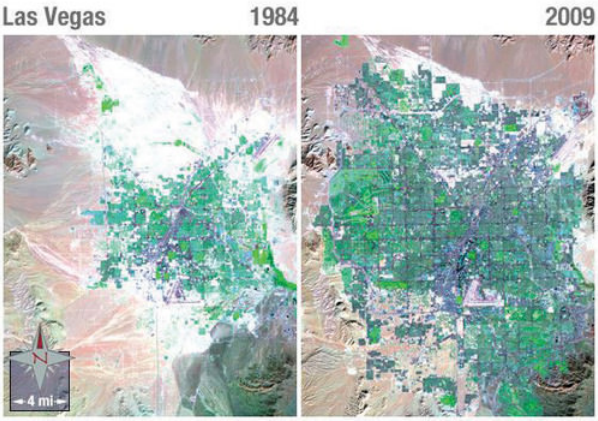
What is fueling this growth? It is part of the larger pattern of Americans flocking to the Sun Belt, searching for a better climate and lifestyle. Jobs have been created in recreation, in high-tech firms, and in other tertiary sector industries. Many of the migrants come from southern California because the housing in the Mountain West is more affordable and the region is much less crowded. Nearly all the growth is occurring in urban and suburban areas.

However, the rapid growth of the West since 1990 has come at a cost. In some areas, the large population is putting a strain on physical resources, such as water. Water is a hot-button political issue, particularly in the more arid states such as Nevada. Las Vegas, for example, is a desert city that gets 90 percent of its water from Lake Mead, a Colorado River reservoir.

This water comes from snowmelt in the Rocky Mountains far to the east, and due to drought and high water demand, Lake Mead's water level has been dropping. If current patterns persist, Las Vegas will eventually have a water crisis. The water shortage is happening even though Las Vegas has managed to reduce per capita water usage by raising prices for water and creating incentives to remove grass lawns. Las Vegas recycles 94 percent of all sewage water, which is the highest rate in the United States.

As the West's population increased rapidly, the region's urban areas became part of the real estate bubble of the early 2000s. Real estate prices grew and the housing industry built one residential subdivision after another in the suburbs surrounding cities such as Las Vegas, Denver, and Salt Lake City. However, in the late 2000s the real estate market collapsed in many parts of the country,

and Western cities were hard hit. As of early 2011, three of the five states with the highest foreclosure rates were in this region (Nevada, Utah, and Idaho), and the others were bordering states (Arizona and California).

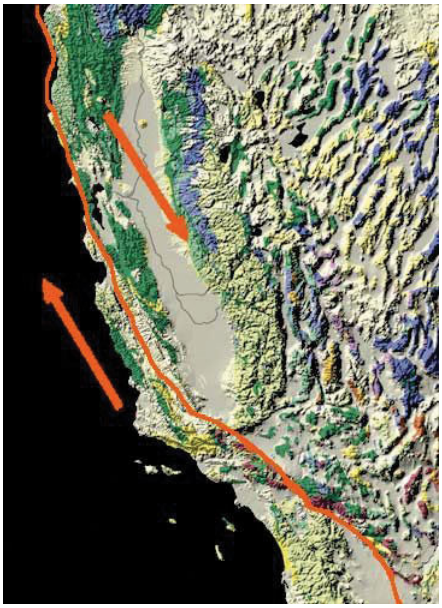


Notice the dark purple of city streets and the bright green of irrigated vegetation.

The Pacific Coast

The Pacific Coast includes the coastal portions of California, Oregon, and Washington, plus the southwestern portion of British Columbia in Canada. This region is typically thought of as two subregions: California and the Pacific Northwest. The two areas are quite different from each other in terms of climate and economy. However, both areas are part of the Ring of Fire that encircles the Pacific Ocean.

The Ring of Fire is a zone of earthquakes and volcanic eruptions that occur near where the Pacific tectonic plate meets the surrounding plates. In the United States, two areas of concern are the San Andreas Fault in California and Mount St. Helens in Washington. The 1906 earthquake that destroyed San Francisco was a result of activity on the San Andreas Fault, and scientists predict that strong earthquakes will reappear along the fault in the future. Thousands of small earthquakes occur along the fault every year. Mount St. Helens is a volcano in the Cascades that erupted in 1980, killing 57 people and destroying hundreds of square miles of forest.



The Pacific tectonic plate is moving northward relative to the North American plate.

https://k12.libretexts.org/@go/page/1953

The Pacific Coast represents a large population center a continent away from what we consider the North American core. Most of the region's population is urban, and Los Angeles and its metropolitan area is by far the largest area of settlement. Twelve percent of the US population lives in California, and the greater Los Angeles metropolitan area has more than 16 million people. Los Angeles is the second largest US city after New York.

Los Angeles is an automobile city. It developed into a major city in the mid-20th century at the time that automobile ownership had become common. People who lived in the area tended to move to suburbs that were connected to each other by an extensive highway system. Los Angeles is a highly decentralized city, unlike cities in other parts of North America that formed during other transportation regimes.

The Pacific Coast region is also famous for its agriculture. California's Central Valley lies between the Coast Ranges to the west and the Sierra Nevada to the east. It is one of the most productive agricultural areas in the world. The irrigated farmland in the valley produces all types of non-tropical crops and is the largest US producer of tomatoes, grapes, almonds, and many other foods. When other parts of the country are still frozen in the winter months, the fields of the Central Valley are already producing bountiful harvests. California is also famous for its wine production, especially in Napa Valley near San Francisco.



Napa Valley is considered to be one of the premier wine regions in the world.

Besides agriculture, the economic base of the Pacific Coast is diverse and rich. If it were an independent country, California would be the world's sixth-largest economy. Los Angeles is considered the capital of the US entertainment industry and other major industries including aerospace, manufacturing, and foreign trade. The port of Los Angeles is the busiest in North America, receiving shipments of goods from China and other Asian countries. Silicon Valley, near San Francisco, is a key area for high-tech research and Internet commerce. The Pacific Northwest is home to major corporations such as Boeing, Microsoft, Starbucks, Amazon.com, REI, T-Mobile, Costco, and Eddie Bauer. One of the wealthiest Americans, Bill Gates, lives near Seattle.



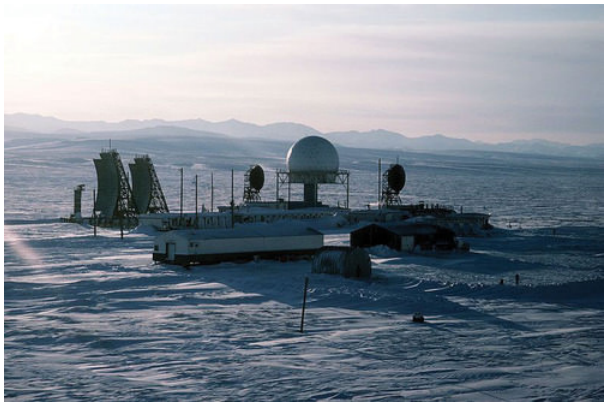
Silicon Valley is a region in the southern San Francisco Bay Area of Northern California.

Across the border to the north, Vancouver is Canada's third-largest metropolitan area with over two million residents. Vancouver is unlike any other city in North America. Nearly one-third of its residents are of Chinese origin, and more than half its population speak a language other than English at home. Vancouver began as a logging town but developed into its position as the Asian gateway to Canada because of its port, the busiest in Canada. Vancouver is a popular location for the film industry and is sometimes dubbed as "Hollywood North." It is also growing in the biotechnology and software industries.

The North

The North is the least densely populated of any region in North America due to its brutally cold winters, short growing season, and poor soils. It includes the boreal forests of the upper Great Lakes region and the Canadian Shield and the territory to the north of the tree line that extends beyond the Arctic Circle. Physically, this region is immense, including the state of Alaska and most of Canada. The climate is similar to that of Russia with cold continental and arctic climates, arctic air masses swooping down from the north, and long winters. Most inhabitants of the northern portions of North America live in the forested areas rather than in the frozen Arctic.

Two groups of people live in this region. First, there are the indigenous peoples who have lived in this region for thousands of years. They are small in number and traditionally make a living by hunting and fishing. More recently, the native populations such as the Inuit and the First Nations in Canada subsist by combining wage employment with their traditional means of living off the land. American Indians or Alaskan natives make up about 15 percent of Alaska's population. In Canada's Northwest Territories, First Nations people make up just over half of the population, but the total population is small. Nunavut is the northernmost territory in Canada and has a population of approximately 35,000 of which 85 percent are Inuit.



Distant Early Warning (DEW) line station formerly at Point Lay, Alaska.

The other residents are more recent immigrants who are there to profit from the land's natural resources. The economy is dominated by forestry, oil and natural gas extraction, and mining, which are in the primary economic sector. In the Canadian Shield, metallic ores such as copper, gold, nickel, silver, and uranium are found in the rocks. Moreover, diamond mines are in operation, as are mines producing rare earth elements used in computer screens, electric car batteries, and computer hard drives. These elements include metals such as cerium, terbium, dysprosium, and neodymium. Alaska is an oil-producing state, and the decision of whether to open additional areas of Alaska's Arctic to oil drilling remains controversial and uncertain.

Key Takeaways

- The economic core of North America has traditionally been in the US Northeast and its surrounding territory.
- As you move north from Boston into the rest of New England, the Canadian Maritimes, and Quebec, the economy is increasingly based on primary industries such as forestry and fishing.
- Agriculture and mining have been in decline in the South, while tertiary and quaternary industries have attracted new migrants to the region's urban and suburban areas.
- The Midwest and the Great Plains make up North America's breadbasket. The climate gets more arid as you move west, but through irrigation, agricultural productivity remains high.
- The Southwest is unique in its high proportion of Hispanic and Native American residents.
- The Mountain West is growing rapidly, especially in its urban and suburban areas. This is putting stress on the physical environment (particularly its water resources) and made the region susceptible to the real estate collapse.
- The Pacific Coast region is prone to earthquakes and volcanic activity, yet it is home to the second-largest metropolitan area in the United States and is known for its rich, diverse economic base.

- The far northern stretches of North America are sparsely populated, with an economy based on primary industries such as forestry and extraction. The North, both Canada and Alaska, is also known for its large native populations.

Vocabulary Terms

Chapter 3.3 Regions of the United States and Canada

alluvial plain	An area of fertile soil left by river floods
Canadian Shield	A northern part of the interior lowlands that is rocky, a flat region covering nearly two million square miles and encircling the Hudson Bay
Columbian Exchange	The exchange of animals, plants, and diseases between America, Africa, and Europe following the voyage of Christopher Columbus. Trade from the Old World (Europe) to the New World (North and South America) and back
Continental Divide	The line of the highest points in North America that marks the separation between rivers flowing eastward and westward
ecumene	A geographic region that is well suited for permanent settlement by people
First Nations	A group of Canada's Native American people
glaciation	The changing of landforms by slow-moving glaciers
Great Plains	A vast grassland of central North America that is largely treeless and ascends to 4,000 feet above sea level.
hydroelectric Power	Electricity that is generated from the power of moving water.
metis	A person of mixed French-Canadian and Native American ancestry
moraine	A mass of dirt and rock that has been left by a glacier as it retreats
parliament	A representative lawmaking body whose members are elected or appointed in which legislative and executive functions are combined
postindustrial economy	An economic phase in which manufacturing no longer plays a dominant role
Rust Belt	Also known as the manufacturing belt, it is located in the northeastern parts of the United States and Midwest states that contain older industries and factories
St. Lawrence Seaway	North America's most important deepwater ship route, connecting the Great Lakes to the Atlantic Ocean by way of the St. Lawrence River
Sun Belt	A wide area of the United States that has a mild climate all year

Applying Knowledge

Interactive Notebook Activities

1. Name the key characteristics of the regions of the United States and Canada.
2. Describe the patterns of population growth or decline for the various regions.
3. List which regions have significant minority groups and why.
4. Explain the relationship between the environmental and social costs to rapid growth in the West.
5. Summarize how physical geography has contributed to economic activities.

Discussion and Study Questions

1. Where is the largest US megalopolis located? What region is it part of?
2. What is the purpose of long lots? Where would they be most prominent?
3. What have been some of the traditional economic activities in the American South? How is this changing?
4. Why is there a difference between where spring wheat and winter wheat is grown?
5. Name the main ethnic groups that are prominent in the American Southwest.
6. Why does the population continue to increase in the American West?
7. What makes the Pacific Coast region an unstable place for human development?
8. Why does the Pacific Coast region have both high agricultural production and large high-tech urban cities?
9. Why does the desert region of the American Southwest continue to attract a growing population?
10. What have been the main economic activities in The North?

Real-World Geography Exercise

Using Google Maps, find a large city located in one of the regions below. Calculate the distance and how long it would take to drive from your house to your chosen destination. Be prepared to share your answers.

- Northwestern Core
- New England and the Canadian Maritimes
- French Canada
- The American South
- The Midwest and Great Plains
- The American Southwest
- The Mountain West
- The Pacific Coast
- The North

Mapping Exercise

Mapping Our World ESRI-ARGIS Online Module 2 Lesson 2

Life on the Edge: In this activity, students will investigate the Pacific Ocean's Ring of Fire, with particular focus on earthquake and volcanic activity in East Asia, where millions of people live with the daily threat of significant seismic or volcanic events.

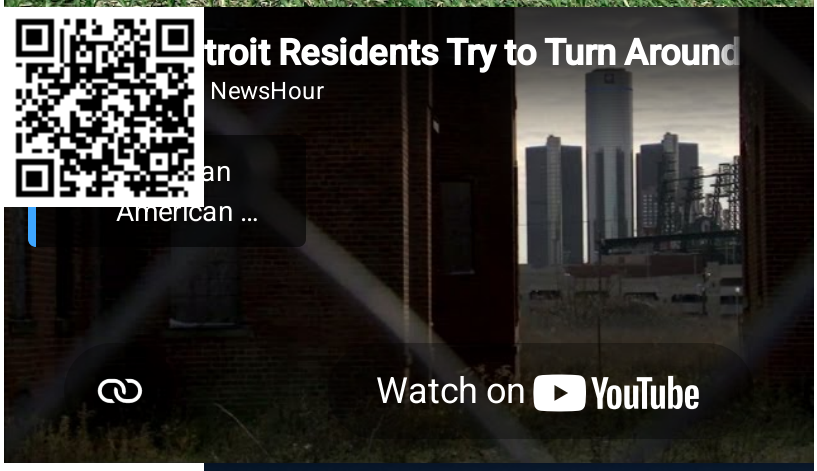
Student Supplemental Materials-download

Student Answer Doc-download

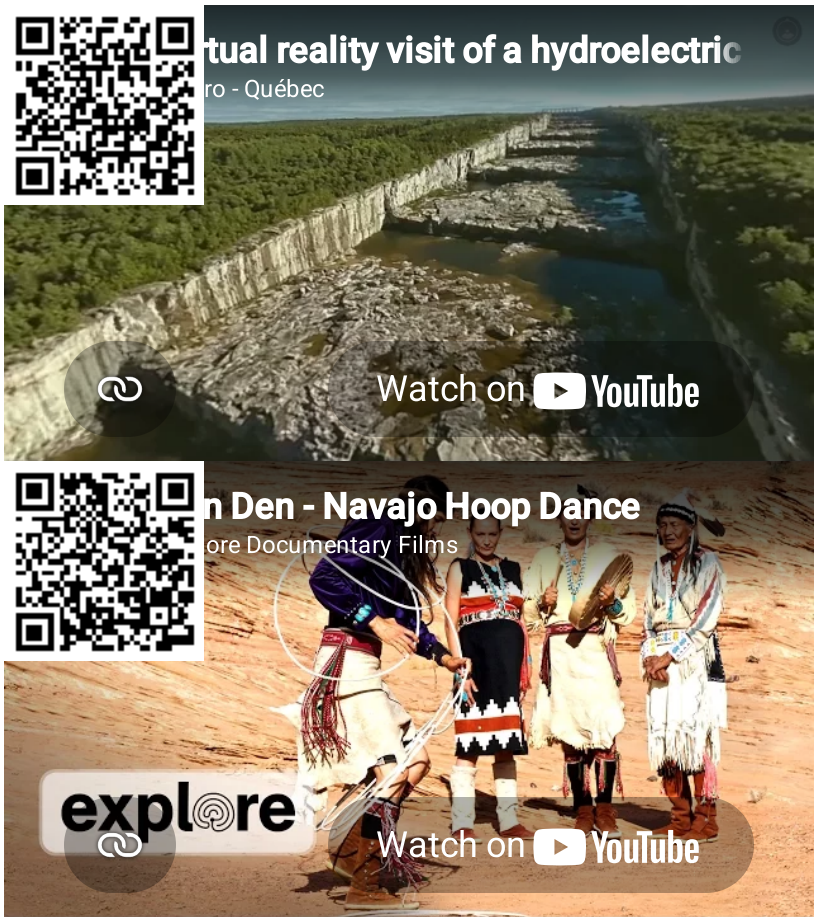
Student Assessment Doc-download

Teacher Materials-download


nter Pivot Irrigation Systems | Ho
nce Channel
Watch on YouTube


troit Residents Try to Turn Around
NewsHour
an
American ...
Watch on YouTube


otage of the 1980 Mount St. Hele
thsonian Channel
Watch on YouTube



Helpful Websites for the Study of Geography

Canadian Encyclopedia is an encyclopedia funded by the Canadian government covering all branches of knowledge. Their scholarly collection includes interactive materials.

CIA World Factbook provides information on the people, history, government, economy, energy, geography, communications, transportation, military, and transnational issues for the world's entities.

Congress.gov is a US government website where you can find federal legislation, past and present, as well as information about the US legal system.

Drug Enforcement Administration (DEA) is a government agency website that provides current news, resources, topics of interest, information about drugs, careers in the DEA, and a tip hotline.

Library of Congress is the largest library in the world and provides manuscripts, files, information, pictures, and videos.

NASA Earth Observatory (NEO) is a US government agency website that allows users to search for and retrieve satellite images of Earth.

National Archives is a US government website that provides historical documents, photos, records, publications, and educator resources.

National Oceanic and Atmospheric Association (NOAA) is a US government agency website that provides weather-related information and ocean research.

National Map is a website by the United States Geological Survey and other federal, state, and local agencies that deliver topographic information for the United States.

NationMaster is a massive central data source and a handy way to graphically compare nations.

Real-Time World Air Quality Index is a website that measures most locations in the world for air pollution in real time.

StateMaster is a unique statistical database, which allows you to research and compare a multitude of different data on US states.

United Nations (UN) is an international organization founded in 1945 and made up of 193 member states. The UN maintains international peace and security, protects human rights, delivers humanitarian aid, promotes sustainable development, and upholds international law.

United States Census Bureau is a US government agency that provides a population clock, data, surveys, statistics, a library with information and infographics, news about the economy, and much more.

United States Geological Survey (USGS) is a US government agency website that provides scientific information about the natural hazards that threaten lives, the natural resources we rely on, the health of our ecosystems and environment, and the impacts of climate and land-use change.

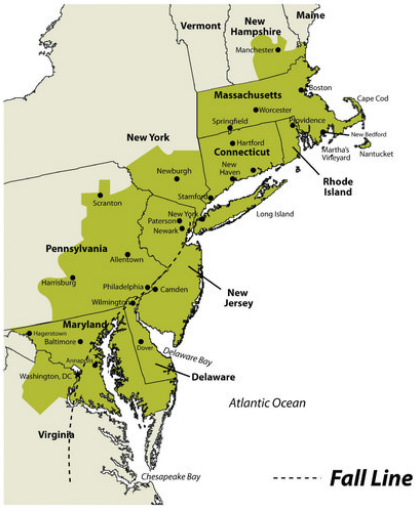
Whitehouse.gov is a US government website that provides the latest presidential news, information about the budget, policy, defense, and many more topics.

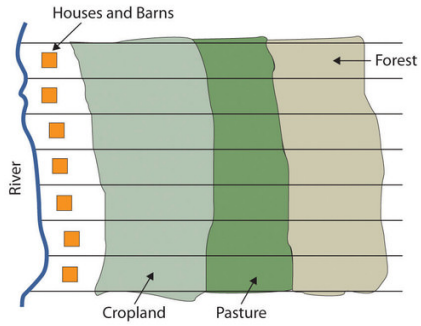
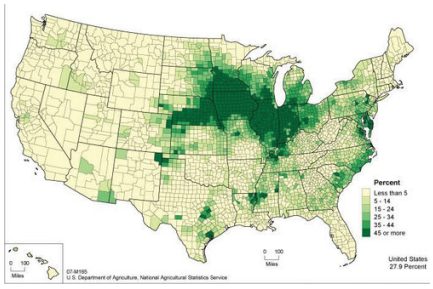
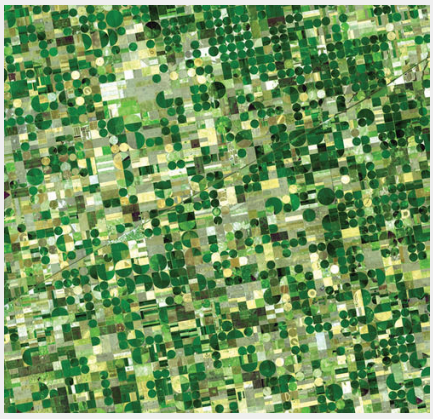
World Health Organization (WHO) is under the United Nations and provides leadership on matters critical to health, shapes the research agenda on health, and monitors the health situation and assessing health trends around the world. Their website provides information on the state of health around the world, outbreaks, current health news, and more.

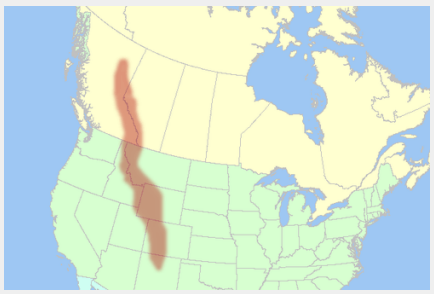
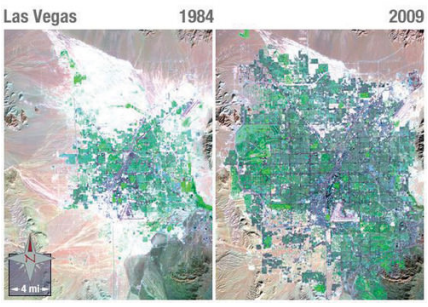
World Trade Organization (WTO) is an intergovernmental organization that regulates international trade. The website provides

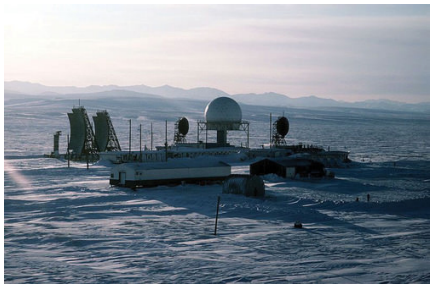
LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

information on the history of the multilateral trading system, featured videos, news and events, trade topics, and more.

Image	Reference	Attributions
	**[Figure 1]**	**Credit:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeograp...es-and-canada/ **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/c7825eb44409f27a90197f4871e199ff.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 2]**	**Credit:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeograp...es-and-canada/ **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/94f9224a82ac88c45ae0e19b41dbb8b0.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 3]**	**Credit:** Henk Sijgers – A direct line to city hall – CC BY-NC 2.0. **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/chapter/4-5-regions-of-the-united-states-and-canada/ **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

	**[Figure 4]**	**Credit:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeograp...es-and-canada/ **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/d57713db270fa9f9c503e21b7689840a.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 5]**	**Credit:** Photo by R. Berglee – CC BY-NC-SA. **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/95c7ace10732eda62687a8148bfaca8f.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 6]**	**Credit:** Map courtesy of US Department of Agriculture. **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/ad5ae228c3d809fe87880630f1aa62a4.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 7]**	**Credit:** Photo courtesy of NASA/GSFC/METI/ERSDAC/JAROS and U.S./Japan ASTER Science Team **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/f1e0ed51cccbb61c7542bc941e225051.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 8]**	**Credit:** Photo by R. Berglee – CC BY-NC-SA. **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/9dc0b4802b648927015914dfd280bbce.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

	**[Figure 9]**	**Credit:** Grand Canyon National Park – Grand Canyon Eagle Dancer – CC BY 2.0. **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/13db7b5114ee42fdad78b050195606d6.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 10]**	**Credit:** By Gorgo (Photo taken by author) [Public domain], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Moraine_Lake_17092005.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 11]**	**Credit:** By al guy (talk · contribs) [GFDL (http://www.gnu.org/copyleft/fdl.html) or CC-BY-SA-3.0 (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0/)], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:RockyMountainsLocatorMap.png **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 12]**	**Credit:** Images courtesy of NASA **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/a226ae82224e27dc4697a48ef3eb8a29.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

	**[Figure 13]**	**Credit:** Image courtesy of USGS **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/b27dfb295487dbc06d713defb7533d1c.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 14]**	**Credit:** Photograph by D Ramey Logan [CC BY-SA 3.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0)], from Wikimedia Commons **Source:** commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Napa_Valley_grapes_Photo_D_Ramey_Logan_02.JPG **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 15]**	**Credit:** By Photo created and uploaded by SCUMATT (from en.Wikipedia) [CC BY 2.5 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/2.5)], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:SJPan.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 16]**	**Credit:** Wikimedia Commons – public domain. **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/0d310000cc85c9fedc74201874b54f17.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

This page titled 3.3: Regions of the United States and Canada (2 Days) is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by CK12 via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

3.4: United States- Population and Religion (2 Days)

Chapter Challenges

- Explain the concepts of the cultural melting pot and the American Dream and how they have contributed to American society and culture.
- Describe the current demographic profile of the United States.
- Identify the size, distribution, and other characteristics of the Hispanic population in the United States.
- Explain the two most significant processes that led to the spatial distribution of African Americans in the United States.
- Describe the distribution of the dominant religious affiliations in the United States.

Learning Objectives

TEKS Regional Unit 03: Us and Canada: Chapter 3.1 Population and Religion in the USA

WG.6B Explain the processes that have caused changes in settlement patterns, including urbanization, transportation, access to and availability of resources, and economic activities.

WG.7A Analyze pyramids and use other data, graphics, and maps to describe the population characteristics of different societies and to predict future population trends

WG.7B Explain how physical geography and push and pull forces, including political, economic, social, and environmental conditions, affect the routes and flows of human migration.

WG.7C Describe trends in world population growth and distribution.

WG.7D Analyze how globalization affects connectivity, standard of living, pandemics, and loss of local culture.

WG.17B describe central ideas and spatial distribution of major religious traditions, including Buddhism, Christianity, Hinduism, Islam, Judaism, and Sikhism.

WG.17D Evaluate the experiences and contributions of diverse groups to multicultural societies**.**

TEKS and ELPS for Regional World Geography Unit 03--United States and Canada from TEKS Resource System

Population and Religion in the United States

The American “Melting Pot”

Early immigration to America was dominated by people from the British Isles, resulting in an American population for whom speaking English and practicing Protestant Christianity was the norm. There were some regional exceptions to this, such as Catholicism in Maryland and the widespread speaking of German in Pennsylvania. However, English and Protestantism were standard in the American colonies. As migrants arrived in the United States from non-English-speaking countries, within a generation they learned English and assimilated into American society. This gave rise to the idea of the United States as a cultural melting pot.

People were drawn to the United States by the hope of economic opportunities. Most immigrants were poor and came to the United States to make a living and improve their way of life. They viewed assimilation into mainstream society as a necessity for success. They believed in the American Dream—that through hard work, you could achieve upward mobility and financial success no matter your background. This dream came true for millions of Americans.

According to the US Census Bureau Population Clock, the population of the United States is more than 325 million people. It is the third most populated country in the world after China and India. Among developed countries, the US population is one of the fastest growing, at about one percent each year. This is because of a fertility rate of approximately 2.1, which is higher than the 1.5 of most European countries. Another contributing factor is a positive net migration rate (more people immigrating to the United States than emigrating from it). In terms of human well-being, life expectancy is more than 78 years for men and 80 years for

women. While this may seem high, especially when compared with a century ago, life expectancy in the United States is lower than in 49 other countries.

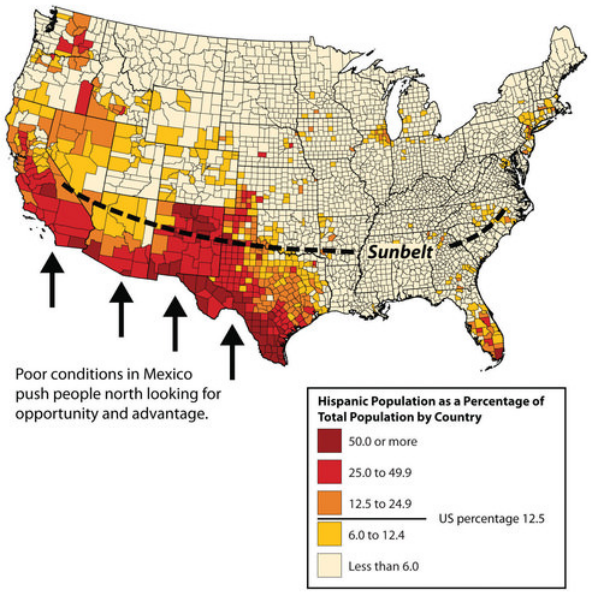
As a country of immigrants, the United States is home to people from all corners of the world as well as many ethnic minority groups. According to the 2010 census, the ethnic minority groups in the United States included 16.3 percent Hispanic, 12.6 percent African American, 5 percent Asian and Pacific Islander, and 1 percent Native American. [1] An interesting trend is that Asians are growing faster than any other ethnic group in California. The 2010 census reported that the Asian population in California had increased 31.5 percent since 2000, to a total of five million.

The Hispanic Population in the United States

One of the most striking shifts in immigration patterns of the past few decades has been the dramatic increase in Hispanic/Latino immigrants to the United States. There have long been Spanish speakers living in the United States (recall that Spain colonized Florida, Texas, and the Southwest before those regions became part of the United States). However, for most of American history, the Hispanic minority had little impact outside of a few areas of the country.

In 1970, Hispanics made up less than five percent of the US population. However, by 2010, 48 million Hispanics made up about 16 percent of the population (see the map below). For the first time, Hispanics were the largest ethnic minority in the United States, surpassing African Americans as the largest minority starting with the 2000 US census (12.5 percent Hispanic compared with 12.3 percent African American).

The US Hispanic population doubled between the 1990 and 2000 censuses. Between 2000 and 2006, Hispanic population growth accounted for about half the nation's growth and grew about four times faster than the country's population as a whole. The growth of the US Hispanic population is a direct result of increased immigration from Latin America to the United States in the late 20th and early 21st centuries [2] as well as the Hispanic population having higher fertility rates than the non-Hispanic US population. [3]



This map depicts the Hispanic population in the United States and the US Sun Belt.

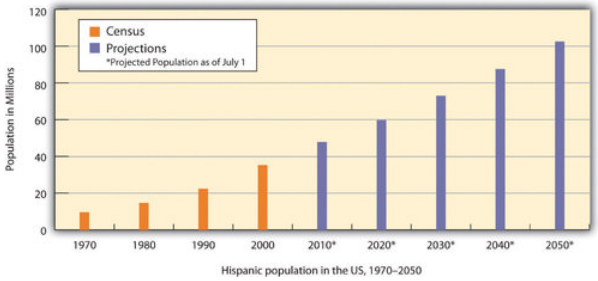
Nearly half of the Hispanics in the United States live in California or Texas. There has been a large increase in the Hispanic population outside of those states in the past decade, especially in the South. For example, Arkansas, Georgia, Tennessee, North Carolina, and South Carolina have all experienced Hispanic population growth rates between 55 and 61 percent from 2000 to 2006.

All regions of the country saw double-digit growth rates of their Hispanic populations during that time. In places such as California, the large Hispanic population has an especially significant impact on the economy, politics, and every aspect of social life. More than one-third of Californians are Hispanic at 37 percent, while 42 percent are non-Hispanic white, and 7 percent are African American.

Who are the Hispanics living in the United States? Most were born in the United States (60 percent), while the rest are immigrants. Two-thirds are either from Mexico or of Mexican descent. Others are from the US territory of Puerto Rico, Cuba, or the Dominican Republic. Puerto Ricans are US citizens and can move to and from the US mainland without any special documentation requirements.

More Hispanics come from Central America than from South America. Hispanics work in all professions but are found in professions such as agriculture, construction, and food service at higher rates than the country's non-Hispanic population.

The draw of opportunities and advantages has always pulled people toward the United States. While many of the Latin American immigrants enter the United States legally, according to the US Department of Homeland Security's Office of Immigration Statistics, there were about 10.8 million undocumented immigrants living in the United States as of 2010. Sixty-two percent are from Mexico. [4] This number is lower than it was in previous years, possibly because of the economic recession and higher-than-usual rates of unemployment.



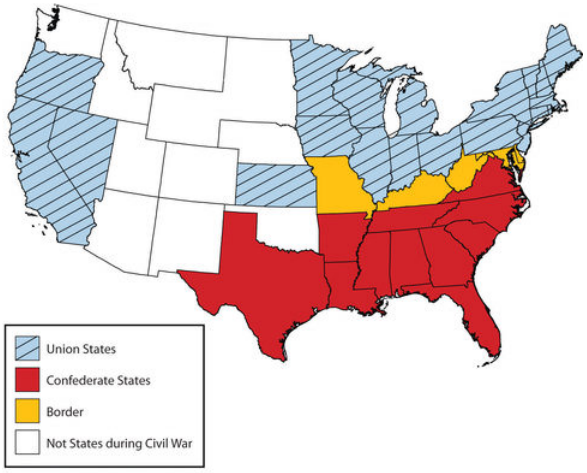
Data from the US Census Bureau, 1970, 1980, 1990, and 2000 Decennial Censuses; Population Projections, July 1, 2010, to July 1, 2050.

The U.S .and Mexico border is about 1,954 miles long and runs through an arid and open region between the two countries. The Chihuahuan Desert and the Sonoran Desert encompass much of the land separating the two countries, which is why it is difficult to control illegal immigration. Undocumented individuals will risk death crossing these deserts to find jobs in the United States. According to 2010 estimates, undocumented workers make up about five percent of the United States' civilian workforce, including approximately 24 percent of the agricultural workforce.

The amount of earnings sent from undocumented workers in the United States to Mexico is estimated in the billions of dollars. This money from Mexican nationals living outside Mexico and sending money home to their families are Mexico's second-largest source of foreign income. These payments are known as remittances. Without this money, many Mexican communities would have a hard time meeting their basic needs for survival.

The African American Population in the United States

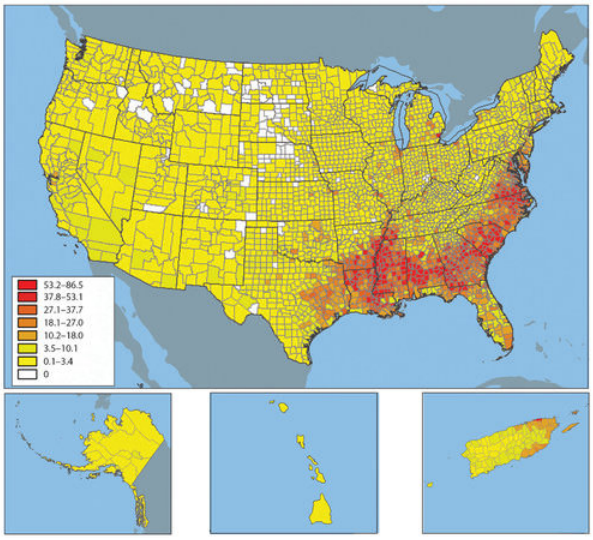
Most African Americans were concentrated in the South before the Civil War, where they worked as slaves in the cotton and tobacco plantations that supported the region. In some counties, African Americans made up most of the population, and this did not change when the war was over. Many of the newly freed slaves remained as poor agricultural workers in the South well into the 20th century. Even as late as 1910, seven out of every eight African Americans lived in the South.



Union States are in the north, Confederate States are in the south, and border states are in the middle.

In the late 19th and early 20th centuries, as the industrialization of northern cities was accelerating, the increased need for factory workers was largely met by immigration from Europe. However, when World War I began in 1914, European immigration began to slow down. European immigration almost came to a complete stop in the 1920s as Americans set quotas in place to reduce the number of Eastern European immigrants. At that time, the factories in the Manufacturing Belt continued to need workers. However, instead of European workers, they recruited African Americans from the South.

The need for workers led to a massive migration of African Americans from the South to cities in the North and West. This migration was so important in the history of the United States that it is called the Great Migration. Between 1910 and 1925, more than 10 percent of African Americans made the journey north and even more followed later. Examining the map below of the distribution of African Americans today shows the legacy of the Great Migration. Today, African Americans live in many parts of the United States, both in the South and in post-industrial cities of the north and the Midwest. They also now live in Sun Belt cities, as people of all races look for jobs related to the new information technologies and service industries.



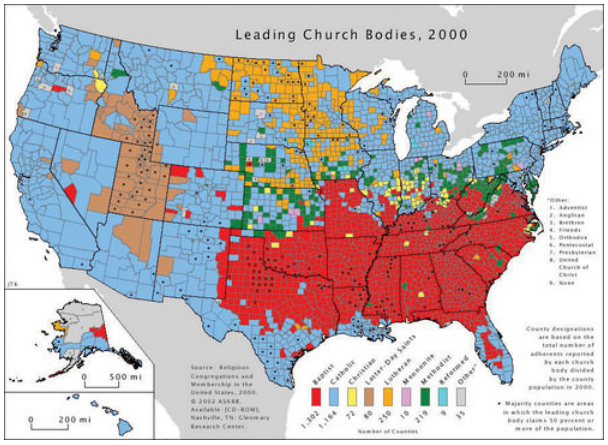
Black/African American Population by County, 2000.

Geography of Religion in the United States

Most early settlers to the United States were Protestant Christians. Puritans lived in New England and Anglicans (later called Episcopalians) lived in Virginia. Roman Catholic immigrants settled in Maryland, and members of the Society of Friends, also

known as Quakers, founded Pennsylvania. Even within this overall picture, there was religious diversity in the United States. This diversity increased as new arrivals came from different countries with different religious backgrounds.

The current pattern of religious affiliation in the United States remains complex. You can find congregations of nearly every major religion, and many minor ones, in every area of the country. However, there are clear patterns to the geography of religion in the United States that tell stories of immigration and migration history, as well as stories about other aspects of American history.



Distribution of Religious Organizations in the United States.

The most striking feature of the map above is the saturation of red in the Southeast in which Baptist churches are predominant. Although Baptist churches outnumber all of the other denominations in about 45 percent of all counties in the United States, most of those counties are found in the South. This region is known as the Bible Belt. It is a region in which churches, for the most part, teach a literal interpretation of the Bible. Baptist churches grew in popularity in the South after the Civil War. Whereas, other churches, such as the Methodists went into decline. Baptist churches are popular in the South amongst African Americans and whites.



Dehart's Bible and Tire is located in the peripheral region of eastern Kentucky in the Bible Belt. Customers get a free Bible with every set of new tires.

Another Protestant region in the United States is in northern Appalachia and the lower Midwest from Ohio to Iowa and Kansas. As seen on the map, there are a variety of denominations. Some of the counties are Baptist, some are Methodist, and others are lesser known Christian churches, such as Disciples of Christ. The Methodist and other Christian areas were heavily influenced by the Second Great Awakening of the early 19th century, which promoted the theology that every person could be saved through revivals.

The movement provided for strong showings of Protestant denominations that arose during that time. The third Protestant region is the northern Midwest and Great Plains: Minnesota, the Dakotas, and surrounding areas. This was the destination of German and Scandinavian Lutheran settlers during the late 19th and early 20th centuries, and the leading denominations today in much of that area remain Lutheran.

The Roman Catholic Church, which is the leading religious body in 40 percent of US counties, is well-represented in the Northeast, West, and Southwest. In the Northeast and Midwest, the Catholic dominance points to 19th and early 20th-century immigration from Roman Catholic countries in Europe such as Italy, Ireland, and Poland. Those earlier Catholics have been joined more

recently by large numbers of Hispanic immigrants. The dominance of Roman Catholics in the western United States, the Southwest, and even Florida in the Southeast are a reflection of the strong Hispanic presence in those parts of the country.

In the western United States, the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-Day Saints (Mormon church) dominates the region including Utah and surrounding states close to the Utah border. Utah was the destination of Mormons as they migrated westward during the mid 19th century.

Major urban centers are home to people who follow all the major religions of the world. Muslim populations are found in cities as a result of late 20th century immigrants arriving from countries such as India, Pakistan, and places in the Middle East and moving to urban areas for employment. Detroit and its surrounding counties in southeastern Michigan are one part of the country with a high concentration of Muslim immigrants.

Key Takeaways

- US immigrants learned English and assimilated into American society, giving rise to the idea of the United States as a cultural melting pot.
- Immigrants created the American Dream—the idea that by working hard and following the rules, one could achieve upward mobility and financial success regardless of one's background or heritage.
- The Hispanic population is the largest minority group in the United States, and its population is growing.
- Hispanics have an especially strong presence in California and Texas, but are found all over the South as well as in rural and urban areas around the country.
- One-third of Hispanics are immigrants to the United States, and most undocumented workers to the United States are Hispanic.
- Mexican nationals are important to the US workforce, and they send home billions of dollars each year.
- African Americans are heavily represented in former plantation agricultural states of the South, as well as in cities of the Rust Belt and far West.
- Patterns of religious observance in the United States reflect immigration patterns.

Vocabulary Terms

Chapter 3.4 Population and Region

animistic	The belief that all things found in nature have a spirit
carrying capacity	The number of organisms a piece of land can support without negative effects
cultural diffusion	The spread of cultural beliefs and social activities from one group to another
cultural hearth	A region where cultural traits developed; a site of innovation from which basic ideas, materials, and technology diffuse to many cultures
cultural innovation	The use of existing technology to create something new
cultural trait	The single elements of normal practice in a culture--Ex: private space, hand gestures, eye contact, greetings
dependency ratio	The number of people too old to work (64+) to the number of people too young to work (-15) compared to the number of people active in the labor force
dialect	A regional variation of a language distinguished by vocabulary, spelling and pronunciation
doubling time	The number of years needed to double a population, assuming a constant rate of natural increase
ethnic religion	A religion with a relatively concentrated spatial distribution whose principles are likely to be based on the physical characteristics of the particular location in which its adherents are concentrated
globalization	Actions or processes that involve the entire world and result in making something worldwide in scope
monotheistic	The doctrine or belief in the existence of only one god
polytheistic	Belief in or worship of more than one god
pull factor	Factors that attract people to another location. EX: good economic opportunities, high salaries, favorable climate
push factor	Factors that cause people to leave their homeland and migrate to another region. EX: drought, other natural disasters, war, religious or ethnic persecution
society	An extended social group having a distinctive cultural and economic organization
universalizing religion	A religion that attempts to appeal to all people, not just those living a particular location

Applying Knowledge

Interactive Notebook Activities

Explain the concepts of the cultural melting pot and the American Dream and how they have contributed to American society and culture.

1. Describe the current demographic profile of the United States.
2. Identify the size, distribution, and other characteristics of the Hispanic population in the United States.

3. Explain the two most significant processes that led to the spatial distribution of African Americans in the United States.
4. Describe the distribution of the dominant religious affiliations in the United States.

Discussion and Study Questions

1. Why has the United States been called a melting pot? What are the largest minority groups in the country?
2. What parts of the United States have the highest representation of the four largest minority groups?
3. How did the U.S Hispanic population change in size and location from 2000 to 2010? Why is the Hispanic population growing faster than other ethnic groups in the United States?
4. What two states have about 50 percent of the Hispanic population?
5. What have been the push-pull factors for Hispanic immigration to the United States?
6. What is a remittance, and how are remittances significant for immigrants to the United States?
7. Describe the spatial pattern of the African American population. Why do so many blacks live in the Southeast?
8. What was the Great Migration, and what were some of its long-term impacts on the United States?
9. List three of the main Protestant religious denominations in the United States, describe their spatial patterns, and explain what caused these patterns.
10. Name the states or provinces that have high percentages of Catholics.

Mapping Exercise

ESRI GEO Inquiry

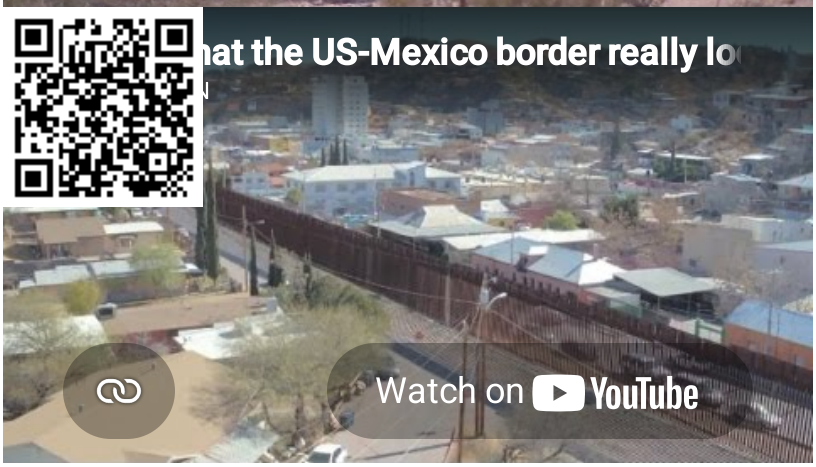
We The People: Students will explain where philosophical ideals regarding our government originated, and how they have been incorporated into the US Constitution.

Language and Religion: Students will explore patterns of cultural diffusion through linguistic and religious data. The activity uses a web-based map

Videos for Geography Enrichment







Helpful Websites in the Study of Geography

Canadian Encyclopedia is an encyclopedia funded by the Canadian government covering all branches of knowledge. Their scholarly collection includes interactive materials.

CIA World Factbook provides information on the people, history, government, economy, energy, geography, communications, transportation, military, and transnational issues for the world's entities.

Congress.gov is a US government website where you can find federal legislation, past and present, as well as information about the US legal system.

Drug Enforcement Administration (DEA) is a government agency website that provides current news, resources, topics of interest, information about drugs, careers in the DEA, and a tip hotline.

Library of Congress is the largest library in the world and provides manuscripts, files, information, pictures, and videos.

NASA Earth Observatory (NEO) is a US government agency website that allows users to search for and retrieve satellite images of Earth.

National Archives is a US government website that provides historical documents, photos, records, publications, and educator resources.

National Oceanic and Atmospheric Association (NOAA) is a US government agency website that provides weather-related information and ocean research.

National Map is a website by the United States Geological Survey and other federal, state, and local agencies that deliver topographic information for the United States.

NationMaster is a massive central data source and a handy way to graphically compare nations.

Real-Time World Air Quality Index is a website that measures most locations in the world for air pollution in real time.

StateMaster is a unique statistical database, which allows you to research and compare a multitude of different data on US states.

United Nations (UN) is an international organization founded in 1945 and made up of 193 member states. The UN maintains international peace and security, protects human rights, delivers humanitarian aid, promotes sustainable development, and upholds international law.

United States Census Bureau is a US government agency that provides a population clock, data, surveys, statistics, a library with information and infographics, news about the economy, and much more.

United States Geological Survey (USGS) is a US government agency website that provides scientific information about the natural hazards that threaten lives, the natural resources we rely on, the health of our ecosystems and environment, and the impacts of climate and land-use change.

Whitehouse.gov is a US government website that provides the latest presidential news, information about the budget, policy, defense, and many more topics.

World Health Organization (WHO) is under the United Nations and provides leadership on matters critical to health, shapes the research agenda on health, and monitors the health situation and assessing health trends around the world. Their website provides information on the state of health around the world, outbreaks, current health news, and more.

World Trade Organization (WTO) is an intergovernmental organization that regulates international trade. The website provides information on the history of the multilateral trading system, featured videos, news and events, trade topics, and more.

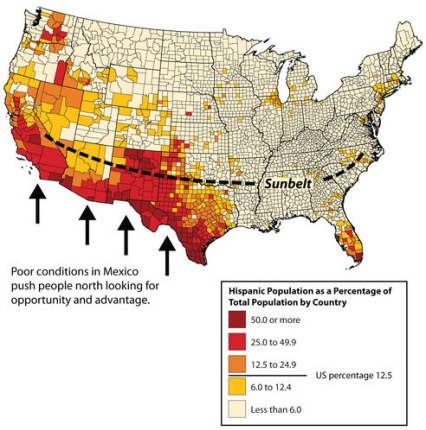
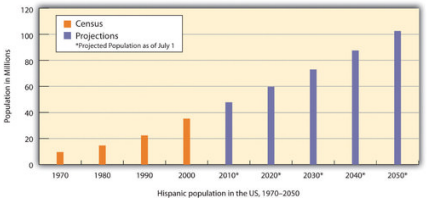
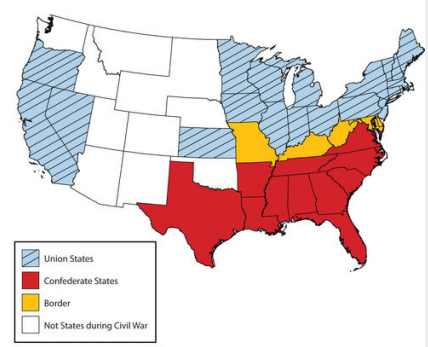
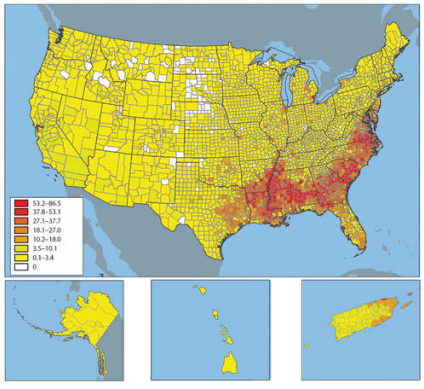
References

[1] “2010 Census Data,” US Census Bureau,

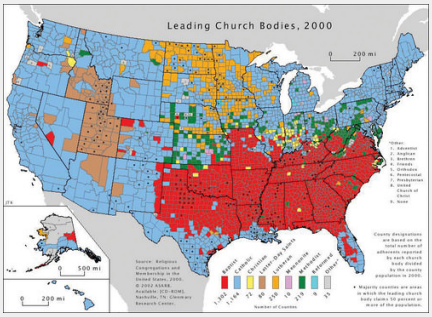
[2] Michael Hoefer, Nancy Rytina, and Bryan C. Baker, “Estimates of the Unauthorized Immigrant Population Residing in the United States: January 2008,”

[3] Randal C. Archibold, “Arizona Enacts Stringent Law on Immigration,”

[4] "Immigration Statistics," US Department of Homeland Security

Image	Reference	Attributions
	**[Figure 1]**	**Credit:** Map courtesy of NationalAtlas. **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/c8f2929bbe5a39b99f258c695dbbf3c2.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 2]**	**Credit:** US Census Bureau **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/c1985bb3dbe1d9c2b2e08363d845c3eb.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 3]**	**Credit:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeograp...es-and-canada/ **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/1256ddf849dc016f83c9dea79ae60041.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 4]**	**Credit:** Map courtesy of NationalAtlas. **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/2bd17a1216ec0694e3ec0e8bdb84c5eb.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

https://k12.libretexts.org/@go/page/1952

	**[Figure 5]**	**Credit:** Wikimedia Commons – public domain. **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/38b2b4f0a71dc29732dc7b6b35f99363.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 6]**	**Credit:** Photo by R. Berglee – CC BY-NC-SA. **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/3bc6d088a3a5b3dea4f15370e3684866.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

This page titled 3.4: United States- Population and Religion (2 Days) is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by CK12 via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

3.5: Canada (2 Days)

Chapter Challenges

- Identify where in the country most Canadians live and why.
- Identify and locate the dominant physical features of Canada.
- Distinguish between the French-speaking and English-speaking areas of Canada and discuss the key activities in the effort to promote French culture in Canada.
- Name the characteristics of some of the minority ethnic groups in Canada.
- Determine which economic sectors are at the core of the Canadian economy and how the Canadian and US economies are connected.

Learning Objectives

TEKS Regional Unit 03 United States and Canada: Chapter 3.5 Canada

WG.1A Analyze significant physical features and environmental conditions that have influenced the past and migration patterns and have shaped the distribution of culture groups today.

WG.1B Trace the spatial diffusion of phenomena such as the Columbian Exchange or the diffusion of American popular culture and describe the effects on regions of contact

WG.2A Describe the human and physical characteristics of the same regions at different periods of time to analyze relationships between past events and current conditions

WG.3A Explain the weather conditions and climate in relation to annual changes in Earth-Sun relationships

WG.4A Explain how elevation, latitude, wind systems, ocean currents, position on a continent, and mountain barriers influence temperature, precipitation, and distribution of climate regions

WG.4B Describe different land forms such as plains, mountains, and islands and the physical processes that cause their development

WG.4C Explain the influence of climate on the distribution of biomes in different regions

WG.5A Analyze how the character of a place is related to its political, economic, social, and cultural elements

WG.6B Explain the processes that have caused changes in settlement patterns, including urbanization, transportation, access to and availability of resources, and economic activities

WG.8A Compare ways that humans depend on, adapt to, and modify the physical environment, including the influences of culture and technology

WG.9A Identify physical and/or human factors such as climate, vegetation, language, trade networks, political units, river systems, and religion that constitute a region

WG.10D Compare global trade patterns over time and analyze the implications of globalization, including outsourcing and free trade zones

WG.11C Assess how changes in climate, resources, and infrastructure (technology, transportation, and communication) affect the location and patterns of economic activities.

WG.16C Describe life in a variety of urban and rural areas in the world to compare political, economic, social, and environmental changes.

WG.21C Create and interpret types of maps to answer geographic questions, infer relationships, and analyze change.

WG.22A Create appropriate graphics such as maps, diagrams, tables, and graphs to communicate geographic features, distributions, and relationships. features, distributions, and relationships

WG.22B Generate summaries, generalizations, and thesis statements supported by evidence

Canada

Canadian Provinces and Territories



Canada's democratic state shares a similar developmental history and economic status with the United States. As of 2011, Canada had a population of just over 34 million, which is less than the population of California. Canada is larger than the United States, making it the second largest country in the world. However, despite this vast territory for a relatively small population, more than 90 percent of Canadians live within 150 miles of the US border.

Northern Canada is not considered part of Canada's habitable zone for permanent human settlement. Only a narrow band of territory in southern and eastern Canada has the climate and physical geography suitable for agricultural production and widespread settlement. Moreover, Canada's economy is so closely tied to that of the United States that it makes sense for people to live close to the US border.

Physical Geography of Canada

Ontario has by far the largest population of any of Canada's provinces, with about 39 percent of the total. Quebec, the dominantly French-speaking province, is home to about 23 percent. Almost everyone else lives in British Colombia, west of the Rocky Mountains (13 percent); in the prairies (18 percent); or along the Atlantic coast (7 percent). The wide-open areas of Canada's far north are occupied by only one-third of one percent of the population.

The continental Type D climate dominates most of central Canada, with its characteristically warm summers and cold winters. However, summers are cooler as you move farther north. Canada's west coast receives the most precipitation—between 80 and 100 inches per year. The coastal areas in the Maritime Provinces can receive up to 60 inches per year. The northern territory of Nunavut barely receives 10 inches per year, usually in the form of snow.

The far northern region of Canada has an arctic type E climate. The conditions there are so harsh that only a very few people inhabit it. The cultural influence of the colder climates and the long winters on the people is evident by the sports that are enjoyed by most Canadian citizens. Ice hockey is Canada's most popular sport and its most popular spectator sport. Other sports such as curling are also common in Canada.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org



The Canadian and Finnish junior teams face off during a junior ice hockey exhibition game in Calgary, Alberta.

Canada has abundant natural resources for its population. The Canadian Shield is an area of rock and forest that covers much of central Canada around the Hudson Bay. This region, and the area to the east and west of it provides timber and minerals for Canadian industries and for export. In the Maritime Provinces of the east, the main economic activities include fishing and agriculture.

Some of Canada's best farmland is located along the St. Lawrence River and in the southern Prairie Provinces of Manitoba, Saskatchewan, and Alberta. The St. Lawrence River region includes dairy farms and agriculture, which provide food for the larger cities of the region. The province of Ontario has fertile farmland on the north and east sides of the Great Lakes. The farmland in the Prairie Provinces has much larger grain and beef operations.

Centered in the province of Alberta is a large region of fossil fuel exploration. Coal, oil, and natural gas are found there in abundance, and much of it is exported to the United States for profit. Oil is found absorbed in surface soil called tar sands and is being extracted for energy. When tar sands are heated, the oil is separated and refined for fuel. Projections are that there is more oil in the tar sands of Canada than in the underground reserves of Saudi Arabia. Natural resources have even filtered into the cultural arena: Edmonton's professional hockey team is called the Edmonton Oilers.



Map of the physical features of Canada.

The Rocky Mountains and the coastal ranges located in western Canada provide for mining and lumber mills. Vancouver, on the coast in British Columbia, has become a major port for Canada to export and import goods to and from the Pacific Rim. The Yukon

Territory, also located in the mountains, has experienced a gold rush in years past. Canada has adequate natural resources to provide for its people and gain wealth.

Comparing British and French Canada

French fishermen and fur traders initially colonized Canada. The British later took it from the French, and immigrants from various other countries moved there to make a living off of the land. Although none of the provinces retain French names, countless cities have French names. Some of these cities include Montreal, Lacombe, Leduc, Trois-Rivières, Charlesbourg, and Beauport.

The names of several provinces have a British etymology. Nova Scotia means "New Scotland," and it was so named by the British when they took over the island from the French. Prince Edward Island was named for the father of the famous 19th-century British queen, Victoria. You can see remnants of British colonialism in the way the Canadian government is organized. Canada, like many countries of Europe, including Great Britain, is a parliamentary democracy.

The monarch of the United Kingdom is still the top-ranking government official in Canada, but only as a figurehead. The queen (or king) appoints a governor general to be her (or his) representative in the Canadian federal government. Again, this is a symbolic position. There are two chambers, a House of Commons and a Senate. Members of the House of Commons are elected and are called members of Parliament. Senators are appointed to a lifelong term by the prime minister.

As of 2006, about 58 percent of Canadians spoke English as their primary language, French was the language of 22 percent, and 20 percent spoke a language other than English or French. [1] For most of Canada, the *lingua franca* remains English. The French-speaking portion of Canada is a reminder of Canada's history as a French colony. Many of today's French speakers are descendants of those earlier French settlers.

The proportion of French speakers in Canada is declining as more immigrants, who also have higher fertility rates than French speaking citizens, arrive from other parts of the world. In addition, more French speakers are using English instead of French as their primary language. These immigrants to Canada, along with indigenous people, make up 20 percent of Canada's population who do not speak English or French as their native language. About 90 percent of Canadian people who speak French live in Quebec, which is a center of French culture in Canada.

The separation between French Canada and British Canada goes back to colonial times. Beginning in the 1530s, the French were the first to begin fur trading in the region and colonize what is present-day Canada, calling it *New France*. The French claimed much of the St. Lawrence River valley and the Great Lakes region, including the region that is now Ontario. When Britain began to dominate the eastern coast of North America in the 1680s, they entered into a series of wars with France. As a result of these wars, New France was eventually turned over to Britain.

Not wanting continued war with France, Britain allowed the French-dominated region to retain its land ownership system, civil laws, and Catholic faith. The American Revolution, which granted the United States independence from Great Britain, also pushed many people of English descent (especially those who sided with Britain), from the United States into Canada. British North America no longer included the United States. Canada became the main British colony in North America.



Bilingual Stop Sign in Ottawa, Ontario.

In an attempt to keep the peace between French and English settlers, in 1791 the British Parliament divided Quebec into Upper and Lower Canada, which later evolved into the provinces of English-speaking Ontario and French-speaking Quebec. The Maritime

Provinces of the east were then separated into individual provinces.

The cultural differences between French-speaking Canada and the rest of Canada have erupted into serious political conflicts. The French-speaking areas, mainly southern Quebec, argue that they are treated unfairly since they have to learn English when the rest of the country is not required to learn French.

During the second half of the 20th century, many people in Quebec supported a separatist movement that sought to break Quebec off from the rest of Canada into an independent country. In the 1980s, the separatist initiative lost in a public vote by a small margin. The issue of Quebec's sovereignty continued to be raised in the public arena. In 1998, Canada's Supreme Court ruled that Quebec could not separate from the rest of Canada under international law. However, the matter would have to be negotiated between Quebec and the rest of Canada if secession was to proceed.

French and English are the two official languages of the Canadian government as a whole. However, the French people in Quebec, fearing that English was dominating the media, the Internet, and industry to such an extent that it was endangering their French culture, have declared French as the only official language of the province. To combat the encroachment of English, laws were enacted in Quebec requiring all public advertising to be in French, or if other languages are used, they must be half the size of the French letters. All businesses employing more than 50 employees are required to conduct all business in French.

Immigrants who wish to be citizens of Quebec must learn French. All primary and secondary education takes place in French unless the child's parents were educated in English elsewhere in Canada. Civil servants dubbed the "language police" monitor and enforce the French language laws. A business found to be out of compliance with the language laws could be fined or shut down. Even though the official language of Quebec is French, since the national government takes place in both English and French, some services are still available in Quebec in English.

French Canada does not include the entire province of Quebec. Northern Quebec has traditionally been native Cree territory. When the initiative for Quebec to secede from Canada was being considered, an additional initiative was presented by the Cree to separate northern Quebec from the French region of Quebec. This would have caused the French separatist region of Quebec to lose major hydroelectric dams and important mineral and timber reserves. Other regions of Quebec that did not hold a French majority would then have promoted separating from Quebec and joining Ontario.

For Quebec to remain economically competitive, they would need the northern Cree region to remain part of the province to use the resources and energy found there. They would also need the businesses currently in Quebec to stay there. However, many would have left if Quebec had become an independent state with French as the only language. When secession was being considered, it was found that many businesses employing more than 50 employees did not want to switch over and conduct all their business in French. They were conducting their business in English to work with the global economic community.

In 1994, the North American Free Trade Agreement (NAFTA) was established between Canada, the United States, and Mexico. The goal was to open up new lines of business operations amongst the three countries and to increase economic opportunities to better compete with the European Union and the Pacific Rim nations. What would Quebec do if it separated from Canada? Would Quebec be able to join NAFTA? What if the other NAFTA partners cut off Quebec? Quebec would have faced serious economic consequences if they had separated from Canada. A number of English-speaking businesses have already moved to Ontario, Canada's most populous province, to avoid changing to French. It appears Quebec will remain with the rest of Canada for the time being.



Nathan Phillips Square is Toronto's main square.

Other Ethnic Groups in Canada

When the Europeans arrived in Canada, the indigenous people were displaced. About 1.2 million people who identify themselves as Aboriginal live in Canada (about 3.8 percent of the total population). They include North American Indians (also called First Nations), Métis (descendants of both Europeans and American Indians), and Inuit (inhabitants of the far Arctic north). Of these three groups, Inuit have the smallest population, with only about 50,000 remaining. These native people represent more than 600 recognized groups and 65 language dialects. Only a handful of these languages are still spoken by enough people to remain viable languages.

Countless place names in Canada have native language etymologies. For example, the city of Quebec is built at the original head of navigation on the St. Lawrence River. Its name comes from an Algonquin word for “where the river narrows.” The word *Canada* is likely derived from the St. Lawrence Iroquois word *Kanata*, meaning “village” or “settlement.” While the French explorer Jacques Cartier was traveling up the St. Lawrence River in 1535, the indigenous peoples directed him to a specific village, the future Quebec City, using the word *Kanata*. He later used *Canada* to refer to the general area, and European mapmakers adopted it for the entire region.

Quebec is not the only place where devolutionary forces have been dividing cultural groups in Canada. In 1999, Nunavut officially broke from the Northwest Territory to become its own territory. Nunavut has only about 30,000 people in an area larger than any other province or territory in Canada. It comprises about one-fifth of Canada’s land area. Most of the people who had claimed the land before the Europeans arrived are Inuit. Iqaluit, the capital city of Nunavut, is on Baffin Island near Canada’s east coast.

Canada has a great deal of ethnic diversity. One measure of this is the number of languages spoken there. One source estimates that there are about 145 languages spoken in Canada, including English and French. This reflects both the rich native heritage and the history of immigration from around the world. As of 2006, the foreign-born population was 6.2 million, or nearly 20 percent of Canada’s population.

There are few countries that match this level of immigration. Even the United States had only about a 12.5 percent foreign-born population in 2006. If Canada’s current immigration rates continue, by 2017 more than 22 percent of Canada’s population will be foreign born, which equals the high rate seen in the early 20th century, during the golden age of Eastern European immigration to North America. During this period, people from all the countries of Eastern Europe immigrated to all parts of Canada. [2]



This Ukrainian Greek Orthodox Church is located in the southern region of the Prairie Province of Manitoba.

The current surge of immigrants to Canada does not include many Europeans. Instead, these immigrants come from Asian countries, especially China and countries in South Asia such as India and Pakistan. If immigration patterns stay the same, by 2017 about one in five people in Canada will belong to a nonwhite minority group. According to the 2010 Canadian census, more than one million Chinese and more than one-half of a million South Asians lived in Canada. Other groups increasing rapidly include people from the Middle East and Korea.

The Canadian Economy

Not surprisingly, Canada and the Unites States are each others' largest trading partners. More than 80 percent of Canadian exports go to the United States and 70 percent of imports to Canada come from the United States. Except for some natural resource industries, most businesses are centered in Canadian cities to take advantage of the available labor force. Canada is rapidly moving toward a knowledge-based economy built on innovation and technology. Industries such as biotechnology and information technology are on the rise, and these are typically located in cities to facilitate partnering with universities and other researchers.

Although Canada is developing into a knowledge-based economy, the foundations of the Canadian economy have always been its abundant natural resources. Canada's primary industries have traditionally been agriculture, fishing, mining, energy, and forestry. Success in tapping these natural resources for their economic benefit allowed the country to double in population since 1960 while the economy has increased sevenfold.

The primary industries now make up less than 10 percent of the gross domestic product (GDP). Just as in the United States, the most dramatic structural change in the economy has been the rise of the service sector, which now employs about three-quarters of all Canadians and generates over 60 percent of the GDP. Canadian manufacturing has been a strong sector of the economy with close ties to the United States and multinational corporations.

Canada's economy is tightly tied to that of the United States. One of the best examples is how the Canadian economy fluctuates depending on whether the Canadian dollar is weak or strong compared with the US dollar. For example, in 2002, one American dollar was worth about $1.60 in Canada.

For many years, the American dollar was much stronger on the world market than the Canadian dollar. Therefore, Canadian goods and labor were less expensive for Americans than comparable US labor and goods.

During the time of the weak Canadian dollar, many film and television industries moved to Canada to film television shows and movies because it was less expensive to do so in Canada. Many popular television shows and movies have been filmed in Canada, especially in Toronto and Vancouver.

More recently, the value of the American dollar declined against other major currencies. The Canadian dollar remained strong, which meant that goods produced in Canada became much less affordable in the United States. This resulted in the television and film industries to move back south of the border and Canadian exports to the United States to decline.

In 2007, the Canadian dollar and the US dollar became equal for the first time in 30 years. The two currencies continue to fluctuate with market values.

NAFTA was one of the most significant economic events in North American history. For Canada, the agreement has meant more secure, stable access to US and Mexican markets. The agreement eliminated many tariffs; opened previously protected sectors in agriculture, energy, textiles, and automotive trade; and set specific rules for trade in services such as finance, transportation, and telecommunications. Perhaps most importantly for Canada, the agreement set rules for settling trade disputes.



The CRJ jet aircraft series is manufactured in Canada.

The United States exerts a powerful influence on Canada in a variety of ways. Because of the geographical proximity of the two countries and the mostly shared language of English and cultural values, American trends tend to be adopted by Canadians. Nonetheless, Canadians differentiate themselves from Americans on legale issues, laws, and health care. For example, Canada has a governmet funded health care system that provides free services to its citizens. Canadians often point to this difference as one of the defining elements of their country.

Canada is a great consumer of American popular culture. Canadians listen to, watch, and read tremendous quantities of American music, television and movies, news, books, and other literature. Some Canadians believe that Canadian culture is in danger of being extinguished. In response to these concerns, a law was passed and a watchdog agency created so that a certain percentage of all radio and television programs being broadcasted from Canadian radio and television stations had to originate in Canada or have significant Canadian content.

Others were less worried about the impact of American pop culture on Canadian culture. This segment of the Canadian population felt that Canadians have long identified themselves in contrast to Americans. Therefore, consuming American books, newspapers, television shows, and movies would only give Canadians a better foundation of comparison, thus strengthening the Canadian identity and perception of Canadian culture.

Key Takeaways

- Canada is a large country with rich natural resources, but a relatively small population that mostly lives in a narrow band in the southern part of the country.
- Canada's English and French bilingualism is part of its British and French colonial past.
- The French culture is dominant in Quebec, where the population has considered seceding from Canada and becoming an independent country.
- Canada's native population makes up less than 4 percent of the country's population but represents a great deal of cultural and linguistic diversity.
- More than one in five Canadians is an immigrant, and most of the recent immigrants come from non-Western countries, especially those in Asia.

Vocabulary Terms

Chapter 3.5 Canada

bilingual	Able to speak two languages with the facility of a native speaker
glacier	A large mass of ice found near the Earth's poles or in high, cold mountain valleys
igloo	A type of shelter built of snow, typically built when the snow can be easily compacted
Inuit	A member of the indigenous people of northern Canada and parts of Greenland and Alaska
minister	In the Canadian government, a member of the cabinet, or government executive, usually responsible for a government department
parliament	A representative lawmaking body whose members are elected or appointed and in which legislative and executive functions are combined
prime minister	Chief political official in the parliamentary system--ex: Canada
province	A political region in Canada, much like an American state

Applying Knowledge

Interactive Notebook Activities

1. Identify where in the country most Canadians live and why.
2. Identify the dominant physical features of Canada.
3. Describe the relationship between the French-speaking and English-speaking areas of Canada.
4. Explain the key activities used in an effort to promote French culture in Canada.
5. Name the characteristics of some of the minority ethnic groups in Canada.
6. Describe which economic sectors are at the core of the Canadian economy.
7. Describe how the Canadian and US economies are connected.

Discussion and Study Guide Questions

1. Where do most of the people live in Canada? Why do they live where they do?
2. What is Canada’s capital city? What is Canada’s largest city?
3. What is the difference in farming operations between the two main agricultural areas in Canada?
4. Where are large deposits of fossil fuels found in Canada? What are tar sands?
5. Where is the highest precipitation found in Canada? Where is the least amount of precipitation found in Canada? Explain this precipitation pattern.
6. Who were Canada’s main colonizers? How does the history of colonialism impact Canada today?
7. Where have devolutionary forces been active but not totally successful? Where have devolutionary activities already taken place in Canada?
8. What problems might Quebec experience if it were to secede from the rest of Canada?
9. Where is Nunavut? Why is it a separate territory? Why do you think its capital city in located on the eastern coast of the territory?
10. How are current Canadian immigrants impacting the cultural and ethnic makeup of the country?

Real-World Geography Exercises

1. Using Google Maps, locate each place on the bulleted list below.
2. Using NASA Latitude and Longitude Finder, determine the latitude and longitude for each location on the bulleted list below.

3. Be prepared to share and discuss your answers.

Provinces and Territories

- Alberta
- British Columbia
- Manitoba
- New Brunswick
- Newfoundland
- Northwest Territories
- Nova Scotia
- Nunavut
- Ontario
- Prince Edward Island
- Quebec
- Saskatchewan
- Yukon Territory

Cities

- Calgary
- Charlottetown
- Edmonton
- Fredericton
- Halifax
- Iqaluit
- Montreal
- Ottawa
- Quebec City
- Regina
- Johns
- Toronto
- Vancouver
- Victoria
- Whitehorse
- Winnipeg
- Yellowknife

Locations and Features

- Arctic Ocean
- Baffin Island
- Canadian Shield
- Coastal Ranges
- Elsmere Island
- Hudson Bay
- Labrador
- Rocky Mountains
- Lawrence River

Mapping Exercise

Mapping Our World ESRI-ARGIS Online Module 3 Lesson 1

Running Hot and Cold: In this activity students will analyze monthly and annual temperature patterns in cities around the world. Students will explore how latitude, elevation, and proximity to the ocean influence temperature patterns in the world's tropical, temperate, and polar zones.

Student Answer Doc-download

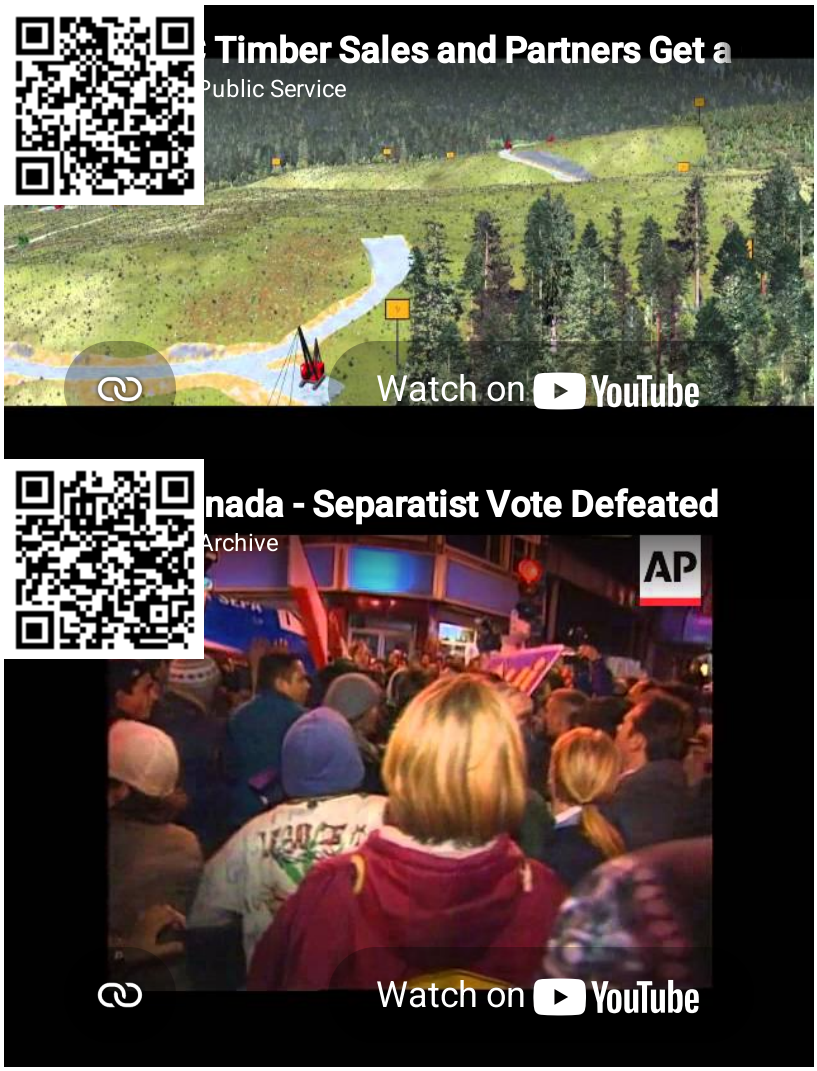
Student Graph Sheet-download

Student Supplement-download

Student Assessment Doc-download

Teacher Material-download

Videos for Geography Enrichment

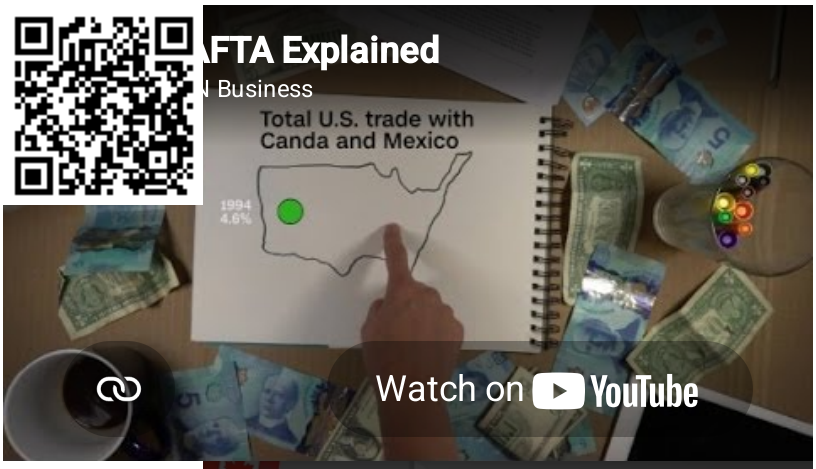


https://k12.libretexts.org/@go/page/1951


tracting oil sands for the Keystone
shington Post
Watch on YouTube


rming in Manitoba
rie Public
Farming in Manitoba
Watch on YouTube


story of Canada Documentary
Books Education
STORY OF
CANADA
Watch on YouTube





Helpful Websites for the Study of Geography

Canadian Encyclopedia is an encyclopedia funded by the Canadian government covering all branches of knowledge. Their scholarly collection includes interactive materials.

CIA World Factbook provides information on the people, history, government, economy, energy, geography, communications, transportation, military, and transnational issues for the world's entities.

Congress.gov is a US government website where you can find federal legislation, past and present, as well as information about the US legal system.

Drug Enforcement Administration (DEA) is a government agency website that provides current news, resources, topics of interest, information about drugs, careers in the DEA, and a tip hotline.

Library of Congress is the largest library in the world and provides manuscripts, files, information, pictures, and videos.

NASA Earth Observatory (NEO) is a US government agency website that allows users to search for and retrieve satellite images of Earth.

National Archives is a US government website that provides historical documents, photos, records, publications, and educator resources.

National Oceanic and Atmospheric Association (NOAA) is a US government agency website that provides weather-related information and ocean research.

National Map is a website by the United States Geological Survey and other federal, state, and local agencies that deliver topographic information for the United States.

NationMaster is a massive central data source and a handy way to graphically compare nations.

Real-Time World Air Quality Index is a website that measures most locations in the world for air pollution in real time.

StateMaster is a unique statistical database, which allows you to research and compare a multitude of different data on US states.

United Nations (UN) is an international organization founded in 1945 and made up of 193 member states. The UN maintains international peace and security, protects human rights, delivers humanitarian aid, promotes sustainable development, and upholds international law.

United States Census Bureau is a US government agency that provides a population clock, data, surveys, statistics, a library with information and infographics, news about the economy, and much more.

United States Geological Survey (USGS) is a US government agency website that provides scientific information about the natural hazards that threaten lives, the natural resources we rely on, the health of our ecosystems and environment, and the impacts of climate and land-use change.

Whitehouse.gov is a US government website that provides the latest presidential news, information about the budget, policy, defense, and many more topics.

World Health Organization (WHO) is under the United Nations and provides leadership on matters critical to health, shapes the research agenda on health, and monitors the health situation and assessing health trends around the world. Their website provides information on the state of health around the world, outbreaks, current health news, and more.

World Trade Organization (WTO) is an intergovernmental organization that regulates international trade. The website provides information on the history of the multilateral trading system, featured videos, news and events, trade topics, and more.

References

[1] Population by Mother Tongue, by Province and Territory (2006 Census)

[2] Statistics Canada

Image	Reference	Attributions
	**[Figure 1]**	**Credit:** Wikimedia Commons – public domain. **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/8b3ca0078caa7ee3525ecba0503d9783.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 2]**	**Credit:** Resolute [CC BY-SA 3.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0)], from Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Canada_v_Finland_junior_exhibition.png **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 3]**	**Credit:** Wikimedia Commons – CC BY 3.0. **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/8bb1f812f2273f80af1b5a17f37f5597.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 4]**	**Credit:** Wikimedia Commons – public domain. **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/c019e2e62e5d408405081e35235c515d.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

	**[Figure 5]**	**Credit:** By Benson Kua from Toronto, Canada (Skaters at DuskUploaded by Skeezix1000) [CC BY-SA 2.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/2.0)], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Skaters_at_dusk.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 6]**	**Credit:** Photo by R. Berglee – CC BY-NC-SA. **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/2daf21f6a96e3d891368379d2e072c03.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 7]**	**Credit:** Wikimedia Commons – public domain. **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/1d20c629ef893af755caf33f61b0d298.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

This page titled 3.5: Canada (2 Days) is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by CK12 via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

4: Latin America (10 days)

4.1: Pre-Colonial and Post-Colonial Middle America (1 Day)
4.2: Mexico (2 Days)
4.3: Central America (1 Day)
4.4: The Caribbean (1 Day)
4.5: South America- Physical Geography (1 Day)
4.6: South America- The Urban North and Andean West (1 Day)
4.7: Brazil (2 Days)
4.8: South America- The Southern Cone (1 Day)

Thumbnail: Orthographic projection of Latin America. (CC BY-SA 3.0; Heraldry via Wikipedia)

This page titled 4: Latin America (10 days) is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by CK12 via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

4.1: Pre-Colonial and Post-Colonial Middle America (1 Day)

Chapter Challenges

- Define the differences between the rimland and the mainland.
- Summarize the impact of European colonialism on Middle America.
- Explain the differences between the Mayan and Aztec Empires and identify which the Spanish defeated.
- Describe how the Spanish influenced urban development in Middle America.

Learning Objectives

WG.1B Trace the spatial diffusion of phenomena such as the Columbian Exchange or the diffusion of American popular culture and describe the effects on regions of contact

WG/2A Describe the human and physical characteristics of the same regions at different periods of time to evaluate relationships between past events and current conditions

WG.4C Explain the influence of climate on the distribution of biomes in different regions.

WG.6A Locate and describe human and physical features that influence the size and distribution of settlements

WG.6B Explain the processes that have caused changes in settlement patterns, including urbanization, transportation, access to and availability of resources, and economic activities

WG.7B Examine the benefits and challenges of globalization, including connectivity, the standard of living, pandemics, and loss of local culture

WG.8A Compare ways that humans depend on, adapt to, and modify the physical environment, including the influences of culture and technology

TEKS and ELPS for Regional World Geography Unit 04--Latin America from TEKS Resource System

Pre-Colonial and Post-Colonial Middle America

Physical Geography

Middle America has various types of physical landscapes, including volcanic islands and mountain ranges. Tectonic action at the edge of the Caribbean Plate has brought about volcanic activity. This activity has created many of the islands of the region as volcanoes rose above the ocean surface. The island of Montserrat is one such example. The volcano on this island has continued to erupt in recent years, showering the island with dust and ash and making habitation difficult.

Many of the other low-lying islands, such as the Bahamas, were formed by coral reefs rising above the ocean surface. Tectonic plate activity not only has created volcanic islands but also is a constant source of earthquakes that continue to be a problem for the Caribbean community.

The republics of Central America extend from Mexico to Colombia and form the final connection between North America and South America. The Isthmus of Panama, the narrowest point between the Caribbean Sea and the Pacific Ocean, serves as a land bridge between the continents. The backbone of Central America is mountainous, with many volcanoes located within its ranges. Much of the Caribbean and all of Central America are located south of the Tropic of Cancer and are dominated by tropical type A climates.

The mountainous areas have varied climates, with cooler climates located at higher elevations. Mexico has extensive mountainous areas with two main ranges in the north and highlands in the south. There are no landlocked countries in this realm. The coastal areas are rich in natural resources and have been exploited for fishing and tourism.

Rimland and Mainland

Using a regional approach to the geography of a realm helps us compare and contrast a place's features and characteristics. Location and the physical differences explain the division of Middle America into two geographic areas according to occupational activities and colonial dynamics. The rimland, which includes the Caribbean islands and the Caribbean coastal areas of Central America, and the mainland, which includes the interior of Mexico and Central America, are the two geographical areas.

Colonialism thrived in the rimland because it consists mainly of islands and coastal areas that were accessible to European ships. Ships could easily sail into a cove or a bay to make port and claim the island for their home country. After an island or coastal area was claimed, there was a transformation of the area through plantation agriculture. On a plantation, local individuals were subjugated as servants or slaves.

The land was planted with a single crop—usually sugarcane, tobacco, cotton, or fruit—grown for export profits. Most of these crops were not native to the Americas but were brought in during colonial times. European diseases killed vast numbers of local Amerindian laborers, so slaves were brought from Africa to do the work. Plantation agriculture in the rimland was successful because of the import of technology, slave labor, and raw materials, as well as the export of the harvest to Europe for profit.

Plantation agriculture changed the rimland. The local groups were almost eliminated because of disease and colonial subjugation, and by the 1800s most of the population was of African descent. Native food crops gave way to cash crops for export. Marginal lands were plowed up and placed into the plantation system. The labor was usually seasonal because there was a high demand for labor at peak planting and harvest times. Plantations were generally owned by wealthy Europeans who may or may not have lived there.

The mainland, consisting of Mexico and the interior of Central America, diverged from the rimland in both colonial dynamics and agricultural production. The interior lacked easy access to the sea that the rimland enjoyed. As a result, the hacienda style of land use developed. This Spanish innovation was aimed at land acquisition for social prestige and a comfortable lifestyle. Export profits were not the driving force behind the operation, though they may have existed. The Amerindians, who were poorly paid, if at all, were allowed to live on the haciendas, working their own plots for subsistence. African slaves were not prominent on the mainland.

On the mainland, European colonialists would enter an area and stake claims to large portions of the land, often as much as millions of acres. Haciendas would eventually become the main landholding structure on the mainland of Mexico and many other regions of Middle America. In the hacienda system, the Amerindian people lost ownership of the land to the European colonial masters. Land ownership or the control of land has been a common point of conflict throughout the Americas where land transferred from local Amerindian ownership to colonial European ownership.



The rimland was more accessible to European ships, and the mainland was more isolated from European activity.

The plantation and hacienda eras are in the past. The abolition of slavery in the late 1800s as well as the cultural revolutions that occurred on the mainland challenged the plantation and hacienda systems and brought about land reform. Plantations were transformed into either multiple private plots or large corporate farms.

The hacienda system was broken up, and most of the hacienda land was given back to the people, often in the form of an *ejidos* system. In an *ejidos* system, the community owns the land, but individuals can profit from it by sharing its resources. This system

has created its own set of problems, and many of the communally owned lands are being transferred to private owners.

The agricultural systems changed Middle America by altering both the systems of land use and the ethnicity of the population. The Caribbean Basin changed in ethnicity from being entirely Amerindian to being dominated by European colonizers, to having an African majority population. The mainland experienced the mixing of European culture with the Amerindian culture to form various types of mestizo groups with Hispanic, Latino, or Chicano identities.

The European Invasion

Though the southern region of the Americas has commonly been referred to as "Latin America," this is a misnomer because Latin has never been the *lingua franca* of any of the countries in the Americas. The name of a given country does not always reflect its *lingua franca*. For example, people in Mexico do not speak a language called "Mexican"; they speak Spanish. Brazilians do not speak "Brazilian"; they speak Portuguese. Latin America is the geopolitical designation for Mexico, Central America, South America, and the Caribbean Islands.

European colonialism impacted Middle America in more ways than language and religion. Before Christopher Columbus arrived from Europe, the Americas did not have animals such as horses, donkeys, sheep, chickens, and cattle. This meant there were no large animals for plowing fields or carrying heavy burdens. The concept of the wheel, which was so common in Europe, was not found in the Americas.

Food crops were also different. The potato was an American food crop, as was corn, squash, beans, chili peppers, and tobacco. Europeans brought other food crops—either from Europe itself or from its colonies—such as coffee, wheat, barley, rice, citrus fruits, and sugarcane. Not only food crops were exchanged, but so were building methods, agricultural practices, and diseases.

The Spanish invasion of Middle America following Columbus had devastating consequences for the Amerindian populations. It has been estimated that 15 to 20 million people lived in Middle America when the Europeans arrived. However, after a century of European colonialism, only about 2.5 million remained. Few of the Amerindians—such as the Arawak and the Carib on the islands of the Caribbean and the Maya and Aztec on the mainland—had immunity to European diseases such as measles, mumps, smallpox, and influenza.



Tlatelolco Marketplace as depicted at Field Museum of Natural History, Chicago. The largest Aztec market was located in Tenochtitlan's neighboring town, Tlatelolco.

Through warfare, disease, and enslavement, the local populations were decimated. Only a small number of people still claim Amerindian heritage in the Caribbean Basin, and some argue that these few are not indigenous to the Caribbean, but are descendants of slaves brought from South America by European colonialists.

Columbus landed with his three ships on the island of Hispaniola in 1492. Hispaniola is now divided into the countries of Haiti and the Dominican Republic. With the advantage of metal armor, weapons, and other advanced technology, the Spanish invaders quickly dominated the local people. Since Europe was going through a period of competition, warfare, and technological advancements, the same patterns carried forward to the New World.

Amerindians were most often made servants of the Europeans, and resistance resulted in conflict, war, and often death. The Spanish conquistadors were looking for profits and sought gold, silver, and precious gems. This quest for gain pitted the European invaders against the local groups. The Roman Catholic religion was brought over from Europe and at times was imposed on the indigenous people with a “repent or perish” method of conversion.

Many of the Caribbean islands have declared independence, but some remain crown colonies of their European colonizers with varying degrees of autonomy. Mexico achieved independence from Spain by 1821. Central American republics also gained independence in the 1820s. In 1823, the United States implemented the Monroe Doctrine, designed to deter the former European colonial powers from engaging in continued political activity in the Americas.

Intervention in the United States has continued in various places in spite of the reduction in European activity in the region. In 1898, the United States engaged Spain in the Spanish-American War, in which Spain lost its colonies of Cuba, Puerto Rico, and others to the United States. Puerto Rico continues to be under US jurisdiction and is not an independent country.

The Maya and the Aztec

The region of Mexico has been inhabited for thousands of years. One of the earliest cultures to develop into a civilization with large cities was the Olmec. The Olmec flourished in the south-central regions of Mexico from 1200 B.C.E. to about 400 B.C.E. Anthropologists call this region of Mexico and northern Central America, Mesoamerica. It is considered to be the region’s cultural hearth because it was home to early human civilizations.

The Maya established a vast civilization after the Olmec. Mayan stone structures still remain, which attract thousands of tourists every year. The classical era of the Mayan civilization lasted from 300 to 900 C.E. and was centered in the Yucatán Peninsula region of Mexico and Central America. Guatemala was once a large part of this vast empire, and Mayan ruins are found as far south as Honduras. During the classical era, the Maya built some of the most magnificent cities and stone pyramids in the Western Hemisphere.

The city-states of the empire functioned through a sophisticated religious hierarchy. The Mayan civilization made advancements in mathematics, astronomy, engineering, and architecture. They developed an accurate calendar based on the seasons and the solar system. The extent of their knowledge is still being discovered. The descendants of the Maya people exist today, but their empire does not.



The classical Mayan era lasted from 300 to 900 C.E. Many magnificent cities were built with stone and remain today as major tourist attractions.



Model of the Aztec City of Tenochtitlan at the National Museum of Anthropology in Mexico City.

The Toltec, who briefly controlled central Mexico, came to power after the classical Mayan era. They also took control of portions of the old Mayan Empire from the north. The Aztec federation replaced the Toltec and Maya as the dominant civilization in southern Mexico. The Aztec, who expanded outward from their base in central Mexico, built the largest and greatest city in the Americans of the time known as Tenochtitlán. This city is estimated to have had a population of 100,000 people. Tenochtitlán was located at the present site of Mexico City, and it was from there that the Aztec expanded into the south and east to create an empire.

The Aztec federation was a regional power that subjugated other groups and required taxes and tributes from them. Though they borrowed ideas and innovations from earlier groups such as the Maya, they made great strides in agriculture and urban development. The Aztecs rose to dominance in the 14th century and were still in power when the Europeans arrived.

Spanish Conquest of 1519–21

After the voyages of Columbus, the Spanish conquistadors came to the New World in search of gold, riches, and profits. They also brought their Roman Catholic religion with them. These Catholic adherents also converted the Amerindians, usually by force. One such conquistador was Hernán Cortés as well as his 508 soldiers, who landed on the shores of the Yucatán in 1519. They made their way west toward the Aztec Empire.

The wealth and power of the Aztecs attracted conquistadors such as Cortés, whose goal was to conquer. Even with metal armor, steel swords, sixteen horses, and a few cannons, Cortés and his men did not challenge the Aztecs directly. The Aztec leader Montezuma II originally thought Cortés and his men were legendary “White Gods” returning to recover the empire. Cortés defeated the Aztecs by uniting the people that the Aztecs had subjugated and joining with them to fight the Aztecs. The Spanish conquest of the Aztec federation was complete by 1521.

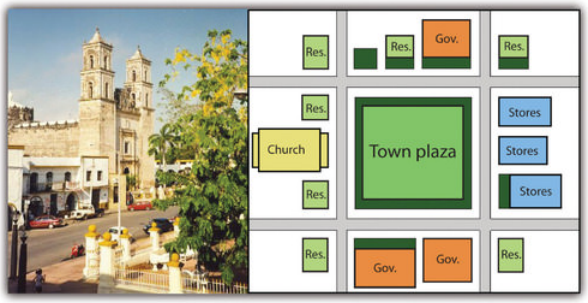
The Spanish invasion of Middle America had devastating consequences for the Amerindian populations. It is estimated that there were between 15 and 25 million indigenous people in Middle America before the Europeans arrived. After a century of European colonialism, there were only about 2.5 million left. Cortés defeated the Amerindians by killing the learned classes of the religious clergy, priestly orders, and those in authority. The local peasants and workers survived.

The Spanish destroyed the knowledge base of the Maya and Aztec people. Their knowledge of astronomy, their advanced calendar, and their engineering technology were lost. Only through anthropology, archaeology, and the relearning of the culture can we fully understand the expanse of these early empires. The local descendants of the Maya and the Aztec still live in the region, and there are dozens of other indigenous groups in Mexico with their own languages, histories, and cultures.

The Spanish Colonial City

As the Spanish established urban centers in the New World, they structured each town after the Spanish pattern, with a plaza in the center. Around the plaza on one side was the Roman Catholic church. On the other sides of the plaza were government offices and stores. Residential homes filled in around them. This pattern can still be seen in almost all the cities built by the Spanish in Middle and South America. The Catholic Church was a cultural force responsible for shaping and molding the Amerindian societies.

In Spain, the cultural norm was to develop urban centers wherever administration or military support was needed. Spanish colonizers followed a similar pattern in laying out the new urban centers in their colonies. Extending out from the city center (where the town plaza, government buildings, and church were located) was a commercial district that was the backbone of this model. Expanding out on each side of the spine was a wealthy residential district for the upper social classes, complete with office complexes, shopping districts, and upper-scale markets.



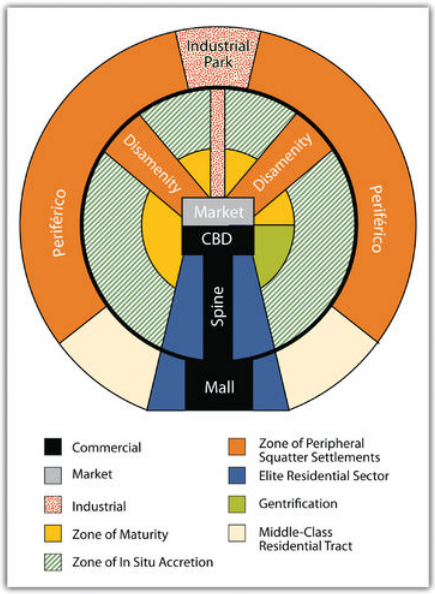
The Spanish colonial urban pattern had a plaza in the center of the city with government buildings around the square and a Catholic church on one side.

Surrounding the central business district (CBD) and the spine of most cities in Middle and South America are concentric zones of residential districts for the lower, working, and middle classes and the poor. The first zone, the zone of maturity, has well-established middle-class residential neighborhoods with city services. The second concentric zone, the zone of transition, has working-class districts mixed with areas with makeshift housing and without city services.

The outer zone, the zone of periphery, is where the expansion of the city occurs, with makeshift housing and squatter settlements. This zone has little or no city services and functions as an informal economy. This outer zone often branches into the city, with slums known as *favelas* or *barrios* that provide the working poor access to the city without benefits. Impoverished immigrants that arrive in the city from the rural areas often end up in the city's outer periphery to eke out a living in some of the worst living conditions in the world.

Cities in this Spanish model grow by having the outer ring progress to the point where eventually solid construction takes hold and city services are extended to accommodate the residents. When this ring reaches maturity, a new ring of squatter settlements emerges to form a new outer ring of the city. This development pattern is repeated, and the city continues to expand outward.

Nowadays, the urban centers of Middle and South America are expanding at rapid rates. It is difficult to provide public services to the outer limits of many of the cities. The *barrios* or *favelas* become isolated communities, often complete with crime bosses and gang activities that replace municipal security.



Spanish-American City Structure According to the Ford-Griffin Model.

Key Takeaways

- Haciendas were located chiefly in the mainland.
- Plantations were located mainly in the rimland.
- Both the hacienda and the plantation structures of agriculture altered the ethnic makeup of their respective regions.
- The rimland had an African labor base.
- The mainland had an indigenous labor base.
- In their quest for wealth, Spanish conquistadors destroyed the Aztec Empire and colonized the Middle American mainland.
- Much historical knowledge was lost with the demise of the learned class of the Aztec Empire.
- Europeans introduced many new food crops and domesticated animals to the Americas and in turn, brought newly discovered agricultural products from America back to Europe.
- The Spanish introduced the same style of urban planning to the Americas that was common in Spain.
- Many cities in Middle and South America were patterned after Spanish models.

Vocabulary Terms

colonialism	The policy of maintaining colonies as a source of raw materials and new markets. Practiced during old and new imperialism
colonization	The actions or process of conquering another country or nation of people.
Columbian Exchange	The exchange of animals, plants, and diseases between America, Africa, and Europe following the voyage of Christopher Columbus. Trade from the Old World (Europe) to the new World (North and South America) and back.
Old Imperialism	A European policy of conquest that occurs in the 15th through 18th centuries in Africa, India, the Americas, and parts of Asia. The motives were the same for most areas, the establishment of lucrative trade routes. Various European countries dominated these trades routes and one time or another, and some countries, such as Great Britain and Spain, came to dominate entire countries.
Latin America	The Geopolitical designation for Mexico, Central and South America and the Caribbean Islands.
Latin American Revolutions	Political revolutions in various Latin American countries beginning in the late 18th century. These revolutions were aimed at overthrowing the European powers that controlled these nations. Many were successful, but few achieved the success of the American Revolution.
Missionary	A person who spreads the teachings of a religion.

Applying Knowledge

Interactive Notebook Activities

1. Define the differences between the rimland and the mainland.
2. Summarize the impact of European colonialism on Middle America.
3. Explain the differences between the Mayan and Aztec Empires and identify which the Spanish defeated.
4. Describe how the Spanish influenced urban development in Middle America.

Discussion and Study Questions

1. What are the three main regions of Middle America?
2. What are the main distinctions between the mainland and the rimland?
3. What are the differences between a hacienda and a plantation?
4. What happened to the plantations and haciendas established during the colonial era?
5. Why is Middle America often referred to as a part of “Latin America”?
6. Who were the Aztec and the Maya, and when did their empires flourish? What happened to these empires?
7. What are some ways that European colonialism affected this realm?
8. What features were found at the center of town in the Spanish urban model?
9. How did the Spanish organize the structure of their colonial cities?
10. How does the Ford-Griffin Model illustrate the development of the Spanish-American city?

Real-World Geography Exercise

Using Google Maps, locate the places on the list below. Using scholarly resources on the Internet, research environmental problems happening in each one of the locations. Choose one for which you would like to help, and create a SWAY or PowerPoint

presentation to persuade your audience to take action to help. Find facts, maps, photos, videos, and any other material necessary to create a powerful presentation.

- Atlantic Ocean
- Bahamas
- Baja Peninsula
- Caribbean Sea
- Central America
- Greater Antilles
- Gulf of Mexico
- Isthmus of Panama
- Lesser Antilles
- Mainland
- Pacific Ocean
- Rimland
- Yucatán Peninsula

Mapping Exercise

Mapping Our World ESRI ARGIS Online Module 6 Lesson 1

The Wealth of Nations: In this activity, students will use maps of percentages of GDP in the three sectors to explore patterns of development around the world. Students will also examine two other economic indicators — energy use and GDP per capita — and compare the maps of GDP in economic sectors to the maps of GDP per capita and energy use. Students will evaluate whether or not the economic sector criteria are good indicators of a country's economic status.

Student Answer Doc-download

Student Assessment Doc-download

Teacher Materials-download

Videos for Geography Enrichment



https://k12.libretexts.org/@go/page/1957







Helpful Websites for the Study of Geography

Canadian Encyclopedia is an encyclopedia funded by the Canadian government covering all branches of knowledge. Their scholarly collection includes interactive materials.

CIA World Factbook provides information on the people, history, government, economy, energy, geography, communications, transportation, military, and transnational issues for the world's entities.

Congress.gov is a US government website where you can find federal legislation, past and present, as well as information about the US legal system.

Drug Enforcement Administration (DEA) is a government agency website that provides current news, resources, topics of interest, information about drugs, careers in the DEA, and a tip hotline.

Library of Congress is the largest library in the world and provides manuscripts, files, information, pictures, and videos.

NASA Earth Observatory (NEO) is a US government agency website that allows users to search for and retrieve satellite images of Earth.

National Archives is a US government website that provides historical documents, photos, records, publications, and educator resources.

National Oceanic and Atmospheric Association (NOAA) is a US government agency website that provides weather-related information and ocean research.

National Map is a website by the United States Geological Survey and other federal, state, and local agencies that deliver topographic information for the United States.

NationMaster is a massive central data source and a handy way to graphically compare nations.

Real-Time World Air Quality Index is a website that measures most locations in the world for air pollution in real time.

StateMaster is a unique statistical database, which allows you to research and compare a multitude of different data on US states.

United Nations (UN) is an international organization founded in 1945 and made up of 193 member states. The UN maintains international peace and security, protects human rights, delivers humanitarian aid, promotes sustainable development, and upholds international law.

United States Census Bureau is a US government agency that provides a population clock, data, surveys, statistics, a library with information and infographics, news about the economy, and much more.

United States Geological Survey (USGS) is a US government agency website that provides scientific information about the natural hazards that threaten lives, the natural resources we rely on, the health of our ecosystems and environment, and the impacts of climate and land-use change.

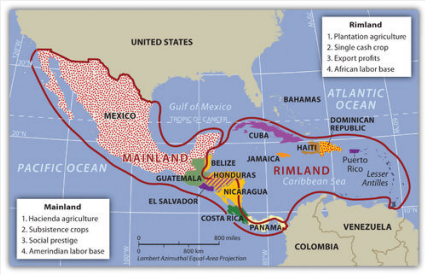
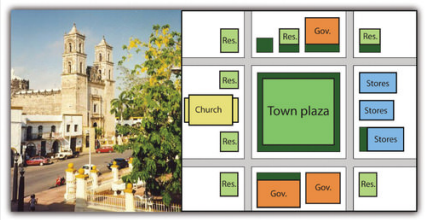
Whitehouse.gov is a US government website that provides the latest presidential news, information about the budget, policy, defense, and many more topics.

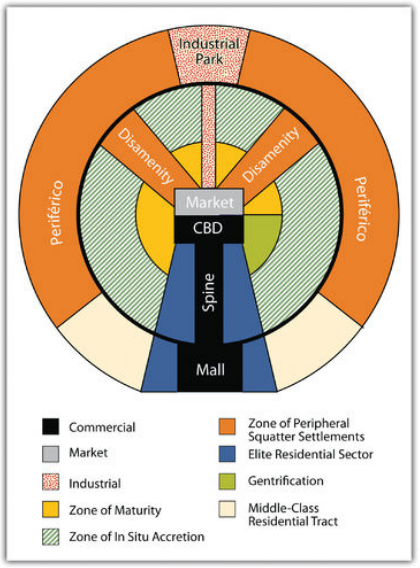
World Health Organization (WHO) is under the United Nations and provides leadership on matters critical to health, shapes the research agenda on health, and monitors the health situation and assessing health trends around the world. Their website provides information on the state of health around the world, outbreaks, current health news, and more.

World Trade Organization (WTO) is an intergovernmental organization that regulates international trade. The website provides information on the history of the multilateral trading system, featured videos, news and events, trade topics, and more.

The Toltec, who briefly controlled central Mexico, came to power after the classical Mayan era. They also took control of portions of the old Mayan Empire from the north. The Aztec federation replaced the Toltec and Maya as the dominant civilization in southern Mexico. The Aztec, who expanded outward from their base in central Mexico, built the largest and greatest city in the

Americans of the time known as Tenochtitlán. This city is estimated to have had a population of 100,000 people. Tenochtitlán was located at the present site of Mexico City, and it was from there that the Aztec expanded into the south and east to create an empire.

Image	Reference	Attributions
	**[Figure 1]**	**Credit:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeograp...ing-the-realm/ **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/68c88b0c98cbf89e97057834e00ccbd1.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 2]**	**Credit:** Joe Ravi [CC BY-SA 3.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0)], from Wikimedia Commons **Source:** commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Tlatelolco_Marketplace.JPG **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 3]**	**Credit:** By Sybz [GFDL (http://www.gnu.org/copyleft/fdl.html) or CC BY-SA 3.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0)], from Wikimedia Commons **Source:** commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Uxmal_Pyramid_of_the_Magician.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 4]**	**Credit:** By Thelmadatter [Public domain], from Wikimedia Commons **Source:** commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:TenochtitlanModel.JPG **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 5]**	**Credit:** Photo by R. Berglee – CC BY-NC-SA. **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/f9c537ec6e8bcd1c4a5e7549113765aa.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0



[Figure 6]

Credit:
http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeograp...ing-the-realm/
Source:
open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/8907ef9b8ac7394592bfe9193c41bd06.jpg
License: CC BY-NC 3.0

This page titled 4.1: Pre-Colonial and Post-Colonial Middle America (1 Day) is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by CK12 via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

4.2: Mexico (2 Days)

Chapter Challenges

- Describe the physical geography of Mexico, identifying the core and peripheral areas.
- Outline the socioeconomic classes in Mexico and explain the ethnic differences of each.
- Explain how the North American Free Trade Agreement (NAFTA) and maquiladoras have influenced the economic and employment situations in Mexico.
- Summarize in a few sentences how the drug cartels have become an integrated part of the Mexican economy and political situation.

Learning Objectives

TEKS Regional Unit 04; Latin America: Chapter 4.2 Mexico

WG.1A Analyze the effects of physical and human geographic patterns and processes on the past and describe their impact on the present, including significant physical features and environmental conditions that influenced migration patterns and shaped the distribution of culture groups today

WG.1B Trace the spatial diffusion of phenomena such as the Columbian Exchange or the diffusion of American popular culture and describe the effects on regions of contact

WG.2B Explain how changes in societies have led to diverse uses of physical features

WG.3B Describe the physical processes that affect the environments of regions, including weather, tectonic forces, erosion, and soil-building process.

WG.4A Explain how elevation, latitude, wind systems, ocean currents, position on a continent, and mountain barriers influence temperature, precipitation, and distribution of climate regions

WG.5A Analyze how the character of a place is related to its political, economic, social, and cultural elements

WG.5B Interpret political, economic, social, and demographic indicators (gross domestic product per capita, life expectancy, literacy, and infant mortality) to determine the level of development and standard of living in nations using the terms Human Development Index, less developed, newly industrialized, and more developed

WG.6B Explain the processes that have caused changes in settlement patterns, including urbanization, transportation, access to and availability of resources, and economic activities

WG.7B Explain how political, economic, social, and environmental push and pull factors and physical geography affect the routes and flows of human migration

WG.8B Describe the interaction between humans and the physical environment and analyze the consequences of extreme weather and other natural disasters such as El Niño, floods, tsunamis, and volcanoes.

WG.10C Compare the ways people satisfy their basic needs through the production of goods and services such as subsistence agriculture versus commercial agriculture or cottage industries versus commercial industries

WG.10D Compare global trade patterns over time and examine the implications of globalization, including outsourcing and free trade zones

WG.15A Identify and give examples of different points of view that influence the development of public policies and decision-making processes on local, state, national, and international levels

WG.22D Use standard grammar, spelling, sentence structure, and punctuation.

TEKS and ELPS for Regional World Geography Unit 04--Latin America from TEKS Resource System

Mexico's Physical Characteristics

Mexico is the 8th largest country in the world and about one-fifth the size of the United States. Bordered to the north by the United States, Mexico stretches south to Central America, where it is bordered by Guatemala and Belize. One of Mexico's prominent geographical features is the world's longest peninsula, the 775-mile-long Baja California Peninsula, which lies between the Pacific Ocean and the Gulf of California (also known as the Sea of Cortez). The Baja California Peninsula includes a series of mountain ranges called the Peninsular Ranges.



The Picacho del Diablo in the Sierra San Pedro Mártir mountain range of Baja California State, Mexico.

The Tropic of Cancer cuts across Mexico, dividing it into two different climatic zones: a temperate zone to the north and a tropical zone to the south. In the northern temperate zone, temperatures can be hot in the summer, often rising above 80 °F, but considerably cooler in the winter. By contrast, temperatures vary very little from season to season in the tropical zone, with average temperatures hovering very close to 80 °F year-round. Temperatures in the south tend to vary as a function of elevation.

Mexico is characterized by a great variety of climates, including areas with hot humid, temperate humid, and arid climates. There are mountainous regions, foothills, plateaus, deserts, and coastal plains, all with their own climatic conditions. For example, in the northern desert portions of the country, summer and winter temperatures are extreme. Temperatures in the Sonoran and Chihuahuan Deserts exceed 110 °F, while in the mountainous areas snow can be seen at higher elevations throughout the year.

Two major mountain ranges extend north and south along Mexico's coastlines and are actually extensions of southwestern US ranges. The Sierra Madre Occidental and the Sierra Madre Oriental are roughly parallel to each other. The Sierra Madre Occidental, an extension of the Sierra Nevada range, is about 3,107 miles along the west coast, with peaks higher than 9,843 feet. The Sierra Madre Oriental is an extension of the Rocky Mountains and is 808 miles along the east coast.



The Sierra Madre Occidental in Mexico



The Sierra Oriental in Mexico

Between these two mountain ranges lies a group of broad plateaus, including the Mexican Plateau, or Mexican Altiplano (a wide valley between mountain ranges). The central portions, with their rolling hills and broad valleys include fertile farms and productive ranch land. The Mexican Altiplano is divided into northern and southern sections, with the northern section dominated by Mexico's most expansive desert, the Chihuahuan Desert.



The Tulancingo Valley in Huasca de Ocampo, Hidalgo, Mexico, is located on the Mexican Altiplano

Another prominent mountain range is the Cordillera Neovolcánica range, which is a range of volcanoes nearly 620 miles east to west across the central and southern portion of the country. This range represents the dividing line between North and Central America. The peaks of the Cordillera Neovolcánica can reach higher than 16,404 feet in height and are snow covered the whole year.



The Pico de Orizaba, the highest point in Mexico, is located in the Cordillera Neovolcánica range.

Copper Canyon, in the northern Mexican state of Chihuahua, is about seven times larger than the Grand Canyon. Copper Canyon was formed by six rivers flowing through a series of 20 different canyons. At its deepest point, Copper Canyon is 1,462 feet deeper than the Grand Canyon.



Divisadero, Barrancas del Cobre, Chihuahua, Mexico, is located in Copper Canyon.

More than one-quarter of Mexico's landmass is covered in forests. As a result, timber is an important natural resource. Mexico's biodiversity ranks 4th in the world. It has the largest number of reptile species, ranks second for mammals, and ranks fourth for the number of amphibian and plant species. It is estimated that more than 10 percent of the world's species live here. Deforestation is a key environmental concern, but timber remains an important natural resource. The loss of natural habitat coincides with depletion of natural resources and an increase in population.

Mexico is home to a range of volcanoes, some of which are active. Popocatépetl (Smoking Warrior) and Ixtaccíhuatl (White Lady) occasionally send out puffs of smoke clearly visible in Mexico City. Popocatépetl is one of the most active volcanoes in Mexico, erupting 15 times since the arrival of the Spanish in 1519 C.E. This volcano is close enough to populations to threaten millions of people.



A map of the major volcanoes in Mexico.

Three tectonic plates underlie Mexico, making it one of the most seismically active regions on earth. In 1985, an earthquake centered off Mexico's Pacific coast killed more than 10,000 people in Mexico City and did significant damage to the city's infrastructure.

Many of Mexico's natural resources lie beneath the surface. Mexico is rich in natural resources and has robust mining industries that tap large deposits of silver, copper, gold, lead, and zinc. Mexico also has a sizable supply of salt, fluorite, iron, manganese, sulfur, phosphate, tungsten, molybdenum, and gypsum. Natural gas and petroleum also make the list of Mexico's natural resources and are important export products to the United States. There has been some concern about declining petroleum resources. However, new reserves are being found offshore in the Gulf of Mexico.

Though only about 13 percent of Mexico's land area is cultivated, favorable climatic conditions mean that food products are also an important natural resource both for export and for feeding the country's population. Tomatoes, corn, vanilla, avocado, beans,

cotton, coffee, sugarcane, and fruit are harvested in large quantities. Of these, coffee, cotton, sugarcane, tomatoes, and fruit are primarily grown for export, with most of these products transported to the United States.

Mexico has pronounced wet and dry seasons. Most of the country receives rain between June and mid-October, with July being the wettest month. Much less rain occurs during the other months. February is usually the driest month. Mexico lies in the middle of the hurricane belt, and all of the regions on both coasts are at risk for these storms between June and November. Hurricanes along the Pacific coast are much less frequent and less violent than those along Mexico's Gulf and Caribbean coasts. Hurricanes can cause extensive damage to infrastructure along the coasts where major tourist resorts are located. Mexico's extensive and beautiful coastlines provide an important boon to the nation's tourism industry.

The Core versus the Periphery

In the past few decades, the Mexican economy has slowly become less centralized and more focused on the private sector. The Mexican economy is a mix of modern industry, agriculture, and tourism. Current estimates indicate that the service sector makes up about 60 percent of the economy, followed by the industrial sector at 33 percent. Agriculture represents just above 4 percent. Per-capita income in Mexico is about one-third of what it is in the United States. The Mexican labor force is estimated at 46 million individuals. Fourteen percent of the labor force works in agriculture, 23 percent in the industrial sector, and 62 percent in the service sector.

Mexico is an example of a country with a clear core-periphery spatial relationship. Mexico City and its surrounding metropolitan centers represent the county's core: the center of activity, industry, wealth, and power. Industries and manufacturing have been traditionally located in this region. As of 2010, the core region has most of the country's 110 million people. Mexico's population is about 77 percent urban, with the largest urban areas found in the core region.



The periphery is the northern region, including the border area, and the southern region, including the Yucatán Peninsula.

Mexico City is one of the largest cities in the world and anchors the core region of Mexico. In 2010, the official population of Mexico City was about 18 million, but unofficial population estimates can reach 30 million. The actual population of Mexico City is unknown because of the hundreds of slums that surround the city on the slopes of the central valley. Mexico City is growing at a rate of more than 1,000 people per day through a combination of the number of births and the number migrants.

The lure of opportunities and advantages still pulls migrants to the city in search of a better life. Higher populations tax the resources in rural areas, where jobs and opportunities are hard to find. This push-pull relationship creates a strong rural-to-urban shift in Mexico. This same trend is found throughout the developing world.

https://k12.libretexts.org/@go/page/1958



A day with extensive air pollution will restrict the view of the horizon.

Mexico City is a historic and vibrant city, but it is not without problems. At higher than 7,000 feet in elevation, it is located between two mountain ranges. Air pollution is severe and is made stronger by frequent air inversions that trap pollution over the city. To reduce air pollution, people are only allowed to drive their vehicles on certain days according to odd or even license plate numbers. Older vehicles that do not pass emissions standards are banned.

Fresh water is in short supply, and wastewater from sewage is discharged into lakes down the valley. Amerindians who live by these lakes or on the islands have to live with the pollution. Since four to five million inhabitants in Mexico City have no utilities, human waste buildup has become a challenge. Fresh water is pumped into the city through pipelines from across the mountains. Leakage and inadequate maintenance causes a large percentage of the water to be lost before it can be used in the city. Water is also drawn from underground aquifers beneath the city, which causes parts of the city to sink as much as two feet. Structural damage to historic buildings is common because of this.



The Village of Yachachen in the Yucatán Peninsula is located in a peripheral region of Mexico.

One of Mexico's largest peripheral regions lies to the south, along the country's border with Guatemala. It includes the state of Chiapas and most of the Yucatán Peninsula. This area is primarily inhabited by Amerindians of Mayan ancestry. As is typical of peripheral regions, little political or economic power is held by the residents, who find themselves at the lowest end of the social and economic order.

The highland region of Chiapas and the Yucatán Peninsula are primarily agricultural regions with few industries. However, tourism has changed the northern Yucatán. Cancún has developed into a major tourist destination, and Mayan ruins in the region attract thousands of tourists each season. Unless the local population can benefit from tourism, there are few other opportunities for employment in this part of Mexico.



Cancún, Mexico attracts thousands of tourists every year.

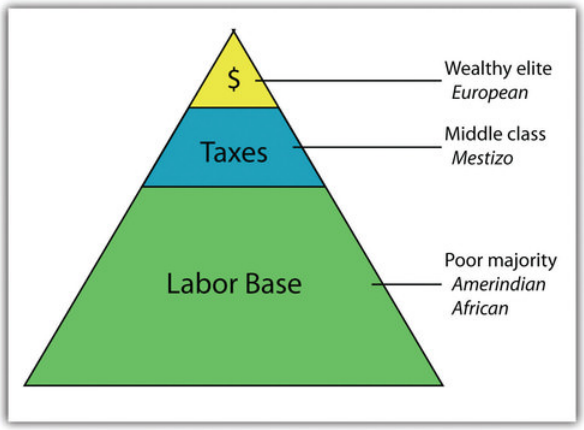
Mexican Social Order

The early European control of the land, the economy, and the political system created conflict for the people of Mexico. The country has experienced domination followed by revolution at various times, starting with colonial domination, then economic domination, and lastly political domination. In each historic cycle, revolution and conflict were followed by change. The result was a mixing and acculturation of the Europeans and the Amerindians, which created the current mestizo mainstream society.

Mestizos make up about 60 percent of the current population, Europeans make up about 9 percent, and Amerindians make up about 30 percent. More than 60 indigenous languages spoken by Amerindian groups are recognized in Mexico. At least 17 indigenous languages are spoken by more than 100,000 people or more in Mexico, most of them living in the southern part of the country.

Mexican society is regionally and ethnically diverse, with sharp socioeconomic divisions. Many rural communities have strong ties with their regions and are often referred to as *patrias chicas* (“small homelands”), which helps to perpetuate the cultural diversity. The large number of indigenous languages and customs, especially in the southern parts of Mexico, further emphasize cultural diversity. *Idigenismo* (“pride in the indigenous heritage”) has been a unifying theme of Mexico since the 1930's.

Daily life in Mexico can be dramatically different according to socioeconomic class, gender, ethnicity, rural or urban settlements, and other cultural differences. A peasant farmer in the rainforests of the Yucatán will lead a very different life than a museum curator in Mexico City or a lower-middle-class auto factory worker in Monterrey.

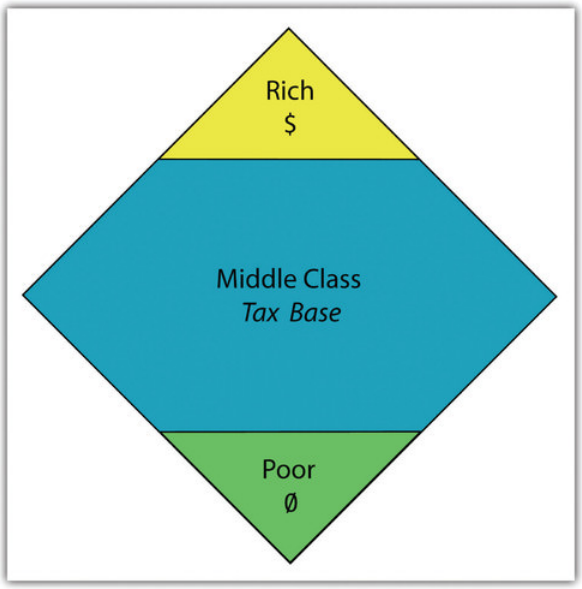


This graphic illustrates the socioeconomic classes in Mexico and most of Latin America.

Those of European descent are at the top of the pyramid and control a higher percentage of the wealth and power even though they are a minority of the population. The small middle class is largely mestizo, including managers, business people, and professionals.

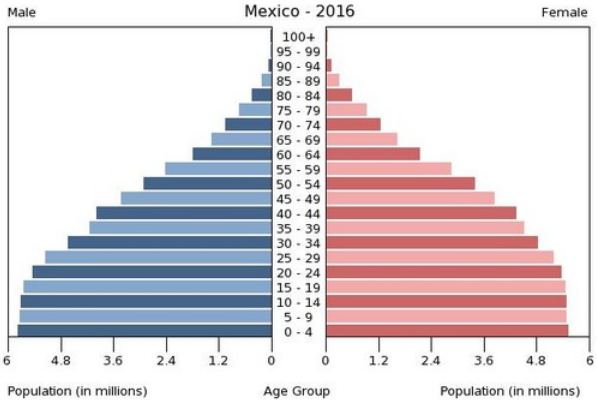
The working poor make up most of the population at the bottom of the pyramid. The lower class contains the highest percentage of people of Amerindian descent.

The most desirable type of social structure is illustrated by the diamond shape below. In the middle is a large, employed middle class that pays most of the taxes and purchases consumer goods that help bolster the economy. The narrow top is made up of the wealthiest, and the narrow bottom is made up of people who live in poverty. This type of social structure does not happen in Mexico, where about 40 percent of the population lives in poverty.



This graphic illustrates the ideal socioeconomic class structure with a large middle-class tax base.

Over the past century, the people of Mexico have been working through a demographic transition. As the rural regions of Mexico continued to have a high fertility rate, death rates declined, and the country's population grew exponentially. In 1970, the population of Mexico was about 50 million. By the year 2000, it had more than doubled. However, the population estimate for 2017 was more than 124 million. As Mexico urbanizes and industrializes, family size and fertility rates have been in decline, and population growth has slowed.



Age Structure of Mexico: 0-14 years: 26.93 percent (male 17,155,689/female 16,390,913); 15-24 years: 17.54 percent (male 11,065,927/female 10,778,382); 25-54 years: 40.81 percent (male 24,550,848/female 26,282,836); 55-64 years: 7.64 percent (male 4,362,868/female 5,160,514); 65 years and over: 7.09 percent (male 3,949,823/female 4,876,995)

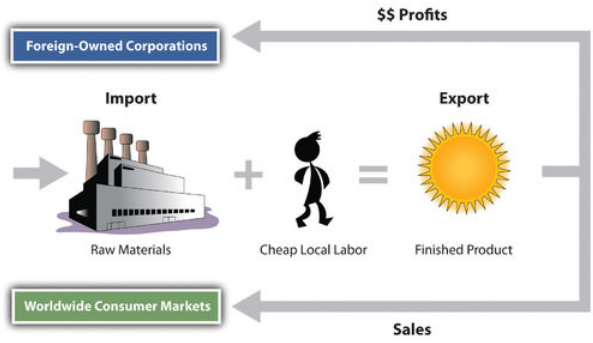
The rural-to-urban shift has increased the population of Mexico City. Rural Amerindian groups in the isolated and remote mountainous regions of Mexico have historically been self-sufficient for their daily needs and have relied on the land for their livelihoods. In the past few decades, however, large family sizes have forced many young people to look to the cities for employment.

NAFTA and Maquiladoras

The North American Free Trade Agreement (NAFTA) is a 1994 economic agreement with Canada, the United States, and Mexico that eliminated or reduced the tariffs, taxes, and quotas in these countries. This agreement created the world's largest trading bloc to compete with the European Union and the global economy. This theoretically allows more corporate investments across borders and increases foreign ownership of business facilities. It stimulated a shift in the location of industrial activity and in the migration patterns of people in Mexico.

Capitalizing on the old industrial locations of northern Mexico, such as Monterrey, corporations started to relocate manufacturing plants from the United States to Mexico to benefit from the low-cost labor. Cheap labor inflated corporate profits and reduced product costs. The United States is one of the world's largest consumer markets, so these manufacturing plants, called maquiladoras (also known as *maquilas*), benefited both countries.

Maquiladoras are foreign-owned factories that import most of the raw materials or components needed for the products they manufacture, assemble, or process with local cheap labor. The finished products are exported for profit. US corporations own more than half of the maquiladoras in Mexico, and about 80 percent of the finished goods are exported back to the United States. Although most maquiladoras are located near the US-Mexican border, additional factories are located around Monterrey and other cities with easy access to the United States. A major trade corridor is developing between Monterrey and Dallas/Ft. Worth, which acts as a gateway to the US markets.



Import/Export System of a Maquiladora Operation

Thousands of maquiladoras exist along the US-Mexican border, although the Mexican government has also promoted maquiladoras in other parts of Mexico. Maquiladoras provide jobs for workers in Mexico and provide inexpensive products for US consumers. There are some problems with this system, however.

Labor unions in the United States complain that the high-paying industrial jobs that support the US middle class are being lost to cheap Mexican labor. Labor laws in Mexico are less rigorous than laws in the United States. Maquiladora employees typically work longer hours and have less benefits than the average worker in the United States. Moreover, pollution standards in Mexico are not as restrictive as those in the United States, giving rise to environmental concerns.

The central US-Mexican border region has arid type B climates with fresh water in short supply. This is a problem because water is in high demand in industrial processes. With the rapid increase in employment along the border, many of the people who work in the factories do not have adequate housing or utilities. Extensive slum areas have grown around maquiladora zones, which have little law enforcement, high crime, and few services.

The US-Mexican border region has become a strong pull factor, attracting poor people who seek greater opportunities and advantages to move from Mexico City and other southern regions of Mexico to the border region to look for work. When they do not find work, they are compelled to cross the US border illegally. The United States is considered a land of opportunity and

attracts immigrants—both legal and illegal—from Mexico. For political and economic reasons, the US political parties have not adequately addressed the problem of illegal immigrants from Mexico.



Opportunities and advantages drive the push-pull of migrants searching for improved economic conditions.

It is not only US corporations that have taken advantage of the explosion in the number of maquiladoras in Mexico. European and Japanese companies have also engaged in the market. Capitalism thrives on cheap labor and accessible raw materials. With much of this industrial activity located in the northern sector of Mexico, it becomes easier to understand the difficult issues that confront Mexico's southernmost state of Chiapas, where there is little benefit from this growth of economic activity.

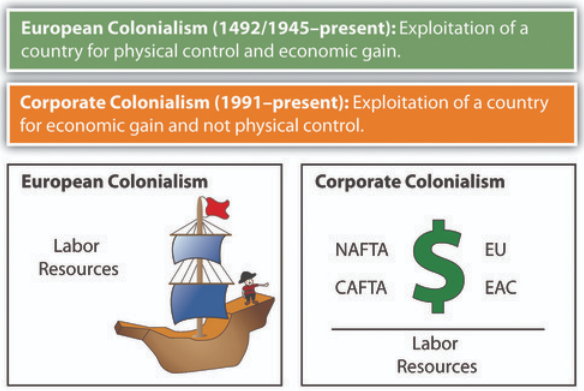
In 1995, Chile was considered a possible addition to the countries participating in NAFTA. However, US congressional differences have prevented Chile from being accepted as a full member. As a result, Chile remains a "silent partner" and conducts business according to similar rules. Agreements with Chile block Asian goods from making their way into the United States through Chile and Mexico. The United States, Mexico, and Canada all have full-fledged independent free-trade agreements with Chile.

The Free Trade Area of the Americas (FTAA) is a plan to integrate the entire Western Hemisphere into one giant trading bloc. The same concerns that the European Union faced regarding currency, language, and law confront this proposal. A new currency called the Eagle was proposed as early as the 1990s to replace the Canadian dollar, the US dollar, and the Mexican peso.

In later years, a currency called the Amero was proposed for the same purpose, but its implementation is unlikely. Any change in the US dollar would affect a great number of countries. Puerto Rico (a territory of the United States) and the countries of Ecuador, Panama, and El Salvador already use the US dollar as their standard currency. A one-currency solution might become a more viable option if the US dollar were to crash or significantly lose its value in the world marketplace.

A goal of NAFTA is to exploit cheap labor until the Mexican economy rises to a level similar to that of the United States and Canada, equalizing migration patterns and eventually bringing about a situation in which the border checkpoints between the countries could be eliminated, as they have been within the European Union. Through the development of a larger middle class in Mexico, NAFTA countries would have similar standards of living. Mexico has a long way to go to arrive at this status but is making progress.

Critics of NAFTA claim that the term *free trade* really means corporate trade. NAFTA is also viewed as a component of globalization in the form of corporate colonialism, which only benefits those wealthy enough to hold investments at the corporate level. The exploitation of cheap labor has increased immigration across the US-Mexican border, bringing millions of illegal workers into the United States. The Mexican government has not adequately addressed Mexico's economic conditions to provide jobs and opportunities for the people or to use the wealth held or controlled by the elite minority to enhance economic opportunities for the middle- and lower-class majority.



Slave labor was prominent during the European colonial era, whereas cheap labor is the target in neocolonial activity—that is, corporate colonialism.

Chiapas and NAFTA

The state of Chiapas in Mexico has an unequal distribution of wealth, a situation evident in most core-peripheral spatial relationships. Located in the rural highlands of Mexico and inhabited by a minority group that holds to the Mayan' language and traditions, Chiapas has few economic opportunities for its people. Wealthy landowners and the ruling elite who have long held power have routinely taken advantage of peasant farmers. The aristocracy uses the best land and pays low wages to local workers. Medical care, education, and government assistance have been slow in coming to this region and its people.

In the past few decades, various Amerindian groups have organized in the rural areas of Mexico in an attempt to counter the power of the political elite. In Chiapas, a group calling itself the Zapatista National Liberation Army (ZNLA) organized to coordinate an offensive against the Mexican government in various towns in the region. The ZNLA was organized to coincide with the implementation of NAFTA among the United States, Canada, and Mexico in January of 1994.

As each country claimed benefits from this agreement, the peripheral region of Chiapas sought to receive their share of those benefits. The Mexican military was quick to react to the ZNLA offensive and rapidly drove them out of the towns they had occupied. The publicity and the international press coverage assisted the ZNLA in getting their message out to the rest of the world.

Since 1994, the ZNLA's guerrilla forces have used their familiarity with the mountains for sanctuary and have faced off against the Mexican military when negotiations with the federal government have broken down. The ZNLA want greater recognition of their rights and their heritage and more autonomy over their region and lands. This devolutionary process resembles that of various European regions desiring similar recognition of rights.

Similar conflicts are ongoing in other rural states of Mexico with the majority of Amerindian populations. There is a direct relationship between social status, wealth, and skin color in most regions of Mexico. The skin tone is directly related to a person's social status. On the one hand, Aztec and Mayan heritage is celebrated. On the other hand, their identity and darker skin relegate them to a lower socioeconomic status.

Illegal Drug Trafficking in Mexico

The illegal drug trade is a multi-billion-dollar industry. Mexico has traditionally been the transitional area or stop-off point between the South American drug producing areas and entrance into US markets. Cocaine, marijuana, and heroin were produced in the Andes Mountains of South America and shipped north to the United States. Colombian cartels were once the main controllers of illegal drugs in the Western Hemisphere. However, in recent decades, organized crime units in Mexico have gained some control of drugs coming through Mexico. They make deals with their South American counterparts to become the main traffickers of drugs into the United States.

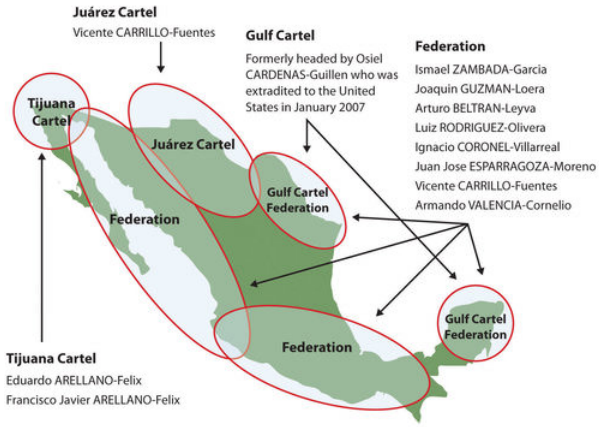
The influence and power of Mexican drug cartels have increased immensely since the demise of the Colombian cartels in the 1990s. Enormous profits fuel the competition for control. Just as the United States has declared a war on drugs and has used its

Drug Enforcement Administration (DEA) as the main arm in combating the industry, Mexico has had to address its own issues in the illegal drug trade.

Illegal drug income flowing into Mexico has become a major part of the economy in specific areas. Drug kingpins have used their economic power to buy off local police forces and silence opposition. They have also been known to provide poor neighborhoods with funding for services that would normally be designated as government obligations. These actions have often provided a mixed reaction within the population in local areas. The drug cartels have become an integrated part of the fabric of Mexico.

In an attempt to combat the situation, the Mexican government has been engaged in its own internal war against the illegal drug trade. The battles between the drug cartels and the Mexican government have created a serious internal conflict in the country, killing thousands of innocent bystanders in the crossfire. Armed conflicts between rival cartels or local gangs have increased the violence that has been intensifying since the year 2000. Mexican cities near the US border have experienced increased incidences of major drug-related murders and gang violence. Higher volumes of firearms trafficking from the United States and abroad into Mexico have been fueling the armed conflicts. Military and police casualties have increased and the number of drug-related shootings is on the rise.

https://k12.libretexts.org/@go/page/1958



The drug cartels in Mexico have been a major influence on the economics and culture of the region.

Cartels have been known to use jet airliners, semi-trucks, and even submarines in their attempts to ship illegal drugs into the United States. Large tunnels have been found beneath the US-Mexican border that were used to smuggle drugs. Intimidation and corruption have been standard practices used by drug traffickers to protect their interests. Bribes and corruption have been difficult to battle in a country with a high percentage of the population living in poor conditions.

Key Takeaways

- Mexico possesses extensive natural resources that provide for a wide range of biodiversity and economic activities.
- Mexico portrays a clear core-periphery spatial relationship. Mexico City and its urban neighbors anchor the core, while the northern border region and states such as Chiapas represent the rural periphery.
- People of European heritage continue to hold positions of power and privilege in Mexico's socioeconomic class structure. Amerindian populations exist at the lowest level with the fewest economic opportunities.
- Economic reforms that coincide with NAFTA have greatly enhanced the industrial capacity of Mexico and helped integrate the country into the global economy.
- Mexican drug traffickers have become the major controllers of illegal drugs entering the United States from the south. Drug cartels in Mexico reap enormous profits and have become a major problem for the Mexican government and the country.

Vocabulary Terms

Chapter 4.2 Mexico

Aztecs	A Mesoamerican Native American Empire who lived in Mexico. Their capital was Tenochtitlan. They worshiped everything around them especially the sun. Cortes conquered them in 1521
maquiladoras	Manufacturing plants/factories located in Mexico, usually along the US/Mexico border
Mayans	A Mesoamerican civilization of Central America and southern Mexico. Achievements include mathematics, architecture, and a 365 day a year calendar. They flourished between the 4th and 12th centuries C.E.
Mestizo	People of mixed Spanish and native decent
NAFTA-North American Free Trade Agreement.	A trade agreement between Canada, the United States and Mexico that encourages free trade between these North American countries
Tenochtitlan	Aztec capital built on an island in 1325, located where present-day Mexico City is located

Applying Knowledge

Interactive Notebook Activities

1. Describe the physical geography of Mexico, identifying the core and peripheral areas.
2. List the socioeconomic classes in Mexico and explain the ethnic differences of each.
3. Explain how the North American Free Trade Agreement (NAFTA) and maquiladoras have influenced the economic and employment situations in Mexico.
4. Summarize in a few sentences how the drug cartels have become an integrated part of the Mexican economy and political situation.

Discussion and Study Questions

1. What are the main physical features of Mexico?
2. How does the core-periphery spatial relationship apply to Mexico?
3. How can the socioeconomic pattern of Mexico be illustrated?
4. How are maquiladoras structured to make them attractive to corporations?
5. What are the current push-pull migration dynamics in Mexico?
6. What change would bring about an open border between the United States and Mexico similar to that of the European Union?
7. How are trade agreements and political unions reshaping our global community?
8. How is NAFTA similar to the European Union and how is it different?
9. How is Chiapas caught in the politics between the core and the periphery?
10. How has the illegal drug trade affected Mexico?

Real-World Geography Exercise

Using Google Maps, locate the places listed below. Next, using NASA Latitude and Longitude Finder, determine the latitude and longitude for each location. Be prepared to share your answers.

- Baja California Peninsula
- Chiapas
- Chihuahuan Desert
- Cordillera Neovolcánica
- Mexican Altiplano

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

- Monterrey
- Sierra Madre Occidental
- Sierra Madre Oriental
- Yucatán Peninsula

Mapping Exercise

ESRI Geo Inquiries

Migration, On the Move: Students will use ArcGIS Online to evaluate migration at the global, regional, and local scales. The activity uses a web-based map

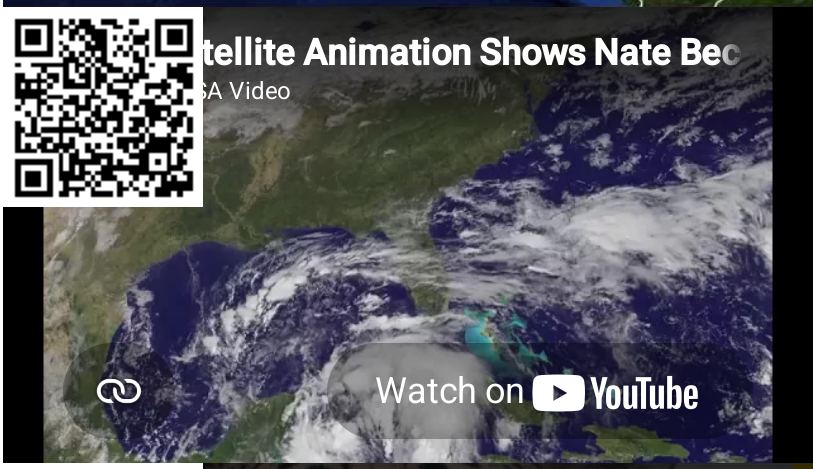
Latin America Independence: Students will explore the factors leading to the independence movement of Latin American colonies.

Videos for Geography Enrichment











Helpful Websites for the Study of Geography

Canadian Encyclopedia is an encyclopedia funded by the Canadian government covering all branches of knowledge. Their scholarly collection includes interactive materials.

CIA World Factbook provides information on the people, history, government, economy, energy, geography, communications, transportation, military, and transnational issues for the world's entities.

Congress.gov is a US government website where you can find federal legislation, past and present, as well as information about the US legal system.

Drug Enforcement Administration (DEA) is a government agency website that provides current news, resources, topics of interest, information about drugs, careers in the DEA, and a tip hotline.

Library of Congress is the largest library in the world and provides manuscripts, files, information, pictures, and videos.

NASA Earth Observatory (NEO) is a US government agency website that allows users to search for and retrieve satellite images of Earth.

National Archives is a US government website that provides historical documents, photos, records, publications, and educator resources.

National Oceanic and Atmospheric Association (NOAA) is a US government agency website that provides weather-related information and ocean research.

National Map is a website by the United States Geological Survey and other federal, state, and local agencies that deliver topographic information for the United States.

NationMaster is a massive central data source and a handy way to graphically compare nations.

Real-Time World Air Quality Index is a website that measures most locations in the world for air pollution in real time.

StateMaster is a unique statistical database, which allows you to research and compare a multitude of different data on US states.

United Nations (UN) is an international organization founded in 1945 and made up of 193 member states. The UN maintains international peace and security, protects human rights, delivers humanitarian aid, promotes sustainable development, and upholds international law.

United States Census Bureau is a US government agency that provides a population clock, data, surveys, statistics, a library with information and infographics, news about the economy, and much more.

United States Geological Survey (USGS) is a US government agency website that provides scientific information about the natural hazards that threaten lives, the natural resources we rely on, the health of our ecosystems and environment, and the impacts of climate and land-use change.

Whitehouse.gov is a US government website that provides the latest presidential news, information about the budget, policy, defense, and many more topics.

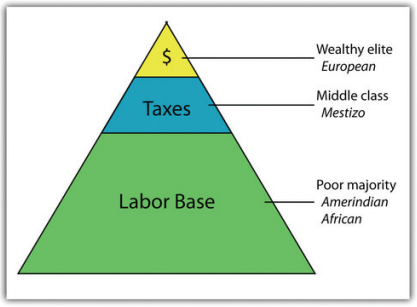
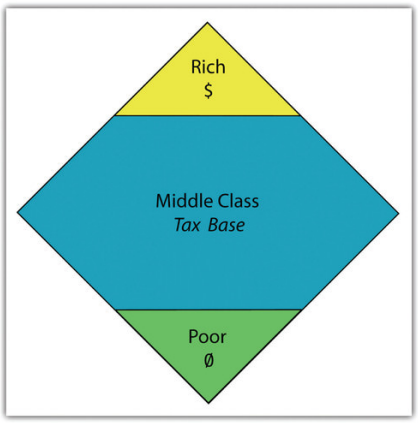
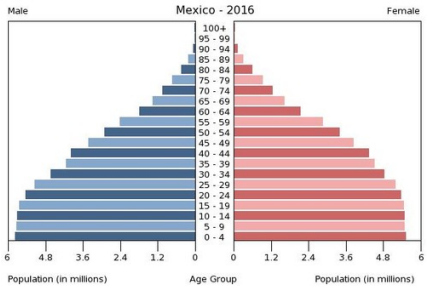
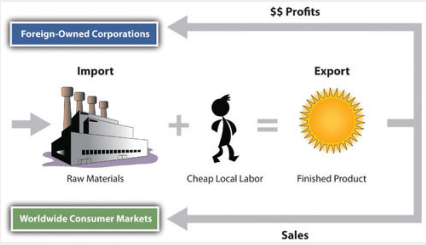
World Health Organization (WHO) is under the United Nations and provides leadership on matters critical to health, shapes the research agenda on health, and monitors the health situation and assessing health trends around the world. Their website provides information on the state of health around the world, outbreaks, current health news, and more.

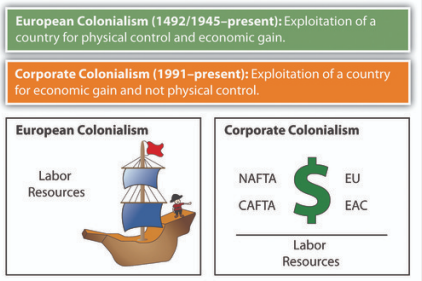
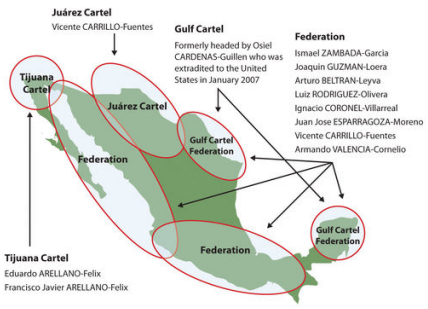
World Trade Organization (WTO) is an intergovernmental organization that regulates international trade. The website provides information on the history of the multilateral trading system, featured videos, news and events, trade topics, and more.

Explore the factors leading to the independence movement of Latin American colonies.

Image	Reference	Attributions
	**[Figure 1]**	**Credit:** By Jaime Sanchez Diaz (jsanchezd) (self-made, NIKON E5400, f/7.3, 1/354s) [GFDL (http://www.gnu.org/copyleft/fdl.html), CC-BY-SA-3.0 (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0/) or CC BY-SA 2.5 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/2.5)], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Devils-Peak_Sierra-SanPedroMartir_BajaCalifornia_Mexico.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 2]**	**Credit:** By Christian Frausto Bernal [CC BY-SA 2.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/2.0)], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Paisaje_de_la_Sierra_Madre_Occidental.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 4]**	**Credit:** By Thelmadatter [CC BY-SA 3.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0) or GFDL (http://www.gnu.org/copyleft/fdl.html)], from Wikimedia Commons **Source:** commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:TulancingoValleyHuasca3.JPG **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 5]**	**Credit:** By _Pico_de_Orizaba_1.jpg: pacomexicoderivative work: Ricraider (talk)enhanced zoom (_Pico_de_Orizaba_1.jpg) [CC BY 2.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/2.0)], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Pico_de_Orizaba_1_Zoom.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

	**[Figure 7]**	**Credit:** Map courtesy of USGS/Cascades Volcano Observatory, http://vulcan.wr.usgs.gov/Volcanoes/...volcanoes.html. **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/733cd154f2c13c84054730d48ff16320.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 8]**	**Credit:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeograp...er/5-2-mexico/ **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/5ed8fd089a832e23bca3f8143f4a3be8.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 9]**	**Credit:** Matthew Rutledge – Wide view of Polanco – CC BY 2.0. **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/8ffffad8a722098c6c723efc9169fac3.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 10]**	**Credit:** Photo by R. Berglee – CC BY-NC-SA. **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/452861250793444ec3c9bd8815ac30f7.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 11]**	**Credit:** By Safa in la but uploaded by Mardetanha (http://www.safainla.us/) [GFDL (http://www.gnu.org/copyleft/fdl.html) or CC BY-SA 3.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0)], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Imagebysafa2.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

	**[Figure 12]**	**Credit:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeograp...er/5-2-mexico/ **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/5240cda9414e6f6aebef16924a56409a.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 13]**	**Credit:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeograp...er/5-2-mexico/ **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/9129ecd539c68558308da79550b29d44.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 14]**	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/mx.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 15]**	**Credit:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeograp...er/5-2-mexico/ **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/a47e468b48157c3c29c38347a0ce761a.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

	**[Figure 16]**	**Credit:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeograp...er/5-2-mexico/ **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/c4230ec463a0ab44e457f6821d3d15ee.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 17]**	**Credit:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeograp...er/5-2-mexico/ **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/1d2ca5046450e1e2babb91ca75e25231.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 18]**	**Credit:** Map courtesy of US Congress, Committee on Foreign Relations. **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/7557da9c8da5090c5f4bbbf5c2e4ef8e.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

This page titled 4.2: Mexico (2 Days) is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by CK12 via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

4.3: Central America (1 Day)

Chapter Challenges

- Describe how the physical environment has affected human activity in Central America.
- List the various ways in which the United States has affected the region.
- Explain the similarities and the differences among the Central American republics.
- Briefly summarize how the Panama Canal came to be constructed and what role the United States has played in Panama.

Learning Objectives

TEKS Regional Unit 04: Latin America; Chapter 4.3 Central America

WG.1B Trace the spatial diffusion of phenomena such as the Columbian Exchange or the diffusion of American popular culture and describe the effects on regions of contact

WG.2A Describe the human and physical characteristics of the same regions at different periods of time to evaluate relationships between past events and current conditions

WG.4A Explain how elevation, latitude, wind systems, ocean currents, position on a continent, and mountain barriers influence temperature, precipitation, and distribution of climate regions

WG.6A Locate and describe human and physical features that influence the size and distribution of settlements

WG.6B Explain the processes that have caused changes in settlement patterns, including urbanization, transportation, access to and availability of resources, and economic activities

WG.7D Examine benefits and challenges of globalization, including connectivity, standard of living, pandemics, and loss of local culture

WG.8A Compare ways that humans depend on, adapt to, and modify the physical environment, including the influences of culture and technology

WG.8C Evaluate the economic and political relationships between settlements and the environment, including sustainable development and renewable/non-renewable resources. sustainable development and renewable/non-renewable resources

WG.10C Compare the ways people satisfy their basic needs through the production of goods and services such as subsistence agriculture versus commercial agriculture or cottage industries versus commercial industries

WG.10D Compare global trade patterns over time and examine the implications of globalization, including outsourcing and free trade zones

WG.11B Identify the factors affecting the location of different types of economic activities, including subsistence and commercial agriculture, manufacturing, and service industries

WG.13A Interpret maps to explain the division of land, including man-made and natural borders, into separate political units such as cities, states, or countries

TEKS and ELPS for Regional World Geography Unit 04--Latin America from TEKS Resource System

Central America's Physical Environment

Central America is a land bridge connecting the North and South American continents, with the Pacific Ocean to its west and the Caribbean Sea to its east. Mountains dominate the interior from Mexico to Panama. The coastal plains of Central America have tropical and humid type A climates. In the highland interior, the climate changes with elevation. As one travels up the

mountainsides, the temperature cools. Only Belize is located away from this interior mountain chain. Its rich soils and cooler climate have attracted more people to live in the mountainous regions than along the coast.

Name of territory, with flag	Area (km²)	Population (2016 est.)	Population density (per km²)	Capital	Official language	Human Development Index
Belize	22,966	366,954	13	Belmopan	English	0,715 High
Costa Rica	51,100	4,857,274	82	San Jose	Spanish	0,766 High
El Salvador	21,040	6,344,722	292	San Salvador	Spanish	0,666 Medium
Guatemala	108,890	16,582,469	129	Guatemala City	Spanish	0,627 Medium
Honduras	112,090	9,112,867	67	Tegucigalpa	Spanish	0,606 Medium
Nicaragua	130,373	6,149,928	44	Managua	Spanish	0,631 Medium
Panama	78,200	4,034,119	44	Panama City	Spanish	0,780 High
Total	523,780	47,448,333	80	-	-	-

Source

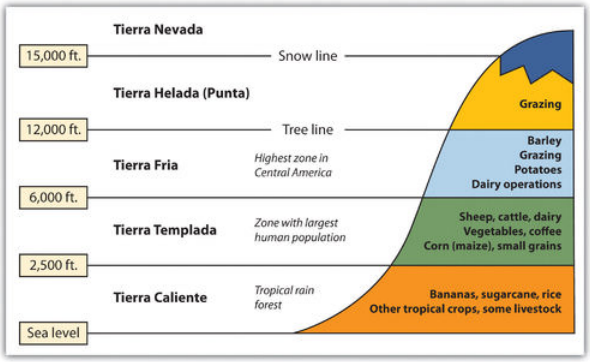
Hurricanes, tropical storms, earthquakes, and volcanic activity produce recurring environmental problems for Central America. In 1998, Hurricane Mitch swept through the region, devastating Nicaragua and El Salvador, which had already been devastated by civil wars in previous years.

The volcanic activity along the central mountain chain over time has provided rich volcanic soils in the mountain region. This has attracted people to work the land for agriculture. Central America has traditionally been a rural peripheral economic area in which most of the people have worked the land. Family size has been larger than average and the rural-to-urban shift dominates the migration patterns as the region urbanizes and industrializes. Natural disasters, poverty, large families, and a lack of economic opportunities have made life difficult in much of Central America.

Altitudinal Zonation

High mountains ranges run the length of Central and South America. The Andes Mountains of South America are the longest mountain chain in the world, and a large section of this mountain range is in the tropics. Tropical regions usually have humid type A climates. What is significant in Latin America is that while the climate at the base of the Andes may be type A, the different zones of climate and corresponding human activity vary as one moves up the mountain in elevation. Mountains have different climates at the base than at the summit. Type H highland climates describe mountainous areas that exhibit different climate types at varying degrees of elevation.

Human activity varies with elevation, and the activities can be categorized into zones according to altitudinal zonation. Each zone has its own type of vegetation and agricultural activity suited to the climate found at that elevation. For every 1,000-foot increase in elevation, the temperature drops 3.5 ºF. In the tropical areas of Latin America, there are five established temperature-altitude zones. Elevation zones may vary depending on a particular location's distance from the equator.



This graphic illustrates the altitudinal zonation system in Latin America.

Tierra Caliente (*Hot Land*): Sea Level to 2,500 Feet

From sea level to 2,500 feet are the humid tropical lowlands found on the coastal plains. The coastal plains on the west coast of Middle America are quite narrow, but they are wider along the Caribbean coast. Vegetation includes tropical rain forests and tropical commercial plantations. Food crops include bananas, manioc, sweet potatoes, yams, corn, beans, and rice. Livestock is raised at this level, and sugarcane is an important cash crop. Tropical diseases are most common, and large human populations are not commonly attracted to this zone.

Tierra Templada (*Temperate Land*): 2,501 to 6,000 Feet

From 2,501 to 6,000 feet is a zone with cooler temperatures than at sea level. This is the most populated zone of Latin America. Four of the seven capitals of the Central American republics are found in this zone. Just as temperate climates attract human activity, this zone provides a pleasant environment for habitation. The best coffee is grown at these elevations, and most other food crops can be grown here, including wheat and small grains.

Tierra Fria (*Cold Land*): 6,001 to 12,000 Feet

From 6,001 to 12,000 feet is the highest zone found in Middle America. This zone is usually the limit of the tree line, and few trees grow north of this zone. The shorter growing season and cooler temperatures found at these elevations are still adequate for growing agricultural crops of wheat, barley, potatoes, or corn. Livestock can graze and be raised on the grasslands. The Inca Empire of the Andes Mountains in South America flourished in this zone.

Tierra Helada (*Frozen Land*): 12,001 to 15,000 Feet

Some classify this as the “Puna” zone. At this elevation, there are no trees. The only human activity is the raising of livestock such as sheep or llama on any short grasses available in the highland meadows. Snow and cold dominate the zone. Central America does not have a *tierra helada* zone, but it is found in the higher Andes Mountain Ranges of South America.

Tierra Nevada (*Snowy Land*): Above 15,000 Feet

There is little human activity above 15,000 feet. Permanent snow and ice are found here, and little vegetation is available. Many classification systems combine this zone with the *tierra helada* zone.

European Colonialism

Amerindian groups dominated Central America before the European colonial powers arrived. The Maya are still prominent in the north and make up about half the population of Guatemala. Other Amerindian groups are encountered farther south, and many still speak their indigenous languages and hold to traditional cultural customs. People of European ancestry or upper-class mestizos now control political and economic power in Central America. Indigenous Amerindian groups are on the lower end of the socioeconomic status.

cK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org



Map of the Central American Republics.

During colonial times, the Spanish conquistadors dominated Central America with the exception of the area of Belize, which was a British colony called British Honduras until 1981. Guatemala, El Salvador, Honduras, Nicaragua, and Costa Rica were Spanish colonies and became independent of Spain in the 1820s. Panama was a part of Colombia and was not independent until the United States started an independence movement in 1903 to develop the Panama Canal.

As is usually the case with colonialism, the main religion and the *lingua franca* of the Central American states are those of the European colonizers, in this case, Roman Catholicism and Spanish. In some locations, the language and religion take on variant forms that mix the traditional with the European to create a unique local cultural environment.

People and Population

About 50 percent of the people of Central America live in rural areas. Because the economy is agriculturally based, family size has traditionally been large. Until the 1990s, family size averaged six children. As the pressures of the postindustrial age have influenced Central America, the average family size has been decreasing and is now about half of the pre-1990s and is declining. For example, the World Bank reports that in Nicaragua the average woman has 2.68 children during her lifetime. The rural-to-urban shift is common, and as the region experiences more urbanization and industrialization, family size will decrease even more.

During the 20th century, much of Central America experienced development similar to stage 2 of the index of economic development. An influx of light industry and manufacturing firms seeking cheap labor has pushed many areas into stage 3 development. The primate cities and main urban centers are feeling the impact of this shift.

Over the years, larger family sizes have created populations with a higher percentage of young people and a lower percentage of older people. Cities are often overwhelmed with young migrants from the countryside with few or no places to live. Rapid urbanization places a strain on urban areas because services, infrastructure, and housing cannot keep pace with population growth. Slums with self-constructed housing districts emerge around the existing urban infrastructure. The United States has also become a destination for people looking for opportunities or advantages not found in these cities.

Largest Metropolitan Areas in Central America

City	Country	Population	Census Year	% of National population
(1) Guatemala City	Guatemala	5,700,000	2010	26%
(2) San Salvador	El Salvador	2,415,217	2009	39%
(3) Managua	Nicaragua	1,918,000	2012	34%
(4) Tegucigalpa	Honduras	1,600,000	2010	25%
(6) Panama City	Panama	1,400,000	2010	37%
(7) San José	Costa Rica	1,275,000	2013	30%

Source

CAFTA and Neocolonialism

Just as Canada, the United States, and Mexico signed the North American Free Trade Agreement (NAFTA) into law in 1994, the United States and five Central American states signed the Central American Free Trade Agreement (CAFTA) in 2006. The agreement was signed by trade representatives from El Salvador, Honduras, Nicaragua, Guatemala, and the United States. The CAFTA-DR agreement, which includes the Dominican Republic, was ratified in 2007. In 2010, Costa Rica's legislature approved a measure to join the agreement.

CAFTA's purpose is to reduce trade barriers between the United States and Central America. Reducing trade barriers affects labor, human rights, and the flow of wealth. During negotiations for CAFTA, US political forces cited CAFTA as a top priority and argued that it would help move forward the possibility of the larger Free Trade Area of the Americas (FTAA), which would create a single market for the Americas.

Countries gain national wealth in the three main ways: by growing it, extracting it, or manufacturing it. These methods contribute to a nation's wealth only if the wealth stays within the country. With free-trade agreements such as NAFTA and CAFTA, the wealth gained from manufacturing, which has the highest value-added profits, does not stay in the country of production. Instead, the profits are transferred to the foreign corporation that controls the industrial factory. Multinational corporations profit from cheap labor sources and at the same time provide jobs for local people in Central America. These advantages usually result in lower product costs for consumers.

There have been protest marches and anti-CAFTA activities in many Central American countries. Costa Rica, one of the most stable countries in the region, had problems passing the agreement because of voter opposition. One of the primary arguments opponents to CAFTA make is that the wealth generated by the exploitation of cheap labor will not stay in Central America. instead, it will be removed by the wealthy core nations, just as European colonialism removed the wealth generated by the conquistadors and shipped it back to Europe. Those who oppose CAFTA and corporate colonialism also cite the following arguments:

- A popular argument against CAFTA is that "free trade" is the same as corporate trade. Expanding corporate-controlled free trade makes the global south more dependent on the global north, and the corporations reap the profits.
- CAFTA promotes corporate colonialism or neocolonialism. The "have" countries dominate and take advantage of the "have-not" countries to an ever-greater extent. The small countries of Central America cannot compete with large US corporations, which pressure and influence political systems to provide advantages and opportunities to exploit the smaller, weaker nations of Central America.
- CAFTA diminishes the power of Central American countries to regulate their own economies and protect their own citizens. The concentration of power in the hands of corporations with strong ties to those in political power allows the elite to maintain control over a country's economy.
- CAFTA forces small developing countries with no chance of competing successfully against the United States to open their markets to powerful US corporations.

- CAFTA leads to further privatization of social services, decreases public access to basic services, and gives corporations more money and control.
- CAFTA forces competition for the lowest wages and lowest production costs, which drives wages down in the United States and keeps them down throughout Central America while at the same time providing huge profits to multinational corporations.



The banner reads, "For the sovereignty of the people…we demand the repeal of CAFTA (Central American Free Trade Agreement)."

Supporters of CAFTA claim that it provides jobs, infrastructure, and opportunities to the developing countries of Central America. In return, cheap consumer goods are available to the people. The globalized economy is a mixed game. On the one hand, consumer goods are inexpensive to purchase; on the other hand, the world's wealth flows into the hands of a few people at the top and is not always shared with most of the people who contribute to it.

The Republics: Diverse Political Geography

Central American countries share similar climate patterns, but they do not share similar political or economic dynamics. The political geography of the region is diverse and ranges from a history of total civil war to peace and stability. The growing pains of each country as it competes and engages in the global economy often results in turmoil and conflict. Each state has found a different path, but each has dealt with similar issues with varying degrees of success. Barriers to progress range from political corruption to gang violence. Stability has come to the communities that have found new ways of gaining wealth and creating a higher standard of living.

Guatemala



Map of Guatemala

Guatemala is bordered by Mexico to the north and west, the Pacific Ocean to the southwest, Belize to the northeast, the Caribbean to the east, Honduras to the east, and El Salvador to the southeast. Guatemala is the most populated country in Central America with more than 16 million people. Guatemala is a representative democracy. Its capital and largest city is Guatemala City. Spanish is the official language.

In the late 1900s, Guatemala, El Salvador, and Nicaragua experienced devastating civil wars that divided their people and destroyed their economies. In the Mayan state of Guatemala, the 1960–96 civil war was fought between the right-wing Ladinos (urbanized mestizos and Maya) and the left-wing rural Amerindian Mayan majority. The reason for this war was the social reforms of President Jacobo Arbenz, which conflicted with the interests of the US-based United Fruit Company.

In 1954, US-backed forces, funded by the Central Intelligence Agency (CIA), overthrew Arbenz and laid the groundwork for civil unrest for the next four decades. Right-wing and left-wing death squads terrorized the country until the latter 1990s when the Catholic Church brokered a peace accord. Guatemala is now moving forward on its path to recovery.



A woman dressed in traditional clothing selling fruit in a Guatemalan market.

El Salvador



Map of El Salvador

El Salvador, known as the land of volcanoes, is the smallest and the most densely populated country in Central America. It is bordered by the northern Pacific Ocean, Guatemala on the northwest side, and Honduras on the southeast. Its capital and largest

city is San Salvador. As of 2017, the country had an estimated population of over six million. Mestizos make up most of the population at 86.3 percent. Spanish is the official language.

The civil war of 1979–92 was fought between the government-backed wealthy land-owning elite and the peasants who worked the land and lived in poverty. A few powerful families owned almost the entire country. Coffee is a major export crop for El Salvador, a country with a mild climate at its higher elevations. To protect their economic interests, US coffee companies backed the wealthy elite in El Salvador and lobbied the support of the US government. US military advisors and CIA support aided El Salvador's government forces. At the same time, the peasants of El Salvador were soliciting support from Nicaragua and Cuba, which were backed by the Soviet Union.

After the civil war devastated the country and killed an estimated 75,000 people, a peace agreement that included land reform was finally reached in 1992. El Salvador is a small country about the size of the US state of New Jersey with a population of more than six million people. The war devastated this rural mountainous country and forced more than 300,000 people to become refugees in other countries. Many migrated north to the United States. Recovery from the war has been difficult and has been hampered by natural disasters such as hurricanes and earthquakes.

Nicaragua



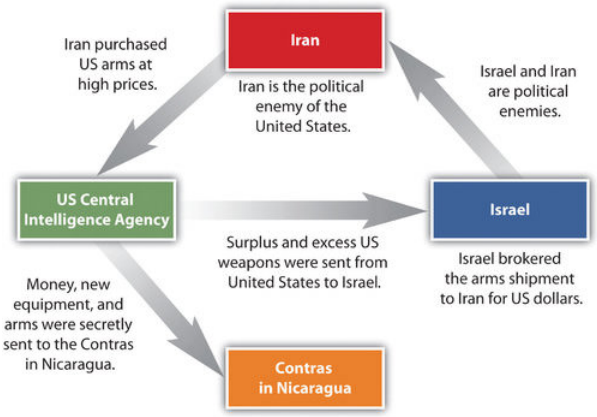
Map of Nicaragua

Nicaragua is the largest country in Central America. It is bordered by Honduras to the north, the Caribbean to the east, Costa Rica to the south, and the Pacific Ocean to the west. Managua is the capital and largest city and is also the third largest city in Central America. Spanish is the official language.

At the same time that civil wars were going on in Guatemala and El Salvador, there was conflict in Nicaragua. After US marines occupied the country from 1926 to 1933, the US-backed Somoza family took power and remained there for decades. By 1978, violent opposition to governmental manipulation and corruption engulfed the country. An estimated 50,000 people died in a bitter civil war that ousted the Somoza regime and brought the Marxist Sandinista government to power in 1979.

Nicaraguan aid to leftist rebels in El Salvador caused the United States to sponsor anti-Sandinista contra (short for counterrevolutionary) guerrillas through much of the 1980s and to bring about a second Nicaraguan civil war. In 1982, the US Congress blocked direct US aid to the contra forces through the Boland Amendment. Covert activity by CIA operatives continued to fund the contra forces by selling surplus US arms to Iran, brokered through Israel.

In spite of a US embargo against Iran and animosity between Israel and Iran, the deals went through with hopes of negotiating the release of US hostages in Lebanon. The profits from these illegal covert arms sales were funneled into support for the contra forces in Nicaragua. The scandal, known as the Iran-Contra Affair, has become a standard reference for US intervention in Central America.



This graphic illustrates the dynamics of the Iran-Contra Affair in Nicaragua.

In 1990, at the end of the Sandinista-Contra War, democratic elections were carried out. Regardless of the Iran-Contra Affair, the US-backed candidate defeated the Sandinista incumbent. An estimated 30,000 lives were lost between the Sandinistas and the contras. The country's infrastructure and economy were both devastated after this era. Despite this history, the people of Nicaragua have worked hard to move forward. An effort to stabilize the country in the past decade has improved the potential for economic opportunities. Nicaragua has worked hard to promote tourism and to increase employment opportunities for its people.

Honduras



Map of Honduras

Honduras is a republic in Central America. It is bordered to the west by Guatemala, to the southwest by El Salvador, to the southeast by Nicaragua, to the south by the Pacific Ocean at the Gulf of Fonseca, and to the north by the Gulf of Honduras, a large inlet of the Caribbean Sea. Mestizos make up 90 percent of the population. Spanish is the official language.

Honduras has not experienced civil war, even though it is located in the midst of three politically unstable neighbors. It is considered a banana republic. American fruit companies have dominated the economy of this poor country and have supported the buildup of arms to ensure its stability. The term *banana republic* is used to explain that the region was dominated by foreign companies that grew bananas for export. Often the fruit companies would buy up large tracts of land and employ those displaced from the land to help grow the bananas.



Guatemala, Nicaragua, and Honduras have been dominated by US corporate interests.

There have been incidences in history when US fruit companies involved themselves in the political affairs of Central American countries to gain an economic advantage. Foreign fruit companies have monopolized the market in Central America to extract higher profits and control economic regulations. At the present time, international corporations have started to invest in places such as Honduras to capitalize on the country's cheap labor pool and relatively stable economic and political conditions.

Costa Rica



Map of Costa Rica

Costa Rica is a democratic and peaceful country, which does not have an army. It is bordered by Nicaragua to the north, Panama to the southeast, the Pacific Ocean to the west, the Caribbean Sea to the east, and Ecuador to the south of Cocos Island. San Jose is the capital and largest city. As of 2017, the population is estimated to be almost five million people. Spanish is the official language. This stable country with a growing economy has earned the country the nickname the *Switzerland of Central America*.

Multinational companies have been moving here to take advantage of the good economic conditions, low labor costs, and supportive environment for its employees. The California-based Intel Corporation has a large microchip-manufacturing site in Costa Rica, which contributes heavily to the country's economy. The tropical climate and stable economy of Costa Rica also attract US tourists as well as retirees looking for a new home. Costa Rica relies on tourism, outside forces, and economic development to finance their country.

Belize



Map of Belize

Belize is on the eastern coast of Central America. It is bordered on the north by Mexico, on the south and west by Guatemala, and on the east by the Caribbean Sea. The population is approximately four million and has the lowest population density in Central America. English is the official language. Spanish is gaining momentum because of immigration. It has the longest coral reef in the Western Hemisphere and has been promoting ecotourism as a means of economic development. Belize is in ecosystems and various species, which makes it an important location in the Mesoamerican Biological Corridor.

After hurricanes almost destroyed the coastal Belize City, the country shifted its capital 45 miles inland to Belmopan as a protective measure. Belmopan is a small, centrally located city with only about 10,000 people. It is called a forward capital, a term used to describe a capital city of a country that has been moved to better serve or protect the country's interests.

Panama and the Panama Canal



Map of Panama

Panama is bordered by Costa Rica to the west, Colombia to the southeast, the Caribbean Sea to the north, and the Pacific Ocean to the south. The capital and largest city is Panama City. In 2017, the estimated population was close to four million people. Spanish is the official language, but a variety of other languages are spoken, such as indigenous languages, Arabic, English, Chinese, Creole, Japanese, Korean, and more.

During the 1880s, the region of Panama was part of South America and was controlled by colonial Colombia, which was formerly colonized by Spain. To travel from the Atlantic Ocean to the Pacific Ocean, ships had to sail around the southern tip of South America, which was time-consuming and difficult to navigate in some places because of ocean currents.

France made an agreement with Colombia to purchase a strip of land in Panama 10 miles wide and about 50 miles long to build a canal. The French had experience in building the Suez Canal between the Red Sea and the Mediterranean and applied their skills in Panama. The tropical climate and swampy terrain defeated the French workers with malaria, yellow fever, and other tropical diseases.

In the United States, there was an increasing need to shorten the shipping distance between California and New York. Before the United States took over the Panama Canal project after the French abandoned it, Panama was separated from Colombia in a brief

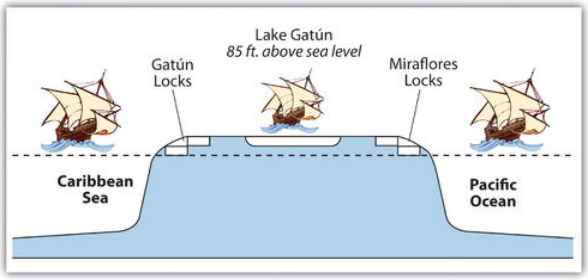
civil war and declared independent in 1903.

Understanding the problems that the French had encountered, the United States first sent civil engineers and medical professionals to Panama to drain the swamps and apply tons of chemicals such as the insecticide DDT to eradicate the mosquito population. These chemicals were later found to be toxic to humans but worked well in eliminating the mosquito problem. The Panama Canal was finally completed by the United States and opened for business in 1914 after tremendous difficulties had been overcome.

Many workers were imported from the Caribbean to help build the canal, which changed the ethnic makeup of Panama's population. About 14 percent of the population of Panama has West Indian ancestry, and many of the laborers were of African descent. The difference in ethnicity caused an early layering of society, with those from the Caribbean finding themselves at the lower end of the socioeconomic scale.

The Panama Canal is a marvel of engineering. An interior waterway was dammed up to create the artificial Lake Gatún at 85 feet above sea level. This large inland lake provides a freshwater channel extending most of the way across the Isthmus of Panama. Canal channels on each end of Lake Gatún connect it with the sea. Locks raise and lower ships from sea level to the 85-foot water level of the canal and the lake. Gravity provides fresh water from Lake Gatún to fill the locks that raise and lower ships. As ships travel through the locks, the fresh water is eventually emptied into the sea.

Rainfall is critical to resupply the water in Lake Gatún to keep the water channel constant and to keep the canal locks in operation. The canal channel has to be dredged periodically to keep it from silting in. In recent years, deforestation has reduced the number of trees around the lake, resulting in more silt entering the lake bed. A program to replant trees has been implemented to secure the lake and restore the natural conditions.



The water for the locks is from Lake Gatún, which is 85 feet above sea level.

Recently, the politics of the Panama Canal have become more of an issue than the operation of the canal itself. In 1977, US president, Jimmy Carter, entered into an agreement with Panamanian president, Omar Torrijos, to return the canal to the government of Panama. Under this agreement, both the Panama Canal Zone and the actual canal were to be returned to Panama by the end of 1999. Many Americans opposed the return of the canal to Panama. President Ronald Reagan campaigned on this position.

The United States had military installations in the Canal Zone and had used this area as a training ground for the Vietnam War and other military missions. The United States operated the School of the Americas (SOA) in the Canal Zone, which was a place to train counterinsurgents and military personnel from other countries. The SOA was moved to Fort Benning, Georgia, in 1984. It was renamed the Western Hemisphere Institute for Security Cooperation (WHINSEC) in 2001.

One of the early graduates of the SOA was a young Panamanian officer by the name of Manuel Noriega, who was placed on the CIA payroll in 1967. He was an important figure, helping with the US war against Nicaragua and serving US interests in the region in spite of the fact he was a known drug dealer. In May 1989, Noriega was elected president of Panama and became less supportive of US interests. In December of 1989, the United States invaded Panama and captured Noriega. He was sentenced to 40 years in a US prison for drug trafficking and held as a political prisoner.

Even after Noriega's arrest, the United States was not allowed to retain use of the Canal Zone for military purposes, which was a major reason for the US presence in Panama. The Panama Canal Zone was an excellent geographical location for US military operations because it provided a base to monitor military activity in South America. US military planes could fly from US bases to Panama without refueling, and the planes could then fly out of Panama to monitor activity in South America.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

One of President Carter's arguments for the return of the canal to Panama was that after the US military had supported the war with Colombia to make Panama independent in 1903, there had been no proper authorization from the Panamanian people to cede the Canal Zone to the United States. International law ruled that the Canal Zone was still sovereign Panamanian territory. The US military claimed the reason for remaining in the Canal Zone was to provide security for the canal.

The Canal Zone and the actual Panama Canal were returned to Panama in 2000. Does the country of Panama, with about three million people, have the resources to manage and maintain the canal operations? To assist in economic development, Panama has established a free-trade zone next to the canal to entice international commerce. Originally established in 1948, the free-trade zone has become one of the largest of its kind in the world. Panama City has also become a hub of international banking with the claim of being a main money-laundering center for Colombian drug money. Panama is striving to be a main economic center for the region, which would advance economic globalization and trade for Panama.

Key Takeaways

- Central America shares a similar climate type and physical features.
- Central America has enormous potential for tourism development.
- The political history of the region is diverse, with each republic experiencing different political and economic conditions.
- High population growth and the rapid rural-to-urban shift has created higher unemployment rates and fewer economic opportunities.
- CAFTA was implemented to help multinational corporations tap into the cheap labor pool.
- The United States has had a major impact on this region both politically and economically.
- The United States has intervened in civil wars and invaded Panama.
- US companies have dominated much of the region's fruit and coffee production.
- The United States has supported industrial activities and the implementation of CAFTA.
- The Panama Canal has been a vital transportation link between the Atlantic and Pacific Oceans for the United States and the world.
- The Panama Canal Zone was a valuable strategic location for the operation of US military exercises.
- The United States was a major controller of the Panama Canal until the year 2000 when the canal and the Canal Zone was returned to Panama.

LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

Vocabulary Terms

Chapter 4.3 Central America

arable	Land that is able to support the growing of crops
CAFTA-Central America Free Trade Agreement	An expansion of NAFTA to five Central American nations (Guatemala, El Salvador, Honduras, Costa Rica and Nicaragua), and the Dominican Republic
cash crop	A crop such as sugar, cotton, and coffee that is grown for sale and is usually a country's or region's primary commodity
Mesoamerican	A region of Central America, Mexico, and South America where several pre-Columbian civilizations lived including the Maya, Inca, and Aztecs
Panama Canal	A canal that crosses the isthmus of Panama connecting the Atlantic and Pacific Oceans. Built by the United States between 1904 and 1914
terrace farming	The cutting out of flat areas (terraces) into near vertical slopes to allow farming. Terrace farms appear as steps cut into a mountainside. This adaptation allowed both the early Chinese and the Inca of Mesoamerica to grow enough food for their large populations
Triangle Trade	A catch-all phrase for the trade occurring between Europe, Africa, and the Americas. Trade goods include raw materials from the Americas, manufactured goods from Europe, and slaves from Africa
slave trade	The buying and selling of people for the purposes of slavery
slavery	A system of forced labor

Applying Knowledge

Interactive Notebook Activities

1. Describe how the physical environment has affected human activity in Central America.
2. List the various ways in which the United States has affected the region.
3. Explain the similarities and the differences among the Central American republics.
4. Briefly summarize how the Panama Canal came to be constructed and what role the United States has played in Panama

Discussion and Study Questions

1. How does the altitudinal zonation influence human activity? What are the main altitudinal zones?
2. What geographic aspects do the Central American republics share?
3. How are the Central American republics different in their political histories?
4. How does one define a banana republic? Where is it found in Central America?
5. What countries are included in CAFTA-DR? Why would anyone oppose this agreement?
6. What was the Iran-Contra Affair? How does this portray the politics of the region?
7. How does Costa Rica attract US business ventures?
8. Who started building the Panama Canal? Who completed it? Who controls it today?
9. How did the building of the Panama Canal change Panama’s ethnic makeup?
10. Why was the Panama Canal so important to the United States?

Real-World Geography Exercise

1. Using Google Maps, complete the following activities:
    a. Locate each place on the bulleted list below.
    b. Find an international airport in proximity to each location on the bulleted list below.
    c. Calculate the distance and travel time by plane to each city from the Albuquerque International Airport in Albuquerque, New Mexico.
2. Using NASA Latitude and Longitude Finder, determine the latitude and longitude for each location on the bulleted list below.
3. Be prepared to share and discuss your answers.

- Panama Canal
- Panama City, Panama
- San Jose, Costa Rica
- Belmopan, Belize
- Managua, Nicaragua
- Tegucigalpa, Honduras
- San Salvador, El Salvador
- Guatemala City, Guatemala

Mapping Exercise

Mapping Our World ESRI-ARGIS Online Module 7 Lesson 2

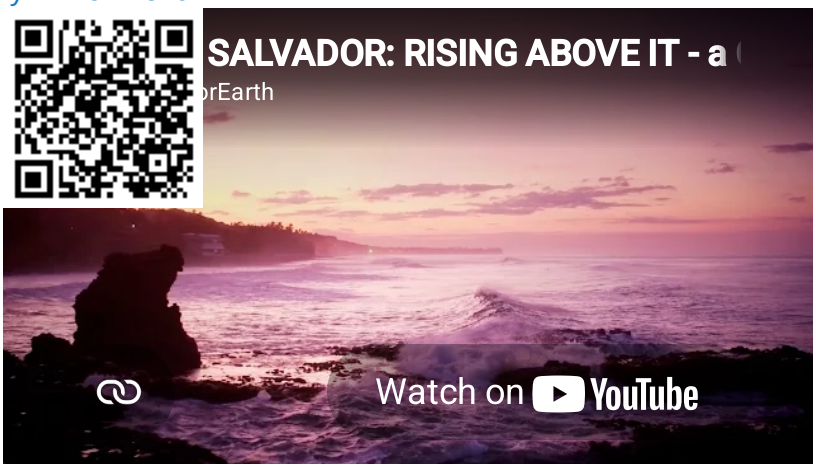
In the Eye of the Storm: Students will study Hurricane Mitch, the deadliest storm of the twentieth century, and the havoc it wreaked on several Central American countries. They will analyze information about the storm itself and about the region before the storm, and they will consider the storm's consequences.

Student Answer Doc-download

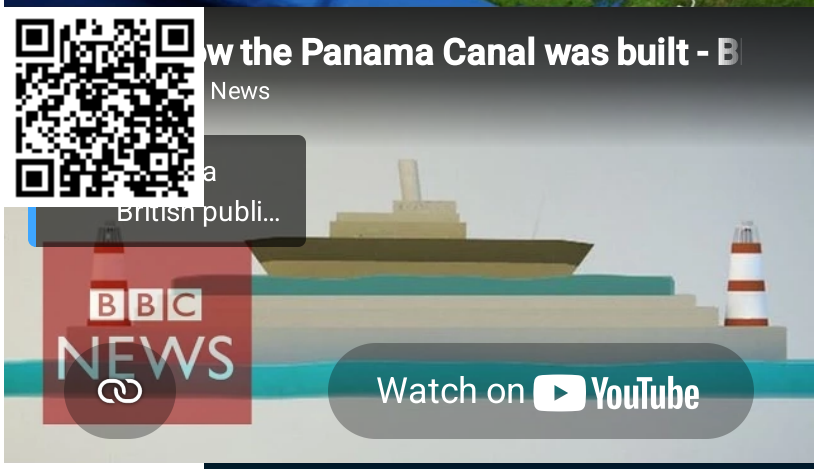
Student Assessment Doc-download

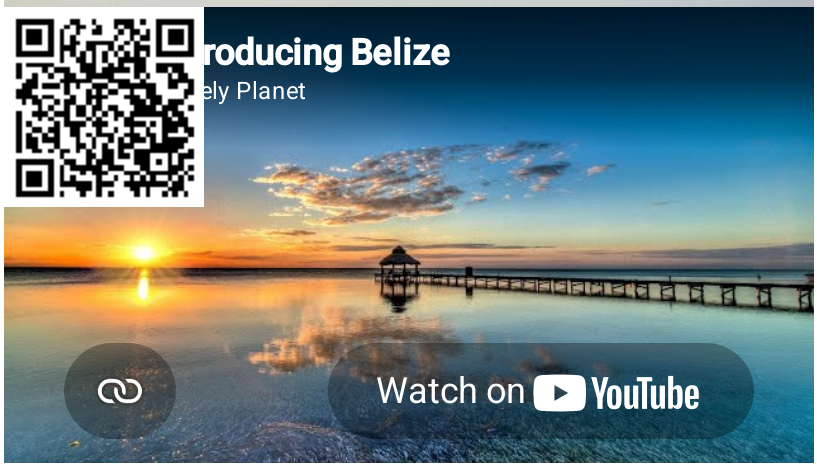
Teacher Materials-download

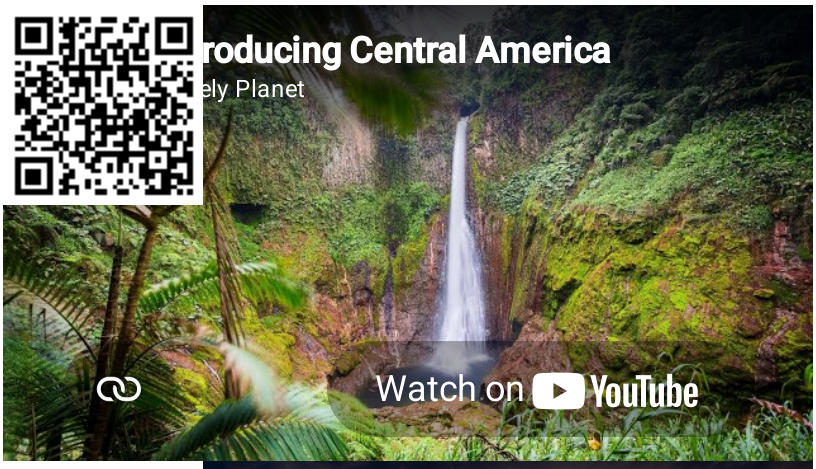
Videos for Geography Enrichment

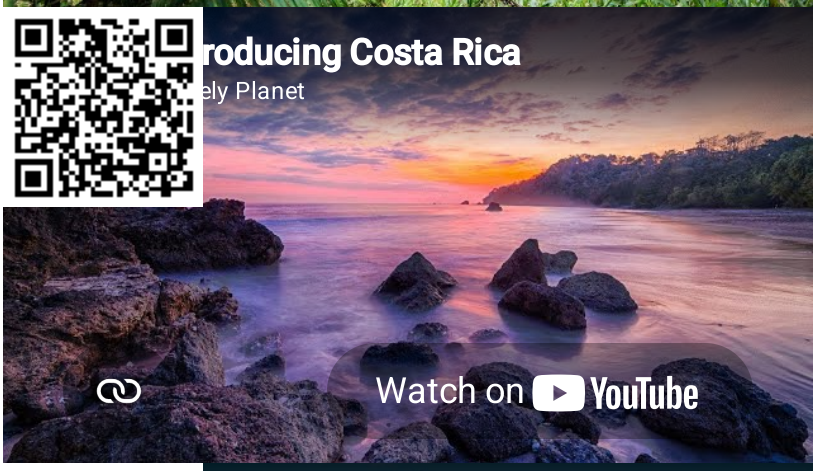



atemala's Geographic Challenge
PETEN REGION
BELIZE
Gulf of Honduras
SIERRA MADRE MOUNTAINS
GUATEMALAN HIGHLANDS
Guatemala City
HONDURAS
EL SALVADOR
Watch on YouTube

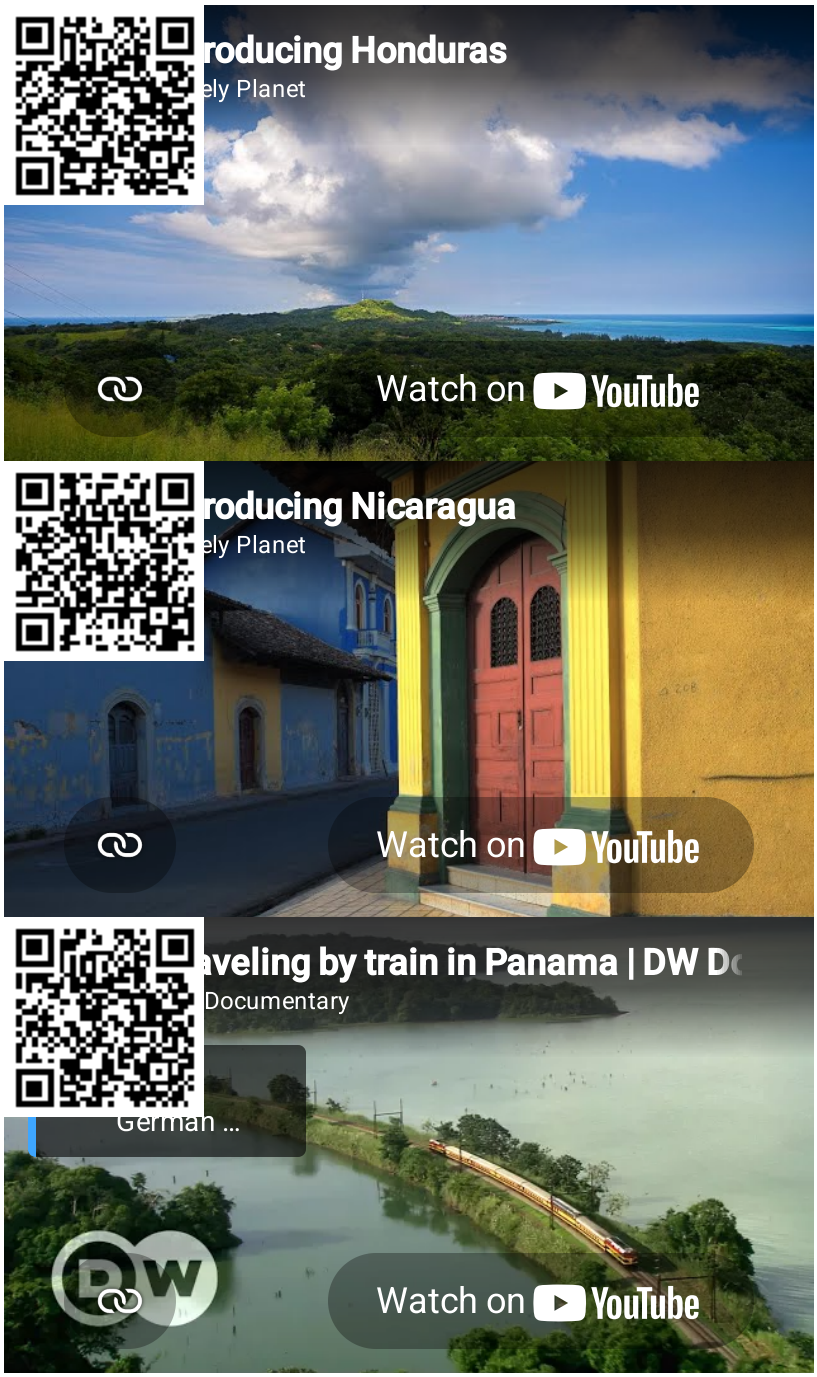

w the Panama Canal was built - B
News
British publi...
BBC NEWS
Watch on YouTube


roducing Belize
ely Planet
Watch on YouTube


roducing Central America
ely Planet
Watch on YouTube


roducing Costa Rica
ely Planet
Watch on YouTube


roducing Guatemala
ely Planet
Watch on YouTube



Helpful Websites for the Study of Geography

Canadian Encyclopedia is an encyclopedia funded by the Canadian government covering all branches of knowledge. Their scholarly collection includes interactive materials.

CIA World Factbook provides information on the people, history, government, economy, energy, geography, communications, transportation, military, and transnational issues for the world's entities.

Congress.gov is a US government website where you can find federal legislation, past and present, as well as information about the US legal system.

Drug Enforcement Administration (DEA) is a government agency website that provides current news, resources, topics of interest, information about drugs, careers in the DEA, and a tip hotline.

Library of Congress is the largest library in the world and provides manuscripts, files, information, pictures, and videos.

NASA Earth Observatory (NEO) is a US government agency website that allows users to search for and retrieve satellite images of Earth.

National Archives is a US government website that provides historical documents, photos, records, publications, and educator resources.

National Oceanic and Atmospheric Association (NOAA) is a US government agency website that provides weather-related information and ocean research.

National Map is a website by the United States Geological Survey and other federal, state, and local agencies that deliver topographic information for the United States.

NationMaster is a massive central data source and a handy way to graphically compare nations.

Real-Time World Air Quality Index is a website that measures most locations in the world for air pollution in real time.

StateMaster is a unique statistical database, which allows you to research and compare a multitude of different data on US states.

United Nations (UN) is an international organization founded in 1945 and made up of 193 member states. The UN maintains international peace and security, protects human rights, delivers humanitarian aid, promotes sustainable development, and upholds international law.

United States Census Bureau is a US government agency that provides a population clock, data, surveys, statistics, a library with information and infographics, news about the economy, and much more.

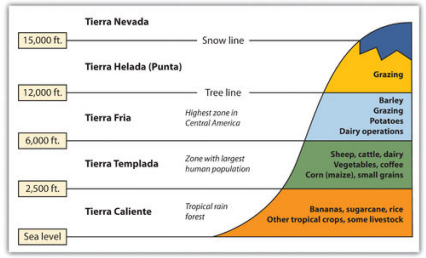
United States Geological Survey (USGS) is a US government agency website that provides scientific information about the natural hazards that threaten lives, the natural resources we rely on, the health of our ecosystems and environment, and the impacts of climate and land-use change.

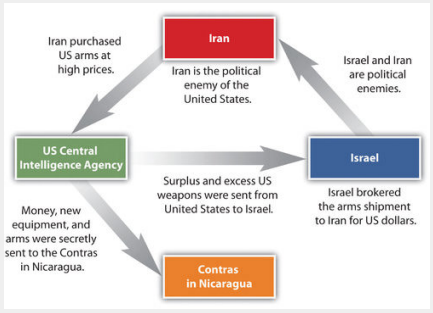
Whitehouse.gov is a US government website that provides the latest presidential news, information about the budget, policy, defense, and many more topics.

World Health Organization (WHO) is under the United Nations and provides leadership on matters critical to health, shapes the research agenda on health, and monitors the health situation and assessing health trends around the world. Their website provides information on the state of health around the world, outbreaks, current health news, and more.

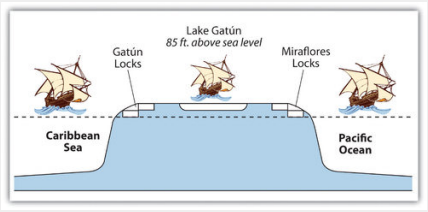
World Trade Organization (WTO) is an intergovernmental organization that regulates international trade. The website provides information on the history of the multilateral trading system, featured videos, news and events, trade topics, and more.

Image	Reference	Attributions
	[Figure 1]	**Credit:** Wikipedia **Source:** upload.wikimedia.org/Wikipedia/commons/thumb/e/e7/Flag_of_Belize.svg/23px-Flag_of_Belize.svg.png **License:** CC BY
	[Figure 2]	**Credit:** Wikipedia **Source:** upload.wikimedia.org/Wikipedia/commons/thumb/f/f2/Flag_of_Costa_Rica.svg/23px-Flag_of_Costa_Rica.svg.png **License:** CC BY-SA
	[Figure 3]	**Credit:** Wikipedia **Source:** upload.wikimedia.org/Wikipedia/commons/thumb/3/34/Flag_of_El_Salvador.svg/23px-Flag_of_El_Salvador.svg.png **License:** CC BY-SA
	[Figure 4]	**Credit:** Wikipedia **Source:** upload.wikimedia.org/Wikipedia/commons/thumb/e/ec/Flag_of_Guatemala.svg/23px-Flag_of_Guatemala.svg.png **License:** CC BY-SA
	[Figure 5]	**Credit:** Wikipedia **Source:** upload.wikimedia.org/Wikipedia/commons/thumb/8/82/Flag_of_Honduras.svg/23px-Flag_of_Honduras.svg.png **License:** CC BY-SA
	[Figure 6]	**Credit:** Wikipedia **Source:** upload.wikimedia.org/Wikipedia/commons/thumb/1/19/Flag_of_Nicaragua.svg/23px-Flag_of_Nicaragua.svg.png **License:** CC BY-SA
	[Figure 7]	**Credit:** Wikipedia **Source:** upload.wikimedia.org/Wikipedia/commons/thumb/a/ab/Flag_of_Panama.svg/23px-Flag_of_Panama.svg.png **License:** CC BY-SA

	**[Figure 8]**	**Credit:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeograp...ntral-america/ **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/ecc03cb4ea26d4d8694a7d7d516110b6.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 9]**	**Credit:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeograp...ntral-america/ **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/04838a73ba16566078c9dbd7f4f662c1.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 10]**	**Credit:** Laura – For the sovereignty of the people… – CC BY 2.0. **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/8df0317f01dbad79baa113c65469502d.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 11]**	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/gt.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

	**[Figure 12]**	**Credit:** John Barrie – Antigua Market – CC BY 2.0. **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/12edad215c82227407e2e83061f8d8ff.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 13]**	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/es.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 14]**	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/nu.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 15]**	**Credit:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeograp...ntral-america/ **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/1588de3c3f8204534f6c214e0547a719.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

	**[Figure 16]**	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/ho.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 17]**	**Credit:** Mike Mozart – Chiquita Bananas Minions Movie Stickers – CC BY 2.0. **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/chapter/5-3-central-america/ **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 18]**	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/cs.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 19]**	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/bh.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

	**[Figure 20]**	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/pm.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 21]**	**Credit:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeograp...ntral-america/ **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/8d8e9ccea5db3c9080692aa840fb4c30.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

This page titled 4.3: Central America (1 Day) is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by CK12 via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

4.4: The Caribbean (1 Day)

Chapter Challenges

- Describe how the physical environment has affected human activity in the region.
- Summarize in a few sentences the various ways in which colonialism has impacted the islands.
- Explain why the United States has an economic embargo against the socialist country of Cuba.
- Explain how tourism has become the main means of economic development for most of the Caribbean.
- Identify and list the main music genres that have emerged from the Caribbean.

Learning Objectives

TEKS Regional Unit 04: Latin America; Chapter 4.4 Caribbean

WG.1A Analyze the effects of physical and human geographic patterns and processes on the past and describe their impact on the present, including significant physical features and environmental conditions that influenced migration patterns and shaped the distribution of culture groups today.

WG.2A Describe the human and physical characteristics of the same regions at different periods of time to evaluate relationships between past events and current conditions.

WG.2B Explain how changes in societies have led to diverse uses of physical features.

WG.3A Explain weather conditions and climate in relation to annual changes in Earth-Sun relationships.

WG.4B Explain the influence of climate on the distribution of biomes in different regions.

WG.5A Analyze how the character of a place is related to its political, economic, social, and cultural elements.

WG.5B Interpret political, economic, social, and demographic indicators (gross domestic product per capita, life expectancy, literacy, and infant mortality) to determine the level of development and standard of living in nations using the terms Human Development Index, less developed, newly industrialized, and more developed.

WG.6A Locate and describe human and physical features that influence the size and distribution of settlements.

WG.8A Compare ways that humans depend on, adapt to, and modify the physical environment, including the influences of culture and technology.

WG.9A Identify physical and/or human factors such as climate, vegetation, language, trade networks, political units, river systems, and religion that constitute a region.

WG.10B Classify where specific countries fall along the economic spectrum between free enterprise and communism.

WG.14A Analyze current events to infer the physical and human processes that lead to the formation of boundaries and other political divisions.

WG.14B Compare how democracy, dictatorship, monarchy, republic, theocracy, and totalitarian systems operate in specific countries.

WG.22A Design and draw appropriate graphics such as maps, diagrams, tables, and graphs to communicate geographic features, distributions, and relationships.

WG.22C Use geographic terminology correctly.

WG.22D Use standard grammar, spelling, sentence structure, and punctuation.

TEKS and ELPS for Regional World Geography Unit 04--Latin America from TEKS Resource System

LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

The Caribbean's Physical Characteristics



Caribbean Regions of the Greater Antilles, the Lesser Antilles, and the Bahamas

The regions of Middle America and South America, including the Caribbean, follow similar colonial patterns of invasion, dominance, and development by outside European powers. The Caribbean Basin is often divided into the Greater Antilles and the Lesser Antilles (the bigger islands and the smaller islands, respectively). The Greater Antilles includes the four large islands of Cuba, Jamaica, Hispaniola, and Puerto Rico. The Lesser Antilles are in the eastern and southern region.

The Bahamas are located in the Atlantic Ocean, not in the Caribbean Sea. They are usually associated with the Caribbean region and are often associated with the Lesser Antilles. Middle America can be divided into two geographic areas according to occupational activities and colonial dynamics. The rimland includes the Caribbean islands and the Caribbean coastal areas of Central America. The mainland includes the interior of Mexico and Central America.

Many of the Caribbean islands experience the rain shadow effect. Jamaica has as much as a 20-inch difference in rainfall between the north side and south side of the island because most of the rain falls on the north side, where the prevailing winds hit the island. The Blue Mountains on the eastern part of the island provide a rain shadow effect. Puerto Rico has a tropical rain forest on the northeastern part of the island, which receives a large amount of rainfall.

The rain shadow effect creates semi-desert conditions on the southwestern side of Puerto Rico because the southwestern side receives little rainfall. Low elevation islands such as the Bahamas do not receive as much rain because they are not high enough to affect the precipitation patterns of rain clouds.

European Colonialism in the Caribbean

The Spanish were not the only Europeans to take advantage of colonial expansion in the Caribbean. The English, French, Dutch, and other Europeans followed. Most of the European colonial countries were located on the west coast of Europe, which had a seafaring heritage. This included smaller countries such as Denmark, Sweden, and Belgium. The Caribbean Basin became an active region for European ships to enter and vie for possession of each island.

Many of the Caribbean islands changed hands several times before finally being secured as established colonies (see "Historical Caribbean Colonizers"). The languages, religions, and economic activities of the colonized islands reflected those of the European colonizers rather than those of the native people who had inhabited the islands originally.

The four main colonial powers in the Caribbean were the Spanish, English, Dutch, and French. Other countries that held possession of various islands at different times were Portugal, Sweden, and Denmark. The United States became a colonial power when they gained Cuba and Puerto Rico as a result of the Spanish-American War. The US Virgin Islands were purchased from Denmark in 1918. Sweden controlled the island of St. Barthelemy from 1784 to 1878 before trading it back to the French, who had been the original colonizer. Portugal originally colonized Barbados before abandoning it to the British.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

Historical Caribbean Colonizers

Colonizer	European colonies
Spain	Cuba, Dominican Republic, Puerto Rico
British	Bahamas, Jamaica, Cayman Islands, Turks and Caicos Islands, Antigua, Dominica, St. Lucia, St. Vincent, Grenada, Barbados, Virgin Islands, Trinidad and Tobago, Montserrat, Anguilla, St. Kitts and Nevis
Dutch	Curacao, Bonaire, Aruba, St. Eustatius, Saba and Sint Maarten (south half)
French	Haiti, Guadeloupe, Martinique, St. Martin (north half), St. Barthelemy
United States	Puerto Rico, Virgin Islands, Cuba

Colonialism drastically altered the ethnic makeup of the Caribbean. Amerindians were almost eliminated after the arrival of Africans, Europeans, and Asians. Those of European descent are at the top of the socio-economic pyramid and control a higher percentage of wealth and power, even though they are a minority of the population. In the Caribbean, the middle class includes mulattos, or people with both African and European heritage. Many mulattos hold positions as managers, businesspeople, and professionals in the world of business.

In some countries, such as Haiti, the minority mulatto segment of the population makes up the power base and holds a political and economic advantage over the rest of the country. The working poor at the bottom of the socio-economic pyramid make up most of the population. In the Caribbean, the lower economic class contains the highest percentage of people of African heritage

Not only was colonialism what brought many Africans to the Caribbean through the slave trade, but it brought many people from Asia as well. Once slavery became illegal, the colonial powers brought indentured laborers to the Caribbean from their Asian colonies. Cuba was the destination for over 100,000 Chinese workers. The first Chinatown in the Western Hemisphere happened in Havana. Laborers from the British colonies of India and other parts of South Asia arrived by ship in various British colonies in the Caribbean. At the present time, about 40 percent of the population of Trinidad has South Asian heritage, and a large number follow the Hindu faith.

The Greater Antilles

Cuba



Map of Cuba

The largest island in the Greater Antilles is Cuba. It was transformed by the power of colonialism, the transition to plantation agriculture, and a socialist revolution. The island country of Cuba is slightly smaller in size than the US state of Pennsylvania. The elongated island has the Sierra Maestra mountains on its eastern end, the Escambray Mountains in the center, and the Western Karst region in the west, near Viñales. Low hills and fertile valleys cover more than half the island. The pristine waters of the Caribbean that surround the island make for some of the most attractive tourist locations in the Caribbean region.

Approximately 100,000 Amerindians inhabited Cuba when Christopher Columbus first landed on the island in 1492. Except for brief control by the British, the island was a Spanish colony until 1898. Plantation agriculture was established, and slaves provided the labor. History indicates that more than 800,000 African slaves were brought to Cuba between 1800 and 1870. Slave labor was in high demand on the extensive sugar plantations that dominated the island's economy.

The African influence can still be witnessed today in the main religion of the island, Santeria, which is an overlay of African-based spirits on top of Catholic saints. At the present time, an estimated 70 percent of Cubans practice some aspect of Santeria.

With the defeat of Spain in the Spanish-American War, the United States gained possession of the Spanish possessions of Cuba, Puerto Rico, Guam, the Philippines, and various other islands. Cuba became independent in 1902, but it remained under US influence for decades.

Sugar plantations and the sugar industry came to be owned and operated by US interests, and wealthy Americans bought up large haciendas, farmland, and family estates, as well as industrial and business operations. Organized crime syndicates operated many of the nightclubs and casinos in Havana.



This photo shows the US "Colonial influence in Cuba. Notice the cars and architecture.

The Cuban Revolution

In January of 1934, with the encouragement of the US government, Fulgencio Batista led a coup that took control of the Cuban government. Fidel Castro, once a prisoner under Batista and having fled to Mexico in exile for a number of years, returned to Cuba to start a revolution. Joining him were his brother Raúl Castro and revolutionaries such as Che Guevara. Starting in the remote and rugged Sierra Maestra in the east, Castro rallied the support of the Cuban people. By the end of 1958, the Cuban Revolution brought down the US-backed Batista government. Castro gained power and had the support of most of the Cuban population.



Fidel Castro (left); Billboard in Havana Promoting the Virtues of Revolutionaries Antonio Maceo and Che Guevara (right)

Castro worked to recover Cuba for Cubans. The government cleared rampant gambling from the island, forcing organized crime operations to shut down or move back to the United States. Castro nationalized all foreign landholdings and the sugar plantations, as well as all the utilities, port facilities, and other industries. Foreign ownership of land and businesses in Cuba was forbidden. Large estates, once owned by rich US families were taken over and recovered for Cuban purposes.

The United States Embargo Era

Castro's policy of seizing and nationalizing businesses and property raised concerns in the United States. As a result, US President Dwight D. Eisenhower severed diplomatic relations with Cuba in 1960. He issued an executive order implementing a partial trade embargo to prohibit the importation of Cuban goods. Later presidents implemented a full-scale embargo, restricting travel and trade with Cuba. In March 1960, the Central Intelligence Agency (CIA) trained Cuban exiles for an invasion of Cuba at the Bay of Pigs, on the south side of the island. This failed invasion of the Bay of Pigs attempt only resulted in consolidating the Cuban people's support for Castro and his socialist government.

To deter any further US plans of invading or destabilizing Cuba, Castro sought economic and military assistance from the Soviet Union. Soviet premier Nikita Khrushchev agreed to secretly send missiles armed with nuclear weapons capable of hitting targets within the United States. In September 1962, US spy planes identified the missile sites. On October 22, 1962, President John F. Kennedy announced a naval blockade of the island and informed Khrushchev that any Soviet ship crossing the blockade would be sunk.

At the last second, the two leaders resolved this dispute (called the Cuban Missile Crisis) before it erupted into a potential nuclear war. Khrushchev recalled the ships and agreed to dismantle the Cuban missile sites. In return, the United States agreed not to invade Cuba and to remove US missiles from sites in Turkey that were aimed at the Soviet Union.

The collapse of the Soviet Union in 1991 caused a downturn in Cuba's economy. With the loss of Soviet aid, the 1990s was a period of transition for Cubans. Castro turned to tourism and foreign investment to shore up his failing economy. Tensions between the United States and Cuba did not improve. In 1996, the United States strengthened the trade embargo with the Helms-Burton Act.

At the turn of the 21st century, Cuba emerged as the lone Communist state in the Americas. Castro was the longest-governing leader of any country in the world. He never kept his promises of holding free elections. Rather, he cracked down on dissent and suppressed free speech. He turned over power to his brother Raúl in 2006.

A Post-Castro Cuba

With Fidel Castro no longer in power, Cuba's future looks positive, though difficult. The island has natural resources, a great climate, and an excellent location but is also struggling economically. Cuba has standardized health care, though medical supplies are often in short supply. The Cubans who live in dire poverty look to the future for relief. Personal freedoms have been marginal, and reforms are slowly taking place in the post-Fidel era.

As the largest island in the Caribbean, Cuba has the potential to become an economic power for the region. There is vast US interest in regaining US dominance of the Cuban economy and corporate colonialists would like to profit from Cuba's economic potential. Keeping corporate colonialism out is what Fidel's socialist experiment worked so hard to achieve, even at the expense of depriving the Cuban people of civil rights and economic reforms.

Cuba today is in transition from a socialist to a more capitalist economy and relies on outside sources for energy and food. In 2008, the average wage in Cuba was about $20 dollars per month. There was almost total employment, and everyone had equal access to free health care, education, and housing. At the same time, the underground informal economy was thriving and was pushing the formal economy to make changes.

Raúl Castro declared that workers with different skills and occupations could earn wages at varying levels. Cubans are now allowed to have cell phones and computers, though Internet access has been restricted by the Cuban government. More goods and money are being brought in from Cuban family members who live in the United States. The US government grants general licenses to allow a number of categories of people to travel to Cuba. It is only a matter of time before full travel restrictions are lifted.



Cubans use all available resources and opportunities to get by. These people are catching a ride on a dump truck to get where they want to go.

Cuba is counting on tourism for an added economic boost. With some of the finest beaches and the clearest waters in the Caribbean, Cuba is a magnet for tourists and water sports enthusiasts. Its countryside is full of wonders and scenic areas. The beautiful Viñales Valley in western Cuba has been listed as a UNESCO World Heritage Site for its outstanding karst landscape and traditional agriculture as well as for its architecture, crafts, and music. Karst topography is made up of soluble rock, such as limestone. The karst in the Viñales Valley results in unusual bread loaf–shaped hills that create a scenic landscape attractive for tourism. This region is also one of Cuba's best tobacco-growing areas and has great potential for economic development.

Cuba is gearing up for an increase in tourism when travel restrictions are lifted by the United States. There is already a focus on improving tourism services to people traveling there from China, Australia, Japan, and other countries. Millions more from the United States are expected to travel to Cuba as well. The Cuban economy is banking on tourism to forge a path to a more prosperous future.



In 2008, Hurricanes Gustav and Ike devastated the tobacco crops, but the region is recovering and is a major tourist area.



Map of Puerto Rico

Populated for centuries by Amerindian peoples, the island of Puerto Rico was claimed by the Spanish Crown in 1493, following Columbus's second voyage to the Americas. In 1898, after 400 years of colonial rule, Puerto Rico was ceded to the United States as a result of the Spanish-American War. Puerto Ricans were granted US citizenship in 1917. Popularly elected governors have served since 1948. In 1952, a constitution was enacted providing for internal self-government. In elections held in 1967, 1993, and 1998, Puerto Rican voters chose to retain the commonwealth status, although they were almost evenly split between total independence and becoming a US state.

Puerto Rico is the smallest of the four islands of the Greater Antilles and is only slightly larger than the US state of Delaware. Puerto Rico's population is about four million, similar to the population of Oregon. As US citizens, Puerto Ricans have no travel or employment restrictions anywhere in the United States, and about one million Puerto Ricans live in New York City alone. The commonwealth arrangement allows Puerto Ricans to be US citizens without paying federal income taxes, but they cannot vote in US presidential elections. The Puerto Rican Federal Relations Act governs the island and awards it considerable autonomy.



US Government Building in San Juan, Puerto Rico, with Both US and Puerto Rican Flags.

Puerto Rico has one of the most dynamic economies in the Caribbean Basin. However, about 60 percent of its population lives below the poverty line. A diverse industrial sector has surpassed agriculture as the primary area of economic activity. Encouraged by duty-free access to the United States and by tax incentives, US firms have invested heavily in Puerto Rico since the 1950s.

Sugar production has lost out to dairy production and other livestock products as the main source of income in the agricultural sector. Tourism has traditionally been an important source of income, with estimated arrivals of more than five million tourists a year. San Juan is the number one port for cruise ships in the Caribbean. The US government also subsidizes Puerto Rico's economy with financial aid.

The future of Puerto Rico as a political unit remains unclear. Some in Puerto Rico want independence, and others would like to become the 51st US state. The commonwealth status is a compromise. Puerto Rico is not an independent country as a result of

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

colonialism. Many of the islands and colonies in the Caribbean Basin have experienced dynamics similar to Puerto Rico in that they are still under the political jurisdiction of a country that colonized them.

The Dominican Republic



Map of the Dominican Republic

Sharing the island of Hispaniola are the two countries of the Dominican Republic and Haiti. The island became a possession of Spain under European colonialism after it was visited by Columbus in 1492 and 1493. The Tiano-Arawak people were nonviolent and welcomed the Europeans, who subjugated and enslaved them. French buccaneers settled on the western portion of Hispaniola and started growing tobacco and agricultural crops. France and Spain finally agreed to divide the island into two colonies. The western side would be French, and the eastern side would be Spanish.

The Dominican Republic holds the largest share of Hispaniola. A former Spanish colony, the Dominican Republic has weathered the storms of history to become a relatively stable democratic country. The Dominican Republic has long been viewed primarily as an exporter of sugar, coffee, and tobacco, but in recent years the service sector has overtaken agriculture as the economy's largest employer.

The mountainous interior and the coastal beaches are attractive to the tourism market, and tourism remains the main source of economic income. The economy is highly dependent on the United States, which is the destination for nearly 60 percent of its exports. Remittances from workers in the United States sent back to their families on the island contribute much to the economy.



Punta Cana is a resort town in the easternmost province of the Dominican Republic.

The country suffers from marked income inequality. The poorest half of the population receives less than one-fifth of the gross domestic product (GDP), while the richest 10 percent enjoys nearly 40 percent of GDP. High unemployment and underemployment remain an important long-term challenge. The Central American-Dominican Republic Free Trade Agreement (CAFTA-DR) came

into play in March 2007, boosting investment and exports and reducing losses to the Asian garment industry. In addition, the global economic downturn has hurt the Dominican Republic.

Plantation agriculture thrived in Haiti during the colonial era, producing sugar, coffee, and other cash crops. The local labor pool was insufficient to expand plantation operations, so French colonists brought in thousands of African slaves to work the plantations. People of African descent soon outnumbered Europeans. Haiti became one of the most profitable French colonies in the world with some of the highest sugar production of the time.

A slave revolt that began in 1792 finally defeated the French forces, and Haiti became an independent country in 1804. It was the first country ever to be ruled by former slaves. However, the transition to a fully functional free state was difficult. Racked by corruption and political conflicts, few presidents in the first 100 years ever served a full term in office.

Haiti



Map of Haiti

The United States occupied Haiti from 1915 to 1934 in an attempt to instill a US presence and bring some sense of stability. From 1957 to 1986, Dr. François “Papa Doc” Duvalier and then his son Jean-Claude “Baby Doc” Duvalier controlled the government. They created a private army and terrorist death squads known as Tonton Macoutes. Many Haitians fled to the United States or Canada, especially to French-speaking Quebec. After the Duvalier era, a Catholic priest by the name of Jean-Bertrand Aristide won the presidency through democratic elections only to be deposed of by a military coup a few years later. Haiti has had a difficult time finding political and economic stability.

Haiti is the poorest nation in the Western Hemisphere, and many Haitians live in dire poverty with few employment opportunities. An elite upper-class minority controls the bulk of the nation’s wealth. Many people in Haiti have sought comfort in Voodou (Voodoo), a religious practice steeped in African beliefs brought over with the slave trade. Often misunderstood by outsiders, Voodou’s main objective is to bring good health and well-being.

Haiti’s January 12, 2010 earthquake was a major setback for such a poor country that was already in need of aid and support. The 7.0 magnitude earthquake, with many aftershocks, struck Haiti about 15 miles from Port-Au-Prince, resulting in as many as 200,000 deaths. More than two million were immediately homeless, and about one million more were in need of aid. The lack of building standards in Haiti contributed to the collapse of structures and the devastation. Food and other aid were brought in by many international agencies and other countries to address the situation. Efforts continue to address the needs of the Haitian people to stabilize the situation and provide support and future opportunities.



UN peacekeeping troops patrol the streets of Port au Prince after Haiti's 2010 earthquake.

Jamaica



Map of Jamaica

The tropical island of Jamaica is physically smaller than the US state of Connecticut. In 2017, the estimated population was close to 3 million people. Jamaica was settled by the Spanish early in the 16th century. The Taino Indians, who had inhabited Jamaica for centuries, were gradually eradicated and replaced by African slaves. When England seized the island from Spain in 1655, it established a plantation economy based on sugar, cocoa, and coffee.

Two hundred years later (1834), the abolition of slavery freed about 250,000 slaves, many of whom became small farmers. Jamaica gradually obtained independence from Britain, with full independence achieved in 1962. Sugar, cocoa, and coffee production continue on the island. The Blue Mountains of eastern Jamaica are known for their Blue Mountain coffee production.

Deteriorating economic conditions during the 1970s led to recurrent violence as rival gangs affiliated with the major political parties evolved into powerful organized crime networks. These networks were involved in international drug smuggling and money laundering. Violent crime, drug trafficking, and poverty pose significant challenges to the country. Nonetheless, many rural and resort compounds remain safe and contribute substantially to the tourism sector. The beautiful beaches and lush interior make for an attractive destination for cruise ships and other tourists.

Tourism and Economic Activity in the Rimland

The physical geography of the Caribbean region makes it a prime location for tourism. Its beautiful coastal waters and warm tropical climate draw in tourists from all over North America and the world. Tourism is the number one means of economic income for many places in the Caribbean Basin, and the tourist industry has experienced enormous growth in the last few decades.

Tourism is a powerful force to achieve economic development for the people on the islands of the Lesser Antilles. In the last decade, there has been strong growth in the number of cruise ships operating in the Caribbean. Cruise ships from the southern coasts of the United States sail around the islands and coastal regions. San Juan receives the largest number of cruise ship travelers. Other areas well known to tourists include the Bahamas, St. Martin, and the Virgin Islands. Even the poorest country in the

Caribbean, Haiti, has tried to attract cruise ships to its ports. The main restriction on cruise ship travel is the hurricane season, from June to November.



Large cruise ships in the Caribbean can hold up to 4,000 passengers and crew members. The major cruise lines do not operate in the Caribbean during hurricane season.

One might reasonably think that the economic benefits of tourism would be entirely positive. Even though tourism has become a vital economic component of the Caribbean Basin, in the long term, tourism creates many problems. Large cruise ships and pleasure crafts can overtax the environment. There have been occasions where there were actually more tourists than citizens on an island. An increase in tourist activity brings with it an increase in environmental pollution.

Most people in the Caribbean Basin live below the poverty line. The investment in tourism infrastructure, such as exclusive hotels and five-star resorts, takes away resources that could be allocated to schools, roads, medical clinics, and housing. However, without the income from tourism, there would be no money for infrastructure. Tourism attracts people who can afford to travel. Most of the jobs in hotels, ports, and restaurants where wealthy tourists visit employ people from poorer communities at low wages.

The disparity between the tourists and the workers creates strong centrifugal cultural dynamics. The gap between the level of affluence and the level of poverty is wide in the Caribbean. In the model of how countries gain wealth, tourism is a mixed-profit situation. Local businesses in the Caribbean do gain income from tourists who spend their money there. However, the big money is in the cruise ship lines and the resort hotels, which are mainly owned by international corporations or the local wealthy elite.

There is little activity in the Caribbean Basin in the manufacturing sector. Although US firms have invested in Puerto Rico, and the Dominican Republic has experienced growth in light industries and information technologies, the remaining islands have had little industrial growth. Unless an island state has natural resources such as oil or minerals, as is the case with Trinidad and Tobago, there are few opportunities other than tourism to bolster the economy.

Agricultural products have been traditionally a large part of the economic activity of the islands of the Lesser Antilles. Grenada is known for its nutmeg and other spices. Bananas, sugar, and other fruit and food crops have also been exported products. The problem has been that the profit margins on the products are low and prices are subject to international markets, which fluctuate widely. With an increasing population and few opportunities or advantages, countries such as Haiti suffer from poverty and unemployment. Being an island, there are few methods of expanding the economy. People often try to migrate to another county in search of employment and a more hopeful future.

Offshore Banking

Other methods of gaining wealth in the Caribbean include offshore banking and financial services. Various islands have established themselves as banking centers where one can set up financial accounts that are outside the jurisdiction of other countries. These offshore accounts provide tax havens for individuals or corporations that wish to evade taxes in their home countries. Many of these island banking centers do not share account information with tax agencies or government offices of other countries. Places such as the Cayman Islands have a worldwide reputation for professional financial services for offshore banking. As a result, the people of the Cayman Islands have a high standard of living with much national wealth.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

The Bahamas and the Turks and Caicos have also established offshore financial centers. Other Caribbean Islands are working to increase their visibility with similar services. All are hoping to gain income from this low-impact and high-income enterprise. The United States and other countries have made attempts to pressure these islands to share the financial account information of people evading taxes. If successful, there may be less of an incentive for individuals and businesses to use offshore accounts to shelter income from taxes or for those involved in illegal money-laundering schemes to hide money in the Caribbean.

The wide level of diversity in the Caribbean has not made it easy for outside groups to provide support and assistance for common economic goals. The Caribbean Community (CARICOM) is an organization with 15 Caribbean members established to promote economic integration and cooperation in the region. It hopes to coordinate foreign policy for the region and ensure that the benefits of integration are equitably shared. CARICOM is an attempt to compete with other trade organizations such as NAFTA and CAFTA-DR.

Caribbean Music

The Caribbean culture includes many varieties of music that have developed on several islands. The region is a breeding ground for innovative music and rhythms that emulate the cultural traditions and attitudes of the people. Every island has its own traditional festivals that include parades, music, and dance. The music scene reveals the uniqueness of the Caribbean. Listening to the different sounds coming from the different islands showcases the cultural backgrounds found in the Caribbean.

The Caribbean is full of local musical variations, and many types of music are found only on a single island or two. For example, the Dominican Republic has meringue music, Dominica has bouyon, and Haiti has its festive rara music.

The Cuban influence on music is evident in the salsa tunes from the Caribbean over the years. African and Spanish cultural influences have helped shape the salsa music that has evolved from Cuba and neighboring islands of Puerto Rico and the Greater Antilles. With a strong percussion component, brass additions, and guitar sections, salsa has become popular throughout many parts of Latin America. Other genres of music coming out of Cuba include rumba, habanera, son, and timba, to name a few.

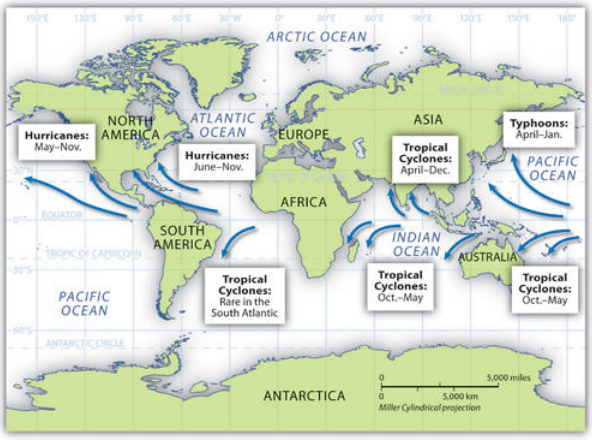
Calypso music comes from a mix of African influences on the island of Trinidad. Calypso began taking shape at the beginning of the 20th century and gained popularity through Carnival and other Caribbean festivals. It has evolved to incorporate the steel pan and other musical instruments. A commercial version of calypso became popular with Harry Belafonte’s version of the Jamaican folk tune of “Day-O,” known as the “Banana Boat Song." Mento is a more folksy rural style of acoustical music that influenced other forms of music such as reggae in Jamaica.

The steel pan is the national instrument of Trinidad and Tobago, where it was created. The pan was originally made from 55-gallon oil drums. The bottom is cut off at various levels to provide different sounds. The top is then shaped into a chromatically pitched percussion instrument. It is struck with a pair of straight sticks. An entire family of pans has been developed and can be assembled into a steel pan orchestra. The instrument has become popular outside the Caribbean as well.

Reggae music started coming out of Jamaica in the 1960s with the music of such artists as Bob Marley and the Wailers, which featured Peter Tosh and Bunny Wailer. The rhythmic style with offbeat accents evolved from earlier genres to become a standard of Jamaican music. Musicians from the Beatles to Eric Clapton have used reggae rhythms. Outside Jamaica, reggae has hit the charts thanks to groups such as UB40. Reggae music has often been associated with the Rastafarian movement or Rasta.

Tropical Hurricanes (Cyclones) in Middle America

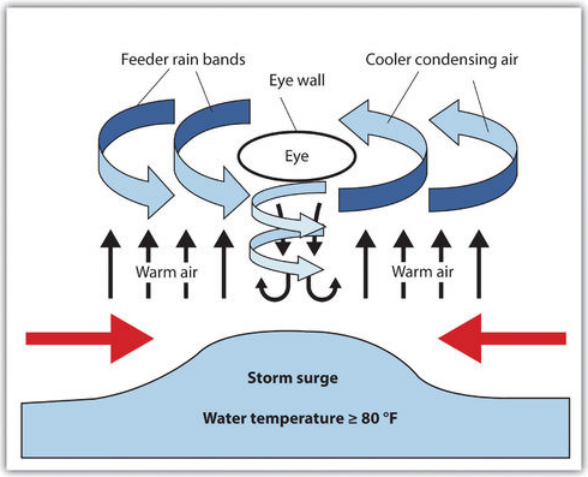
Above the oceans just north and south of the equator, a weather phenomenon called a tropical cyclone. Once a tropical cyclone develops, it can drastically alter the physical and cultural landscape if it reaches land. In the North Atlantic Ocean and the Caribbean Sea, this weather pattern is called a hurricane**.** In the North Pacific Ocean, the same type of weather pattern is called a typhoon. In the Indian Ocean region and in the South Pacific Ocean, it is called a tropical cyclone or just a cyclone. All these storms are considered tropical because they almost always develop between the Tropics of Cancer and Capricorn.



Cyclones, hurricanes, and typhoons and their respective locations around the world.

Hurricanes develop over water that is warmer than 80 ºF. As the air heats, it rises rapidly, drawing incoming air to replace the rising air and creating strong wind currents and storm conditions. The rapidly rising humid air then cools and condenses, resulting in heavy rains and a downdraft of cooler air. The rotation of the earth causes the storm to rotate in a cyclonic pattern. North of the equator, tropical storms rotate in a counterclockwise direction. South of the equator, tropical storms rotate in a clockwise direction.

Hurricanes start out as tropical depressions, which are storms with wind speeds between 25 and 38 miles per hour. Cyclonic motion and warm temperatures feed the system. If a storm reaches sustained winds of 39 to 73 miles per hour, it is upgraded to a tropical storm. Tropical depressions are numbered, and tropical storms are named. When winds reach a sustained speed of 74 miles per hour, a storm is classified as a hurricane.



This graphic illustrates the dynamics of hurricane components.

Key Takeaways

- Colonialism created a high level of ethnic, linguistic, and economic diversity in the Caribbean. The main shifts were the demise of indigenous groups and the introduction of African slaves.
- The African influence can be witnessed in the religions of Santeria in Cuba, Voodoo in Haiti, and Rasta in Jamaica.
- The Caribbean Basin faces many challenges, including natural elements such as hurricanes, earthquakes, and volcanic activity.
- Economic conditions are often hampered by environmental degradation, corruption, organized crime, or the lack of employment opportunities.

- The Cuban Revolution led by Fidel Castro created a socialist state that nationalized foreign-owned assets and brought about a trade embargo by the United States.
- Cuba lost its aid from the Soviet Union after the USSR's collapse in 1991 and has been increasing its focus on tourism and capitalistic reforms.
- Tourism can bring added economic income for an island country, but it also shifts to the service sector resources that are needed for infrastructure and services.
- A high percentage of tourism income goes to external corporations.
- The diversity of the Caribbean is evident in the wide range of musical types generated from the islands.
- Individual islands are known for certain types of music; salsa, reggae, and calypso are examples.
- Tropical cyclones occur in the tropical regions over warm ocean water. In the North Atlantic, they are called hurricanes; in the North Pacific, they are called typhoons; and in the Indian Ocean, they are called cyclones.

Vocabulary Terms

Chapter 4.4 The Caribbean

1. Archipelago: A group or chain of islands
2. Greater Antilles: is a grouping of the larger islands in the Caribbean Sea: Cuba, Hispaniola (containing Haiti and the Dominican Republic), Puerto Rico, Jamaica
3. Hurricane: A storm that forms over warm, tropical ocean waters. Starts off as a tropical storm. Brings heavy rain and winds that exceed 75 miles per hour.
4. Lesser Antilles: a long arc of small islands in the Eastern Caribbean Sea extending in a north-south direction from the Virgin Islands to Grenada
5. Saffir-Simpson Scale: Hurricane rating scale from 1-5. category 5 being most dangerous
6. US Embargo on Cuba: The official ban on trade or other commercial activity with Cuba, which was imposed in the late 1950s

Interactive Notebook Activities

Applying Knowledge

1. Describe how the physical environment has affected human activity in the region.
2. Summarize in a few sentences the various ways in which colonialism has impacted the islands.
3. Explain why the United States has an economic embargo against the socialist country of Cuba.
4. Explain how tourism has become the main means of economic development for most of the Caribbean.
5. Identify and list the main music genres that have emerged from the Caribbean.
6. Describe how and why hurricanes form.
7. Explain why hurricanes mainly occur in the tropics.
8. Summarize briefly why hurricanes have the potential to be so dangerous.

Discussion and Study Questions

1. Which islands make up the Greater Antilles? Where are the Lesser Antilles?
2. Which European countries were the main colonizers of the Caribbean?
3. How is Cuba a good example of a rimland country?
4. Why does the United States still have an economic embargo against Cuba?
5. How is the political system in Cuba different from that of the United States?
6. Why is Puerto Rico a commonwealth of the United States?
7. How is Haiti different from its neighbor, the Dominican Republic?
8. What are the positive and negative perspectives on the Caribbean tourism industry?
9. Besides tourism, what other methods do people in the Caribbean islands use to generate wealth?
10. How do differences in musical styles tell a story of Caribbean culture?

Real-World Geography Exercise

Using Google Maps, locate the places below. Using the Internet, research to find a picture and a fact about each place. To which region would you like to travel? Why? Be prepared to share your answers.

- The Bahamas
- Blue Mountains
- Greater Antilles
- Lesser Antilles
- Sierra Maestra
- Viñales Valley

Mapping Exercise

ESRI-GEO Inquiry

Borders, Boundaries, and Barriers; Students will learn examples of boundaries, borders, and barriers around the world that exhibit the organization of the earth's surface as identified through political geography. The activity uses a web-based map.

Videos for Geography Enrichment

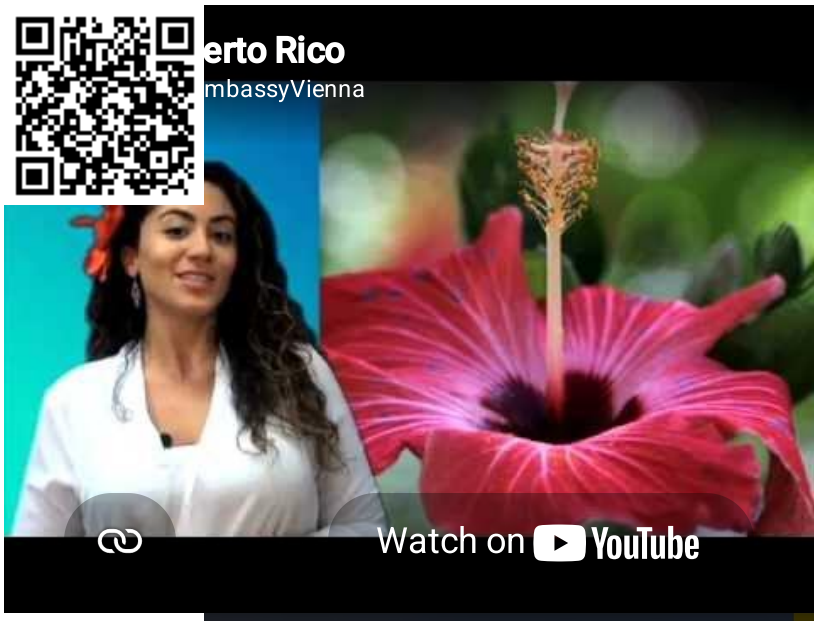





roducing Jamaica
ely Planet
Watch on YouTube


e Life and Career of Bob Marley
chMojo.com
Watch on YouTube


e Lost Children of Haiti
Watch on YouTube
cbsnews.com





Helpful Websites for the Study of Geography

Canadian Encyclopedia is an encyclopedia funded by the Canadian government covering all branches of knowledge. Their scholarly collection includes interactive materials.

CIA World Factbook provides information on the people, history, government, economy, energy, geography, communications, transportation, military, and transnational issues for the world's entities.

Congress.gov is a US government website where you can find federal legislation, past and present, as well as information about the US legal system.

Drug Enforcement Administration (DEA) is a government agency website that provides current news, resources, topics of interest, information about drugs, careers in the DEA, and a tip hotline.

Library of Congress is the largest library in the world and provides manuscripts, files, information, pictures, and videos.

NASA Earth Observatory (NEO) is a US government agency website that allows users to search for and retrieve satellite images of Earth.

National Archives is a US government website that provides historical documents, photos, records, publications, and educator resources.

National Oceanic and Atmospheric Association (NOAA) is a US government agency website that provides weather-related information and ocean research.

National Map is a website by the United States Geological Survey and other federal, state, and local agencies that deliver topographic information for the United States.

NationMaster is a massive central data source and a handy way to graphically compare nations.

Real-Time World Air Quality Index is a website that measures most locations in the world for air pollution in real time.

StateMaster is a unique statistical database, which allows you to research and compare a multitude of different data on US states.

United Nations (UN) is an international organization founded in 1945 and made up of 193 member states. The UN maintains international peace and security, protects human rights, delivers humanitarian aid, promotes sustainable development, and upholds international law.

United States Census Bureau is a US government agency that provides a population clock, data, surveys, statistics, a library with information and infographics, news about the economy, and much more.

United States Geological Survey (USGS) is a US government agency website that provides scientific information about the natural hazards that threaten lives, the natural resources we rely on, the health of our ecosystems and environment, and the impacts of climate and land-use change.

Whitehouse.gov is a US government website that provides the latest presidential news, information about the budget, policy, defense, and many more topics.

World Health Organization (WHO) is under the United Nations and provides leadership on matters critical to health, shapes the research agenda on health, and monitors the health situation and assessing health trends around the world. Their website provides information on the state of health around the world, outbreaks, current health news, and more.

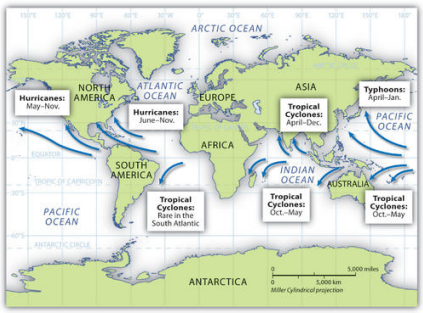
World Trade Organization (WTO) is an intergovernmental organization that regulates international trade. The website provides

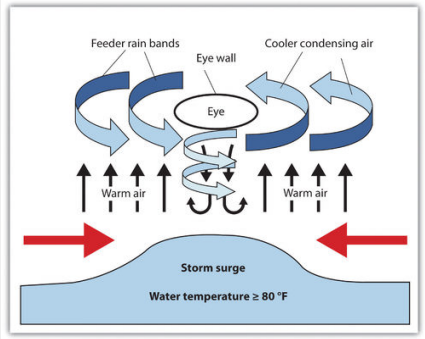
https://k12.libretexts.org/@go/page/1960

information on the history of the multilateral trading system, featured videos, news and events, trade topics, and more.

Image	Reference	Attributions
	**[Figure 1]**	**Credit:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeograp...the-caribbean/ **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/32ac72b9554942a4f7564f9aeb4c6a0f.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 2]**	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/cu.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 3]**	**Credit:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeograp...the-caribbean/ **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/8e175fe18eb8a9d7a9a82d5ac80eedfd.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 4]**	**Credit:** Wikimedia Commons – CC BY 3.0; R. Berglee – CC BY-NC-SA. **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/f4203298e42c7c4a9eec8c30d4154775.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 5]**	**Credit:** Photo by R. Berglee – CC BY-NC-SA. **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/1b85c7048d75b8c2565f59f4ef1676fd.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

	**[Figure 6]**	**Credit:** Photo by R. Berglee – CC BY-NC-SA. **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/f8aedc7596e02d33cbc7ca3d64280adf.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 7]**	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/rq.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 8]**	**Credit:** Rafael Torres – Puerto Rico Capitol Building – CC BY-NC-ND 2.0. **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/chapter/5-4-the-caribbean/ **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 9]**	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/dr.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

	**[Figure 11]**	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/ha.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 12]**	**Credit:** Wikimedia Commons – CC BY 2.5. **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/cb3d7b19782dda2651ac67cea290c750.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 13]**	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/jm.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 14]**	**Credit:** Photo by R. Berglee – CC BY-NC-SA. **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/92015955e0d934783833c67ae5b7284c.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 15]**	**Credit:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeograp...es-hurricanes/ **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/d245bfe474b6b320cfd52bfd234f0fca.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0



[Figure 16]

Credit: http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeograp...es-hurricanes/
Source: open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/d4c2b42d4b5391ef9a44e27eb0dcde54.jpg
License: CC BY-NC 3.0

This page titled 4.4: The Caribbean (1 Day) is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by CK12 via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

4.5: South America- Physical Geography (1 Day)

Chapter Challenges

- Summarize briefly the main physical features and characteristics of South America.
- Explain how European colonialism dominated the realm and divided up the continent.
- Describe the ethnic, economic, and political patterns in the Guianas.
- List the main cultural realms of South America.
- Describe each realm's main ethnic majority.
- Explain how colonialism impacted each region.
- Summarize briefly how the South American countries are attempting to integrate their economies.

Learning Objectives

TEKS Regional Unit 04: Chapter 4.5 South America: Physical Geography

WG.1B Trace the spatial diffusion of phenomena such as the Columbian Exchange or the diffusion of American popular culture and describe the effects on regions of contact

WG.2A Describe the human and physical characteristics of the same regions at different periods of time to evaluate relationships between past events and current conditions.

WG.4A Explain how elevation, latitude, wind systems, ocean currents, position on a continent, and mountain barriers influence temperature, precipitation, and distribution of climate regions.

WG.4C Explain the influence of climate on the distribution of biomes in different regions.

WG.5A Analyze how the character of a place is related to its political, economic, social, and cultural elements.

WG.7D Examine benefits and challenges of globalization, including connectivity, standard of living, pandemics, and loss of local culture.

WG.9A Identify physical and/or human factors such as climate, vegetation, language, trade networks, political units, river systems, and religion that constitute a region.

WG.9B Describe different types of regions, including formal, functional, and perceptual regions.

WG.14C Analyze current events to infer the physical and human processes that lead to the formation of boundaries and other political divisions.

WG.12A Analyze how the creation, distribution, and management of key natural resources affects the location and patterns of movement of products, money, and people.

WG.17C Compare economic, political, or social opportunities in different cultures for women, ethnic and religious minorities, and other underrepresented populations.

WG.18A Analyze cultural changes in specific regions caused by migration, war, trade, innovations, and diffusion.

WG.18C Identify examples of cultures that maintain traditional ways, including traditional economies.

WG.19A Evaluate the significance of major technological innovations in the areas of transportation and energy that have been used to modify the physical environment.

WG.21C Create and interpret different types of maps to answer geographic questions, infer relationships, and analyze change.

WG.23B Use case studies and GIS to identify contemporary challenges and to answer real-world questions.

WG,22A Design and draw appropriate graphics such as maps, diagrams, tables, and graphs to communicate geographic features, distributions, and relationships.

WG.22C Use geographic terminology correctly.

WG.22D Use standard grammar, spelling, sentence structure, and punctuation.

TEKS and ELPS for Regional World Geography Unit 04--Latin America from TEKS Resource System

South America: Physical Geography



The main two physical features of South America are the Andes Mountains and the Amazon River.

Physical Characteristics

The continent of South America has a wide diversity of physical landscapes, from the high Andes Mountains to the tropical forests of the Amazon Basin. This assortment of physical features offers many resource bases. These resource bases allow people to engage in economic activity, gain wealth, and provide for their needs. The mountain range of the Andes holds mineral riches that have been being extracted since ancient times.

Fossil fuels have been found in abundance in the far northern regions of Venezuela and Colombia. The Amazon Basin has been a source of hardwood lumber and, more recently, extensive mineral wealth. Some of the largest iron-ore mines in the world are located here. The massive plains of Brazil and the rich soils of the Pampas allow for agricultural operations that provide food products for the continent and for the world.

Even the inhospitable Atacama region in northern Chile holds some of the world's largest copper reserves. The wide variety of climate zones allows a diverse range of species to develop. The extremes in physical geography in South America have created both barriers and opportunities to those who live there.

Before the era of European colonialism, many local groups organized themselves into states or empires. The Inca Empire was the largest in existence at the time the Europeans arrived. The early empires developed massive structures that required huge cut stones weighing many tons to be moved into place without the benefit of modern tools or technology. European colonialism altered the continent in several ways. The Europeans defeated and conquered Amerindian groups such as the Inca.

Cultural exchanges also took place that altered the way of life for countless South Americans. Colonialism created many of the current country borders and influenced trade relationships with the newly created colonies. The plantation system and the introduction of slaves from Africa drastically changed the ethnic makeup of the people living along the eastern coast. After slavery was abolished, indentured servitude brought workers from Asia to support the labor base.

Indentured servants were usually poor individuals who agreed to work for an agreed upon period of time, usually less than seven years, in return for the necessities of life such as lodging, food, and transportation or clothing. These individuals did not usually receive a salary but may have received a lump sum payment upon completion of the agreed upon service. Under favorable conditions indentured servants were treated like relatives and gained important experience and job skills to provide for their future. On the other hand, many died of disease and harsh conditions.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

The physical environment and the influence of colonialism were both responsible for the cultural attributes of the regions of South America. The continent can be divided into regions by ethnic majorities influenced by early colonial development. The mixing of ethnic groups from Europe, Africa, and Asia with each other or with the indigenous population has created a diverse cultural mosaic.

For example, most people in Guyana and Suriname are from Asia, most people in Argentina and Uruguay are from Europe, most people in Peru and Bolivia are Amerindian, and most people in many areas along the eastern coast of Brazil are of African descent. A large percentage of the population of South America is of a mixed ethnic background. Understanding the cultural geography of South American supports understanding of the realm's human development patterns.

South America's modern economic development has helped integrate it with the global economy. The levels of economic development vary widely within the realm. There are clear indications of core-peripheral spatial patterns within various regions of the continent, and rural-to-urban shift has been strong in many areas. The rural regions in the Andes or the interior suffer from a lack of economic support needed to modernize their infrastructure.

At the same time, metropolitan areas are expanding rapidly and are integrated with global markets and the latest technologies. Most of the large cities are located along the coastal regions. This pattern of urbanization is mainly a result of colonial activity and influence. The countries of South America are working among themselves to network trade and commerce activities. Trade agreements and economic unions have become standard methods of securing business partnerships to enhance the realm's economic opportunities.

Physical Geography

The far-reaching Andes Mountains and the massive Amazon River system dominate South America's physical geography. The 5,000-mile-long Andes Mountain chain extends along the entire western region of the continent from Venezuela to southern Chile. The Andes are the longest mountain chain on Earth and the highest in the Americas. The Andes Mountain range has more than 30 peaks that reach at least 20,000 feet in elevation, many of which are active volcanoes.

The Andes has provided isolation to the Inca Empire, mineral wealth to those with the means for extraction, and a barrier to travelers crossing the continent. The Andes' minerals include gold, silver, tin, and other precious metals. Mining became a major industry in the colonial era and continues to the present.

At the core of the continent is the mighty Amazon River, which is more than 2,000 miles long and has an enormous drainage basin in the largest tropical rain forest in the world. The Amazon's many tributaries are larger than many other world rivers. Flowing parallel to the equator, the Amazon rivals the Nile as the longest river in the world. The Amazon River has the greatest discharge of any river in the world. It carries about one-fifth of all river water in the world.

The Amazon and its many tributaries drain the entire interior region of the continent, covering 40 percent of South America. During the rainy season, it can be more than 100 miles wide. No bridges span the Amazon River. Its source is a glacial stream located high in the Peruvian Andes, about 150 miles from the Pacific Ocean.

The Amazon's extended tributaries—such as the Rio Negro, the Madeira, and the Xingu—move massive amounts of water through the Amazon Basin and are major rivers in their own right. The Amazon has more than 1,100 tributaries; a dozen are more than 1,000 miles long. Hydroelectric dams are located on the tributaries to produce electricity for the region's fast-growing development.

South America has additional large rivers that drain the continent, including the Orinoco, which flows through Venezuela; the Sao Francisco, which flows through southeast Brazil; and the Paraguay and the Paraná Rivers, which flow south from Brazil into the Rio de la Plata between Argentina and Uruguay.

The Altiplano Region is a wide basin between two main Andean mountain ranges. The word altiplano means "valley" in Spanish. There are a substantial number of altiplanos in South America. They provide for agricultural production and human habitation. The Altiplano Region has been home to ancient civilizations that date back to early human settlements.

Lake Titicaca rests in the middle of the Altiplano Region of the Central Andes on the border between Peru and Bolivia. Lake Titicaca is a large freshwater lake about 120 miles long and 50 miles wide. The surface is at an elevation of about 12,000 feet above sea level. The lake is more than 900 feet deep in some areas. Usually at such high elevations, the temperature would dip below

freezing and restrict agriculture. However, the large lake acts as a solar energy collector by absorbing energy from the sun during the day and giving off that energy in the form of heat during the night. The energy redistribution allows for a moderate temperature around the lake that is beneficial to growing food crops.

With abundant fresh water and the ability to grow food and catch fish, the Altiplano Region has supported human habitation for thousands of years. On the Bolivian side of the lake is the ancient stone site of Tiahuanaco, which has had some artifacts dated to 1500 B.C.E. or earlier. People continue to live around and on Lake Titicaca and maintain a subsistence lifestyle.



Lake Titicaca is the highest-elevation navigable lake in the world.

Across the Andes Mountains from the Altiplano Region is the Atacama Desert. The Atacama is one of the driest places on Earth. In some parts, no rain has fallen in recorded history. Under normal circumstances, the Atacama would be a desolate region without human activity, but that is not the case. Some of the world's largest copper reserves are found here. Nitrates, which are used in fertilizers, are also found in large quantities. Mining the Atacama has brought enormous wealth to many people.

The rain shadow effect is responsible for the extraordinary dryness of the Atacama. The Andes are quite high at this latitude, and the winds blow in rain clouds from the east. When the clouds reach the mountains, they ascend in elevation, releasing their precipitation without ever reaching the western side of the Andes.

South America has large agricultural plateaus east of the Andes, such as the Mato Grosso Plateau. It includes a portion of the great Cerrado agricultural region of central Brazil. The Cerrado is a vast plain that has been developed for agriculture and produces enormous harvests of soybeans and grain crops. Bordering the Cerrado to the southeast are the Brazilian Highlands, an extensive coffee-growing region. The Pampas in eastern Argentina, Uruguay, and southernmost Brazil is another excellent agricultural region with good soils and adequate rainfall. Farming, cattle ranching, and even vineyards can be found here, making the Pampas the breadbasket of the Southern Cone.

To the south of the Pampas is the lengthy expanse of Patagonia, which covers the southern portion of Argentina east of the Andes. Patagonia is a prairie grassland region that does not receive much rainfall because of the rain shadow effect of the Andes to the west. The main activities in Patagonia are the raising of cattle and other livestock. The region is starting to attract attention to the extraction of natural resources such as oil, natural gas, and valuable minerals.

To the northern part of the continent in Venezuela and Colombia, sandwiched between the Andes Mountains and the Guiana Highlands**,** is a grassland region with scrub forests called the Llanos. The human population is small because of the remoteness of the region along the Orinoco River basin. The Guiana Highlands of southeast Venezuela and the Guianas are an isolated set of mountainous plateaus mixed with rugged landscapes and tropical climates. Angel Falls, the highest waterfall in the world, with a free fall of more than 2,647 feet and a total drop of about 3,212 feet (more than half a mile), is located here. To the northwest of the Llanos and the Guiana Highlands in Venezuela is Lake Maracaibo, a large inland lake open to the Caribbean Sea. A coastal lake, Maracaibo rests atop vast oil reserves that provide economic wealth for Venezuela.

European Colonialism

South America's colonial legacy shaped its early cultural landscape. The indigenous people, with their empires and local groups, were no match for the European colonizers. South America was colonized exclusively by two main Iberian powers: Spain

colonized the western part of South America, and Portugal colonized the east coast of what is present-day Brazil. The only region that was not colonized by those two powers was the small region of the Guianas, which was colonized by Great Britain, the Netherlands, and France.



Colonial Activity in South America

Everything changed with the invasion of the Iberian colonizers. The culture, religion, and economics of the local indigenous people were disrupted and forced to change. The Spanish and Portuguese languages, as well as the Roman Catholic religion, superseded the languages and religions that had previously existed.

Colonialism also was responsible for transporting food crops such as the potato, which originated in the Peruvian Andes, to the Europeans. Today, coffee is a main export of Colombia, Brazil and other countries in the tropics. Coffee was not native to South America but originated in Ethiopia and was transferred by colonial activity. The same is true of sugarcane, bananas, and citrus fruits. Oranges were not native to South America, but today Brazil is the number one exporter of orange juice. Colonialism was driven by the desire for profit from the quick sale of products such as gold or silver. There was a ready market for goods not found in Europe, such as tobacco, corn, exotic animals, and tropical woods.

Plantation agriculture introduced by the Europeans led to a high demand for manual laborers. When the local populations could not meet the labor demand, millions of Africans were brought through the slave trade. These African slaves introduced their own unique customs and traditions, altering the culture and demographics of the Western Hemisphere. The current indigenous Amerindian population, a fraction of what it was before the Europeans arrived, makes up only a small percentage of South America's total population. Europeans took the best land and controlled the economic trade of the region. The acculturation in South America is directly related to the European colonial experience.

The Inca Empire and Francisco Pizarro

Not long after Hernán Cortés conquered the Aztec Empire of Mexico in 1521, a young Spanish conquistador named Francisco Pizarro, stationed in what is now Panama, heard rumors of silver and gold found among the South American people. He led several sailing excursions along the west coast of South America. In 1531 C.E., he founded the port city of Lima, Peru.

Since 1200 C.E., the Inca had ruled a large empire extending out from central Peru, which included the high-elevation Altiplano Region around Lake Titicaca. The Inca Empire dominated an area from Ecuador to Northern Chile. The Inca were not the most populous people but were a ruling class who controlled other subjugated groups.

Pizarro, with fewer than 200 men and 24 horses, met up with the Inca armies and managed to defeat them in a series of military maneuvers. The Inca leader was captured by the Spanish in 1533. Two years later, in 1535, the Inca Empire collapsed.

The Inca Empire was important to European conquerors because of the high volume of gold and silver found in the Andes. The story is told that Pizarro placed the captured Inca leader in a small room and told him that if the room was filled with gold to the

top of the Inca leader's head, Pizarro would let the Inca leader go free. Gold was summoned from the people and the countryside, and the room was filled.

The conquistadors forced the Inca leader to convert to Catholicism and then killed him. The gold was melted down and transported back to Spain. The mineral wealth of the Andes made the conquistadors rich. Lima was once one of the wealthiest cities in the world. Europeans continued to dominate and exploit the mining of minerals in Peru and Bolivia throughout the colonial era. European elites and the Mestizo ruling class have subjugated the Amerindian groups in the Andes since colonial times.



The original church was constructed in 1571 on the site of the ancient Incan palace. The earthquake of 1650 caused severe damage to the building, so it had to be reconstructed in about 1688. Many Catholic cathedrals in Latin America were built with stones from ancient sites. This cathedral is claimed to be the Western Hemisphere's most ideal example of colonial baroque architecture.

Many Amerindian groups inhabited this region before the Inca Empire, such as the people who built and lived in the ancient city of Tiahuanaco. In fact, humans have lived in South America for thousands of years. There is speculation that travel between South America and the Mediterranean region occurred earlier than current historical records indicate. Many of the ruins in the western region of South America have not been thoroughly excavated and examined by archaeologists. The size and scope of many of the stone structures show the advancements in engineering and technology employed in an era that, according to historical records, had only primitive tools.

The Spanish Division of the Continent

The Spanish conquistadors were not the only European invaders to colonize South America. Colonial influence—which forced a change in languages, religion, and economics—also came from the small European kingdom of Portugal. Portuguese ships sailed along the eastern coast of South America and laid claim to the region for the king. The Portuguese did not find large gold or silver reserves, but they coveted the land for the expansion of their empire.

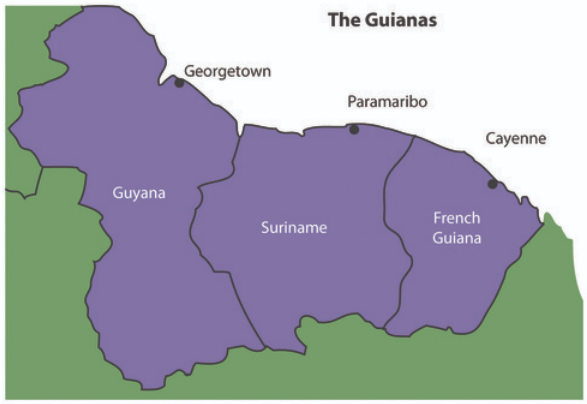
Soon the Spanish and the Portuguese were fighting over the same parts of South America. In 1494, the issue was brought before the Roman Catholic Church. The Tordesillas Line was drawn on a map to divide South America into the Spanish west and the Portuguese east. The region that is now Brazil became the largest Portuguese colonial possession in South America, a center for plantation agriculture similar to that in the Caribbean. For this reason, a large African population lives in Brazil, and most of the people in Brazil speak Portuguese and are Roman Catholics.

Independence did not come for the Spanish colonies until 1816 and 1818 when Chile and Argentina broke away in an independence movement in the south. Simón Bolívar led liberation movements in the north. By 1824, the Spanish were defeated in South America. Brazil did not gain independence from Portugal until 1822, when the prince of Portugal declared an independent Brazil and made himself Brazil's first emperor. It was not until 1889 that a true republic was declared and the empire was abolished.

Colonialism and the Guianas

The Guianas in the northeast were the only European colonies in South America that were not under Spanish or Portuguese control. The British, Dutch, and French all held claims to different parts of the Guianas. French Guiana remains a colony of France to this

day. The transition from colony to an independent state has required persistence, time, and patience. Guyana and Suriname received their independence in the late 20th century.



The Guianas of South America.

The coastal location of the Guianas provided European colonialists with an excellent site for plantation agriculture. Coastal cities had easy access to the Atlantic trade system. The active slave trade in the Atlantic brought African slaves to the Guianas to work the plantations. When slavery was abolished, indentured servants were brought in from other parts of the world that were colonized by the same European powers. Colonialism and plantation agriculture changed the cultural dynamics of the Guianas. Port cities along the coast are the dominant urban centers. The Guianas follow a pattern similar to that of the rimland of the Caribbean and are included with the Caribbean in many studies. At the present time, bauxite mining and oil deposits along the coast provide an income, and many people make their living in subsistence agriculture.

Guyana



Map of Guyana

Guyana and its neighbors have a tropical type A climate. The main interior regions are covered with dense forests. Some deforestation has taken place in Guyana. Even so, forests cover more than 80 percent of Guyana's land area with a diverse range of forests. These forests vary from dry evergreen forests to tropical rain forests, and with thousands of species of plants that are only found in this region.

Guyana's natural habitats and biodiversity are unparalleled, which is because of the climate, distinctive landforms, and well-preserved ecosystems. Its large rain forests are the habitats for species not found elsewhere. The interior regions remain more than 70 percent pristine, but this will change if logging, mining, and deforestation are not managed.

Guyana was called British Guiana before it became independent in 1966. The region was home to Carib and Arawak groups before the arrival of the Dutch, who established the first colony there in 1616. By 1831, the British had taken control and declared the colony British Guiana. African slaves were the main source of plantation labor until slavery was abolished in 1834. At that point, indentured servants from many countries were recruited for labor. Most of the indentured servants were East Indians from South Asia. There were also thousands of servants from China and other countries.

The ethnic background of Guyana's population, which is less than one million, is a mix of African (36 percent), East Indian (50 percent), and Amerindian (7 percent). The remainder is mixed and European. The religious background of the East Indians includes both Hindus and Muslims. About 50 percent of the population has converted to Christianity. Ethnic divisions create difficulties in organizing politics and social activities. For example, one political concern is that minority groups with greater economic advantages will dominate the political arena without regard to other ethnic groups.

Most of Guyana's people live in the coastal regions. The almost impenetrable interior has large uninhabited areas with dense tropical forests. To protect its unique biodiversity, large areas have been placed in conservation areas and national parks. More than one million acres have been placed in the Konashen Community-Owned Conservation Area (COCA) to help preserve the natural environment and provide a sustainable economic relationship with local Waiwai people. In a similar effort, the government created the Kaieteur National Park, which features the spectacular Kaieteur Falls. They are about five times higher than Niagara Falls in North America. Other areas of Guyana are also being considered for preservation.



Kaieteur Falls has the largest single-drop waterfall by volume in the world. A national park has been created in this area to include the falls.

Guyana's economy is based on agricultural activities and the export of extracted natural resources. Sugarcane is a main cash crop, and timber sales are increasing. Fishing is common in coastal areas. Bauxite mining has been the main mining activity, and mining of gold and other minerals has only advanced in recent years. Guyana's economy is similar to that of many islands of the Caribbean, a relationship exemplified by its membership in CARICOM (the Caribbean Community). CARICOM's headquarters is located in Georgetown, the capital of Guyana.

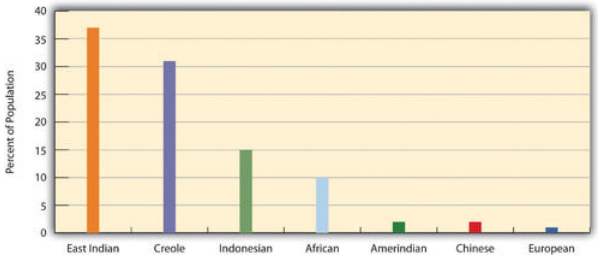
Suriname



Map of Suriname

Suriname's colonial name was Dutch Guiana. The name was changed when independence was granted in 1975. The cultural background of the colony is as diverse as its history. Dutch Guiana was divided between British and Dutch colonists. Slavery and plantation agriculture were introduced in the colonial period, and the harsh conditions of slavery caused many slaves to escape the plantations and live in the forests. These runaway slaves, called Maroons, eventually organized into viable independent groups. Peace treaties were finally made with the Maroons to grant them legitimate rights. After slavery was abolished, indentured servants from South Asia and the Dutch East Indies (Indonesia) were conscripted into the colony's labor base.

Most of the half-million people who live in Suriname today live along the coast. The ethnic background of the people includes East Indian (37 percent), Creole (31 percent), Indonesian (15 percent), African (10 percent), Amerindian (2 percent), Chinese (2 percent), and European (about 1 percent). All three of the Guianas are ethnically diverse, and in this setting, diversity creates social and economic tensions. Guyana and Suriname are the least Latin regions of South America. The Creoles, for example, are mainly a mix of African and Dutch mixed with Asian or Amerindian. Establishing a stable government and conducting civil affairs are often complicated by the ethnic groups that fight for power and political control. The religious background in Suriname includes Hindu, Muslim, Christian, and a mix of African religions such as Winti.



This graphic illustrates the ethnic groups of Suriname by percentage of the population.

Suriname depends on agriculture and natural resources as its two main economic activities. Suriname has the smallest physical area of all the independent South American states. It has a limited ability to provide opportunities and advantages for its growing population. Bauxite is the country's main export product. In 1941, during World War II, the United States occupied the country to secure the valuable bauxite mines that were critical to the war effort. Suriname has also been expanding its gold mining, oil extraction, logging, and fishing industries. To protect its natural environment and its extensive biodiversity, the country has established national parks and created the large Central Suriname Nature Reserve, which UNESCO has named a World Heritage Site. Suriname hopes to benefit from these measures to create an ecotourism market.

Both Guyana and Suriname have had border disputes with their neighbors. Guyana has been locked in a challenge with Venezuela over its western region, which Venezuela claimed during the colonial era. A 1905 treaty ruled in Guyana's favor, but a small portion is still under dispute. The corner of Surname that borders Brazil and Guyana has been an issue of contention fueled by the potential for mining of gold and other minerals in the area. The maritime boundary between Suriname and Guyana is also a point of contention. Suriname's border with French Guiana has a disputed area along the southern corner next to Brazil. These disputes emerged out of colonial agreements and poorly defined treaty boundaries.

French Guiana

French Guiana is still a colony (department) of France. With fewer than 250,000 people in an area slightly smaller than Kentucky, this is a sparsely inhabited area. Half of the population lives in the capital city of Cayenne. Most of the population is Creole, mainly a combination of African and French with various Asian groups mixed in. The people work in subsistence agriculture or for the French government. A noted feature of the colony's heritage is the former off-shore prison on Devil's Island, which France used to secure its most undesirable prisoners. More than 50,000 French prisoners were delivered to the Devil's Island facility during the colonial era, but less than 10 percent survived. The prison was closed in 1951.



This Ariane 42P was launched from the European Space Agency's Guiana Space Center in Kourou, French Guiana, on August 10, 1992.

The European Space Agency maintains a launch center in French Guiana because of its favorable climate and launch conditions. France maintains the facility and has subsidized the department's economy. This European support provides the population with a higher standard of living than in many other South American countries. Economic activities have included fishing, agriculture (bananas and sugar) and logging. Deforestation from the sale of hardwood lumber has become a problem throughout the Guianas as it leaves the soil open for erosion. Logging endangers the area's fragile but extensive biodiversity. Roads, dams, and gold mining have also contributed to the erosive destruction of the environment.

Cultural Regions of South America

Colonialism changed the ethnicity, religion, language, and economic activities of the people in South America. The past 500 years have molded the current states and regions of the South American continent. To identify standards of living, ethnic majorities, and economic conditions, it is helpful to map out South America's various cultural regions.

In South America, five main cultural regions indicate the majority of ethnic groups and the main economic activities:

1. Tropical Plantation (region)
2. Rural Amerindian (region)
3. Amazon Basin
4. Mixed Mestizo (region)
5. European Commercial--Southern Cone (region)



This graphic illustrates the cultural spheres of South America.

These are generalized regions that provide a basic understanding of the whole continent. Technological advancements and globalization have increased the integration of the continent to the point that these regions are not as delineated as they once were, but they still provide a context in which to understand the ethnic and cultural differences that exist within the realm.

Tropical Plantation Region



Salvador, Brazil, is located along the coastal region of South America where the Tropical Plantation Region was prominent. Most people in this region are of African descent.

Located along the north and east coast of South America, the Tropical Plantation Region resembles the Caribbean rimland in its culture and economic activity. The region, which extends as far south as the Tropic of Capricorn, has a tropical climate and an agricultural economy. Europeans opened up this area for plantation agriculture because of coastal access for ships and trade. The local people were forced into slavery, but when the local people died or escaped, millions of African slaves were brought in to replace them. After slavery was abolished, indentured servants from Asia were brought to the Guianas to work the plantations. The Tropical Plantation Region has a high percentage of people of African or Asian descent.

Rural Amerindian Region



The Amerindian woman and child in this photo live in the Sacred Valley of the Andes in Peru.

The Rural Amerindian Region includes the countries of Ecuador, Peru, and Bolivia. The ruling Mestizo class that inherited control from the European conquistadors mainly lives in urban areas. Most of the rural Amerindian population lives in mountainous areas with type H climates and survives by subsistence agriculture. This is one of the poorest regions of South America, and land and politics are controlled by powerful elites. The extraction of gold and silver has not benefited the local Amerindian majority, which holds to local customs and speaks local languages.

Amazon Basin

The Amazon Basin, which is characterized by a type A climate, is the least-densely populated region of South America and is home to isolated Amerindian groups. The development has encroached upon the region in the forms of deforestation, mining, and cattle ranching. Large deposits of iron ore, along with gold and other minerals, have been found in the Amazon Basin. Preservation of the tropical rain forest of this remote region has been hampered by the destructive pattern of development that has pushed into the region. The future of the basin is unclear because of development patterns that are expected to continue as Brazil seeks to exploit its interior peripheral region. Conflicts over land claims and the autonomy of Amerindian groups are on the rise.



The Amazon has more than 1,100 tributaries.

Mixed Mestizo Region

The Mixed Mestizo Region includes the coastal area of the west and the interior highlands of the north and east. This region between the Tropical Plantation Region and the Rural Amerindian Region includes a majority of people who share a mixed European and Amerindian ethnicity. It is not as poor as the Rural Amerindian Region and yet not as wealthy as the European-dominated region to the south. Paraguay falls into the Mixed Mestizo Region, as do other portions of other South American countries such as parts of Brazil, Colombia, and Venezuela. Paraguay is mainly Mestizo, but its economic qualities resemble that of the Rural Amerindian Region to the north, even though Paraguay is not located in the mountains.

European Commercial Region (Southern Cone)

The southern part of South America, called the European Commercial Region or the Southern Cone, includes Chile, Argentina, Uruguay, and parts of Brazil. European ethnic groups dominate this region and include not only Spanish and Portuguese but also German, Austrian, Italian, and other European ethnic heritages. Fertile soils and European trade provided early economic growth, and the region attracted industry and manufacturing in the later decades of the 20th century.

There are not many Amerindians or people of African descent here. More than 90 percent of all the people in Argentina, Chile, and Uruguay are of European descent and live in urban areas. With a highly urbanized population and with trade connections to a globalized economy, the Southern Cone is home to South America's most developed economies.

Globalization and Trade

South America has been fragmented by European colonialism. The colonial economic patterns did not encourage the South American countries to work together to create an integrated continental trade network. Countries outside the continent have promoted trade partnerships to benefit from South America's natural resources and agricultural exports. The establishment of the European Union and the North American Free Trade Agreement (NAFTA) created globalized trading blocs that challenged the South American countries to consider how to take advantage of trading opportunities within their realm to protect and support their own economic interests.

Since the 1990's, cooperation and business ventures have started to form within the realm to create a more integrated network of trade and commerce to benefit the countries of South America. Transportation and communication systems are being developed through joint ventures by internal investment groups. River and road systems continue to be managed and developed for improved transport of people and goods throughout the continent. Free-trade agreements have been implemented to support the integration of internal economic networks and competition in the global marketplace.

In 2008, the South American countries formed the Union of South American Nations (UNASUR) to oversee the customs unions and trade agreements within the realm. One of the more established trade associations is Mercosur (the Southern Cone Common Market), created in 1995 by the southern countries. It has evolved to include most countries in South America and is the most dominant trade agreement in the realm. Full members of Mercosur include Argentina, Uruguay, Paraguay, and Brazil. Chile, Bolivia, Peru, Ecuador, and Colombia are associate members. As of 2011, Venezuela's membership was under review.

The Andean Community (Colombia, Ecuador, Peru, and Bolivia) was established in 1969 but did not gain ground until 1995, when it established stronger trade measures. Multinational corporations have supported the creation of a Free Trade Area of the Americas (FTAA) to include all of the Western Hemisphere in one unified trade association. It has not been approved and has received strong opposition from Mercosur and economic forces that support a more localized economy controlled by local people.

South America faced division and competition during the colonial era between the Spanish and the Portuguese. Today's new era of corporate colonialism has created similar fragmentation and divisions. The level of trade between the countries of South America and the United States and Europe varies widely. Countries such as Colombia and Chile have well-established trade relationships with the United States and are unwilling to jeopardize those trade connections to strengthen ties with their neighbors that have less-supportive political relationships with the United States.

External global trade arrangements often provide financial benefits to individual countries that might not be shared by the bordering countries in the same region. South America's historical fragmentation has not made it easy to unify the continent under a singular trade agreement to complete against the European Union or NAFTA.

Key Takeaways

- The extensive Andes Mountain chain and the massive Amazon River dominate the realm's physical geography.
- The Spanish and the Portuguese were the two main colonial powers that dominated South America.
- The Guianas were the only part of the continent not dominated by these the Spanish and the Portuguese.
- Britain, Holland, and France formed colonies in the Guianas.
- The slave trade brought many people of African descent to the Guiana colonies.
- After slavery was abolished, indentured servants from Asia were brought to the Guianas to support the labor base.

- Identifying the majority of ethnic groups in South America can be helpful in classifying the various cultural regions of the realm.
- Colonial activities and ethnic backgrounds are consistent enough to formulate regions with similar characteristics.
- Globalization and the creation of economic or political units such as the European Union and NAFTA have prompted the South American countries to work together to implement cooperative trade agreements and create the Union of South American Nations.

Vocabulary Terms

Chapter 4.5 South America: Physical Geography

Andes	long mountain range that runs down the west coast of South America
Atacama Desert	found in Chile, is the hottest desert on earth
Francisco Pizarro	Spanish conquistador who conquered the Inca
Inca	A Mesoamerican civilization that was an empire. They lived in the Andes Mountains of South America (Ecuador, Peru, and Chile). They kept records using a complicated system of colored knotted cords called quipus. Pizarro conquered them in 1535
Llanos	grassland located in Colombia and Venezuela
Jose de San Martin	A general who led a war for South American independence beginning in 1810. His leadership freed the southern parts of South America from Spain and Portugal
MERCOSUR	An economic and political bloc comprising Argentina, Brazil, Paraguay, Uruguay, and Venezuela
Pampas	grassland located in Argentina and Uruguay. Known for cattle ranching
Simon Bolivar	A general who led a war in 1810 for South American independence. His leadership freed the northern parts of South America from Spain and Portugal. He was known as "the Liberator"

Applying Knowledge

Interactive Notebook Activities

1. Summarize the main physical features and characteristics of South America.
2. Explain how European colonialism dominated the realm and divided up the continent.
3. Describe the ethnic, economic, and political patterns in the Guianas.
4. List the main cultural realms of South America.
5. Describe each realm’s main ethnic majority.
6. Explain how colonialism impacted each region.
7. Summarize briefly how the South American countries are integrating their economies.

Discussion and Study Questions

1. What are the two main physical features of South America? Where are they located?
2. What two main European colonial powers dominated South America?
3. What are the majority ethnic groups in each of the Guianas?

4. How do most people in the Guianas make a living?
5. Where are the five main cultural regions of South America?
6. What are the majority ethnic groups in each of the cultural regions of the continent?
7. Why would the Southern Cone have a stronger economic position than other regions?
8. What are the environmental concerns in the Guianas?
9. What are the main economic trade agreements for the South American countries?
10. Why has it been so difficult to unify the countries in this realm into a single trade zone?

Real-World Geography Exercise

1. Using Google Maps, complete the following activities:
   a. Locate each place on the bulleted list below.
   b. Find the nearest city with an international airport in proximity to each location on the bulleted list below.
   c. Calculate the distance and travel time by plane to each city from the Ted Stevens Anchorage International Airport in Anchorage, Alaska.
2. Using NASA Latitude and Longitude Finder, determine the latitude and longitude for each location on the bulleted list below.
3. Be prepared to share and discuss your answers.

- Altiplano
- Amazon Basin
- Amazon River
- Andes Mountains
- Atacama Desert
- Brazilian Highlands
- Cape Horn
- Cerrado
- Devil's Island
- Easter Island
- European Commercial Region
- Falkland Islands
- Galapagos Islands
- Guiana Highlands
- Guianas
- Lake Maracaibo
- Lake Titicaca
- Llanos
- Madeira River
- Mato Grosso Plateau
- Mixed Mestizo Region
- Orinoco River
- Pampas
- Paraguay River
- Paraná River
- Patagonia
- Rio de la Plata
- Rio Negro
- Robinson Crusoe Island
- Rural Amerindian Region
- Sao Francisco River
- Southern Cone
- Tierra del Fuego

- Tordesillas Line
- Tropical Plantation Region
- Xingu River

Mapping Exercise

ESRI GEO Inquiry

GEO Inquiry Mountain Building: Illustrate and explore how global mountain ranges are formed in relation to plate motions.

Videos for Geography Enrichment



Helpful Websites for the Study of Geography

Canadian Encyclopedia is an encyclopedia funded by the Canadian government covering all branches of knowledge. Their scholarly collection includes interactive materials.

CIA World Factbook provides information on the people, history, government, economy, energy, geography, communications, transportation, military, and transnational issues for the world's entities.

Congress.gov is a US government website where you can find federal legislation, past and present, as well as information about the US legal system.

Drug Enforcement Administration (DEA) is a government agency website that provides current news, resources, topics of interest, information about drugs, careers in the DEA, and a tip hotline.

Library of Congress is the largest library in the world and provides manuscripts, files, information, pictures, and videos.

NASA Earth Observatory (NEO) is a US government agency website that allows users to search for and retrieve satellite images of Earth.

National Archives is a US government website that provides historical documents, photos, records, publications, and educator resources.

National Oceanic and Atmospheric Association (NOAA) is a US government agency website that provides weather-related information and ocean research.

National Map is a website by the United States Geological Survey and other federal, state, and local agencies that deliver topographic information for the United States.

NationMaster is a massive central data source and a handy way to graphically compare nations.

Real-Time World Air Quality Index is a website that measures most locations in the world for air pollution in real time.

StateMaster is a unique statistical database, which allows you to research and compare a multitude of different data on US states.

United Nations (UN) is an international organization founded in 1945 and made up of 193 member states. The UN maintains international peace and security, protects human rights, delivers humanitarian aid, promotes sustainable development, and upholds international law.

United States Census Bureau is a US government agency that provides a population clock, data, surveys, statistics, a library with information and infographics, news about the economy, and much more.

United States Geological Survey (USGS) is a US government agency website that provides scientific information about the natural hazards that threaten lives, the natural resources we rely on, the health of our ecosystems and environment, and the impacts of climate and land-use change.

Whitehouse.gov is a US government website that provides the latest presidential news, information about the budget, policy, defense, and many more topics.

World Health Organization (WHO) is under the United Nations and provides leadership on matters critical to health, shapes the research agenda on health, and monitors the health situation and assessing health trends around the world. Their website provides information on the state of health around the world, outbreaks, current health news, and more.

World Trade Organization (WTO) is an intergovernmental organization that regulates international trade. The website provides

https://k12.libretexts.org/@go/page/1963

information on the history of the multilateral trading system, featured videos, news and events, trade topics, and more.

Image	Reference	Attributions
	**[Figure 1]**	**Credit:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeograp...south-america/ **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/part/chapter-6-south-america/ **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 2]**	**Credit:** Benedict Adam – Peru – CC BY 2.0. **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/b9588973157f231ced228dd558312fd9.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 3]**	**Credit:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeograp...ing-the-realm/ **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/ea26b3f32636e9e786100d3b7e407ba3.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 4]**	**Credit:** James Preston – La Compania de Jesus, Cusco – CC BY 2.0. **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/a4ea5fc91bacf29c8b2e6c5b6e66a2bc.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 5]**	**Credit:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeograp...ing-the-realm/ **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/ab1e86ae729b7140f1faf37c0ec13295.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 6]**	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/gy.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 7]**	**Credit:** Paul Arps – Kaietur falls from a distance (Guyana 2001) – CC BY 2.0. **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-

		content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/370738ebe0ab0128f950036592fae081.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 8]**	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/ns.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 9]**	**Credit:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeograp...ing-the-realm/ **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/711977b61ea9a9735efb4b23e9f8e8b1.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 10]**	**Credit:** Photo courtesy of NASA – public domain. **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/ce55a964275697638ea6ea43716cf367.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 11]**	**Credit:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeograp...ing-the-realm/ **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/6a842f6e52cae38efe5083585ff770e8.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 12]**	**Credit:** Carnal.com Studios – Salvador Carnaval Comanches 03 – CC BY 2.0. **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/40509e6b81bb5e4b90e4586bc811b57d.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 13]**	**Credit:** Thomas Quine – Mother and Child – CC BY 2.0. **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/c28dedb23650c748f8cc226f5a76e2f9.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 14]**	**Credit:** Image courtesy of NASA – public domain. **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-

		content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/bb8f48c1aee1d754d39eb44e7c82e35f.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

This page titled 4.5: South America- Physical Geography (1 Day) is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by CK12 via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

4.6: South America- The Urban North and Andean West (1 Day)

Chapter Challenges

- Describe the dynamics of Venezuela's urban society and why Venezuela has not experienced a robust rural-to-urban shift to the extent that other countries have.
- List the production of the three main export products of Colombia and explain the US role in their export.
- Compare the three main countries in the Andean West region of South America and understand how they gained their wealth and who has benefited the most over the years from that wealth.
- Summarize how Paraguay's geographical setting has allowed it to gain wealth and provide opportunities for its people.

Learning Objectives

TEKS Regional Unit 04: Chapter 4.6 The Urban North and Andean West

WG.7D Examine benefits and challenges of globalization, including connectivity, standard of living, pandemics, and loss of local culture.

WG.11A Understand the connections between levels of development and economic activities (primary, secondary, tertiary, and quaternary).

WG.11B Identify the factors affecting the location of different types of economic activities, including subsistence and commercial agriculture, manufacturing, and service industries

WG.11C Assess how changes in climate, resources, and infrastructure (technology, transportation, and communication) affect the location and patterns of economic activities.

WG.12A Analyze how the creation, distribution, and management of key natural resources affects the location and patterns of movement of products, money, and people.

WG.13A Interpret maps to explain the division of land, including man-made and natural borders, into separate political units such as cities, states, or countries.

WG.16D Compare life in a variety of urban and rural areas in the world to evaluate political, economic, social, and environmental changes.

WG.17A Describe and compare patterns of culture such as language, religion, land use, education, and customs that make specific regions of the world distinctive.

WG.17B Assess causes, effects, and perceptions of conflicts between groups of people, including modern genocides and terrorism.

WG.17C Compare economic, political, or social opportunities in different cultures for women, ethnic and religious minorities, and other underrepresented populations.

WG.17D Evaluate the experiences and contributions of diverse groups to multicultural societies.

WG.18A Analyze cultural changes in specific regions caused by migration, war, trade, innovations, and diffusion.

WG.20B Examine the economic, environmental, and social effects of technology such as medical advancements or changing trade patterns on societies at different levels of development.

WG.22A Design and draw appropriate graphics such as maps, diagrams, tables, and graphs to communicate geographic features, distributions, and relationships.

WG.22C Use geographic terminology correctly.

WG.22D Use standard grammar, spelling, sentence structure, and punctuation.

TEKS and ELPS for Regional World Geography Unit 04--Latin America from TEKS Resource System

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

South America: The Urban North and Andean West

Venezuela: Oil, Politics, and Globalization

Bordering the Caribbean is the large urban country of Venezuela. The Andes Mountains reach into the northern part of the country and make up the terrain of the northern coastal region all the way to the capital city of Caracas. The large grassland plains of the Llanos extend farther south from the Colombian border to the Orinoco River delta. The Llanos is a large, sparsely populated region that makes up about one-third of the country. It is remote, susceptible to flooding, and used mainly for raising cattle.

In the southeast of Venezuela are the Guiana Highlands, which make for a spectacular physical landscape of tropical forests and rugged mountainous terrain. The highlands include Angel Falls, the tallest waterfall in the world. Angel Falls drops 2,647 feet and is Venezuela's most popular tourist attraction. Lake Maracaibo, the large inland sea located in the western region of the country, is not a true lake in that it is open to the Caribbean Sea. Lake Titicaca, located in the Andean region of the Altiplano on the border between Peru and Bolivia, is considered the continent's largest freshwater lake.



Notice that most of the main cities are located along the northern coast.



The total falls is estimated at 3,212 feet. The largest free fall is estimated to be about 2,647 feet, which is about one-half a mile. Angel Falls is the country's number one tourist attraction.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

Venezuela has an assortment of physical regions, but most of the population lives along the northern coast. About 90 percent live in urban areas, and the capital Caracas has the highest population. Less than 5 percent of the population lives south of the Orinoco River. Amerindian groups live in the interior and along the river.

Included in the Mixed Mestizo Cultural Region, Venezuela has a heavy Spanish influence laid over an Amerindian base in a plantation region known for its African infusion. There is also a strong Caribbean cultural flavor, which is evident in the region's music and lifestyle. The official language is Spanish, but more than 30 indigenous languages are still spoken in the country.

Venezuela gained its independence from Spain in 1821 and has developed into an urban country with an economy based on oil production. A large extent of the interior is undeveloped. Venezuela does not have extensively developed agricultural production, so most food is imported. Lake Maracaibo has vast oil reserves beneath it that have provided substantial wealth to the country.

As much as 90 percent of Venezuela's export earnings are from the export of oil. Venezuela's national oil company, CITGO, has made extensive inroads into the US gas station market. The country was one of the founding members of OPEC (Organization of Petroleum Exporting Countries), which is usually associated with the oil-rich states of the Persian Gulf. In the past decade, Venezuela has been one of the top five countries exporting oil to the United States. The other four are Canada, Mexico, Saudi Arabia, and Nigeria.

As is the case with many countries, national wealth in Venezuela does not trickle down to most of the population. The wealthy elite who have benefited the most from the nation's wealth often finds themselves on the opposite side of the political debate from the majority, who are likely to live in poor conditions. Caracas has many upscale neighborhoods, but it also has a large number of slums on the outskirts of the city. Slums in South America go by different names, such as barrios in Venezuela or favelas in Brazil. Many of Venezuela's barrios are built on the mountainsides of the Andes.



The photo on the left is of the main urban core, with upscale neighborhoods. The photo on the right is a barrio located on a steep mountainside. Barrios are usually self-constructed slum areas and are similar to favelas in Brazil.

Exporting oil to the United States does not mean that the relations between the United States and Venezuela are friendly. There has been some political unrest within the country related to the current president, Hugo Chavez, who holds continuous terms in office without term limits. President Chavez has held close ties with socialist Cuba and with the Castro regime. From time to time, his rhetoric has been antagonistic toward the United States. This situation has caused concern within the US political establishment with regard to the position that the United States takes toward Venezuela. Nevertheless, the United States remains Venezuela's number one trading partner in both imports and exports.

Politics in Venezuela often plays the wealthy elites against the poorer majority, and President Chavez has not been an exception. Chavez has supported socialist political leaders from other Latin American states and has pushed a globalization agenda along the same lines. The country's enormous oil revenues and its current political climate have increased Venezuela's visibility in the global arena. How this will play out over the long term is unclear.

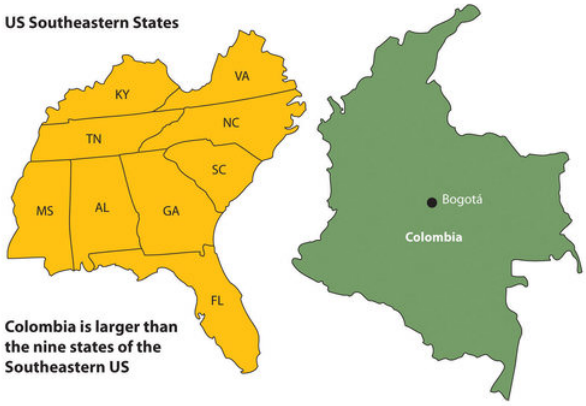
In the past, Latin America has had a greater number of elected political leaders with more progressive or socialist views. These trends continue to shape the economic trade agreements between countries. Venezuela has been working to increase sales of oil to countries in Mercosur (the Southern Cone Common Market), which is the most significant trade association in South America.

Globalization is also evident in Venezuela's cultural and social dynamics. In many Latin American countries, soccer is the most popular sport. However, Venezuela's favorite sport is baseball because of the influence of early US activity in the country's oil industry. Soccer is gaining attention and support; however, orchestras and classical music performances have also gained notoriety in recent years. Concert halls from the Americas to Europe have experienced the performances of the Simón Bolívar Youth

Orchestra. The Miss Venezuela pageant is a major production for the country, and Venezuela has won the top title at least five times in each of the following pageants: Miss World, Miss Universe, and Miss International.

Colombia: Drugs, Coffee, and Oil

Three ranges of the Andes Mountains run from north to south through Colombia, which is larger than the nine most southeastern US states. With a land area covering about 440,839 square miles, Colombia is more than ten times larger than the US state of Indiana and close to twice the size of France. Colombia borders five countries, with the Caribbean to the north, the Pacific Ocean to the west, the Orinoco River to the east, and a short segment of the Amazon River to the far south. Even though agriculture has been a mainstay of the country's economic activities, because of the influence of the mountainous terrain, about 75 percent of the population lives in urban areas.



This map compares the physical size of Columbia with nine states in the southeastern United States.

Colombia was a Spanish colony during the time that Spain controlled most of western South America. Colombia became independent in 1819. The region of Panama, which was first a part of Colombia, broke away in 1903 when the United States backed Panama's independence movement. After Colombia became independent of Spain, the conservatives (wealthy elite) and the liberals (poor workers) struggled to gain control of the government. Since 1948, the conflict, known as La Violencia, has caused more than 200,000 casualties. During the 20th century, the government in Colombia has not always been peaceful or stable. By the beginning of the 21st century, the government has become more unified and the country has witnessed an increase in tourism.

Colombia and the Drug Trade

Colombia's tropical climate and its many remote areas contributed to its development as a major coca-growing region. By the 1970s, extensive drug smuggling had developed, and powerful drug cartels became major political brokers within the country, competing against the government for control of Colombia. The largest and most organized cartels operated out of Medellin and Cali, the second and third largest cities in the country after the capital city of Bogotá.

The coca plant grows throughout the slopes of the Andes, from Colombia to Bolivia. Historically, locals have chewed it or brewed it into tea. Coca can alleviate elevation sickness and act as a mild stimulant. Using modern methods and strong chemicals, the coca leaves can be converted into a powerful narcotic. It often takes up to a ton of chemicals to produce a kilo of cocaine. Once the process is completed, most of the chemicals are discarded and frequently find their way into nearby rivers and streams, which are the same water supplies that local people use in their daily lives. Birth defects have become a problem in coca-growing regions because of the high levels of chemical pollution in the water.

The largest cocaine market is with the United States. Secret airfields and private boats transport the cocaine from Colombia to distribution centers in Mexico, Central America, or the Caribbean. From there, the drugs are smuggled into the United States. Colombian drugs are a multibillion-dollar industry that makes up a large portion of the Colombian economy. The effect of the drug industry on the people of Colombia is extensive—from the gunfire on the streets to the corruption of government officials.

In recent years, the same drug cartels that have operated the cocaine industry have imported opium poppies, which grow well on the higher and more arid slopes of the Andes. Opium poppies are native to Asia but have been transported to South America.

Opium is extracted from the seedpod and can be further refined into heroin. Colombian drug cartels, with a Mexican distribution network, have gained as much as 20 percent of the US heroin market. The US government has supported the Colombian government in the fight against the drug cartels and the trafficking of illegal drugs out of Colombia.

Colombian Coffee and Oil

Colombia's two main legal exports to the United States are coffee and oil. Coffee is only grown in the tropics since coffee trees must be grown in a frost-free environment. Coffee trees, which originally grew in Ethiopia, have since been grown throughout the world. Coffee trees can grow in elevations from sea level to 6,000 feet, but most of the best specialty coffee is grown at elevations between 3,000 to 6,000 feet. Colombia has ideal conditions for growing coffee and was once the world's largest coffee producer; now Brazil and Vietnam each produce more.

Early coffee production in Colombia was initially promoted by Catholic priests who were influential in supporting local parishioners to grow the crop. The industry was greatly enhanced in 1927 with the formation of the National Federation of Coffee Growers of Colombia. Coffee production on the mountain ranges of the Andes in Colombia supports up to 500,000 small farms and local growers that make up a large portion of the coffee economy. Harvesting coffee is labor intensive and can employ large numbers of workers. The seasonal nature of the harvest also leaves workers to find employment during the rest of the growing season.

In recent years, there has been growing concern about how climate change will continue to affect the region's coffee production. In the past century, parts of Colombia experienced up to a 1 ºC average temperature increase and up to a 25 percent increase in precipitation. These climate changes have negatively impacted coffee output and reduced coffee production as much as 25 percent in some areas. New agricultural methods are being developed in an attempt to counter the decrease.

Oil has now become Colombia's number one legal export. Oil is found in fields in the northern and central regions of Colombia. Immense quantities of coal are also found in the same regions, but oil is more valued in the export market. Pipelines connect the interior oil fields of Colombia with the northern ports. The US market size and population make it the world's largest oil consumer.

US oil companies have been investing in the development of Colombian oil for many years. Colombia has been a developing oil source even though its total extractable resources are not as vast as in other countries. For example, in 2006, the United States imported more oil from Colombia than from Kuwait, Oman, the United Arab Emirates (UAE), Bahrain, Qatar, and Yemen combined.



Insurgent groups control regions in Colombia as large as US states.

https://k12.libretexts.org/@go/page/1965

Since the United States is the largest consumer of Colombian oil, it has a vested interest in the stability of the Colombian government. A sizable portion of Colombia is controlled by drug cartels or other insurgent groups. Dozens of guerrilla organizations also control portions of Colombia. Some insurgent groups support the government and are against the drug lords, while others fight the government and work independently or with the cartels.

Drug sales, kidnappings, and extortion of legitimate businesses provide income to these groups. Thousands of children serve in these groups, and about one-third of them are female. The most powerful insurgent group is FARC (Revolutionary Armed Forces of Colombia), which controls entire regions the size of many US states. FARC is a recognized political entity by neighboring countries but is not given the same recognition by the United States and other countries of the region.



Drugs Coffee Oil

The three main export products of Colombia are illegal drugs, oil, and coffee. The United States is the largest consumer of all three.

The relationship between Colombia and the United States is conflicted. The US consumer supports the Colombian drug cartels by being the largest consumer of illegal drugs. The US government, under the Drug Enforcement Administration (DEA), has declared a war on drugs. The US has supported the Colombian government with billions of dollars in foreign aid to fight that war.

On another front, US oil corporations have paid insurgent groups to protect their oil assets. Oil is exported to the United States, bringing billions of dollars into the Colombian economy. The chaos in Colombia is directly related to the exploitation and marketing of titsresources. It is the people of Colombia who are the collateral damage in this civil war of corruption, crime, death, and destruction. The largest consumer market for Colombia's export of oil, drugs, and coffee is the United States, which is also the largest contributor of foreign aid to Colombia.

Rural Amerindian States of Ecuador, Peru, and Bolivia

The Central Andes, which includes Ecuador, Peru, and Bolivia, were home to the Inca Empire. The empire had gone through some internal divisions and was working on unifying the region when Francisco Pizarro's small army defeated the Incan warriors and brought about colonial rule beginning in the 1530s. Many cultures lived in the Central Andes before the Inca. Their legacy can be seen in the culture of the Amerindian people who still live there today.

Spanish is the official language, but indigenous languages are widely spoken in the rural areas and remote villages. Ecuador, Peru, and Bolivia make up the core of the Rural Amerindian Region of South America. There have been border disputes among the three countries, and also with their neighbors. Nevertheless, they all share the Andes and have many things in common.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org



The ruins are located at about 7,970 feet in elevation and are surrounded by higher peaks of the Andes.

Physical Geography

The physical geography of the Central Andes includes more than the Andes Mountains. The coastal region to the west of the Andes is generally warmer than the cooler climate of the mountains. The equatorial region is humid. The coastal region in southern Peru is dry and arid because of the ocean currents and the rain shadow effect of the Andes, which creates the Atacama Desert that extends up from northern Chile. Southwest Bolivia has some of the world's largest salt flats in this dry and barren region.

In the interior, on the eastern side of the mountain range, is the huge expanse of the Amazon Basin. The climate is tropical and humid with heavy precipitation. Rain forests and jungle fauna can be found on the eastern slopes. The Altiplano region has the high-elevation Lake Titicaca. The variations in physical terrain provide extensive biodiversity in animal and plant species. It also supports a variety of economic activities to profit from the bountiful natural resources.

Even though the Altiplano region borders the Pacific Ocean, it also links directly to the Atlantic Ocean. The headwaters that create the Amazon River start in Peru. By the time the water reaches the Peruvian city of Iquitos, the river is large enough to accommodate large shipping vessels. Iquitos is a port city for the Atlantic Ocean with access to Europe, Africa, and eastern North America. The port also links the region with Brazil's free-trade zone in Manaus, which has access to large oceangoing shipping and an international market.

Economic Geography

The region's main income comes from exports of minerals, oil, and agricultural products. Oil is the number one means of gaining wealth in Ecuador and Peru. Natural gas is the number one export of Bolivia. Gold, silver, tin, and other minerals are also abundant and are being exploited as conditions allow. The Spanish opened up a large silver-mining operation in Potosí, Bolivia, which continues to be exploited with modern mining methods. Potosí, one of the earth's highest-elevation cities at 13,420 feet above sea level, was once the largest silver mine in the world.

The city of Lima, Peru, was built on wealth from gold and silver extracted from the Inca Empire and the Andes Mountains. As is the case in many peripheral regions, the economic state of Peru, Ecuador, and Bolivia is dependent on global prices for their export products. There has been considerable conflict and political wrangling about who controls the wealth from extractive economic activities.

Originally, the Spanish conquistadors took the materials and the wealth. They were replaced by Mestizo land owners and wealthy elites who struck deals with international corporations. The corporations exploited the countries' natural resources, with little profit actually ending up in the hands of most of the people. These issues remain at the top of the political agendas in all three countries.

Poverty and the exploitation of natural resources usually result in environmental degradation. The area's heavy reliance on oil and gas extraction to gain national wealth has come at a great cost to the environment. Many oil spills have caused oil to enter the freshwater supplies of local residents and pollute the rivers and streams of the Amazon Basin. Mining has traditionally devastated the land because large portions of earth are removed to extract the ore or mineral. Pollution is causing a loss of habitats and

destroying ecosystems, and few measures are being taken to prevent it. Deforestation is being caused by the timber industry and by clearing for agriculture. Overgrazing and the removal of the trees leave the soil open to erosion.



Quito is at about 9,200 feet in elevation and is considered the 2nd-highest-elevation capital in the world after La Paz in Bolivia.

Tourism

Tourism is expanding for travelers to explore Incan and Pre-Incan sites. One of the main tourist attractions in Peru is the ancient city of Machu Picchu in the Andes. Ecuador's major tourist attraction is the Galapagos Islands, which aided Charles Darwin in understanding natural selection and the evolutionary process. Bolivia has a number of ancient sites that predate the Inca and have become major tourism destinations. The ancient city of Tiahuanaco and Lake Titicaca are good examples.

Tourism can be a great source of income, but it can come at a cost to the environment. There is always a concern that high-traffic tourism sites like Machu Picchu can be degraded by the mass of people visiting the site. The term ecotourism has been used to indicate the activity of people traveling to experience and enjoy the natural world with an aim not to damage the environment in the process. The main objective is to make tourism sustainable, which promotes stewardship of the land and respect for its attractions.

Jonathan Tourtellot, director of the National Geographic Society's Center for Sustainable Destinations, coined and prefers the term geo-tourism, which is translated as the stewardship of place and the preservation of its essential character. These concepts are becoming more integrated in the tourism industry to promote a sustainable model for high traffic sites like the Galapagos Islands with fragile ecosystems.

Political Issues

Economics usually drive politics. Accordingly, Peru, Ecuador, and Bolivia have suffered with fluctuations in their political environment. Corruption, authoritarianism, and human rights violations have been common accusations toward the political leadership of these countries. To address the economic condition of his country in 2000, Ecuador's president adopted the US dollar as its main medium of exchange. This may have brought some economic stability, but it did not address the problems of a high national debt and a fluctuation in commodity prices.

All three countries have undergone political turmoil. Large percentages of the populations live in poverty. Bolivia is considered one of the poorest countries in South America. In 2006, Bolivia elected a socialist president from the MAS (Movement for Socialism) party who was from a minority Amerindian group rather than a member of the wealthy elite. In Peru, a number of presidents have been forced to resign, and military coups have also resulted in leadership changes.



MAS is the Movement for Socialism, which has been active in Bolivian politics.

Population and Culture

Population growth is a major factor in the future of Peru, Ecuador, and Bolivia. In 2010, Bolivia had more than 10 million people, Ecuador had more than 14 million, and Peru had about 29 million. More than 30 percent of the population of Ecuador and Bolivia resides in rural areas and make a living from subsistence agriculture. All three countries have large populations in relation to food production. Peru and Bolivia are large countries in a physical area but do not have a high percentage of arable land. The rural-to-urban shift is increasing and the major cities are continuing to expand, overtaxing public works and social services.

The culture of the Central Andes is heavily influenced by its rural Amerindian heritage. The foundation of the traditional agrarian society has been subsistence agriculture. One-third of the population in Ecuador and Bolivia and up to one-fourth of the population in Peru continue to live a traditional way of life. Local cuisine reflects the connection to the land, and food such as potatoes, maize, guinea pigs, and fish are common in rural areas. Cities are encountering international influences that are changing the demands in local cuisine and culture. However, traditional food, arts, and local crafts still thrive in the local districts and in the tourism market.

The Andean West and Paraguay



This map also displays a part of the Amazon Basin, the Atacama Desert, Altiplano, and the Mato Grosso Plateau.

This region's location on the Pacific Rim of South America has contributed to an Asian influence, which has integrated with the local culture. Former president of Peru Alberto Fujimori had Japanese ancestry and held dual citizenship in both Peru and Japan. Lima, Peru is home to one of the earliest Chinatowns in the Americas, where the Chinese culture has mixed with the Latino culture to create a unique cultural blend. Bolivia is landlocked and does not have the advantage of a west-coast port city to interact with the Asian marketplace. However, its culture is still impacted by globalization and is evolving from within.

Paraguay

Paraguay is located in the Mixed Mestizo Cultural Region between Brazil, Argentina, and Bolivia. This landlocked country is not located in the Andes. The country's poor economic characteristics and troublesome political dynamics are similar to those of its neighbors in the Central Andes. Like other Latin American countries, most of the population practices Catholicism. Spanish is one of the main languages along with Guarani, the local language of the people.

The country's name comes from the Paraguay River, which flows through hydroelectric dams that provide all the electricity for the country. Paraguay suffers from a lack of infrastructure. The government has not been able to provide for the needs of a growing population with a fertility rate of more than three children per family.

As much as 40 percent of the population makes its living from agriculture. However, conditions in the rural areas are poor, and less than 10 percent of the land is arable. There is not much agricultural growth that could boost the economy. Paraguay is the 6th-largest producer of soybeans in the world, and cattle ranching is its other strong commodity. A large portion of the marshlands have been turned into land for farming, but this has caused a loss of wetlands as a habitat.

Poverty afflicts the region and results in the absence of opportunities and advantages. Connections to global markets are hindered by the lack of an international port. Corruption and unstable governments are the political system's legacy. There is a wide disparity between the social elites and most of the population. Large family size and the rural-to-urban shift has caused rapid growth of the urban areas. Sixty percent of the population lives in the cities, and they often suffer from unsanitary conditions because of water pollution.

The largest slums in the country are found in the capital city of Asuncion, which has almost two million people. In the urban areas, there is a strong informal market economy that thrives on imported goods being redistributed to other countries, but there is no formal record-keeping system. An enormous number of black-market goods are brought in and resold to neighboring countries such as Brazil and Argentina, its two largest trading partners. In such conditions, crime and illegal activities thrive, and the rule of law is difficult to enforce.

Key Takeaways

- Most of the people in Venezuela live in cities along the Caribbean coast.
- Venezuela has always been urban and does not have an agricultural economy.
- Venezuela depends on oil exports for its national wealth.
- The United States is the largest consumer of products exported from Colombia.
- Illegal drugs, oil, and coffee and are the three main export products of Colombia.
- The United States directly or indirectly supports the three main exports of Columbia.
- The Andean countries of Ecuador, Peru, and Bolivia share similar developmental dynamics, including a large percentage of Amerindian people and reliance on the export of natural resources to gain national wealth.
- The wealth gained from the exports of Ecuador, Peru, and Bolivia is concentrated in the hands of the social elites.
- Paraguay is a landlocked country between the Andes and the Atlantic coast.
- Paraguay is a poor nation with few opportunities to advance its standard of living.
- Paraguay has been a main staging ground for unregulated goods to be redistributed throughout the region.

Vocabulary Terms

Chapter 4.6 South America: The Urban North and Andean West

Machu Picchu	A city built by the Inca as a retreat for Incan kings and serves as the finest example of Inca architecture
Quecha	official language of Incas; still spoken by people of Peru
Terraced farming	a farming system that is in the form of steps going up a mountain used by both the Aztecs and Inca

Applying Knowledge

Interactive Notebook Activity

1. Describe the dynamics of Venezuela's urban society and explain why Venezuela has not experienced a robust rural-to-urban shift to the extent that other countries have.
2. List the production of the three main export products of Colombia and explain the role of the United States in their export.
3. Compare the three main countries in the Andean West region of South America. Explain how they gained their wealth and who has benefited the most over the years from that wealth.
4. Summarize how Paraguay's geographical setting has allowed it to gain wealth and provide opportunities for its people.

Discussion and Study Questions

1. How intense is the current rural-to-urban shift in Venezuela? What accounts for this unique situation?
2. What are the three main export products of Colombia? How is the United States involved in each of them?
3. Where are the main types of coffee grown?
4. What three groups vie for control of the various regions of Colombia? How does the United States directly or indirectly support all three groups?
5. What environmental problems result from the cocaine production process?
6. How did colonial activity assist in determining which ethnic group or groups would be at the top or bottom of the socioeconomic hierarchy in the Andean West region of South America?
7. What are some of the common difficulties with the political systems of the countries in the Andean West?
8. What does Paraguay have in common with Bolivia? How have the two countries each addressed this common situation?
9. Where has socialism been promoted or supported in the countries of South America?
10. What types of agriculture are found in the north and western regions of South America?

Real-World Geography Exercise

1. Using Google Maps, complete the following activities:
   a. Locate each place on the bulleted list below.
   b. Find the nearest city with an international airport in proximity to each location on the bulleted list below.
   c. Calculate the distance and travel time by plane to each city from the San Francisco International Airport in San Francisco, California.
2. Using NASA Latitude and Longitude Finder, determine the latitude and longitude for each location on the bulleted list below.
3. Be prepared to share and discuss your answers.

- Iguazu Falls, Argentia/Brazil
- Salar de Uyuni, Bolivia
- Galapagos Islands, Ecuador
- Atacama Desert, Chile
- Angel Falls, Venezuela
- Torres del Paine, Chile
- Colca Canyon, Peru
- Lake Titicaca, Peru/Bolivia
- Perito Moreno Glacier, Argentina
- Laguna Colorada, Bolivia
- Aconcagua, Argentina
- Kaietuer Falls, Guyana
- Tierra del Fuego, Argentina

Mapping Exercise

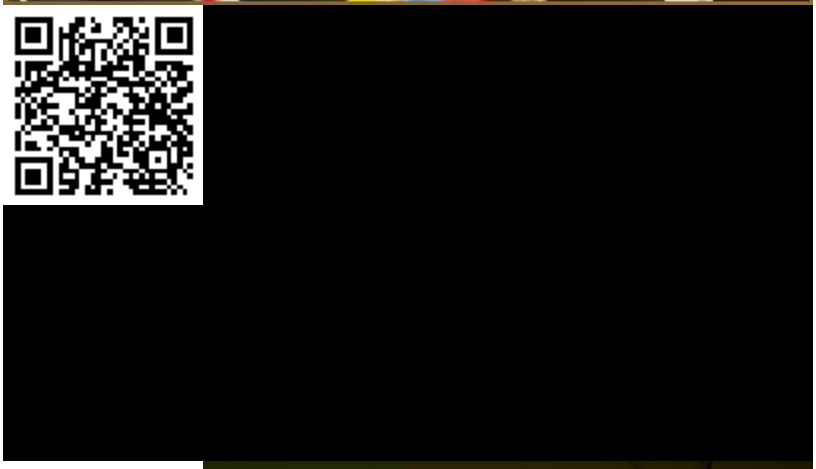
ESRI GEOInquiry

Tropical Deforestation: Students will identify and describe the locations most affected by deforestation.

Urban Areas and Edge Cities: Students will explore urban areas around the world, including their layout, size, and other factors. The activity uses a web-based map.

Videos for Geography Enrichment








lombia's Hidden Killers: Part 1/2 (
Watch on YouTube


lombia's Hidden Killers: Part 2/2 (
Watch on YouTube


lombia's Geographic Challenge
VENEZUELA
ORINOCO PLAINS
PACIFIC OCEAN
Bogota
COLOMBIA
AMAZON RAINFOREST
ECUADOR
BRAZIL
PERU
Watch on YouTube



Helpful Websites for the Study of Geography

Canadian Encyclopedia is an encyclopedia funded by the Canadian government covering all branches of knowledge. Their scholarly collection includes interactive materials.

CIA World Factbook provides information on the people, history, government, economy, energy, geography, communications, transportation, military, and transnational issues for the world's entities.

Congress.gov is a US government website where you can find federal legislation, past and present, as well as information about the US legal system.

Drug Enforcement Administration (DEA) is a government agency website that provides current news, resources, topics of interest, information about drugs, careers in the DEA, and a tip hotline.

Library of Congress is the largest library in the world and provides manuscripts, files, information, pictures, and videos.

NASA Earth Observatory (NEO) is a US government agency website that allows users to search for and retrieve satellite images of Earth.

National Archives is a US government website that provides historical documents, photos, records, publications, and educator resources.

National Oceanic and Atmospheric Association (NOAA) is a US government agency website that provides weather-related information and ocean research.

National Map is a website by the United States Geological Survey and other federal, state, and local agencies that delivers topographic information for the United States.

NationMaster is a massive central data source and a handy way to graphically compare nations.

Real-Time World Air Quality Index is a website that measures most locations in the world for air pollution in real time.

StateMaster is a unique statistical database, which allows you to research and compare a multitude of different data on US states.

United Nations (UN) is an international organization founded in 1945 and made up of 193 member states. The UN maintains international peace and security, protects human rights, delivers humanitarian aid, promotes sustainable development, and upholds international law.

United States Census Bureau is a US government agency that provides a population clock, data, surveys, statistics, a library with information and infographics, news about the economy, and much more.

United States Geological Survey (USGS) is a US government agency website that provides scientific information about the natural hazards that threaten lives, the natural resources we rely on, the health of our ecosystems and environment, and the impacts of climate and land-use change.

Whitehouse.gov is a US government website that provides the latest presidential news, information about the budget, policy, defense, and many more topics.

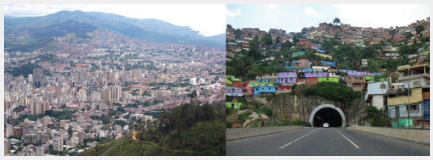
World Health Organization (WHO) is under the United Nations and provides leadership on matters critical to health, shapes the research agenda on health, and monitors the health situation and assessing health trends around the world. Their website provides information on the state of health around the world, outbreaks, current health news, and more.

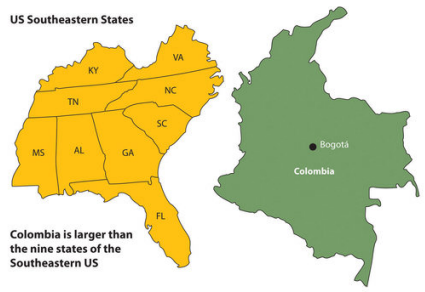
LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

World Trade Organization (WTO) is an intergovernmental organization that regulates international trade. The website provides

LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

information on the history of the multilateral trading system, featured videos, news and events, trade topics, and more.

Image	Reference	Attributions
	**[Figure 1]**	**Credit:** CIA World Factbook – public domain. **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/3e9e95dfabccf7df0c5e07da222ebfe6.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 2]**	**Credit:** Inti – El Sato Angel – CC BY 2.0. **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/54af449a2c8fd00fd358e4cb3b58761c.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 3]**	**Credit:** Cristóbal Alvarado Minic – Vista de Caracas – CC BY 2.0; Danila Medvedev – A tunnel and barrios surrounding it on the hill – CC BY 2.0. **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/124c11ad79479e6d1941a838a6b93565.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

	**[Figure 4]**	**Credit:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeograp...d-andean-west/ **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/7c8fa712b7978464c0681c5e15396c36.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 5]**	**Credit:** CIA World Factbook – public domain. **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/c915afaf31d4d82af02fed8f7cdb1f36.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 6]**	**Credit:** DEA – public domain; R. Berglee – CC BY-NC-SA; Wikimedia Commons – public domain. **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/fcf859e31ac0fb1418b26477a31963c3.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 7]**	**Credit:** Funkz – Machu Picchu 12 – CC BY 2.0. **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/44d09b985e4404e5d32de3f4f4b2ef3d.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

	**[Figure 8]**	**Credit:** David Berkowitz – Panoramic View – Quito, Ecuador – South America – CC BY 2.0. **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/b42bea36a995cc31b4104f7d38fc45e7.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 9]**	**Credit:** Norsk Folkehjelp Norwegian – Urfolk i Bolivia – CC BY 2.0. **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/c5a21d7b423cf803d319decb370f6a75.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 10]**	**Credit:** University of Texas Libraries. **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/ace9269cb839a5ccdadd366e45dfad20.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

This page titled 4.6: South America- The Urban North and Andean West (1 Day) is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by CK12 via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

4.7: Brazil (2 Days)

Chapter Challenges

- Summarize briefly the ethnic composition of Brazil and describe why the population is so diverse.
- Explain how the core-periphery spatial relationship applies to the country.
- Explain how the dynamics of the country shape the core and the periphery.
- Describe the main activities that are involved in the development and exploitation of the Amazon Basin.
- Describe how deforestation affects the tropical rain forest and environmental conditions.
- List the main characteristics and economic activities of the main regions of Brazil.

Learning Objectives

TEKS Regional World Geography Unit 04: Chapter 4.7 Brazil

WG.16B Describe elements of culture, including language, religion, beliefs and customs, institutions, and technologies.

WG.16D Compare life in a variety of urban and rural areas in the world to evaluate political, economic, social, and environmental changes

WG.18A Analyze cultural changes in specific regions caused by migration, war, trade, innovations, and diffusion.

WG.18C Identify examples of cultures that maintain traditional ways, including traditional economies.

WG.19B Evaluate the significance of major technological innovations in the areas of transportation and energy that have been used to modify the physical environment.

WG.21A Analyze and evaluate the validity and utility of multiple sources of geographic information such as primary and secondary sources, aerial photographs, and maps.

WG.21B Locate places of contemporary geopolitical significance on a map.

WG.22A Design and draw appropriate graphics such as maps, diagrams, tables, and graphs to communicate geographic features, distributions, and relationships. features, distributions, and relationships.

WG.22C Use geographic terminology correctly.

WG.22D Use standard grammar, spelling, sentence structure, and punctuation.

WG.22E Create original work using proper citations and understanding and avoiding plagiarism.

TEKS and ELPS for Regional World Geography Unit 04--Latin America from TEKS Resource System

LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

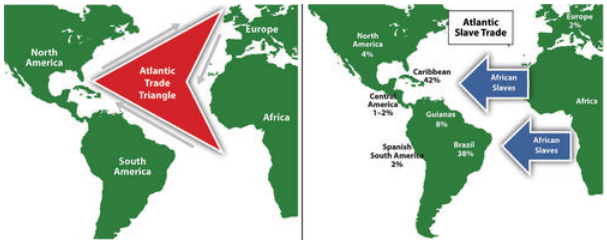


Map of Brazil

A Portuguese Colony

Brazil, the largest country in South America, is similar in physical area to the continental United States without Alaska or Hawaii. Catholicism is the dominant religion and Portuguese is the primary language. Once a Portuguese colony, the country's culture was built on European immigration and African slave labor, making for a mixture of ethnic backgrounds.

In colonial times, Brazil was a part of the Atlantic Trade Triangle, which functioned as a transportation conveyor, moving goods and people around the regions bordering the Atlantic Ocean. Colonial merchant ships financed by Europe's wealthy elite brought goods to the African coast to trade for slaves, who were shipped to the Americas and the Caribbean to resolve the labor shortage in the colonies. The Atlantic Trade Triangle also moved food crops, sugar, tobacco, and rum from the colonies back to the European ports. The merchant ships never sailed with an empty hold, and their voyages provided enormous profits to European financiers.



This map depicts the Atlantic Trade Triangle.

The total number of individuals taken as slaves from Africa is unclear and often debated. It is estimated that more than ten million African slaves survived the Middle Passage from Africa to the Western Hemisphere. Slavery supplied cheap labor for the plantations and agricultural operations in the New World. Brazil took in more African slaves than any other single country—at least three million. Colonial Brazil thrived on early plantation agriculture. When slavery was abolished in Brazil in 1888, the freed slaves found themselves on the lower end of the socioeconomic hierarchy.

People of mixed African descent now make up more than one-third of Brazil's population. The Afro-Brazilian heritage remains strong and dominates the country's east coast. The African influence is evident in everything from the samba schools of the Brazilian carnival to the music and traditions of the people. In spite of Brazil being a culturally diverse country, Africans still have not found themselves on an equal status in terms of economic or political opportunities in positions of power in the country.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org



The peripheral region includes the large Amazon Basin of the north. Notice the many small states in the Northeast from Fortaleza to Salvador; these states are densely populated.

Southeast Core: Urbanization and Industrialization

Brazil's human development patterns are an example of the core-periphery spatial relationship. The main economic core area is located in the southeast region of Brazil, an area that is home to the largest cities of the realm and acts as the hub for industrial and economic activities. Political and economic power is held by elites residing in the urban core areas. The rural northern Amazon Basin is the heart of the periphery, providing raw materials and resources needed in the core. The periphery has a small population density, and most are Amerindian groups that make a living from subsistence agriculture, mining, and forestry. The rural-to-urban shift has prompted many of the rural poor to migrate to the large cities.

Founded in 1554 as a Catholic mission, the city of São Paulo rests at the heart of the core region. Its pattern of development is similar to that of Mexico City. Coffee production was the early basis of the local economy. São Paulo is located about 30 miles inland from the coast. It has grown to be the center of trade and industry for Brazil. However, Rio de Janeiro receives greater attention from tourism. With more than 20 million people, São Paulo is the largest industrial metropolis south of the equator, the largest city in South America, and among one of the largest cities on Earth.

Rio de Janeiro is a travel and international business center with a population of more than 10 million. The city is renowned for its carnival festivities and famous coastline. Tourists are attracted to its cultural attractions and coastal setting, with beaches and Sugarloaf Mountain located in an open bay. Rio de Janeiro became the capital in 1763, but to further develop Brazil's interior, in 1960 the capital was moved from Rio to the *forward capital* of Brasilia. Forward capitals are created to shift development or to safeguard a geographical region. Brazil has an enormous interior region that it wishes to continue to develop for economic gain and the creation of the forward capital of Brasilia is in line with this objective.



This giant statue overlooks the immense urban landscape of Rio de Janeiro, with Sugarloaf Mountain in the background.

The three cities of São Paulo, Rio de Janeiro, and Brasilia, along with their urban neighbors, anchor the core region in the south. Brazil's internal migration to these cities follows a rural-to-urban or periphery-to-core pattern. These three cities are growing at an unprecedented rate. São Paulo is more than 60 miles across. As migrant workers from the countryside and from the rural northeast migrate to the cities looking for work, they expand the city through self-help housing. Slums, called favelas, extend out from the central city for miles.

The cultural fabric of Brazil has been built by immigrants from many countries. Brazil's diverse population has linked the country to the homelands of its immigrants. It has also established trade and cultural connections that benefit the country in the global marketplace. The more than 200 million people that make up Brazil's population are diverse and integrated. However, many still hold to the traditions or cultural heritage of their country of origin. After World War II, a large number of Japanese migrated to São Paulo.

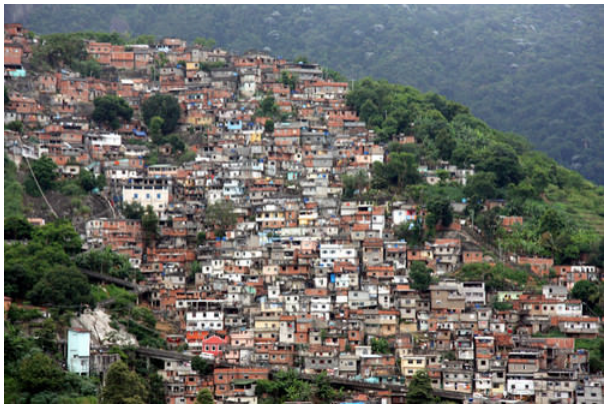
Today, Brazil boasts the largest Japanese population outside of Japan. Many people from both Western and Eastern Europe have made Brazil their home, and large numbers of people from Lebanon, Syria, and the Middle East have immigrated there.

The Catholic religion is a cultural foundation in Brazil. Although about 70 percent of the population in Brazil is Roman Catholic; additional religious affiliations range from the African influence of Umbanda to the Muslim minority. Protestant denominations are the second largest religious affiliations in Brazil. Secularism is on the rise, and many do not actively practice their specified religion.

In both population and physical area, Brazil ranks fifth in the world. Brazil is as urban as the United States or countries in the European Union. The index of economic development can be applied to Brazil. As a region urbanizes and industrializes, the family size usually decreases and incomes usually increase. Family size has dropped significantly, from 4.4 children in 1980 to 2.4 children in 2000. Religious traditions give way to the urban culture and secular attitudes of modernity when it comes to family size.

Brazil is an urban country. Approximately 87 percent of Brazil's population lives in urban areas. Urbanization seldom eliminates poverty, however. Though the index of economic development indicates that urbanization will increase incomes for the population as a whole, poverty is a standard component of any large urban area in most places of the world, and the favelas of Brazil are similar to slums found in other places around the world.

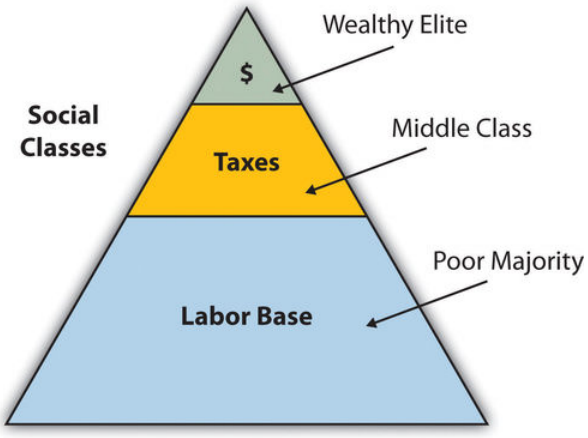
LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org



Favelas are usually self-constructed and start out as slums. Many lack ownership rights, police protection, or public services. With time, some become established neighborhoods.

The favelas of Brazil's urban centers are dynamic places where land ownership, law and order, and public services are questionable. Millions of people live in the favelas of Brazil's large cities. Poverty and the search for opportunities and advantages are common elements of urban life. The core cities of Brazil suffer from the same problems as other developing megacities: overcrowding, pollution, congestion, traffic jams, crime, and increased social tensions. The energy generated by the magnitude of people, industry, and commerce continues to fuel Brazil's vibrant growth and its many large, dynamic cities.

The pattern of wealth developing in Brazil is a common pattern. Wealth and the ability to obtain it are held in the hands of those at the higher end of the socioeconomic ladder. The minority wealthy elite owns most of the land and businesses, and control more than half of the wealth. Corporate colonialism is active in Brazil. Multinational corporations take advantage of the country's development activities and benefit from the profits, which seldom reach the hands of the majority at the lower end of society.



This graphic illustrates the socioeconomic classes in Brazil.

Brazil is an emerging power in the world marketplace. Brazil has the largest economy in South America and is a parallel force with the United States in the Northern Hemisphere. The country has urbanized and industrialized to compete with the global economic core areas in many ways. Brazil is among the ten largest economies in the world.

Brazil has favorable resources and labor to compete in the global marketplace. Its agricultural output has grown substantially over the past few decades. Brazil is a major exporter of soybeans, coffee, orange juice, beef, and other agricultural products. It is the largest coffee producer in South America, but coffee only constitutes about five percent of its current annual exports. Coffee production is extensive in the Brazilian Highlands located inland from the coast. Brazil exports more orange juice than any other country and is second in the world in soybean production.

LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

The vast central interior regions, such as the Cerrado, continue to be developed for industrial farming of massive food crops. However, exports of industrially manufactured products have surpassed agricultural exports in 2010. The availability of abundant minerals and iron ore has supported an expanding steel industry and automotive manufacturing, and its industrial activity continues to develop. Competitive high-tech companies continue to emerge, and production has increased in semiconductors, computers, petrochemicals, aircraft, and a host of other products that provide economic growth.

Brazil economically dominates and anchors South America. The economic integration being developed throughout the South American continent has great potential because it combines the energy region of the north, the commercial centers in the south, and the agricultural sectors as complementary forces within Brazil's industrial base. Brazil is at both the physical center and the economic center of the continent.

Brazil also has a strong social and cultural presence in the world. The large metropolitan areas of the country are a mecca for fashion and the arts. Carnival is the most well known of Brazil's cultural festivals, but the country is host to a number of other international events. Brazil is active in world sports competitions and hosted the 2007 Pan American Games, the 2014 FIFA World Cup, and the 2016 Summer Olympics. The Fédération Internationale de Football Association (International Federation of Association Football) is commonly known by the acronym FIFA and is the international governing body of soccer.

Northern Periphery: The Amazon Basin

Just as the megacities of southern Brazil anchor the core of the country, it is the rural expanse of the Amazon North that makes up the periphery. A region the size of the US Midwest, the Amazon River basin is a frontier development area that has been exploited for its natural resources. Rubber barons of early years traveled up the Amazon River and established the port city of Manaus to organize rubber plantations for automobile tires.

The Amazon River is large enough for oceangoing vessels to travel to Manaus. Today, Manaus has a free-trade zone with an entire industrial complex for the production of electronic goods and an ultramodern airport facility. Smaller ships can continue up the Amazon River all the way to Iquitos in Peru, which makes Manaus an ideal core city for economic trade.



The immense area of the tropical rain forest can be seen on this map. The extensive cerrado region is noted on this map between the tropical rain forests of the Amazon Basin and the deciduous forests of the southeast. The soils of the thorny scrub region along the northeast are not as conducive to large-scale agriculture as is the cerrado.

The other regions of the Amazon Basin have not been as fortunate as Manaus. Deforestation from cattle ranching, logging, and mining have devastated parts of the tropical rain forests of the Amazon Basin. The Amerindian populations have also suffered from

encroachment into their lands. Only about 200,000 Amerindians are estimated to remain in Brazil, and most reside in the Amazon interior.

This region boasts one of the world's leading reserves of iron ore. As much as one-third of Europe's iron ore demands are met through extensive mining southwest of Belém. In this area, a development scheme known as the Grande Carajás Project was implemented to create the infrastructure to support the mining complex and aid in the exploitation of the iron ore and other minerals. A large dam was built to provide hydroelectric power, and a railroad line was laid down to transport the ore to the Atlantic coast. The availability of transportation and energy attract other economic activities.

Deforestation for cattle ranching and farming has increased. Many poor settlers have arrived seeking employment opportunities or a chance to obtain land. The rapidly expanding development activities in the Amazon basin have boosted the region's economic situation, but at the same time, there is growing concern about the preservation of the natural environment.

Gold mining, an activity that has been widespread in the Amazon region for many decades, also presents environmental problems. Toxic substances such as cyanide and mercury used in the collection of gold from rivers and streams have entered the waters and tributaries of the Amazon River. The pollutants then enter the food chain and harm the ecosystem. The mining of ores and minerals has enticed people to immigrate to the area, creating frontier boomtowns with few public utilities or social services and poorly organized law and order.

The exploitation of natural resources harms the environment and the Amerindian people. Amerindian groups have used the land as hunting grounds for centuries, but the rapid influx of gold miners and land speculators has caused conflicts with the indigenous people. Violence in the Amazon and battles for control over land and resources have been well documented.



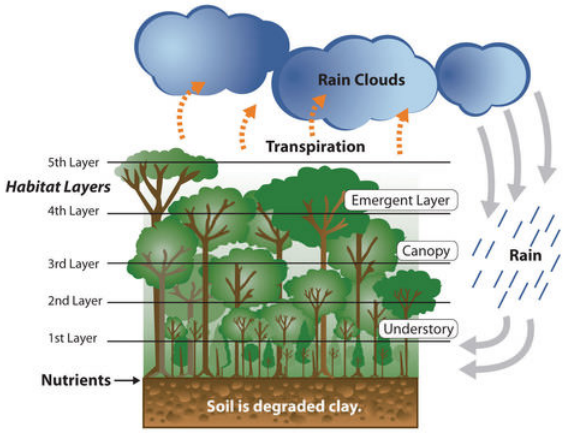
Deforestation in the Amazon is caused mainly by logging, agriculture, and mining. Agricultural practices can include slash-and-burn farming and cattle ranching.

Deforestation has reduced the habitat critical to the survival of native species. An estimated 50 percent of the earth's species live in tropical rain forests, which only cover about five percent of the earth's surface. Tropical rain forests in the Amazon Basin are being cut down at an unsustainable rate. Loggers cut down the large trees, and the rest are usually burned to allow the ash to provide nutrients for other plants. The cleared areas are most often used by cattle ranchers until the soil is no longer viable. Then more forest is cut down and the cycle continues. Speculation that land prices will increase as the region becomes more developed encourages this process.

The forest has many layers of habitat. Soils in the tropics are extremely low in nutrients, which have been leached out by the abundant rainfall. The nutrients are on the surface layer of the ground built up from falling leaves, branches, and debris decomposing on the forest floor. The removal of the forests removes these nutrients and results in serious soil erosion. Tropical forests usually expand along the edges where falling debris from the trees collects and provides nutrients for young plants.

There is much discussion among environmentalists, scientists, and other concerned people about deforestation in the Amazon region, usually with a focus on the devastation that results from the loss of forested areas. Forest studies have indicated that tropical

rain forests are resilient and can recover with proper forest management. However, clear-cutting large, wide areas for timber leaves an area devastated for an extended period. Clear-cutting could be replaced by strip cutting, which would harvest trees in narrower strips, leaving rows of trees standing. Strip cutting allows for more edges to be available for young plants to get their start to replenish the forest.



This image illustrates that the nutrients of the tropical rain forest ecosystem rest on the forest floor because tropical soils are degraded. The forest canopy has many habitat layers providing homes to a diversity of organisms. Dense tropical rain forests also contribute to the process of transpiration, which cycles precipitation from the ground back into the atmospheres where it can collect and return in the form of rain.

Additional forest habitat is lost when rivers are dammed up for hydroelectric power and thousands of acres of tropical rain forests are flooded. Decomposing plant material in the reservoirs behind the dams increases the water's acidity, causing erosion to the hydroelectric turbines. The turbines have a short life span, so the dams are a short-term energy solution that creates long-term problems. The immense flooded areas reduce the habitat for tropical organisms and restrict the use of the land for other purposes. Flooding can extend into traditional hunting grounds for indigenous groups, who have little political power to restrict this type of development.

The Amazon Basin is in the midst of a development pattern in which peripheral regions are exploited for natural resources or agricultural production. Much of the wealth generated ends up in the hands of investors who live in the core cities or in other countries rather than local people, a common and recurring pattern of economic exploitation of the periphery.

The great frontier of the Amazon Basin continues to attract thousands of new immigrants seeking out opportunities or employment. As roads and highways are built to open up new paths through the region, even more of the forest gets cut down to accommodate the development pattern. This region will continue to be developed and altered, and the government of Brazil must continue to control its evolving dynamics in order to preserve the natural environment.

Regional Brazil

The core-peripheral spatial relationship can help us understand the power of Brazil's southeast core and the natural resource base of the country's peripheral north. This can explain the basic layout of Brazil's economic geography. However, the northeast, the west central, and the south are three additional regions that contribute to the geographic understanding of the country. Each has specific qualities that make it unique in Brazil's diversity of landscapes.

The northeast region is anchored along the coast, where plantation agriculture thrived during the colonial era. African slaves became the main labor base, and once freed, they made up most of the population. This agricultural region still grows sugarcane along the coast and other crops inland where the rainfall is reduced. The inland region includes parts of the Brazilian Highland, which runs parallel to the coast.

Agriculture has traditionally required a large labor base, and family sizes in rural areas have been larger than their urban counterparts. This trend has given rise to a regional population of more than 50 million. However, the agriculture-based economy has not been able to supply the number of jobs and opportunities required for this large population. Poverty and unemployment in the northeast are high and have a devastating effect on the people.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

Some farms are not large enough for families to make a living. Individuals in the northeast have developed a pattern of migration to the larger cities of the core area looking for opportunities and employment—a pattern that fuels the favelas of Rio de Janeiro and São Paulo.

The west-central region has been opening up for development since the last part of the 20th century. It has experienced enormous advancements in industrial agriculture. In this region, the Cerrado grasslands are being plowed and converted into colossal fields of soybeans, grains, and cotton. Located in the northwest portion of the Cerrado is the huge Motto Grosso Plateau, which almost covers the largest state of the region. The landscape of this plateau is mainly scrub forest and savanna.

Traditionally, the savanna has been used for grazing livestock. In recent years, more of the land is being plowed for growing agricultural crops. The entire west central region of Brazil is a giant breadbasket for the country. Its full agricultural potential has not been reached. Industrial agriculture requires infrastructure and transportation networks to transport the harvests to market. This region has enormous potential for agricultural expansion in the future.



The forward capital of Brasilia, built in 1960, showcases many architectural styles.

Located on the eastern edge of the west central region is the capital of Brasilia. Its creation was prompted by the need to further develop the country's interior. Built in 1960 and now a metropolitan center with more than 3.8 million people, the city was planned and designed to be a capital city. Because of its rapid growth and development, the city faces issues similar to those found in Rio de Janeiro or São Paulo.

Rural-to-urban shift has brought many rural people to Brasilia in search of opportunities and employment. Just as Rio de Janeiro and São Paulo have favelas, so does Brasilia. Moving the capital to Brasilia moved the focus from the coastal region of the south to the interior. However, a large percentage of the interior lies beyond the city of Brasilia. Highways that reach the Amazon can be accessed from the capital. Large areas of Brazil's interior remain undeveloped. Developing these areas could bring great opportunities and benefits to the country. However, recent development activities have also brought devastation to the tropical rain forests in many parts of the frontier.

The three states of the south region are located south of the Tropic of Capricorn and extend south to the border with Uruguay. This extrusion is often called South Brazil. Brazil was colonized by the Portuguese, but many of the immigrants to the south were from other parts of Europe, including Germany and Italy. The Italian immigrants developed a wine industry, and the German immigrants raised cattle and grew other crops.

The region's fertile soils and moderate climate support many types of agriculture, which have dominated the development of the region. Success in growing rice and tobacco and raising livestock has brought prosperity to the people who live here. Brazil has been one of the world's main producers of high-quality tobacco for many years.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org



The Miolo Vineyard is located in the interior of Brazil's affluent south region. Many Italian immigrants settled here and developed a wine industry that continues today.

The south is one of Brazil's most affluent regions, and it has gained much wealth from agricultural activities. Farming is only one of the region's highly developed economic activities. The area is also abundant with natural resources such as coal that is shipped north to the main cities where steel is produced. The wealth of the region has provided support for high-tech industries, which are attracted to the region because of the supply of skilled labor, access to quality transportation, and communication links.

Computer companies have established software firms that have in turn attracted other new companies. A technology center similar to California's Silicon Valley has combined with the manufacturing complex that has sprouted up along the coast of the south. The government and the business community have both provided economic incentives for these and other emerging enterprises.

The attractiveness of the region in physical geography and economic stability has led some citizens to suggest that the region should separate from Brazil and become an independent country. Moreover, immigrants from poorer regions of other Brazilian states are discouraged from moving here. Poor migrants seeking opportunities are often rejected and provided transportation back to from where they came. Nevertheless, many people have migrated to the south. The region is host to immigrants from Japan and the Middle East. The progressive cities and striking environmental conditions will continue to attract people to live here.

The Brazilian City of Curitiba in the South

Brazil's "green city" of Curitiba in the south region has been a model of urban planning that has been used in the development of cities around the world. Curitiba is a well-designed city with environmentally-friendly attitudes and green spaces. This city served as Brazil's capital for a few days in 1969 during a transition period before the forward capital of Brasilia was built.

The city is an industrial hub for southern Brazil and has diverse commercial activities—from manufacturing to financial services and tourism. Automobile manufacturing is a major part of the industrial sector and is the 2nd largest car maker in the country. The modern airport, bus system, and planned green spaces create a favorable environment for commercial ventures, which are promoted via business incubators to attract new enterprises.

In 2010, Curitiba had an overall metropolitan population of about 2.3 million but has used mass transit and environmental planning with great efficiency. Urban planning has helped develop a combination of streets and districts that encourage walking, bicycling, and mass transit as the main means of access. Pedestrian malls with shopping, restaurants, and services are common. More than 60 miles of bike routes allow commuters to bicycle to work.

The rapid transit system, regularly used by approximately 85 percent of the people in the city, is rated as one of the best in the world. As much as 70 percent of the city's trash is recycled, providing additional employment opportunities. At the same time

that the population doubled, the use of automobiles declined by 30 percent. However, the city still has the highest rate of automobile ownership per person in Brazil.

The decline in automobile use has had a positive effect on air quality by reducing the amount of harmful exhaust emissions. Extensive urban planning has gone into creating Curitiba as an efficient and yet progressive city. In 2010 Curitiba was awarded the Globe Sustainable City Award, which was set up to recognize cities and municipalities that excel in sustainable urban development around the world.



The mayor of Curitiba developed a master plan for the city in 1972. One weekend, the mayor changed one of the main downtown avenues into a pedestrian-only street without announcing it to the public. At first the local businesses objected to it, but once the concept caught on, the street became one of the most actively visited parts of the downtown area.

Key Takeaways

- Brazil was a Portuguese colony during the colonial era. This is why the Portuguese language and the Catholic religion are dominant components of the Brazilian culture.
- The strong African heritage comes from the many African slaves brought in during the colonial era to work the plantations.
- Immigrants from many other countries have settled in Brazil as well.
- The urban southeast, with its large cities of São Paulo and Rio de Janeiro, represents the core economic area of the country.
- The large cities of Brazil continue to expand to accommodate the influx of new immigrants.
- The outer edges of the cities expand through slums called favelas.
- The northern regions of the Amazon Basin represent the periphery of the country. The north is being exploited for its natural resources.
- Development patterns have caused extensive deforestation of the tropical rain forest of the region. The main causes are agriculture, logging, and mining.
- Other regions of Brazil include the west central, with extensive agricultural activities; the northeast, heavily populated with serious poverty; and the south in the protruded area bordering Uruguay, which is an affluent region with high standards of living.

Vocabulary Terms

Chapter 4.7 Brazil

deforestation	The cutting down or destroying of large areas of forest
favela	Slum area
slash and burn agriculture	a farming technique in which trees are cut down and burned to clear and fertilize the land

Applying Knowledge

Interactive Notebook Activity

1. Summarize the ethnic composition of Brazil. Describe why the population is so diverse.
2. Explain how the core-periphery spatial relationship applies to the country.
3. Explain how the dynamics of the country shape the core and the periphery.
4. Describe the main activities that are involved in the development and exploitation of the Amazon Basin.
5. Describe how deforestation affects the tropical rain forest and environmental conditions.
6. List the main characteristics and economic activities of the main regions of Brazil.

Discussion and Study Questions

1. Explain the Atlantic Trade Triangle. How did it operate? How was Brazil involved?
2. Where is Brazil's core region? Where is its peripheral region? What are its core cities?
3. What three cities make up Brazil's political capital, cultural capital, and largest city?
4. What is a forward capital and why does Brazil have one? Are favelas located in the forward capital?
5. Why is Manaus such a core city for its region? What makes it so attractive to economic development?
6. What are the main causes of deforestation in the Amazon Basin? How can deforestation be reduced?
7. What is the economic situation in the northeast? How are people attempting to remedy the economic situation?
8. What is promising about the west-central region of Brazil? What is needed to develop the area?
9. Why is the south region so affluent? What is this region doing to attract economic development?
10. How has the rural-to-urban shift been evident in the population of Brazil? Where has it been occurring?

Real-World Geography Exercise

Using Google Maps, locate the places below. Approximately how many miles is it from your house to each location? Go to Real-Time World Air Quality Index and find the air pollution index for each of the cities. How do you think the pollution from the cities impacts the environment in the different regions of Brazil? Be prepared to share your answers.

Cities

- Belém
- Brasilia
- Curitiba
- Manaus
- Rio de Janeiro
- Salvador
- São Paulo

Regions of Brazil

- North
- Northeast
- South
- Southeast
- West central

Physical Regions

- Amazon Basin
- Brazilian Highlands
- Cerrado
- Mato Grosso Plateau

Mapping Exercise

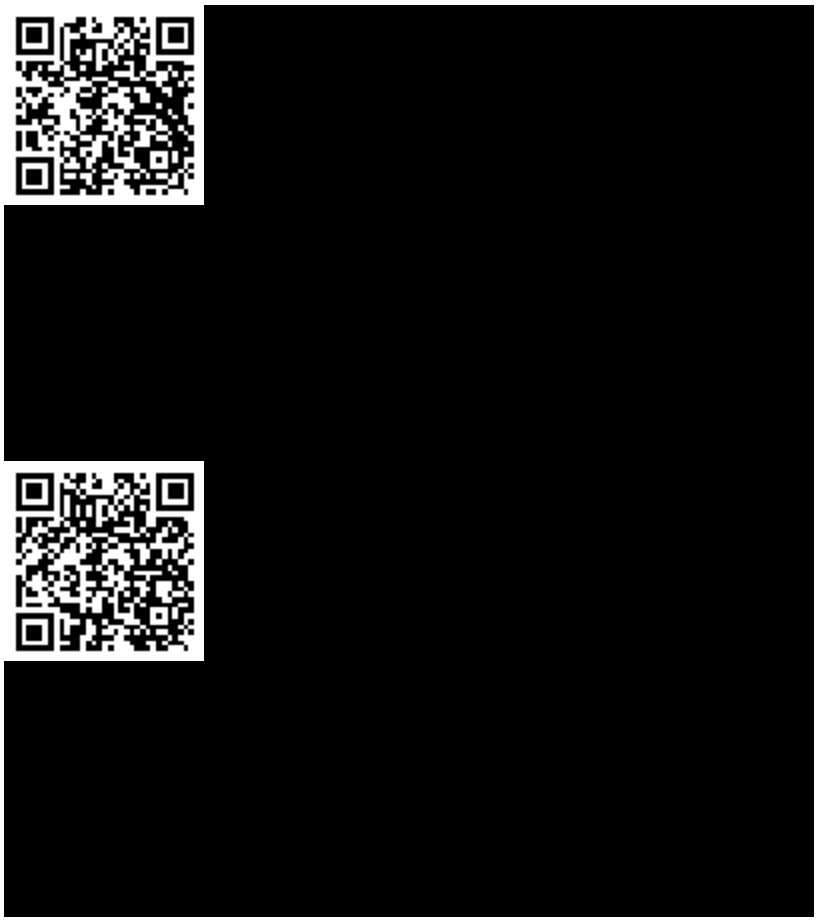
ESRI-GEO Inquiry

The Human Development Index: Students will explore the spatial patterns of the Human Development Index (HDI) to identify regional patterns and causal factors in the data. The activity uses a web-based map.

Videos for Geography Enrichment







Helpful Websites for the Study of Geography

Canadian Encyclopedia is an encyclopedia funded by the Canadian government covering all branches of knowledge. Their scholarly collection includes interactive materials.

CIA World Factbook provides information on the people, history, government, economy, energy, geography, communications, transportation, military, and transnational issues for the world's entities.

Congress.gov is a US government website where you can find federal legislation, past and present, as well as information about the US legal system.

Drug Enforcement Administration (DEA) is a government agency website that provides current news, resources, topics of interest, information about drugs, careers in the DEA, and a tip hotline.

Library of Congress is the largest library in the world and provides manuscripts, files, information, pictures, and videos.

NASA Earth Observatory (NEO) is a US government agency website that allows users to search for and retrieve satellite images of Earth.

National Archives is a US government website that provides historical documents, photos, records, publications, and educator resources.

National Oceanic and Atmospheric Association (NOAA) is a US government agency website that provides weather-related information and ocean research.

National Map is a website by the United States Geological Survey and other federal, state, and local agencies that delivers topographic information for the United States.

NationMaster is a massive central data source and a handy way to graphically compare nations.

Real-Time World Air Quality Index is a website that measures most locations in the world for air pollution in real time.

StateMaster is a unique statistical database, which allows you to research and compare a multitude of different data on US states.

United Nations (UN) is an international organization founded in 1945 and made up of 193 member states. The UN maintains international peace and security, protects human rights, delivers humanitarian aid, promotes sustainable development, and upholds international law.

United States Census Bureau is a US government agency that provides a population clock, data, surveys, statistics, a library with information and infographics, news about the economy, and much more.

United States Geological Survey (USGS) is a US government agency website that provides scientific information about the natural hazards that threaten lives, the natural resources we rely on, the health of our ecosystems and environment, and the impacts of climate and land-use change.

Whitehouse.gov is a US government website that provides the latest presidential news, information about the budget, policy, defense, and many more topics.

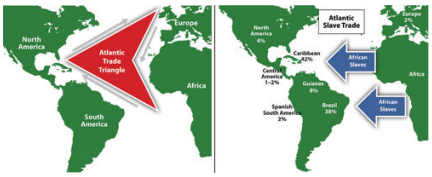
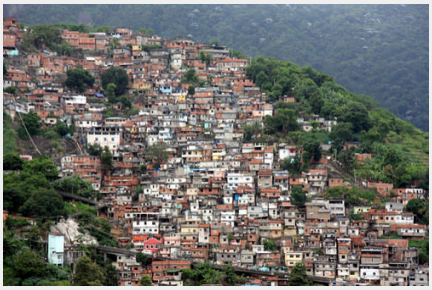
World Health Organization (WHO) is under the United Nations and provides leadership on matters critical to health; shapes the research agenda on health; and monitors the health situation and assessing health trends around the world. Their website provides information on the state of health around the world, outbreaks, current health news, and more.

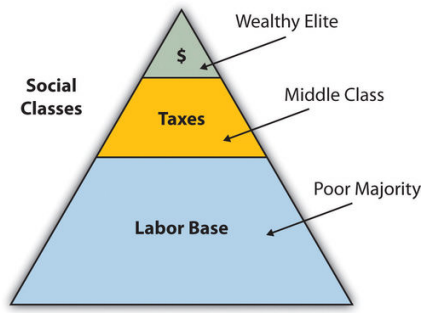
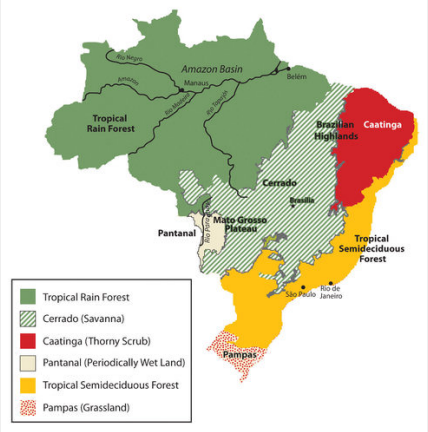
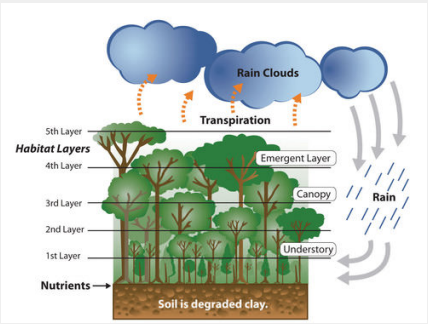
LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

World Trade Organization (WTO) is an intergovernmental organization that regulates international trade. The website provides

LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

information on the history of the multilateral trading system, featured videos, news and events, trade topics, and more.

Image	Reference	Attributions
	**[Figure 1]**	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/br.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 2]**	**Credit:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeograp...er/6-3-brazil/ **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/1b256b6c1802897f9ca27636fac8adc0.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 3]**	**Credit:** Wikimedia Commons – CC BY-SA 3.0. **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/2f006f66b78b4413f78aa3e38e5fff4c.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 4]**	**Credit:** Kirilos – Rio de Janeiro – CC BY 2.0. **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/af1bef401b39c310bab97f5dbe62f07a.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 5]**	**Credit:** Pedro Lopez – Favela, Rio de Janeiro – CC BY 2.0. **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/chapter/6-3-brazil/ **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

	**[Figure 6]**	**Credit:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeograp...er/6-3-brazil/ **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/e1bb026bd3e738b9a7b16ec0645702f5.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 7]**	**Credit:** Based on map courtesy of University of Texas Libraries. **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/a135f4dea0ed27100a1fa48397ac2dec.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 8]**	**Credit:** Matt Zimmerman – Slash and burn agriculture in the Amazon – CC BY 2.0. **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/02009c33349702dd17b28fe9778880cc.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 9]**	**Credit:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeograp...er/6-3-brazil/ **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/1b9827582651d80b06e80673a128ea7b.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

	**[Figure 10]**	**Credit:** Carla Salgueiro – Brasilia – CC BY 2.0. **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/9fcdcfde776b1faa23aca064f2d1bf6c.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 11]**	**Credit:** Jeff Belmonte – Vinicola Miolo | Miolo Vineyard – CC BY 2.0. **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/cbfe17bf346bc2a5ea60bffe3d92c214.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 12]**	**Credit:** Lu – Canon-proimage – CC BY-NC 2.0. **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/chapter/6-3-brazil/ **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

This page titled 4.7: Brazil (2 Days) is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by CK12 via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

4.8: South America- The Southern Cone (1 Day)

Chapter Challenges

- List the main physical features and regions of the Southern Cone.
- Describe the location of the urban centers and explain the pattern of population distribution in the three countries of the region.
- Describe the ethnic consistency of each country.
- Explain the pattern of immigration that created the region's heritage.
- Explain why Argentina has great potential for economic growth.
- Summarize briefly how Chile has emerged as a strong and stable country and discuss its human and natural resources.

Learning Objectives

TEKS Regional World Geography Unit 05 Latin America Chapter 4.8 South America: The Southern Cone

WG.3B Describe the physical processes that affect the environments of regions, including weather, tectonic forces, erosion, and soil-building processes.

WG.4B Explain how elevation, latitude, wind systems, ocean currents, position on a continent, and mountain barriers influence temperature, precipitation, and distribution of climate regions.

WG.6A Locate and describe human and physical features that influence the size and distribution of settlements.

WG.9A Identify physical and/or human factors such as climate, vegetation, language, trade networks, political units, river systems, and religion that constitute a region.

WG.11A Understand the connections between levels of development and economic activities (primary, secondary, tertiary, and quaternary).

WG.11B Identify the factors affecting the location of different types of economic activities, including subsistence and commercial agriculture, manufacturing, and service industries.

WG.12A Analyze how the creation, distribution, and management of key natural resources affects the location and patterns of movement of products, money, and people.

WG.12B Evaluate the geographic and economic impact of policies related to the development, use, and scarcity of natural resources such as regulations of water.

WG.13A Interpret maps to explain the division of land, including man-made and natural borders, into separate political units such as cities, states, or countries.

WG.16B Describe elements of culture, including language, religion, beliefs and customs, institutions, and technologies.

WG.17A Describe and compare patterns of culture such as language, religion, land use, education, and customs that make specific regions of the world distinctive.

WG.21A Analyze and evaluate the validity and utility of multiple sources of geographic information such as primary and secondary sources, aerial photographs, and maps.

WG.22A Design and draw appropriate graphics such as maps, diagrams, tables, and graphs to communicate geographic features, distributions, and relationships. features, distributions, and relationships.

WG.22C Use geographic terminology correctly.

WG.22D Use standard grammar, spelling, sentence structure, and punctuation.

TEKS and ELPS for Regional World Geography Unit 04--Latin America from TEKS Resource System

South America: The Southern Cone

Overview of the Region

The Southern Cone region of South America includes the countries of Argentina, Chile, and Uruguay. The name is an indication of the physical shape of the southern portion of the continent. The region is located south of the tropics. The Tropic of Capricorn runs just north of Uruguay and cuts across the northern regions of Argentina and Chile. The Southern Cone has more moderate temperatures than the tropics.

Type C climates dominate in Uruguay, the Pampas region of Argentina, and central Chile. The region has extremes in weather and climate. The Atacama Desert and Patagonia both have type B climates because of a lack of precipitation, which stems from the rain shadow effect of the Andes Mountains. Highland type H climates follow the Andes chain through the region and exhibit their typical pattern of warmer temperatures at lower elevations and colder temperatures at higher elevations.



The Three Main Regions of Chile (left); Argentina and Uruguay with the Regions of Argentina Outlined and Labeled (right).

The countries of the Southern Cone share similar economic and ethnic patterns. Agriculture has been a major focus of the region's early development pattern, but today a large percentage of the population is urbanized. The European heritage of most of the population ties this region to Europe as an early trading partner. The global economy has given cause for these countries to form trade relationships with many countries. The physical geography has provided many opportunities for human activities.

The mountains, plains, and coastal areas provide a diversity of natural resources that have been exploited for national wealth. All three countries have primate cities that hold a high percentage of the country's population. Primate cities are usually twice as large as the next largest city and usually are expressive of the national feeling and culture. In this case, all three primate cities are also the capital cities of each country. The Southern Cone is an urban region with higher incomes and higher standards of living than many other parts of South America.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org



Map of Uruguay

Uruguay is located along the South Atlantic coast bordering Argentina and Brazil. The only South American country smaller in physical area is Suriname. French Guiana is also smaller than Uruguay but remains a department of France. Uruguay has the location, natural resources, and global trade connections to provide ample opportunities and advantages for its people. The agricultural lands of the Pampas extend into Uruguay and provide for an extensive agricultural industry with livestock, small grains, vegetables, and dairy. This agricultural base has been the foundation of Uruguay's growing economy.

Uruguay has been able to integrate itself into the global trade arena and has entered into a postindustrial development status. Postindustrial activities have included computer software development and advancements in information technologies. Uruguay is a modern and well-developed country. About 88 percent of the population is of European descent, and more than 92 percent of the population is urban. The capital city of Montevideo, a cosmopolitan city with a population of about 3.5 million, is home to about 40 percent of the population. The coastal region is an attractive place for tourists and locals who enjoy the beautiful beaches along the shores of the Atlantic.



Notice the high-rise apartments and commercial buildings. Uruguay is highly urbanized and has been an attractive place for tourism.

Montevideo is also the location of the headquarters for Mercosur (the Southern Cone Common Market). Mercosur was created in 1991 to open trade of goods and services among South American countries and promote development within the realm. Current members of Mercosur include Uruguay, Paraguay, Brazil, and Argentina. Venezuela's application for full membership is pending. Additional associate members of Mercosur include Peru, Ecuador, Colombia, Chile, and Bolivia. Mercosur is on a parallel path to compete with NAFTA, CAFTA, the European Union, and other global trade associations.



Map of Argentina

South America's second-largest country is Argentina. In physical area, Argentina is ranked eighth in the world. The Andes Mountains span its entire western border with Chile. At the southern end of the continent is Tierra del Fuego. Argentina is a land of extremes. Mount Aconcagua is the highest mountain in the Western Hemisphere at 22,841 feet in elevation. Laguna del Carbon is the lowest point in the Western Hemisphere at −344 feet below sea level. Parts of the northern region have a tropical climate.

The southern region extends into tundra-like conditions with treeless plains. Argentina also claims the Falkland Islands, which are now controlled by Great Britain. In 1982, Argentina's ruling military junta attempted to retake control of the Falklands, but the British navy halted the action in what became known as the Falklands War.

Physical Regions

Argentina can be categorized into a number of regions that correlate roughly with the varied physical and cultural landscapes of the country. The main regions include Chaco, Northern, Mesopotamia, Cuyo, Pampas, and Patagonia. The Northern region of Argentina has one of the highest average elevations because of the Andes Mountain range. The Andes range widen as they proceed northward to the west of Chaco and are home to fertile river valleys. The northern ends of the ranges extend into Bolivia and enter the Altiplano of the Central Andes.

The Chaco region extends from northern Argentina into western Paraguay. Scrublands and subtropical forests dominate the landscape. There is a wet season as well as a dry season suitable for raising livestock and some farming. Western Chaco, which is closer to the Andes, is drier with less vegetation and is known for its high temperatures during the summer months. To the east, the Chaco region receives more rainfall and has better soils for agriculture.

The agrarian lifestyle dominates the cultural heritage of this region. In the 1920s and 1930s, the Chaco region attracted a large number of Mennonite immigrants from Canada and Russia who established successful farming operations mainly on the Paraguay side of the border and also extending into Argentina.

To the east of the northern region—on the other side of the Paraná River and reaching to the banks of the Uruguay River—is the region called Mesopotamia, whose name means "between rivers." This unique region has a variety of features, from flatlands for grazing livestock to subtropical rain forests. The most noteworthy feature is the expansive Iguazú Falls on the Iguazú River, located on the border of Brazil and Argentina. It is a series of 275 parallel waterfalls that are almost two miles across. It has the greatest average annual flow of any waterfall in the world. Most of the falls are more than 210 feet high, and the tallest is 269 feet. The spectacular Iguazú Falls is a major tourist attraction, drawing people from all over the world.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org



The headwaters of the Iguazú River are near Curitiba in Brazil. The river converges with the Paraná River about 14 miles downstream from the Iguazú Falls at the point where Brazil, Paraguay, and Argentina meet—called the Triple Frontier. The falls is approximately 1.7 miles along its edge, which is divided by rocky islands on both the Argentinean and Brazilian sides. The Iguazú Falls is a major tourist attraction for the region.

The Cuyo region is located along the Andes Mountains in the west-central part of the country. Mount Aconcagua is located here, along with other high mountain peaks. This arid region gets most of its moisture from melting snow off the mountains. This melting snow irrigates the rich agricultural lands that produce fruits and vegetables.

The Cuyo is a major wine-producing region. It accounts for up to three-quarters of the country's wine production. Picturesque vineyards and farms make the Cuyo a favorite tourist destination in Argentina. Mendoza is the country's fourth largest city. Low mountain ranges form the eastern border between the Cuyo and the Pampas.

The Pampas is a large agricultural region that extends beyond Argentina and includes a large portion of Uruguay and the southern tip of Brazil. With adequate precipitation and a mild type C climate, the Pampas is well-suited for both agriculture and human habitation. The rich agricultural lands of the Pampas include the largest city and the country's capital, Buenos Aires. Buenos Aires is home to approximately one-third of the nation's population. The Pampas provides some of the most abundant agricultural production on the planet. The western grasslands host large haciendas with cattle ranching and livestock production.

This area has elevated Argentina to its status as a major exporter of beef around the world. Agricultural production has been a major part of the nation's economy. One hundred years ago, the export of food products made Argentina one of the wealthiest countries in the world. In today's global economy, the profit margins in agricultural products are not as lucrative, and industrialized countries have turned to manufacturing for national wealth. Argentina continues to have a strong agricultural sector but has been increasing its industrial production in order to secure a strong economy.



The rain shadow effect in southern South America creates the Atacama Desert and an arid Patagonia.

Patagonia is a large expanse of the south that is semiarid because of the rain shadow effect. This area possesses enormous natural resources, including large amounts of oil and natural gas. Deposits of gold, silver, copper, and coal can be found here. Raising livestock has been the main livelihood in Patagonia, which is otherwise sparsely populated. Patagonia includes the southern region of Tierra del Fuego and the rugged Southern Andes.

This region has some of the largest ice sheets outside Antarctica and many large glaciers that provide fresh water that feeds the region's streams and rivers. Patagonia also has a number of scenic lakes. Abundant wildlife can be found along the Atlantic coast, including elephant seals, penguins, albatrosses, and a host of other species. This region demonstrates that Argentina is abundant with a variety of physical landscapes and natural resources that can help support its economy.

Population and Culture

Argentina, with a population of about 40 million, is a country of immigrants and a product of the colonial transfer of European culture to the Western Hemisphere. During the colonial era, millions of people immigrated to Argentina from Western European countries such as France, Germany, Switzerland, Portugal, Greece, the British Isles, and Scandinavia. Additional immigrants came from Eastern Europe and Russia.

Eighty-five percent of the population is of European descent. The largest ethnic groups are Spanish and Italian. The Mestizo population is about eight percent. A small number of people from the Middle East or East Asia have immigrated and make up about four percent of the population. Less than two percent of Argentines declare themselves to be Amerindians.

Old World European customs mix with New World Latin American traditions to form a cultural heritage unique to Argentina. This cultural heritage can be experienced in the metropolitan city of Buenos Aires, where all facets of society and culture can be found. With a population of about 13 million—one-third of Argentina's total population—Buenos Aires is a world-class city. Argentina is an urban country with more than 90 percent of the population living in cities.

The rural side of the culture has often been characterized as the traditional gaucho image of the self-reliant rancher who herds cattle and lives off the land. Beef is a mainstay of the cuisine in much of the country. The urban culture includes the traditional Argentine tango with music and camaraderie in upscale night clubs. These traditional images may be stereotypes, but the cultural scene in Argentina is heavily invested in the international trends of the modern world. The cultural landscape has become integrated with fashions and trends from across the globe.



This photo illustrates the enormous expanse of the most populous area of Buenos Aires, Argentina.

People and Politics

The people of Argentina have a high standard of living, and the country is up-and-coming on a world scale. The main problem has been the instability of the government during the 20th century. The Argentine constitution provides for a balance of powers between the judicial, legislative, and executive divisions, similar to that of the United States. For many decades in the 20th century, the state vacillated between a democratically elected government and military rule. The swings back and forth have been consistent and regular, which has wreaked havoc on the economy, resulting in everything from hyperinflation to brutal authoritarian rule.

An example of the national swings in Argentina occurred between 1946 and 1955 when General Juan Perón was elected president. His wife, Eva, became a public sensation. “Peronism” started out with populous support and a shift toward improving working conditions and increasing government spending. At the same time, censorship, isolationism, and repression of civil rights were elevated to a point of social unrest. Opposition members were imprisoned or killed.

Eva Perón died of cancer in 1952, and Juan Perón was eventually ousted from office and fled to Spain. He later returned from exile to gain prominence in politics once again but died in office in 1974. Other presidents came to power only to be deposed or ousted by military coups. The instability in the political arena created problems for the economic sector, which had to deal with inflated currency and an unattractive environment for foreign investments.

More recently, there has been some progress in stabilizing both the government and the economy, but political instability remains a factor. Argentina has abundant natural resources, adequate infrastructure, and an educated workforce. The country has all the necessary means to launch into the future with a strong economy—as long as it is able to establish a stable government and a sound economic agenda.



Map of Chile

Chile is a long, narrow country on the western edge of southern South America. Chile is 2,500 miles long and only 90 miles wide on average. This country borders the Pacific Ocean on one side and the Andes Mountains on the other. Chile has a variety of environmental zones, administrative districts, and climate patterns. Temperatures are cooler as one moves south toward Tierra del Fuego, which is split between Chile and Argentina. Rain has never fallen in select areas of northern Chile, which includes the Atacama Desert, one of the driest places on Earth and home to one of the world's greatest copper and nitrate reserves. The sodium nitrates found in the Atacama Desert are used in plant fertilizers, pottery enamels, and solid rocket fuel.

The Rain Shadow Effect

The climate is due to the rain shadow effect. In northern Chile and the Atacama region, prevailing winds reach northern Chile from the east and hit the Andes Mountain chain, which are some of the highest mountains on the continent. The height of the Andes causes any moisture from rain clouds to precipitate on the eastern slopes. The western side of the Andes Mountains at that latitude receives little or absolutely no precipitation, causing extreme desert conditions in the Atacama region of Chile.

Southern Chile receives a large amount of rainfall because the prevailing winds at that latitude come from the west. Here the winds, which have picked up moisture over the South Pacific Ocean, hit the western side of the Andes. The air then precipitates out its moisture as it rises up the mountainsides of the western slopes of the Andes. Less moisture reaches the eastern side of the mountains, creating a rain shadow with arid and dry conditions for the region called Patagonia in southern Argentina. The Andes are not as high in elevation in the south, which allows some precipitation to fall on the rain shadow side.



Mt. Fitz Roy is in the Andes on the border between Chile and Argentina.

Chile is divided into three regions:

1. **Northern Chile**, with the dry Atacama Desert
2. **Central Chile**, with a mild type C climate, adequate rainfall, and good farmland
3. **Southern Chile**, with lots of rainfall, rural, isolated islands, and mountains

Central Chile is the core region because it has a valuable port in Valparaiso and the country's capital city, Santiago, which is also Chile's most populous city. Central Chile is also home to more than 90 percent of the country's population.

Socioeconomic Conditions

The people of Chile are 95 percent European and Mestizo. They have worked to establish a good education system and an increasing standard of living. The country had a relatively stable government until the 1970s when a short revolution brought a military dictatorship to power until 1989. The 1990s brought about a surge in economic development that has continued into the 21st century. The political situation has stabilized, and the first female president, Michelle Bachelet, was elected in 2006.

The political system is faced with the unequal distribution of wealth that is common in Latin America. Half of the country's wealth is concentrated in the hands of about 10 percent of the population. About 50 percent of the population is on the lower end of the socioeconomic scale. Dire poverty exists in Chile, but it is not as prevalent here as it is in the Central Andes, Paraguay, or Northeast Brazil. Chile has a thriving middle class that has made good use of the opportunities and education that Chile has offered them.

Chile is abundant with natural resources that include the minerals of the Atacama Desert, extensive fishing along the coast, timber products from the south, and agricultural products from central Chile. All these factors have brought about an emerging development boom and have attracted international trading partners. The stable government and the growing economy have successfully kept inflation low, kept employment high, reduced poverty, and brought in foreign investment. In the globalized economy, Chile has managed to work with various trading partners to increase its advantages and opportunities in the international marketplace.

Chile and NAFTA

Chile has been increasing its trading activities with its counterparts in the Pacific Rim in Europe and North America. Chile has an abundance of fish in its coastal waters and copper and minerals in the Atacama Desert and has been exporting timber products from its southern region. The United States is one of Chile's main trading partners. Chile's main commodity exports to the United States include paper, minerals, metals, and copper. Major agricultural products that are shipped to the United States include processed fruits, tomatoes, grapes, vegetables, and wines.

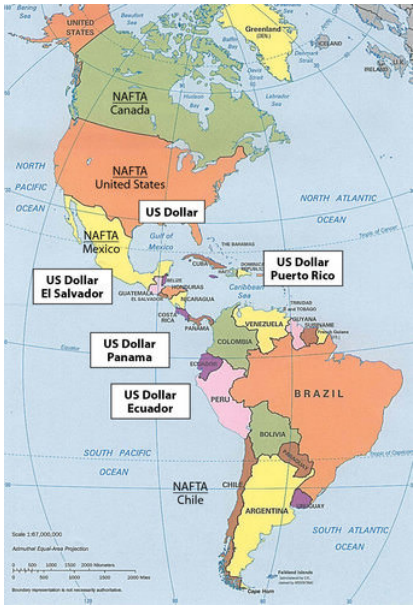
There are several good reasons why the United States trades with Chile even though it is the farthest country from the United States in South America. International trade and the seasonal patterns of agriculture have much to do with the benefits. The seasonal variations between the northern and southern hemisphere create a balance between the two. When it is winter in the north, it is

summer in the south. Each has an opposing growing season for fruits and vegetables that can complement the other. Chile is an excellent counter to the opposite growing season in the Northern Hemisphere.

In 1994 during a summit meeting, the president of Mexico, Canada's prime minister, and the US president agreed to allow Chile to join NAFTA. Chile's president declared his support for his country to join NAFTA. The agreement could not be completed because of negotiation approval by the US Congress. At this time Chile entered into independent free trade agreements with both Canada and Mexico.

A free trade agreement was later signed between the US and Chile in 2003. Thus, Chile has free trade agreements with all three North American countries and can benefit from the mutual agreements that parallel NAFTA. In this situation, Chile is an associate trading partner and enjoys the privileges of NAFTA membership without technically being listed as a member. The United States wanted to counter Chile's trade with Japan and Europe. Increased trade with North America diminished Chile's trade with the European Union or the East Asian community.

As copper and natural resource prices fluctuate, creating unstable economic conditions, Chile has been expanding into the manufacturing sector. To retain the highest value-added profits and expand its economy, Chile will have to enlarge its manufacturing sector. Today Chile produces modest quantities of basic chemicals and electronic goods. Chile's expansion of business and commerce has been endorsed as a model of successful economic development to be emulated by other Latin American countries.



Chile is not a full member of NAFTA but has separate free-trade agreements with all three NAFTA countries and is considered an unofficial member.

Chile has strong ties to the economies of North America. In spite of close ties with the north, Chile has retained its unique status in the Southern Cone. Chile still has its own currency even though countries with smaller economies, such as Ecuador and El Salvador, have adopted the US dollar as their medium of exchange. As of 2010, the NAFTA members of Canada, the United States, and Mexico, along with their trading partner of Chile, all used different currencies.

The US dollar is the most widely used currency in the world and is also used in other Latin American countries. There has been talk of creating a similar currency within NAFTA called the Amero that would replicate the European Union's solution, which was to create a single currency, the euro. World currencies fluctuate in value, and a stable currency would increase the capacity for creating larger trading blocs that could do business on a more even economic playing field. Chile has individual free-trade agreements with all three members of NAFTA, so any change in currency with the NAFTA countries would also affect Chile.

Key Takeaways

- The Southern Cone possesses large, diverse physical landscapes.
- Variations in terrain include tall Andean mountain peaks, desert conditions, prairie grasslands, and semitropical regions to the north.
- The Southern Cone is an urban realm with high percentages of the population living in large cities.
- Primate cities dominate each country.
- Large sections of each country's interior make up the extensive rural periphery with activities based on natural resources.
- The Southern Cone is a European commercial area, and more than 85 percent of the population is of European ancestry.
- There are few Amerindian minorities or immigrants from Africa or Asia in the Southern Cone.
- Argentina is a large country in physical area and has a number of important regions that provide opportunities for economic prosperity. The country, however, has lacked a stable government and a consistent business climate to take advantage of Argentina's favorable geographic situation.
- Chile has emerged on the global stage as a model for economic growth and stability.
- Chile's people have a higher standard of living, and the country has abundant natural resources.
- Chile has been a trading partner with NAFTA countries.

Vocabulary Terms

Chapter 4.8 South America: The Southern Cone

deforestation	The cutting down or destroying of large areas of forest
favela	Slum area
slash and burn agriculture	a farming technique in which trees are cut down and burned to clear and fertilize the land

Applying Knowledge

Interactive Notebook Activity

1. List the main physical features and regions of the Southern Cone.
2. Describe the location of the urban centers and explain the pattern of population distribution in the three countries of the region.
3. Describe the ethnic consistency of each country.
4. Explain the pattern of immigration that created the region's heritage.
5. Explain why Argentina has great potential for economic growth.
6. Summarize how Chile has emerged as a strong and stable country and discuss its human and natural resources

Discussion and Study Questions

1. What are the main physical regions of Argentina and Chile?
2. What role does agriculture play in the human activities of Uruguay?
3. How did Uruguay manage to build up its high standard of living?
4. How does the core-periphery spatial relationship apply to Uruguay, Argentina, and Chile?
5. Why is there a desert in Chile that is partially located in the tropics? Why is this desert so important?
6. How does the rain shadow effect apply to both Argentina and Chile?
7. What are the main attributes and contributions of the Pampas and Patagonia?
8. What are the three regions of Chile and how do they complement each other?
9. How is Chile associated with NAFTA? Why does Chile have free-trade agreements with every NAFTA member?
10. How does Chile complement the agricultural production of the United States and Canada?

Real-World Geography Exercise

Using Google Maps, locate the places below. Choose 10 of the areas and find a picture and an important fact for each one. Cite your sources. Be prepared to share your answers.

- Atacama Desert
- Cape Horn
- Chaco
- Cuyo
- Falkland Islands
- Iguazú Falls
- Iguazú River
- Mendoza
- Mesopotamia
- Pampas
- Paraná River
- Patagonia
- Tierra del Fuego
- Uruguay River
- Valparaiso

Mapping Exercise

ESRI GEO Inquiries

Agricultural Patterns: Students will explore global climatic datasets to analyze the factors that constrain and enable agricultural options. The activity uses a web-based map.

Mapping Our World ESRI-ARGIS

Water World Module 7 Lesson 1: Students will explore and compare different maps of Antarctica and investigate specific Antarctic sites to learn more about the continent. Students will also use world maps to investigate changes in ocean levels associated with the melting of the Antarctic ice sheets.

Student Answer Doc-download

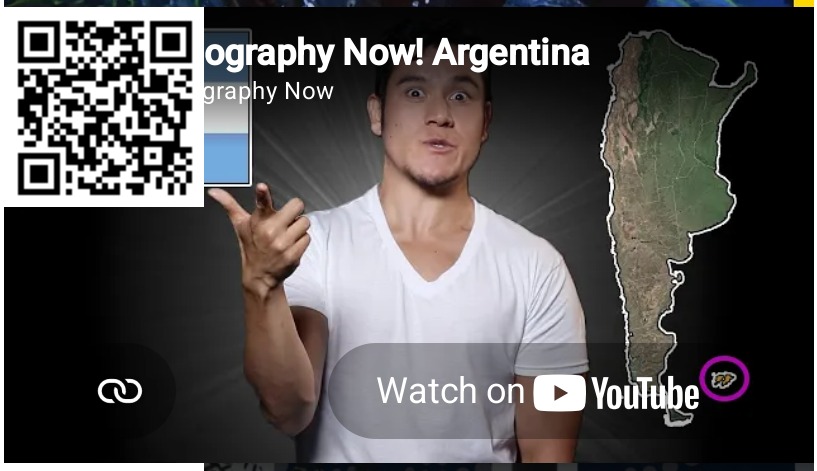
Student Assessment Doc-download

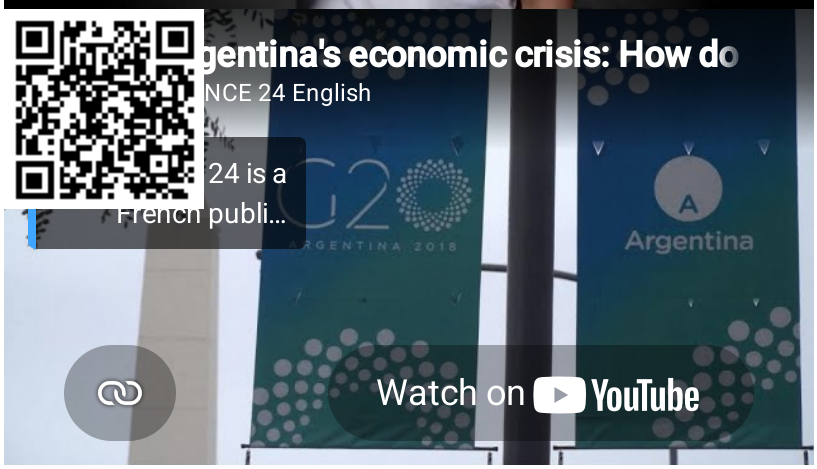
Teacher Materials-download

Videos for Geography Enrichment

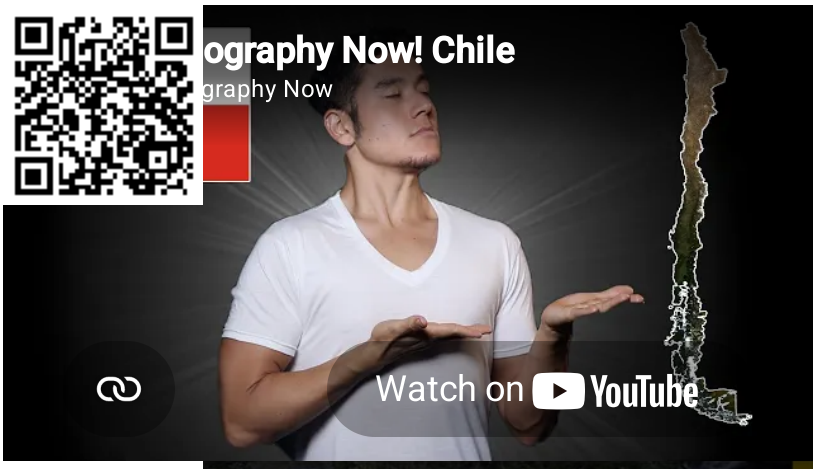








https://k12.libretexts.org/@go/page/7279





Helpful Websites for the Study of Geography

Canadian Encyclopedia is an encyclopedia funded by the Canadian government covering all branches of knowledge. Their scholarly collection includes interactive materials.

CIA World Factbook provides information on the people, history, government, economy, energy, geography, communications, transportation, military, and transnational issues for the world's entities.

Congress.gov is a US government website where you can find federal legislation, past and present, as well as information about the US legal system.

Drug Enforcement Administration (DEA) is a government agency website that provides current news, resources, topics of interest, information about drugs, careers in the DEA, and a tip hotline.

Library of Congress is the largest library in the world and provides manuscripts, files, information, pictures, and videos.

NASA Earth Observatory (NEO) is a US government agency website that allows users to search for and retrieve satellite images of Earth.

National Archives is a US government website that provides historical documents, photos, records, publications, and educator resources.

National Oceanic and Atmospheric Association (NOAA) is a US government agency website that provides weather-related information and ocean research.

National Map is a website by the United States Geological Survey and other federal, state, and local agencies that delivers topographic information for the United States.

NationMaster is a massive central data source and a handy way to graphically compare nations.

Real-Time World Air Quality Index is a website that measures most locations in the world for air pollution in real time.

StateMaster is a unique statistical database which allows you to research and compare a multitude of different data on US states.

United Nations (UN) is an international organization founded in 1945 and made up of 193 member states. The UN maintains international peace and security, protects human rights, delivers humanitarian aid, promotes sustainable development, and upholds international law.

United States Census Bureau is a US government agency that provides a population clock, data, surveys, statistics, a library with information and infographics, news about the economy, and much more.

United States Geological Survey (USGS) is a US government agency website that provides scientific information about the natural hazards that threaten lives, the natural resources we rely on, the health of our ecosystems and environment, and the impacts of climate and land-use change.

Whitehouse.gov is a US government website that provides the latest presidential news, information about the budget, policy, defense, and many more topics.

World Health Organization (WHO) is under the United Nations and provides leadership on matters critical to health, shapes the research agenda on health, and monitors the health situation and assessing health trends around the world. Their website provides information on the state of health around the world, outbreaks, current health news, and more.

LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

World Trade Organization (WTO) is an intergovernmental organization that regulates international trade. The website provides

https://k12.libretexts.org/@go/page/7279

information on the history of the multilateral trading system, featured videos, news and events, trade topics, and more.

Image	Reference	Attributions
	**[Figure 1]**	**Credit:** CIA World Factbook – public domain. **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/a5d89947c59877f46cf91b35c240c05c.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 2]**	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/uy.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 3]**	**Credit:** Ernesto Jorysz – Punta del Este (Uruguay) – CC BY 2.0. **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/d70f692b7a15673ac4c00e809ef63f7b.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

	**[Figure 4]**	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/ar.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 5]**	**Credit:** Jeffrey Bary – Iguazu Falls – CC BY 2.0. **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/f962a32f69cbf1170e6540e8c841450a.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 6]**	**Credit:** University of Texas Libraries. **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/d17720d11b57c395bfb3d84b74e1467b.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 7]**	**Credit:** Blatant World – Palermo, the most populous district in Beunos Aires – CC BY 2.0. **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/chapter/6-4-the-southern-cone/ **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

	**[Figure 8]**	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/ci.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 9]**	**Credit:** Josh and Erica Silverstein – Patagonia – CC BY 2.0. **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/16ea1f64540f9cae2182992488fbd44e.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 10]**	**Credit:** University of Texas Libraries. **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/178e1911bdbd82f1d01f1ee2c4a497d4.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

This page titled 4.8: South America- The Southern Cone (1 Day) is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by CK12 via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

5: Europe (10 days)

5.1: Europe- Physical Location and Climate (2 Days)

5.2: European Historical Development Patterns (2 Days)

5.3: European Union and Supranationalism (2 Days)

5.4: Western Europe (2 Days)

5.5: Eastern Europe (2 Days)

This page titled 5: Europe (10 days) is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by CK12 via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

5.1: Europe- Physical Location and Climate (2 Days)

Chapter Challenges

1. Describe the various climate types and physical landforms of the European continent.
2. Explain how Europe's physical geography has supported its development.
3. List Europe's various natural resources.
4. Summarize briefly the environmental concerns Europe faces.

Learning Objectives

TEKS Regional World Geography Unit 05 Europe Chapter 5.1 Physical Location and Climate

WG.3B Describe the physical processes that affect the environments of regions, including weather, tectonic forces, erosion, and soil-building processes.

WG.4B Describe different landforms and the physical processes that cause their development.

WG.4C Explain the influence of climate on the distribution of biomes in different regions.

WG.13A Interpret maps to explain the division of land, including man-made and natural borders, into separate political units such as cities, states or countries.

WG.16A Describe distinctive cultural patterns and landscapes associated with different places in Texas, the United States, and other regions of the world and how these patterns influenced the processes of innovation and diffusion.

WG.21C Create and interpret different types of maps to answer geographic questions, infer relationships, and analyze change.

WG.22A Design and draw appropriate graphics such as maps, diagrams, tables, and graphs to communicate geographic features, distributions, and relationships, features, distributions, and relationships.

WG.22C Use geographic terminology correctly.

WG.22D Use standard grammar, spelling, sentence structure, and punctuation.

TEKS and ELPS for Regional World Geography Unit 05--Europe from TEKS Resource System

LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

Europe: Physical Location and Climate



Map of Europe

Location and Climate

Europe is a northern continent. All of the British Isles, for example, fall above the 50th parallel. If we compare Europe's position on a globe with that of the contiguous United States, we see that much of Europe lies north of the United States. Paris, France is at about the same latitude as Fargo, North Dakota. Athens, Greece is at about the same latitude as St. Louis, Missouri. Europe's northern position affects its growing seasons. Europe is also surrounded by bodies of water: the Atlantic Ocean borders Europe on the west, the Arctic Ocean borders Europe to the north, and many seas surround the various peninsulas and coastal regions.

The oceans have a significant influence on the world's climates. They collect and store vast amounts of solar energy, particularly around the equator, and transport that heat with their currents. Ocean currents can move water for thousands of miles from one temperature zone to another. Because oceans can absorb so much heat, maritime climates are often milder than continental ones. With smaller temperature variations from day to night as well as from winter to summer.

This influences not only temperature but also precipitation patterns over wide regions of Europe and the rest of the world. Water moderates coastal environments in a number of ways. Water heats and cools more slowly than land. This heat inertia allows coastal communities to have climates that tend to be more moderate for places so far north. Interior Europe does not benefit from coastal bodies of water and can have winters as cold as those found within the upper Midwestern United States.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org



This map illustrates the dominant climate types in Europe.

The Gulf Stream is perhaps the most important current for Western Europe's climate. It is responsible for producing a temperate climate for a northern latitude location. Most of Western Europe has a moderate type C climate. The Gulf Stream originates in the Gulf of Mexico, where the waters are warmed. This powerful current follows the Eastern Seaboard of the United States before crossing the Atlantic Ocean for Europe. The Gulf Stream's most dramatic effect can be found in the western coastal islands of Scotland. It has a mild enough climate to support some forms of tropical flora, even though it is at a degree of latitude as far north as Hudson Bay, Canada.

The coast of Norway provides another example. While most of Norway's coastal area lies within the Arctic region, it remains free of ice and snow throughout the winter. People living farther inland and closer to Eastern Europe and Russia encounter the colder type D climates. Colder air sweeps down from the Arctic north or from eastern Siberia and provides colder winters in this eastern region. The Mediterranean Sea moderates the temperature to the south, providing a type C climate around its shores. Type C climates merge with type E climates at or near the Arctic Circle in Norway and in Iceland.

Four Main European Landforms

Europe has four main landforms, many islands and peninsulas, and various climate types. The four main landforms include the Alpine region, Central Uplands, Northern Lowlands, and Western Highlands. Each represents a different physical part of Europe. The wide-ranging physical environment has provided Europe with an abundance of biodiversity. Biodiversity refers to the diversity of the number of species in an ecosystem and the number of members in each species.

The physical environment also provides natural resources and raw materials for human activities. Europe's moderate climates and favorable relative location are supported by its access to many rivers and seas. These advantageous developmental factors supported the development of the Industrial Revolution in Europe, which gave rise to highly technical and urban societies.

Europe has emerged as one of the core economic centers of the global economy. Associated with the urbanization of Europe are high human population densities that have placed a strain on the natural environment. As a result, there has been significant deforestation and the loss of natural habitat, which has decreased the realm's level of biodiversity.

Rivers are abundant in Europe and have provided adequate transportation for travel and trade throughout its history. Most of Europe is accessible by water transport either via the many rivers or along the extensive coastlines of the peninsulas and islands. The Danube and the Rhine are two main rivers that divide Europe. Both have their origins in the region of southern Germany on or near the border with Switzerland. The Rhine River flows north and empties into the North Sea in Rotterdam, Holland, one of the world's busiest ports. The Danube flows east through various major European cities, such as Vienna, Budapest, and Belgrade before emptying into the Black Sea.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org



This map illustrates the four main landforms of Europe: Western Highlands, Northern Lowlands, Central Uplands, and the Alpine Region.

Alpine Region

The High Alps, which range from eastern France to Slovenia, are central to the Alpine region. Included in the Alpine Range are the Pyrenees, located on the border between France and Spain; the Apennines, running the length of Italy; the Carpathians, looping around Romania from Slovakia; and finally, the shorter Dinaric Alps in former Yugoslavia. Mountains usually provide minerals and ores that were placed there when the earth's internal processes created the mountains. Mountains also isolate people by acting as a dividing range that can separate people into cultural groups.



The Alpine Region: Eiger, Mönch, and Jungfrau from Männlichen—Swiss Alps.

The Alpine region encircles the Mediterranean coastlines, which have more temperate type C climates with hot, dry summers and cool, wet winters. This climate type allows for the cultivation of food products such as olives, citrus fruit, figs, apricots, and grapes. Evergreen scrub oaks and other drought-resistant shrubs are common in the Mediterranean region.

The Central Uplands

The region bordering the main Alps to the north, which includes a large portion of southern Germany extending eastward, is known as the Central Uplands. These foothills to the Alps are excellent sources of raw materials such as forest products and coal, which are valuable resources for industrial activities. The Central Uplands are also good locations for dairy farming and cattle raising. This middle portion of the continent has a mixed deciduous-coniferous forest, and the vegetation includes oak, elm, and maple trees

intermingled with pine and fir trees. There are four distinct seasons in this region with moderate amounts of precipitation year round.



Central Uplands in North Rhine-Westphalia, Germany.

Northern Lowlands



The Western Highlands meet the lowlands in central Scotland.

Similar to the breadbasket of the Midwestern United States, Europe's Northern Lowlands possess excellent farmland. Major agricultural operations here provide for a large European population. The land is flat to rolling with relatively good soils. The Northern Lowlands is a great plain that extends across northern Europe from southern France, north through Germany, and then all the way to the Ural Mountains of Russia.

This area is typified by prairies and areas of tall grasses and is mostly used as farmland. The lowlands area also contains bogs, heaths, and lakes. The eastern part of this great plain around Ukraine is characterized by a steppe climate. It is a flat and relatively dry region with short grasses and is generally an agricultural region. This eastern area has great swings in temperature, both from day to night and from summer to winter. Winter temperatures in the eastern steppe can drop to below −40 °F, with summer temperatures reaching as high as 105 °F. This is similar to the steppes of eastern Montana or western North Dakota in the United States.

Western Highlands

On the western edges of the European continent are short rugged mountains called highlands that extend throughout Norway, parts of Britain, and portions of the Iberian Peninsula of Portugal and Spain. These Western Highlands have sparse populations and are less attractive to large farming operations. Agriculture is usually limited to grazing livestock or farming in the valleys and meadows.

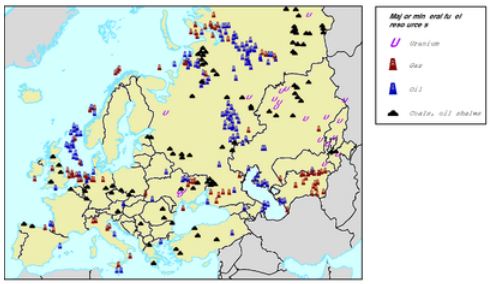
The Scottish Highlands are noted for their wool products and Highland cattle. In England, the central chain of highlands proved valuable during the Industrial Revolution because they enabled hydropower and later, coal mining. Coal mining was prominent in

the highland regions of Wales. In the far northern regions of Scandinavia, tundra environments prevail. In this coldest and driest highland climate, permafrost dominates the landscape, and the land becomes soggy for brief periods during the few weeks of summer. The flora consists primarily of lichens, mosses, low shrubs, and wildflowers.



Isle of Skye in the Scottish Highlands.

Natural Resources in Europe



This graphic illustrates the natural resources than can be found in Europe.

The ready access to vast areas of the Atlantic Ocean and a number of major seas, lakes, and rivers has made fish an important natural resource in Europe. The seas around Europe provide about ten percent of the world's fish catches. Mirroring the situation around the world, European fishing activity increased as the population increased. Europeans are becoming increasingly aware of the effects of overfishing. Stocks of Atlantic cod and Atlantic mackerel are considered to be at risk because of the threats of overfishing and changes in the environment that are affecting natural mortality and slowing spawning.

Stocks of eastern North Atlantic Bluefin tuna are also attracting attention for the same reason. Other species of fish in the North Atlantic and the Baltic Sea are considered over fished. Changes to the fishery are a major concern for ecological reasons and also because fish comprise such a significant portion of the European economy. Different regions of Europe have abundant fresh water supplies, good soils, and various minerals.

The mineral deposits in Europe is iron ore, which can be found in Sweden, France, and Ukraine. Other minerals exist in smaller quantities, including copper, lead, bauxite, manganese, nickel, gold, silver, potash, clay, gypsum, dolomite, and salt. Extraction activities have supported the continent's industrialization.

The countries of Europe, with the formation of the European Union (EU), began to work toward shared research and policies with respect to the fishery. The Common Fisheries Policy was drafted and includes strict and extensive rules and guidelines for fishing, particularly of cod. Because the rules are so strict and controversial, Norway and Iceland have opted out of the EU rather than agree to abide by these rules. The effect of these rules is incompletely known, but the cod stocks in the North Sea do not seem to be rebounding as expected.

Forest covers more than 40 percent of the continent's land area, with the majority on the Russian side. Forests exist primarily in the less populous Nordic and Baltic countries and in Central Europe. About one-half of the forest land in Europe is privately owned. Interestingly, there are several different forms of private ownership, including large family holdings, holdings by forest industries, and small to very small holdings by thousands of individuals.

Most of the forested land is managed, and about 85 percent of the forests produce exploitable resources. The percentage of forested land in Europe is rebounding because of an extensive tree-planting initiative since 2000. However, pollution has caused great harm to the forests of Poland, the Czech Republic, and eastern Germany, and acid rain and air pollution have harmed forests in southern Germany.

Soil resources are of critical importance. Soil is necessary for growing food, supporting livestock, supporting other natural resources such as the forests, and supplying groundwater. Soil resources are only just beginning to receive attention in Europe. Problems to be addressed include loss of topsoil from development and building activities, outdated agricultural practices, mining, contamination from industries and other sources, and acidification as a result of acid rain.

Coal, now substantially depleted, is abundant in several areas of Great Britain, including some offshore areas, as well as in the industrial centers of Germany and in Ukraine. Other coal deposits are found in Belgium, France, Spain, the Czech Republic, Poland, Slovakia, and Russia. The burning of coal has produced high levels of air pollution. Acid rain has been a major concern in the northern countries, where wind currents carry pollutants north into Scandinavia from the industrial regions of Central Europe.

In Scandinavia, acid rain has diminished fish populations in many of the lakes. Forest health is also being challenged, which is diminishing the economic conditions of regions that depend on forests for their economic survival.

Petroleum and natural gas deposits exist underneath the North Sea and were first tapped in the 1970s. Five European countries have rights to these resources, including Norway, the United Kingdom, Denmark, the Netherlands, and Germany, with Norway holding the bulk of the rights. The governments of these five nations agree that, although tapped only decades ago, half the North Sea oil reserves have been consumed.

Before the extraction of petroleum products from the North Sea, Russia and the former Soviet Union's other republics supplied petroleum to Europe. These areas still have a number of active extraction operations. Hydroelectric power has been important in Europe as well. With both coal and oil resources largely depleted and the desire to avoid the environmental damage caused by dams, the European Energy Commission is devoting substantial energy and resources to encouraging the use of renewable resources such as wind and solar energy.

In March 2007, European leaders agreed that a binding target of 20 percent of all energy must be from alternative sources by 2020. Also, 10 percent of the transportation fuels used by EU members must be sustainable biofuels.

Key Takeaways

- The Gulf Stream provides a moderate type C climate for much of Western Europe.
- Eastern Europe can experience colder type D climates.
- Europe has four main physical landforms that provide a diversity of natural resources.
- The North European Lowland holds the majority of its agricultural potential.
- An increase in population has also increased the demand on the environment. Various environmental concerns are becoming more evident.
- Acid rain from industrialization has caused extensive damage to forests and fish populations in northern Europe. Atlantic fisheries are also experiencing a decline in production.

Vocabulary Terms

Arctic climates	Short, cool summer, very cold snowy winter--East Norway, North Sweden and all of Finland
Highland climates	The Climate based on elevation--The Alpine Regions
humid continental	Hot, wet summer, Cold snowy winter cool, wet summer, cold very snowy winter -Poland eastward and north into south Sweden and Finland
marine west coast climate	Warm summer, cool and wet winter--Germany, UK, and some of Iceland and Norway
Mediterranean Climate	Hot and dry summer, mild and rainy winter--Parts of Italy, Spain, and Greece
steppe climate	Semi- desert with occasional rain--Parts of Spain
subtropical climate	Hot and Wet Summer, mild and damp winter--Northern Italy and parts of Bosnia Herzegovina, Croatia and Slovenia

Applying Knowledge

Interactive Notebook Activities

1. Describe the various climate types and physical landforms of the European continent.
2. Explain how Europe's physical geography has supported its development.
3. List Europe's various natural resources.
4. Summarize briefly the environmental concerns Europe faces.

Discussion and Study Questions

1. Identify and locate the four main physical landforms of Europe. What are the main features of each?
2. How do these landforms and natural resources provide wealth, opportunities, and advantages to the European community?
3. Why is there a higher concentration of acid rain in northern Europe? How is acid rain affecting the environment?
4. What two rivers act to naturally divide Europe? Which rivers flow through Paris and London?
5. Track the flow of each of the two main rivers and identify the major cities that each flows through.
6. Where are the major mountain ranges of the Alpine region?
7. How does the Alpine region contribute to the economies of the countries of Europe?
8. Why do the countries of Western Europe have more moderate type C climates even though they are in the northern latitudes?
9. How does agricultural production vary with physical landforms or climate changes?
10. How are Europeans addressing the decline in the North Atlantic fishing industry?

Real-World Geography Exercises

1. Using Google Maps, complete the following activities:
    a. Locate each place on the bulleted list below.
    b. Find the nearest city with an international airport in proximity to each location on the bulleted list below.
    c. Calculate the distance and travel time by plane to each city from the San Diego International Airport in San Diego, California.
2. Using NASA Latitude and Longitude Finder, determine the latitude and longitude for each location on the bulleted list below.
3. Be prepared to share and discuss your answers.

- Alpine region
- Alps
- Apennines

- Black Forest
- Black Sea
- Carpathians
- Central Uplands
- Danube River
- Dinaric Alps
- Iberian Peninsula
- Mediterranean Sea
- North Sea
- Northern Lowlands
- Pyrenees
- Rhine River
- Scottish Highlands
- Strait of Gibraltar
- Ural Mountains
- Western Highlands

Mapping Exercise

Mapping Our World Module 5 Lesson 1

Crossing the Line: In this activity, students will use GIS to investigate different types of international boundaries, explore the implications of various boundary configurations, and observe boundary changes that occurred in recent years.

Student Answer Doc-download

Student Assessment Doc-download

Teacher Materials-download

Videos for Geography Enrichment







Helpful Websites for the Study of Geography

Canadian Encyclopedia is an encyclopedia funded by the Canadian government covering all branches of knowledge. Their scholarly collection includes interactive materials.

CIA World Factbook provides information on the people, history, government, economy, energy, geography, communications, transportation, military, and transnational issues for the world's entities.

Congress.gov is a US government website where you can find federal legislation, past and present, as well as information about the US legal system.

Drug Enforcement Administration (DEA) is a government agency website that provides current news, resources, topics of interest, information about drugs, careers in the DEA, and a tip hotline.

Library of Congress is the largest library in the world and provides manuscripts, files, information, pictures, and videos.

NASA Earth Observatory (NEO) is a US government agency website that allows users to search for and retrieve satellite images of Earth.

National Archives is a US government website that provides historical documents, photos, records, publications, and educator resources.

National Oceanic and Atmospheric Association (NOAA) is a US government agency website that provides weather-related information and ocean research.

National Map is a website by the United States Geological Survey and other federal, state, and local agencies that delivers topographic information for the United States.

NationMaster is a massive central data source and a handy way to graphically compare nations.

Real-Time World Air Quality Index is a website that measures most locations in the world for air pollution in real time.

StateMaster is a unique statistical database, which allows you to research and compare a multitude of different data on US states.

United Nations (UN) is an international organization founded in 1945 and made up of 193 member states. The UN maintains international peace and security, protects human rights, delivers humanitarian aid, promotes sustainable development, and upholds international law.

United States Census Bureau is a US government agency that provides a population clock, data, surveys, statistics, a library with information and infographics, news about the economy, and much more.

United States Geological Survey (USGS) is a US government agency website that provides scientific information about the natural hazards that threaten lives, the natural resources we rely on, the health of our ecosystems and environment, and the impacts of climate and land-use change.

Whitehouse.gov is a US government website that provides the latest presidential news, information about the budget, policy, defense, and many more topics.

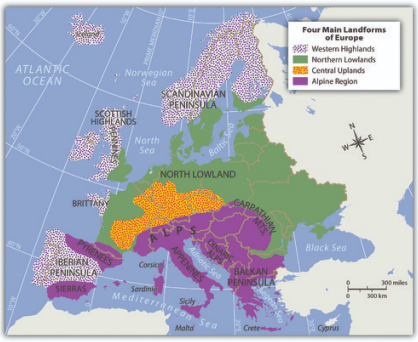
World Health Organization (WHO) is under the United Nations and provides leadership on matters critical to health, shapes the research agenda on health, and monitors the health situation and assessing health trends around the world. Their website provides information on the state of health around the world, outbreaks, current health news, and more.

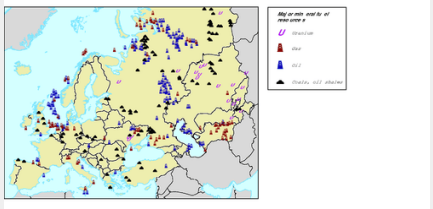
LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

World Trade Organization (WTO) is an intergovernmental organization that regulates international trade. The website provides

LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

information on the history of the multilateral trading system, featured videos, news and events, trade topics, and more.

Image	Reference	Attributions
	**[Figure 1]**	**Credit:** University of Texas Libraries **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/9c36bf9822617623a82286829db90cb9.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 2]**	**Credit:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeograp...ing-the-realm/ **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/40a47baba71586a9e196addb54a2f422.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 3]**	**Credit:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeograp...ing-the-realm/ **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/55df9d1cceca9446b1f846a5a2ed00c8.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

	**[Figure 4]**	**Credit:** University of Texas Libraries **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/4418b6f29abe5dab3a692441faa04e66.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 5]**	**Credit:** By Bernd Olbertz [GFDL (http://www.gnu.org/copyleft/fdl.html), CC-BY-SA-3.0 (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0/) or CC BY 2.5 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/2.5)], from Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Siegtal_Eitorf_Merten.JPG **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 6]**	**Credit:** Photo by R. Berglee – CC BY-NC-SA. **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/9297d9ce4498e37fc8c64f4e1a11226d.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 8]**	**Credit:** european environment agency **Source:** POSTCARD/image/user%3AZXBpc2R3Z0BlcGlzZC5vcmc./575846-1423097239-09-35-1-Natural-resources-Europe.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

This page titled 5.1: Europe- Physical Location and Climate (2 Days) is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by CK12 via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

5.2: European Historical Development Patterns (2 Days)

Learning Objectives

1. Summarize briefly how the Roman Empire and the Viking era contributed to European development.
2. Describe how European colonialism changed or influenced other countries.
3. Explain the major developments that prompted the Industrial Revolution.
4. Describe the impact of the rural-to-urban shift and its impact on urbanization specifically.
5. Define the concept of a nation-state and explain how this applies to Europe.
6. Explain how cultural forces can positively or negatively influence political units.
7. List the three main language groups and the three main religious denominations of Europe.

Learning Objectives

TEKS Regional World Geography Unit 05: Chapter 5.2 European Historical Development Patterns

WG.1A Analyze the effects of physical and human geographic patterns and processes on events in the past and describe their effects on present conditions, including significant physical features and environmental conditions that influenced migration patterns in the past and shaped the distribution of culture groups today.

WG.2B Assess how people's changing perceptions of geographic features have led to changes in human societies.

WG.5A Analyze how the character of a place is related to its political, economic, social, and cultural characteristics.

WG.6A Locate and describe human and physical features that influence the size and distribution of settlements.

WG.16C Compare life in a variety of cities and nations in the world to evaluate the relationships involved in political, economic, social, and environmental changes.

WG.16D Compare life in a variety of urban and rural areas in the world to evaluate political, economic, social, and environmental changes.

WG.17A Describe and compare patterns of culture such as language, religion, land use, systems of education, and customs that make Europe distinctive.

WG.21A Analyze and evaluate the validity and utility of multiple sources of geographic information such as primary and secondary sources, aerial photographs and maps.

WG.21B Locate places of contemporary geopolitical significance on a map.,

WG.22A Design and draw appropriate graphics, such as maps, diagrams, tables, and graphs to communicate geographic features, distributions, distributions, and relationships.

WG.22C Use geographic terminology correctly.

WG.22D Use standard grammar, spelling, sentence structure, and punctuation.

TEKS and ELPS for Regional World Geography Unit 05--Europe from TEKS Resource System

European Historical Development Patterns

Europe did not become a center for world economics with high standards of living by accident. Historical events in global development have favored this realm because of its physical geography and cultural factors. In southern Europe, the Greeks provided ideas, philosophy, and organization. Greek thinkers promoted the concept of democracy. The Romans carried the concept of an empire to new levels.

From about 150 B.C.E. to 475 C.E., the Romans brought many ideas together and controlled a large portion of Europe and North Africa. The Roman Empire introduced a common infrastructure to Europe. The Romans connected their world by building roads,

bridges, aqueducts, and port facilities. They understood how to rule an empire. By taking advantage of the best opportunities of each region they controlled, they encouraged the best and most-skilled artisans to focus on what they did best.

The focus on encouraging the work of skilled artisans created the specialization of goods and a market economy. No longer did everyone have to make everything for themselves. They could sell in the market what they produced and purchase products made by others, which would be of higher quality than what they could make at home. Regions that specialized in certain goods due to local resources or specialty skills could transport those goods to markets long distances away. The Roman Empire connected southern Europe and North Africa.



This map illustrates the extent of the Roman Empire, 117 CE.

The Vikings of Scandinavia (Norway, Sweden, and Denmark; 900–1200 C.E.) are often referred to as rogue bands of armed warriors who pillaged and plundered northern Europe. Though they were fierce warriors in battle, they were farmers, skilled craftsmen, and active traders. They developed trade routes throughout the north. Using their seafaring knowledge and skills, the Vikings used Europe's waterways for transportation.

The Vikings were the early developers of the northern world from Russia to Iceland and even to North America. They developed colonies in Iceland, Greenland, and what is present-day Canada. Their longships were renowned for versatility and provided an advantage on the sea. The Vikings made advances deep into Europe—all the way to Constantinople. The records of history show that the Byzantine Empire employed Scandinavian Vikings as mercenaries.

In a general sense, the regions to the west of Scandinavia—such as Iceland, Scotland, Ireland, and Greenland—were targeted by the Norwegian Vikings. Southern regions such as England and France were more often destinations of the Danish Vikings. Russia and areas of Eastern Europe were standard trading grounds for the Swedish Vikings, though the different Viking groups could occasionally be found in the same destinations. The present-day Scandinavian countries were established after the main Viking period. The Vikings connected northern Europe with trade during the Dark Ages.

Colonialism

It wasn't until after the Dark Ages of Europe ended that a rebirth of ideas, technology, and progress took hold. The Renaissance of the late 15th century prompted activity in Europe that changed the world. In 1492, Columbus and his three ships crossed the Atlantic to land on the shores of the Americas. This event symbolized the beginning of the era of European colonialism.

Colonialism's effects remain in the colonies or protectorates that European countries still possess. Colonialism was fueled by the economic concept of mercantilism that included the drive of governments to control trade, promoting the acquisition of wealth by the quick gain of gold or silver from their colonies.

Colonialism included the development of colonies outside the home country, usually for the expansion of imperial power and the exploitation of material gain. The building of larger ships and an understanding of sea travel allowed an exchange of new goods and ideas between continents. North and South America were opened up to the European explorers for colonial expansion. European colonialism brought newfound wealth from the colonies back to Europe.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

All the regions of the world outside of Europe were targeted for colonialism. Africa was divided up, Latin America was created, and Asia became a location for resources and trade. The few powerful countries along the Atlantic coast of Europe began the drive to dominate their world. If you live in the Western Hemisphere, consider the language you speak and the borders of your country. Both were most likely products of European colonialism. Most of the current political geographic boundaries were drawn up or shaped through colonial conflict or agreement



The founding of Santiago de Chile in 1541.

The Agrarian Revolution

The post-Renaissance era introduced a number of agricultural changes that impacted European food production. Before this time, most agricultural methods were primitive and labor intensive, but new technologies were introduced that greatly enhanced agricultural production. Plows, seeders, and harvesting technologies were introduced. Land reform and land ownership transitioned to adapt to the changing times.

These innovations supported the expanding port cities that created urban markets for agricultural surpluses. Colonial ships returned from the colonies with new crops such as potatoes. This era's progress in agricultural advancements is often referred to as the agrarian revolution. The agrarian revolution led to industrial developments such as the steam tractor and steel implements that further advanced agricultural production worldwide.

The Industrial Revolution

Great Britain, being an island country, developed the world's largest navy and took control of the seas. Their colonial reach extended from what is now Canada to Australia. The Industrial Revolution, initiated in northern England in the late 1700s, introduced an industrial period that changed how humans produced products. The shift to coal for energy, the use of the steam engine for power, the smelting of iron, and the concept of mass production changed how goods were produced.



Mass production during the Industrial Revolution prompted a rural-to-urban shift in the population. Coal for energy and steam for power energized industrial activities.

The development of the steam-powered engine provided a mobile power source. Waterwheels powered by steep-flowing rivers or streams were an early source of power. With coal for fuel and steam for power, the engines of industry were mobile and moved full speed ahead. Power looms converted textiles such as cotton and wool into cloth. Powered by a steam engine, a power loom could operate 24 hours a day and could be located anywhere. Industrialization with cheap labor and adequate raw materials brought enormous wealth to the industrial leaders and their home countries,

With the mass production of goods and advancements in technology, there was a major shift in human labor. Fewer people were needed on the farms, and more workers were needed in factories. There was a large rural-to-urban shift in the human population. Europe experienced the development of the major cities of its realm during this period. In Britain, for example, in 1800 only 9 percent of the population lived in urban areas. By 1900, about 62 percent were urban dwellers. As of 2010, it is more than 90 percent. Europe, as a whole, is about 75 percent urban. As a comparison, the population in the United States is approximately 80 percent urban.

The Industrial Revolution, which started in northern England's Pennine mountain chain, rippled through Europe and across the Atlantic to the United States. The majority of countries in Europe are currently in stage 5 of the index of economic development. The five stages of the index of economic development illustrate a pattern of development and population dynamics for a country or region.

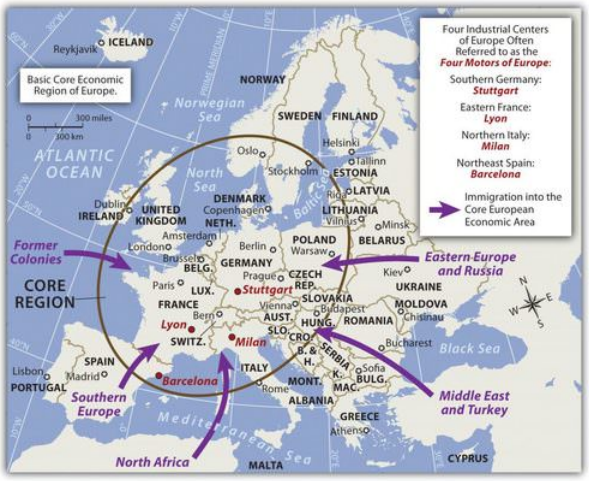
The model outlines how rural societies with an agrarian economy in stage 1 can make the transition to stage 5, which is the stage that indicates an urban society with a consumer economy. As a general trend, when a country's levels of industrial activity and urban growth rise, the outcome is usually a higher standard of living and smaller family sizes. Additionally, the rural-to-urban shift takes place, driven by the pull of opportunities and advantages in the industrializing and urbanizing areas. Countries in stage 5 of the index have small families with a fertility rate below the replacement level. Their incomes, based on a consumer economy, are generally at high levels.

As Europe industrialized and progressed through the stages of the index of economic development, certain core regions reached the postindustrial stages earlier than others. Western Europe established a core industrial region with an extended periphery. The postindustrial activity in this core area continues today in four main centers of innovation:

- Stuttgart in southern Germany
- Lyon in southeastern France
- Milan in northern Italy
- Barcelona in northeastern Spain.

These four industrial centers have been referred to as the Four Motors of Europe because they promote business and industry for the European community. The European core region extends as far as Stockholm in the north to Barcelona in the south.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org



Attractive “pull” forces draw immigrants to the core economic area of Europe, seeking opportunity and advantage. “Push” forces cause people to leave an area due to negative cultural or environmental forces, and/or the lack of opportunity and advantage.

Central Business Districts and Primate Cities

European urban development centered on port cities that had industrial activity. Ships could import raw materials, the factories could manufacture the goods, and the ships could export the products. A central business district (CBD) developed around these activities. Since walking was the main transportation mode, all business activities had to be located in the same vicinity. Banks, retail shops, food markets, and residential dwellings had to be close to the factories and port facilities. Modern cities emerged from this industrialization process, and Europe is one of the more urban realms on the planet.

Many European countries have one main primary city that is more than twice as large as their second city. The term primate city indicates a city that is more than twice as large as their second city and exceptionally expressive of national feeling and heritage. One may think that the primate city is the same as the capital city of a country. However, this is not always the case.

Primate cities represent a country and are symbolic of the country’s heritage and character. Though common, not all countries of the world have a primate city. Financial and business centers in cities such as London, Rome, or Paris support the industrial activity that led to their development as primate cities. Most primate cities are ports or are located on a major river.

The Rural-to-Urban Shift and Population Growth

Consider the trend that the Industrial Revolution brought to Europe. Do you remember the population growth principle? This principle states that as countries industrialize and urbanize, family size naturally goes down and incomes traditionally go up. Integrate this with the rural-to-urban shift that occurs when countries progress through the five stages of the index of economic development. By understanding these basic trends, one can determine the average family size in Europe and why it is declining.

Because Europe is an urbanized realm, one can understand why family size in Europe is small. Various countries in Europe have negative population growth rates. Family size in Spain and Italy is around 1.2, with the average family size in all of Europe at 1.4 children. The replacement rate to maintain an even population-growth pattern would be a fertility rate of about 2.1 children.

Small families do not provide enough young people to cover the available entry-level service jobs. Europe is in stage 5 of the index of economic development and is facing low or negative population growth and a lack of a cheap labor supply. As a core economic global power, Europe has experienced an increase in immigration. With a lower fertility rate and an increase in postindustrial activity, Europe draws people from poorer peripheral countries and peripheral regions within Europe who are looking for opportunities and advantages.

With the planet’s human population increasing overall, one might think that a smaller family size is a positive trend. However, if there are fewer young people in a community—fewer children and fewer people of employment age—consider how this affects the

economic situation. With a declining European population, who will apply for the entry-level jobs? Economic core areas attract immigrants seeking opportunities and advantages, and Europe follows this pattern.

There has been increasing tension between the long-standing European cultural groups and immigrants from developing countries who often speak non-European languages or follow religions other than Christianity. The main religion of immigrants from North Africa or the Middle East is Islam, which is the fastest-growing religion in Europe.

Declining Family Size in Europe

There are six main reasons for the declining family size in Europe:

1. The high cost of living makes supporting a large family expensive.
2. Confined living spaces in urban areas are expensive for larger families.
3. Young people are naturally putting off marriage and family until they are older.
4. Family planning and health care for women is available.
5. More people are earning an education and putting off having children.
6. More women choose professional careers and have fewer children.

The following problems arise with the decline in family size in Europe:

1. Fewer children result in a shrinking workforce for entry-level jobs.
2. The workforce is getting older and more professionals are retiring.
3. Pension costs are increasing and there are fewer younger workers to pay for them.
4. The tax burden is shifting to fewer younger professionals in the workplace.
5. More revenues are needed to pay for the health care of a larger population of senior citizens.
6. Immigrants seeking employment may not share the same cultural heritage or values.

Nation-States and Devolution

The agrarian revolution and the Industrial Revolution were powerful movements that altered human activity in many ways. New innovations in food production and the manufacturing of products transformed Europe, which in turn impacted the rest of the world. Even before the agrarian revolution was under way, other transitions in European political currents were undermining the established empire, such as warfare and territorial disputes.

The political revolution that transformed Europe was a result of ending continual warfare and introducing peaceful agreements that recognized the sovereignty of representative government. Various treaties and revolutions continued to shift the power from dictators and monarchs to the general population. The Treaty of Westphalia in 1648 and those that followed helped establish a sense of peace and stability for Central Europe. The French Revolution (1789–95) was an example of the political transformation taking place across Europe to establish democratic processes for governance.

The political revolution laid the groundwork for a sense of nationalism that transformed Europe into nation-states. The term *nation* refers to a homogeneous group of people with a common heritage, language, religion, or political ambition. The term *state* refers to the government. When nations and states come together, there is a true nation-state, wherein most citizens share a common heritage and a united government.

European countries are at the point where the concept of forming or remaining a nation-state is a driving force in many political sectors. Most Europeans want to be a member of a nation-state, where there is a shared culture, heritage, and government. The result of the drive for nation-states in Europe is an Italy for Italians, a united Germany for Germans, and a France for the French, for example. Though the political borders of many European countries resemble nation-states, creating a nation-state is unlikely because of the diversity.

Various ethnic populations in Europe desire their own nation-states within their countries of residence. They want to devolve or separate from the larger state. The term devolution refers to the process where regions or people within a state demand independence and autonomy at the central government's expense. There are now a number of cases where devolution is occurring in Europe. For example, Scotland and Wales seek to devolve from the United Kingdom. The Basque region between Spain and France would like to have its own nation-state. Former Yugoslavia broke up into seven smaller nation-states. Various other minority

groups in Europe seek similar arrangements. Thus, cohesive cultural forces and divisive cultural forces are active in the European community.

Centrifugal and Centripetal Forces

Cultural forces continually apply pressure on a country. Some of these cultural forces pull the nation together (centripetal forces) and others pull it apart (centrifugal forces). Primary sources of these cultural forces include religion, language, ethnicity, politics, and economic conditions.

Centrifugal Forces vs. Centripetal Forces

Centrifugal Forces Divide a State

- Ethnic Conflict
- Social Injustice
- Poverty
- Dictatorial Leadership
- Religious Intolerance
- Nationalism
- Loss of Rights
- Any Other Divisive Force

Centripetal Forces Hold a State Together

- Ethnic Unity and Tolerance
- Social/Economic Equity
- Just and Fair Legal System
- Charismatic Leadership
- Religious Acceptance
- Nationalism
- Common Heritage
- Common Language
- Any Other Unifying Force

Centrifugal forces happen when there is division, conflict, or confrontation. Centripetal forces happen when there is unification, agreement, or nationalism. The sources that tie a country together can also be the sources that divide a country. Ethnic unity can be a positive force, while ethnic division and conflict can be a divisive force. If centrifugal forces become strong, the result may be war. Unity can also be evident through national struggles, such as the nationalism displayed immediately after the 9/11 terrorist attacks in the United States. After the attacks, an outpouring of goodwill and agreement strengthened the bonds within the United States.

To understand our world, it is helpful to understand the cultural forces that are active in any one location. Disagreement, inequity, or injustice related to the cultural factors of ethnicity, religion, language, and economics of a region or country is the cause of most conflicts. The strong personalities that provide leadership can similarly prove to be powerful forces that either divide or unite a nation. An example of cultural forces in conflict in Europe can be found in Northern Ireland, where political forces use religious differences as a means of social division.

Religion and Language in Europe

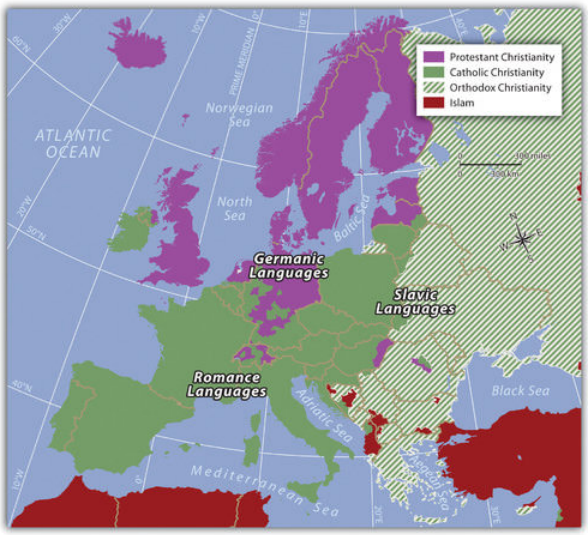
Europe has historically been considered a Christian realm. The three main branches of Christianity in Europe are Roman Catholic, Protestant, and Eastern Orthodox. Rome has been the geographical base for the Roman Catholic Church since the Roman Empire. Operating on the Romance language, Latin, the Catholic Church has provided southern Europe with a common religion for over 1,500 years.

The Roman Catholic Church split when Constantinople (present-day Istanbul), gained preeminence. The Eastern Orthodox Church launched itself as the primary organization in the Slavic lands of Eastern Europe and Russia. The reformation of the 14th century,

led by people such as Martin Luther, brought about the Protestant Reformation and a break with the Roman Catholic Church. Protestant churches have dominated northern Europe to this day.

Three Main Language Groups

Germanic Language Group (*Found Mainly in Northern Europe*)	**Romance Language Group (*Latin Based; Found Mainly in Southern Europe*)**	**Slavic Language Group (*Found Mainly in Eastern Europe*)**
English, Dutch, German	French, Italian, Spanish	Polish, Russian, Czech
Danish, Norwegian, Swedish	Portuguese, Romanian, Walloon	Ukrainian, Slovak, Slovene
Icelandic, Faroese, Frysian	Romancsh, Catalan, Provencal	Belarussian, Serbo-Croatian, Lusatian
		Macedonian, Bulgarian



This map depicts the three dominant languages groups and the three Christian denominations of Europe.

Three main Indo-European language groups dominate Europe. Though there are additional language groups, the dominant three coincide with the three main religious divisions. In the east, where the Eastern Orthodox Church is dominant, the Slavic language group prevails. In the north, along with Protestant Christianity, one finds the Germanic language group. In southern Europe, where Roman Catholicism is dominant, the Romance languages are more commonly spoken.

Key Takeaways

- The Roman Empire connected southern Europe and created an infrastructure to help promote trade and intercultural connections.
- The Vikings connected northern Europe through trade and exploitation.
- Technological advancements helped European colonialism dominate other countries and exploit their labor and resources.
- Coastal European countries created colonies and external sources of wealth.
- The Industrial Revolution was promoted by the development of steam power with coal as a fuel source.
- The mass production of goods gave the European countries an advantage in the world marketplace.
- The Industrial Revolution prompted a shift in population from the rural agricultural regions to the urban centers.
- More people were needed in the factories and fewer workers were required on the farms because of improved agricultural methods. This shift resulted in smaller families and more women entering the workplace.
- The early empires of Europe gave way to the concept of a similar people (the nation) unifying under a common government (the state) to create nation-states.

- Divisive centrifugal cultural forces tend to divide and separate people in a state, whereas cohesive centripetal cultural forces tend to unify a state.
- The Indo-European language family has three dominant groups in Europe: Germanic in the north, Romance in the south, and Slavic in the east.
- The Christian religion has three main divisions in Europe: a Protestant north, Catholic south, and an Orthodox east.

Vocabulary Terms

Chapter 5.2 European Historical Development Patterns

central-business-district (CBD)	The core of a city, which is almost always based on commercial activity.
colonialism	A system in which another country controls another area as a colony The ruling colony controls trade with its colony for its own benefit
devolution	To the process whereby regions or people within a state demand independence and autonomy at the central government's expense
Fascism	A totalitarian form of government where one person rules
feudalism	A type of social system in Europe that thrived during the 9th and 15th centuries in which the holding of land was used in exchange for labor and military services
imperialism	When a country takes over or controls another country by domination or force
militarism	The belief or desire to have a strong military within one's country
nation-state	The name of a territory when a nation and state occupy the same territory
nationalism	The belief or ideology of strongly identifying with one nation
Germanic	One of the three major language families in Europe
Germanic languages	German, Dutch, Danish, Swedish, and Norwegian
Indo-European	The base of languages in Europe
Romance	One of the three major language families in Europe
Romance languages	Romanian, Italian, French, Spanish, and Portuguese
Slavic	One of the three major language families in Europe
Slavic languages	Russian, Ukrainian, Polish, and Czech

Applying Knowledge

Interactive Notebook Activities

1. Summarize how the Roman Empire and the Viking era contributed to European development.
2. Describe how European colonialism changed or influenced other countries.
3. Explain the major developments that prompted the Industrial Revolution.
4. Describe the impact of the rural-to-urban shift and its impact on urbanization specifically.

5. Define the concept of a nation-state and explain how this applies to Europe.
6. Explain how cultural forces can positively or negatively influence political units.
7. List the three main language groups and the three main religious denominations of Europe.

Discussion and Study Questions

1. Why do you think the Industrial Revolution started where it did?
2. How did the Industrial Revolution affect Europe's population and employment opportunities?
3. What was the relationship between industrial activity and urbanization?
4. What is a CBD? Where would you find it in your closest city?
5. How does Europe's fertility rate impact employment opportunities?
6. Why is family size declining in Europe?
7. What are the three dominant language branches of the Indo-European language family in Europe?
8. How are the three main branches of Christianity distributed in Europe?
9. What are some examples of centrifugal and centripetal cultural force where you live?
10. Why do people gravitate toward a nation-state structure as a political unit?

Real-World Geography Exercise

Using Google Maps, find the capital of each country below. Calculate the approximate distance from your house to each capital. Next, go to Real-Time World Air Quality Index and find out what the air pollution index is for each capital. What impact do you think the air quality has on the citizens of each capital? Be prepared to share your answers.

- Spain
- Denmark
- France
- Italy
- Norway
- Germany
- Sweden

Mapping Exercise

Mapping Our World Module 4 Lesson 1

March of Time: In this activity students will use GIS to identify the world's largest cities at different times during the past 2000 years. Students will look for patterns in their locations and speculate on reasons for changes in the patterns.

Student Answer Doc-download

Student Assessment Doc-download

Teacher Materials download







LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org





Helpful Websites for the Study of Geography

Canadian Encyclopedia is an encyclopedia funded by the Canadian government covering all branches of knowledge. Their scholarly collection includes interactive materials.

CIA World Factbook provides information on the people, history, government, economy, energy, geography, communications, transportation, military, and transnational issues for the world's entities.

Congress.gov is a US government website where you can find federal legislation, past and present, as well as information about the US legal system.

Drug Enforcement Administration (DEA) is a government agency website that provides current news, resources, topics of interest, information about drugs, careers in the DEA, and a tip hotline.

Library of Congress is the largest library in the world and provides manuscripts, files, information, pictures, and videos.

NASA Earth Observatory (NEO) is a US government agency website that allows users to search for and retrieve satellite images of Earth.

National Archives is a US government website that provides historical documents, photos, records, publications, and educator resources.

National Oceanic and Atmospheric Association (NOAA) is a US government agency website that provides weather-related information and ocean research.

National Map is a website by the United States Geological Survey and other federal, state, and local agencies that delivers topographic information for the United States.

NationMaster is a massive central data source and a handy way to graphically compare nations.

Real-Time World Air Quality Index is a website that measures most locations in the world for air pollution in real time.

StateMaster is a unique statistical database, which allows you to research and compare a multitude of different data on US states.

United Nations (UN) is an international organization founded in 1945 and made up of 193 member states. The UN maintains international peace and security, protects human rights, delivers humanitarian aid, promotes sustainable development, and upholds international law.

United States Census Bureau is a US government agency that provides a population clock, data, surveys, statistics, a library with information and infographics, news about the economy, and much more.

United States Geological Survey (USGS) is a US government agency website that provides scientific information about the natural hazards that threaten lives, the natural resources we rely on, the health of our ecosystems and environment, and the impacts of climate and land-use change.

Whitehouse.gov is a US government website that provides the latest presidential news, information about the budget, policy, defense, and many more topics.

World Health Organization (WHO) is under the United Nations and provides leadership on matters critical to health; shapes the research agenda on health; and monitors the health situation and assessing health trends around the world. Their website provides information on the state of health around the world, outbreaks, current health news, and more.

World Trade Organization (WTO) is an intergovernmental organization that regulates international trade. The website provides information on the history of the multilateral trading system, featured videos, news and events, trade topics, and more.

WG.1A Analyze the effects of physical and human geographic patterns and processes on events in the past and describe their effects on present conditions, including significant physical features and environmental conditions that influenced migration patterns in the past and shaped the distribution of culture groups today.

WG.2B Assess how people's changing perceptions of geographic features have led to changes in human societies.

WG.5A Analyze how the character of a place is related to its political, economic, social, and cultural characteristics.

WG.6A Locate and describe human and physical features that influence the size and distribution of settlements.

WG.16C Compare life in a variety of cities and nations in the world to evaluate the relationships involved in political, economic, social, and environmental changes.

WG.16D Compare life in a variety of urban and rural areas in the world to evaluate political, economic, social, and environmental changes.

WG.17A Describe and compare patterns of culture such as language, religion, land use, systems of education, and customs that make Europe distinctive.

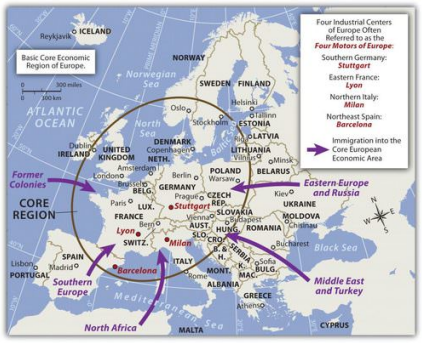
WG.21A Analyze and evaluate the validity and utility of multiple sources of geographic information such as primary and secondary sources, aerial photographs and maps.

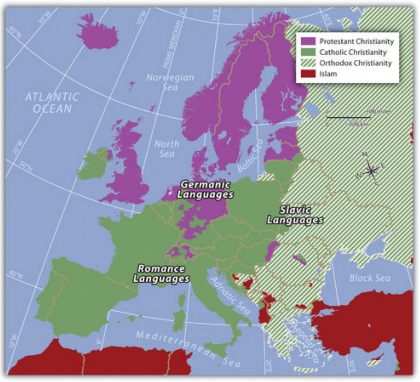
WG.21B Locate places of contemporary geopolitical significance on a map.,

WG.22A Design and draw appropriate graphics, such as maps, diagrams, tables, and graphs to communicate geographic features, distributions, distributions, and relationships.

WG.22C Use geographic terminology correctly.

WG.22D Use standard grammar, spelling, sentence structure, and punctuation.

Image	Reference	Attributions
	**[Figure 1]**	**Credit:** Wikimedia Commons – public domain. **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/6320891422c8cb0c36a56e96095fc622.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 2]**	**Credit:** [Public domain], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://en.Wikipedia.org/wiki/Colonialism#/media/File:Fundacion_de_Santiago.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 3]**	**Credit:** Buzrael – Old train – CC BY-NC 2.0. **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/chapter/2-2-historical-development-patterns/ **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 4]**	**Credit:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeograp...ment-patterns/ **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/chapter/2-2-historical-development-patterns/ **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0



[Figure 5]

Credit: http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeograp...ment-patterns/
Source: open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/99cb27833445a092a2ea4e882bbf067b.jpg
License: CC BY-NC 3.0

This page titled 5.2: European Historical Development Patterns (2 Days) is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by CK12 via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

5.3: European Union and Supranationalism (2 Days)

1. Describe how Europe has been divided during the 20th century.
2. Describe the measures or methods that have been implemented to help unify Europe.
3. Explain the dynamics of supranationalism and its advantages and disadvantages.
4. Summarize briefly how globalization has increased with the advent of the European Union.

Learning Objectives

TEKS Regional World Geography Unity 05: Europe Chapter 5.3 European Union and Supranationalism

WG.10A Describe the forces that determine the distribution of goods and services in free enterprise, socialist, and communist economic systems.

WG.10D Compare global trade patterns over time and examine the implications of globalization, including outsourcing and free trade zones.

WG.11B Identify the factors affecting the location of different types of economic activities, including subsistence and commercial agriculture, manufacturing, and service industries.

WG.11C Assess how changes in climate, resources, and infrastructure (technology, transportation, and communication) affect the location and patterns of economic activities.

WG.12A Analyze how the creation, distribution, and management of key natural resources affects the location and patterns of movement of products, money, and people.

WG.14A Analyze current events to infer the physical and human processes that lead to the formation of boundaries and other political divisions.

WG.14C Analyze the human and physical factors that influence the power to control territory and resources, create conflict/war, and impact international political relations of sovereign nations such as China, the United States, Japan, and Russia and organized nation groups such as the United Nations (UN) and the European Union (EU).

WG.15A Identify and give examples of different points of view that influence the development of public policies and decision-making processes on local, state, national, and international levels.

WG.15B Explain how citizenship practices, public policies, and decision making may be influenced by cultural beliefs, including nationalism and patriotism.

WG.23A Use case studies and GIS to identify contemporary challenges and to answer real-world questions.

WG.22A Design and draw appropriate graphics, such as maps, diagrams, tables, and graphs to communicate geographic features, distributions, distributions, and relationships.

WG.22C Use geographic terminology correctly.

WG.22D Use standard grammar, spelling, sentence structure, and punctuation.

TEKS and ELPS for Regional World Geography Unit 05--Europe from TEKS Resource System

The European Union and Supranationalism

The world economy has a competitive marketplace. Each independent country has to compete economically to earn national income, but not all countries are equal in natural or human resources. The smaller countries of Europe may have difficulty competing with the world's core economic powers such as Japan or the United States. Some of the countries of Europe are small in terms of physical area. The total physical area of all the European countries together equals only 60 percent of the total physical area of the United States. However, in regard to Europe, physical size may not an indicator of economic ability. A number of European countries are major forces in the global economy.

LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

The economic forces of globalization have motivated the nation-states of Europe to work together rather than compete with each other. Western Europe as a region is highly industrialized and has a high standard of living. Unified, the countries are a major economic power in the world. Separately and independently, they may not be able to compete at the same level as other globally recognized trading blocs.

To become unified after a century of centrifugal forces dividing them has not been easy. Consider the cultural forces that have been active in Europe. Centripetal forces unifying the realm include a common Christian religion, Indo-European language groups, and a Caucasian ethnic background. These forces have not resulted in a unified Europe. The closest resemblance to a unified Europe was the Roman Empire, which was held together by military force.

During the 20th century, there were three centrifugal divisions in Europe: (1) World War I divided Europe and the industrialized world; (2) World War II pitted the Axis powers (Germany and Italy) against the Allied powers (Great Britain, France, United States); (3) the Cold War. With the Cold War, the Iron Curtain, built of concrete, barbed wire, and land mines separated Communist Eastern Europe, which was dominated by the government of the Soviet Union, from the capitalist democracies of Western Europe, which were allied with the United States. When the Soviet Union collapsed in 1991, a new era arrived in Europe, and the power of unification emerged.

Unification Efforts in Europe

After World War II ended in Europe, the three small countries of Belgium, Netherlands, and Luxembourg realized that together they would be much stronger and recover more quickly from the war than if they remained separate. Belgium had banking and business; the Netherlands had industry, farming, and the world-class port of Rotterdam on the Rhine River; and Luxembourg had agricultural resources. To help recover from World War II, in 1944 the three countries signed an economic pact called the Benelux Agreement, which provided a successful example of unification and cooperation.

Implemented from 1948 to 1952, the Marshall Plan helped rebuild war-torn Europe with American aid and business connections. US businesses and corporations benefited from the increased international trade with Europe. To deter the European nations from going to war again, there needed to be an economic trade policy that encouraged a strong business climate. In 1957, the countries of France, West Germany, the Netherlands, Luxembourg, Italy, and Belgium signed the Treaty of Rome, which created the Common Market. This agreement provided the structure necessary to unify Europe under a European Union (EU) in 1992.

Despite many problems, since World War II, steady efforts have been made toward European unification. The EU was the structure for a common economic system with an agreed-upon governing body. It was designed as an economic trading bloc that could compete with the United States and Japan. A mechanism was finally in place for a supportive, unified Europe, but it would be up to the independent countries that joined this union to make it work.

Supranationalism



Members of the EU

https://k12.libretexts.org/@go/page/1883

Coat of Arms	Flag	State	Capital	Accession	Population (2017)
		Austria	Vienna	1 January 1995	8,772,865
		Belgium	Brussels	Founder	11,351,727
		Bulgaria	Sofia	1 January 2007	7,101,859
		Croatia	Zagreb	1 July 2013	4,154,213
		Cyprus	Nicosia	1 May 2004	854,802
		Czech Republic	Prague	1 May 2004	10,578,820
		Denmark	Copenhagen	1 January 1973	5,748,769
		Estonia	Tallinn	1 May 2004	1,315,635
		Finland	Helsinki	1 January 1995	5,503,297
		France	Paris	Founder	66,989,083
		Germany	Berlin	Founder	82,521,653
		Greece	Athens	1 January 1981	10,768,193
		Hungary	Budapest	1 May 2004	9,797,561
		Ireland	Dublin	1 January 1973	4,784,383
		Italy	Rome	Founder	60,589,445
		Latvia	Riga	1 May 2004	1,950,116
		Lithuania	Vilnius	1 May 2004	2,847,904
		Luxembourg	Luxembourg City	Founder	590,667
		Malta	Valletta	1 May 2004	460,297
		Netherlands	Amsterdam	Founder	17,081,507
		Poland	Warsaw	1 May 2004	37,972,964
		Portugal	Lisbon	1 January 1986	10,309,573
		Romania	Bucharest	1 January 2007	19,644,350
		Slovakia	Bratislava	1 May 2004	5,435,343
		Slovenia	Ljubljana	1 May 2004	2,065,895

Coat of Arms	Flag	State	Capital	Accession	Population (2017)
		Slovenia	Ljubljana	1 May 2004	2,065,895
Coat of arms of Spain		Spain	Madrid	1 January 1986	46,528,024
Coat of arms of Sweden		Sweden	Stockholm	1 January 1995	9,995,153
Coat of arms of the United Kingdom		United Kingdom	London	1 January 1973	65,808,573
Totals:	28 countries				511,522,671

Source



The European Union and the Language Question.

Supranationalism is defined as the voluntary association of three or more independent states willing to yield some measure of sovereignty for mutual benefit. The Benelux Agreement of 1944 was a model for European supranationalism. Nations are often reluctant to give up any sense of independence, especially with the strong drive toward nation-state status. In Europe, each country might have its own language, currency, traffic laws, and legal system, which makes supranationalism difficult to accomplish. Supranationalism could erode the uniqueness of each state as Europe becomes more of a "United States of Europe."

Esperanto

One of the solutions proposed for the language problem for the European Union (EU) was to use the artificial language Esperanto as the common language. This solution did not receive much support from member states and was rejected by the EU. Esperanto, introduced in 1887 as a neutral language, was formed using words from the Latin, Germanic, and Slavic language groups (the three main language groups of Europe).

Inteligenta persono lernas la lingvon Esperanto rapide kaj facile. Esperanto estas la moderna, kultura lingvo por la tuta mondo. Lernu la internacian lingvon Esperanto.

Check Your Translation:

An intelligent person learns the language Esperanto rapidly and easily. Esperanto is the modern, cultural language for the whole world. Learn the international language Esperanto.



The euro was adopted in 1999. However, not all EU countries use the euro.

To address the differences in the many currencies used in Europe, the EU introduced a common currency called the euro. Initially, there was resistance, but it has been accepted by most EU members. Great Britain is a major economic player in the EU, but it has not adopted the euro as its main currency. It has kept the traditional English pound sterling. Most of the old currencies of EU

members are being phased out and the single currency of the euro has become the standard. Even countries not currently in the EU have adopted the euro as their national currency.

Unification has created economic problems between the wealthy industrialized countries and the poorer regions of southern Europe. There is disagreement over how taxes or funds will be allocated. The poorer countries would like economic assistance in developing their industries. The wealthier nations are at times resistant to sharing their wealth. Italy has experienced this problem within its borders. Italy's wealthy northern regions have hinted at separating from their poorer southern regions. This is an age-old problem that confronts governments of most countries.

Other questions arise with the supranational EU. How will the EU manage foreign affairs? Will the EU have a military? If so, how will it be managed? Who will command it? What will happen to the current military assets of each member country? Travel within the EU has also changed. Before the EU, people traveling between European countries encountered border checks at which their passports were checked and stamped, and different traffic laws existed for each country. This is changing. Once inside the EU, there are no more border stops, and traffic and travel are becoming streamlined with common laws.



NATO is the North Atlantic Treaty Organization (Western Europe and North America).

Global trading blocs such as the EU are not uncommon. The United States, with Mexico and Canada, developed the North American Free Trade Agreement (NAFTA) to create a global economic trading bloc. Japan and neighboring countries work together as the East Asian Community (EAC), which is not an official organization but is a recognized entity that operates as an economic core area with its own alliances. Other larger or smaller economic trading blocs exist across the globe. Every continent has organizations that promote economic development for their regions or countries. Many of these agreements have developed into a type of economic supranationalism.

European countries have to confront both the centrifugal forces that rally their nations to remain independent and the centripetal forces that call for integration into the EU. European cultures have a history of struggling to retain their heritage and traditions. The strong devolutionary forces that advocate for nation-state status are challenged by the need to belong to a larger union for economic survival. Europeans are caught between holding on to cultural heritage and moving forward economically in a competitive global economy. Similar forces are also felt in other regions of the world.

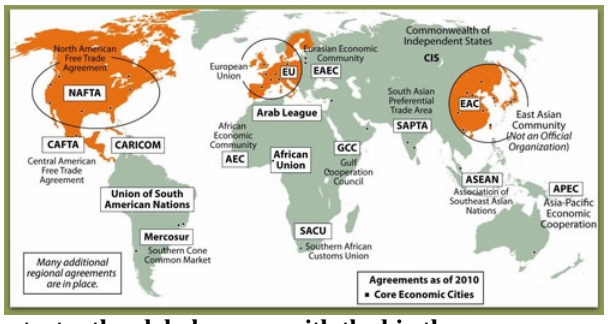
Germany, which united its western and eastern regions after the Iron Curtain came down, has become economically powerful in Europe. Germany is also the largest country in Europe by population. Other EU nations are concerned that Germany might once again exert domination or bring about division in Europe. The Cold War, World War I, and World War II are not easily forgotten. They are vital events in European history that affected the whole world. Because of this historical memory, many Europeans are suspicious of how the EU may evolve; whereas, others are more open to a unified European community.

About the European Union

According to the 1993 Copenhagen European Council, "a country has to meet certain requirements to join the EU. These requirements include a stable democracy which respects human rights and the rule of law; a functioning market economy capable of competition within the EU; and the acceptance of the obligations of membership, including EU law. Evaluation of a country's fulfillment of the criteria is the responsibility of the European Council."

In 2018, the European Union had 28 member states representing over 500 million people. A number of additional states are applying for membership, so the number of EU member states continues to change. Each EU state now has its own military for national defense. A majority of EU members also hold membership in the North Atlantic Treaty Organization (NATO), which is a

political alliance between Western European countries, Canada, and the United States. The EU is one of many global supranational entities. The EU is one of the three main core economic areas of the world.



This map illustrates the global groups with the big three core areas of the world.

Europe has experienced strong centripetal and centrifugal forces throughout its history. From the Roman Empire to the European Union, the historical pattern of development in Europe is a model study in regional geography. From empire to nation-state and now to a union, the continent struggles to confront these cultural forces that unite and divide. The EU is an example of what supranationalism can produce.

To compete in a global economy, the nation-states of Europe must cooperate and coordinate their industrial activities to support their high standard of living. The EU member states are a part of the elite "have" nations of the world. They face many questions about their future, and they will be watched closely by the rest of the world.

Key Takeaways

- Although World War I, World War II, and the Cold War divided Europe during the 20th century, the EU has emerged as a unifying force for the European people.
- The Benelux Agreement, the Marshall Plan, and the Treaty of Rome all helped set the stage for the European unification that evolved into the EU.
- Supranationalism has provided European countries with the ability to compete economically in the global marketplace. Difficulties have been in the areas of cultural and historical differences that have influenced the continuing economic and political challenges.
- The EU represents a core economic region for the planet.
- North America and Eastern Asia each have worked to create competitive trading relationships to compete with the EU economically.

Vocabulary Terms

Chapter 5.3 European Union and Supranationalism

European Parliament	Directly elected by the people every five years May propose amendments to legislation and it may reject proposals from Council outright Apportionment of representatives is not strictly based on population
Euro	A common currency proposed by the European Union for a majority of its member nations
European Union	Supranational organization that integrates the states of Europe
NATO	North Atlantic Treaty Organization- a political alliance between Western European countries, Canada, and the United States
United Nations	Can vote to establish a peacekeeping force in a hotspot and request states to contribute military forces Suborganizations promote the general welfare of the world

Applying Knowledge

Interactive Notebook Activity

1. Describe how Europe has been divided during the 20th century.
2. Describe the measures or methods that have been implemented to help unify Europe.
3. Explain the dynamics of supranationalism and its advantages and disadvantages.
4. Summarize briefly how globalization has increased with the advent of the European Union.

Discussion and Study Questions

1. What was the purpose of the Iron Curtain? How did it divide Europe?
2. What is the relationship between EU membership and the index of economic development?
3. How did the Marshall Plan and the Benelux Agreement contribute to the creation of the EU?
4. How has devolution in Europe affected the dynamics of the EU?
5. Where is supranationalism evident in other world regions?
6. What were the three main divisive events in 20th-century Europe?
7. Why aren't all European countries members of the EU?
8. Why would European countries be suspicious of Germany being a member of the EU?
9. What methods or actions has the EU taken to encourage unity and cooperation among its members?
10. Where would strong devolutionary forces be evident in Europe?

Geography Exercises

Using this map, complete the following:

1. Locate and draw a circle around the location of the Iron Curtain.
2. Locate and label the Benelux countries.
3. Locate and label the regions of Europe where the Germanic, Slavic, and Romance languages are dominant.
4. Locate and label the location of the three main core economic areas of the world.
5. Locate and label the countries of Europe that are not members of the European Union (EU).

Mapping Exercise

ESRI GEO Inquiry

Cooperation Since 1945: Identify and explain different types of international cooperation since 1945







Helpful Websites for the Study of Geography

Canadian Encyclopedia is an encyclopedia funded by the Canadian government covering all branches of knowledge. Their scholarly collection includes interactive materials.

CIA World Factbook provides information on the people, history, government, economy, energy, geography, communications, transportation, military, and transnational issues for the world's entities.

Congress.gov is a US government website where you can find federal legislation, past and present, as well as information about the US legal system.

Drug Enforcement Administration (DEA) is a government agency website that provides current news, resources, topics of interest, information about drugs, careers in the DEA, and a tip hotline.

Library of Congress is the largest library in the world and provides manuscripts, files, information, pictures, and videos.

NASA Earth Observatory (NEO) is a US government agency website that allows users to search for and retrieve satellite images of Earth.

National Archives is a US government website that provides historical documents, photos, records, publications, and educator resources.

National Oceanic and Atmospheric Association (NOAA) is a US government agency website that provides weather-related information and ocean research.

National Map is a website by the United States Geological Survey and other federal, state, and local agencies that delivers topographic information for the United States.

NationMaster is a massive central data source and a handy way to graphically compare nations.

Real-Time World Air Quality Index is a website that measures most locations in the world for air pollution in real time.

StateMaster is a unique statistical database, which allows you to research and compare a multitude of different data on US states.

United Nations (UN) is an international organization founded in 1945 and made up of 193 member states. The UN maintains international peace and security, protects human rights, delivers humanitarian aid, promotes sustainable development, and upholds international law.

United States Census Bureau is a US government agency that provides a population clock, data, surveys, statistics, a library with information and infographics, news about the economy, and much more.

United States Geological Survey (USGS) is a US government agency website that provides scientific information about the natural hazards that threaten lives, the natural resources we rely on, the health of our ecosystems and environment, and the impacts of climate and land-use change.

Whitehouse.gov is a US government website that provides the latest presidential news, information about the budget, policy, defense, and many more topics.

World Health Organization (WHO) is under the United Nations and provides leadership on matters critical to health, shapes the research agenda on health, and monitors the health situation and assessing health trends around the world. Their website provides information on the state of health around the world, outbreaks, current health news, and more.

World Trade Organization (WTO) is an intergovernmental organization that regulates international trade. The website provides information on the history of the multilateral trading system, featured videos, news and events, trade topics, and more.

Image	Reference	Attributions
	**[Figure 2]**	**Credit:** https://2012books.lardbucket.org/boo...d-suprana.html **Source:** https://saylordotorg.github.io/text_world-regional-geography-people-places-and-globalization/section_05/d295a948c80da7a6898e3ade48208804.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 3]**	**Credit:** https://2012books.lardbucket.org/boo...d-suprana.html **Source:** https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/regional-geography-of-the-world-globalization-people-and-places/s05-03-the-european-union-and-suprana.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 4]**	**Credit:** https://2012books.lardbucket.org/boo...d-suprana.html **Source:** Saylor URL: http://www.saylor.org/books **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

This page titled 5.3: European Union and Supranationalism (2 Days) is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by CK12 via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

5.4: Western Europe (2 Days)

Chapter Challenges

1. List and describe the various traditional regions of Western Europe.
2. Summarize how the physical geography varies from region to region.
3. Explain how each region has met the challenges of retaining its cultural identity or uniqueness.
4. Describe how each region has developed an industrialized economy.

Learning Objectives

TEKS Regional World Geography Unit 05; Europe Chapter 5.4 Western Europe

WG.1B Trace the spatial diffusion of phenomena such as the Columbian Exchange or the diffusion of American popular culture and describe the effects on regions of contact.

WG.4A Explain how elevation, latitude, wind systems, ocean currents, position on a continent, and mountain barriers influence temperature, precipitation, and distribution of climate regions.

WG.4C Explain the influence of climate on the distribution of biomes in different regions.

WG.5A Analyze how the character of a place is related to its political, economic, social, and cultural elements.

WG.7A Construct and analyze population pyramids and use other data, graphics, and maps to describe the population characteristics of different societies and to predict future population trends.

WG.7C Describe trends in world population growth and distribution.

WG.7D Examine benefits and challenges of globalization, including connectivity, standard of living, pandemics, and loss of local culture.

WG.9A Identify physical and/or human factors such as climate, vegetation, language, trade networks, political units, river systems, and religion that constitute a region.

WG.9B Describe different types of regions, including formal, functional, and perceptual regions.

WG.14C Analyze current events to infer the physical and human processes that lead to the formation of boundaries and other political divisions.

WG.22C Use geographic terminology correctly.

WG.22D Use standard grammar, spelling, sentence structure, and punctuation.

TEKS and ELPS for Regional World Geography Unit 05--Europe from TEKS Resource System

Regions of Western Europe

Europe has been traditionally divided into regions based on location according to the four points of the compass: Eastern Europe, Southern Europe, Western Europe, and Northern Europe. The British Isles are often considered a separate region but can be included as a part of Western Europe. These regions are geographical regions that share similar physical geography or cultural traits.

For historical political purposes, Europe is divided into the two regions of Western Europe and Eastern Europe. In this case, the region of Western Europe includes the regions of northern Europe, southern Europe, Central Europe, and the British Isles. Eastern Europe is everything east of Germany, Austria, and Italy. These regional labels are used more for identification than for regional analysis. They serve as traditional labels of geographic location.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org



This map illustrates the traditional regions of Europe.

The traditional regions of Europe are not as relevant today as they have been historically since the creation of the European Union (EU). Economic and political relationships are more integrated than they were in past eras when nation-states and empires were more important. Economic conditions have often overridden cultural forces (heritage and traditions), which have traditionally supported nationalistic movements. Regional cultural differences remain the social fabric of local communities that support the uniqueness of identity. On the other hand, modern transportation and communication technology have blurred the lines of European identity.

Northern Europe

Europe has many different cultural identities within its continent. Northern Europe has traditionally included Iceland, Finland, Norway, Sweden, and Denmark. These countries are often referred to as the Nordic countries. All these countries were influenced by Viking heritage and expansion. Their capital cities are also major ports, and the largest cities of each country are their primate cities.

Protestant Christianity has prevailed in northern Europe. The Lutheran Church has traditionally been the state church until recent years. These countries were kingdoms, and their royal families remain highly regarded members of society. The colder northern climate has helped shape the cultural activities and the winter sports that are part of the region's heritage. Peripheral isolation from the rest of Europe because of their northern location and dividing bodies of water have allowed the northern culture to be preserved for centuries and shape the societies that now exist in northern Europe.



Port in Stockholm, Sweden.

Human rights, education, and social concerns are high priorities for the governments of northern Europe. Standards of living are among the highest in Europe. Because North Europe is isolated from the rest of Europe, travel tends to be more expensive. However, solutions to this problem have been addressed. For example, a modern bridge has been constructed across the Baltic Sea from Denmark to Sweden to increase the flow of people, goods, and materials between the Scandinavian Peninsula and mainland Europe.

Iceland is the most remote of the Nordic countries. Its small population—less than a half million people—is connected to Europe by sea and air transportation and communication technologies. Almost all elementary school children in the Nordic countries are taught English as a second language. Potatoes, meat, and particularly fish are important food sources in this region. Northern Europe has worked very hard to integrate itself with the global community and yet maintain its cultural identity.

The northern European countries have profited from their natural resources. Sweden, northern Europe's largest country, has used its natural iron ore supply to develop its manufacturing sector. Finland has vast timber resources and is one of Europe's major sources of processed lumber. Norway has been benefiting from the enormous oil and natural gas reserves under the North Sea. Fishing and modest agricultural activities had been Norway's traditional means of gaining wealth, but now it is the export of the much-in-demand energy resources. Because of its economic and energy independence, Norway has opted not to join the EU.

The Vikings colonized Greenland, which is located next to Canada and is considered to be the world's largest island. Danish colonization in the 18th century included Greenland and the Faeroe Islands**,** which are located between Scotland and Iceland. Both are now under the rule of Denmark but retain a high level of autonomy. Greenland is not a member of the EU because of disputes about the rules of fishing. Fish is Greenland's main export, but minerals, diamonds, and gold are also present in viable amounts. Although Greenland is almost three times the size of Texas, it has a population of a little more than 57,000. Citizens of Greenland mostly live on the Southwest coastline. The interior is uninhabitable as most of it is covered in permafrost.

Denmark has a consumer economy with a high standard of living. This Scandinavian country is often ranked as the least corrupt country in the world and has the happiest people. The country has supported a positive environment and implemented strong measures to protect its natural areas. Denmark's main exports are food products and energy. The country has sizeable oil resources in the North Sea but also receives over 15 percent of its electricity from wind turbines. In 2017, the population was estimated to be more than 500 million people.

The Baltic states of Lithuania, Latvia, and Estonia have often been included with northern Europe because of their northern location. Estonia has the strongest similarities in religion, traditions, and culture, and geographic literature often has included it as a part of northern Europe. The Baltic states have been associated with Eastern Europe through the Soviet era but, like their neighbors to the north, are becoming more economically integrated with Western Europe.

Northern Europe is a peripheral region. Southern Sweden has an advanced industrial base and resembles a core area. Sweden's northern portion and the main parts of the other Nordic countries act as sources of raw materials for Europe's urban core industrial region. In the core-peripheral spatial relationship, northern Europe most resembles a semi-peripheral region that has qualities of both the urban core and the rural periphery.

Norway, Sweden, and Finland are large in area but not as densely populated compared with other European nations. Sweden ranks as the fourth largest European country in physical area. Sweden is larger than the US state of California. However, in the 2017 census, it had less than 10 million people. In 2017, Finland, Norway, and Denmark all had less than six million people per country.

The cultures and societies of northern Europe have progressed along similar paths. They have advanced from once Viking-dominated lands into modern democratic and socially mature nations. Northern Europe is known for its concern for the social welfare of its citizens. Their strong egalitarian ideals have contributed to extensive advancements in free medical care, free education, and free social services for all, regardless of nationality or minority status. Civil rights for minorities, women, and other groups is assured and protected.

Southern Europe

Southern Europe includes three large peninsulas that extend into the Mediterranean Sea and the Atlantic Ocean. The Iberian Peninsula consists of Spain and Portugal. The Pyrenees mountain range separates the Iberian Peninsula from France. Greece, the most southern country on the Balkan Peninsula, includes hundreds of surrounding islands and the large island of Crete. The Italian

Peninsula is the shape of a boot with the Apennine Mountains running down its center. Italy also includes the islands of Sicily and Sardinia. The island country of Cyprus is also included in southern Europe.

There are five mini-states in this region. The small island of Malta is located to the south of Sicily and is an independent country. Monaco, San Marino, Andorra, and Vatican City are also independent states located within the region. Southern Europe's type C climate, moderated by the water that surrounds it, is often referred to as a Mediterranean climate, which has mild, wet winters and hot, dry summers.

The rural-to-urban shift in southern Europe has not been as strong as that of Western Europe. Only about 50 percent of the people in Portugal are urban. In Spain and Greece, about 60 percent are urban. About 68 percent of the population in Italy is urbanized. Italy is also divided, with northern Italy being more industrialized than southern Italy. The southern regions of Italy, including the island of Sicily, are more rural with fewer industries.

Northern Italy has the metropolitan city of Milan as an anchor for its global industrial and financial sector in the Lombardy region, which includes the city of Turin and the port of Genoa. This northern region of Italy is becoming one of Europe's leading manufacturing centers. The Ancona Line can be drawn across the middle of Italy from Ancona on the east coast to Rome on the west coast to separate the industrial north with the more agrarian south. The north also has the noted cultural cities of Venice, Florence, and Pisa.

A similar situation exists in Spain. The urbanized Catalonia region around Barcelona in the northeast has high-tech industries and a high standard of living. Southern Spain has large rural areas with economies heavily based on agricultural production. Portugal and Greece are not as industrialized and do not have the same economic opportunities. Historically, southern Europe, Portugal, and Greece in particular each have had a much lower gross domestic product (GDP) per capita than northern or Central Europe. Their economies have been much more aligned with the economic periphery than with the industrial core region of Europe. Greece has had serious economic difficulty in the past few years.

Southern European countries have much larger populations than their northern European counterparts. Italy has a population of about 62 million people and Spain has about 49 million. Both Portugal and Greece have more than ten million. Cultural factors are also different in this region than in northern Europe. The culture of southern Europe has been built around agriculture.

Traditional cuisine is based on locally grown fresh food and wine. Olive oil and wine have been major agricultural exports. The main languages of Iberia and Italy are based on the Romance language group, and Greek is an independent branch of the Indo-European language family. The most dominant religious affiliation in the south is Roman Catholicism, except in Greece, where the Eastern (Greek) Orthodox Church is prominent.



Because of its diversity, Spain is not categorized as a nation-state.

Spain is the most diverse nation in southern Europe with a number of distinct ethnic groups. The Basques in the north along the French border would like to separate and create their own nation-state. The region of Galicia in northwest Spain is an autonomous region and was once its own kingdom. There are many other independent communities in Spain, each with its own distinct heritage and culture.

Farther east in the Mediterranean is the island state of Cyprus, which is divided by Greek and Turkish ethnic groups. The southern part of the island is dominated by Greek heritage and culture, and the northern part of the island is dominated by Turkish culture and traditions. Islam is the main religion of the Turkish north. The people of southern Europe are diverse and hold to many different traditions but are tied together by the sea and the land, which creates similar lifestyles and economic activities.

The Cities of Italy

Italy has a population of about 60 million people, with about 68 percent living in cities. Italian culture balances the food and lifestyle of the rural countryside with the history and heritage of the cities. Cultural regions such as Tuscany, along the northwest coast, or Sicily, the island to the south, evoke thoughts of Italian heritage and culture. The large cities of Italy each have their own draw and persona that emulates the nation's heritage and history. Italy has four cities with population estimates of over one million people each, and a number of others are major cultural centers. The metropolitan areas around these cities can be extensive.

Rome, Italy's capital and its largest city, was at the center of the Roman Empire and has a significant historical connection to the culture and heritage of Italy. Rome is also home to Vatican City, which holds a separate political identity. The Vatican City is home to the pope, who is the head of the Roman Catholic Church. Rome provides a historical and political center for the nation of Italy and is located along the Ancona Line, which distinguishes northern Italy from southern Italy.

The northern city of Milan is a core industrial center for the nation and for Europe. With a large metropolitan area, the city of Milan has a long history as a center of industry and power. The city continues to hold its powerful status and has expanded its international reach into the world of high-end fashion and the arts.

Naples is located along the west coast to the south of Rome. Founded by the Greeks as a colony, Naples was transferred to the Roman Empire. This historic city is home to many artistic, musical, and cultural activities that emulate the heritage of the Italian people from the time of the Renaissance.



The central part of the city of Naples, Italy, is a UNESCO World Heritage Site. Italy is densely populated with many historical cities emulating the culture and traditions of each part of the country.

The industrial city of Turin (Torino) is located in northwest Italy in the Alpine region on the banks of the Po River. Turin is second only to Milan in its industrial capacity within Italy. Automobile manufacturing as well as prestigious universities, art galleries, and cultural centers can be found here. The hosting of the 2006 Winter Olympics gave witness to Turin's capacity and success.

Palermo is located on the island of Sicily. Founded by the Phoenicians, this city became the capital of the kingdom of Sicily. Palermo is the center of culture and cuisine for Sicily and has been a destination for tourists from around the world. Italy's mild Mediterranean climate has enhanced tourism opportunities for many Italian cities such as Palermo.

Florence and Venice each have their own unique characteristics. Traditionally, Florence has been a city of commerce, trade, and the arts. Located in the Tuscany region, it is often referred to as the birthplace of the Renaissance. Florence is a UNESCO World Heritage Site and is noted for its art and architecture. Venice is located on the northeast coast of Italy at the edge of the

Adriatic Sea. The city was a powerful trade and commerce center in the Middle Ages and during the Renaissance. Often referred to with romantic overtones, the city is built on 117 small islands using canals as streets. The uniqueness of the landscape, arts, food, and architecture make this city one of the major tourist destinations in Italy.

Major Cities in Italy

Rank by Population	Population Estimate
1. Rome (capital)	3.357 million
2. Milan	2.962 million
3. Naples	2.27 million
4. Turin (Torino)	1.662 million
5. Palermo	872,000
8. Florence	381,762
13. Venice	297,743

Population is for city only and not for metropolitan area.

Source

Central Europe

The specific states located in the western part of the European mainland are often referred to as Central Europe. The term *Western Europe* is also applicable to this region when discussing regional variations within the realm outside of Eastern Europe. Germany and France are the two dominant states, with Belgium, the Netherlands, and Luxembourg making up the Benelux countries. Switzerland and Austria border the Alpine region.

The mini-state of Liechtenstein is located on the border between Switzerland and Austria. France is the only country with coastlines on both the Atlantic Ocean and the Mediterranean. These countries are located in the core economic region of Europe and have stable democratic governments and a relatively high standard of living by world comparisons.



Barges transport goods along the beautiful Rhine River in Germany, where historic towns share the landscape.

Central Europe is a powerhouse of global economics. The Rhine River is a pathway for industrial activity from southern Germany to Europe's busiest port of Rotterdam in the Netherlands. Western France has the political capital of the EU along the Rhine at Strasbourg. To the south is France's 2nd largest city, Lyon, which is a major industrial center for modern technology.

Germany has the historical Ruhr industrial complex along the Rhine with the high-tech industries in southern Germany in the cities of Stuttgart, Mannheim, and Munich. Germany is the most populous country in Europe, with over 80 million people in 2017. Germany is also Europe's largest economy and has the largest GDP overall as a country. Belgium has major business centers in Brussels and Antwerp.

Switzerland is noted for its banking and financial markets. Luxembourg has one of the highest GDP per capita in all of Europe. Austria is noted for its high level of cultural activities in Vienna and Salzburg. All these countries complement each other in creating one of the dominant economic core areas in the world.

In the first half of the 20th century, the political geography of Central Europe was not conducive to the high level of economic cooperation that now exists. In World War II, Germany and France were on opposite sides, and the Benelux countries were caught in the middle. The cultural differences between the Germans and the French start with the differences in language and religious affiliation.

Germany was divided after World War II into East Germany and West Germany, separated by the Iron Curtain and the Berlin Wall. East Germany was under a Communist government, and West Germany was a capitalist democracy. They were reunited in 1990 when the Iron Curtain and the Berlin Wall came down. The two countries merged under one government. Europe is gradually being united economically, but each country or region still retains its cultural uniqueness.

The Benelux Countries

The Benelux countries have a great deal in common historically. Before the economic union that created the term *Benelux*, these countries were collectively referred to as the Low Countries because of their relative position to sea level. The Benelux countries are some of the most densely populated countries. They have managed to work together toward a common economic objective in spite of their cultural differences.

The capital and largest city in Belgium is Brussels, with the other urban areas being the ports of Antwerp and Ghent. Belgium is split into three large geographic areas. The dominant language in the northern region of Flanders is Dutch (Flemish), and the people are known as Flemings. In the southern region of Wallonia, most people speak French and are known as Walloons. German is the third official language and is spoken along the eastern border.

When the Industrial Revolution spread across the English Channel and arrived in Europe, Belgium was one of the early countries to adapt to the technological developments. Belgium remains heavily industrialized and is a major exporter of products, including finished diamonds, food products, metals, technology, petroleum products, and plastics. In general, Belgium imports the raw materials to manufacture these goods for export.

Belgium also has a significant services sector. The services sector, including real estate, hotels, restaurants, and entertainment, thrives in part because Brussels is the headquarters of the North Atlantic Treaty Organization (NATO) and components of the EU. Many countries and organizations maintain offices in Brussels to have easy access to these headquarters. Therefore, Brussels is the temporary home to many diplomats and foreign business people.



Brussels is connected to other European cities through high-speed rail networks.

The European country of the Netherlands also includes the colonies of the Netherlands Antilles in the Caribbean. The Netherlands, sometimes called *Holland*, is actually the name of two provinces (North Holland and South Holland) in the northwest part of the country. The largest city is Amsterdam. The Hague is the seat of government and is home to the United Nations International Court of Justice.

Rotterdam is located at the mouth of the Rhine River and is one of the busiest ports on the continent. The country is famous for its Zuider Zee, which is the large inland region below sea level that has been drained of water and surrounded with an extensive dike

protecting it from the North Sea. Reclaiming land from the sea in areas called polders has provided this densely populated country with more land area for its people.

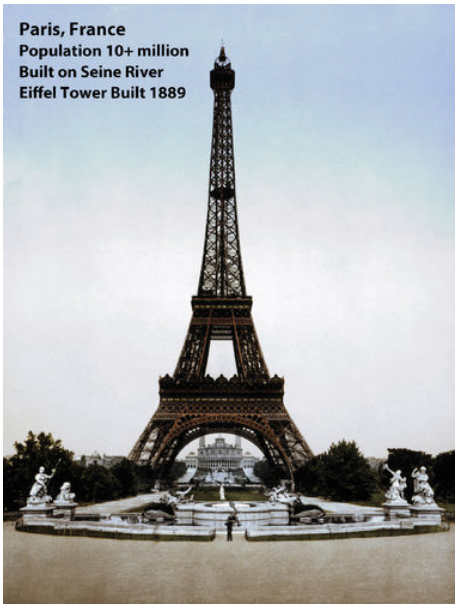
For a small country with few natural resources, the Netherlands has an impressive GDP. The Dutch have made good use of their location on the North Sea and of the location of several large navigable rivers. This has facilitated massive exports to the inland parts of Europe. The major industries include food processing, chemicals, petroleum refining, and electrical machinery. The Netherlands is a top exporter of agricultural products, which contribute substantially to its economy. Dutch agricultural exports consist of fresh-cut plants, flowers, and bulbs as well as tomatoes, peppers, and cucumbers.

Luxembourg is a small, landlocked country. The main languages spoken are French, German, and Luxembourgish. Luxembourg's one major city is Luxembourg City. Luxembourg has an enviable economic situation with a stable and prosperous economy, low unemployment, and low inflation. Thanks to rich iron-ore deposits, this country was able to develop a robust steel industry, which was the cornerstone of the nation's prosperity until the 1970s. As steel declined, Luxembourg remade itself as an important world financial center. Luxembourg leads Europe as the center for private banking and insurance industries and is second only to the United States in terms of being an investment fund center.

France

France covers 211,209 square miles and is the 2nd largest European country. The physical landscapes of France vary widely from the northern low-lying coastal plains to the Alpine ranges of the east. Mont Blanc, the highest mountain in the Alpine range at 15,782 feet, is located in France near the Italian border. In the far south, the Pyrenees run along the border with Spain. The south-central region of the country is home to the Massif Central, which is a plateau and highland region made up of a large stretch of extinct volcanoes.

During the colonial era, France was a major naval power and held colonies around the world. The French Empire was the second-largest at the time. The French language is still used for diplomacy in many countries. Though the French Empire no longer exists, France has progressed into a postindustrial country with one of the most developed economies in the world. It is a major player in European affairs, the EU, and the United Nations (UN). France is a democratic republic that boasts a high-quality public education system and long life expectancies.



The Eiffel Tower, a symbol of the primate city of Paris, was built in 1889. The city of Paris started as a citadel on an island in the middle of the Seine River.

In 2017, France's population was about 63 million, with almost 11 million living in France's primate city of Paris. The city of Paris is favorably situated with regard to its surrounding area. It is a major core area of France serving a large peripheral region of the country. The next largest city of Lyon, which is a major high-tech industrial center for Europe's economy, has a population of about 1.6 million. Even with a large population, the country is able to produce enough food for its domestic needs and for export profits. France leads Europe in agricultural production.

France enjoys a robust economy and is one of the world's leading industrial producers. Its industrial pursuits are diverse, including the manufacture of airplanes, trains, and automobiles, as well as textiles, telecommunications, food products, pharmaceuticals, construction and civil engineering, chemicals, and mechanical equipment and machine tools. Additionally, defense-related industries make up a significant sector of the economy. France's production of military weapons is recognized worldwide. The country has been a leader in the use of nuclear energy to produce electricity. Nuclear energy supplies about 80 percent of the country's electricity, which reduces the need for fossil fuels and imported oil.

Agriculture is an important sector of the French economy and is tied to the food processing industry, which employs more people than any other part of the French manufacturing sector. Cheese and wine are two of its largest food processing endeavors, along with sugar beets, meats, and confectioneries. World-renowned wines are produced in abundance, sometimes in areas that bear their names, such as in Burgundy, around the city of Bordeaux, and in Champagne in the Loire Valley.

French cuisine and fashion have long been held in the highest esteem worldwide and are a source of national pride. Food and wine are important elements of the French way of life, and each region of France boasts a suite of famous dishes.

Because of the climate and favorable soil conditions, agriculture is highly productive and profitable for France. France is second only to the United States in terms of agricultural exports. Exports mainly go to other EU countries, to the United States, and to some countries in Africa.

The plains of northern France are excellent for wheat. Dairy products are a specialty in the western regions of France, which also produce pork, poultry, and apples. Cattle are raised in the central portion, where a cooler, wetter climate provides tracts of grasslands for grazing. Fruits (including wine grapes) and vegetables are grown in the central and southern regions. The region around the Mediterranean has a hot and dry weather climate, which is ideal for growing grapes and other fruits and vegetables.

France's Home Front

French governments have been challenged by the country's high unemployment rates. In response to decades of high unemployment, the French government has, over time, introduced legislation to try to distribute available work more evenly among the population. Long periods of unemployment and underemployment put France at risk of developing a permanent underclass. The unemployment rate tends to be higher for women, and women tend to have lower-paying jobs. Additionally, women are underrepresented in government.

France has a significant immigrant population, which means that, as in many countries with newcomers, the settlement and integration of new arrivals is an issue. Some have blamed the high youth crime rate not just on unemployment but on governmental failure to fully integrate immigrants into French society. Another demographic matter is a strong rural-to-urban shift. As people move to the cities, rural areas are significantly depopulated. Though more than 70 languages are spoken in France due to its large immigrant population, French has been recognized as the official language by law.

Eighty percent of French people identify themselves as Roman Catholics, though the percentage of practicing Catholics is much lower and declining. Approximately one-third of Europe's Jewish population resides in France. About five percent of the population identifies with Islam, which is a growing population because of immigrants from North Africa. Most of these immigrants target urban areas in search of employment and opportunity.

In 1995, France experienced three terrorist attacks, which killed eight people and wounded more than one hundred. The situation of unemployed, disenfranchised youth can provide the perfect setting from which to attract new terrorist recruits. After decades of dealing with this type of unrest, France passed laws in response to the 1995 Islamic terrorist bombings that some civil libertarians found unsettling.

Many forms of surveillance are legal and routine, including forms of surveillance that violate private communications. France also passed a law prohibiting "association with wrong-doers involved in a terrorist enterprise." This gives French authorities the right to arrest, detain, try, and convict anyone suspected of any crime that might be even remotely related to terrorist activity. Balancing civil liberties with the quashing of terrorist plans has become a constant challenge for many countries, including France.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

Germany

Germany has been influenced by many cultures because of its central location in Europe. The present geopolitical configuration is young due to the recent reunification of East and West Germany in 1990. Germany was formed in 1871 during the leadership of Otto von Bismarck in an attempt to create a Germanic power base. World War I was fought during the last years of the German Empire. Germany, as part of the Central powers (Germany, Austria-Hungary, and Bulgaria), was defeated by the Allies with much loss of life. The German Republic was created in 1918 when, having been defeated in World War I, Germany was forced to sign the Treaty of Versailles.

In 1933, with an environment of poverty, disenfranchisement of the people, and great instability in the government, Germany gave way to the appointment of Adolf Hitler as chancellor of Germany. Within a month of taking office, Hitler suspended normal rights and freedoms and assumed absolute power. A centralized totalitarian state quickly resulted. In a move to expand Germany, Hitler started to expand its borders. Germany's invasion of Poland in 1939 kicked off what would become World War II. In 1941, Germany invaded the Soviet Union and declared war on the United States.

After Germany's defeat, the country was divided into East Germany, controlled by the Soviet Union, and West Germany, controlled by the Allied powers. The Iron Curtain divided East and West Germany, with the Berlin Wall dividing the city of Berlin. The Iron Curtain and the Berlin Wall were major symbols of the Cold War. In 1989, the Berlin Wall came down, and the country was united in 1990. Today, Germany is a vibrant country and an active EU member.



From this speech comes his famous quote, "Mr. Gorbachev, tear down this wall."

Germany is Europe's largest economy, with strong exports of manufactured goods. To gain national income, Germany has promoted manufacturing as a major part of its economy. Most exports are in automobiles, machinery, metals, and chemical goods. Germany has positioned itself strategically to take advantage of the growing global awareness of environmental issues and problems by focusing on improvements and manufacturing of wind turbines and solar power technology.

The service sector also contributes heavily to the economy. Deutsche Bank holds the enviable position of being one of the most profitable companies on the *Fortune* 500 list. Germany is also a major tourist destination. The Black Forest, Bavaria, the Alpine south, a variety of medieval castles, national parks, and a vibrant assortment of festivals such as Oktoberfest attract millions of tourists to Germany every year.

German reunification in 1990 posed some challenges for the economy. Notably, the East German infrastructure was far behind that of the West. In an effort to update transportation systems, telecommunications, and other areas needed to support industry and commerce, enormous amounts of money had to be poured into the system. While there has been considerable success in the renewal of infrastructure, unemployment in former East Germany is still significantly higher, and the necessary retraining of the workforce is ongoing and expensive.

Language, religion, and education have been strong cultural forces in Germany. German is the official language of the country and the one spoken by most of its people. More than 60 percent of Germans identify as Christian, and another 30 percent identify as agnostic or atheistic. During the Cold War, East Germany was under a Communist government that promoted a nonreligious ideology, resulting in a high percentage of people with agnostic or atheistic beliefs in that part of Germany.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

Historically, there has been a strong connection between religious reformation and education. The early leaders of the Christian Reformation were mostly educated themselves and were strong advocates of education, which they viewed as a path to positive moral and social reform. The German tradition of excellence in education continues. Education is provided at no cost to students at all levels, including the university level, though some universities are beginning to charge modest amounts for tuition.

The Alpine Center

Landlocked in the center of Europe are the two main states of Switzerland and Austria. Sandwiched on the border of these two states is the mini-state of Lichtenstein. This region is dominated by the Alpine ranges. Switzerland is divided into 26 cantons (states). Because of its location and close ties with neighboring countries, four languages are spoken in Switzerland: German, French, Italian, and Romansh. Typically, one language predominates in any given canton. Berne is the country's capital, and Geneva, Zurich, and Basel are the other major cities. As of 2017, Switzerland's population was over eight million. Its land area is just slightly larger than the US state of Maryland.

Internationally, Switzerland is well known for its political neutrality. The United Nations (UN) European offices, the Red Cross and the main offices of many international organizations are located in Switzerland. Switzerland joined the UN in 2002 and has applied for EU membership. Swiss culture is thought to have benefited from Switzerland's neutrality. During times of war and political turmoil, many people found refuge within the Swiss borders. Swiss banking practices and policies are known throughout the world, and Swiss banks have benefited greatly from the country's politically neutral status. Banking is one of the country's top employers and sources of income. Swiss people enjoy a high standard of living.

Switzerland has also produced excellence in many sports, including hockey, skiing, and tennis. There is an emphasis on science in Swiss culture with good historical reason. The field of modern chemistry originated in Switzerland. The Bernoulli family, famed for their significant contributions to mathematics over many years are from Basel. The Federal Institute of Technology in Zürich, one of the top-ranked universities in the world, has produced an unusually high number of Nobel Prize winners. Albert Einstein, though born in Germany, relocated to Switzerland and later became a Swiss citizen.



A Viennese specialty, it is a strong black coffee served in a glass and topped with whipped cream; it comes with powdered sugar, which is served separately.

Austria is larger than its neighbor Switzerland and is similar in area to the US state of South Carolina. In 2017, the population was estimated at a little more than 8.7 million. Austria has various Alpine ranges, with the highest peak at 12,457 feet in elevation. Only about one-fourth of the land area is considered low lying for habitation. The Danube River flows through the country, including the capital city of Vienna. Austria has a well-developed social market economy and a high standard of living.

For more than 600 years, beginning just before the dawn of the 14th century, Austria was tightly associated with its ruling dynasty, the Habsburgs. The Hapsburgs came to power in a new way with the formation of the Austrian Empire in 1804. In Germany's rise to power before World War II, Hitler annexed his native Austria to Germany. Austria regained its independence a decade after the

war ended and joined the EU in 1995. Austria is a German-speaking country, and nearly the entire population identifies as ethnic Austrian.

Austria is predominantly Roman Catholic and was home to many monasteries in the Middle Ages, which influenced the Austrian literary tradition. Austria's best-known cities are Vienna, Salzburg, and Innsbruck. Vienna was the center of the Habsburg and Austrian Empires and earned a place as one of the world's great cities. It is famed for its baroque architecture, music, and theater. Music, drama, and art thrived for centuries in Austria because the Habsburgs were great patrons of the arts. The country has been home to many famous composers and musicians and is the setting for the story behind the movie *The Sound of Music*.

The British Isles

The British Isles are an archipelago (a group of islands) separated from the European mainland by the English Channel. The British Isles are often included in the region of Western Europe when discussing political geography; however, the fact that they are separated from the mainland of Europe by water provides them with a separate identity. The British Isles consists of two separate, independent countries: the Republic of Ireland and Great Britain.

The United Kingdom (UK) of Great Britain consists of the regions of England, Scotland, Wales, and Northern Ireland. All four regions are now under the UK government. The Republic of Ireland is independent of the United Kingdom and does not include Northern Ireland. The primate city and UK capital is London, which is a financial center for Europe. The capital city of the Republic of Ireland is Dublin.



This photograph of London on the Thames River depicts a thriving city.

Influenced by the Gulf Stream, the climate of the British Isles is moderate, in spite of its northern latitude location. The UK and Ireland are located above the 50th degree of latitude, which is farther north than the US-Canadian border. The northern latitude would normally place this region into the type D climates, with harsher winters and more extreme seasonal temperatures. However, the surrounding water moderates temperature, creating the moderate type C climate that covers most of the British Isles. The Gulf Stream pulls warm water from the tropics and circulates it north, off the coast of Europe, to moderate the temperature of Western Europe.

The Western Highlands and the Northern Lowlands dominate the islands. Scotland, Wales, and parts of England have highland regions with short mountains and rugged terrain. The lowlands of southern England, Ireland, and central Scotland offer agricultural opportunities. The Pennines mountain chain runs through northern England and was the source of the coal, ores, and waterpower that fueled the Industrial Revolution. To the east of Britain is the North Sea, which provided an abundance of oil for energy and wealth.

Though the heritage of the British Isles is unique to this region, the geographic dynamics are similar to Central Europe—smaller families, urbanization, industrialization, high incomes, and involvement with economic globalization. The EU has had an enormous influence on the British Isles. Ireland has embraced the EU's economic connections, but the British people have been hesitant to give full autonomy to the EU. This reluctance can be noted in the fact that the United Kingdom kept the British pound sterling as their currency standard after the euro currency was implemented. However, the Republic of Ireland converted to the euro currency.

The regions of the British Isles follow similar dynamics to those of other countries in Western Europe. Though some regions are not as wealthy as others, they all demonstrate a high level of industrialization, urbanization, and technology. These urban societies have smaller families and higher incomes and are heavy consumers of energy, goods, and services. Just as the Industrial Revolution attracted cheap labor, the aging workforce has enticed people from former British colonies to migrate to the United Kingdom in search of increased employment opportunities. The mix of immigrants with local culture creates a diverse community. London has diverse communities with many ethnic businesses and business owners.

Devolutionary forces are active in the United Kingdom. Scotland and Wales are already governing with their own local parliaments. Devolutionary cultural differences can be noted by studying the different cultures found in each region. Just as the Welsh language is still alive in Wales, Gaelic continues in Ireland and Scotland. Each region has made efforts to retain local heritage and rally support for its own nation-state.

Northern England



The first iron bridge ever built (1879) was located in central England, home of the Industrial Revolution.

Major industrial cities such as Manchester and Birmingham brought together the labor, raw materials, and industry connections necessary to manufacture products during the Industrial Revolution. The port city of Liverpool gave access to the world markets established by Britain's extensive colonial empire. These colonies provided raw materials, new ideas, and cheap labor for the new industrial factories. Raw materials such as cotton, which did not grow well in Britain, became a major import that fueled the textile mills of the Industrial Revolution.

Industrialization caused a rural-to-urban shift in Britain. In 1800, only nine percent of the population lived in urban areas. By 1900, about 62 percent lived in cities and towns. As of 2010, over 90 percent of Britain’s population is composed of urban dwellers. The British colonial empire also caused a migration pattern whereby people moved from colonies to the home country, with the core area located in the Midlands of northern England.

Cheap immigrant labor and resources from the colonies provided the manufacturing enterprises of wealthy British industrialists with good fortunes. Raw cotton was brought in from the colonies of India and Egypt. Cheap labor, brought in from the Caribbean and South Asia, resulted in a more diverse population in the industrialized northern England.

As the information-age developed, the industrial centers of northern England gave way to a post-industrialized southern England. The North’s heavy industries experienced a decline in demand. Factories closed, production became automated, and unemployment increased. The transition from the Industrial Revolution to a postindustrial society turned northern England into the Rust Belt of the British Isles. The port of Liverpool has been updated with modern and automated systems that do not require the high level of manual labor that was necessary during earlier industrial times. Rail service connects Liverpool with London, which is connected to Paris through a tunnel under the English Channel called the Chunnel.

The postindustrial economic activities have shifted the focus of employment away from manual labor to the service sector of information. Many places have looked to tourism to boost their economic situation. Northern England has many attractive physical environments that have been developed into major tourist attractions. The Lake District of northern England is a noted vacation destination, and short mountains and scenic landscapes attracted a number of England’s writers.

The city of Blackpool on the Irish Sea, just north of Liverpool, is a major vacation destination for the English. The dales and moors of northern England, complemented by the short Pennines, provide a sharp contrast to the urban metropolitan landscapes of London and southern England.

Southern England

Anchored by the primate city of London, southern England also is home to the universities of Oxford and Cambridge. This is Great Britain's most affluent region and is a center of postindustrial activity. Located on the Thames River, London is a central player in the world economic markets. Southern England also houses about one-third of the UK population. With immigration from the former colonies, this region is also becoming more diverse. This is an urbanized region, where the cost of living, transportation, and housing is high. For example, the price of gasoline in the United Kingdom might be two or three times that in the United States. Many city dwellers use public transportation because of the high cost of owning a vehicle.

England is the most populous region of the United Kingdom with a density of about 1000 people per square mile. About one-half of the population increase is because of immigration. The UK population is declining as a result of smaller family sizes and a growing number of senior citizens. This trend is common in countries in stage 5 of the index of economic development. England's population is becoming more diverse as Immigrants from many parts of the world have targeted England as their new home. Many are from former British colonies in Asia and Africa. Islam is the fastest growing religion, even though Muslims make up less than 10 percent of the total population. London has a growing Sikh community as well.



The clock tower of Big Ben is a local landmark.

London is not only the primate city and capital of the United Kingdom; it is the largest administrative municipality in the entire EU. Only Paris has a larger metropolitan area. London is a global center that holds prominence in world markets and the globalization process. About one-fifth of Europe's largest corporations have their headquarters in London. The city's cultural influence is felt around the world in the fashion industry, media, entertainment, and the arts. London is an international city that has a powerful draw for tourists. The core economic region of Europe is anchored by London's international recognition.

Southern England is also home to Great Britain's seat of government. The UK government is considered a constitutional monarchy with a king or queen as head of state. The parliament is the official legislative body with a prime minister as head of government. The parliament has two bodies: the House of Commons, whose members are elected, and the House of Lords, whose members are appointed for life. As head of state, the monarch is mainly a figurehead with little actual political power. A number of dependencies remain under the British Crown as far as sovereignty is concerned. Small islands such as Guernsey, Jersey, the Isle of Man, and various islands in the Caribbean and Atlantic and Pacific Oceans remain under the British government for administrative, economic, and defense purposes.

Wales

A highland region to the west of England, Wales has a Celtic heritage where the Welsh language and stories of coal mining can still be heard. However, the English language has become more dominant and tourism has replaced coal mining as the main economic activity. The decline in the use of coal depressed the economy but did not depress the culture and heritage of the Welsh people. The largest city and capital of Wales is Cardiff. In the early 20th century, the port of Cardiff handled the largest amount of coal in the world. The decline in coal mining has reduced the shipping activity in the port of Cardiff in the 21st century.

Devolution is currently happening in Wales. Welsh nationalism prompted the declaration of a separate parliament in the capital of Cardiff. The break with London provided local autonomy, but Wales is still reliant on the United Kingdom in national and foreign affairs. Many of the young people in Wales emigrate to find work because of the depressed economy. Emigration has caused a leveling off of population growth, and the number of people who speak Welsh has diminished. Wales and England share a common Protestant Christian religion. Wales is turning to tourism as a means of economic income. The scenic landscape of the highland region with its many castles provides a pleasant experience for tourists.

Scotland

United with England in 1707, Scotland has integrated into the United Kingdom while keeping its separate heritage and culture. Scotland has strong centripetal forces uniting the Scottish people, including victories over the British by Scottish clans lead by William Wallace in 1297 and Robert the Bruce in 1314. These events within Scotland have created a devolutionary split with the UK parliament.

In the quest to become a nation-state, in 1997 Scotland received permission to create its own parliament to govern local affairs. Though Scotland would like to separate into an independent state, they do not wish to isolate themselves from the EU or greater Europe. This contradiction in which local states want self-rule but also want to remain within the larger regional community for economic and national security is common. The phrase “separate within the Union” is surfacing in Europe with stronger voices. For now, Scotland remains under the British Crown and shares a Protestant Christian heritage with the UK.

The Scottish Highlands provide for livestock production, and the central Scottish Lowlands are favorable for agriculture. The North Sea has extensive oil resources. With resources such as these, Scotland is in a position to gain wealth and support its small population of about five million people. As an early export product, scotch whiskey has profited many whiskey marketers and has become the largest export product of Scotland. Scotland benefited and gained wealth during the Industrial Revolution. As a part of an island, early shipbuilding produced ships that brought about trade and development that coincided with European colonialism.

Postindustrial activities have become a focus of the current economy. High-tech computer industries have concentrated in Silicon Glen, an information-age industrial sector that lies between Scotland’s largest city, Glasgow, and its capital of Edinburgh. With natural resources and postindustrial opportunities, Scotland is in a good position to compete in the global economic community. Scottish banking firms reach around the globe through their investment holdings. Scotland attracts a healthy tourism market with its Highlands and many castles. Kilts and bagpipes are a part of Scottish history and often distinguish themselves as a part of the region’s heritage. The game of golf originated in Scotland and is still popular today.

Northern Ireland

Northern Ireland is a place in which strong cultural forces often erupt into violence. Officially part of the United Kingdom, this small region with about 1.7 million people has developed a unique set of cultural problems. Most people consider religious differences to be the main problem in Northern Ireland. People of Irish heritage are predominately Roman Catholic, and those of Scottish and English heritages are usually Protestant Christians.

The core of the cultural problems in Northern Ireland is actually based on political affiliations. Most of the population in the region is not Irish. About 55 percent of the population is of Scottish or English descent, with only about 45 percent of Irish descent. The real problem centers on the governing of Ireland. The Irish would like to see Northern Ireland join with the Republic of Ireland, which received its independence from the British in 1921.

The Irish do not want to be under the UK parliament with the Queen of England as head of state. They want total independence from the United Kingdom. The non-Irish population does not want to be a part of the Republic of Ireland and its Irish parliament and would rather remain under the British Crown. The people of Scottish descent would prefer total independence from all outside forces. English people want to remain with the UK parliament.



Protestant group in a Belfast parade celebrating King William of Orange.

The troubles of Northern Ireland have diminished its economic and employment opportunities. Underground paramilitary groups such as the Irish Republican Army (IRA) have heightened tensions between the two groups for decades, with car bombings and other terrorist acts. As the younger generation seeks more opportunities and advantages, the issues that separate the two sides could diminish. The hatred that has been built up over the years could be eased with each new generation if centripetal forces work to bridge the differences and unite the social fabric. If the killing and hatred are passed down to successive generations, it will only take longer to recover.

In 1998, after a series of terrorist acts that were condemned on all sides, a movement took place to create the Northern Ireland Assembly with members of both sides of the division. Obstacles continue to surface to disrupt this calming process, but there is hope that in the future solutions can work toward producing a lasting peace. The devolutionary forces active in Wales and Scotland may act to create a more separate Northern Ireland. The Northern Ireland Assembly was only one step. Progress in Northern Ireland is an uphill battle with high unemployment, a poor resource base, and few economic opportunities. Only by working together will Northern Ireland become a stable, peaceful part of the British Isles.

The Republic of Ireland

The whole island of Ireland was under British control for centuries. In 1921, independence was gained from the British for all but Northern Ireland. This bitterly fought conflict has become well entrenched in Irish culture and literature. As an independent country separate from the United Kingdom, the Republic of Ireland has become a part of the global economic community. Because the climate is type C, there is adequate rainfall for crops and vegetation, and the green landscape gives it the title, “The Emerald Isle.” The island has few other natural resources. There are trees but no large forest reserves for commercial exploitation. Peat, which is an early version of coal, is cut from the bogs and burned as fuel.

Ireland is not a large country. It is just a bit larger than the US state of West Virginia, with a population of about four million. There are no tall mountain ranges in Ireland. The soils are traditionally rocky with few nutrients. Before colonial times, traditional food crops included turnips and rutabagas. When the potato was imported from the Americas, it was well received in Ireland. The potato plant grew well and replaced traditional root crops as the main food source.

In the early 1800s, the population of the whole of Ireland (including what is now Northern Ireland) was as high as eight million. Starting in the 1840s, blight and rot destroyed much of the potato crop year after year, causing a serious famine in Ireland. More than one million people died, and another two million people left the island. The potato famine caused losses such as that of the Black Death, which had ravaged Europe centuries earlier.

The history of the Black Death may have led to the term *Black Irish*, which referred to people who fled Ireland during the potato famine and immigrated to the United States. They were often regarded as lower-class citizens and were discriminated against. Well-established Irish families having immigrated to the United States before the 1840s were not considered Black Irish and assimilated into mainstream American society more easily.

The lack of natural resources and the lack of opportunities and advantages held back the Republic of Ireland from developing a strong economy. It was not until the 1990's that conditions improved. With the creation of the EU and advancements in communication, Ireland became an ideal location for expanding North American corporations. The attractive elements included a mild climate, a similar English language, an educated workforce, and a low cost of living.

Many high-tech computer firms, communication companies, and automated industries established their base of operations in Ireland—Dublin in particular. Because Ireland was a member of the EU, it was a convenient location between the United States and the European mainland. Business boomed in the 1990s, and incomes and the cost of living rose. Tourism also has become a growing sector of the economy. The economic growth in Ireland earned it the title Celtic Tiger to indicate its growing economic power.

The rapidly expanding economic conditions of the 1990s have not extended into the 21st century. Since 2007, the global depression has taken its toll on the Irish economy. Starting in 2008, the country witnessed a sharp increase in unemployment that coincided with serious banking scandals. Various banks have been targeted for bailout funds from the government, and the economy witnessed a sharp decline. Property values plummeted, and protesters staged demonstrations in the streets demanding the government address the economic situation.

Tourism has helped the situation by highlighting the Emerald Isle's mild climate and green countryside. Cities such as Dublin are working with the growing pains of recovery in the economic recession. Unemployment remains a concern, as well as declining economic opportunities. Overall, Ireland is working to reposition itself for future economic growth. The country wants to maintain itself as an important link in the EU's relationship with the United States. Ireland is bracing itself for a sluggish economic road ahead.

Key Takeaways

- Western Europe can be divided into a number of smaller geographic regions, including northern Europe, southern Europe, Central Europe, and the British Isles.
- The differences in climate, terrain, and natural resources provide for a diversity of economic activities that influence cultural development within the European community.
- The countries of Western Europe have high standards of living compared with world standards.
- The southern countries of Portugal, Greece, and southern Italy are more agrarian and have been struggling economically since the global recession began in 2007.
- The British Isles comprise the two independent countries of Great Britain and the Republic of Ireland.
- Great Britain is made up of five geographical regions, with Wales and Scotland having more autonomy to govern local affairs.
- Since World War II, the many states of Western Europe have been evolving into a more integrated realm.
- Each nation has worked to develop its economy to take advantage of its physical geography and its cultural history and heritage.
- Devolutionary forces remain strong in many areas to counterbalance the forces of supranationalism.

Vocabulary Terms

capitalism	An economic system based on private property and free enterprise
chernozem	the rich black topsoil found in the North European Plain, especially in Russia and Ukraine
Chunnel	Underwater tunnel that links Great Britain and France
Eastern Europe	From Cold War point of view when the Soviet Union took control of the region after World War II (Russia, Poland, East Germany). Also known as "Eastern Bloc"
Eurasia	A large land mass that includes the continents of Europe and Asia
fjord	A glacial valley or glacial trough found along the coast that is now filled with a mixture of fresh water and seawater
imperialism	A policy in which a strong nation seeks to dominate other countries politically, socially, and economically
Industrial Revolution	A series of improvements in industrial technology that transformed the process of manufacturing goods--from 1750 to 1850
North Atlantic Treaty Organization (NATO)	Created in 1949, an organization, all of whom agreed to combine military forces and to treat a war against one as a war against all
peninsula	A piece of land that is surrounded by water on three sides
polder	An area of low-lying land that has been reclaimed from the sea
Western Europe	The region comprising the westerly countries of Europe (Spain, Portugal, France, Great Britain)

Applying Knowledge

Interactive Notebook Activities

1. List and describe the various traditional regions of Western Europe.
2. Summarize briefly how the physical geography varies from region to region.
3. Explain how each region has met the challenges of retaining its cultural identity or uniqueness.
4. Describe how each region has developed an industrialized economy.

Discussion and Study Questions

1. Outline the main economic activities for each of the regions of Western Europe.
2. How have strong egalitarian ideals shaped northern European countries?
3. How are the differences between northern and southern Italy a reflection of southern Europe as a whole?
4. Outline where devolutionary forces are active in Western Europe.
5. Which of the states of Western Europe most resembles a nation-state?
6. Why is there an increased level of cultural diversity in France and other parts of Western Europe?
7. How do the demographic dynamics differ between northern Europe and southern Europe?
8. How does agricultural production vary with physical geography in Western Europe?
9. What are the key factors that make Western Europe an economic core area of the world?
10. How are the troubles in Northern Ireland similar to or different from the Basque situation?

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

Real-World Geography Exercise

1. Using Google Maps, complete the following activities:
    a. Locate each place on the bulleted list below.
    b. Find the nearest city with an international airport in proximity to each location on the bulleted list below.
    c. Calculate the distance and travel time by plane to each city from the Bradley International Airport in Hartford, Connecticut.
2. Using NASA Latitude and Longitude Finder, determine the latitude and longitude for each location on the bulleted list below.
3. Be prepared to share and discuss your answers.

- Baltic Sea
- Greenland
- Faeroe Islands
- Balkan Peninsula

Mapping Exercise

Mapping Our World Module 6 Lesson 1

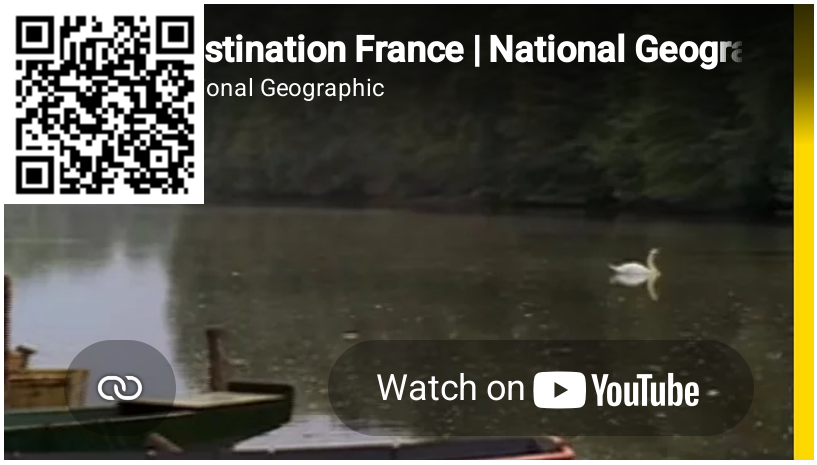
Wealth of Nations: In this activity, students will use maps of percentages of GDP in the three sectors to explore patterns of development around the world. Students will also examine two other economic indicators — energy use and GDP per capita — and compare the maps of GDP in economic sectors to the maps of GDP per capita and energy use. Students will evaluate whether or not the economic sector criteria are good indicators of a country's economic status.

Student Answer Doc-download

Student Assessment Doc-download

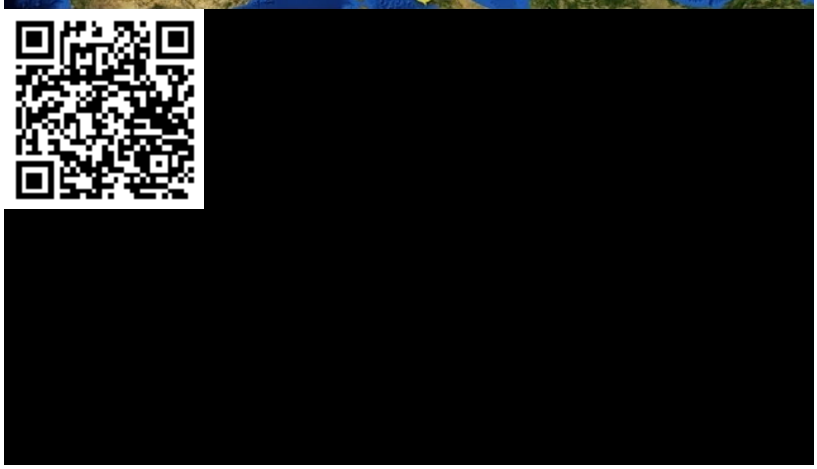
Teacher Materials-download

Videos for Geography Enrichment









https://k12.libretexts.org/@go/page/1886



Helpful Websites for the Study of Geography

Canadian Encyclopedia is an encyclopedia funded by the Canadian government covering all branches of knowledge. Their scholarly collection includes interactive materials.

CIA World Factbook provides information on the people, history, government, economy, energy, geography, communications, transportation, military, and transnational issues for the world's entities.

Congress.gov is a US government website where you can find federal legislation, past and present, as well as information about the US legal system.

Drug Enforcement Administration (DEA) is a government agency website that provides current news, resources, topics of interest, information about drugs, careers in the DEA, and a tip hotline.

Library of Congress is the largest library in the world and provides manuscripts, files, information, pictures, and videos.

NASA Earth Observatory (NEO) is a US government agency website that allows users to search for and retrieve satellite images of Earth.

National Archives is a US government website that provides historical documents, photos, records, publications, and educator resources.

National Oceanic and Atmospheric Association (NOAA) is a US government agency website that provides weather-related information and ocean research.

National Map is a website by the United States Geological Survey and other federal, state, and local agencies that delivers topographic information for the United States.

NationMaster is a massive central data source and a handy way to graphically compare nations.

Real-Time World Air Quality Index is a website that measures most locations in the world for air pollution in real time.

StateMaster is a unique statistical database, which allows you to research and compare a multitude of different data on US states.

United Nations (UN) is an international organization founded in 1945 and made up of 193 member states. The UN maintains international peace and security, protects human rights, delivers humanitarian aid, promotes sustainable development, and upholds international law.

United States Census Bureau is a US government agency that provides a population clock, data, surveys, statistics, a library with information and infographics, news about the economy, and much more.

United States Geological Survey (USGS) is a US government agency website that provides scientific information about the natural hazards that threaten lives, the natural resources we rely on, the health of our ecosystems and environment, and the impacts of climate and land-use change.

Whitehouse.gov is a US government website that provides the latest presidential news, information about the budget, policy, defense, and many more topics.

World Health Organization (WHO) is under the United Nations and provides leadership on matters critical to health, shapes the research agenda on health, and monitors the health situation and assessing health trends around the world. Their website provides information on the state of health around the world, outbreaks, current health news, and more.

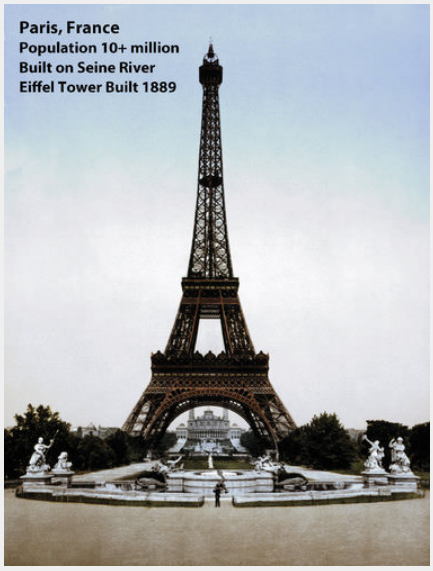
World Trade Organization (WTO) is an intergovernmental organization that regulates international trade. The website provides information on the history of the multilateral trading system, featured videos, news and events, trade topics, and more.

In 2017, France's population was about 63 million, with almost 11 million living in France's primate city of Paris. The city of Paris is favorably situated with regard to its surrounding area. It is a major core area of France serving a large peripheral region of the country. The next largest city of Lyon, which is a major high-tech industrial center for Europe's economy, has a population of about

LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

1.6 million. Even with a large population, the country is able to produce enough food for its domestic needs and for export profits. France leads Europe in agricultural production.

Image	Reference	Attributions
	**[Figure 1]**	**Credit:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeograp...estern-europe/ **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/d17d110dcc23ca847b5b3d9aa8ec4ef9.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 2]**	**Credit:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeograp...estern-europe/ **Source:** Photo courtesy of Condor Patagónico ; commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Stockholm_Port.jpg. **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 3]**	**Credit:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeograp...estern-europe/ **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/6bcd1c82e5f3fcf5f6155695c3bcf594.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 4]**	**Credit:** Wikimedia Commons – public domain. **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/35cace6800b2568d1652388dada9c722.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

	**[Figure 5]**	**Credit:** DaiLuo – Rail to Heaven – CC BY 2.0. **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/chapter/2-3-regions-of-western-europe/ **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 6]**	**Credit:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeograp...fa1403bedf.jpg **Source:** Photo courtesy of Clicgauche ; commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Ice_bruxelles.JPG. **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 7]**	**Credit:** Photo courtesy of the Library of Congress. **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/0091b204352da51ff8a72e8584665a5c.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 8]**	**Credit:** Wikimedia Commons – public domain. **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/5f676e4d7429cff51bbac3d73cbaf40c.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

	**[Figure 9]**	**Credit:** Lachlan Hardy – Vienna Coffee – CC BY 2.0. **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/585966c651ec891584fb45f154587272.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 10]**	**Credit:** Photo by R. Berglee – CC BY-NC-SA. **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/e898d0b0f157f969e9c82e4d35e8cd32.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 11]**	**Credit:** Wikimedia Commons – CC BY 2.0. **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/2a130f611df87aa20dc09d24574d645f.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 12]**	**Credit:** Photo by R. Berglee – CC BY-NC-SA. **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/40190ea3b5fcc4497b639abcf0599ea9.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0



[Figure 13]

Credit: IrishFireside – Belfast Parades – CC BY 2.0.
Source: open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/6ec67f1aa9c1830e4f39abf9da737581.jpg
License: CC BY-NC 3.0

This page titled 5.4: Western Europe (2 Days) is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by CK12 via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

5.5: Eastern Europe (2 Days)

Chapter Challenges

1. Explain how Eastern Europe and Western Europe were divided and how they united again.
2. Describe the various aspects of the transition from socialism systems to capitalist democracies.
3. Outline which countries were former republics of the Soviet Union but are now a part of Eastern Europe. Define the current borders of Eastern European countries.
4. Describe some of the cultural dynamics that make each region or country unique.
5. Summarize the basic economic activities that are evident in the various countries and how they have transitioned into a postindustrial economy.
6. Understand the cultural and political geography of former Yugoslavia and how the drive for nationalism and nation-state status has fractured and divided the region.

Learning Objectives

TEKS Regional World Geography Unit 05 Europe: Chapter 5.5 Eastern Europe

WG.2A Describe the human and physical characteristics of the same regions at different periods of time to evaluate relationships between past events and current conditions.

WG.5A Analyze how the character of a place is related to its political, economic, social, and cultural elements.

WG.5B Interpret political, economic, social, and demographic indicators (gross domestic product per capita, life expectancy, literacy, and infant mortality) to determine the level of development and standard of living in nations using the terms Human Development Index, less developed, newly industrialized, and more developed.

WG.6B Explain the processes that have caused changes in settlement patterns, including urbanization, transportation, access to and availability of resources, and economic activities.

WG.7B Explain how political, economic, social, and environmental push and pull factors and physical geography affect the routes and flows of human migration.

WG.9A Identify physical and/or human factors such as climate, vegetation, language, trade networks, political units, river systems, and religion that constitute a region.

WG.10A Describe the forces that determine the distribution of goods and services in free enterprise, socialist, and communist economic systems.

WG.10C Classify where specific countries fall along the economic spectrum between free enterprise and communism.

WG.12A Analyze how the creation, distribution, and management of key natural resources affects the location and patterns of movement of products, money, and people.

WG.18B Assess causes, effects, and perceptions of conflicts between groups of people, including modern genocides and terrorism.

WG.18D Evaluate the spread of cultural traits to find examples of cultural convergence and divergence such as the spread of democratic ideas, US-based fast-food franchises, the English language, technology, or global sports.

WG.22B Generate summaries, generalizations, and thesis statements supported by evidence.

WG.22C Use geographic terminology correctly.

WG.22D Use standard grammar, spelling, sentence structure, and punctuation.

TEKS and ELPS for Regional World Geography Unit 5--Europe from TEKS Resource System

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org



Map of Eastern Europe

Transitions of Eastern Europe after the Cold War

After World War II ended in 1945, Europe was divided into Western Europe and Eastern Europe by the Iron Curtain. Eastern Europe fell under the influence of the Soviet Union, and the region was separated from the West. When the Soviet Union collapsed in 1991, all the Soviet Republics bordering Eastern Europe declared independence from Russia and united with the rest of Europe. Most of the countries are now looking to Western Europe for trade and economic development. Cooperation continues between Eastern and Western Europe, and the European Union (EU) has emerged as the primary economic and political entity of Europe.

The collapse of Communism and the Soviet Union led to upheaval and transition in the region of Eastern Europe in the 1990s. Each country in the region was under Communist rule. The countries bordering Russia were once part of the Soviet Union, and those countries not part of the Soviet Union were heavily influenced by its dominant position in the region. When the Soviet Union collapsed in 1991, the bordering countries declared independence and began the process of integration into the European community.

Moldavia changed its name to Moldova. The countries of Czechoslovakia and Yugoslavia each broke into multiple countries. Because of the diverse ethnic populations, these countries organized around the concept of nation-states. Czechoslovakia peacefully agreed to separate into two states: the Czech Republic and the Republic of Slovakia. Yugoslavia was not so fortunate.

Most Eastern European political borders resemble ethnic boundaries. Each of the regions once resembled nation-states. In principle, Romania is set apart for Romanians, Hungary for Hungarians, and so on. Few are true nation-states because of ethnic minorities located within their borders, but the countries held on to their common heritage throughout the Communist era. In most Eastern European countries, cultural forces have brought people together to publicly support the move to unite and hold onto a heritage that is as old as Europe itself.

Governments that had been controlled by Communist dictators or authoritarian leaderships before 1991 were opened up to democratic processes with public elections. With the fall of Communism came economic reforms that shifted countries from central planning to open markets. Under central planning, the governments dictated which products were produced and how many of each were to be produced. The open markets invited private capitalism and western corporate businesses.

LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org



This graphic illustrates the reforms in eastern Europe in the 1990's.

The power of the state was transferred from the Communist elite to the private citizen. People could vote for their public officials and could choose businesses and work individually. With the EU looming over the realm, the now-independent countries of Eastern Europe shifted their economic direction away from Moscow and the collapsing Communist state and toward the core industrial countries of Western Europe and the EU.

The stage for the transition from communism to capitalism was further set by Soviet leader Mikhail Gorbachev, who began to liberalize the Soviet Union by allowing multiparty elections and encouraging economic reform and societal openness. At the same time, the world watched as the Chinese government violently cracked down on student protests in the Tiananmen Square protests of 1989, which strengthened the revolutionary sentiments and intentions of many people in the Eastern bloc, the former Communist countries of Eastern Europe.

Countries of Eastern Europe

Hungary



Map of Hungary

During the Communist period, Hungary enjoyed a higher standard of living than its neighbors. It was likely the marked contrast in daily life between the Communist period and the post-Communist period that influenced the outcome of the 1994 elections. These elections gave the Hungarian Socialist Party, led by former Communists, an absolute majority in Parliament. Many were concerned that Hungary was signaling a wish to return to the past. Instead, all three main political parties joined together to work toward the common goals of continued liberalization of the economy, closer ties with the West, and full EU membership.

Economic reforms have not been easy for Hungary and have resulted in a lower standard of living for most people. The removal of government subsidies after Communism led to a recession. To avoid inflation and attract investment, government fiscal policies had to be conservative. Hungary's large-scale manufacturing and stable government have aided it through the latest global economic downturn.

An important characteristic of post-Communist Hungary is its desire to become an active member of the global community by joining international organizations. In 1990, Hungary was the first Eastern Bloc nation to join the Council of Europe. In 2004, Hungary joined the EU. In addition, Hungary joined the other international organizations, including the Organization for Economic Co-operation and Development (OECD), the International Monetary Fund (IMF), and the World Trade Organization (WTO).

Another endeavor that would not have been possible under the Communist rule was the development of tourism. Budapest's reputation as a city of great elegance has helped it become one of the major tourist attractions in Eastern Europe. Major movie studios have also traveled to the city to film.



Parliament Building in Budapest, Hungary, next to the Danube River.

The Czech Republic and the Slovak Republic (Slovakia)



Map of Slovakia

Each country in Eastern Europe has a different story to tell about the path from communism to independence. Countries such as the Czech Republic and Hungary were more prepared and better equipped to meet the challenges. Historically, the region occupied by the modern Czech Republic was known as Bohemia and Moravia. The Czech Republic and Slovakia were, until recently, part of the same country of Czechoslovakia. On January 1, 1993, they became two newly independent nations. Slovakia is known officially as the Slovak Republic.

Czechs and Slovaks alike descended from Slavic peoples. The national language of the Czech Republic is Czech, while the official language of Slovakia is Slovakian. Both languages are in the Slavic linguistic family. About 94 percent of the population of the Czech Republic identify themselves as ethnically Czech. The others are Slovenian, Polish, German, Hungarian, and Roma. About 86 percent of the inhabitants of Slovakia identify as ethnically Slovakian. Hungarians make up the largest minority population, and about two percent of the population identify themselves as Roma.

Under Communist rule, the standard of living was very high in Czechoslovakia. When market reforms began in the Czech Republic and Slovakia, the standard of living declined to some extent. In general, the Czech Republic has more rapidly and effectively transferred state control of industry to private ownership than has Slovakia. Also, Slovakia was hit harder by the move away from defense industries, which had employed many people during the Communist period. Unemployment has consistently been higher in Slovakia. Slovakia is not as industrialized as the Czech Republic but has made strides since independence to provide economic opportunities for its people. Both countries expanded their economic opportunities when they were admitted into the EU in 2004.

The Baltic Republics

The small Baltic states of Latvia**,** Estonia, and Lithuania transitioned away from their old Soviet connections. After independence, they were quick to look toward Western Europe for trade and development. Most Eastern European countries followed this pattern. Latvia, Estonia, and Lithuania received their independence from the Soviet Union in 1991. Russia withdrew its troops from the region in 1994. The North Atlantic Treaty Organization (NATO) and the EU welcomed them as members in 2004. They have transitioned to market economies with democratic governments. The people of Latvia, Estonia, and Lithuania rapidly expanded their economic conditions after independence but have been hard hit by the downturn in the global marketplace in 2008.

Poland has a long-standing history of working to oppose the Communist domination of its country. The Solidarity movement in Poland started out as an independent trade union in the 1980s but then gained momentum for political change in Poland. The Communist Party dominated politics and suppressed any movement to organize labor or the people against the government. The

strength of Solidarity became evident by the 1990 election when Solidarity candidate Lech Wałęsa won Poland's presidential election. Solidarity's victory signified the collapse of the power of the Soviet Union and Communism in Eastern Europe. The country has emerged with a democratic government and a thriving capitalist economy.

Since the fall of Communism, Poland left behind its old state-directed economy and transitioned to a market economy. When the Communists controlled Poland, there was an emphasis on heavy industry, and that focus remains alive today. Poland produces cars, buses, helicopters, trains, and heavy military equipment, including tanks and ships. Before the Communists industrialized the Polish economy, it was largely agrarian.

Though Poland continues to be one of Europe's leading agricultural producers, with a wide variety of crops and dairy and meat production, it is unable to meet the food demands of its large population. Poland's economy is still considered to be under development. Reforms, including privatization, must continue before Poland can adopt the euro, the common EU currency.



Royal Castle Square in Warsaw, Poland.

Unemployment has at times presented big problems for the Polish economy and society. Unemployment rose to nearly 20 percent in the early 1990s. The situation improved, but unemployment was still at about 14 percent in 2006. By 2010 the situation improved further, and the unemployment rate was around 7 percent. In 2018, the unemployment rate has gone down to 4.4 percent. When Poland joined the EU, many people left Poland in search of work. Some of those workers who left have recently returned, as the employment rate and wages are both increasing.

Moldova

A variety of cultural and social forces provided different levels of civility in the transitions of Eastern Europe. The poor, agrarian economy of the small, landlocked country of Moldova provides few opportunities or advantages to grow its economy and provide a stronger future for its people. As a result, young people earning an education or technical skills immigrate to other countries for opportunities or employment.

Belarus

In 1991, independence came to the former Soviet Republic of Belarus, but Belarus took a different path from most of the other Eastern bloc countries. Belarus did not distance itself from its Russian connection. Belarus has consequently experienced authoritarian governments well into the 21st century. In this case, Russia and Belarus created a stronger relationship by signing agreements to increase economic integration.

Difficulties have hindered implementation of many of these policies. For one thing, the government of Belarus has been slow to move toward democratic reforms. In fact, the president has taken on greater authoritarian powers. Some of the personal freedoms that have been granted in other European countries such as freedom of the press, free speech, and the right to peacefully assemble are restricted in Belarus. As of 2018, Belarus, Ukraine, and Moldova have not been admitted into the EU. Belarus has indicated that it might join with the Russian Republic and has not even applied for entry into the EU.



Map of Ukraine

With the largest physical area in Europe, Ukraine is slightly larger than France. Its population in 2018 was approximately 44 million, most of whom live in the industrial regions of the southeast or eastern parts of the country. Though the official language is Ukrainian, many Ukrainians still speak Russian. As is the case with neighboring states, the Eastern Orthodox Church dominates the religious and cultural reflections of the arts, literature, and architecture. Christian themes are often reflected in the paintings, books, and performances.

The demographic trend in Ukraine follows a pattern of industrialization with smaller family sizes. They have a higher death rate than most European countries. The country is now losing about 150,000 people per year. The low birth rates are similar to those of Russia and southern Europe. Poor health and childhood poverty in Ukraine are two of the main issues confirmed by the United Nations (UN).

In 2010, Ukraine had a negative population growth rate of −0.62 percent. Fertility rates have been in decline throughout Europe over the past few decades. The average fertility rate in Ukraine is 1.1, one of the world's lowest. In Europe as a whole, the average is about 1.3. The causes for some of these trends can be attributed to alcoholism, poor diets, smoking, and the lack of medical care. The average life expectancy for an adult male in Ukraine is about 62 years. In comparison, the average life expectancy for men in France is about 78 years.

Of the former Soviet Union republics, excluding Russia, Ukraine was the most important economic piece, producing about four times the output of the next-ranking Soviet republic. Its fertile black soil generated more than one-fourth of the overall Soviet agricultural output, and its farms provided substantial quantities of meat, milk, grain, and vegetables to other republics. Likewise, its diversified heavy industry supplied steel pipes and raw materials to Russia's oil and mining industry.

Ukraine's political relationship with Russia has been complicated since the breakup of the Soviet Union, but Russia still supplies enormous amounts of natural gas and oil for the economy. Russia's markets are still highly integrated with those of Ukraine.

Though Ukraine has transitioned from a Soviet republic to a fully independent country, divisive centrifugal forces have made Ukraine's path to free elections and democratically elected leaders difficult. The country has held political elections, but they have been challenged or tainted with corruption and accusations of fraud. Today, the country has a democratically elected government and is working toward improving its economy and creating stability for its people.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org



Map of Romania

Many countries of Eastern Europe have fully transitioned from Communist dictatorships to modern, integrated economies. Romania is one of those countries. Romania encompasses an area equivalent to the US state of Minnesota. Its approximate population of 21.5 million people includes two million who live in Bucharest, the capital and largest city of the country.

The Carpathian Mountains circle Romania, with the Transylvanian Alps to the south. The Danube River runs across the region and creates a natural border with Bulgaria and Serbia before flowing into the Black Sea. The Romanian forests are some of the largest in Europe, with about one-half (13 percent of the country) set aside from logging and placed in watershed conservation programs. The ecosystems in the Romanian forests provide diverse habitats for plants and animals. Romania claims to have the most European brown bears and about 40 percent of all European wolves living within its borders.

Tourism is growing in Romania. Almost five percent of Romania is placed in protected areas, including 13 national parks and three biosphere reserves, all of which are attractive to tourists. Tourist attractions also include medieval castles and historic Transylvanian cities. Rural tourism focuses on folklore and traditions including such sites as Bran Castle, referred to locally as the castle of Dracula, a mythical person patterned after the stories and legends of Vlad III the Impaler.



Bran Castle near Brasov in Transylvania.

Romania's Communist dictator, Nicolae Ceauşescu, ruled from 1965 to 1989. The end of his regime came when the government was overthrown by a revolution. Ceauşescu and his wife were arrested and executed. Even after his death, the Communist Party maintained strong ties to the government until the mid-1990s.

The transition to integrate Romania's economy with that of the greater European economy was delayed because of Romania's outdated industrial infrastructure, established during the Communist era. Since joining the EU in 2007, Romania has developed a stronger export market with Western European countries. Investments and consumer confidence have fueled the growth of the domestic economy. Romania has worked through a number of difficult issues in its attempt to provide a stable government and a growing market economy.

Albania



Map of Albania

The southern Adriatic is home to the small country of Albania. The rugged mountainous country of Albania has a Muslim majority. Poverty, unemployment, and a lack of opportunities to gain wealth have plagued the country. Albania has even received Communist support from China. As a result of the war in Kosovo, Albania suffered a major setback in its progress toward an improved standard of living and integration with the rest of Europe.

When stability is established, Albania can progress toward becoming more integrated with the European economy and raise its standard of living for its people. Parliamentary democracy has been installed since the Communist era, and foreign investments have aided in developing updated transportation and power grids.

Bulgaria



Map of Bulgaria

Located in the crossroads of the continents, Bulgaria has a major trans-European corridor running through its territory that connects all the way to Asia. The country is home to diverse landscapes. These landscapes include the Black Sea coast and the higher elevations of the Balkan Mountains, which reach an elevation of 9,596 feet. The Danube River flows across the border with Bulgaria on its way to the Black Sea. About one-third of the country consists of plains, which provide for extensive agricultural activity. Ore and minerals can also be found in Albania, which has allowed the country to gain wealth.

Upon declaring independence from Russia, Bulgaria held multiparty elections. Its economy is emerging, but the transition to a capitalist system has had difficulties with unemployment, inflation, and corruption. Bulgaria became a member of NATO in 2004 and was accepted for EU membership in 2007. The transition to a free market economy is still in progress, with mining, industry, and agriculture as the main economic activities.

Tourism is an emerging segment of the economy that has been gaining international attention in recent years. The country has a milder climate than the northern states of Eastern Europe and has been marketing itself as a major tourist destination. Main points of interest include historical monasteries, coastal resorts on the Black Sea, and the capital city of Sofia.

A Story of “Yes” and “No” in Bulgaria

Here is an example of cultural differences between the United States and Bulgaria. This story is from Elizabeth Kelly, a US Peace Corps volunteer working in Bulgaria (2003–5).

“I’ll have coffee,” I tell the waitress at a cafe during my first week in Bulgaria. She shakes her head from side to side. “OK, tea,” I say, thinking that maybe there’s something wrong with the coffee machine. Again, she shakes her head. “Um. cola?” Once more, she shakes her head. By now, she’s looking at me like I’m crazy, and I’m totally confused. Then I remember: A shake of the head by a Bulgarian means “yes,” and a nod—what the rest of the world does for “yes”—means “no.”

Early on, when I communicated with Bulgarians, it seemed like my head was moving in ways my brain hadn’t told it to. Sometimes I wanted to grab my ears and use them as controls. Learning a language with a completely different alphabet was challenging enough without trying to figure out whether to nod or shake.

When I began teaching, all this head bobbing made communication in the classroom interesting. Although I had made sure my students knew about this cultural difference on the first day of school, we all frequently forgot what we were doing. My students would answer a question correctly or say something really great, and I’d nod. A second later, they were trying to change their answer, since they thought the nod meant they had been wrong. But the confusion went both ways. Sometimes I’d ask a student a yes-or-no question and he or she would answer with a nod or a shake, without saying anything. Not remembering the difference, we’d have to go through the motions several times before I understood. Frequently I found myself saying, “Da or ne—just tell me one or the other!”

I also had to deal with confused colleagues who couldn’t figure out why I kept nodding my head while they talked as if I were arguing with them. In truth, I was just trying to show that I understood and was following along with the story. And then there was the even greater problem of how to act with Bulgarians who spoke English and were aware of the nodding–shaking problem. Was I supposed to nod or shake for “yes” when I was speaking English with them? And what was I supposed to do when we were speaking Bulgarian? What if we were in a situation where both languages were being spoken? To make matters even more complicated, after going a couple of weeks without any contact with other Americans, we’d finally get together and I’d find myself shaking when I should have been nodding. My head was spinning!

Tuning in to how the people around me communicate has brought me closer to the people and the culture of Bulgaria. And whenever we slip up and forget to control our heads, the laughter that follows brings us together. Luckily, a smile is a smile the world over.

Source: Peace Corps Coverdell World Wise Schools program. Used by permission.

Former Yugoslavia

A Valuable Lesson in Political and Cultural Geography

The name *Yugoslavia*, applied to the region along the Adriatic in 1929, means Land of the South Slavs. From 1918 to 1929, the region had been called the Kingdom of Serbs, Croats, and Slovenes. Non-Slavic populations surround Yugoslavia. The region’s core is mountainous. The Dinaric Alps, with the highest peak at just below nine thousand feet in elevation, run through the center of the Balkan Peninsula.

The rugged mountains separate and isolate groups of Slavic people who, over time, have formed separate identities and consider themselves different from those on the other sides of the mountain ridges. Distinct sub-ethnic divisions developed into the Slovenes, Macedonians, Bosnians, Montenegrins, Croats, and Serbs, with various additional groups. These differences led to conflict, division, and war when the breakup of former Yugoslavia began.

World War I started in the city of Sarajevo, Bosnia, when a Serb advocate assassinated Archduke Ferdinand of the Austria-Hungarian Empire. In the next conflict, World War II, there was also divisiveness within Yugoslavia. Croatia sided with Nazi Germany, but Serbia was an ally with the Communist Soviet Union. The region of Bosnia, with a Muslim majority, faced religious opposition from its mainly Christian neighbors. A group headed by Marshal Tito led Yugoslavia after World War II ended in 1945. Tito created a Communist state that attempted to retain its own brand of neutrality between the Warsaw Pact nations led by the Soviet Union and the NATO nations of the West.

Tito was a centripetal force for the region of Yugoslavia. For over 40 years, he held the many ethnic Slavic groups together under what he called *Brotherhood and Unity*, which was actually the threat of brute military force. The 1984 Winter Olympics were held in Sarajevo as a witness to the progress and unity of Tito's Yugoslavia. At the same time, Yugoslavia started manufacturing a model of automobiles called the Yugo. While the Yugo was not in the same league as high-end European luxury cars, the ability to make and purchase automobiles was a testimony to the rising industrial level of the Yugoslav economy. This progressive trend, unfortunately, was not to last.



Macedonia is officially called the Former Yugoslav Republic of Macedonia (FYROM) because of a name conflict with Greece. Albania is an independent country and was never a part of Yugoslavia.

Status of States in Former Yugoslavia

Country	Year of Independence	Religion	Population	Size (square miles)	World War II Ally
Slovenia	1991	Catholic, 57%; Muslim, 2.4%;Orthodox, 2.3%	2 million	7,827 (about the size of Vermont)	—
Croatia	1991	Catholic, 88%; Orthodox, 4.4%; Muslim, 1.3%	4.5 million	21,831 (about the size of West Virginia)	Nazi Germany
Bosnia	1991	Muslim, 40%; Orthodox, 31%; Catholic, 15%	4 million	19,741 (about the size of West Virginia)	—
Serbia	2006	Orthodox, 85%; Muslim, 4%; Other, 10%	10 million	29,915 (about the size of South Carolina)	Soviet Union
Kosovo*	2008	Muslim, 90%; Orthodox, 9%	1.8 million	4,203 (about the size of Connecticut)	—
Macedonia	1991	Orthodox, 67%; Muslim, 30%	2.1 million	9,781 (about the size of Vermont)	—
Montenegro	2006	Orthodox, 74%; Muslim, 18%; Catholic, 3.5%	678,177	5,423 (about the size of Connecticut)	—

*Note: As of 2008, Kosovo was not accepted by the UN. Its status is pending.

The Breakup of Former Yugoslavia

Tito died in 1980. The unity that had helped hold the country together began to break down in the early 1990s with the Soviet Union's collapse. With the dual loss of the Soviet Union and Tito's strong policies as centripetal forces, the power struggle for

dominance among the various ethnic groups began.

In 1991, Slobodan Miloševik began pushing for the nationalistic goal of uniting all the ethnic Serbs that lived in the various parts of Yugoslavia into a Greater Serbia. The efforts were not approved or supported by the UN, which rejected Yugoslavia for membership in 1992. At that time, Kosovo and Montenegro were part of the Serb state. Miloševik first sent the Yugoslav military to Kosovo to take control of the majority Albanian population and secure the region for Greater Serbia. Fearing war, Slovenia, Croatia, and Macedonia declared independence in 1991. Yugoslavia was breaking up.

Miloševik then moved into Croatia to secure Serb areas for his Greater Serbia. After a brief but bitter war between Serbia and Croatia, the UN stepped in to halt the conflict. The first signs of ethnic cleansing were reported during this conflict. Serb military units would roll into a town or village and claim it as a Serb-only location. The Croats and any other people living there were forced to leave.

Reports of assaults on women and the systematic killing of men of fighting age were documented. Sadly, ethnic cleansing began to be reported on all sides of the war. The bitter hatred between Croats and Serbs, which had been handed down from the World War II era, surfaced for a new generation. After the UN stopped Miloševik in Croatia, he turned to the Serb areas of Bosnia to expand his Greater Serbia. Bosnia immediately declared independence and was approved by the UN in 1992.

The battle for Bosnia extended from 1992 to 1995, and Europe wondered if the Bosnian war would develop into World War III. The region of Bosnia included people of Serb, Croat, and Bosnian ethnic backgrounds. Bosnia broke up along ethnic lines. The Serb group supported Greater Serbia and the Bosnian group wanted independence. In March 1994, the Croat group signed an agreement joining with the Bosnian group against the Serbs.

In 1995, with strong pressure from Europe and the United States, the warring groups signed a peace agreement known as the Dayton Accord, named after a meeting in Dayton, Ohio. The Dayton Accord accepted Bosnia's borders and supported the creation of a unity government that was democratic and included the multiethnic groups. The country of Bosnia was divided into three parts: Serb, Croat, and Bosnian.



This photo shows the checkpoint in Kosovo in 2004.

Military forces continue to monitor and secure the regions of Bosnia. Portions of Bosnia under Serb control have declared themselves the Republic of Srpska and have attempted to create their own nation-state. The remaining territory of Bosnia (51 percent) consists of a joint Bosnian/Croat Federation. Both regions have sub-level governments within the formal country of Bosnia and Herzegovina.

Herzegovina is a small region extending from the city of Mostar to the southern border with Montenegro. In June of 2006, the region of Montenegro declared itself independent of Serbia. Montenegro uses the euro as its currency and has applied for the World Trade Organization (WTO) membership. Montenegro has privatized its main industries and is working on developing a tourism industry.

The War for Kosovo

Yugoslavia, under the leadership of President Miloševik, sought to ensure that Kosovo would never leave the umbrella of Greater Serbia. The Albanian Muslims who lived in Kosovo made up 90 percent of the population by 1989. They did not want to live under Serb control. Serbia claimed that Kosovo was the heart of the Serb Orthodox Church and the cradle of the medieval Serbian Empire. The historic battles against the Islamic Turkish Ottoman Empire in Kosovo have been memorialized in Serb tradition and history.

The main opposition to the Serb power structure in Kosovo in the early 1990s was the Kosovo Liberation Army (KLA). Many in the KLA wanted an independent Kosovo and an alliance with Albania. In 1998, Miloševik sent troops into areas controlled by the KLA. The civil war in Kosovo between Serbs and Albanian Muslims was devastating the region and creating thousands of refugees. The tension, hatred, and massacres by both forces further complicated the peace process. In March of 1999, NATO implemented a mission called Operation Allied Force to force Miloševik to discontinue the ethnic cleansing campaign and end the violence in Kosovo.

In June of 1999, Miloševik yielded to a peace agreement that brought Kosovo under control of the UN and NATO forces, removed the Serb military, and allowed for the safe return of over 800 thousand refugees from Albania, Montenegro, and Macedonia. Miloševik lost his bid for the presidency in the elections of 2000, was arrested for crimes against humanity in 2001, and was transferred to the International Criminal Tribunal in The Hague, the Netherlands. The charges brought against him included ethnic cleansing and torture. He died in 2006 while in custody before the trial ended.



The wars in former Yugoslavia were fueled by strong cultural forces.

NATO forces continue to be stationed in Kosovo to keep the peace and work toward restoring order. After much negotiation between the UN and regional entities, the Kosovo Assembly declared its independence from Serbia in 2008. Serb officials overwhelmingly opposed Kosovo's independence, as they had in 1991. Kosovo's status is now pending in the UN.

Conclusion of Former Yugoslavia

Kosovo and the independent republics of former Yugoslavia provide a study in the dynamics of ethnicity, culture, and political geography. Former Yugoslavia represents an example of how divisive centrifugal and devolutionary forces can lead to nationalism and eventually to war. The drive toward a nation-state has fueled nationalism and conflict in the Balkans. The civil wars within former Yugoslavia have cost thousands of lives and destroyed an infrastructure that had taken decades to build. Geographers have called Eastern Europe a shatter belt because of the conflicts and divisions that have occurred there.

In spite of the problems with the transition in Eastern Europe, the region has nonetheless seen enormous economic gains. Even Slovenia, once part of former Yugoslavia, has rebounded with strong economic growth. Many of the progressive Eastern European countries have been accepted into the EU. The map of the EU includes many of the developing Eastern bloc countries. Eastern Europe has experienced many transitions throughout its history. The transition from communism to capitalism is only one part of the geography and history of Eastern Europe.

Key Takeaways

- After World War II ended in 1945, Europe was divided into Western Europe and Eastern Europe by the Iron Curtain.
- Western Europe promoted capitalist democracies, and Eastern Europe came under the Communist influence of the Soviet Union.
- After the collapse of the Soviet Union in 1991, Eastern Europe began to transition toward Western European ideals.
- Eastern Europe has been shifting toward democratic governments, open market economies, private ownership, and the EU rather than the old Soviet Union.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

- Countries with stable governments and industrial potential have been accepted into the EU and have expanding economies. Other countries that have not reached that level of economic development or political reforms have not been admitted into the EU.
- The transition of former Soviet republics to capitalist systems has not been without difficulties, including unemployment, inflation, corruption and crime, and poverty. Political infighting has been evident in the transitioning countries that do not yet have a stable democratic government or economy.
- The breakup of former Yugoslavia was an example of how strong devolutionary forces can promote nationalism resulting in open war.
- The once stable country of Yugoslavia split into seven separate countries patterned after the nation-state concept. Bosnia remains the most diverse state, with a majority Muslim population.

Vocabulary Terms

Chapter 5.5 Eastern Europe

Balkanization	The process of breaking up a region into small, mutually hostile units
Ethnic Cleansing	The policy of trying to eliminate an ethnic group

Applying Knowledge

Interactive Notebook Activity

1. What were four of the main reforms that occurred in Eastern Europe with the collapse of the Soviet Union?
2. Which Eastern European countries were once members of the Soviet Union?
3. What factor has most heavily influenced most of the political boundaries of Eastern Europe?
4. How would the change from central planning to open markets influence the use of natural resources?
5. Which countries of Eastern Europe are members of the EU?
6. How did the larger Slavic population of former Yugoslavia 500 years ago become the existing subgroups of the Slovenes, Croats, Bosnians, Montenegrins, and Serbs?
7. Why was Slobodan Miloševik so determined to keep the region of Kosovo under Serb control?
8. What was the purpose of ethnic cleansing in former Yugoslavia?
9. What role did religion play in the wars in Bosnia and Kosovo?
10. Why would the United States be so concerned about the wars in Bosnia and Kosovo—so much so that the United States spent billions to help end the war and to keep the peace and rebuild the region?

Real-World Geography Exercise

Using Google Maps, locate the places below. Then, choose one area for which you will create a SWAY or a PowerPoint presentation. Include important facts, images, maps, and videos.

- Albania
- Belarus
- Bosnia
- Croatia
- Czech Republic
- Estonia
- Hungary
- Kosovo
- Latvia
- Lithuania
- Macedonia
- Moldova

- Montenegro
- Poland
- Romania
- Serbia
- Slovakia
- Slovenia
- Ukraine

Mapping Exercise

ESRI GEO Inquiry

Altered Biomes: Students will investigate the characteristics of major biomes and examine the impact of land-use changes as the result of human activities. Students will utilize online mapping software.

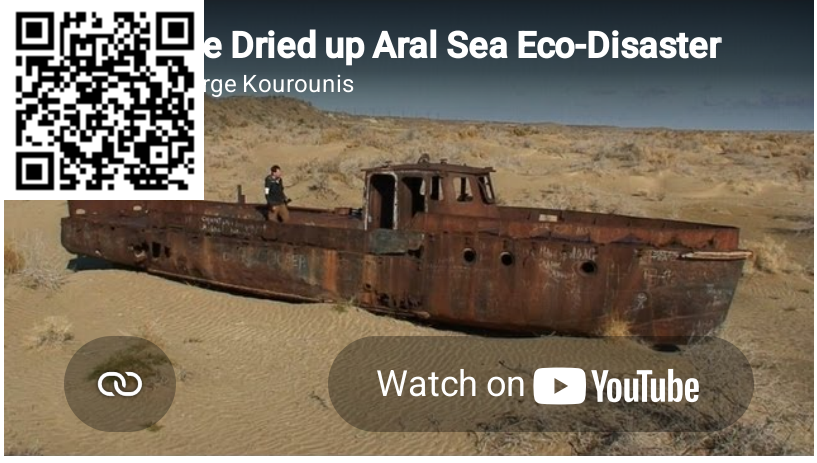
Videos for Geographic Enrichment

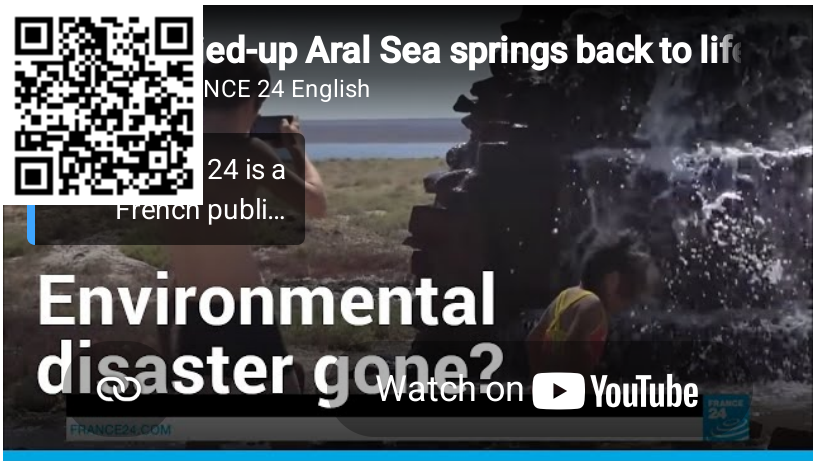





Cultural Journey Across Eastern E
News
German ...
Watch on YouTube


hat Caused the Catastrophic Nucl
Infographics Show
CHERNOBYL
Watch on YouTube


e Dried up Aral Sea Eco-Disaster
rge Kourounis
Watch on YouTube



Helpful Websites for the Study of Geography

Canadian Encyclopedia is an encyclopedia funded by the Canadian government covering all branches of knowledge. Their scholarly collection includes interactive materials.

CIA World Factbook provides information on the people, history, government, economy, energy, geography, communications, transportation, military, and transnational issues for the world's entities.

Congress.gov is a US government website where you can find federal legislation, past and present, as well as information about the US legal system.

Drug Enforcement Administration (DEA) is a government agency website that provides current news, resources, topics of interest, information about drugs, careers in the DEA, and a tip hotline.

Library of Congress is the largest library in the world and provides manuscripts, files, information, pictures, and videos.

NASA Earth Observatory (NEO) is a US government agency website that allows users to search for and retrieve satellite images of Earth.

National Archives is a US government website that provides historical documents, photos, records, publications, and educator resources.

National Oceanic and Atmospheric Association (NOAA) is a US government agency website that provides weather-related information and ocean research.

National Map is a website by the United States Geological Survey and other federal, state, and local agencies that delivers topographic information for the United States.

NationMaster is a massive central data source and a handy way to graphically compare nations.

Real-Time World Air Quality Index is a website that measures most locations in the world for air pollution in real time.

StateMaster is a unique statistical database, which allows you to research and compare a multitude of different data on US states.

United Nations (UN) is an international organization founded in 1945 and made up of 193 member states. The UN maintains international peace and security, protects human rights, delivers humanitarian aid, promotes sustainable development, and upholds international law.

United States Census Bureau is a US government agency that provides a population clock, data, surveys, statistics, a library with information and infographics, news about the economy, and much more.

United States Geological Survey (USGS) is a US government agency website that provides scientific information about the natural hazards that threaten lives, the natural resources we rely on, the health of our ecosystems and environment, and the impacts of climate and land-use change.

Whitehouse.gov is a US government website that provides the latest presidential news, information about the budget, policy, defense, and many more topics.

World Health Organization (WHO) is under the United Nations and provides leadership on matters critical to health, shapes the research agenda on health, and monitors the health situation and assessing health trends around the world. Their website provides information on the state of health around the world, outbreaks, current health news, and more.

World Trade Organization (WTO) is an intergovernmental organization that regulates international trade. The website provides information on the history of the multilateral trading system, featured videos, news and events, trade topics, and more.

Investigate the characteristics of major biomes and examine the impact of land-use changes as the result of human activities.

Image	Reference	Attributions
	**[Figure 1]**	**Credit:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeograp...astern-europe/ **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/65229d6ac18089b1680a1051beb858d6.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 2]**	**Credit:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeograp...astern-europe/ **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/28675c8de1c599a25931a08d55f6c1a8.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 3]**	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/hu.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 4]**	**Credit:** Wikimedia Commons – CC BY 2.0. **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/28e1322b040b0bc7b6547438c5cc87c2.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 5]**	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/lo.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

	**[Figure 6]**	**Credit:** Wikimedia Commons – public domain. **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/49ac1f762c54924a5be3ff7421c90503.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 7]**	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/up.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 8]**	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/ro.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 9]**	**Credit:** Wikimedia Commons – public domain. **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/ec540a7860efd5b1f7ec4f357ca371ef.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

	**[Figure 10]**	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/al.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 11]**	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/bu.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 12]**	**Credit:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeograp...astern-europe/ **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/3549951f95750a37b6ab7aed1b8ce769.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 13]**	**Credit:** U.S. Military – public domain. **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/65720bfe631239b8c5684cf02e5db596.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 14]**	**Credit:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeograp...astern-europe/ **Source:** Saylor URL: http://www.saylor.org/books ; http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/ch

		apter/2-4-eastern-europe/ **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

This page titled 5.5: Eastern Europe (2 Days) is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by CK12 via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

6: Russia, the Caucasus and Central Asia (10 days)

6.1: Russia- Physical Characteristics (2 Days)

6.2: The USSR and the Russian Federation (3 Day)

6.3: Exploring the Regions of Russia (3 Days)

6.4: Central Asia (2 Days)

This page titled 6: Russia, the Caucasus and Central Asia (10 days) is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by CK12 via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

6.1: Russia- Physical Characteristics (2 Days)

Chapter Challenges

1. Identify Russia's climatic influences and physical regions.
2. Determine how the czars expanded their territorial power to create the Russian Empire.
3. Contrast the ways that the governments of the Russian Empire and the Soviet Union dealt with the issue of diverse nationalities within their countries.
4. Describe some of the environmental problems facing the Russian republics today.

Learning Objectives

TEKS Regional Unit 06: Russia, the Caucasus and Central Asia; Chapter 6.1 Physical Characteristics.

WG.1A Describe the forces that determine the distribution of goods and services in free enterprise, socialist, and communist economic systems.

WG.10B Classify where specific countries fall along the economic spectrum between free enterprise and communism.

WG.10C Compare the ways people satisfy their basic needs through the production of goods and services such as subsistence agriculture versus commercial agriculture or cottage industries versus commercial industries.

WG.12A Analyze how the creation, distribution, and management of key natural resources affects the location and patterns of movement of products, money, and people.

WG.13A Interpret maps to explain the division of land, including man-made and natural borders, into separate political units such as cities, states, or countries.

WG.14A Analyze current events to infer the physical and human processes that lead to the formation of boundaries and other political divisions.

WG.17A Describe and Compare patterns of culture such as language, religion, land use, education, and customs that make specific regions of the world distinctive.

WG.18A Analyze cultural changes in specific regions caused by migration, war, trade, innovations, and diffusion.

WG.19C Examine the environmental, economic, and social impacts of advances in technology on agriculture and natural resources.

WG.21C Create and Interpret different types of maps to answer geographic questions, infer relationships, and analyze change.

WG.22B Generate summaries, generalizations, and thesis statements supported by evidence.

WG.22C Use geographic terminology correctly.

WG.22D Use standard grammar, spelling, sentence structure, and punctuation.

TEKS and ELPS for Regional World Geography Unit 06--Russia, the Caucasus, and Central Asia from TEKS Resource System

Physical Characteristics of Russia

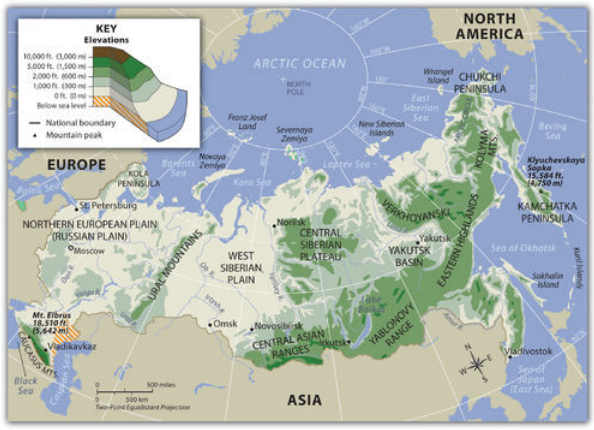
The massive expanse of Russia exhibits a variety of physical environments, such as tundras, steppes, mountains, and birch forests. Type D (continental) climates dominate most of the country and characterize large landmasses such as Eurasia and North America. Land in the center of a large continent, far from the moderating effects of oceans, tends to heat up rapidly in the summer and cool down rapidly in the winter. These areas are known for hot summers and cold, harsh winters.

Northern Russia borders the Arctic Ocean, and frigid air masses from the Arctic swoop south across Russia each winter. Moreover, Russia's northerly latitude means that it experiences a short growing season and has never been an agricultural superpower. The

country usually has to import grain to feed its people. Mountain ranges to the south block summer rains and warm air masses that would otherwise come from South and Central Asia, thus creating deserts and steppes in southern Russia.

Most of Russia's population live in the European part of the country on the Eastern European Plain, also known as the Western Russian Plain or the Russian Plain. It is the most agriculturally productive land in Russia. The eastern edge of the plain is marked by the Ural Mountains, a low-lying mountain chain (about 6,000 feet) that crosses Russia from the Arctic Ocean to Kazakhstan. The mountains contain deposits of coal, iron ore, and precious and semiprecious stones and are considered the boundary between Europe and Asia.

To the south of the Russian Plain is another mountain range, the Caucasus Mountains, which bridge the gap between the Caspian and Black Seas. East of the Urals are the West Siberian Plain, the Central Siberian Plateau, the Yakutsk Basin, the Eastern Highlands, and the Central Asian Ranges. Russia has rich natural resources, such as petroleum, natural gas, and forest products.



This map illustrates the physical regions of Russia.

Expansion of the Empire

The territory that makes up the Russian Federation was gradually conquered by the Russian Empire as the country expanded from its political core around Moscow/St. Petersburg during the 16th through the 19th centuries. By the end of the 18th century, Czarina Catherine the Great had expanded Russia to include the area that is now Ukraine, the northern Caucasus Mountains, and Alaska.

During the next century, the Russian Empire expanded eastward into Central Asia (what is now Kazakhstan, Uzbekistan, and the other Central Asian republics), southward into the rest of the Caucasus region, and westward into Poland and Finland. In the 20th century, when the Russian Empire disintegrated and was replaced by the Soviet Union (the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics or USSR), the central government continued to expand and strengthen its control of the vast area from Eastern Europe to the Pacific Ocean.

Both the Russian Empire and the Soviet Union were imperial powers. In other words, these governments ruled a large variety of ethnic groups in distant places. These places included people who spoke many languages, people who worshiped different gods in different ways, people who had various skin and hair colors, and people who did not consider themselves to be Russian. Russia had the largest empire in the world in terms of territory. Ruling this diverse, immense empire was an incredible challenge.

The czars ruled this empire with Russification and the sword. Russification refers to the attempt to minimize cultural differences and turn all Russian subjects into Russians, or at least to make them as Russian as possible. As they were all subject to the Russian czars, people were taught the Russian language and were encouraged to convert to Russian Orthodoxy. Russification was not very successful, and the farther people were from Moscow the less likely they were to be Russified. When the Soviets took over the Russian Empire, millions of Muslims still lived in Central Asia, on the Crimean peninsula of southern Ukraine, in the Caucasus Mountains, and elsewhere.

The Soviets took a different approach when it came to unifying the diversity of the empire. Instead of emphasizing unity under the Russian czar, the Russian language, and the Russian Orthodox religion, the Soviets decided to organize the diversity of ethnic groups found in the Soviet Union. They chose some of the major groups and established Soviet Socialist Republics that corresponded to these major groups.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

The following are the groups that were created:

- Uzbek Soviet Socialist Republic (Uzbek SSR)
- Kazakh Soviet Socialist Republic (Kazakh SSR)
- Ukrainian Soviet Socialist Republic (Ukrainian SSR)
- A different republic for each of the 14 ethnic groups
- Russian Soviet Federative Socialist Republic

About 85 other ethnic groups were not given their own republics, although some of them were allocated regions within the Russian Republic. In theory, each of the Soviet Socialist Republics was an independent state choosing to ally with the Soviet Union. In practice, these republics were part of a totalitarian, centrally ruled state with far fewer autonomous rights than states in the United States.



This map illustrates the former Soviet Union.

The creation of these republics strengthened certain ethnic/national identities and weakened others. There had not been a fully developed Uzbek national identity before the formation of the Uzbek SSR. The same was true for the Kazakh SSR, the Turkmen SSR, and others. Although people in a certain area might have spoken the same language, they did not think of themselves as belonging to a nation of fellow Uzbeks, Kazakhs, or Turkmen until they were put into one by the Soviet rulers. In 1991, when the Soviet Union collapsed, these Soviet Socialist Republics were able to declare their independence from Russia.

At the same time that the Soviets were organizing minority ethnic groups into republics, they were also sending ethnic Russians to live in non-Russian parts of the Soviet Union. Some were sent by force—such as Russians who were sent to prison camps in Siberia and stayed in the area after they were eventually freed. Other Russians were sent around the empire to work in factories, power plants, and other industries. Some were sent to help administer the government. By sending Russians to the far reaches of the Soviet Union, the Russian government hoped to consolidate its control over the various republics and to dilute the strength of the minority ethnicities.

This policy also had unintended consequences. When the Soviet Union collapsed after 1991 and the various republics became independent countries, they each had to deal with sizable Russian minorities. For example, at the time of its independence, nearly as many ethnic Russians lived in Kazakhstan (38 percent) as ethnic Kazakhs (40 percent). In the 20 years since then, many Russians moved to Russia from the former Soviet republics. In 2010, Kazakhstan's population was only about 24 percent ethnic Russian.



This map illustrates the new Russian federal districts.

The Russian federation was created with 83 federal subjects:

- 2 autonomous federal cities
- 46 provinces (oblasts)
- 9 territories (krais)
- 21 republics
- 4 autonomous districts (okrugs)
- 1 autonomous oblast
- Moscow and St. Petersburg are the two federal cities that function as their own units

The oblasts and krais each have a governor appointed by the central government and a locally elected legislature. The governorship was an elected position in the 1990s, but President Vladimir Putin changed the structure to strengthen the power of the central state.

The republics, designed to be home to certain ethnic minorities, are allowed to have their own constitutions and governments and to select an official language that will be used besides Russian. They are not considered independent countries with the right to secession.

The autonomous districts were also formed for ethnic minorities and are administered either by the central state or by the province or territory in which they are located. The only autonomous oblast was created in the 1930s to be a home for Jews in the Russian Far East, but only about one percent of the population remains Jewish today.

Regional Environmental Problems

Each region of the Russian republic has its own environmental issues. The core region surrounding Moscow, with all its industrial activity and large urban expanses, introduces sewage and chemicals to the country's waterways, contributing to serious water pollution. The same water pollution is found east of the Ural Mountains—and in the waterways in that region—because of the industrial cities found there.

Moscow and the ring of industrial cities surrounding it have seen a dramatic increase in automobile use since 1991, contributing to air pollution. Russia has abundant natural resources, but significant environmental damage has been the price of exploiting and extracting those resources. Massive oil spills have occurred in the taiga and tundra areas, where the lack of safety management has increased environmental damage during oil exploration and development.

The taiga is the large expanse of evergreen or boreal forests in the north just south of the tundra in North America, Europe, and Asia. The taiga is most common in type D climates and is one of the largest biomes on earth. The taiga is the largest biome in Russia. Mining and smelting processes in Siberian cities have added to the region's air and water pollution. These ecosystems are fragile and will take years to recover from such damage.

Water pollution from the rivers extends into the Black Sea, the Caspian Sea, and other bodies of water. Lake Baikal, described as the largest freshwater lake in the world, was at one time pristine, but pollutants have entered its waters from nearby industrial

activity. Increased pollution in the Black and Caspian Seas, as well as overfishing, the lack of fishing regulations, and the lack of law enforcement have resulted in the devastation of fish populations such as the caviar-producing sturgeon.

The Arctic waters of the Barents Sea off the northern coast of Russia have been a dumping ground for nuclear waste products and expended nuclear reactors from naval vessels. The consequences of this nuclear pollution are not widely known or studied. Many additional aging nuclear reactors from the Soviet era dot the landscape, and they will need to be decommissioned at some point, adding to the nuclear waste issues. Various regions in Siberia were used for nuclear testing and are also contaminated with nuclear radiation.

Key Takeaways

- Russia's climate is characterized by long, cold winters and short summers.
- Because of a short growing season, the country has such poor agriculture that usually it needs to import grain.
- The Russian Empire gradually expanded its territory to the east, west, and south of Moscow. By the end of the 19th century had accumulated a vast area of land and a great variety of people of many ethnicities, languages, and religions.
- The Soviets sent ethnic Russians across the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics (USSR) to better control and govern the territory and its people.
- When the Soviet Union collapsed, its internal nationality-oriented republics declared independence, and the Russians who had been sent to live around the USSR were now living in non-Russian countries. While most of the ethnic Russians stayed in their current countries, many others returned to Russia after 1991.

Vocabulary Terms

Chapter 6.1 Physical Characteristics

chernozem	black topsoil, one of the world's richest soils found in Ukraine and into Russia
continentality	a region's distance from the moderating influence of the sea
Siberia	the Arctic and subarctic region of central Asia that extends from the Ural Mountains to the Pacific Ocean
taiga	a vast forest belt that covers about 40% of European Russia and extends into much of Siberia. It is the world's largest coniferous forest, containing about 50% of the world's softwood timber
tundra	a vast treeless plain in the arctic region of Russia between the ice cap and the tree line
Ural Mountains	the mountain ranges that separate the Northern European and West Siberian Plains and used as the dividing line between Europe and Asia
Volga River	longest river in Europe and connects Moscow to the Caspian Sea
Taiga	coniferous evergreen forest located in subarctic climate regions
Permafrost	area of subsoil that remains frozen
Crossroads	place where many migration routes intersect

Applying Knowledge

Discussion and Study Questions

1. What physical feature provides a divide between European and Asian Russia?
2. What are Russia's main physical regions?
3. In what ways was Russia a colonial empire?
4. What strategies did the Russian Empire use to govern a multiethnic state?
5. What were Soviet Socialist Republics, and why were they created?
6. What was a long-term consequence of the formation of Soviet Socialist Republics for the current geopolitical organization of this world region?
7. What are some of the major environmental problems in Russia?
8. Why did so many of the Soviet republics separate and become independent in 1991?
9. Why wasn't the Russian Orthodox Church more prominent or powerful during the Soviet era?
10. Why do more people live on the smaller European side of Russia than the larger Asian side?

Real-World Geography Exercise

1. Using Google Maps, complete the following activities:
    a. Locate each place on the bulleted list below.
    b. Find the nearest city with an international airport in proximity to each location on the bulleted list below.
    c. Calculate the distance and travel time by plane to each city from the Baltimore-Washington International Airport in Baltimore, Maryland.
2. Using NASA Latitude and Longitude Finder, determine the latitude and longitude for each location on the bulleted list below.
3. Be prepared to share and discuss your answers.

- Barents Sea
- Black Sea
- Caspian Sea
- Caucasus Mountains
- Central Asian Ranges
- Central Siberian Plateau
- Eastern Highlands
- European Plain
- Lake Baikal
- Ural Mountains
- West Siberian Plain
- Yakutsk Basin

Mapping Exercise

ESRI GEO Inquiry

Russian Expansion to the Sea: Discover when and how Russia acquired territory between 1553 and 1914 to become the largest country in the world. This mapping exercise uses online mapping software.


SSIAN REPUBLICS Explained (Ge
graphy Now
REPUBLICS
Watch on YouTube


siting the coldest town in the worl
Minutes Australia
- 71.2 DEGREES
POPULATION: 547
Watch on YouTube


litical System and Politics in Russ
oBooks Education
TICAL SYSTEM
IN RUSSIA
Watch on YouTube





Helpful Websites for the Study of Geography

Canadian Encyclopedia is an encyclopedia funded by the Canadian government covering all branches of knowledge. Their scholarly collection includes interactive materials.

CIA World Factbook provides information on the people, history, government, economy, energy, geography, communications, transportation, military, and transnational issues for the world's entities.

Congress.gov is a US government website where you can find federal legislation, past and present, as well as information about the US legal system.

Drug Enforcement Administration (DEA) is a government agency website that provides current news, resources, topics of interest, information about drugs, careers in the DEA, and a tip hotline.

Library of Congress is the largest library in the world and provides manuscripts, files, information, pictures, and videos.

NASA Earth Observatory (NEO) is a US government agency website that allows users to search for and retrieve satellite images of Earth.

National Archives is a US government website that provides historical documents, photos, records, publications, and educator resources.

National Oceanic and Atmospheric Association (NOAA) is a US government agency website that provides weather-related information and ocean research.

National Map is a website by the United States Geological Survey and other federal, state, and local agencies that delivers topographic information for the United States.

NationMaster is a massive central data source and a handy way to graphically compare nations.

Real-Time World Air Quality Index is a website that measures most locations in the world for air pollution in real time.

StateMaster is a unique statistical database, which allows you to research and compare a multitude of different data on US states.

United Nations (UN) is an international organization founded in 1945 and made up of 193 member states. The UN maintains international peace and security, protects human rights, delivers humanitarian aid, promotes sustainable development, and upholds international law.

United States Census Bureau is a US government agency that provides a population clock, data, surveys, statistics, a library with information and infographics, news about the economy, and much more.

United States Geological Survey (USGS) is a US government agency website that provides scientific information about the natural hazards that threaten lives, the natural resources we rely on, the health of our ecosystems and environment, and the impacts of climate and land-use change.

Whitehouse.gov is a US government website that provides the latest presidential news, information about the budget, policy, defense, and many more topics.

World Health Organization (WHO) is under the United Nations and provides leadership on matters critical to health, shapes the research agenda on health, and monitors the health situation and assessing health trends around the world. Their website provides information on the state of health around the world, outbreaks, current health news, and more.

World Trade Organization (WTO) is an intergovernmental organization that regulates international trade. The website provides information on the history of the multilateral trading system, featured videos, news and events, trade topics, and more.

LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

Discover when and how Russia acquired territory between 1553 and 1914 to become the largest country in the world.

Image	Reference	Attributions
	[Figure 1]	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/b9b3e18f588bf4b23aa9e413a21cef7a.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 2]	**Credit:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeograp...ing-the-realm/ **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/884cd790424556169985cdfb3e4053bd.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 3]	**Credit:** Wikimedia Commons – CC BY 2.5. **Source:** open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/4e084f74e12a1781e728ab96e52cba9a.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

This page titled 6.1: Russia- Physical Characteristics (2 Days) is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by CK12 via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

6.2: The USSR and the Russian Federation (3 Day)

Learning Objectives

1. Define the main tenets of a socialist economy.
2. Describe some of the conditions of life in the Soviet Union.
3. Briefly explain why the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics (USSR) collapsed.
4. Describe the post-Soviet economic and political situation.

Learning Objectives

TEKS Regional Unit 6: Russia, the Caucasus and Central Asia; Chapter 6.2 The USSR and the Russian Federation

WG.1A Analyze the effects of physical and human geographic patterns and processes on the past and describe their impact on the present, including significant physical features and environmental conditions that influenced migration patterns and shaped the distribution of culture groups today.

WG.7B Explain how political, economic, social, and environmental push and pull factors and physical geography affect the routes and flows of human migration.

WG.13A Interpret maps to explain the division of land, including man-made and natural borders, into separate political units such as cities, states, or countries.

WG.14A Analyze current events to infer the physical and human processes that lead to the formation of boundaries and other political divisions.

WG.14B Compare how democracy, dictatorship, monarchy, republic, theocracy, and totalitarian systems operate in specific countries.

WG.14C Analyze the human and physical factors that influence the power to control territory and resources, create conflict/war, and impact international political relations of sovereign nations such as China, the United States, Japan, and Russia and organized nation groups such as the United Nations (UN) and the European Union (EU).

WG.15A Identify and give examples of different points of view that influence the development of public policies and decision-making processes on local, state, national, and international levels

WG.16A Describe distinctive cultural patterns and landscapes associated with different places in Texas, the United States, and other regions of the world and how these patterns influenced the processes of innovation and diffusion.

WG.17A Describe and Compare patterns of culture such as language, religion, land use, education, and customs that make specific regions of the world distinctive.

WG,18A Analyze cultural changes in specific regions caused by migration, war, trade, innovations, and diffusion.

WG.19C Examine the environmental, economic, and social impacts of advances in technology on agriculture and natural resources.

WG.21C Create and Interpret different types of maps to answer geographic questions, infer relationships, and analyze change.

WG.22A Design and Draw appropriate graphics such as maps, diagrams, tables, and graphs to communicate geographic features, distributions, and relationships.

WG.22B Generate summaries, generalizations, and thesis statements supported by evidence.

WG.22C Use geographic terminology correctly.

TEKS and ELPS for Regional World Geography Unit 06--Russia, the Caucasus, and Central Asia from TEKS Resource System

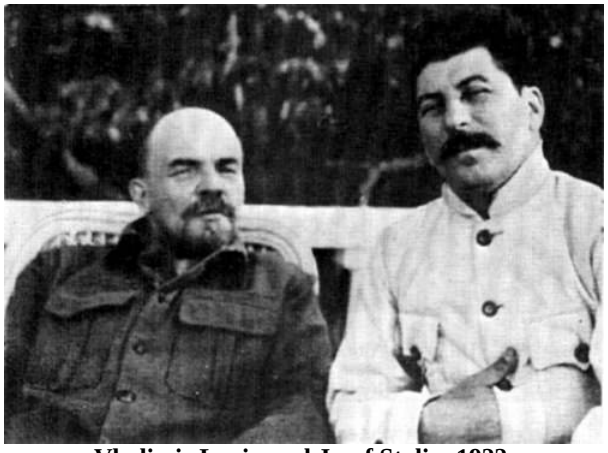
The USSR and the Russian Federation

As we learned in "Introducing the Realm", the Russian Empire was built by the czars over the course of a few hundred years. However, the economic and political systems of the Russian Empire were not sustainable in the modern era. The vast majority of the population was poor, and most were landless peasant farmers. In a place with short growing seasons, farming was not an easy path to riches.

Political decisions were made by a small elite group. At the dawn of the 20th century, 100 years after the Industrial Revolution swept through Great Britain and Western Europe, Russia remained an agricultural country and had not yet begun large-scale industrialization. Outside of the aristocracy, few supported the status quo in Russia, and there was widespread desire for a new political system and government.

However, no one could agree on what a new government would look like. In the aftermath of World War I, a civil war erupted in Russia. During these chaotic times, the last czar, Nicholas II, was forced from office. He and his family were executed. The most powerful group battling for control of Russia was a Communist group called the Bolsheviks, which translates to the “larger group.” Other groups, including the “smaller group,” the Mensheviks, lost the civil war. The Bolshevik leader was Vladimir Lenin. In 1917, he and his supporters began the process of changing Russia into a Communist state.

The capital city was moved back to Moscow from St. Petersburg where it had been since the time of Czar Peter the Great in the 18th century. St. Petersburg’s name was changed to Petrograd and then Leningrad in honor of Vladimir Lenin. The entire territory of the Russian Empire was turned into the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics (USSR). The Russian people traded a monarchy for a Marxist totalitarian state.



Vladimir Lenin and Josef Stalin, 1922.

The Soviet Union lasted from 1922 to 1991. Joseph Stalin, the Soviet dictator who took over after Lenin was incapacitated in 1922 and died in 1924. Stalin was a ruthless leader who killed or exiled anyone who got in his way. Stalin is famous for initiating economic plans that helped move Russia from a poor, agrarian state to a large, industrial superpower. He pushed for rapid industrialization, the eradication of family farms in lieu of large communal farms, the end of personal ownership of land or businesses, and the dramatic weakening of organized religion. All these changes came at a great price.

During his reign of terror, an estimated 30 million people lost their lives. The forced collectivization of agriculture brought about a devastating famine in 1932–33, in which between six to eight million people starved to death. Stalin led periodic purges of his perceived political enemies. The largest of these is known as the Great Purge. At that time (1936–38), about one million people were executed. The full extent of Stalin’s purges may never be fully known. Stalin’s rule ended in 1953 when he reportedly died of natural causes.

List of Leaders of the Russian SFSR 1917-1991

List of Leaders of the Soviet Union 1922-1991

List of Presidents of Russia 1991-Present

Marxist-Leninist Central Planning

The Soviet Union espoused the philosophies of Karl Marx, a 19th-century German theorist. Marx wrote that all political and economic life can be understood as a struggle between the various classes in society. People who adhere to Marx's philosophy are called Marxists. The Soviet version of Marxism is called Marxism-Leninism. In Marxist thought, capitalism is an oppressive economic system in which the working class (the proletariat) is oppressed by the bourgeoisie (the wealthy middle class).

Marxists believe that the proletariat should revolt, rise up against the bourgeoisie, take the property away from the rich, and give it to the government to control it for the benefit of the common people. Ultimately, a pure Communist system would result, with no social or economic classes, no private property, no rich people, and no poor people.

As a socialist state, the Soviet Union did not include open markets. The Soviet Union was a command economy, in which economic decisions were made by the state and not left to the market to decide. During the Soviet era, for example, industrial production was planned by the central government. The government would decide what would be produced, where it would be produced, the quantity produced, the number of workers who would produce it, where the raw materials would come from, and how the final product would be distributed. By mobilizing the entire country to work toward common goals, the USSR was able to achieve rapid industrialization.

Another main economic feature of the Soviet Union was collectivized agriculture. The Soviet leaders did not want individual, capitalist farmers to become rich and threaten their economic system. Nor did they want thousands of small, inefficient farms when the country was perpetually unable to feed itself. Instead, they decided to streamline agricultural production into large farm factories.

All the farmland in each area was consolidated into a government-owned collective operation. Some collective farms were run by the state, while others were run by private cooperatives. During the transition period to collective farming, individual farmers were forced to give up their land, animals, farm equipment, and farm buildings and donate them to the collective farm in their area.

The state also demanded a high percentage of the crops produced. At times, the government collected the entire harvest, not even allowing seed crops to be held for the following season. This brought about widespread famine in 1932–33. Collectivized agriculture remained the norm in the Soviet Union until the country's dissolution in 1991 and even afterward in some areas.

The Cold War

From the end of World War II in 1945 until the collapse of the USSR in 1991, the Soviet Union and the United States competed in the global community for the control of labor, resources, and world power. Each side attracted allies, and most countries were on the side of either the United States or the Soviet Union. This era, known as the Cold War, did not involve direct military armed conflict between the United States and the Soviet Union, but it transformed the world into a political chessboard, with each side wanting to block the other side from gaining ground.

Whenever the Soviets would enter into an alliance with a certain country, the United States was right there to try to counter the move. Wars, armed conflicts, sabotage, spying, and covert activities were the methods of the Cold War. Both sides stockpiled as much deadly weaponry as possible, including nuclear warheads and missiles. They also competed in the race to put people in outer space.



October revolution celebration 1983, Moscow, during the Cold War.

The Cold War led to wars fought in Vietnam, Korea, Grenada, Afghanistan, Angola, and the Middle East, with the Soviet Union funding one side and the United States the other. Covert wars or guerrilla wars with secret agents and political assassinations were fought in Cuba, Nicaragua, Chile, Guatemala, Mozambique, Laos, Cambodia, and a host of other third-world countries.

The Cold War divided the world into two main camps, each with a high number of nuclear weapons. Eastern Europe was sectioned off by the Iron Curtain, and the Berlin Wall divided the city of Berlin, Germany. These physical barriers divided the communist countries of Eastern Europe with the capitalist countries of Western Europe. Germany was divided into East and West.

Various Soviet dictators came to power and died in office before the end of the Cold War. The last Soviet leader was Mikhail Gorbachev, who assumed power in 1985. The U.S. president at the time was Ronald Reagan. During the 1980s the United States was outspending the Soviets militarily, and its economy was growing at a much faster rate than that of the USSR. At the same time, the Soviets were engaged in a costly war in Afghanistan, and their economy was faltering and in danger of collapse.

Gorbachev realized that reforms had to be implemented to modernize the Soviet system. Political life needed to be more open so that people would feel ownership of the country, and the economy needed to be restructured. Gorbachev implemented perestroika (restructuring of the economy with market-like reforms) and glasnost (openness and transparency of all government activities). The restructuring exposed fundamental problems in the economy, and by 1990 the Soviet economy was in worse shape than ever before.



The first McDonald's restaurant in the former Soviet Union was in Moscow, Russia.

The end came in 1991. The Soviet Union collapsed when 14 of the Soviet republics broke away and declared their independence. At this point, the Soviet state was too weak to prevent it. All the republics, including Russia itself (now called the Russian Federation), became independent countries. The only territories that did not achieve independence were the smaller republics and autonomous regions that existed within the Russian Federation's boundaries.

The Iron Curtain was taken down seemingly overnight, and people were free to travel to and from the former Communist countries. The old Russian flag flew over the Kremlin—the seat of the Russian government—for the first time since Czar Nicholas II had been in power 73 years earlier. The Communist era of the Soviet Union and the Cold War were over.



Kremlin is a Russian word for a walled city. Inside Moscow's Kremlin is the famous Red Square.

The post-Soviet transition was filled with political, economic, and social turmoil. Boris Yeltsin, the first president of the new Russian Federation, ushered in a series of economic reforms that privatized state-owned enterprises. Russian leaders tried to reverse socialism rapidly through what they called “shock therapy,” which they knew would be painful but hoped would be brief. These reforms created a new class of capitalist entrepreneurs.

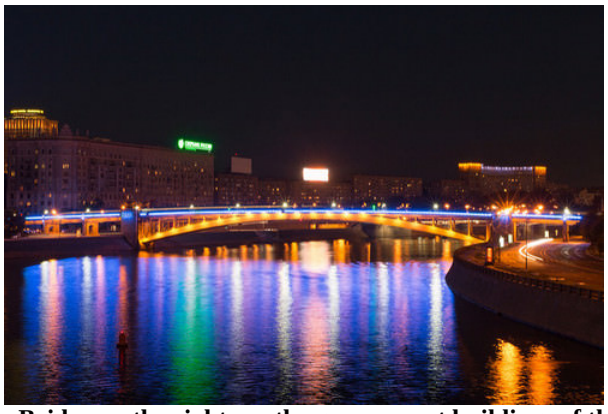
Wealth, once controlled by the political elite, was now being shifted to the business elite, a pattern found in most capitalist countries. Many ordinary workers faced unemployment for the first time as the new owners of various companies trimmed unnecessary staff. Private ownership forced housing costs to skyrocket, and while families were generally allowed to keep the homes they already lived in, purchasing houses or condominiums was too expensive for many people.

The value of the ruble, Russia’s currency, declined rapidly, and older people watched as their life savings evaporated overnight. Western goods were more accessible, and consumer products became more available than they were during the Soviet era. Bread lines and empty store shelves became distant memories as the former Communist state shifted over to a type of capitalist democracy. Yeltsin became less popular as citizens became dissatisfied with corruption and the high social costs of the post-Soviet transition. He resigned in 1999 and was replaced by Vladimir Putin.

Outline of Russia's Historical Geography

1. **The Region’s Early Heritage**
   - Vikings created fortified trading towns called gorods
   - Genghis Khan’s Mongol Empire invaded (1240 C.E.)
   - Feudal states arose around dominant trading centers
2. **Czarist Russia, 1547–1917**
   - Czars unified empire by internal colonialism
   - Forward capital of St. Petersburg created
   - Pioneers pushed eastward to Siberia and North America
3. **Bolshevik Revolution, 1917–22**
   - Czar Nicholas II and his family executed
   - Russian Civil War fought
   - Vladimir Lenin created Communist imperial state
   - The capital moved to Moscow; republics broke away
4. **The Soviet Union (USSR), 1922–91**
   - Czarist Empire became the Soviet Union
   - Central planning, collectivization, and the Cold War began
   - Republics kept together by military force
   - External interaction of glasnost initiated (the 1980s)
   - Economic restructuring and reforms of perestroika introduced (the 1980s)
5. **The Russian Republic, 1991–Present**
   - Independent republics lost with internal unrest
   - Economics privatized
   - Democracy introduced (the 1990s)
   - Central state strengthened (21st century)

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org



Behind the Borodinsky Bridge on the right are the government buildings of the Russian Federation.

Twenty-First-Century Russia

A Russian style of capitalism replaced the social, political, and economic system of the Communist era with a growing market economy. The export of Russia's vast quantities of natural resources, such as oil, natural gas, and timber, to Europe and the rest of the world helped the country rebound from the economic collapse of the 1990s. Russia has benefited from the recent increase in energy prices, and oil, natural gas, metals, and timber account for more than 80 percent of exports and 30 percent of government revenues.

However, Russia still needs to modernize its dilapidated manufacturing base if it is to economically compete against the European Union, North America, or eastern Asia. During Vladimir Putin's presidency, Russia witnessed substantial economic growth that inspired foreign investors to pump money into the Russian economy and catapulted Moscow into an investment haven and one of the richest cities in the world. Russia has become a major player in the global economy, although much of its population still suffer from poverty and social problems.

Russia's population grew steadily during the Soviet era, except during periods of famine or warfare. The country underwent a rural-to-urban shift as farm workers moved to cities to labor in factories. However, when the USSR collapsed, Russia's population fell sharply from a peak of 149 million in 1991 to about 143 million in 2005. The trend of low birth rates actually began during the Soviet period.

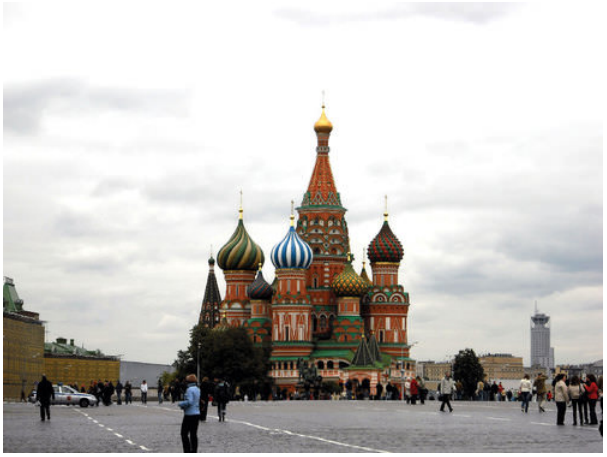
The population decline occurred because birth rates always decline during periods of economic and social crisis as people delay or decide against having children. In addition, the country experienced high death rates because of alcoholism, heart disease, and the collapse of the social safety net. Any time death rates surpass birth rates, a country's population will decline unless the difference is offset by immigration.

Russia's birth rate was also impacted by high rates of abortion. In 1992, for example, there were 221 abortions in Russia for every 100 live births.[1] Although Russia's population has seemingly bottomed out, the only reason it is not continuing to decline is immigration from the former Soviet republics. Russia still has a negative rate of natural increase.

To put Russia's demographic profile in context, its fertility rate was only about 1.5 in 2010, meaning that the average woman would have 1.5 children in her lifetime. This is below the 2.1 children each woman would need to have for the population to remain stable. The fertility rate in Russia is similar to that of countries in Europe (1.5) but lower than that of the United States (2.1). [2] Life expectancy for Russian men is variously reported as 60 years up to 63 years, while women can expect to live 73 to 75 years. In Western Europe, life expectancies are about 80 years.

About 80 percent of Russia's population is ethnically Russian. The next largest group is Tatar (3.8 percent), a group that traditionally has spoken the Tatar language and practiced Islam. More than 150 ethnic groups are represented in Russia, including indigenous people of the Arctic who herd reindeer for a living. Each of the nationalities of the former Soviet republics has a presence in Russia. Because of its relatively strong economy, Russia (especially Moscow) is an immigration magnet for residents of those countries. Most of these groups have their own language and cultural traditions.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org



The Cathedral of Intercession of the Virgin on the Moat, also known as the Cathedral of St. Basil the Blessed, on the Red Square, Moscow.

The Russian Orthodox Church is the dominant religious denomination in Russia. For generations, it was the country's official religion, and Russian people were automatically considered to be Orthodox, no matter what their personal beliefs. During the Soviet era, the government did much to weaken the church, including killing thousands of priests, monks, and nuns and closing most churches.

The much smaller church that survived was largely controlled by the state. Because of state-sanctioned atheism during the Soviet era, only 15 to 20 percent of Russia's population today actively practices Orthodoxy, although a much greater number claim to be Russian Orthodox Christians. Another 15 percent of the country's population practices Islam, especially in places such as the Caucasus region and the southern Ural Mountains. About two percent practice other forms of Christianity, such as Catholicism and Protestantism. [3] Even though Orthodoxy is practiced by a minority of Russia's population, the church has increased its influence since 1991 and often acts as an official church. A small percentage of the population are Buddhists, and various ethnic groups in Siberia and the Far East practice tribal religions and pagan rites.

The Russian Language

Like English, Russian is an Indo-European language. Russian is on the Slavic branch of the language tree, along with languages such as Polish, Ukrainian, and Serbo-Croatian. A relatively new language, it developed from a language called Old East Slavic that was spoken around 1100 C.E. Medieval Russian developed in the 13th century, and modern literary Russian is usually traced back to the early 19th century. Russian uses the Cyrillic alphabet, which was developed from Greek. The Russian language is the official language of the Russian republic. With over 100 languages used in the country, 27 of them are officially recognized in various regions within the republic.



Apple Keyboard for a Russian Computer.

Key Takeaways

- The Communist state was created in 1917 as the result of a civil war, which evolved into the creation of the Soviet Union in 1922. During this era, the Russian people traded a monarchy for a Marxist totalitarian state.
- One of the primary goals of the new USSR was rapid industrialization, and this goal was achieved through central planning and the collectivization of agriculture. Inefficiencies in the system persisted throughout the Soviet era.
- The Soviet Union's Communist system was maintained at great cost: millions were killed by purges and in government-produced famines.

- A weakened USSR tried to reform in the 1980s through Mikhail Gorbachev's policies of perestroika and glasnost but instead collapsed in 1991.
- Early post-Soviet years were ones of democratization, rapid privatization, and the unraveling of the social safety net.
- The shift to capitalism restructured the Russian economy.
- The Russian economy strengthened after 2000, and Russian president Vladimir Putin strengthened the power of the central state.
- Russia has a low fertility rate and a negative rate of natural increase. High rates of abortions and alcoholism have been contributing factors.
- The Russian Orthodox Church is the dominant religious denomination in Russia.

Vocabulary Terms

Chapter 6.2 The USSR and the Russian Federation

Caucasus	A region that crosses the Caucasus Mountains and stretches between the Black and Caspian Seas.
Chernobyl	City in the Ukraine where nuclear plant meltdown took place in 1986.
Communism	A social and economic system in which most property is owned by the government and shared by the governed
consumer goods	Things that are grown or made by production used by people
Czar (Tsar)	Title given to the emperor of Russia prior to the Russian Revolution
Glasnost	Reform policy which allowed for more openness by the government instituted by Mikhail Gorbachev.
Joseph Stalin	Leader of the Soviet Union during World War II
Karl Marx	German philosopher, famous for his ideas about the struggle between the rich and poor. He wrote the Communist Manifesto and is considered the father of communism
Mikhail Gorbachev	Leader of the Soviet Union in the mid 1980s. He began a dramatic restructuring of Soviet political and economic policies
perestroika	The reform of government and economy in the former Soviet Union
permafrost	Permanently frozen soil
Vladimir Lenin	Leader of the communist revolution and first leader of the Soviet Union

Applying Knowledge

Discussion and Study Questions

1. By what process did the Russian Empire become the Soviet Union?
2. Who were the first two leaders of the USSR. What were some of their accomplishments? What were some of the human costs?
3. What were some of the main features of Karl Marx's philosophy?
4. What were two main economic policies of the Soviet Union?
5. Who was fighting the Cold War? Where were major conflicts fought during this war?
6. How did the Cold War end? What leaders were in power in the United States and the Soviet Union when it ended?

7. What two policies did the last Soviet leader implement to assist in reforming the USSR?
8. What happened to the many external republics after 1991?
9. How did the economic system change for Russia after 1991?
10. What are some reasons for Russia's population decline?

Real-World Geography Exercise

Using Google Maps, locate the places below. Calculate the distance and how long it would take to fly in an airplane from your hometown to each city. Be prepared to share your answers.

- Moscow
- St. Petersburg

Mapping Exercise

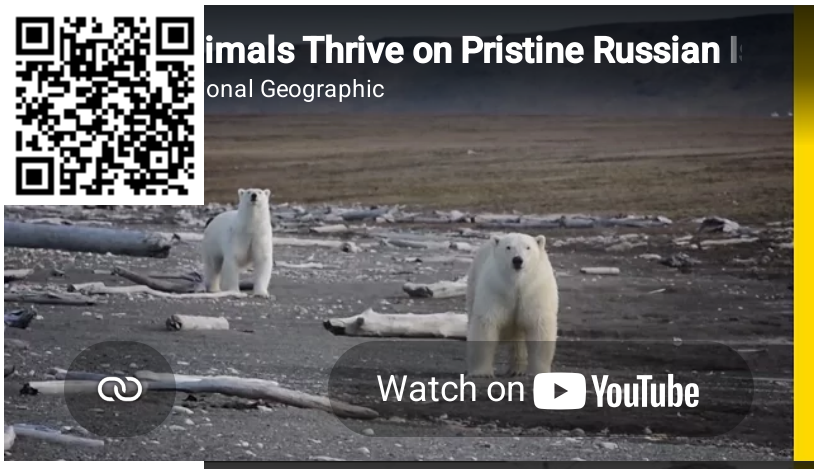
ESRI GEOInquiry

Hot Spots in a Cold War: Students will use mapping software to analyze and explain the reasons for the development of the Cold War conflicts between the USSR and the USA after World War II.

Videos for Geography Enrichment

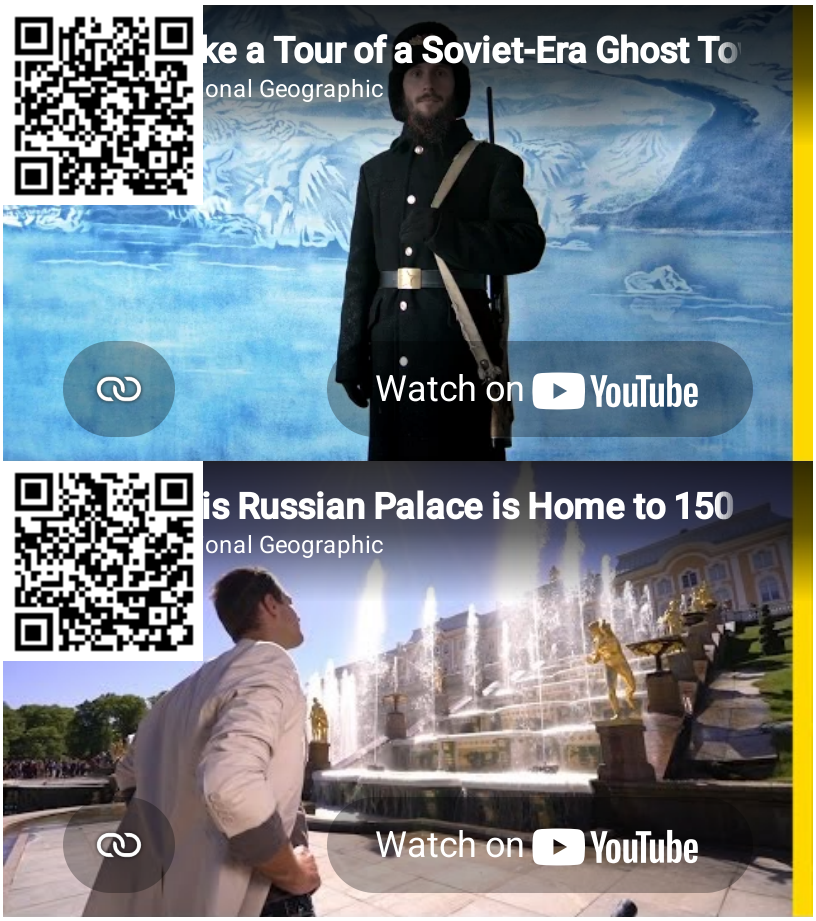





imals Thrive on Pristine Russian I
onal Geographic
Watch on YouTube


e Revolution That Shaped Russia
onal Geographic
Watch on YouTube


e Why Sochi Is One of Russia's Be
onal Geographic
Watch on YouTube



Helpful Websites for the Study of Geography

Canadian Encyclopedia is an encyclopedia funded by the Canadian government covering all branches of knowledge. Their scholarly collection includes interactive materials.

CIA World Factbook provides information on the people, history, government, economy, energy, geography, communications, transportation, military, and transnational issues for the world's entities.

Congress.gov is a U.S. government website where you can find federal legislation, past and present, as well as information about the U.S. legal system.

Drug Enforcement Administration (DEA) is a government agency website that provides current news, resources, topics of interest, information about drugs, careers in the DEA, and a tip hotline.

Library of Congress is the largest library in the world and provides manuscripts, files, information, pictures, and videos.

NASA Earth Observatory (NEO) is a U.S. government agency website that allows users to search for and retrieve satellite images of Earth.

National Archives is a U.S. government website that provides historical documents, photos, records, publications, and educator resources.

National Oceanic and Atmospheric Association (NOAA) is a U.S. government agency website that provides weather-related information and ocean research.

National Map is a website by the United States Geological Survey and other federal, state, and local agencies that delivers topographic information for the United States.

NationMaster is a massive central data source and a handy way to graphically compare nations.

Real-Time World Air Quality Index is a website that measures most locations in the world for air pollution in real time.

StateMaster is a unique statistical database, which allows you to research and compare a multitude of different data on U.S. states.

United Nations (UN) is an international organization founded in 1945 and made up of 193 member states. The UN maintains international peace and security, protects human rights, delivers humanitarian aid, promotes sustainable development, and upholds international law.

United States Census Bureau is a U.S. government agency that provides a population clock, data, surveys, statistics, a library with information and infographics, news about the economy, and much more.

United States Geological Survey (USGS) is a U.S. government agency website that provides scientific information about the natural hazards that threaten lives, the natural resources we rely on, the health of our ecosystems and environment, and the impacts of climate and land-use change.

Whitehouse.gov is a U.S. government website that provides the latest presidential news, information about the budget, policy, defense, and many more topics.

World Health Organization (WHO) is under the United Nations and provides leadership on matters critical to health; shapes the research agenda on health; and monitors the health situation and assessing health trends around the world. Their website provides information on the state of health around the world, outbreaks, current health news, and more.

World Trade Organization (WTO) is an intergovernmental organization that regulates international trade. The website provides information on the history of the multilateral trading system, featured videos, news and events, trade topics, and more.

Footnotes

[1] “Historical Abortion Statistics, Russia,” Johnston`s Archive, http://www.johnstonsarchive.net/policy/abortion/ab-russia.html.

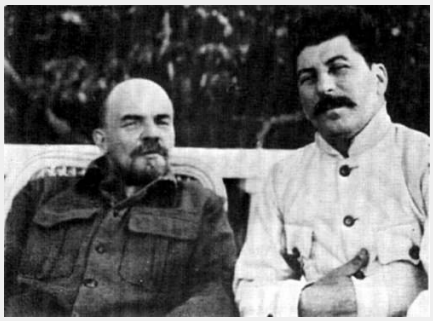
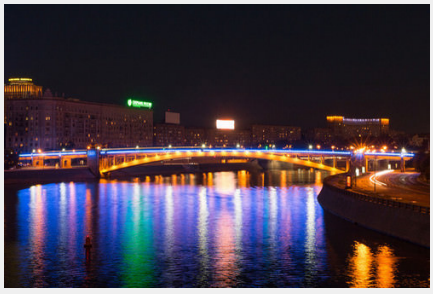
[2] “The World Factbook,” Central Intelligence Agency, https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/xx.html.

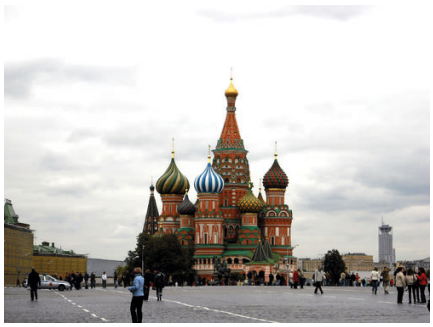
[3] “The World Factbook,” Central Intelligence Agency, https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/xx.html.

Students will use mapping software to analyze and explain the reasons for the development of the Cold War conflicts between the

https://k12.libretexts.org/@go/page/1891

USSR and the USA.

Image	Reference	Attributions
	[Figure 1]	**Credit:** Wikimedia Commons – public domain **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/19220901-lenin_stalin_at_gorki.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 2]	**Credit:** Wikimedia Commons – public domain. **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/c6d543a2c2706a867930be2c88ee16c0.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 3]	**Credit:** Fran Urbano – First McDonalds in Russia – CC BY 2.0. **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/chapter/3-2-the-ussr-and-the-russian-federation/ **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 4]	**Credit:** Larry Koester – Kremlin – CC BY 2.0. **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/chapter/3-2-the-ussr-and-the-russian-federation/ **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 5]	**Credit:** Kirill Vinokurov – Borodinsky Bridge – CC BY 2.0. **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/chapter/3-2-the-ussr-and-the-russian-federation/ **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

	[Figure 6]	**Credit:** Wikimedia Commons – public domain. **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/43df1cb9812b807d2c696af0c556e02b.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 7]	**Credit:** Iwan Gabovitch – My current keyboard – CC BY 2.0. **Source:** Photo courtesy of Iwan Gabovitch ; http://www.flickr.com/photos/qubodup/4611704224. ; http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/91296d9139540aa9eaf163433c70679d.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

This page titled 6.2: The USSR and the Russian Federation (3 Day) is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by CK12 via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

6.3: Exploring the Regions of Russia (3 Days)

Chapter Challenges

1. Name the major cities, rivers, and economic base of Russia's core region.
2. Identify the economic base of cities in the Eastern Frontier and the identity of the world's most voluminous freshwater lake.
3. Describe the physical attributes of Siberia and the Far East.
4. Explain why Chechnya has been at war with Russia twice since 1994.
5. Learn why Russia invaded Georgia in 2008 and discover the role of fossil fuels in the economies of Armenia and Azerbaijan.

Learning Objectives

TEKS Regional Unit 6:Russia, the Caucasus and Central Asia; Chapter 6.3 Exploring the Regions of Russia

WG.4A Explain how elevation, latitude, wind systems, ocean currents, position on a continent, and mountain barriers influence temperature, precipitation, and distribution of climate regions.

WG.4B Describe different landforms and the physical processes that cause their development.

WG.4C Explain the influence of climate on the distribution of biomes in different regions.

5A Analyze how the character of a place is related to its political, economic, social, and cultural elements.

6B Explain the processes that have caused changes in settlement patterns, including urbanization, transportation, access to and availability of resources, and economic activities.

WG.7B Examine benefits and challenges of globalization, including connectivity, standard of living, pandemics, and loss of local culture.

WG.8A Compare ways that humans depend on, adapt to, and modify the physical environment, including the influences of culture and technology.

WG.8B Describe the interaction between humans and the physical environment and analyze the consequences of extreme weather and other natural disasters such as El Niño, floods, tsunamis, and volcanoes.

WG.9A Identify physical and/or human factors such as climate, vegetation, language, trade networks, political units, river systems, and religion that constitute a region.

WG.10B Classify where specific countries fall along the economic spectrum between free enterprise and communism.

WG.11A Understand the connections between levels of development and economic activities (primary, secondary, tertiary, and quaternary).

WG.11C Assess how changes in climate, resources, and infrastructure (technology, transportation, and communication) affect the location and patterns of economic activities.

WG.16C Explain ways various groups of people perceive the characteristics of their own and other cultures, places, and regions differently.

WG.17A Describe and Compare patterns of culture such as language, religion, land use, education, and customs that make specific regions of the world distinctive.

WG.18A Analyze cultural changes in specific regions caused by migration, war, trade, innovations, and diffusion.

WG.19C Examine the environmental, economic, and social impacts of advances in technology on agriculture and natural resources.

WG.21C Create and interpret different types of maps to answer geographic questions, infer relationships, and analyze change.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

WG.22A Design and Draw appropriate graphics such as maps, diagrams, tables, and graphs to communicate geographic features, distributions, and relationships.

WG.22B Generate summaries, generalizations, and thesis statements supported by evidence.

WG.22C Use geographic terminology correctly.

WG.22D Use standard grammar, spelling, sentence structure, and punctuation.

TEKS and ELPS for Regional World Geography Unit 06--Russia, the Caucasus, and Central Asia from TEKS Resource System

The Core Region Exploring the Regions of Russia

Most of Russia's population and its major industries are located west of the Ural Mountains on the Russian Plain. Known as Russia's geographic core, this includes the Moscow region, the Volga region, and the Ural Mountain region. Moscow, Russia's capital city, anchors a central industrial area that is home to more than 50 million people. Moscow alone has more than ten million residents, with about 13 million in its metropolitan area.

A ring of industrial cities surrounding Moscow contains vital production centers of Russian manufacturing. During the Communist era, Moscow expanded from its 19th century core and became an industrial city with planned neighborhoods. This world-class city has an extensive subway and freeway system that is expanding to meet current growth demands. Although rents, commodities, and domestic goods had fixed prices during the Communist era, the Soviet Union's collapse changed all that. Today Moscow is one of the most expensive places to live in the world, with prices based on supply and demand.

St. Petersburg is Russia's second largest city, with a population of about five million. Located on the Baltic Sea, it is western Russia's leading port city. The city was renamed Petrograd (1914–24) and Leningrad (1924–91) but today is often called Petersburg, or just "Peter" for short. Peter the Great built the city with the help of European architects in the early 18th century to rival other European capitals, and he made it the capital of the Russian Empire.

Named after St. Peter in the Bible (not Peter the Great), St. Petersburg is a cultural center for Russia and a major tourist destination. It is also known for shipbuilding, oil and gas trade, manufacturing, and finance. Its greatest tragedy took place when it was under siege for 29 months by the German military during World War II. About one million civilians died of starvation or during the bombardment, and hundreds of thousands fled the city, leaving the city nearly empty by the end of the siege.



This map illustrates Russia's core regions.

To the far north of St. Petersburg on the Barents Sea are the cities of Murmansk and Arkhangelsk. Murmansk is a major military port for Russia's navy and nuclear submarine fleet. Warm water from the North Atlantic drift circles around Norway to keep this

northern port city fairly free of ice. Arkhangelsk (which means “archangel”), used as a port for lumber exports, has a much shorter ice-free season than Murmansk. Both of these cities are in Russia’s far north, with long winters and brief summers.

The Volga River flows through the core region of Russia, providing transportation, fresh water, and fishing. The Volga is the longest river in Europe at 2,293 miles, and it drains most of Russia’s western core region. This river has been a vital link in the transportation system of Russia for centuries and connects major industrial centers from the Moscow region to the south through an extensive network of canals and other waterways. The Volga River flows into the Caspian Sea, and a canal links the Volga with the Black Sea through a connecting canal via the Don River.

At the eastern edge of Russia’s European core lie the Ural Mountains, which act as a natural divide between Europe and Asia. These low-lying mountains have an abundance of minerals and fossil fuels, which make the Ural Mountains ideal for industrial development. The natural resources of the Urals and the surrounding area provide raw materials for manufacturing and export. The eastern location kept these resources out of the hands of the Nazis during World War II, and the resources themselves helped in the war effort. Oil and natural gas exploration and development have been extensive across Russia’s core region and have greatly increased Russia’s export profits.



This map illustrates Russia's eastern frontier, the Far East, and Siberia.

The Eastern Frontier

East of the Urals, in south-central Russia, is Russia’s Eastern Frontier, a region of planned cities, industrial plants, and raw-material processing centers. The population is centered in two zones here: the Kuznetsk Basin (or Kuzbas, for short) and the Lake Baikal region.

The Kuzbas is a region of coal, iron ore, and bauxite mining; timber processing; and steel and aluminum production industries. Central industrial cities were created across the Eastern Frontier to take advantage of these resource opportunities. The most important of these is Novosibirsk, the third largest city in Russia after Moscow and St. Petersburg and home to about 1.4 million people. The city is not only noted for its industries but it is also the region’s center for the arts, music, and theater. It is host to a music conservatory and a philharmonic orchestra, a division of the Russian Academy of Sciences, and three major universities.

Agriculture, timber, and mining are the main economic activities in the eastern Lake Baikal region, which is more sparsely settled than the Kuzbas. Lake Baikal (400 miles long, 50 miles wide) holds more fresh water than all the US Great Lakes together and about 20 percent of all the liquid fresh water on the earth’s surface. Its depth has been recently measured at 5,370 feet (more than a mile). Some of the longest river systems in the world flow through the Eastern Frontier.

The Irtysh, Ob, Yenisey, and Lena are the main rivers that flow north through the region into Siberia and on to the Arctic Ocean. To the east, the Amur River creates the border between Russia and China until it flows north into the Sea of Okhotsk. In addition to waterways, the Trans-Siberian Railway is the major transportation link through the Eastern Frontier, connecting Moscow with the port city of Vladivostok in the Far East.

Siberia

Siberia, as a place name, refers to all of Asian Russia east of the Ural Mountains, including the Eastern Frontier and the Russian Far East. However, in this and some other geography textbooks, the term *Siberia* more specifically describes only the region north of the Eastern Frontier that extends to the Kamchatka Peninsula. The word *Siberia* conjures up visions of a cold and isolated place, which is true. Stretching from the northern Ural Mountains to the Bering Strait, Siberia is larger than the entire United States but is home to only about 15 million people. Its cities are located on strategic rivers with few overland highways connecting them.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

Type D (continental) climates dominate the southern portion of this region, and the territory consists mainly of coniferous forests in a biome called the taiga. This is one of the world's largest taiga regions. Type E (polar) climates can be found north of the taiga along the coast of the Arctic Sea, where the tundra is the main physical landscape. No trees grow in the tundra because of the semifrozen ground. Permafrost may thaw near the surface during the short summer season but is permanently frozen beneath the surface. On the eastern edge of the continent, the mountainous Kamchatka Peninsula has 20 active volcanoes and more than 100 inactive volcanoes. It is one of the most active geological regions on the Pacific Rim.



Mount Koryasky, an Active Volcano, and Petropavlovsk-Kamchatsky, a Town on Russia's Kamchatka Peninsula.

The vast northern region of Russia is sparsely inhabited but holds enormous quantities of natural resources such as oil, timber, diamonds, natural gas, gold, and silver. There are vast resources in Siberia waiting to be extracted, and this treasure trove will play an important role in Russia's economic future.

The Far East



Vladivostok Tram Opposite the Admiral's Club on Its Way to the Railway Station, Vladivostok.

Across the strait from Japan is Russia's Far East region, with the port of Vladivostok (population about 578,000) as its primary city. Bordering North Korea and China, this Far East region is linked to Moscow by the Trans-Siberian Railway. Before 1991, Vladivostok was closed to outsiders and was an important army and naval base for the Russian military. Goods and raw materials from Siberia and nearby Sakhalin Island were processed here and shipped west by train. Sakhalin Island and its coastal waters have oil and mineral resources. Industrial and business enterprises declined with the collapse of the Soviet Union in 1991. Today, the Far East is finding itself on the periphery of Russia's hierarchy of productivity. However, it has the potential to emerge again as an important link to the Pacific Rim markets.

Southern Russia

In the southern portion of the Russian core lies a land bridge between Europe and Southwest Asia. This is a region dominated by the Caucasus Mountains. To the west is the Black Sea, and to the east is the landlocked Caspian Sea. The Caucasus Mountains,

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

higher than the European Alps, were formed by the Arabian tectonic plate moving northward into the Eurasian plate. The highest peak is Mount Elbrus at 18,510 feet. Located on the border between Georgia and Russia, Mount Elbrus is the highest peak on the European continent as well as the highest peak in Russia.

Most of this region was conquered by the Russian Empire during the 19th century and held as part of the Soviet Union in the 20th century. However, only a minority of its population is ethnic Russian. Its people consist of at least 50 ethnic groups speaking a variety of languages.

Since the collapse of the Soviet Union, the Caucasus region has been the main location of unrest within Russia. Wars between Russia and groups in the Caucasus have claimed thousands of lives. Some of the non-Russian territories of the Caucasus would like to become independent, but Russia fears an unraveling of its country if their secession is allowed to proceed. To understand why the Russians have fought the independence of places such as Chechnya but did not fight against the independence of other former Soviet states in the Caucasus such as Armenia, it is necessary to study the administrative structure of Russia itself.



This map illustrates the Republics of Southern Russia, Including Chechnya.

Of the 21 republics, eight are located in southern Russia in the Caucasus region. One of these, the Chechen Republic (or Chechnya), has never signed the Federation Treaty to join the Russian Federation. In fact, Chechnya proposed independence after the breakup of the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics (USSR). Although other territories to the south of Chechnya, such as Georgia, Armenia, and Azerbaijan, also declared their independence from Russia after 1991, they were never administratively part of Russia.

During the Soviet era, those countries were classified as Soviet Socialist Republics, so it was easy for them to become independent countries when all the other republics (e.g., Ukraine, Belarus, and Kazakhstan) did so after 1991. However, Chechnya was administratively part of the USSR with no right to secession. After 1991, Russia decided that it would not allow territories that had been administratively governed by Russia to secede and has fought wars to prevent that from happening. It feared the consequences if all 21 republics within the Russian Federation were declared independent countries.

Chechnya has fought against Russia for independence twice since the USSR's collapse. The First Chechen War (1994–96) ended in a stalemate, and Russia allowed the Chechens to have de facto independence for several years. But in 1999, Russia resumed military action, and by 2009 the war was essentially over and Chechnya was once more under Russia's control. Between 25,000 and 50,000 Chechens were killed in the war, and between 5,000 and 11,000 Russian soldiers were also killed. In 2003, the United Nations called Grozny, Chechnya's capital, the most destroyed city on Earth. Reconstruction of Grozny has slowly begun.

Even before the recent wars, Chechnya had a difficult past. Over the course of its history, it has been at the boundary between the Ottoman Empire, the Persian Empire, and the Russian Empire. Most of the people converted to Sunni Islam in the 1700s to curry favor with the Ottomans and seek their protection against Russian encroachment. Nevertheless, Chechnya was annexed by the

Russian Empire. During Soviet leader Josef Stalin's regime, more than 500,000 Chechens were loaded on train cars and shipped to Kazakhstan, where as many as one-half died.

Transcaucasia

The independent countries of Georgia, Armenia, and Azerbaijan make up the region of Transcaucasia. Although they are independent countries, they are included in this chapter because they have more ties to Russia than to the region of Southwest Asia to their south. They have been inextricably connected to Russia ever since they were annexed by the Russian Empire in the late 18th and early 19th centuries, and they were all former republics within the Soviet Union. When the Soviet Union collapsed in 1991, these three small republics declared independence and separated from the rest of what became Russia.

Geographically, these three countries are located on the border between the European and Asian continents. The Caucasus Mountain range is considered the dividing line. The region known as Transcaucasia is generally designated as the southern portion of the Caucasus Mountain area.



This map illustrates southern Russia and Transcaucasia.

The country of Georgia has a long history of ancient kingdoms and a golden age including invasions by the Mongols, Ottomans, Persians, and Russians. For three years—from 1918 to 1921—Georgia was independent. After fighting an unsuccessful war to remain free after the Russian Revolution, Georgia was absorbed into the Soviet Union. Since it declared independence in 1991, the country has struggled to gain a stable footing within the world community.

Unrest in the regions of South Ossetia, Abkhazia, and Adjara (where the populations are generally not ethnic Georgian) has destabilized the country, making it more difficult to engage in the global economy. Russia and Georgia had a military conflict in 2008, when Russian troops entered the South Ossetian region to support its move toward independence from Georgia.

Georgia considered South Ossetia to be a part of Georgia and called the Russians an occupying force. Many other countries, including the United States, condemned Russia for their action. Russian troops pulled out of Georgia but supported the independence of South Ossetia and Georgia's westernmost region of Abkhazia. Neither South Ossetia nor Abkhazia are considered independent states by most of the world's countries.

A democratic-style central government has emerged in Georgia, and economic support has been provided by international aid and foreign investments. The country has made the switch from the old Soviet command economy to a free-market economy. Agricultural products and tourism have been Georgia's main economic activities.

In 2010, Armenia, to the south of Georgia, had a population of only about three million in a physical area smaller in size than the US state of Maryland. It is a country with its own distinctive alphabet and language and was the first country in the world to adopt Christianity as a state religion, an event traditionally dated to 301 C.E. The Armenian Apostolic Church remains the country's

central religious institution, and the Old City of Jerusalem in Israel has an Armenian Quarter, an indication of Armenia's early connection with Christianity.

The small landlocked country has experienced invasions from every empire that controlled the region throughout history. The geographic area of the country decreased when the Ottoman Empire took control of western Armenia, and that region remains a part of Turkey to this day. A bitter conflict between Turks and Armenians during World War I resulted in the systematic deaths of as many as a million Armenians. This genocide continues to be commemorated annually on April 24, the traditional date of the Armenian Martyrs' Day, but Turkey still denies the events were genocide.

Like the other former Soviet republics, Armenia has shifted from a centrally planned economy to a market economy. Before independence in 1991, Armenia's economy had a manufacturing sector that provided other Soviet republics with industrial goods in exchange for raw materials and energy. Since then, its manufacturing sector has declined and Armenia has fallen back on agriculture and financial remittances from the approximately eight million Armenians living abroad to support its economy. These remittances, along with international aid and direct foreign investments, have helped stabilize Armenia's economic situation.

Azerbaijan is an independent country to the east of Armenia bordering the Caspian Sea. It is about the same size in area as the US state of Maine. This former Soviet republic has a population of more than eight million in which more than 90 percent are Muslims. Azerbaijan shares a border with the northern province of Iran, which is also called Azerbaijan. Part of Azerbaijan is located on the western side of Armenia and is separated from the rest of the country.

Located on the shores of the Caspian Sea**,** Baku is the capital of Azerbaijan and is the largest city in the region, with a population approaching two million. During the Cold War era, it was one of the top five largest cities in the Soviet Union. The long history of this vibrant city and the infusion of oil revenues have given rise to a metropolitan center of activity that has attracted global business interests. Wealth has not been evenly distributed in the country, and at least one-fourth of the population still lives below the poverty level.

Azerbaijan is rich with oil reserves. Petroleum was discovered here in the 8th century, and hand-dug oil wells produced oil as early as the 15th century. Since the Industrial Revolution, the rising value of petroleum for energy increased the industrial extraction of oil in Azerbaijan. At the end of the 19th century, this small country produced half of the oil in the world. Oil and natural gas are the country's main export products and have been a central focus of its economy. Large oil reserves are located beneath the Caspian Sea, and offshore wells with pipelines to shore have expanded throughout the Caspian Basin.

As much as the export of oil and natural gas has been an economic support for the country, it has not been without costs to the environment. According to US government sources, local scientists consider parts of Azerbaijan to be some of the most devastated environmental areas in the world. Serious air, soil, and water pollution exist due to uncontrolled oil spills and the heavy use of chemicals in the agricultural sector.



This photo shows the oilfields of Azerbajain.

Key Takeaways

- The vast majority of Russia's population live in the western core area of the country, the region around the capital city of Moscow.

- Most of the cities on the Barents Sea and in the Eastern Frontier were established for manufacturing or for the exploitation of raw materials.
- The Volga River and its tributaries have been an important transportation network for centuries. The Volga is the longest river in Europe.
- Very few people live in Siberia, but the region is rich with natural resources.
- The most contentious region in Russia is the Caucasus Mountain region, especially the area of Chechnya.
- The Caucasus is characterized by ethnic and religious diversity and by a desire for independence from Russia.
- South of Russia in the Caucasus is the region of Transcaucasia. It is ethnically, religiously, and linguistically diverse. Countries there are independent of Russia, although they have a long history of being part of the Russian and Soviet Empires. Some of the countries are rich in petroleum reserves.

Vocabulary Terms

LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

Baltic Republics	The countries of Latvia, Lithuania, and Estonia, located on the eastern coast of the Baltic sea
Berlin Wall	A wall erected by East Germany in 1961 to cut the capital of Berlin in two, and later dismantled in 1989
Central Asia	A region that includes the republics of Kazakhstan, Kyrgyzstan, Tajikistan, Turkmenistan, and Uzbekistan
Chechnya	One of the republics that remains a part of Russia after the collapse of the Soviet Union despite independence movements and violent upheaval
Cold War	The conflict between the U.S and the Soviet Union after WWII, called "Cold" because it never escalated into open warfare
collective farm	An enormous farm in the Soviet Union on which a large team of laborers was gathered to work together during Joseph Stalin's reign
command economy	A type of economic system in which production of goods and services is determined by a central government, which usually owns the means of production
Eurasia	The combined continent of Europe and Asia
market economy	A type of economic system in which production of goods and services are determined by the demand from consumers; often called a demand economy or capitalism
privatization	The selling of government-owned business to private citizens. This occurred after the collapse of communism in Russia
Red Army	The name of the Soviet Union's military
Russian Revolution	The revolt of 1917, in which the Russian communist party, led by V.I Lenin, took control of the government from the czars
Silk Road	The 4,000-mile route between China and the Mediterranean sea, named for the costly sills acquired in China
Soviet Union/USSR	The Union of Soviet Socialist Republics formed in 1922 by the communists and officially dissolved in 1991
supra	Georgian term for dinner party, with many dishes and courses, toasts, and short speeches
Trans-Siberian Railroad	A railroad that would eventually link Moscow to the Pacific port of Vladivostok; built between 1891 and 1903

Applying Knowledge

Discussion and Study Questions

1. What are Russia’s four main regions and what are the main qualities of each?
2. What connects Moscow with Russia’s Far East, and why is this important?
3. What are some of the major environmental problems in Russia and Transcaucasia?
4. What is the relationship between the countries of Georgia and Russia? Describe their 2008 conflict.
5. What happened to Chechnya? Why has Russia fought two wars in Chechnya since the Soviet Union’s collapse?

LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

6. What are the three independent countries of Transcaucasia, and when did they gain independence from Russia?
7. Which of the three Transcaucasian countries has the least opportunity to gain wealth? What is the largest source of income in this region?
8. What physical feature demarcates the boundary between Europe and Asia in southern Russia?
9. What is the largest city in Transcaucasia? On what sea is it located?

Real-World Geography Exercise

Using Google Maps, locate each one of the physical regions below. From the list, choose 10 and calculate the distance and how long it would take to travel by airplane from your hometown to the nearest airport of your chosen location.

- Abkhazia
- Adjara
- Arctic Ocean
- Amur River
- Arkhangelsk
- Armenia
- Azerbaijan
- Baku
- Baltic Sea
- Bering Strait
- Black Sea
- Caspian Sea
- Chechnya
- Don River
- Eastern Frontier
- Georgia
- Grozny
- Irtysh River
- Kamchatka Peninsula
- Kuznetsk Basin
- Lake Baikal
- Lena River
- Murmansk
- Mt. Elbrus
- Novosibirsk
- Ob River
- Sakhalin Island
- Sea of Okhotsk
- Siberia
- South Ossetia
- Transcaucasia
- Vladivostok
- Volga River

Mapping Exercise

ESRI GEO Inquiry

The Silk Road Then and Today: Student's will explore the Silk Roads transfer of goods, ideas, and disease yesterday and today.

Mapping Our World Module 5 Lesson 1

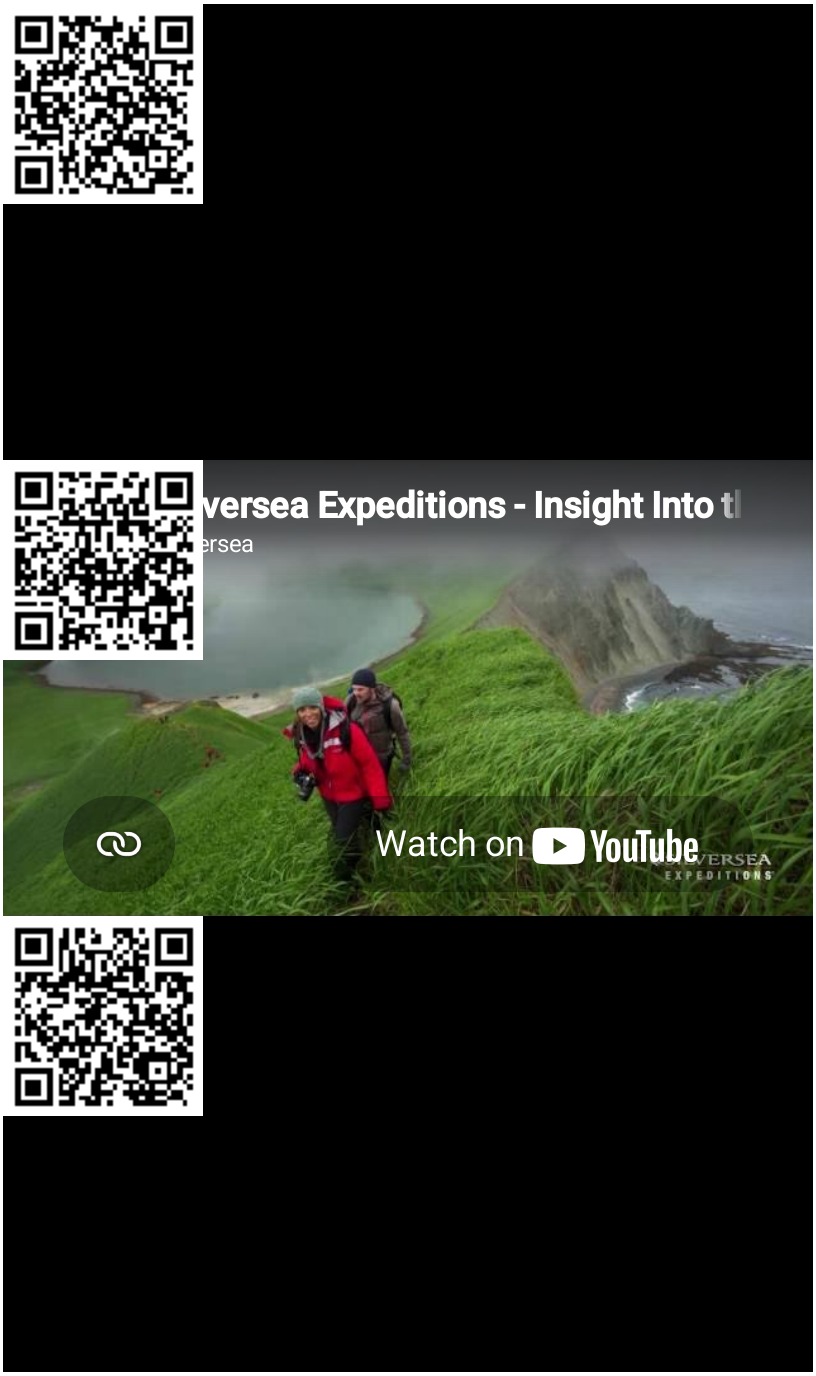
Crossing the Line: Boundaries are invisible lines on the Earth's surface. They divide the surface area into distinct political entities. In this activity, students will use GIS to investigate different types of international boundaries, explore the implications of various boundary configurations, and observe boundary changes that occurred in recent years.

Student Answer Doc-download

Student Assessment Doc-download

Teacher Material-download

Videos for Geography Enrichment



https://k12.libretexts.org/@go/page/1890



Helpful Websites for the Study of Geography

Canadian Encyclopedia is an encyclopedia funded by the Canadian government covering all branches of knowledge. Their scholarly collection includes interactive materials.

CIA World Factbook provides information on the people, history, government, economy, energy, geography, communications, transportation, military, and transnational issues for the world's entities.

Congress.gov is a US government website where you can find federal legislation, past and present, as well as information about the US legal system.

Drug Enforcement Administration (DEA) is a government agency website that provides current news, resources, topics of interest, information about drugs, careers in the DEA, and a tip hotline.

Library of Congress is the largest library in the world and provides manuscripts, files, information, pictures, and videos.

NASA Earth Observatory (NEO) is a US government agency website that allows users to search for and retrieve satellite images of Earth.

National Archives is a US government website that provides historical documents, photos, records, publications, and educator resources.

National Oceanic and Atmospheric Association (NOAA) is a US government agency website that provides weather-related information and ocean research.

National Map is a website by the United States Geological Survey and other federal, state, and local agencies that delivers topographic information for the United States.

NationMaster is a massive central data source and a handy way to graphically compare nations.

Real-Time World Air Quality Index is a website that measures most locations in the world for air pollution in real time.

StateMaster is a unique statistical database, which allows you to research and compare a multitude of different data on US states.

United Nations (UN) is an international organization founded in 1945 and made up of 193 member states. The UN maintains international peace and security, protects human rights, delivers humanitarian aid, promotes sustainable development, and upholds international law.

United States Census Bureau is a US government agency that provides a population clock, data, surveys, statistics, a library with information and infographics, news about the economy, and much more.

United States Geological Survey (USGS) is a US government agency website that provides scientific information about the natural hazards that threaten lives, the natural resources we rely on, the health of our ecosystems and environment, and the impacts of climate and land-use change.

Whitehouse.gov is a US government website that provides the latest presidential news, information about the budget, policy, defense, and many more topics.

World Health Organization (WHO) is under the United Nations and provides leadership on matters critical to health, shapes the research agenda on health, and monitors the health situation and assessing health trends around the world. Their website provides information on the state of health around the world, outbreaks, current health news, and more.

LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

World Trade Organization (WTO) is an intergovernmental organization that regulates international trade. The website provides

LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

information on the history of the multilateral trading system, featured videos, news and events, trade topics, and more.

Image	Reference	Attributions
	[Figure 1]	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/1a2fb47ba9e3afaff425c6ae8d376b8a.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 2]	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/cef92c4feb76f1a62c157b36012c116f.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 3]	**Credit:** Wikimedia Commons – public domain. **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/0f463668fd48a6842962ca5d7643a449.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 4]	**Credit:** Wikimedia Commons – CC BY 3.0. **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/ced14e5fb2c6f415fb3eb39c58764b4b.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

	[Figure 5]	**Credit:** Wikimedia Commons – CC BY-SA 3.0. **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/9cc37c86e111bcf3ae0b577f1425e77c.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 6]	**Credit:** Wikimedia Commons – CC BY-SA 3.0. **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/6c12bc2184e7943ba065218a5bfb947b.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 7]	**Credit:** Wikimedia Commons – CC BY 2.0. **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/8dbba8942493c46664572733767e4de1.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

This page titled 6.3: Exploring the Regions of Russia (3 Days) is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by CK12 via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

6.4: Central Asia (2 Days)

Chapter Challenges

1. Understand that Central Asia is a landlocked region that receives little rainfall and has to rely on water from major rivers flowing from the mountains in the east.
2. Summarize how Central Asia has been transitioning from a Soviet-dominated region to independent states and what has been occurring in the various states to adapt to the new economic environment.
3. Describe how the Aral Sea has been affected by the practices of water use in the region and the environmental consequences that have resulted from water use policies.
4. Explain the geopolitical history of Afghanistan and why this area has been so difficult to govern under a central government.
5. Learn why there is continual conflict in Afghanistan between Western military forces and local Taliban insurgents.
6. Understand the principle that globalization of the economy forces political units to compete over natural resources.

Learning Objectives

TEKS Regional Unit 06: Russia, the Caucasus, and Central Asia: Chapter 6.4 Central Asia

WG.2A Describe the human and physical characteristics of the same regions at different periods of time to evaluate relationships between past events and current conditions.

WG.2B Explain how changes in societies have led to diverse uses of physical features.

WG.3B Describe the physical processes that affect the environments of regions, including weather, tectonic forces, erosion, and soil-building processes.

WG.4C Explain how elevation, latitude, wind systems, ocean currents, position on a continent, and mountain barriers influence temperature, precipitation, and distribution of climate regions.

WG.4B Describe different landforms and the physical processes that cause their development.

WG.6A Locate and describe human and physical features that influence the size and distribution of settlements.

WG.8A Compare ways that humans depend on, adapt to, and modify the physical environment, including the influences of culture and technology.

WG.9A Identify physical and/or human factors such as climate, vegetation, language, trade networks, political units, river systems, and religion that constitute a region.

WG.10B Classify where specific countries fall along the economic spectrum between free enterprise and communism.

WG.10C Compare the ways people satisfy their basic needs through the production of goods and services such as subsistence agriculture versus commercial agriculture or cottage industries versus commercial industries.

WG.12A Analyze how the creation, distribution, and management of key natural resources affects the location and patterns of movement of products, money, and people.

WG.13A Interpret maps to explain the division of land, including man-made and natural borders, into separate political units such as cities, states, or countries.

WG.16C Explain ways various groups of people perceive the characteristics of their own and other cultures, places, and regions differently.

WG.16D Compare life in a variety of urban and rural areas in the world to evaluate political, economic, social, and environmental changes.

WG.18A Analyze cultural changes in specific regions caused by migration, war, trade, innovations, and diffusion.

WG.18C Identify examples of cultures that maintain traditional ways, including traditional economies.

LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

WG.19C Examine the environmental, economic, and social impacts of advances in technology on agriculture and natural resources.

WG.21B Locate places of contemporary geopolitical significance on a map.

WG.21C Create and Interpret different types of maps to answer geographic questions, infer relationships, and analyze change.

WG.22A Design and Draw appropriate graphics such as maps, diagrams, tables, and graphs to communicate geographic features, distributions, and relationships.

WG.22B Generate summaries, generalizations, and thesis statements supported by evidence.

WG.22C Use geographic terminology correctly.

WG.22D Use standard grammar, spelling, sentence structure, and punctuation.

TEKS and ELPS for Regional World Geography Unit 06--Russia, the Caucasus, and Central Asia from TEKS Resource System

Central Asia

Central Asia is a region in the Asian continent that extends from the mountains of western China to the shores of the Caspian Sea. Pakistan and Iran create the southern border of the region, and the vast expanse of Russia is to the north. Afghanistan is considered a part of the region even though it was never a formal part of the Soviet Union. Central Asia was located on what was known as the Silk Road between Europe and the Far East and has long been a crossroads for people, ideas, and trade.

Central Asia has an extremely varied geography, including high mountain passes through vast mountain ranges, such as the Tian Shan, Hindu Kush, and the Pamirs. The region is also home to the vast Kara Kum and Kyzyl Kum Deserts, which dominate the interior with extensive spans of sand and desolation. The expansive treeless, grassy steppes that surround the desert regions are considered an extension of the steppes of Eastern Europe.

Some geographers think of the Eurasian Steppes as a single geographical zone. Under the sand and prairie grasses lay the some of the most extensive untapped reserves of gas and oil on the planet. Natural resources are the main attraction of the region driving the economic forces that determine the development patterns of individual countries. Multinational corporations have vigorously stepped up their activity in the region.

The political systems are adjusting from the old Soviet Union's socialist policies to new democratic systems that are subject to high levels of authoritarian rule and corruption in business and politics.

The five countries of Kazakhstan, Uzbekistan, Turkmenistan, Tajikistan, and Kyrgyzstan were part of the former Soviet Union until its breakup in 1991. Today, with Afghanistan, they are independent countries that make up the region called Central Asia. The term *stan* means "land of," so, for example, Uzbekistan is the land of the Uzbeks. Central Asia is also referred to as Turkestan because of the Turkish influence in the region.

The people of Turkey did not originate from the Middle East; they originated from northern Asia. They swept through Central Asia and dominated the region on their way to the Middle East. The Turkish language and heritage have had the most significant impact on the people of Central Asia. Turkmenistan's name is another reminder of the Turkish connection. It means "the land of the Turkmen."

Most of the groups of Central Asia were nomadic peoples who rode horses and herded livestock on the region's vast steppes. This way of life continued until the 1920s, when the Soviet Union forced many of the groups to abandon their lifestyle and settle on collective farms and in cities. Most of the people of Central Asia continue to identify culturally with their nomadic past. Central Asians who live in cities often demonstrate a mix of local and Russian culture in terms of dress and food because of the large influx of Russian populations in the region. More than six million Russians and Ukrainians were resettled into Central Asia during Soviet rule. Russian is often used as a common language.

One of the primary ways in which people distinguish themselves culturally is through religious practices. Despite the area being part of the Soviet Union, where religious activities were discouraged, Islam was and still is the dominant religion. Most Central Asian Muslims are Sunnis.



Afghanistan is also usually included as part of Central Asia, though it was never officially part of the Soviet Union.



Map of Kazakhstan

Kazakhstan

The traditional people of Kazakhstan, who share a Mongol and Turkic heritage, moved into the Central Asia region some time after 1200 C.E. The expansion of the Russian Empire under the tsars integrated Kazakhstan and its neighbors, which eased their transition when the tsarist system of Russian government gave way to the Soviet Union. The influx of Russian people and culture had a major influence on Kazakhstan.



The Aral Sea is decreasing in volume because of water being diverted from the two rivers to be used for irrigation of desert lands to grow enormous crops of grains and cotton.

Kazakhstan gained independence from the Soviet Union in 1991, thereby creating the world's largest landlocked nation. It is the ninth-largest state on the planet in terms of square miles and is larger in physical area than of all of Western Europe. This vast land

is host to a wide variety of physical landscapes, including the high, snow-capped peaks of the ranges on the Chinese border. The western portions are lowlands bordering the Caspian Sea. The seemingly endless grasslands of the interior are one of the largest steppe regions in the world. The steppe region has a semiarid type B climate. A large portion of southern Kazakhstan is desert, including the northern regions of the Kyzyl Kum Desert. Colder type D climates are found in the northern regions of the country.

The steppe produces grain in large quantities and other agricultural products, while the productive mining of minerals adds to the national wealth. Kazakhstan ranks high in the mining of many metals and uranium. Even diamonds are found here. Oil and natural gas extraction accounts for the largest sector of the country's economy and generates the largest export income. The Tengiz basin around the northeast shores of the Caspian Sea is home to extensive petroleum reserves. Oil pipelines are expanding to transport the oil to port locations and other countries, including China. The economy of Kazakhstan has been larger than the economies of all the other Central Asian states combined.

Kazakhstan also has a forward capital. During the Soviet era, the capital was located in the southeast at Almaty. However, after gaining independence in 1991, the capital was moved north to Astana to ensure that the Russian-dominated northeast would be monitored against devolutionary forces wanting to secede and become part of the Russian Republic.



Kazakh performers demonstrate a cultural tradition of a game called "Catch a Girl," in which the two riders (male and female) take off on horseback and try to catch each other. The female rider whips the male until she is caught. If the male catches the female, he is rewarded with a kiss.

Uzbekistan



Map of Uzbekistan

Uzbekistan physically borders all the Central Asian countries. It is the most populous Central Asian country with a population exceeding 27 million. Uzbekistan's eastern boundary extends deep into Kyrgyzstan territory. The boundary lines were created during the Soviet era to provide the central government with more control over its republics. Geographers call Uzbekistan a doubly landlocked nation because all of the countries that surround it are also landlocked. The main source of fresh water comes from the Eastern Highland regions. The main rivers have been heavily used for irrigation and are often depleted before reaching the Aral Sea.

Cotton is the main agricultural crop. Uzbekistan is one of the top producers of cotton in the world and is a major exporter to world markets. The central and western regions have mainly arid desert climates and rely heavily on the fresh water flowing in from the mountains. Agriculture employs a full one-fourth of the population and accounts for one-fourth of the gross domestic product

(GDP). The extraction of gold, minerals, and fossil fuels are also prime economic activities. The country has been transitioning from the old Soviet Union's command economy to a market economy competing in a global marketplace.

Uzbekistan is a country of young people. About one-third of the population is under the age of 15. Education was heavily emphasized during the Soviet era. As a result, about 99 percent of the population is literate, although about one-third of the people still live in poverty. Islam emerged in this country after Uzbekistan won its independence in 1991 after the fall of the Soviet Union. In a culture of openness, Islam has risen in prominence to the point that approximately 88 percent of Uzbeks profess Islamic beliefs. The most commonly spoken language is Persian/Farsi.

Samarkand and the country's capital city, Tashkent, are located in the eastern core region, which is home to most of the population. Tashkent has an unofficial population of more than three million people. The city, which sits on the confluence of a local river and its tributaries, started as an oasis for trade along the Silk Road. Samarkand is Uzbekistan's second-largest city and is most noted as the central city of the Silk Road as well as an important historical city for Islamic scholars.

In 2001, UNESCO declared this 2,750-year-old city a World Heritage Site. It is one of the oldest continually inhabited cities in the world and has been one of the more important cities in Central Asia. The historical architecture is heavily influenced by Islamic styles from Iran. The region around Bukhara, Uzbekistan's 5th-largest city, has been occupied for at least the last 5,000 years. Bukhara was another important city on the Silk Road and is known for its Asian carpet and textile industry. This region has been an important cultural, economic, and scholarly center for most of its known existence.



Samarkand, called the crossroads of culture, is located on the ancient Silk Road to China. The city is a UNESCO World Heritage Site.

The Aral Sea Environmental Disaster

Central Asia's shrinking Aral Sea is shared by Uzbekistan and Kazakhstan. The sea was once the 4th-largest body of water in the world, but it has been reduced to a fraction of its original area. In 1960, the Aral Sea covered about 26,254 square miles, an area larger than the size of the US state of West Virginia. By 2009, the sea covered less than 10 percent of the same area. The entire eastern portion of the sea has become a sand desert, complete with the deteriorating hulls of abandoned fishing vessels. The loss of water is approximately equivalent to the complete draining of both Lake Erie and Lake Ontario in North America.

The water loss escalated when the Syr Darya River, which flowed into the northern part of the sea, and the Amu Darya River, which flowed into the southern side of the sea, were diverted for the irrigation of cotton and other crops. At about 1,500 miles long, the Amu Darya is the region's longest river. Its source is the high mountain streams and lakes of the Pamir Mountains. Environmental problems were further exacerbated by the extensive use of pesticides and fertilizers in agricultural processes. The chemicals contaminated the water flowing into the Aral Sea.

Once the water dried up in the sea, the winds carried the buildup of chemicals and salt from the dry seabed over the land, causing serious health-related problems in the nearby human population. Cancer and respiratory illness rates continue to be higher than normal. Water and land pollution is a serious problem. Even the climate around the Aral Sea has changed gradually because of the loss of water from evaporation for precipitation, causing the climate to become warmer in the summer and colder in the winter.

The decline of the Aral Sea has destroyed habitats and the local economy. The fishing industry, which employed more than 60,000 people, has been devastated. The remaining western portion of the sea has a rising salt content that is contributing to the decline of the fish population. Adding to the environmental devastation, the Soviets conducted biological weapons experiments on an island that was once in the middle of the Aral Sea.

Hazardous wastes such as anthrax and toxic chemicals contaminated the land and found their way into the sea. Efforts have been made to improve the environmental damage of the contamination, but the damage has had a lasting impact. The sea has historically been an important environmental location for wildlife. It is located in a major flyway for migratory waterfowl in Central Asia and served as an important habitat.

The deterioration of the Aral Sea and the destruction of habitat for waterfowl and other organisms is one of the world's worst environmental catastrophes. The fact that the Aral Sea is located in a region that is not part of the core economic area of the global community has rendered it "out of sight and out of mind" by entities that could potentially provide economic support.

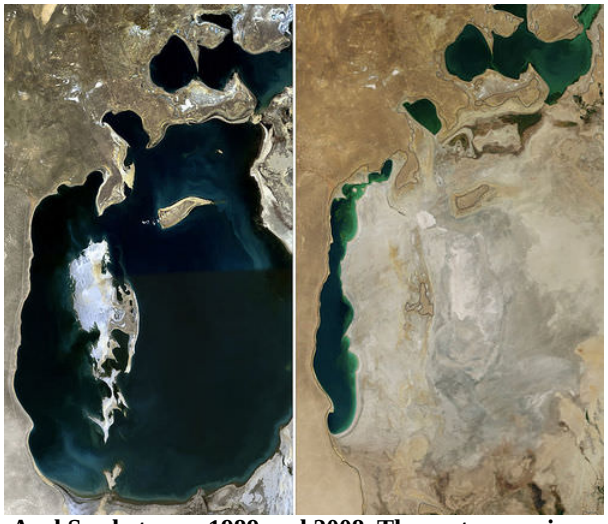
In the northern portion of the Aral Sea, called the Little Aral Sea, there has been some success in abating the deterioration of this once-thriving environmental habitat. A major dam has been constructed that partitions off the Little Aral Sea, causing water from the Syr Darya River to increase the water level of the Little Aral Sea and reduce the salt content. Canals, dikes, and irrigation processes have been updated to reduce the loss of water and increase the amount that flows into the northern section. These development efforts have resulted in the water level rising and have given the fishing industry new life. The efforts have been undertaken by Kazakhstan's government, which controls the Little Aral Sea.



Orphaned ship in a dry seabed of the former Eastern region of the Aral Sea in Kazakhstan. The eastern half of the sea is completely dry.

A major part of the southern portion of the once thriving sea is located in Uzbekistan. The remaining western portion of the Uzbekistan side of the Aral Sea will continue to shrink if measures are not taken to address the loss of water from the Amu Darya River. The eastern side was completely dry by 2009. Uzbekistan has responded to the situation by contracting out to various multinational oil companies from Korea, China, and Russia to explore for oil beneath the dry seabed.

The demise of the Aral Sea was caused in part by the diversion of water from its northern inlet, the Syr Darya River. At the other end of the Syr Darya River an additional factor augmented the lack of water flow. The Soviet Union placed a dam on the river and allowed the overflow from the dam to flow into low-lying dry pans, creating artificial lakes. As a result, Aydar Lake was created and became the second-largest lake in Uzbekistan. Various species of fish were introduced and the lake became a major source for commercial fishing. Hundreds of tons of fish are harvested annually. Just as fishing was declining in the Aral Sea, the fishing industry was growing at Aydar Lake.



These satellite images compare the Aral Sea between 1989 and 2008. The eastern region was completely dry by 2009, whereas the northern portion was responding favorably to Kazakhstan's conservation efforts.

Turkmenistan



Map of Turkmenistan

To the south of the Amu Darya River is the desert country of Turkmenistan, which extends from the Caspian Sea to Afghanistan in the east. Turkmenistan is slightly larger in physical area than the US state of California. Roughly 80 percent of the country is covered by the Kara Kum Desert, which is among the driest in the world. The southern mountains along the Iranian and Afghan border reach as high as 10,290 feet in elevation. Water from the Amu Darya River has been diverted by the 700-mile-long Kara Kum Canal through Turkmenistan to help grow cotton and other agricultural products.

The transition from a Soviet republic to an independent state in 1991 brought many changes. The former leader of the Turkmen Soviet Socialist Republic, Saparmurat Niyazov (also know as Turkmenbashi), was the president for 15 years. Through his authoritarian rule, he promoted a traditional culture with Islam as the predominant religion. He changed all the names of the days of the week and the months of the year to his name, the names of his family members, and the names of Turkmen heroes or famous people.

Turkmenbashi's image was printed on the currency, and large posters of him could be seen throughout the country. His book on important concepts, the *Ruhnama* (*The Book of the Soul*), was to be read by all school children and the public. After his death in 2006, many of his actions were reversed. The country continues to transition to a stable democratic state, though many of the same dynamics of corruption and authoritarian rule remain.

Turkmenistan has the fourth largest natural gas reserves in the world. The income from natural gas exports has become the country's greatest means of gaining wealth. Because Turkmenistan is landlocked, its government has been forced to partner with Russia to use of Russia's pipelines to export the natural gas. Not wishing to rely on Russia's monopoly on the pipelines, Turkmenistan developed an additional pipeline to China to help boost income and profits.

Many international corporations are seeking to do business in Turkmenistan and Central Asia to corner a piece of the vast natural resources. Corporate colonialism is extremely active and has contributed to a high level of corruption in the government and the business sector. It is unclear how much of the country's wealth filters down to most of the population. Over the past decade, unemployment rates have exceeded 50 percent, and more than half the population lives below the poverty line.

The administrative center and largest city of Turkmenistan is its capital, Ashgabat, which has a population of about one million. Ashgabat lies between the Kara Kum Desert and the mountains near the former Silk Road. In the historic region of Central Asia, it is comparatively a very young town, having grown out of a small village founded in 1818. Ashgabat is primarily a government and administrative center, although it has thriving cotton, textile, and metalworking industries. Ashgabat is also a popular stop along the Trans-Caspian Railway.

Kyrgyzstan



Map of Kyrgyzstan

Local groups in the mountains of Central Asia make up the population of Kyrgyzstan. The 40 rays of sun on the country's flag symbolize of the legendary 40 tribes of Manas that represent the nation. The rugged landscape of this mountainous land includes the high ranges of the Tian Shan Mountains, which can reach elevations as high as 24,400 feet and cover about 80 percent of the country. Snowfall from the mountains provides fresh water for agriculture as well as hydroelectric energy.

Food crops can be grown in the valleys and the few lowland areas. Half of the population works in agriculture, and self-sufficiency in food production is a major objective for survival. The mountains hold deposits of metals and minerals that have a strong potential for adding to the national wealth. Oil and natural gas reserves are also available for profit. The government is seeking foreign aid and investments to help develop these resources.

In 2009, Kyrgyzstan had a population of about 5.4 million in a land area about the size of the US state of South Dakota. About 30 percent of the population is under the age of 15, and about 36 percent of the population is urban. The western boundary with Uzbekistan and Tajikistan is winding and creates various small enclaves and exclaves of people from one country surrounded by people of another country and separated from their home nations.



The flag of Kyrgyzstan has a symbol of the sun and forty rays of light indicating the legendary forty tribes of Manas that represent the nation.

Kyrgyzstan's transition from a Soviet republic to independence was not smooth. The loss of the state social safety net pushed the economy further to the informal sector, where trading and small transactions for personal survival are common. Shortages of

consumer goods occur in rural areas and small towns. Kyrgyzstan is an isolated country that has been working to integrate itself into the global economy through technology and modernization. In 2010, clashes between Uzbeks and Kyrgyz brought about riots in the streets of major cities. These riots resulted in more than 200 casualties and 300,000 displaced citizens. After the situation cooled down, the government worked to stabilize itself with new leadership.



Base camp on south Inylchek Glacier in the Tian Shan Mountains, Kyrgyzstan.The mountain in background is Khan Tengri (22,949 feet).

A form of improvisational oral poetry, which allegedly dates back to more than 1,000 years ago, is an aspect of traditional culture that has been preserved. While common throughout the region, it is mainly found in Kyrgyzstan and Kazakhstan. Practitioners will often engage in “lyrical battles” of folklore. These poets, often accompanied by two- or three-stringed instruments, will recite the *Manas*, an epic poem of Kyrgyzstan that details the life of the Kyrgyzstan hero Manas. This epic tale is a renowned part of the culture and festivals of Kyrgyzstan.



A manaschi—a traditional storyteller—in Karakol, Kyrgyzstan, who has memorized entire epic legends of his history, recites the stories to others at a local festival.



Map of Tajikistan

The eastern region of Central Asia has some of the highest mountain ranges in the world. About 90 percent of Tajikistan is mountainous, and more than half the country is 10,000 feet in elevation or higher. Ranges of the Himalayas extend from the south all the way to the western border with China. The Pamirs is a mountain range located where the Tian Shan, Karakorum, and Hindu Kush mountain ranges meet in Tajikistan, an area referred to as the Pamir Knot, or the roof of the world. Elevations in the Pamirs often exceed 24,500 feet.

The Pamirs is the source of the Amu Darya River and is home to the longest glacier outside the polar regions (48 miles long in 2009). There is great potential for hydroelectric power generation, and Tajikistan is developing the world's highest dam.

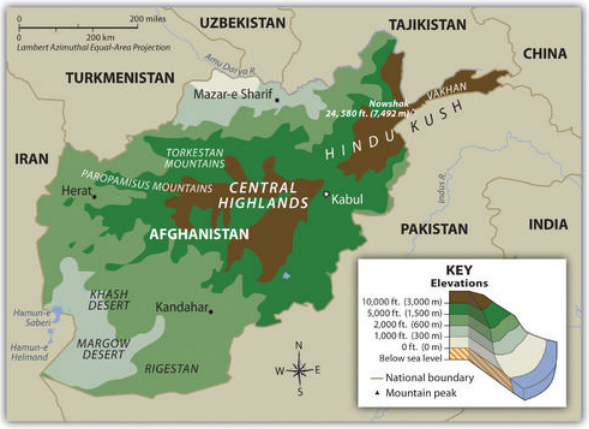
Tajikistan has the smallest physical area of any country in Central Asia but has a population of about 7.3 million. Only about one-fourth of the population is urban, and one-third of the population is younger than 15 years of age. There is less ethnic or religious diversity. Approximately 80 percent of the people are ethnically Tajik and are Sunni Muslims. Though it has natural resources similar in quantity to those in Kyrgyzstan, Tajikistan's economy is not advanced enough to fully take advantage of its economic potential. Half of the labor base works abroad and sends remittances back to their families for economic support. Unemployment is high, and job opportunities have not been able to keep up with demand.

Dushanbe, the capital and largest city of Tajikistan, is situated on the confluence of two local rivers and is famous for its Monday markets. Dushanbe, like Ashgabat in Turkmenistan, was originally a small village. It became an administrative center for the region when the Soviet army conquered the area in 1929. Similar to many of the other cities and regions in Central Asia, the Soviets transformed the political and economic landscape and made Dushanbe a center for cotton and silk production. The Soviets also transformed the cultural and ethnic makeup of the city by relocating tens of thousands of people from Russia and other regions of Central Asia to Dushanbe.

The transition from the Soviet Republic to an independent country in 1991 was difficult for Tajikistan. From 1992 to 1997, a bitter civil war between regional factions killed more than 50,000 people. Political instability and corruption have hampered the growth of a market economy, and political power remains in the hands of the economic elite. Debt restructuring with Russia and development loans from China have aided the ailing economy. Aid from the US helped fund a 36-million-dollar bridge linking Tajikistan and Afghanistan, which opened in August 2007. US aid has also contributed to infrastructure development designed to help US military operations in Afghanistan and in the region as a whole. Countries such as Russia, China, and the United States are all looking to gain an advantage with their ties to Tajikistan to exploit the region's natural resources.

Afghanistan

Present-day Afghanistan has been conquered by the likes of Genghis Khan, Alexander the Great, and the Mogul Empire. It was also a buffer zone for colonial feuds between Russia and British India. The high central mountain range of the Hindu Kush dominates the country and leaves a zone of well-watered fertile plains to the north and a dry desert region to the south. Afghanistan is a remote region without access to the sea and acts as a strategic link between the Middle East and the Far East.



Kabul is the capital, and the southern city of Kandahar is the 2nd-largest city.

The Soviet Invasion and the Taliban

In 1979, the Soviet Union took advantage of ongoing ethnic warfare in Afghanistan. The Soviets pushed in from the north and occupied much of Afghanistan until they completely withdrew in 1989. During the Soviet occupation, the United States supported anti-Communist resistance groups such as the Mujahideen with money, arms, and surface-to-air missiles. The missiles were instrumental in taking out Soviet aircraft and MiG fighters, which caused a critical shift in the balance of power in the war. One of the major connections between the Central Intelligence Agency (CIA) and Mujahideen was a Saudi national named Osama bin Laden. Support from the CIA through bin Laden to the Mujahideen was instrumental in defeating the Soviets.

The power vacuum left by the retreating Soviets allowed conflicts to reemerge between the many ethnic factions in Afghanistan. Dozens of languages are spoken in Afghanistan. The top two are Pashtu and Afghan Persian-Dari. There are also a dozen major ethnic groups. The top two are Pashtun and Tajik. The groups regularly fight among themselves, but they have also been known to form alliances. Rural areas are usually led by clan leaders who are not part of any official arm of a national government. Afghanistan is a place where forming any national unity or identity is not easy. The national government in the capital city of Kabul has little influence in the country's rural regions.

The Soviet invasion united the warring factions for a short period of time to focus on the Soviet threat. Chaos and anarchy thrived after the Soviet forces withdrew, but the Islamic fundamentalist group known as the Taliban came forward to fill the power vacuum. One objective of the Taliban was to use Islam as a unifying force to bring the country together. The problem with that concept was that there was much diversity in how Islam was practiced by the numerous local groups.

Many of the factions in Afghanistan opposed the Taliban. One such group was the Northern Alliance, which was an association of groups located in the northern area of the country. The civil war between the Taliban and those that opposed them resulted in the deaths of more than 50,000 people by 1996, when the Taliban emerged to take power in Kabul. The Taliban is a Sunni Muslim group that adheres to strict Islamic laws under the Wahhabi branch of the faith similar to that of Saudi Arabia.

Under Taliban rule, women were removed from positions in hospitals, schools, and work environments and had to wear burkas and be covered from head to toe, including a veil over their faces. Violators were either beaten or shot. The Taliban brought militant order to Kabul and the regions under their control. Various factions such as the Northern Alliance did not share the Taliban's strict Islamic views and continued to oppose their position in power.

Al-Qaeda and the US Invasion

After the war against the Soviet Union was over, the US role in Afghanistan diminished. The groups that the United States had supported continued to vie for power in local conflicts. Osama bin Laden remained in Afghanistan and established training camps for his version of an anti-Western resistance group called al-Qaeda. Just as he had opposed the Soviet Union, he now opposed the United States, even though the United States had supported him against the Soviets.

The Saudi government allowed the United States to establish military bases in Saudi Arabia during Operation Desert Storm in the Persian Gulf War. This was one reason for bin Laden's opposition. He believed that non-Muslims should not be on the same ground as the Muslim holy sites of Mecca and Medina.

The 9/11 attack in New York City was traced back to al-Qaeda and bin Laden, the latter whom was living in Afghanistan at the time. In a military action called Operation Enduring Freedom, the United States invaded Afghanistan in 2001, removed the Taliban from power, and dismantled the al-Qaeda training camps. Although bin Laden escaped, the terror of the Taliban was temporarily reduced. Women were allowed to return to the workplace, and the rebuilding of the country became a priority.

The country was devastated by war and divided because of the various ethnic and traditional groups. Afghanistan is one of the most impoverished places on Earth. The armed conflicts in Afghanistan did not end with the US invasion. After regrouping, the Taliban rallied its supporters on the Pakistani side of the border and returned to the fighting front in Afghanistan against the North Atlantic Treaty Organization (NATO) and US forces.



Osama bin Laden was killed by US Navy Seals in 2011.

Fighting between Western forces and the Taliban in Afghanistan continued to provide the exiled bin Laden a platform to promote his al-Qaeda terrorist activities from his hiding place. Efforts to locate and marginalize bin Laden continued through to the US presidency of Barack Obama. In May of 2011, on orders from President Obama, a team of US Navy Seals was sent into the city of Abbottabad, Pakistan to a private compound where intelligence indicated that bin Laden was hiding. In the confrontation, the US Navy Seal team killed bin Laden. The entire operation was conducted without the awareness of the Pakistani government.

The country is the world's largest producer of opium, a product extracted from a poppy plant seedpod. Heroin is also produced from the poppy plant. The expanding poppy cultivation, as well as a growing drug trade, may account for one-third of the country's income. More than 80 percent of the heroin consumed in Europe is grown in Afghanistan. The drug trade has only multiplied the problems in this devastated country.

Most of the country is ruled by warlords and clan leaders who have few resources other than tradition and custom. Afghanistan's infrastructure has been destroyed through warfare, and its government is dependent on foreign aid. Without it, this country cannot recover to participate in the global economy. Central Asia has enormous oil and natural gas reserves, and the core economic regions of the world will continue their work to extract these resources for economic gain.

Operation Enduring Freedom

The US Department of Defense issued an official statement on Afghanistan in 2008 (Source DoD 2008):

In response to the events of September 11, 2001, the U.S. and its allies launched an invasion of Afghanistan to overthrow the Taliban regime and destroy the al-Qaeda terrorist network it supported. In the years since, the International Security Assistance Force, under NATO leadership, has taken charge of extensive provincial reconstruction and stabilization efforts, helping set the economic, political and security conditions for the growth of an effective, democratic national government in Afghanistan. As the lead member of the international coalition, the U.S. contributes troops to both the ISAF [International Security Assistance Force] mission and Operation Enduring Freedom, tasked with pursuing al-Qaeda throughout Afghanistan's inhospitable border region with Pakistan.

The Western military troops aligned themselves with Afghan groups such as the Northern Alliance to defeat the Taliban and remove the al-Qaeda presence.



Competing groups and the rough terrain make keeping the peace in Afghanistan difficult. The United States turned control over to NATO in 2006. In this photo, soldiers representing the 561st Military Police Company, Fort Campbell, Kentucky, are speaking with local Afghans about insurgent activity near Bagram, Afghanistan.

Democratic elections were held for the office of president in Afghanistan beginning in October of 2004. Hamid Karzai was the country's first elected president in the 20th century. He was reelected as president in 2009 under claims of election fraud. The right to vote was restored to women in the 2004 election. To combat voter fraud, people would dip their fingers in ink to indicate that they did not vote more than once. Voting has not been a smooth process because democratic rule is new to Afghanistan.

Afghanistan's future is insecure. Most of Afghanistan is still ruled by warlords and clan leaders. The Taliban has sustained its support in Afghanistan from bases on the Pakistani side of the border, and the United Nations (UN) and NATO troops continue to confront the Taliban and work toward stability. Kandahar, the second-largest city in Afghanistan, is located in the south, an area where support for the Taliban is stronger than it is in Kabul in the north.



After voting in Afghanistan, individuals dipped their fingers in ink to indicate they had voted and were not allowed to vote more than once. This photo indicates that women were also allowed to vote in Afghanistan in the 2005 elections for provincial councils and parliamentary positions.

Resources and Globalization

In 2010, a US government report indicated that vast amounts of mineral wealth were discovered in Afghanistan by American geologists and Pentagon officials. Enormous deposits of iron, copper, gold, cobalt, and rare industrial minerals such as lithium are reported to be present in Afghanistan. Total reserves are unknown or have not been released but if extracted would result in trillions of dollars of economic gain for the country. Lithium is highly sought after and is used in the manufacturing of batteries, computers, and electronic devices. The report indicated that Afghanistan could become the world's premier mining country.



In this photo is the Lataband Road between Kabul and Surobi. The dry, treeless expanse of this region is home to Afghanistan's vast mineral wealth.

Discovery of vast resources helps place the war in Afghanistan in perspective with respect to global competition over the control of resources. It has been reported that China has already offered millions of dollars in incentive money to Afghan government officials to allow its country to mine copper. Bribery and corruption in the Afghan government is an obstacle to a stable political environment, but criminal activities are projected to persist and grow with the potential for additional mining wealth.

Afghanistan does not have a long-standing tradition of mining. Agriculture has been the main focus of economic activity for rural communities. A newfound potential for mineral wealth will change the future of Afghanistan. It will be interesting to track how Afghanistan adapts to and benefits from the discovery of previously unknown resources.

Key Takeaways

- Central Asia is a landlocked region that receives little rainfall.
- Two large desert regions are located at the region's core.
- Vast grasslands called steppes dominate the northern sector.
- High mountains to the east provide a border between Central Asia and China.
- Central Asia (a.k.a. Turkestan) has been dominated by the Soviet Union during the 20th century.
- The transition to independence has challenged the region to adjust to changes in political and economic systems.
- The demise of the Aral Sea is being caused by the diversion of water from the two rivers flowing into the sea. A once-thriving fishing industry has been destroyed and environmental damage has been catastrophic.
- Armed conflicts in Afghanistan continue between Western military forces and the Taliban over the control of the country. Clan leaders are a main part of the political foundation of the country. The diversity and fragmentation of the country make it almost impossible to govern.
- Afghanistan is one of the poorest countries in the world based on data on standards of living. However, the country has one of the largest deposits of valuable minerals and ores in the world waiting to be extracted. The deposits are the target of multinational corporations around the globe.
- The following is a summary of trends in Central Asia: (1) Shift from the Soviet Union to independent states; (2) Rise in authoritarian governments and corruption; (3) Increase of cultural influence of Islamic institutions; (4) Global economic focus on extractive activities; (5) Increase in military activity over control of resources; (6) Decline in agriculture as an economic base; (7) Continued concern for environmental problems

Vocabulary Terms

Chapter 6.4 Central Asia

The Aral Sea	An inland sea in Central Asia fed by the Syr Darya and Amu Darya Rivers; it has been steadily shrinking
dryland farming	Farming that relies on rainfall instead of irrigation
irrigation	The supply of water to land or crops to help growth, typically by means of channeling water from a river
landlocked	Completely surrounded by land with no direct access to the ocean
nomads	People who do not have a permanent home and who often move from place to place
Taliban	A radical Muslim group that rose to power in Afghanistan in the mid-1990s

Applying Knowledge

Discussion and Study Questions

1. Why is Central Asia often referred to as Turkestan? What does the suffix "stan" indicate?
2. Which country in Central Asia has a forward capital and why?
3. How is the Tengiz basin important to the global economy? Where is it located?
4. How have problems with the Aral Sea affected the people of the region?
5. What is attracting multinational corporations to Central Asia? How do corporations impact politics?

6. What happened in Tajikistan after it received independence in 1991? How did this affect the country?
7. List at least five general trends that have been occurring in Central Asia since the collapse of the Soviet Union.
8. Why did the CIA get involved in the 1980s war in Afghanistan? Who acted as a CIA contact?
9. What role did the Taliban once have in Afghanistan's government? Why were not they allies with Iran?
10. What are the main methods of gaining wealth in Afghanistan today? How might this change in the future?

Real-World Geography Exercise

Using Google Maps, locate each one of the physical regions below. From the list, choose five and calculate the distance and how long it would take to travel by airplane from El Paso, Texas to the nearest airport of your chose location. Be prepared to share your answers.

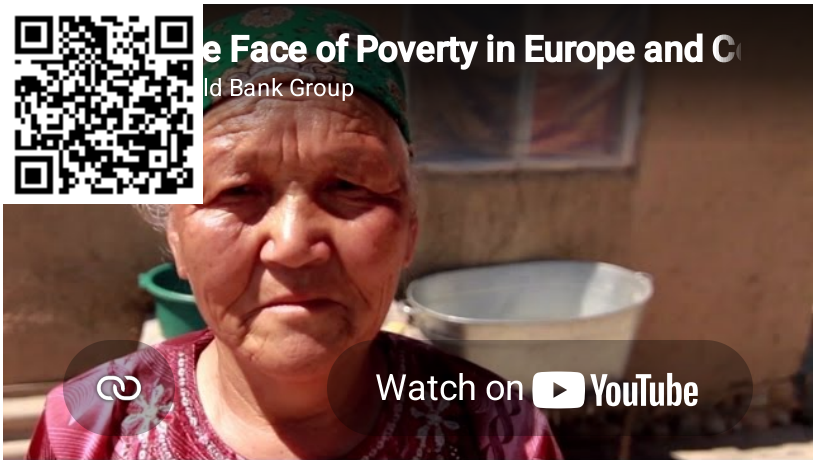
- Amu Darya River
- Aral Sea
- Aydar Lake
- Caspian Sea
- Hindu Kush
- Kandahar
- Kara Kum Canal
- Kara Kum Desert
- Karakorum Ranges
- Kyzyl Kum Desert
- Little Aral Sea
- Pamir Knot
- Pamirs
- Samarkand
- Syr Darya River
- Tengiz basin

Mapping Exercise

ESRI GEO Inquiry

Down to the Last Drop: Students will explore the impact of human activities on water resources throughout the world with online mapping software.

Videos for Geography Enrichment




e Water-Energy Challenge in Cent
ld Bank Group
It was very difficult for everyone to get enough water to irrigate their fields, since my neighbor farmers and I wanted to water our fields at the same time.
Watch on YouTube


ina's growing influence in Central
ncial Times
FT WORLD
Watch on YouTube



Helpful Websites for the Study of Geography

Canadian Encyclopedia is an encyclopedia funded by the Canadian government covering all branches of knowledge. Their scholarly collection includes interactive materials.

CIA World Factbook provides information on the people, history, government, economy, energy, geography, communications, transportation, military, and transnational issues for the world's entities.

Congress.gov is a US government website where you can find federal legislation, past and present, as well as information about the US legal system.

Drug Enforcement Administration (DEA) is a government agency website that provides current news, resources, topics of interest, information about drugs, careers in the DEA, and a tip hotline.

Library of Congress is the largest library in the world and provides manuscripts, files, information, pictures, and videos.

NASA Earth Observatory (NEO) is a US government agency website that allows users to search for and retrieve satellite images of Earth.

National Archives is a US government website that provides historical documents, photos, records, publications, and educator resources.

National Oceanic and Atmospheric Association (NOAA) is a US government agency website that provides weather-related information and ocean research.

National Map is a website by the United States Geological Survey and other federal, state, and local agencies that delivers topographic information for the United States.

NationMaster is a massive central data source and a handy way to graphically compare nations.

Real-Time World Air Quality Index is a website that measures most locations in the world for air pollution in real time.

StateMaster is a unique statistical database, which allows you to research and compare a multitude of different data on US states.

United Nations (UN) is an international organization founded in 1945 and made up of 193 member states. The UN maintains international peace and security, protects human rights, delivers humanitarian aid, promotes sustainable development, and upholds international law.

United States Census Bureau is a US government agency that provides a population clock, data, surveys, statistics, a library with information and infographics, news about the economy, and much more.

United States Geological Survey (USGS) is a US government agency website that provides scientific information about the natural hazards that threaten lives, the natural resources we rely on, the health of our ecosystems and environment, and the impacts of climate and land-use change.

Whitehouse.gov is a US government website that provides the latest presidential news, information about the budget, policy, defense, and many more topics.

World Health Organization (WHO) is under the United Nations and provides leadership on matters critical to health, shapes the research agenda on health, and monitors the health situation and assessing health trends around the world. Their website provides information on the state of health around the world, outbreaks, current health news, and more.

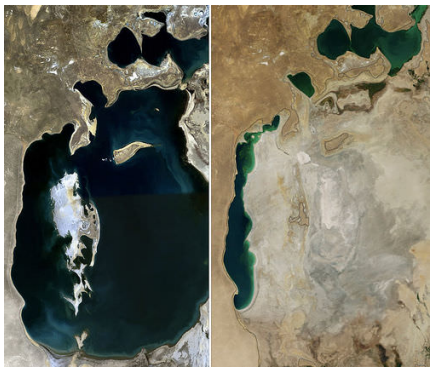
LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

World Trade Organization (WTO) is an intergovernmental organization that regulates international trade. The website provides

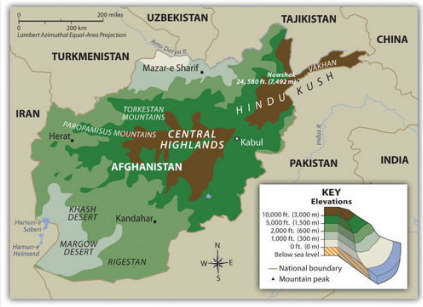
LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

information on the history of the multilateral trading system, featured videos, news and events, trade topics, and more.

Image	Reference	Attributions
	[Figure 1]	**Credit:** Updated from map courtesy of University of Texas Libraries. **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/9752c66d3ef6a53cee2f78a606aff33c.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 2]	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/kz.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 3]	**Credit:** Updated from map courtesy of NASA – public domain. **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/910ed776d7c9dc23060af3bce766ecca.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 4]	**Credit:** US Air Force – public domain. **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/716409607cbb8b285126f538ab28381c.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 5]	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/uz.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

	[Figure 6]	**Credit:** Fulvio Spada – Bibi Khanum Mosque, Samarkand – CC BY-SA 2.0. **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/8231ecf6c6e2e177934794805c1d4a1a.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 7]	**Credit:** Wikimedia Commons – public domain. **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/db0c86f60e3a996ee02d4424f4a8b1f8.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 8]	**Credit:** By NASA. Collage by Producercunningham. - 1989: aral sea 1989 250mFile:Aralsea tmo 2014231 lrg.jpg, Public Domain, https://commons.wikimedia.org/w/inde...curid=35813435 **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/4da27eb24b57940addd8c88061ee1f9e.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 9]	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/tx.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

	[Figure 10]	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/kg.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 11]	**Credit:** Wikimedia Commons – public domain. **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/04f0e2f71074faf0a11f33fc6629f5bf.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 12]	**Credit:** Wikimedia Commons – public domain. **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/efc003356729922396cd3e7050cac695.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 13]	**Credit:** Wikimedia Commons – public domain. **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/6c462dc87004c77ca21dd5be6be72bee.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 14]	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/ti.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

	[Figure 15]	**Credit:** Map courtesy of CIA–UT Austin Map Library – public domain. **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/ac9563c38d1fb6e72b4f524f613e6bf0.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 16]	**Credit:** US Department of Defense – public domain. **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/c557e2063aa103ef636792166acff139.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 17]	**Credit:** US Department of Defense – public domain. **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/f2bfec8588d8fb2768e2e50df9cb2df8.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

	[Figure 18]	**Credit:** US Department of Defense – public domain. **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/beb166e9e815ed2335948790defe6853.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 19]	**Credit:** Wikimedia Commons – CC BY-SA 4.0. **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/38e1db5b86e1e1537a74be9d8ea0bee2.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

This page titled 6.4: Central Asia (2 Days) is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by CK12 via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

7: Southwest Asia (10 days)

7.1: Southwest Asia- Introducing the Realm (2 Days)

7.2: The Prophet Muhammad and Islam (2 Days)

7.3: Israel and Its Neighbors (2 Days)

7.4: Arabs, Islam, and Oil (2 Days)

7.5: Iraq, Turkey, and Iran (2 Days)

Thumbnail: Western Asia orthographic projection of Western Asia (CC BY-SA 3.0 Unported; Keepscases via Wikipedia)

This page titled 7: Southwest Asia (10 days) is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by CK12 via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

7.1: Southwest Asia- Introducing the Realm (2 Days)

Chapter Challenges

1. Understand three basic traits the countries of the realm shares in common.
2. Outline the two cultural hearths and explain why they developed where they did.
3. Describe how the people of this realm gain access to fresh water.
4. Understand how the events of the 2011 Arab Spring have affected the realm.

Student Learning Objectives

TEKS Regional Unit 07 Southwest Asia: Chapter 7.1 Introducing the Realm

WG.1A Analyze the effects of physical and human geographic patterns and processes on the past and describe their impact on the present, including significant physical features and environmental conditions that influenced migration patterns and shaped the distribution of culture groups today.

WG.2A Describe the human and physical characteristics of the same regions at different periods of time to evaluate relationships between past events and current conditions.

WG.6B Explain the processes that have caused changes in settlement patterns, including urbanization, transportation, access to and availability of resources, and economic activities.

WG.8A Compare ways that humans depend on, adapt to, and modify the physical environment, including the influences of culture and technology.

WG.8C Evaluate the economic and political relationships between settlements and the environment, including sustainable development and renewable/non-renewable resources.

WG.12A Analyze how the creation, distribution, and management of key natural resources affects the location and patterns of movement of products, money, and people.

WG.12B Evaluate the geographic and economic impact of policies related to the development, use, and scarcity of natural resources such as regulations of water.

WG.14A Analyze current events to infer the physical and human processes that lead to the formation of boundaries and other political divisions.

WG.16C Explain ways various groups of people perceive the characteristics of their own and other cultures, places, and regions differently.

WG.19C Examine the environmental, economic, and social impacts of advances in technology on agriculture and natural resources.

WG.21C Create and interpret different types of maps to answer geographic questions, infer relationships, and analyze change.

WG.22C Use geographic terminology correctly.

WG.22D Use standard grammar, spelling, sentence structure, and punctuation.

TEKS and ELPS for Regional World Geography Unit 07-Southwest Asia from TEKS Resource System

Southwest Asia: Introducing the Realm

The countries of the realm share three key dominant traits that influence all other human activities. The first key common trait relates to the climate of the region. Though various climate types can be found in this realm, it is the dry or arid type B climate that dominates most of the physical area. Other climate types include the type H highland climate (cold temperatures at the high elevations with moderate temperatures at the bases) of the mountains of the Maghreb, Iran, or Central Asia and the more moderate

type C climate in the coastal regions bordering the sea. The type C climate along the coastal Mediterranean area attracts human development and is home to many large port cities.

The overall fact is that vast areas of each region are uninhabited desert. North Africa has the largest desert in the world—the Sahara—which borders the Libyan Desert and the Nubian Desert. About one-third of the Arabian Peninsula is part of the Empty Quarter of the Rub' al Khali (Arabian Desert). Kazakhstan, Uzbekistan, and Turkmenistan have vast regions of desert with few if any inhabitants. This aspect of the realm reveals the importance of water as a valuable natural resource. Most people in the realm are more dependent on the availability of water than on the availability of oil.

The second trait is the religion of Islam. Most of the people in the realm are Muslims. The practice of Islam in day-to-day life takes different forms in the various divisions of the religion. The differences between the divisions have contributed to conflict or open warfare. Islam serves as more than a religion. It also acts as a strong cultural force that has historically unified or divided people. The divisive nature of the religion has often resulted in serious political confrontations within the realm between groups of different Islamic ideologies.

Concurrently, the religion of Islam is also a unifying force that brings Muslims with similar beliefs together. Islam provides structure and consistency in daily life. The faith can provide comfort and a way of living. The holy cities of Mecca and Medina are located in Saudi Arabia. Other holy cities for other divisions of Islam include Jerusalem and the two cities holy to Shia Muslims: Karbala and Najaf in Iraq. Islam dominates the realm, but other religions are significant in various regions. Israel is a Jewish state, and Christianity is common in places from Lebanon to Egypt. There are also followers of the Baha'i faith, Zoroastrianism, and groups such as the Druze, just to name a few.

The third factor that all three regions of the realm share is the availability of significant natural resources. North Africa, Southwest Asia, and Turkestan all have significant reserves of oil, natural gas, and important minerals. It stands to reason that not every country has the same reserves and that some of the countries have very few or none at all. However, in terms of how the countries gain national wealth, it is the export of oil that has dominated the economic activity as it relates to the global community.

This realm is a peripheral realm. The resource that the realm can offer to the core economic regions of the world is the energy to fuel their economies and maintain their high standard of living. Enormous economic profits from the sale of these resources have traditionally been held in the hands of the elite ruling leader or his clan and do not always filter down to most of the population. The control of and profits from natural resources have become the primary objectives of the countries. This fuels conflicts and armed military interventions in areas such as Iraq and Afghanistan.

Cultural Hearths

Availability and control of fresh water have typically resulted in the ability of humans to grow food crops and expand their cultural activities. Hunter-gatherer groups did not settle down in one area but were more nomadic because of their seasonal search for food. As humans developed the ability to grow crops and provide enough food in one place, they no longer needed to move. The earliest human settlements sprang up in what is the present-day Middle East.

Early human settlements provide some indication of early urbanization patterns based on the availability or surplus of food. The shift to permanent settlements included the domestication of livestock and the production of grain crops. Fruits and vegetables were grown and harvested domestically. The activities of this era created humanity's earliest version of the rural-to-urban shift associated with the Industrial Revolution or present development. It is theorized that the ability to grow excess food provided the time and resources for urbanization and the establishment of organized communities, which often progressed into political entities or regional empires.

It has been estimated that some of the earliest cities in the world—Jericho, for example—were first inhabited around 10,000 B.C.E. in the Middle East. In the same region, two cultural hearths provide significant historical value to the concept of human development, Mesopotamia and the Nile Valley in Egypt. Both areas were settings for the growth of human civilization and are still being examined and studied today. In Mesopotamia, a remarkable human civilization emerged along the banks of the Tigris and Euphrates Rivers in what is present-day Iraq, Syria, and southern Turkey. The climate, soils, and availability of fresh water provided the ingredients for the growth of a human civilization.

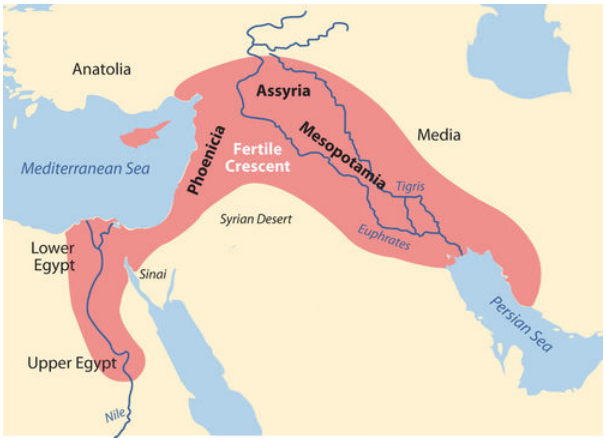


Head of Gudea, Sumerian ruler from Mesopotamia, circa 2121 B.C.E.

Mesopotamia and the Fertile Crescent

Mesopotamia, meaning "land between rivers," is located between the Tigris and Euphrates Rivers. Neolithic pottery found there has been dated to before 7000 B.C.E. Humans in this area urbanized as early as 5000 B.C.E. People were settling in the Mesopotamia region, building magnificent cities, and developing their sense of human culture. Mesopotamia gave rise to a historical cradle of civilization that included the Assyrian, Babylonian, Sumerian, and Akkadian Empires, all established during the Bronze Age (about 3000 B.C.E. or later).

Famous cities such as Ur, Babylon, and Nineveh were located in the Mesopotamia region. The control of water and the ability to grow excess food contributed to their success. They developed extensive irrigation systems. Large grain storage units were necessary to provide the civic structure and to develop a military to protect and serve the city or empire. The human activity in this area extended around the region all the way to the Mediterranean Sea, which is where the term Fertile Crescent comes from.



The two main cultural hearths in the realm: Mesopotamia and the Fertile Crescent in Asia and upper and lower Egypt in Africa.

Various ancient groups were well established on the eastern side of the Fertile Crescent along the Mediterranean coast. The cities of Tyre and Sidon were ports and access points for trade and commerce for groups like the Phoenicians who traded throughout the Mediterranean. Ancient cities such as Damascus and Jericho became established in the same region and were good examples of early human urbanization during the Bronze Age. These cities are two of the oldest in the world.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

Nile River Civilization

Human civilization also emerged along the Nile River valley of what is now Egypt. The pyramids and the Sphinx in the Giza Plateau just outside Cairo stand testimony to the human endeavors that took place here. Spring flooding of the Nile River brought nutrients and water to the land along the Nile Valley. The land could produce excess food, which led to the ability to support a structured, urbanized civilization. The Nile River is the lifeblood of the region.

In the fifth century B.C.E., the ancient Greek historian Herodotus suggested that Egypt was “the gift of the Nile.” The dating for the beginning of the civilization along the Nile River is often in question, but Egyptologists estimate the first dynasty ruled both Upper and Lower Egypt around 3100 B.C.E. Upper Egypt is in the south and Lower Egypt is in the north because the Nile River flows north. The terms “Upper” and “Lower” refer to elevation. Geologists, using the erosion patterns of the Sphinx, estimate that it was constructed about 10,000 B.C.E.

The ability of humans to harness the potential of the environment set the stage for technological advancements that continue to this day. The Egyptian civilization flourished for thousands of years and gave birth to a legacy that influenced and benefitted their neighbors.



This photo shows the Great Pyramid at Giza. Photo credit: Nina Aldin Thune

The human activities that created the civilizations in Mesopotamia and along Egypt’s Nile River gave humanity a rich heritage. Many of our legends, stories, and myths have their origins in these cultures. Their cultural developments provided the basis for much of the Western world’s religious beliefs and early philosophical ideas. The engineering feats needed to create the magnificent temples and pyramids have by themselves been studied and analyzed over the centuries. Scientists and scholars recognize the high level of organization and structure that went into developing and managing these civilizations.

Various aspects of science and the arts were being developed by these ancient people. Writing, mathematics, engineering, and astronomy were becoming highly advanced. Artifacts such as clay tablets and hieroglyphs are still being discovered and interpreted. They shed additional light on the advancements of these civilizations and their contribution to our human civilization.

Access to Fresh Water

Water is one of the necessities for human existence. Human settlements have long been based on the availability of water for consumption, agriculture, navigation, and the production of energy. In North Africa and Southwest Asia, the availability of water has an even greater relevance because of the dominant type B climate. Methods used to address the shortage of water or to access fresh water have been nearly as diverse as the people who live here. Large populations of people can be found wherever there is fresh water.

Water has historically been transferred from source to destination through canals, aqueducts, or special channels. Many ruins of extensive aqueducts from Roman times and earlier remain throughout the realm. The issues associated with water use continue to affect the lives of the people of this realm. Rapid population growth and industrialization have intensified the demand for fresh water.

LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org



This photo shows the Roman aqueduct near Caesarea.

Water can be found in the desert regions in a range of forms. For example, there are oases, springs, or noted wells from which people can draw underground water that is close to the surface. Mountainous regions such as the Atlas Mountains in North Africa or the Elburz Mountains in Iran trap moisture, which produces higher quantities of precipitation. The precipitation is then available in the valleys to irrigate crops. Discovering or developing other methods of acquiring fresh water is a requirement in areas without mountains.

Underground Water in Libya



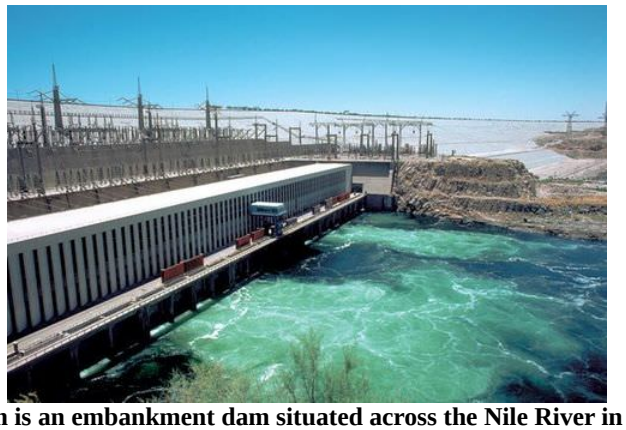
This photo shows the Libyan pivot irrigation in Al Kufrah, southeast Cyrenaica. Wealth from oil has enabled Libya to build projects such as agriculture in the Sahara desert.

In the Sahara region, Libya draws water from deep underground wells that tap into the vast aquifers beneath the desert. These aquifers were charged with water when the region had a tropical climate thousands of years ago. The water is referred to as fossil water. Extensive systems of canals and pipelines have been developed in Libya to extract fossil water and use it for agricultural production or for urban purposes. The man-made river project, one of the largest of its kind, has drawn fresh water from the desert to large cities such as Tripoli and Benghazi.

The local drinking water in Benghazi is contaminated by saltwater intrusion from the Mediterranean. Underground aquifers are underneath political boundaries, so the allocation and control of water are matters of political debate with the potential to lead to military conflict. The project's potential duration will be a function of how quickly the water is used and how many people use the aquifer system.

The main problem with this system is that underground aquifers are not considered a renewable resource. As more countries tap into the aquifers, the available water will be depleted more quickly. As water is drawn from the aquifers for industrial irrigation, the water table goes down. Local settlements that rely on well water may in time have to dig deeper wells or move to locations where water resources are still available.

Nile Water in Egypt



The Aswan Dam is an embankment dam situated across the Nile River in Aswan, Egypt.

Egypt draws water from the Nile to irrigate fields for extensive food production. For thousands of years, floods of the Nile annually covered the land with fresh silt and water. This made the land productive, but the flooding often caused serious damage to human infrastructure. The building of the Aswan High Dam in the 1970s helped control the flooding of the Nile Valley. The river no longer flooded annually, and water had to be pumped onto the land.

Over time, the constant and extensive use of this type of irrigation causes the small quantities of salt in the water to build up in the soil to serious levels, thereby reducing the land's productivity. This process, called salinization, is a common problem in arid climates. To rid the soil of the salts, fresh water is needed to flood the fields, dissolving the salt and then moving the salty water back off the fields.

High salinization in the soil and the reduction in agricultural productivity is a growing concern for Egypt. Egypt's growing population places a high demand on the availability of food. More than half of the 80 million people in Egypt live in rural areas. Many of them make their living in agriculture growing food that plays a critical role in the country's economic stability

Water from the Tigris and Euphrates



The Tigris is an important river for agriculture just outside Diyarbakır.

The major source of water in the Fertile Crescent region comes from the Tigris and Euphrates rivers. Both have their origins in Turkey and converge at the Shatt al-Arab waterway that flows into the Persian Gulf. The Euphrates is the longest river in Southwest Asia and flows through Syria from Turkey before entering into Iraq. Turkey had developed large dams on both the Tigris and Euphrates for agricultural purposes and to generate hydroelectric power.

As water is diverted for agriculture in Turkey, there is less water flowing downstream for Syria or Iraq. Disputes over water resources continue to be a major concern in the Tigris-Euphrates Basin. The Atatürk Dam in Turkey is largest dam on the Euphrates, and it has a reservoir behind the dam that is large enough to hold the total annual discharge of the river. All three countries have dams on the Euphrates and both Turkey and Iraq have dams on the Tigris.

The three countries signed a memorandum of understanding in 2009 to strengthen cooperation within the Tigris-Euphrates Basin. All three countries need water for agriculture to produce food for a growing population. Agreements to share water have been difficult as a result of the Iraq War and the recent protests and demonstrations in Syria that have contributed to further political tension between the three countries.

Water Conservation in Israel

Israel has taken innovative steps to conserve water and use it efficiently. Drip irrigation mixed with fertilizers is called fertigation. Fertigation is used extensively in the area. Israel grows plantation crops such as bananas, which require large quantities of water. Banana groves are covered with material that allows sunlight to penetrate but reduces the amount of transpiration, which conserves water.

Israel has worked to recycle water whenever possible. Gray water is water extracted from sewage that has been treated to be used in agriculture. Underground wells in the West Bank region provide water for a high percentage of people in both the Palestinian areas and Israel. The issue of control over the water is contentious at times. Just as the control of water may have been an important factor in the early Mesopotamian civilizations, it remains a point of political conflict in places such as Israel and the West Bank.

The lack of fresh water and the heavier demand placed on water resources have caused countries that can afford it to desalinize seawater. This process is used extensively in the oil-rich states of the Arabian Peninsula. Israel is implementing a similar plan to accommodate its increasing population and fresh water requirements.



This banana grove in Israel near the Lebanese border is covered with material that allows sunlight to penetrate but helps reduce the loss of water through transpiration.

Mountain Water in Iran



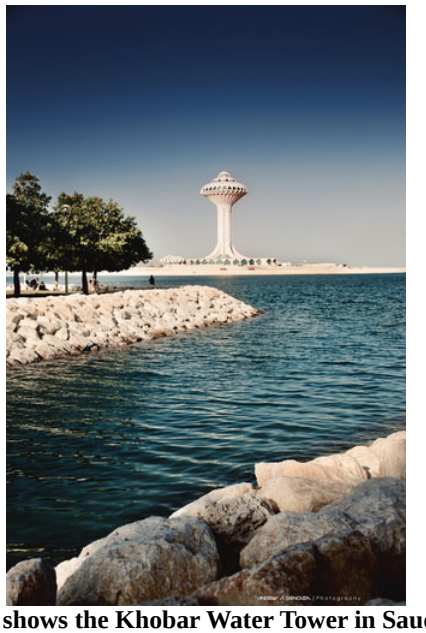
The Zayandeh River as it passes under the bridge in Isfahan, Iran.

Iran is largely a desert climate. Thus, most of the country does not receive large amounts of precipitation. In an effort to redistribute the water available from the high mountains, Iranians have developed a system of qanats to collect water where it is available and channel it to the cities or urban areas for use. A qanat might include a system of shafts or wells along a mountain slope that allows water to collect into a common underground channel, which is then diverted to wherever it is needed.

This system has been in use since ancient times in many arid regions of the realm and around the world. More than 2,700 years ago, a qanat was developed in what is present-day Iran. The qanat has a system of hundreds of wells and channels water for more than 28 miles. It still provides drinking water to more than 40,000 people in the city of Gonabad. Thousands of qanats were developed over the centuries in this area. Persians used cold qanat water from the mountains to keep ice cool during the summer

months. Agricultural production relies heavily on water from qanats, which are dependent on climate conditions and local weather patterns.

Water Shortages in Arabia



This photo shows the Khobar Water Tower in Saudi Arabia.

The Arabian Peninsula has underground aquifers of fossil water located beneath the sands like the ones in the Sahara Desert. Saudi Arabia taps into these water resources to irrigate agricultural land to grow food. This area faces the same issue as Libya and other areas of the world that rely on underground aquifers. Eventually, the water supply will be used up. The majority of the Arabian Peninsula is desert and water is always in short supply.

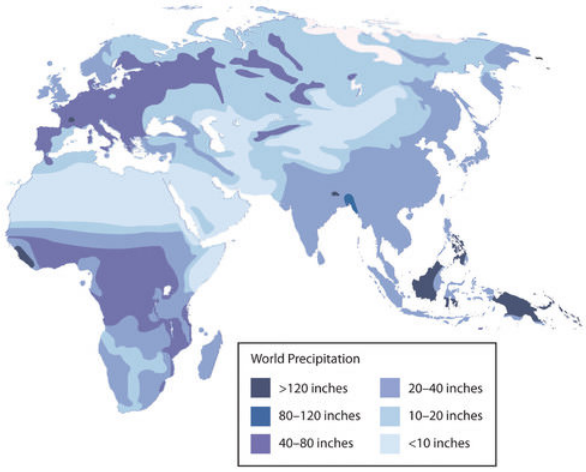
Many coastal desert countries such as the United Arab Emirates (UAE), Bahrain, and Qatar utilize the desalinization process of seawater for their needs. However, this works only as long as the country can afford the energy cost required to operate the desalinization plants.

Yemen is a state on the Arabian Peninsula that is mountainous and has used terraced farming to benefit from the precipitation they receive. Water from precipitation is trapped in terraces, and as it flows down the mountainside, each terrace uses what it needs and then passes the water to the next lower terrace. More land can be farmed to produce higher yields of agricultural crops such as sorghum and cereals.

One of the main problems with Yemen's terrace system is that most of its trees are being cut down for firewood. Tree roots are essential for holding the soil together on the fragile mountain slopes. Another problem is heavy rains that cause serious erosion and damage to the terrace system. Additionally, the extremely rapid growth rate of Yemen's population is outstripping its agricultural production.

Diversion of Water in Turkestan

Fresh water is in short supply in many of the desert regions of Turkestan in Central Asia. Agricultural production has traditionally been dependent on water flowing in rivers and streams that originated with the precipitation from the mountains. As humans have developed canals and irrigation systems, water from rivers has been diverted for agricultural use. Vast fields of cash crops such as cotton were developed during the Soviet era and the result had devastating consequences for the Aral Sea, which depended on the water. More than one-half of the population of Central Asia depends on agriculture for their livelihood. The other half requires water and food for their existence.



This map illustrates the precipitation patterns for North Africa and Southwest Asia.

Arab Spring of 2011

The year 2011 brought about important changes for the human geography in parts of this realm. Citizens began to speak out against conditions in their country and actively protest against their governments. North Africa, the Middle East, and the Arabian Peninsula experienced the highest levels of protests and insurgency. Political leaders who had been in power for long periods were challenged and removed from office.

Democratic reforms were requested or demanded by citizens seeking more individual freedom and greater access to political power. Uprisings in some of the countries were internal; other countries received external support or intervention. Overall, demonstrations, protests, and outright revolution involved millions of people desiring improved living conditions and a better future for themselves and their families.

Protests emerged in North Africa at the beginning of 2011. Tunisia was the first country in which leadership felt the impact of civil resistance and open revolution. In January, the Tunisian president of more than 23 years was forced to flee to Saudi Arabia. In Egypt, millions of protesters demonstrated in the streets against political corruption and the lack of reforms. The revolution of Egypt's citizens was not an armed conflict. However, it was an effective protest because it eventually brought about the ousting of President Hosni Mubarak, who had been in office for almost 30 years.

Demonstrations and protests continued against governments in Morocco and Algeria. Citizens voiced their concerns about social problems such as high unemployment, poor living conditions, and government corruption. Libya's protests erupted into a full-scale armed revolution as anti-government rebels took control of the city of Benghazi in an attempt to topple Muammar Gadhafi's 42 years of authoritarian control of the government, oil revenues, and the people. The armed Libyan revolution was eventually successful in taking control of Tripoli and in removing Gadhafi and his family from power. The revolution in Libya was aided by the North Atlantic Treaty Organization (NATO) air strikes and the implementation of a no-fly zone over the country.

The ripple effect that the Tunisian revolution had on North Africa was felt on the Arabian Peninsula in places such as Yemen and Bahrain. Mass public demonstrations in Yemen over government corruption, economic conditions, and high unemployment escalated into serious armed conflicts between government troops and opposition factions that wanted the president removed from office. In Bahrain, the protests and demonstrations were centered on the request for more personal freedoms and a greater role in leadership for the Shia population, who experienced discrimination by the Sunni-dominated government. Protests also occurred in Oman for greater reforms.

The Middle East did not escape the Arab Spring of 2011. Protests in Jordan forced King Abdullah II to reorganize his government. Israel and Lebanon were not as affected, as they had been addressing many of these issues on an ongoing basis. The country experiencing the greatest impact was Syria. Major mass demonstrations and serious protests against the government were staged in a number of cities across the country.

In Syria, the long-term leadership of an Alawite minority continues to run the government and control the military. The al-Assad family—a father and then his son—has ruled Syria since 1971. The Syrian government has cracked down on the revolution with

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

hard-line measures aimed at putting down the protests and demonstrations. By September 2011, more than 2,000 protesters had been killed in Syria. Many more were detained or tortured. Countless others have tried to flee to neighboring countries for their safety. The protesters in Syria want democratic reforms as well as the end of the al-Assad family reign.

Other parts of the realm also felt the effects of the Arab Spring of 2011 with mixed results. Iran has had similar protests and demonstrations in past years, but there was not a major revolution or uprising as a direct result of the Arab Spring. Iran is not an Arab country but has experienced ongoing political friction between citizen factions and the government. The wars in Iraq and Afghanistan have tempered or isolated internal protests or revolutionary activities in those countries even though armed conflicts continue.

Various Central Asian states have been working through similar issues but either has not had mass demonstrations or have not received the attention of news media regarding their situations. The wave of change that swept over the realm in the Arab Spring of 2011 is an example of how centripetal and centrifugal cultural forces act on a state or region. The political landscape was altered or drastically changed in many countries. The impact of these changes will be realized in the years and decades to come.

Key Takeaways

- The realm of North Africa and Southwest Asia extends from the Atlantic Ocean along the Moroccan coast to the western border of China. It includes the regions of North Africa, Southwest Asia, and Central Asia (often referred to as Turkestan).
- Three basic features that dominate this realm include the arid type B climates, Islam as the predominant religion, and the export of petroleum and minerals to gain wealth. There are exceptions to all three features, but these three are found within most countries of the realm.
- The two main cultural hearths in this realm are located along the rivers in Mesopotamia and in Egypt. Control of and access to water resources to grow excess food were the basis for the success of the empires that flourished in these two areas.
- Fresh water is a valuable resource that is not always available in North Africa and Southwest Asia because of the climate and physical geography. Each region within the realm has developed its own methods to draw from or extract the valuable resource of fresh water.
- The Arab Spring of 2011 was a massive wave of protests and demonstrations by citizens of the realm against their governments over such issues as poor living conditions, high unemployment, government corruption, and the lack of democratic reforms. Various leaders were removed from office and governments were pressed to reform their power structures to allow for more shared governance and reduced political corruption.

Vocabulary Terms

https://k12.libretexts.org/@go/page/1969

	The location of Turkey. It is located the Black and Mediterranean Seas.
	A distinctive landform in southwest Asia and the largest peninsula in the world, it is separated from Africa by the Red Sea and from Asia by the Persian Gulf.
	Run across northwestern Africa, spanning Morocco, Algeria, and Tunisia, separating the Atlantic and Mediterranean coastline from the Sahara Desert. Rich in natural resources such as iron ore, lead ore, copper, silver, mercury, rock salt, phosphate, marble, anthracite coal, and natural gas among other resources.
	The largest inland sea in the world it is also a salt water lake located between Europe and Asia.
	A salt lake bordered by Jordan to the east and Israel and Palestine to the west. One of the world's saltiest bodies of water.
	The longest and one of the most historically important rivers of Western Asia. Together with the Tigris, it is one of the two defining rivers of Mesopotamia.
	A fertile spot in the desert where water is found.
	Lies between Iran to the northeast and the Arabian Peninsula to the southwest. It has the world's largest single source of crude oil.
	Also known as the Empty Quarter, it is the largest contiguous sand desert in the world. Located in Southern Southwest Asia, it is the most oil-rich site in the world.
	A narrow passageway leading from the Arabian Sea to the Persian Gulf and connects the Persian Gulf to the Indian Ocean. It provides the only sea passage from the Persian Gulf to the open ocean and is one of the world's most strategically important choke points.
	It is an artificial sea-level waterway that connects the Mediterranean Sea and the Red Sea. The canal separates the African continent from Asia, and it provides the shortest maritime route between Europe and the lands lying around the Indian and western Pacific oceans. It is one of the world's most heavily used shipping lanes.
	The eastern member of the two great rivers that define Mesopotamia, the other being the Euphrates. The river flows south from the mountains of southeastern Turkey through Iraq and empties itself into the Persian Gulf.
Monotheism	Belief in one god.
Desalinization	The process of removing salt from seawater.
Border	The line that indicates the end of a territory.
Tenets	Basic principles adopted by a group.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

Applying Knowledge

Discussion and Study Questions

1. Why does this realm include parts of three continents?
2. Which countries have territory on more than one continent?
3. What common traits are shared by most people in this realm?
4. What might have prompted the first rural-to-urban shift for human settlements?
5. Why is the Middle East called by that term? What is it in the "middle" of?
6. What did the two cultural hearths contribute to the advancement of human culture?
7. Why did the cultural hearths develop where they did?
8. What are some of the methods Israel has used to address its fresh water requirements?
9. What prompted the Arab Spring of 2011? Which country was the first to see change?
10. What were some of the common issues that people protested across the realm?

Real-World Geography Exercise

Using Google Maps, locate the places on the list below. Calculate how long it would take to travel in an airplane from El Paso, Texas to the nearest big city of your choice in the vicinity of each location. Be prepared to share your answers.

- Arabian Peninsula
- Asia Minor
- Atlas Mountains
- Elburz Mountains
- Empty Quarter
- Euphrates River
- Fertile Crescent
- Giza Plateau
- Levant
- Libyan Desert
- Mesopotamia
- Middle East
- Nile River
- Nubian Desert
- Tigris River
- Turkestan

Current Events

World Conflicts

A Princess Vanishes: A Video Offers Alarming Clues

Saudi Arabia Unveils Plan for 'entertainment city' Near Riyadh

Syrian Voices: Syrian Conflict

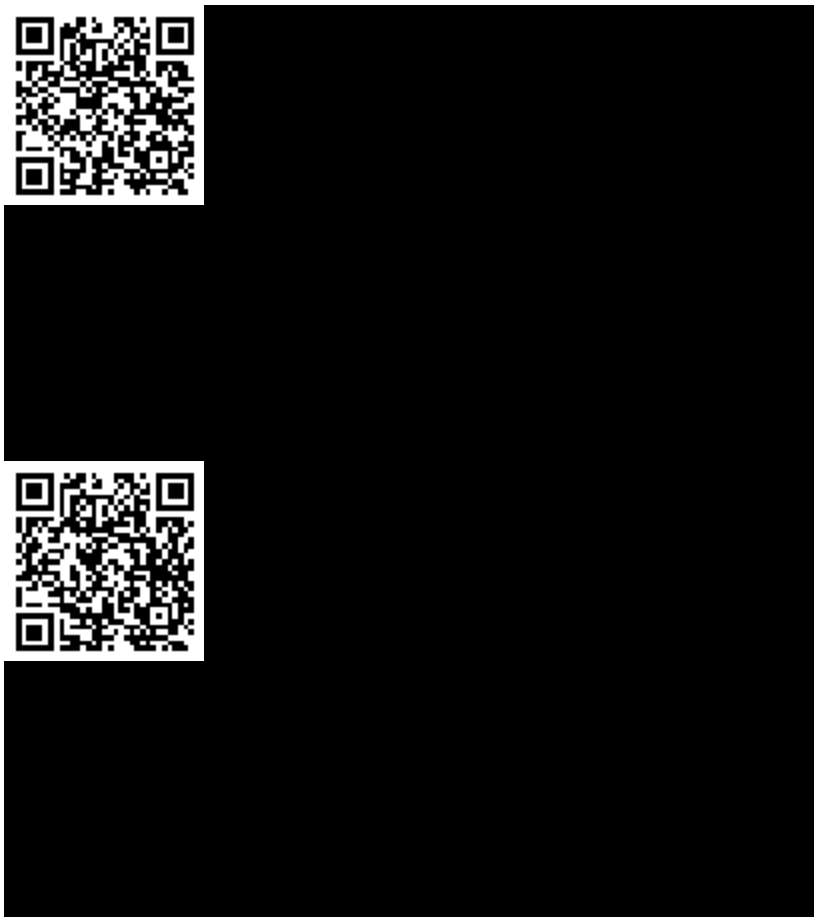
The Yemen Conflict; What You Need to Know

Trump, Iran, and the Nuclear Deal


e Silent Revolution | Raheel Raza
x Talks
Watch on YouTube


e War in Yemen Explained
nd the News
an
Australian ...
btn
What's Going on in Yemen?
Watch on YouTube
© REUTERS/Mohamed al-Sayaghi


udi summit held to try to resolve
azeera English
era is
funded in ...
ALJAZEERA
Watch on YouTube



Helpful Websites for the Study of Geography

Canadian Encyclopedia is an encyclopedia funded by the Canadian government covering all branches of knowledge. Their scholarly collection includes interactive materials.

CIA World Factbook provides information on the people, history, government, economy, energy, geography, communications, transportation, military, and transnational issues for the world's entities.

Congress.gov is a US government website where you can find federal legislation, past and present, as well as information about the US legal system.

Drug Enforcement Administration (DEA) is a government agency website that provides current news, resources, topics of interest, information about drugs, careers in the DEA, and a tip hotline.

Library of Congress is the largest library in the world and provides manuscripts, files, information, pictures, and videos.

NASA Earth Observatory (NEO) is a US government agency website that allows users to search for and retrieve satellite images of Earth.

National Archives is a US government website that provides historical documents, photos, records, publications, and educator resources.

National Oceanic and Atmospheric Association (NOAA) is a US government agency website that provides weather-related information and ocean research.

National Map is a website by the United States Geological Survey and other federal, state, and local agencies that delivers topographic information for the United States.

NationMaster is a massive central data source and a handy way to graphically compare nations.

Real-Time World Air Quality Index is a website that measures most locations in the world for air pollution in real time.

StateMaster is a unique statistical database which allows you to research and compare a multitude of different data on US states.

United Nations (UN) is an international organization founded in 1945 and made up of 193 member states. The UN maintains international peace and security, protects human rights, delivers humanitarian aid, promotes sustainable development, and upholds international law.

United States Census Bureau is a US government agency that provides a population clock, data, surveys, statistics, a library with information and infographics, news about the economy, and much more.

United States Geological Survey (USGS) is a US government agency website that provides scientific information about the natural hazards that threaten lives, the natural resources we rely on, the health of our ecosystems and environment, and the impacts of climate and land-use change.

Whitehouse.gov is a US government website that provides the latest presidential news, information about the budget, policy, defense, and many more topics.

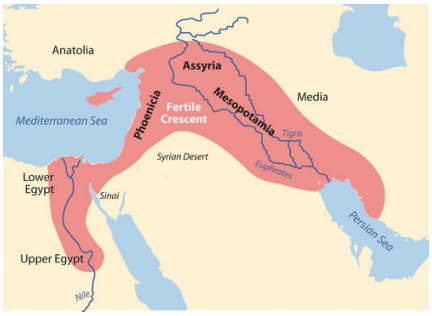
World Health Organization (WHO) is under the United Nations and provides leadership on matters critical to health; shapes the research agenda on health; and monitors the health situation and assessing health trends around the world. Their website provides information on the state of health around the world, outbreaks, current health news, and more.

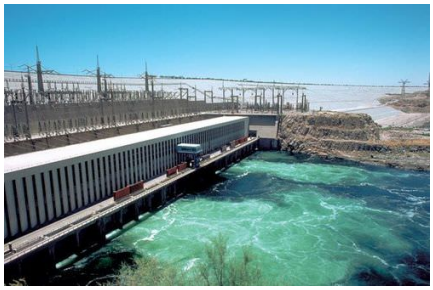
LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

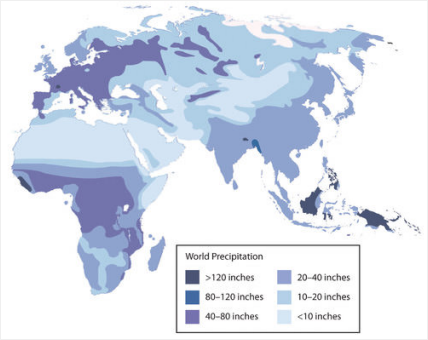
World Trade Organization (WTO) is an intergovernmental organization that regulates international trade. The website provides

LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

information on the history of the multilateral trading system, featured videos, news and events, trade topics, and more.

Image	Reference	Attributions
	[Figure 1]	**Credit:** Wikimedia Commons – public domain. **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/b5074306240890133fed08db4e1aeb75.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 2]	**Credit:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeograp...ing-the-realm/ **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/623083410cfc67a9cf8ac67dec3c9474.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 3]	**Credit:** Nina at the Norwegian bokmål language Wikipedia [GFDL (http://www.gnu.org/copyleft/fdl.html), CC-BY-SA-3.0 (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0/) or CC BY 2.5 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/2.5)], from Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Kheops-Pyramid.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 4]	**Credit:** Photo by R. Berglee – CC BY-NC-SA. **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/9b7e918634c54e865e157161a08c24cf.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

	[Figure 5]	**Credit:** By https://www.flickr.com/photos/87913776@N00/ [CC BY 2.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/2.0)], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Libyan_pivot_irrigation_460142568_02e969004a_o.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 6]	**Credit:** By Orlova-tpe [CC BY-SA 3.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0)], from Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Aswan_Dam.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 7]	**Credit:** By Bjørn Christian Tørrissen [CC BY-SA 3.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0) or GFDL (http://www.gnu.org/copyleft/fdl.html)], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Tigris_River_At_Diyarbakir.JPG **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 8]	**Credit:** Photo by R. Berglee – CC BY-NC-SA. **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/e2f7ab54a8e417bc32ee5aff5286979f.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 9]	**Source:** https://upload.wikimedia.org/Wikipedia/commons/8/88/33pol_esfahan.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

	[Figure 10]	**Credit:** Andrew A. Shenouda **Source:** https://c2.staticflickr.com/2/1610/25193914403_d72ce9c1b1_b.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 11]	**Credit:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeograp...ing-the-realm/ **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/be6e27b744d6e17499665cba023f9a7f.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

This page titled 7.1: Southwest Asia- Introducing the Realm (2 Days) is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by CK12 via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

7.2: The Prophet Muhammad and Islam (2 Days)

Chapter Challenges

1. Summarize the early life of Muhammad and the origins of Islam.
2. Analyze the differences and similarities among the three main monotheistic religions.
3. Explain the process of spatial diffusion and the various forms it may represent.
4. Outline the main divisions of Islam and the approximate percentages of the followers of each division.
5. Explain how Islamic fundamentalism influences the debate between a religious state and a secular state.

Learning Objectives

TEKS Regional Unit 07 Southwest Asia: Chapter 7.2 The Prophet Muhammad and Islam

WG.16B Describe elements of culture, including language, religion, beliefs and customs, institutions, and technologies.

WG.17A Describe and compare patterns of culture such as language, religion, land use, education, and customs that make specific regions of the world distinctive.

WG.17B Describe major world religions, including... Islam,... and their spatial distribution.

WG.17C Compare economic, political, or social opportunities in different cultures for women, ethnic and religious minorities, and other underrepresented populations.

WG.18A Describe distinctive cultural patterns and landscapes associated with different places.... and other regions of the world and how these patterns influenced the processes of innovation and diffusion.

WG.18C Identify examples of cultures that maintain traditional ways, including traditional economies.

WG.21B Locate places of contemporary geopolitical significance on a map.

WG.21C Create and interpret different types of maps to answer geographic questions, infer relationships, and analyze change.

WG.22A Design and draw appropriate graphics such as maps, diagrams, tables, and graphs to communicate geographic features, distributions, and relationships.

WG.22C Use geographic terminology correctly.

WG.22D Use standard grammar, spelling, sentence structure, and punctuation.

TEKS and ELPS for Regional World Geography Unit 07--Southwest Asia from TEKS Resource System

The Prophet Muhammad and Islam



Mecca is home to the largest mosque in the world known as Al-Haram Mosque.

Located in the mountains of western Saudi Arabia, the city of Mecca began as an early trade center for the region. It was also a hub for camel caravans trading throughout Southwest Asia and North Africa. Mecca is about 45 miles from the Red Sea coast at an elevation of 531 feet. South of Mecca, the mountains reach more than 7,200 feet in elevation. According to Islamic tradition, the patriarch Abraham came to Mecca with his Egyptian wife Hagar and their son Ishmael more than 2,000 years before the birth of the Prophet Muhammad. When Hagar died, Abraham and Ishmael built the Kaaba, a rectangular shrine that included a special stone, in Mecca. The shrine was destined to become one of the holiest sites for nomadic groups in Arabia. Abraham later died in Palestine in what is now the country of Israel. Centuries after Abraham's death, the Kaaba and the rituals associated with it merged with other local traditions.

The Prophet Muhammad

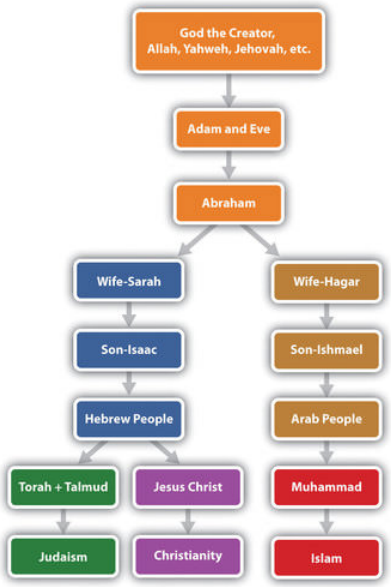
The traditional groups in the region of Arabia were polytheistic and worshiped their own gods. By the time of Muhammad, Mecca is said to have been a center of worship to more than 360 deities, and the greatest of these was Allah (meaning “the god”). Allah was known as the chief of the Meccan pantheon of gods and was worshiped from southern Syria to Arabia. Mecca was full of idols, temples, and worship sites. Tradition states that the god Allah was the only god without an idol. Allah became the God of Muhammad’s new Islamic religion.

Muhammad was born in Mecca 571 years after the birth of Christ and about 100 years after the fall of the Roman Empire. He was orphaned at an early age and was employed in a camel caravan when he reached his teens. His life and what has been reported about it changed the Middle East forever. Muhammad traveled throughout the region with the camel caravans. He was fortunate to have been able to live as he did because most orphans in the region did not have many opportunities. His travels introduced him to many people, places, and experiences. Muhammad's life changed when he married a widow many years older than he was. Muhammad became a merchant, the leader of a camel caravan, and a respected member of his community. He was reported to have been an intelligent and wise businessman.

The traditional groups that traded in Mecca held many different religious beliefs. Muhammad would often seek the solitude of the mountains to contemplate life. When Muhammad was about 40 years old, it is said that while he was meditating in a cave on the mountain, the angel Gabriel appeared. Gabriel gave Muhammad the message from Allah, which he recited from memory to his followers. According to tradition, Muhammad was illiterate and his supporters wrote down his words. These words were compiled into the holiest book of Islam called the *Koran*. Muhammad was the founder of the new religion, which he called *Islam* (meaning “submission to Allah”). The term *Muslim* (meaning “one who submits”) refers to a follower of Islam.

After Muhammad returned to Mecca and shared his visions, he began to speak out against the bad behavior of the citizens and their worshipping of many gods. He claimed that there was only one god--Allah, the same creator god of Abraham. The people of Mecca did not like his new messages of social responsibility. In 622 C.E., they forced Muhammad out of the city, and he fled to the nearby city of Medina and found refuge. This historic journey, known as the hejira, became the start of the Islamic calendar and is based on the lunar cycles.

Muhammad and those loyal to him defeated the army of Mecca and converted the city into Islam’s holiest place. They destroyed all of Mecca’s idols and temples except the Kaaba. Muhammad’s teaching united the many Arabian groups under one religion. Since the Koran was written in Arabic, it became the official language of Islam. The Kaaba and the mosque built at Mecca became the center of the Islamic world and a destination for Muslim pilgrims. Islam brought a new identity, a faith in one god, and a set of values to the Arab world.



This graphic illustrates the traditional succession of the three main monotheistic religions of the Middle East: Judaism, Christianity, and Islam.

The principles of Islam and Muhammad's teachings are a continuation of Judaism and Christianity. All three traditions assert a faith in a divine creator, with important messages coming through prophets or holy messengers. All three religions acknowledge Abraham as a founding patriarch. Muslims believe that Moses and Jesus were major prophets and that Muhammad was the greatest and final prophet. All three religions have stories about creation, Adam and Eve, the flood, and other similar stories that have been adapted to the traditions and characters of each religion.

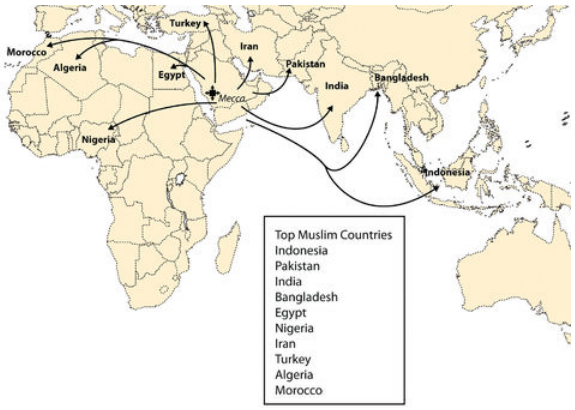
The religions that emerged out of the Middle East absorbed many of the existing cultural traits, traditions, or habits of the people into their religious practices. Early Islam adapted many Arab cultural traits, styles of dress, foods, and the pilgrimage and folded them into its principles. Early Christianity and Judaism also adopted cultural traits, holidays, styles of dress, and cultural traditions.

Spatial Diffusion

The spread of Islam was accomplished through trade and conquest. Mecca was a center of trade. When camel caravans left Mecca, they carried Muhammad's teachings with them. Islam diffused from Mecca and spread throughout the Middle East and into Central Asia and North Africa. The geographic principle of spatial diffusion can be applied to any phenomenon, idea, disease, or concept that spreads through a population across space and through time. The spatial diffusion of Islam outward from Mecca was significant and predictable.

There are two main types of spatial diffusion: (1) expansion diffusion and (2) relocation diffusion. Expansion diffusion has two main subtypes: (1) contagious diffusion and (2) hierarchical diffusion. A religion can spread from individual to individual through contagious diffusion when a religion starts at one point and expands outwardly in a pattern similar to the spreading of a disease.

Another way a religion can spread through expansion diffusion is hierarchically, such as when rulers of a region convert to the religion and decree it as the official religion of their realm. The religion filters down the political chain of command and eventually reaches the masses. The second type of diffusion, relocation diffusion, takes place when the religion relocates to a new place from a central point. When Islam jumped from the Middle East to Indonesia, it diffused through relocation. Relocation diffusion also occurred when Islam spread to the United States.



This map illustrates the ten countries with the highest Muslim populations. Data courtesy of Pew Research Center, Mapping the Global Muslim Population: A Report on the Size and Distribution of the World's Muslim Population.

Early on, the unifying principles of Islam found their way into the regional groups of Arabia and into the minds of their leaders. By 700 CE, Islam had spread to the east, to the Mogul Empire of Pakistan and northern India. In India, Emperor Shah Jehan, who built the famous architectural marvel of the Taj Mahal as a mausoleum for his wife, was a Muslim. The expansion of Islam fueled the Arab Empire of the Middle East. The capital city of the Arab Empire was first established at Medina and then moved to Damascus and later to Baghdad.

While Europe was enduring the Dark Ages, Islam was experiencing a renaissance, expanding its knowledge of mathematics, architecture, and the sciences. The Arab institutions of higher learning kept the Greek classics alive and established universities in Toledo (Spain), Cairo, and Baghdad. As of 2010, Islam has attracted as many as 1.5 billion followers, second only to Christianity, which has about 2 billion followers. Hinduism is third, with about 900 million followers. Buddhism is considered the world's fourth largest religion.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org



Muslims in Umayyad, Damascus, praying toward Mecca.

The Five Pillars of Islam

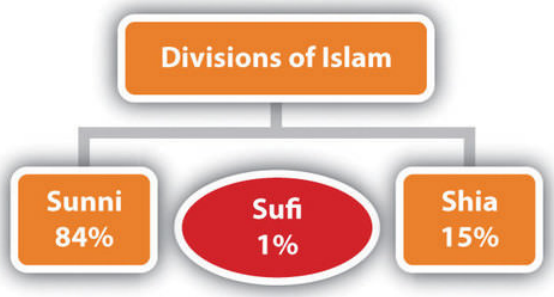
The Five Pillars of Islam is the structural foundation of Islam. Prayer is an important part of the religion. A Muslim must offer prayers five times a day: before sunrise, at midday, at midafternoon, after sunset, and in the early evening. During prayer, Muslims face toward the compass direction of Mecca. Before clocks and time were established, a mosque leader would climb a minaret (a tall tower next to the mosque) and call the faithful to prayer at the required times of day. Muslims gather together for common prayer on Friday, which is a time to unite the community of believers. Mosques sprang up after Muhammad died, and they became the center of community activities in the Islamic world.

The Five Pillars of Islam:

1. **Express the basic creed (*Shahadah*).** Profess that there is no god but Allah and his messenger and prophet is Muhammad.
2. **Perform the prayers (*Salat*).** Pray five times a day.
3. **Pay alms or give to charity (*Zakat*).** Share what you have with people who are less fortunate.
4. **Fast (*Sawm*).** During the month of Ramadan, abstain from personal needs, drinking, and eating from dawn to dusk (as one's health permits).
5. **Make the pilgrimage to Mecca (*Hajj*).** Conduct at least one pilgrimage to the holy city of Mecca (if within one's capacity).

The Death of Muhammad

Muhammad died at the age of 62. He never claimed to be a god or anything other than a mere mortal. His tomb is located in Medina, the City of the Prophet. No provision was made to continue Muhammad's work after he died. One division thought his successor should be a blood relative. This division led to the Shia (or Shi'ite) branch of Islam, which makes up about 15 percent of Muslims. Others felt that the successor should be a worthy follower and did not need to be a blood relative. This branch became known as Sunni, which makes up about 84 percent of Muslims. Various smaller branches of Islam also exist, including Sufi, which approaches the Islamic faith from a more mystical and spiritual perspective.



This chart illustrates the main divisions of Islam.

Sunni Muslims look to the family and community for direction. Sunni leaders are elected by the whole community. Shia Muslims look to their imams for the official source of direction. Imams hold the religious and political leadership in the Shia faith. Through

the right of divine appointment, Imams are considered by many in the Shia division to hold absolute spiritual authority. Imams often have the final word regarding religious doctrine.

Shia Muslims consider Muhammad's son-in-law and cousin Ali to be the origin of the direct line of succession for Imams. Ali is considered in Islam to have been the first person to accept and follow the words of Muhammad. There are many subgroups or branches in each of the Islamic divisions.

To understand the Middle East, it is important to understand the Sunni and Shia divisions of Islam. The Shia and Sunni divisions of Islam have sometimes had different beliefs, resulting in conflicts. In the early 16th century, the Persian Empire, which is now Iran, declared the Shia branch its official religion. Its surrounding neighbors were mostly Sunni. This divergence is part of the reason for the current civil unrest in Iraq.

The two divisions of Islam fight for political power in Iraq. The majority of the Arab population in Iraq, about 60 percent in 2010, follows the Shia branch of Islam, but the leadership under Saddam Hussein until 2003 was Sunni. Tradition holds that Ali is buried in the Iraqi city of Najaf, which is considered by Shia Muslims to be one of the holiest sites in Islam. Just north of Najaf is the city of Karbala, which is also considered to be a holy place for Shia Muslims because it is the burial place of the Prophet Muhammad's grandson, Husayn. The Shia majority in Iraq who are Arab share their faith with the Shia majority in Iran who are ethnically Persian.

Secular State versus Religious State

Islam has a code of law called the Sharia criminal code, which is similar to Old Testament law. The Sharia dictates capital punishment for certain crimes. For example, if a person is caught stealing, his or her arm would be severed. For more serious offenses, he or she would be beheaded or stoned to death. Some countries use the Sharia as the law of their country. Countries are called religious states (Islamic states in this case) when religious codes take precedence over civil law.

States in which people democratically vote on civil law based on the common agreement are called secular states. Whereas secular states attempt to separate religious issues and civil law, religious states attempt to combine the two. Iran is a good example of an Islamic religious state, and Turkey is a good example of a secular state. When the United States invaded Iraq in 2003 and Saddam Hussein was removed from leadership, the country entered a transitional period in which they had to decide if the country would develop into an Islamic state with the Sharia or move to a democratically elected government with civil law. The debate on these issues continually surfaces in many of the countries in North Africa and Southwest Asia whenever transition occurs.

The cultural forces of democratic reforms and Islamic fundamentalism have been pushing and pulling on the Islamic world. Democratic reformers push for a more open society with equality for women, social freedoms for the people, and democratically elected leaders in government. Islamic fundamentalists pull back toward a stricter following of Islamic teachings. They oppose what they consider the decadent and vulgar ways of Western society and wish to restrict the influence of liberal, nonreligious teaching.

A rift between militant Islamic fundamentalists and moderate Islamic reformers is evident throughout the Muslim world. Militant leaders strive to uphold the Sharia criminal code as law. Moderate reformers work toward a civil law based on democratic consensus. This rift adds to the conflicts that have been occurring in this realm. Islamic fundamentalists push for a more traditional and conservative society and express opposition to the United States' intervention in the realm. The Muslim world will continue to confront such arguments over the future direction of Islam in a globalized economy.

Key Takeaways

- Islam has its origins with Muhammad. Muhammad received his revelations through the angel Gabriel and passed them to his followers, who wrote down his words into what became the Koran.
- Islam is the youngest of the three major monotheistic religions of the realm: Judaism, Christianity, and Islam. All three trace their origins back to the patriarch Abraham. Other monotheistic religions, such as the Baha'i faith and Zoroastrianism, are also evident in Southwest Asia.
- Spatial diffusion can be applied to any phenomenon, idea, disease, or concept that spreads through a population across space and through time. Islam has diffused through both expansion diffusion and relocation diffusion to become the second most followed religion in the world.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

- Since the death of Muhammad, Islam has divided into a number of different factions. The two most prevalent divisions of Islam are Sunni (followed by about 84 percent of Muslims) and Shia (followed by about 15 percent of Muslims). Other minor divisions of Islam, such as Sufi, also exist.
- Religious states are structured around laws based on religious regulations that are usually determined by religious leaders. Secular states are structured around civil law, which is decided on by democratic consensus.

Vocabulary Terms

Chapter 7.2 The Prophet Muhammad and Islam

	The chief Muslim civil and religious ruler, regarded as the successor of Muhammad
	A monotheistic religion based on the belief that there is one God, Allah, and that Muhammad was Allah's prophet. Islam is based in the ancient city of Mecca, Saudi Arabia, the birthplace of Muhammad. Jerusalem is sacred because it is thought it is where Muhammad went to heaven.
	The founder and a prophet of Islam, lived part of life in the city of Mecca
	A follower of the religion of Islam
	The five basic acts in Islam, considered mandatory by believers and are the foundation of Muslim life 1. FAITH 2. PRAYER 3. FAST 4. CHARITY 5. PILGRIMAGE to Mecca
	One of the two main branches if Islam
	One of the two main branches of Islam, comprised of about 83% of all Muslims

Applying Knowledge

Discussion and Study Questions

1. What was Muhammad's early life like? Do you think his background influenced his teachings?
2. Who were Sarah and Hagar? How were their sons influential to the people of the Middle East?
3. Name the individual who is considered a patriarch to the three major monotheistic religions of the Middle East.
4. What event triggered the start of the Islamic calendar? On what is this calendar based?
5. List the Five Pillars of Islam. On which day of the week does the Islamic community gather for prayer?
6. Name the two main divisions of Islam. What percentage of Islam's disciples follow each of the divisions?
7. What are the differences between the two main divisions of Islam?
8. What are the two main types of spatial diffusion? Provide an example of each.
9. What is the difference between a religious state and a secular state? Which of these types of state does the United States fit into?
10. How has the conflict between Islamic fundamentalists and Islamic reformers manifested itself in North Africa, Southwest Asia, and Turkestan realm in recent years?

Real-World Geography Exercise

Using Google Maps, locate the places below. Calculate the distance and how long it would take to travel in an airplane from the Portland International Airport to each one of these places. Be prepared to share your answers.

- Baghdad
- Cairo
- Damascus *
- Jerusalem
- Karbala *
- Mecca *
- Medina
- Najaf
- Toledo (Spain) *

* No international flights--find the nearest city with an airport.

Mapping Exercise

ESRI GEO Inquiry

Sacred Place-Sacred Space: Students will be able to compare and contrast the locations of sacred sites related to Christianity, Judaism, Sikhism, Buddhism, Hinduism, and Islam. Students will be able to identify and explain where Buddhism, Christianity, Islam, Hinduism, and Sikhism originated.

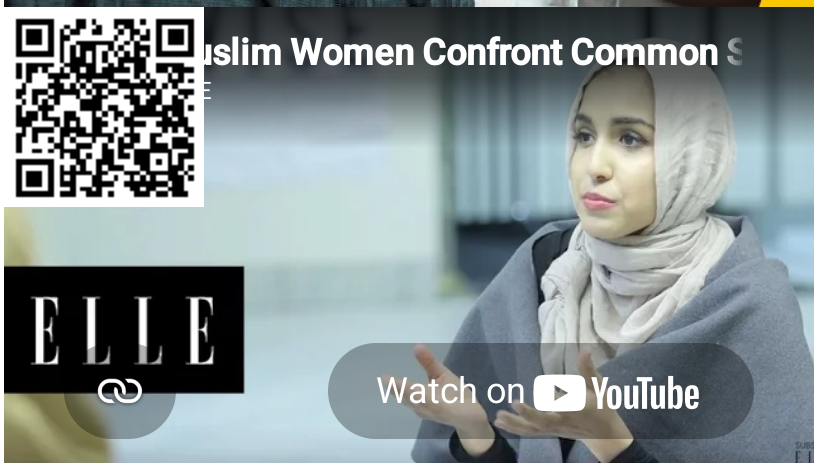
Videos for Geography Enrichment











Helpful Websites for the Study of Geography

Canadian Encyclopedia is an encyclopedia funded by the Canadian government covering all branches of knowledge. Their scholarly collection includes interactive materials.

CIA World Factbook provides information on the people, history, government, economy, energy, geography, communications, transportation, military, and transnational issues for the world's entities.

Congress.gov is a US government website where you can find federal legislation, past and present, as well as information about the US legal system.

Drug Enforcement Administration (DEA) is a government agency website that provides current news, resources, topics of interest, information about drugs, careers in the DEA, and a tip hotline.

Library of Congress is the largest library in the world and provides manuscripts, files, information, pictures, and videos.

NASA Earth Observatory (NEO) is a US government agency website that allows users to search for and retrieve satellite images of Earth.

National Archives is a US government website that provides historical documents, photos, records, publications, and educator resources.

National Oceanic and Atmospheric Association (NOAA) is a US government agency website that provides weather-related information and ocean research.

National Map is a website by the United States Geological Survey and other federal, state, and local agencies that delivers topographic information for the United States.

NationMaster is a massive central data source and a handy way to graphically compare nations.

Real-Time World Air Quality Index is a website that measures most locations in the world for air pollution in real time.

StateMaster is a unique statistical database, which allows you to research and compare a multitude of different data on US states.

United Nations (UN) is an international organization founded in 1945 and made up of 193 member states. The UN maintains international peace and security, protects human rights, delivers humanitarian aid, promotes sustainable development, and upholds international law.

United States Census Bureau is a US government agency that provides a population clock, data, surveys, statistics, a library with information and infographics, news about the economy, and much more.

United States Geological Survey (USGS) is a US government agency website that provides scientific information about the natural hazards that threaten lives, the natural resources we rely on, the health of our ecosystems and environment, and the impacts of climate and land-use change.

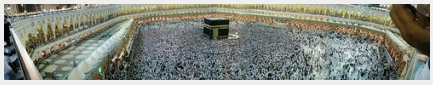
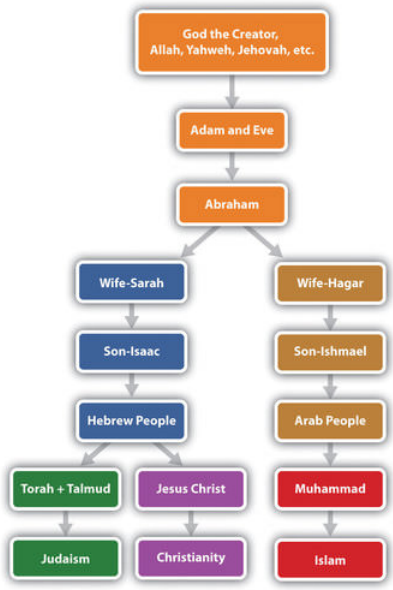
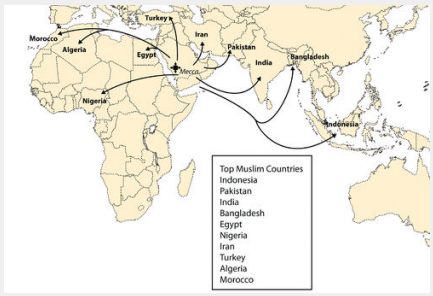
Whitehouse.gov is a US government website that provides the latest presidential news, information about the budget, policy, defense, and many more topics.

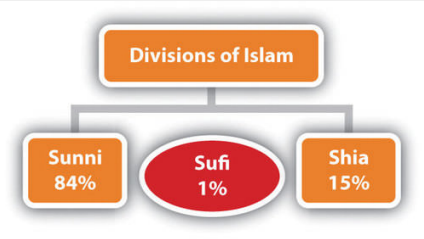
World Health Organization (WHO) is under the United Nations and provides leadership on matters critical to health, shapes the research agenda on health, and monitors the health situation and assessing health trends around the world. Their website provides information on the state of health around the world, outbreaks, current health news, and more.

World Trade Organization (WTO) is an intergovernmental organization that regulates international trade. The website provides

LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

information on the history of the multilateral trading system, featured videos, news and events, trade topics, and more.

Image	Reference	Attributions
	[Figure 1]	**Credit:** Bluemangoa2z at Malayalam Wikipedia [GFDL (http://www.gnu.org/copyleft/fdl.html) or CC BY 3.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/3.0)], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Masjid_al-Haram_panorama.JPG **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 2]	**Credit:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeograp...mad-and-islam/ **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/ac922102b3c18c1a153d2c78337a11fe.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 3]	**Credit:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeograp...mad-and-islam/ **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/8c76f1a1addc17f3c4cfb934d2c7e112.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 4]	**Credit:** Wikimedia Commons – CC BY 3.0. **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/7c22bb7a06384751620542e3dae2f274.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

	[Figure 5]	**Credit:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeograp...mad-and-islam/ **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/fffb4724fadd2726837fd7c5718ba0b2.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

This page titled 7.2: The Prophet Muhammad and Islam (2 Days) is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by CK12 via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

7.3: Israel and Its Neighbors (2 Days)

Chapter Challenges

1. Summarize how the region of Palestine has evolved into the current Jewish State of Israel. Identify and locate the territories that have been annexed to Israel over the years.
2. Understand the division between the West Bank and the Gaza Strip and the Jewish State of Israel. Outline the complications of the one-state and two-state solutions to this division.
3. Describe the differences between the governments of Jordan and Syria.
4. Outline the political arrangements of the government leadership positions in Lebanon.

Learning Objectives

TEKS Regional Unit 7: Southwest Asia; Chapter 7.3 Israel and Its Neighbors

WG.5A Analyze how the character of a place is related to its political, economic, social, and cultural elements.

WG.6A Locate and describe human and physical features that influence the size and distribution of settlements.

WG.7B Explain how political, economic, social, and environmental push and pull factors and physical geography affect the routes and flows of human migration.

WG.9A Identify physical and/or human factors such as climate, vegetation, language, trade networks, political units, river systems, and religion that constitute a region.

WG.13A Interpret maps to explain the division of land, including man-made and natural borders, into separate political units such as cities, states, or countries.

WG.16D Compare life in a variety of urban and rural areas in the world to evaluate political, economic, social, and environmental changes.

WG.17A Describe and compare patterns of culture such as language, religion, land use, education, and customs that make specific regions of the world distinctive.

WG.17C Compare economic, political, or social opportunities in different cultures for women, ethnic and religious minorities, and other underrepresented populations.

WG.18A Analyze cultural changes in specific regions caused by migration, war, trade, innovations, and diffusion.

WG.18B Assess causes, effects, and perceptions of conflicts between groups of people, including modern genocides and terrorism.

WG.22C Use geographic terminology correctly.

WG.22D Use standard grammar, spelling, sentence structure, and punctuation.

TEKS and ELPS for Regional World Geography Unit 07--Southwest Asia from TEKS Resource System

Israel and Its Neighbors

Israel

At the center of the Middle East, on the shores of the Mediterranean in the Levant (the area bordering the eastern Mediterranean Sea), lies the country of Israel. Israel is bordered by Lebanon to the north, Syria and Jordan to the east, and Egypt to the south. Covering an area of only 8,522 square miles, Israel is smaller than the US state of Massachusetts and only one-fifth the size of the state of Kentucky. The coastal region, which has a moderate type C climate, receives more rainfall than the dry interior and the Negev Desert in the south, both of which have arid type B climates.

The Sea of Galilee, also called Lake Kinneret or the Sea of Tiberias, is a major fresh water supply. The Jordan River flows from the Sea of Galilee to the Dead Sea. The Dead Sea is 1,300 feet below sea level, so it has no outlet. Over time, salts and minerals have

built up, creating an environment that does not aquatic life. South of the Negev Desert is the Gulf of Aqaba, which provides access to the Red Sea for both Israel and Jordan. Israel does not have substantial oil resources but has a potential for natural gas in offshore locations along the Mediterranean Sea.

Although most of the Middle East follows the religion of Islam, Israel has a Jewish majority. Before Israel was established in 1948, it was called Palestine. Most people in Palestine were called Palestinians and consisted primarily of Arab Muslims, Samaritans, Bedouins, and Jews. The region went through a series of violent transitions before it became the nation of Israel.

The Division of Palestine

Palestine was a part of the Turkish Ottoman Empire before the end of World War I. Britain defeated Turkish forces in 1917 and occupied Palestine for the remainder of the war. The British government was granted control of Palestine by the mandate of the Versailles Peace Conference in 1919 at the end of World War I. Britain supported the Balfour Declaration of 1917, which favored a Jewish homeland. The British Mandate included Palestine and Transjordan, the area east of the Jordan River, which includes the current country of Jordan.

Between 1922 and 1947, during British control, most of the population of Palestine was ethnically Arab and followed Islam. In 1922, Jews made up less than 20 percent of the population. The Jewish settlements were mainly along the west coast and in the north. Jewish people from other countries—including Jews escaping German oppression in the 1930s—migrated to the Israeli settlements. Palestine was turned over to the control of the newly created United Nations (UN) in 1945 at the end of World War II.

The United Nations Special Committee on Palestine (UNSCOP) was created by the UN in 1947. To address the Palestine region, UNSCOP recommended that Palestine be divided into an Arab state, a Jewish state, and an international territory that included Jerusalem. Palestine was divided by the UN. About 44 percent of the territory was allocated to the Palestinians, who consisted of about 67 percent of the population, which was mainly Arab. Approximately 56 percent of the territory was allocated to the minority Jewish population, who only consisted of about 33 percent of the population.

The country of Jordan was created out of the region east of the Jordan River and the Dead Sea. The city of Jerusalem was to remain under the administrative control of the UN as an international city. The Jewish State of Israel was officially recognized in 1948. The Palestinians, who were a majority of Israel's total population at the time and who owned about 90 percent of the land, denounced the agreement as unacceptable. One of the consequences of the territorial partition was that thousands of Palestinian Arabs were forced off the land that was allocated to the Jewish state. These Palestinians became refugees in the Palestinian portion or in neighboring countries.

Palestine's Arab neighbors—Syria, Saudi Arabia, Lebanon, Iraq, and Egypt—sided with the Arab Palestinians and declared war on Israel. The war did not end favorably for the Arabs. With support and aid from Britain and the United States, the Jewish State of Israel defeated the attacking Arab armies and took control of a larger portion of the land, including some of the land designated by the UN as a portion of the Arab half.



Satellite image of Palestine (left); 1948 UN Division of Palestine into half Jewish State and half Arab State (center); Political Map of Israel in 2011(right).

After the Arabs lost the first war against the Jewish State of Israel, the Palestinians' problems increased. By 1950, more than 750,000 Palestinians living in the Jewish-controlled regions of Israel were forced out of their homes and into refugee camps.

According to the UN in 2010, about one-third of the registered Palestine refugees, more than 1.5 million, live in 58 recognized refugee camps in Jordan, Lebanon, the Syrian Arab Republic, the Gaza Strip, and the West Bank, including East Jerusalem. Jordan has the highest number of Palestinian refugees, and they have allowed most of the refugees to receive Jordanian citizenship.

By 1967, the Arab armies had regrouped and were willing to attack Israel again. The 1967 war lasted only about a week. The Arab armies were devastated once again, and Israel gained even more territory. Israel took the Sinai Peninsula and the Gaza Strip from Egypt, the Golan Heights from Syria, and the West Bank from Jordan. The entire city of Jerusalem came under Israeli control. The 1967 war solidified the control of the region of Palestine under the Israeli government and placed Israel at greater odds with its Arab neighbors. Syria wanted Israel to return the Golan Heights, which has a strategic military advantage in overlooking northern Israel, and Egypt wanted Israel to return control of the Sinai Peninsula.

Egypt and Syria attacked Israel again on October 6, 1973, which was Yom Kippur, the most solemn holiday in the Jewish religion. The Israeli army counterattacked, driving the Syrians out and the Egyptian army back across the Suez Canal. After a few weeks of conflict, a peace treaty was agreed upon. In 1977, Israeli President Menachem Begin and Egyptian President Anwar Sadat were invited to Camp David, Maryland, by US President Jimmy Carter. Israel and Egypt signed the Camp David Accord, an agreement not to go to war again. Egypt agreed to officially recognize the State of Israel and to not invade Israel again. Israel agreed to return the Sinai Peninsula to Egypt, and it was returned in 1982. Each participant in the accord won the Nobel Peace Prize.



A remnant of the Jewish temple, built by Herod the Great and destroyed in 70 C.E. The Western Wall is the holiest place for the Jewish people. The Dome of the Rock mosque in the background is the third-holiest site for Muslims.

In 1980, Israel passed the Jerusalem Law, which stated that greater Jerusalem was Israeli territory and that Jerusalem was the eternal capital of the State of Israel. The UN rejected Israel's claim on greater Jerusalem, and few, if any, countries have accepted it. Israel moved its capital from Tel Aviv to Jerusalem to solidify its claim on the city even though most of the world's embassies remain in Tel Aviv. The move of the capital was designed to create a *forward capital*, the purpose of which is usually either to protect a nation's territory or to spur the development of the country. In this case, it was to protect valuable territory.

Palestinians were left with only the regions of the Gaza Strip and the West Bank, which is controlled by the Israeli government and is subject to Israel's national jurisdiction. As of 2010, about 1.5 million Palestinians live in the Gaza Strip and 2.5 million live in the West Bank. A number of cities in the West Bank and Gaza Strip have been turned over to the Palestinian Authority (PA) for self-governing.

The PA was established between the Palestine Liberation Organization (PLO) and the Israeli government to administer internal security and civil matters. The PLO and the PA are two separate entities. The PLO is the internationally recognized governing body of the Palestinian people. It is legitimately recognized by the UN to represent the area known as Palestine in political matters. There are two main political parties within the PLO: Hamas and Fatah. The Hamas party is the strongest in the region of the Gaza Strip, and the Fatah party is strongest in the West Bank.

LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

The Palestinians, Israel, and Possible Solutions

The future of the West Bank and the Gaza Strip has been the focus of talks and negotiation for decades. There are various ways to approach this issue. A one-state solution and a two-state solution have been proposed. The one-state solution proposes the creation of a fully democratic state of Israel and the integration of all the people within its borders into one country. Integration of the Gaza Strip and the West Bank into the Jewish State of Israel is part of this plan.

Many Palestinians support the one-state solution, but most of the Jewish population does not. Family sizes are much larger on the Palestinian side, so it would be only a matter of time before the Jewish population would be a minority population and would not have full political control. To have the Jewish State of Israel, the Jewish population needs to keep its status as the majority.

In a two-state solution, Palestinians would have their own nation-state, which would include the Gaza Strip and the West Bank. The rest of former Palestine would be included in the Jewish State of Israel. The two-nation concept (Israel and a Palestinian state) has been proposed and supported by a number of foreign governments, including the United States. Implementation of a two-state solution is not without its problems, however.

At the present time, the West Bank and the Gaza Strip are under the Jewish State of Israel without full political or economic autonomy. The two-state solution would buy more time for the Jewish population with smaller families to retain power as a majority political voting bloc.

Parties to the negotiations have agreed that the most likely solution is to create a Palestinian state bordering Israel; but, it is not clear how to make this happen. Palestine is now divided between the Jewish State of Israel (with 7.3 million people) on one side and the Palestinians (with 4.0 million people) in the West Bank and the Gaza Strip on the other side. About 75 percent of Israel's population of 7.3 million people are Jewish, and about 25 percent are Arab.

Travel between Israel and the Palestinian areas is heavily restricted and tightly controlled. A high concrete and barbed wire barrier separates the two sides for much of the border. The West Bank provides fresh water used on the Israeli side for agriculture and industrial processes. The industries also employ Palestinians and support them economically.

Jewish people from various parts of the world continue to migrate to Israel, and the Israeli government continues to build housing settlements to accommodate them. Since the West Bank region is under the Israeli national jurisdiction, many of the new housing settlements have been built in the West Bank. The Palestinians who live there strongly oppose the settlements. In 1977, only about 5,000 Jews lived in the West Bank settlements. As of 2010, there were more than 200,000.

The Palestinians argue that if they were to have their own nation-state, then the Jewish settlements would be in their country and would have to be either resettled or absorbed. Israel maintains that the two-state solution is indefensible because the Jewish settlements in the West Bank cannot be protected if the West Bank is separated from Israel.

The political issues in Israel are complicated. After a series of wars and considerable negotiations, the central problems remain. Jews and Palestinians both want the same land, both groups want Jerusalem to be their capital city, and neither group can find a compromise. Support for the Jewish State of Israel has primarily come from the United States and from Jewish groups external to Israel. There are more Jews in the United States than there are in Israel, and the US Jewish lobby is powerful.

Israel has been the top recipient of US foreign aid for most of the years since 1948. Through charitable donations, US groups provide Israel additional billions of dollars annually. Foreign aid has given the Jewish population in Israel a standard of living that is higher than the standard of living of many European countries.

In the past decade, most of the PLO's operating budget has come from external sources. Arab neighbors provide millions of dollars annually. Though Iran is not Arab, they have provided aid to the Palestinian cause in support of fellow Muslims against the Jewish State of Israel. The PLO has received the bulk of its funding from the European Union. Russia has also provided millions of dollars in aid. The United States provides millions in direct or indirect aid to the Palestinians annually.

The Gaza Strip is one of the most densely populated regions on Earth, and it is located in a desert. There are few jobs and no real methods of gaining wealth. Palestinians living in the Gaza Strip or the West Bank need to rely on outside support to survive. The West Bank is only about 30 miles wide by 75 miles long, yet more than 2.7 million people call it home. The Gaza Strip is a desert region about six miles wide by 23 miles long and is home to more than 1.7 million people.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

Unemployment rates averaged about 26 percent in the Gaza Strip and about 26 percent in the West Bank. Underemployment is also a major issue in that there may be few employment opportunities for professionals with specialized skills or a university degree in a specific field of interest.



This photo shows a street in the west bank city of Nablus. Cell phones are commonplace in Nablus.

In 2006, both Israel and the PLO held democratic elections for their leaders. A candidate from the Hamas party won the election for the leadership of the PLO, which concerned many of the PLO's external financial supporters. The Israeli government characterizes Hamas as a terrorist organization that supports the destruction of the State of Israel. Hamas has advocated for suicide bombers to blow themselves up on busy Jewish streets.

The Jewish State of Israel has been fighting a low-level war against Palestinian resistance groups such as Hamas since 1948. In 2008, the leaders of the Fatah party, which are more prominent in the West Bank region, took matters to the PLO Central Council, which chose Mahmoud Abbas as president of the State of Palestine.



This photo shows the security wall between Israel and Palestine.

The problems between Israel and Palestinians are far from settled. The region is interconnected with shared concerns. The biggest supporter of Israel, the United States, invaded Iraq in 2003. This invasion raised the concern level of Islamic groups in the Middle East, including the Islamic leaders that control the government of Iran. Israel has nuclear weapons, and Iran has worked at developing nuclear weapons. US involvement in the region has heightened tensions between Iran and Israel.

Oil revenues are driving the economies of most of the Arab countries that support the Palestinians. Oil is an important export of the region, with the United States as a major market. The difficulties between Israel and the Palestinians continue to fuel the conflict between Islamic fundamentalists and Islamic reformers. Some Islamic groups have accepted Israel's status as a country and others have not. The Israel-Palestinian problem drives the geopolitics of the Middle East. The US war in Iraq has complicated the situation but has not superseded it. The situation in Palestine is predicted to continue long after the problems in Iraq have stabilized.



This map illustrates the West Bank settlements.

Jordan

North of the Arabian Peninsula are three Arab states that surround Israel: Jordan, Syria, and Lebanon. Each country possesses its own unique physical and cultural geography. The country of Jordan was created through the British Mandate after World War I when Britain defeated the Turks in Palestine. The area east of the Jordan River became the modern country of Jordan in 1946.

From 1953 to 1999, during the most volatile period of the region, the country was ruled by King Hussein, who was able to skillfully negotiate his way through the difficult relationship with Israel and keep his country stable. When Palestine was divided by the UN to create the State of Israel, the region of Jordan received more than a million Palestinian refugees from the West Bank and Israel. Refugees make up a large portion of the more than six million people who live in Jordan today. About one-half million refugees from the US war in Iraq are included in that total.

Jordan is not large in physical area. Natural resources such as oil and water are not abundant here. The country often has to rely on international aid to support its economy. Inflation, poverty, and unemployment are basic issues. The government of Jordan is a constitutional monarchy. King Hussein's son Abdullah II took power after the king's death in 1999. Economic reforms were implemented by King Abdullah II to improve the long-term outlook of the country and raise the standard of living for his citizens. The king allowed municipal elections to be conducted, which allowed for 20 percent of the positions to be dedicated to women candidates. Parliamentary elections were held by a democratic vote.



Jordan has had good political relations with the United States. King 'Abdullah II has worked to maintain a stable government in Jordan and maintain civil stability in spite of Jordan's lack of economic opportunities.



Map of Jordan

Jordan has demonstrated how a country with few natural resources in a volatile region of the world can be progressive despite difficult circumstances. Jordan has developed a positive trade relationship with Europe and the United States while at the same time working with its Arab neighbors to access oil and to maintain a civil state of affairs. Jordan is not without its challenges but has managed to confront each issue and retain a sense of stability and nationalism.

Syria

The country of Syria is at the center of the Middle East's geopolitical issues. Syria gained its independence from the French Mandate in 1946, the same year as Jordan. Syria has strived to work out and stabilize its political foundation. In a move to create greater Arab unity in the realm, Egypt and Syria joined forces and created the United Arab Republic in 1958. This geopolitical arrangement lasted until 1961, when the partnership was dissolved. Syria returned to its own republic.

The Arab Socialist Ba'ath Party gained strength, and in 1970 Hafiz al-Assad, of the Alawite minority (an offshoot branch of Shia Islam making up about 10 percent of the Syrian population), took over leadership in a coup that stabilized the political scene. It was during this era that the Golan Heights was lost to Israel in the Arab-Israeli War of 1967. This strategic geographical location is a point of contention in the peace negotiations between Syria and Israel.

Hafiz al-Assad served as the leader of Syria for 29 years without having been democratically elected to the office by the people. His son, Bashar, became the leader after Hafiz died in 2000. The Alawite sect held power in Syria through the Assad family under military control. Syria has been accused of using its military power to influence conditions in Lebanon, where it brokered a peace deal in its civil war (1975–1990). Syria has also been accused of supporting the anti-Israel groups headquartered in Lebanon.

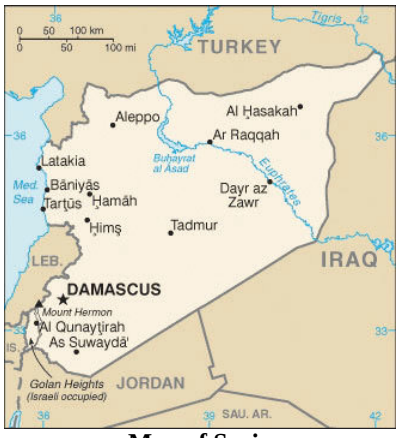
Syria is located in an ancient land with a long history of empires and peoples. The region of Syria was once part of the cradle of civilization that sprung up in Mesopotamia. Damascus claims to have been continually inhabited longer than any other capital city on Earth. The largest city and the center of industrial activity is Aleppo, which lies in the north of Syria.

Syria's physical area is slightly larger than the US state of North Dakota. Overall, Syria's climate is characterized as an arid type B climate. Some regions receive more rain than others. The western region, because it borders the Mediterranean Sea, is an area that receives more rainfall. The additional rainfall makes extensive agricultural production possible. The northeast area of Syria is also productive agriculturally through water resources provided where the Euphrates River cuts through the country.

Oil and natural gas have been the country's main exports. The petroleum reserves are being depleted, and few new fields are being developed. Eventually, the wealth generated by the sale of petroleum reserves is projected to diminish, even as the population continues to increase.

The Syrian government has maintained strict control over the economy. However, the country will face serious economic issues in the future for various reasons: (1) There is a high rate of unemployment; (2) oil production has not been increasing, and the government has been forced to take on additional national debt; (3) the arid climate and the need to supplement agriculture production have placed additional pressure on freshwater supplies; (4) one-third of Syria's population is under the age of 15, which indicates a rapid population growth pattern that will strain future resources at an increasing rate.

In 2017, Syria had a population of about 18 million people. The country holds political significance because its strategic location between Iraq and Israel makes it is a vital player in any solution for lasting peace in the Middle East.



Map of Syria

Syria has experienced protests and demonstrations similar to those that swept through North Africa in the Arab Spring of 2011. Citizens expressed dissatisfaction with the government because of the lack of democratic reforms, high unemployment, and the loss of civil rights. Civil rights had been taken away when the government declared a state of emergency in 1963.

Student protests escalated to massive citizen demonstrations that emerged in various Syrian cities in the spring of 2011. The government cracked down on protesters, killing some. After extensive demonstrations on March 15, the government arrested more than 3,000 people. Hundreds have been killed in violent clashes between the people and government security forces.

The lack of democratic processes by President Bashar al-Assad's government has continued to prompt protests and demonstrations in Syria. The US government eventually placed sanctions against Assad and a number of high-level Syrian officials. A new cabinet was installed in Syria, and the decades-old state of emergency was rescinded. Unrest and protests by the people continue, and the government responds by cracking down on them with harsher methods. Syria's neighbors and various European nations have increased sanctions and denounced the Assad regime, which has increased the pressure on Syria.

The uprising in Syria that started as a part of the wave of the Arab Spring continues. The Arab Spring protests and demonstrations in Syria have often been compared to those in Libya. Both Syria and Libya have had long-time leaders that ruled for decades without democratic reforms or wide-spread personal freedoms for their citizens. The difference is that in Syria, the Assad regime has held total control over a large military and political and economic activities. This is unlike Libya under Muammar Gadhafi, whose modest military forces included hired mercenaries from other countries and the government had a fragmented or weak political structure. Speculation regarding changes in the government and the future of Syria is more difficult.

Lebanon

The Phoenicians created an empire along the Mediterranean coast of present day Lebanon 4,000 years ago. Many armies fought over the strategically located region. After the demise of the Ottoman Empire, the area became a European protectorate under the French Mandate. Independence was granted by the French in 1943.

Lebanon is smaller than the US state of Connecticut with a population of about four million. The country's high central mountain chain, the Lebanon Mountains, reaches as much as 10,000 feet in elevation. At these elevations, precipitation turns to snow and allows the operation of ski resorts. To the east of the central range is the fertile Bekaa Valley, which plays a vital role in the country's agriculture. On the eastern side of the Bekaa Valley is another shorter mountain range that borders Syria.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org



Lebanon (left); Majority Religious Factions in 2006 (right).

Following World War II, Beirut, the capital city of Lebanon, became known as the “Paris of the Middle East,” complete with Western-style night clubs and a jet-setting business class. In the past, Lebanon was called the “Switzerland of the Middle East” because of its capabilities in banking and finance, which were supported by a stable political climate. Unfortunately, stable and progressive conditions were not enough to keep the country from escalating into division and civil war in the 1970s.

In the latter half of the 20th century, internal tensions were building between religious and cultural factions competing for power in Lebanon. By the early 1970s, the minority Christian government clashed with a majority Muslim population. Many factions entered the arena on both the Christian and Muslim sides. On the Christian side are Orthodox, Catholic, and Protestant factions. The Islamic side includes the Sunni, the Shia, and the Druze.

Lebanon was experiencing a full-scale civil war by 1975 that continued until 1990 when the Syrian military brokered a peace deal. By the time it ended, the bitter civil war had destroyed the infrastructure of the country. Only one-third of Beirut’s population remained. The former thriving city had been reduced to a collection of bullet-ridden empty buildings. It took more than a decade, but through the resiliency of the people, Beirut rebounded and continues to recover. A massive rebuilding program has resurrected the city of Beirut and stimulated the economy.

Still, conflicts linger, and discord between Israel and Syria has violent results. Israel has taken military action against anti-Israel factions within Lebanon on a number of occasions. In 1982, Israel attacked PLO strongholds, which were operating out of Lebanon in the Bekaa Valley and West Beirut. In 1993, Israel conducted air raids and military strikes against guerrilla bases in Southern Lebanon.

Anti-Israel groups such as Hezbollah operate out of Lebanon and receive aid from other Arab states. This has caused Israel to confront Hezbollah on Lebanon’s territory. As a result, Lebanon has become a battleground on which factions try to work out their differences. Syria’s continual intervention in Lebanon has sometimes been unappreciated. In 2004, massive demonstrations demanded the removal of all Syrian troops. Syria withdrew its forces in 2005.

There is no dominant majority political party in Lebanon. Lebanon consequently developed a unique parliamentary democratic system to relieve some of the tension between the various cultural-political factions. In this system, a number of positions in government are reserved for specific religious/political parties. The deputy prime minister position is reserved for an Orthodox Christian, the prime minister is a Sunni Muslim, the speaker of the parliament is a Shia Muslim, and the president can only be a Maronite Catholic Christian.

Lebanon’s cultural and religious factions within its small state clash with political fervor and conviction. At times this creates chaotic conditions that interrupt economic growth and discourage international investments. Add the dynamic cultural conditions to Lebanon’s astounding physical features—the Mediterranean coast, the interior mountains, and the cosmopolitan city of Beirut—and it is easy to see why Lebanon is such a fascinating geographic study. Lebanon holds a unique location and position in the Middle East that will remain a focus of interest to the rest of the world.

Key Takeaways

- The current Jewish State of Israel was recognized in 1948. Before this time, the region was called Palestine and the people who lived there were called Palestinians.

https://k12.libretexts.org/@go/page/1971

- Victorious in the war against their Arab neighbors, Israel acquired the Golan Heights, the West Bank, the Gaza Strip, and the city of Jerusalem. The West Bank and the Gaza Strip are considered Palestinian territory. Two plans have been proposed to address the division but have not been agreed upon.
- Jordan is a constitutional monarchy led by King Abdullah II, who has worked to implement reforms to maintain a country that has few natural resources.
- The government of Syria is led by Bashar al-Assad, a member of a minority ethnic group called the Alawites. Assad and his father have ruled Syria for more than 40 years under a state of emergency. Massive protests and demonstrations against the government have resulted in hundreds of deaths and thousands imprisoned.
- Lebanon is a diverse country with a large number of religious groups that dominate the cultural and political scene. The physical geography includes the Lebanon Mountains, the Bekaa Valley, and the Mediterranean coast.

Vocabulary Terms

https://k12.libretexts.org/@go/page/1971

	The founder of Judaism
	Is hostility, prejudice, and/or discrimination directed against Jews as a group
	An underground formation that contains groundwater
	A form of government in which a single person holds unlimited political power
	Monotheistic faith originating in Israel, based on the teaching of Abraham, Moses, and Jesus Christ, including a belief that Jesus is the son of God and died for human salvation; holy text: the Bible (Old and New Testament)
	The expulsion and dispersion of the Jews outside Israel
	An arc of rich farmland in Southwest Asia, between the Persian Gulf and the Mediterranean Sea
	Land southwest of Israel which was won from Egypt in the Six-Day War; returned to Palestinians as part of Israel's "land for peace" strategy
	A region that was formerly part of Southwest Syria that Israel has occupied since the war of 1967. It is a strategic military and agricultural area
	A militant Islamic fundamentalist political movement that opposes peace with Israel and uses terrorism as a weapon. Governs the Gaza Strip
	An uprising by Palestinian Arabs (in both the Gaza Strip and the West Bank) against Israel in the late 1980s and again in 2000
	The current capital of Israel and an ancient city that is holy to Judaism, Christianity, and Islam
	Founded by Abraham who, along with his followers migrated to the "Promised Land" in Canaan, with holy texts such as the Torah. It was established with a code of ethics and how to live a righteous life within a community.
	The Islamic place of worship for the Muslim people
	An ethnic group of Arabs formerly living in Palestine
	Founded in 1964 with the purpose of the "liberation of Palestine" through armed struggle
	In Israel, a strip of land on the west side of the Jordan River, originally controlled by Jordan, which is part of the land set aside for Arab Palestinians

Applying Knowledge

Discussion and Study Questions

1. How did the UN divide Palestine? Why was the division a problem for the Palestinians?
2. What happened to the Palestinians who lived in the Jewish-controlled areas after Israel was divided?

3. What was the Camp David Accord about? Which country's leaders were involved?
4. What was so important about the Golan Heights? What is the issue with this territory?
5. Why would Israel move its capital to Jerusalem and establish it as a forward capital?
6. How are the governments of Israel, Jordan, Syria, and Lebanon different?
7. Why were there massive protests and demonstrations in Syria in 2011?
8. Why was the United Arab Republic created in 1958? Why was it dissolved?
9. Where was the "Paris of the Middle East"? What happened to the city in 1975?
10. How has Lebanon attempted to satisfy all the political factions in their government?

Real-World Geography Exercise

Using Google Maps, locate the places on the list below. Calculate the distance and how long it would take to travel from the Atlanta International Airport to an airport in proximity to each one of the places below. Be prepared to share your answers.

- Allepo
- Bekaa Valley
- Dead Sea
- Euphrates River
- Gaza Strip
- Golan Heights
- Gulf of Aqaba
- Jordan River
- Lebanon Mountains
- Negev Desert
- Sea of Galilee
- Sinai Peninsula
- Tel Aviv
- Transjordan
- West Bank

Current Events

Geography Education Scoop It

The Israeli and Palestinian Situation Explained

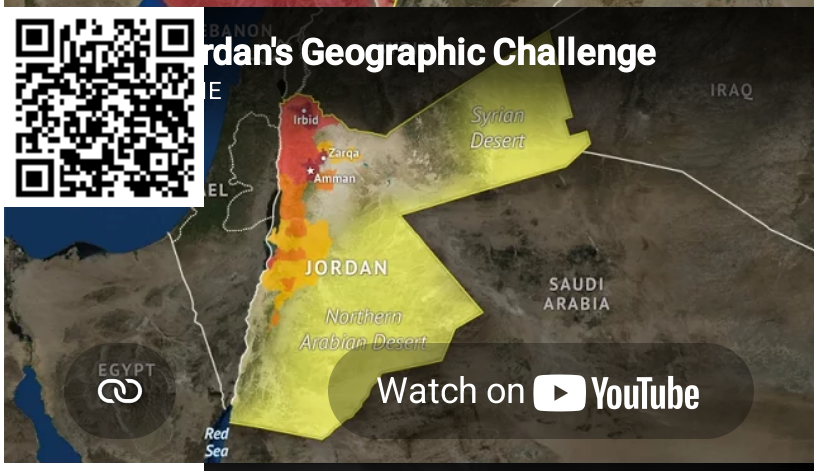
Why Israel Eyes the EU With Distrust

The Activist Leading Lebanon's LGBT Rebellion

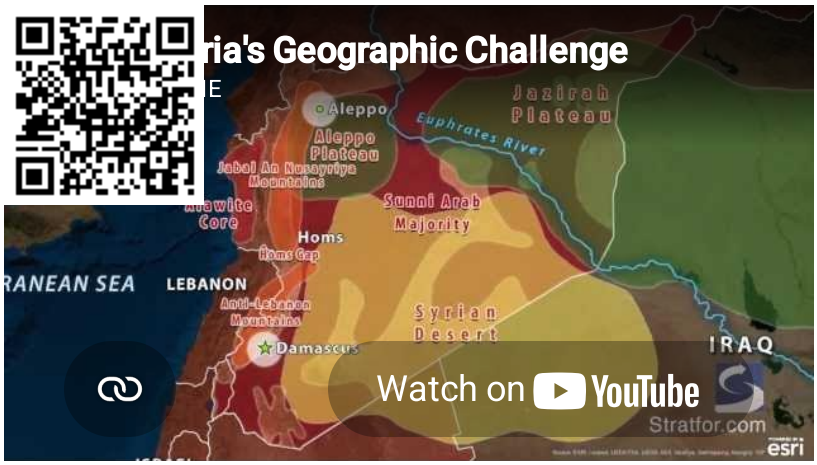
Videos for Geography Enrichment




ael's Geographic Challenge
SYRIA
Golan Heights
Sea of Galilee
Jordan River
West Bank
Tel Aviv
Jerusalem
Gaza Strip
ISRAEL
JORDAN
Negev Desert
EGYPT
Sinai Desert
Watch on YouTube


rdan's Geographic Challenge
IRAQ
Irbid
Zarqa
Amman
Syrian Desert
JORDAN
SAUDI ARABIA
Northern Arabian Desert
EGYPT
Red Sea
Watch on YouTube


banon's civil war veterans fight fo
News
British publi...
BBC NEWS
Watch on YouTube



Helpful Websites for the Study of Geography

Canadian Encyclopedia is an encyclopedia funded by the Canadian government covering all branches of knowledge. Their scholarly collection includes interactive materials.

CIA World Factbook provides information on the people, history, government, economy, energy, geography, communications, transportation, military, and transnational issues for the world's entities.

Congress.gov is a US government website where you can find federal legislation, past and present, as well as information about the US legal system.

Drug Enforcement Administration (DEA) is a government agency website that provides current news, resources, topics of interest, information about drugs, careers in the DEA, and a tip hotline.

Library of Congress is the largest library in the world and provides manuscripts, files, information, pictures, and videos.

NASA Earth Observatory (NEO) is a US government agency website that allows users to search for and retrieve satellite images of Earth.

National Archives is a US government website that provides historical documents, photos, records, publications, and educator resources.

National Oceanic and Atmospheric Association (NOAA) is a US government agency website that provides weather-related information and ocean research.

National Map is a website by the United States Geological Survey and other federal, state, and local agencies that delivers topographic information for the United States.

NationMaster is a massive central data source and a handy way to graphically compare nations.

Real-Time World Air Quality Index is a website that measures most locations in the world for air pollution in real time.

StateMaster is a unique statistical database, which allows you to research and compare a multitude of different data on US states.

United Nations (UN) is an international organization founded in 1945 and made up of 193 member states. The UN maintains international peace and security, protects human rights, delivers humanitarian aid, promotes sustainable development, and upholds international law.

United States Census Bureau is a US government agency that provides a population clock, data, surveys, statistics, a library with information and infographics, news about the economy, and much more.

United States Geological Survey (USGS) is a US government agency website that provides scientific information about the natural hazards that threaten lives, the natural resources we rely on, the health of our ecosystems and environment, and the impacts of climate and land-use change.

Whitehouse.gov is a US government website that provides the latest presidential news, information about the budget, policy, defense, and many more topics.

World Health Organization (WHO) is under the United Nations and provides leadership on matters critical to health, shapes the research agenda on health, and monitors the health situation and assessing health trends around the world. Their website provides information on the state of health around the world, outbreaks, current health news, and more.

LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

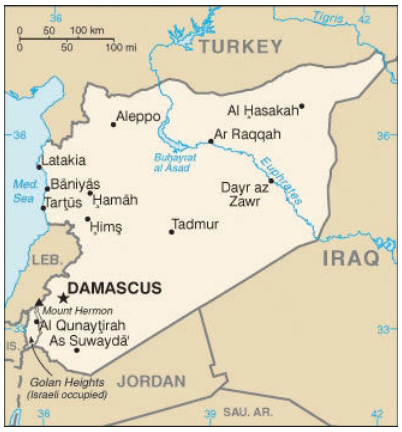
World Trade Organization (WTO) is an intergovernmental organization that regulates international trade. The website provides

https://k12.libretexts.org/@go/page/1971

information on the history of the multilateral trading system, featured videos, news and events, trade topics, and more.

Image	Reference	Attributions
	[Figure 1]	**Credit:** Wikimedia Commons public domain; Wikimedia Commons – public domain; CIA World Factbook – public domain. **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/0e4af3696f20f6ca1ede8e035e21d9ec.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 2]	**Credit:** Photo by R. Berglee – CC BY-NC-SA. **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/413e9e94a997e9483d2fcfe622ef110e.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 3]	**Credit:** Photo by R. Berglee – CC BY-NC-SA. **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/85e409e5ec916d6430ca74460c742acd.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 4]	**Credit:** Photo by R. Berglee – CC BY-NC-SA. **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/8ee6de0094167f6f5f8d78f2b07ebf19.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

	[Figure 5]	**Credit:** Updated from map courtesy of CIA World Factbook – public domain. **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/a9dc426cb3ed6fce0fd1fd059be8fd4a.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 6]	**Credit:** Photo courtesy of the White House – public domain. **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/3aa46b805a486c8fad57a3899d6b59c9.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 7]	**Credit:** Map courtesy of CIA World Factbook – public domain. **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/641aa56ba004a829af20f8010763c982.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

	[Figure 8]	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/17a20b2ef4f94fbc1809c342785b86af.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 9]	**Credit:** Maps courtesy of CIA World Factbook – public domain. **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/7cbbc680e34cf88b2e597589599aa329.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

This page titled 7.3: Israel and Its Neighbors (2 Days) is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by CK12 via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

7.4: Arabs, Islam, and Oil (2 Days)

Chapter Challenges

1. Summarize the physical features of the Arabian Peninsula.
2. Understand the main economic activities of each country.
3. Describe the types of governments found in the region.
4. Outline women's rights and circumstances in each country in the region.

Learning Objectives

TEKS Regional Unit 7: Southwest Asia; Chapter 7.4 Arabs, Islam, and Oil

WG,1A Analyze the effects of physical and human geographic patterns and processes on the past and describe their impact on the present, including significant physical features and environmental conditions that influenced migration patterns and shaped the distribution of culture groups today.

WG.3B Describe the physical processes that affect the environments of regions, including weather, tectonic forces, erosion, and soil-building processes.

WG.4B Describe different landforms and the physical processes that cause their development.

WG.4C Explain the influence of climate on the distribution of biomes in different regions.

WG.8A Compare ways that humans depend on, adapt to, and modify the physical environment, including the influences of culture and technology.

WG.8C Evaluate the economic and political relationships between settlements and the environment, including sustainable development and renewable/non-renewable resources. sustainable development and renewable/non-renewable resources.

WG.10D Compare global trade patterns over time and examine the implications of globalization, including outsourcing and free trade zones.

WG.11A Understand the connections between levels of development and economic activities (primary, secondary, tertiary, and quaternary).

WG.16A Describe distinctive cultural patterns and landscapes associated with different places in Texas, the United States, and other regions of the world and how these patterns influenced the processes of innovation and diffusion.

WG.16B Describe elements of culture, including language, religion, beliefs and customs, institutions, and technologies.

WG.17A Describe and compare patterns of culture such as language, religion, land use, education, and customs that make specific regions of the world distinctive.

WG.17C Compare economic, political, or social opportunities in different cultures for women, ethnic and religious minorities, and other underrepresented populations.

WG.19B Evaluate the significance of major technological innovations in the areas of transportation and energy that have been used to modify the physical environment.

WG.21C Create and interpret different types of maps to answer geographic questions, infer relationships, and analyze change.

WG.22B Generate summaries, generalizations, and thesis statements supported by evidence.

WG.22C Use geographic terminology correctly.

WG.22D Use standard grammar, spelling, sentence structure, and punctuation.

WG.22E Create original work using proper citations and understanding and avoiding plagiarism.

TEKS and ELPS for Regional World Geography Unit 07--Southwest Asia from TEKS Resource System

LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

Arabs, Islam, and Oil

States of the Arabian Peninsula

The Arabian Peninsula is a desert environment surrounded by saltwater bodies. The Persian Gulf, the Arabian Sea, and the Red Sea border the peninsula on three sides. Arid type B climates dominate the region. Saudi Arabia only receives an average of four inches of precipitation per year. The southern portions of the peninsula are some of hottest places on Earth. Summer temperatures can reach more than 120 ºF.

In the south is the Rub' al-Khali (Empty Quarter), which is mainly desert and comprises about 25 percent of Saudi Arabia. It is extremely dry and virtually uninhabited, though oil discoveries have brought temporary settlements to the region. There are no natural lakes or major rivers on the peninsula. Agricultural activity is dependent on the availability of water by rainfall, underground aquifers, oases, or desalinization of seawater.



Satellite Image from 2008 of the Arabian Peninsula illustrating the mountainous regions, the uninhabited Empty Quarter desert region, and the surrounding bodies of water.

Most of the people living on the peninsula are Arabs. Most of the peninsula's countries are ruled by monarchs who rely on oil revenues to gain wealth. Minerals are mined in the mountains that dominate the peninsula's western and southern regions. The highest peaks reach more than 12,000 feet in elevation in northern Yemen. Of the countries on the peninsula, Yemen has the fewest oil resources and has had the sole democratically elected government. Saudi Arabia dominates the region in size and in oil resources. Islam, the major religion, is present in all aspects of Arab culture.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org



This political map illustrates the Arabian Peninsula.

The holy cities of Medina and Mecca are in Saudi Arabia, the birthplace of Islam. Islam first united the many traditional groups of Arabia with religion and then with the Arabic language. The region was further united after 1902 when Abdul Aziz Al-Sa‘ud and his followers captured the city of Riyadh and brought it under the control of the House of Sa‘ud. In 1933, the lands under the control of the king were renamed the Kingdom of Saudi Arabia. Saudi Arabia is an absolute monarchy.

In 1938, the US oil corporation Chevron found large quantities of oil in the region, which has sustained the royal family ever since. Aramco is the state-run oil corporation. Controlling about one-fifth of the world’s known oil reserves, the Saudi royal family is politically and economically powerful.

The Saudi royal family gave safe haven to thousands of Kuwaitis, including the Emir and his family, during the First Persian Gulf War. Saudi Arabia allowed US and Western military forces to use military bases on its soil during Operation Desert Storm. Allowing non-Muslims to operate military bases on the same soil as the holy cities of Mecca and Medina gave extremist groups a reason to engage in terrorist activities. Out of the 19 hijackers in the 9/11 attack in New York, 16 were from Saudi Arabia. The Saudi government has been forced to increase its efforts against terrorism and domestic extremist groups.

The entire economy of Saudi Arabia is based on the export of oil, and more than 20 percent of the known oil reserves in the world are located in Saudi Arabia. The country is a key member of the Organization of Petroleum Exporting Countries (OPEC) and has been the world’s number one oil exporter. Millions of workers from other countries in the petroleum industry are important to the country’s economy.

A high rate of population growth has been outstripping economic growth in Saudi Arabia. In 2010, more than one-third of the population was younger than 15 years old, and family size was about 3.8 children. The unemployment rate is high, and there is a shortage of job skills in the workforce. The government has been working to shift its focus away from a petroleum-based economy and increase other economic opportunities. It plans to invest heavily in the necessary infrastructure and education to diversify its economy.

Saudi Arabia has made several efforts to move forward and put the country more in line with globalization efforts that are modernizing the other Persian Gulf States. The World Trade Organization accepted Saudi Arabia as a member in 2005. In 2008, the king implemented the initiative for interfaith dialogue in an effort to address religious tolerance and acceptance. The first woman was appointed to the cabinet, and municipal councils held elections for its members.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org



This map shows the modern infrastructure on Medina Road in Jeddah, Saudi Arabia.

Saudi Culture

The royal family and most of the people in Saudi Arabia are Sunni Muslims. The country has a strong fundamentalist Islamic tendency. The law of the state is strict and supports conservative Islamic ideals. The Wahhabi branch of Sunni Islam has a major influence on culture. Activities such as gambling, alcohol consumption, and the promotion of other religions are outlawed. Alcohol and pork products are forbidden in accordance with Islamic dietary laws.

Movie theaters and other Western-style productions are prohibited but can be found in areas where workers from other countries live in private compounds. Though movie theaters are restricted, movies on DVDs are not prohibited and are widely available. The dress code in Saudi Arabia strictly follows the Islamic principles of modesty**.** The black abaya (an article of clothing that looks like a cloak or robe) or modest clothing is appropriate for women. Men often wear the traditional full-length shirt and a head cloth held in place by a cord.

In Saudi Arabia, human rights organizations, legal associations, trade unions, and political parties are banned. The country maintains a tight censorship of all local media. The press is only allowed to publish what the government permits it to report. Communication with foreigners, satellite media, and Internet access are highly controlled. Those who speak out against the government can be arrested or imprisoned.



Former First Lady Laura Bush meets medical staff in Saudi Arabia. Note the women's attire.

The Sharia is the basic criminal code in Saudi Arabia, along with whatever law is established by the king. If a citizen disobeys the law, they are subject to a wide range of punishments, from long prison sentences to amputations, floggings, and beheadings. Trials are most often held in secret without lawyers. Torture has been used to force confessions that are then used to convict the accused. Torture techniques—including the use of sticks, electric shocks, or flogging—can be applied to children and women as well as men. Executions are usually held in a public place every Friday.

Role of Women

Men hold the dominant roles in Saudi society. Under strict Islamic law, women do not have the same rights as men, so Saudi women do not have the opportunities that women in many Western countries have. For example, it is not customary for a woman to walk alone in public. Traditionally, she must be accompanied by a family member so as to not be accused of any moral offenses. The Mutawa'een (religious police) have the authority to arrest people for such actions. The punishment could be imprisonment or a flogging.

Saudi Arabia is a country steeped in tradition based on the heritage of its people, and many of the traditions regarding women were implemented to protect and care for them. However, as the forces of globalization seep into the fabric of society, many of these

traditions are evolving, changing, and adapting. Women are asserting themselves in the culture, and many of these long-standing traditions are starting to break down.

In late 2011, there were a number of women who organized to defy the ban on driving. One woman was arrested for driving a car and sentenced to ten lashes. Saudi King Abdullah then overturned the sentence and promised to support or protect women's rights. There is no law stating that women cannot drive a vehicle. The taboo is based on tradition and religious views. More women have taken to the roadways in spite of the taboo against it. Saudi Arabia is an example of how Islamic fundamentalism is being challenged by modernity and democratic principles.

Kuwait

Kuwait, a small country located on the Persian Gulf, is a monarchy ruled by an emir from the royal family. Immense oil reserves have made Kuwait attractive to international oil investors. In 1961, Zapata Oil Company (now Pennzoil), owned by former US president George H. W. Bush, drilled the first offshore Kuwaiti oil well in the Persian Gulf. Oil revenues have allowed the small Kuwaiti population of about three million people to receive social services that sustain a relatively high quality of life. Education is free, and much of the labor base comes from non-Kuwaiti migrants. Petroleum exports account for most of the government's income.

Kuwait has an excellent port at Kuwait City. However, one of the environmental problems with building a large city in the desert is the shortage of fresh water. To solve this problem, Kuwait has turned to the desalinization of seawater to provide for its domestic, agricultural, and industrial needs.

The United States and an international coalition fought the First Persian Gulf War in 1991 to liberate Kuwait from the control of Saddam Hussein. Under Hussein, Iraq invaded Kuwait and took over its oil industry and port facilities. By taking over the oil assets in Kuwait, Hussein was taking over the oil assets of various international oil corporations. With the support of United Nations (UN) resolutions demanding that Hussein leave Kuwait, President George H. W. Bush organized an international military coalition to remove Hussein from Kuwait. The US mission was called Operation Desert Storm.

The war started on bases in Saudi Arabia and pushed the Iraqi army out of Kuwait. When Hussein realized that he could not benefit from the oil in Kuwait, he dynamited approximately 750 oil wells. This action caused serious well fires and large lakes of oil flowing out onto the desert sands. The fires and spilled oil caused extensive environmental damage.



US fighter jets in Operation Desert Storm fly over burning oil well fires in Kuwait. The fires were set by retreating Iraqi forces.

Kuwait was not a democracy during the Persian Gulf War and is not a true democracy today. It is considered a constitutional emirate. The emir, or head of the royal family, is the head of state. He appoints the prime minister and has a high level of control over the government. The emir has the authority to dissolve the National Assembly, which has members that hold seats by election. A number of groups wish to have a political voice in the government, including Islamists, business merchants, secular liberals, Shia activists, and a small number of local groups. Islamist groups are usually those who support an Islamic religious state as the desired type of government.

Kuwait had to invest nearly five billion dollars to reestablish the oil industry after the Persian Gulf War. The emirate has recovered, and its economy is growing with the increased sale of exported oil. Kuwait has about 104 billion barrels of oil in known reserves.

In 2017, the four largest export partners were South Korea, China, Japan, India, the United States, and Singapore. China is Kuwait's number one source of imported goods with the United States coming in second.

Bahrain

Bahrain is a small archipelago (a group of islands) in the Persian Gulf. The country received its independence from Great Britain in 1971. Similar to other small monarchies in the region, Bahrain has plenty of oil and a small population. Though more than 50 percent of the population is Shia, the country is opening up to democratic reforms. In 1999, elections were approved for a parliament, all political prisoners were released, and women were allowed to vote.

The royal family, ruled by the king, has had an enormous degree of power over its government. Officially, Bahrain is a constitutional monarchy, but the king appoints the members of the upper house in its bicameral legislature. The first female was appointed to a cabinet position in 2004, which was an indication of the move toward globalization and modernization.



American franchises in Bahrain are a clear example of Americanization of the Arabian Peninsula.

Most of Bahrain's wealth is gained through the extraction of natural resources. Enormous natural gas reserves are located in Bahrain's coastal waters, and oil now makes up about 60 percent of the export profits. The small land area size of the country, lack of sufficient supplies of fresh water, and few other natural resources have prompted a shift for Bahrain to expand into the financial sector. Islamic banking and financial services for the global marketplace have been an expanding sector of the economy.

The objective in diversifying the economy is to reduce the dependency on oil as a future source of national wealth. In addition, the United States has entered into a free-trade agreement with Bahrain, which has attracted multinational corporations to do business in the region. Bahrain has been supportive of a US military presence for both protection and cooperation and is the permanent headquarters for the US Fifth Fleet naval operations. In a mutual defense agreement, one thousand American naval officers and personnel are stationed on the island. Bahrain has been a frontline state for the US military in the Iraq War and the war in Afghanistan.

The country is also opening up development in the service sectors. Bahrain has been attracting millions of tourists in recent years. The country's authentic heritage is attractive to tourists from neighboring Arab states and the global community. The country boasts of nearly 5,000 years of human activity. United Nations Educational, Scientific, Cultural Organization (UNESCO) has designated the Qal'at al-Bahrain castle as a World Heritage Site. The country has invested heavily in modern shopping malls and international sports facilities in an effort to modernize its country and attract more international events.

The citizens of Bahrain have had to work to balance the shift toward modernization and globalization with the strong Arab heritage and Islamic beliefs that have been the foundation of their culture. The term *Middle East Lite* has been applied to Bahrain because Bahrain has been investing in modern infrastructure but has worked hard to maintain its Arab heritage with a Persian Gulf identity that is more accepting and open to the outside world. The growing and prosperous middle class is more tolerant and liberal than many of its Middle East neighbors.

The same level of tolerance toward outsiders has not been witnessed within the country. The 2011 protests and demonstrations that swept across North Africa and the Middle East also occurred in Bahrain. The king, the royal family, and the majority in government follow the Sunni branch of Islam. However, most of the population follows the Shia branch of Islam. Many within the Shia community felt that they were being discriminated against and protested the lack of democratic reforms.

Protests and demonstrations in Bahrain have prompted the government to call in military support from Saudi Arabia to help quell the uprising. A number of Shia mosques were reported to have been destroyed, and hundreds of people were detained by police. The protests and demonstrations in Bahrain are more than just a conflict between Shia and Sunni, though this split has been a major

concern for years. Many Sunni have participated in the demonstrations because they are in support of more democratic reforms as well.

Qatar

Qatar is a small peninsula jutting out from Arabia into the Persian Gulf. It is an Arab land in transition. Ruled by an emir who has supported democratic reforms, Qatar is moving forward with a globalization policy similar to other Westernized nations. Many of these reforms are similar to those in Bahrain and the United Arab Emirates (UAE).

Oil and gas exports have fueled a building boom that has produced shopping malls, wide boulevards, and even a large US military base. Women are allowed to vote, Western clothing and products are permitted, and rap music can be heard in the streets. Though still politically restrictive in many ways, Qatar is more open than many of its neighbors. Qatar is also home to the Al Jazeera news organization, which often balances out Western news programming. Al Jazeera is also allowed to report critically on its home country.

In the past few years, oil revenues have provided Qatar with a rapidly growing economy and a high standard of living. Proven reserves of oil and natural gas are enormous for such a small country. Qatar's natural gas reserves are the world's third largest. Qatar has been pursuing the development of private and foreign investments in non-energy-related businesses, including banking and financial institutions.



Revenues from oil and natural gas are fueling the rapid development of this small peninsula that is rivaling core economic countries.

Modernization efforts have supported Qatar's push for a greater emphasis on education. Infrastructure and financial support have been allocated to support educational reform, and university opportunities are expanding rapidly. Qatar University was founded in 1973, and in the last decade many more universities from Western countries have opened up branch campuses in Education City, which was established to advance Qatar's educational reform goals.

The emir's second wife has actively promoted educational reforms and has encouraged women to pursue higher education to excel in their careers. She has also created greater visibility for women in public roles and has broken through some of the cultural barriers and taboos that have restricted women in other conservative Islamic Arab countries.

United Arab Emirates (UAE)

Seven small Arab emirates joined together in 1971 to form the United Arab Emirates (UAE). Each emirate is an absolute monarchy ruled by a sheik. The UAE has been integrating its economy with the global marketplace and has established a high standard of living for its people. Two of the emirates—Abu Dhabi and Dubai—possess most of the oil reserves. Abu Dhabi is the capital city and consists of 87 percent of the land area in the UAE. The head of the royal family in this emirate is considered the head of state for the UAE.



Abu Dhabi dominates in terms of square miles of physical area.



The skyline of Dubai includes the tallest building in the world.

Dubai has turned its small emirate into an international trade center. The emirate has used its oil reserves to promote trade and commerce. Dubai built itself a world-class port facility equaling that of Hong Kong or New York. As a free-trade zone, there are no taxes or tariffs, so international corporations use the location as a trade center to bring high-volume buyers and sellers together. Dubai has been looking ahead to its future when the oil runs out. The creation of an international trade center would be a means to gain economic income when the revenue from the sale of oil diminishes.

Oil wealth and the need for workers have opened up economic opportunities in the UAE that have attracted laborers and business people from many parts of the world. Non-citizens make up about 80 percent of the population. About one-half of the non-citizens are from South Asia, and many are Muslims from India. The large number of laborers that are required to develop the infrastructure has created an imbalance between the percentage of men and women.

There are about twice the number of men than there are women in Dubai. This has created an interesting dynamic for women in Dubai, who have more rights and opportunities than those in more conservative Islamic countries such as Saudi Arabia. The UAE presents an excellent example of people migrating from peripheral countries to a core region in search of opportunities and advantages in a globalized economic community.

The UAE has invested its oil income in building up its infrastructure to compete in a global economy. Hundreds of billions of dollars of construction projects are underway in Dubai alone. Dubai has the world's tallest structure, the most expensive hotel, the world's most expensive airport, and the world's largest artificial islands. Dubai is even home to an indoor downhill ski resort complete with real snow. Other ventures such as the Dubailand entertainment complex and Dubai Sports City have also been proposed. The downturn in the world's economic situation has slowed the development in this emirate but has not diminished its perspective on the future.

The Sultanate of Oman

Ruled by a sultan, the absolute monarchy of Oman on the southern end of the Arabian Peninsula also controls the tip of land next to the Strait of Hormuz. All oil tankers leaving the Persian Gulf must pass through this vital choke point. Mountains reach more than 9,000 feet in the eastern region of Oman, and rugged arid central plains cover the central region. The country gets plenty of sunshine and has some excellent beaches. Annual rainfall varies from four inches or fewer in the eastern sector to as much as 25 inches in the southwest. The climate is generally hot. Temperatures can reach 120 °F from May to September.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

Oman has been using its oil income to build infrastructure to benefit its people. The sultan of Oman has widespread support from his people and has built up goodwill from the international community for his investments in his country. He has built a free-trade zone with a giant container port facility, luxury tourist hotels, a good road system, and a first-rate international airport. He has also provided clean drinking water to the rural areas. Though Oman is not a democracy, the sultan has been a positive role model for other monarchs. He has used Oman's oil wealth to help his country develop and modernize. The mountains of Oman have additional natural resources such as gold, marble, and copper.

A lack of fresh water is a concern for Oman. The nation has limited renewable water resources. More than 90 percent of the water available is used in agriculture, and the rest is used for industry and domestic consumption. Fresh water is piped throughout most of the country, but shortages occur at times because of droughts and limited rainfall. Environmental problems have also arisen in Oman. For example, irrigation operations have caused soil conditions such as a salt buildup.

Oil tankers traveling through the Strait of Hormuz and along the coast in the Gulf of Oman have leaked oil, which has washed up on coastal areas where beaches are located. The higher level of exploitation of the environment by a growing population has exacted a toll on the organisms that live in the fragile desert ecosystems. Mammals, birds, and other organisms are in danger of extinction, including the Arabian leopard, the mountain gazelle, and the Arabian oryx. The country may lose its biodiversity unless action is taken toward preservation.

Yemen

Yemen is a mountainous country bordering Oman and Saudi Arabia. The tallest mountains on the peninsula—reaching more than 12,000 feet in elevation—are located here. The four main regions of Yemen are the eastern desert region of the Rub' al Khali; the Eastern Highlands south of the Rub' al Khali; the Western Highlands, which have the highest peaks; and the western coastal plains. The Western Highlands receives about 30 inches of rain per year, while the eastern desert received almost no rainfall. A number of volcanic islands are located off the coast. A volcano on one of the islands erupted as recently as 2007. This region is an extension of the rift valley system coming out of East Africa.



The highest peak in the Western Highlands is 12,028 feet in elevation.

The economy has traditionally been based on agriculture. Most of the farmland is in the form of terraces cut into the mountainsides that trap rainwater as it flows down the slope from one terrace to the next. Food production is a primary concern because in 2017 the population was more than 28 million and increasing rapidly. The arid land has few trees, but firewood is in high demand for cooking. The demand for firewood has caused deforestation, which in turn has caused serious soil erosion and damage to the mountain terraces that produce the food. Yemen is facing serious environmental concerns. The fast-growing population will only put more pressure on the environmental systems. On the positive side, oil and natural gas reserves are being found in some quantities, which will assist with the economic conditions and help supply the energy needed in the future.

Women in Yemen do not have the opportunities available in some of the more urbanized and modernized Gulf States. The contrast between the rural dynamics of Yemen and the urban culture of Dubai provides an example of a rural versus urban or a core versus

peripheral spatial relationship. The basic formula of family size and income levels applies to Yemen. According to the CIA World Factbook, in 2017, the estimated fertility rate declined to 3.63 from more than 7.0 in 2000. However, the rural-to-urban shift is causing cities within Yemen to grow at an increasing rate. The situation is only going to intensify, as the population of Yemen is projected to reach 60 million by 2050 at the current rate of increase.

Yemen has a democratically elected government that came about when North Yemen and South Yemen merged into one country to create a democratic republic in 1990. The population of Yemen is about 40 percent Shia and 60 percent Sunni. Yemen sided with Iraq and Saddam Hussein in the First Persian Gulf War in Kuwait, which resulted in Saudi Arabia expelling thousands of Yemeni workers.

Yemen and Saudi Arabia have had a long-standing territorial dispute and only recently agreed on the desert border between the two countries. As the lone democracy on the peninsula, Yemen contrasts with the more conservative Islamic states and monarchies such as Saudi Arabia that are more common in the Middle East. Poor, rural, and agriculturally based, Yemen does not fit the mold of the typical oil-rich sheikdom of the region.

Stability in Yemen is critical for the security of the regional waterways. In the past decade, piracy against ships off the coast of Somalia has increased, and many ships have been boarded and taken hostage by pirates demanding high ransoms for the release of the ship and crew. Security in the region is critical to support safe passage for international shipping activity through the Gulf of Aden and the Bab-el-Mandeb Strait.

Yemen experienced civil unrest and citizen protests in the spring of 2011 similar to those in the other Arab countries. The protests and demonstrations targeted political corruption, poor economic conditions, and high unemployment. During this time, the government was also looking to modify its constitution. The protesters shifted their focus to call for the president of Yemen to resign after 21 years in power. The president and government resisted, and the conflicts turned more serious. Clans not loyal to the president sided with the protesters, and the Yemeni president was seriously injured in a military clash. He was flown to Saudi Arabia for medical treatment. When the president recovered and returned to Yemen he still refused to step down. The country continues to adjust to the situation.



Sana’a, an ancient city, is the capital of Yemen and the largest city, with a population of more than two million people.

Key Takeaways

- The Arabian Peninsula is a desert region. The Rub’ al-Khali (Empty Quarter) provides an example of desert extremes. The mountains along the western and southern edges receive the most rainfall. There are no rivers or major lakes on the peninsula. Water, a resource that is vital to human activity, is scarce throughout the region.
- The export of oil and natural gas is what drives the economies of the region. Many of the states are working to diversify their economies with banking, free-trade zones, and even tourism.
- Yemen is the only country with a truly democratically elected government. Leaders of royal families rule in other countries as heads of state with varying degrees of shared governance.

- Family size varies widely in the region, from more than 4.5 in Yemen to around 2.5 in the progressive Gulf States of Qatar, the UAE, and Bahrain. Women's rights and opportunities have an inverse relationship with family size; that is, when women's rights and opportunities increase, family size usually decreases.
- In the Gulf States, the smaller countries in land areas are more open to promoting women's rights and responsibilities in the public and private sectors.

Applying Knowledge

Discussion and Study Questions

1. Where are the mountains located on the Arabian Peninsula? How high do they reach in elevation?
2. Why type of government does Saudi Arabia have? What is the law based on?
3. What are some things that women are not allowed to do in Saudi Arabia that they can do where you live?
4. Who are the Mutawa'een? When would one encounter them?
5. Who drilled the first offshore Kuwaiti oil well? Why is this significant?
6. What measures have the governments of Bahrain and Qatar taken to modernize their countries?
7. How has the emirate of Dubai been able to promote a globalized economy?
8. How does the term *Middle East Lite* apply to Bahrain?
9. How has the current sultan of Oman used his country's oil revenues?
10. Outline five differences between the emirate of Dubai and the country of Yemen.

Real-World Geography Exercise

Using Google Maps, locate each place on the list below. Next, find the closest city with an airport in proximity to each location. Calculate the distance and how long it would take to travel from Chicago O'Hare International Airport to each city.

- Arabian Sea
- Bab-el-Mandeb Strait
- Gulf of Aden
- Gulf of Oman
- Mecca
- Medina
- Persian Gulf
- Red Sea
- Rub' al-Khali
- Strait of Hormuz

Current Events

Geography Education Scoop It

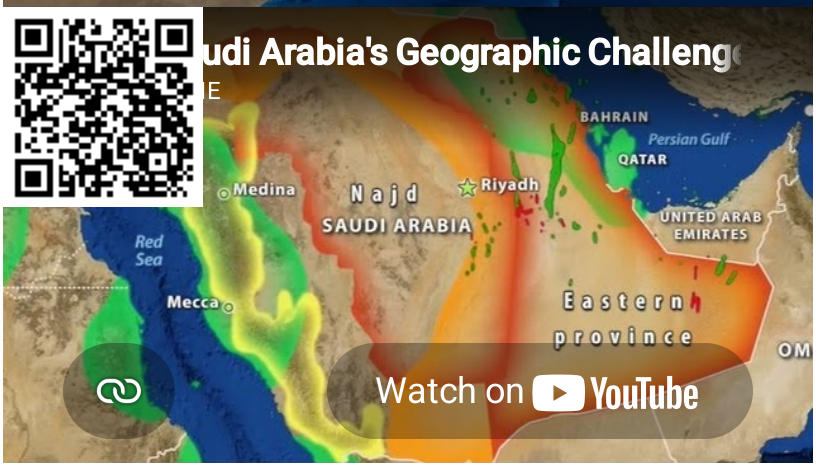
Traveling While Arab

Saudi King Salman Urges International Effort to Thwart Iran

Bolton Says Iran Is Likely Responsible for Oil Tanker Attack




Muscat
Nizwa
OMAN
Watch on YouTube


BAHRAIN
Persian Gulf
QATAR
Medina
Najd
Riyadh
SAUDI ARABIA
UNITED ARAB EMIRATES
Red Sea
Mecca
Eastern province
Watch on YouTube



Helpful Websites for the Study of Geography

Canadian Encyclopedia is an encyclopedia funded by the Canadian government covering all branches of knowledge. Their scholarly collection includes interactive materials.

CIA World Factbook provides information on the people, history, government, economy, energy, geography, communications, transportation, military, and transnational issues for the world's entities.

Congress.gov is a US government website where you can find federal legislation, past and present, as well as information about the US legal system.

Drug Enforcement Administration (DEA) is a government agency website that provides current news, resources, topics of interest, information about drugs, careers in the DEA, and a tip hotline.

Library of Congress is the largest library in the world and provides manuscripts, files, information, pictures, and videos.

NASA Earth Observatory (NEO) is a US government agency website that allows users to search for and retrieve satellite images of Earth.

National Archives is a US government website that provides historical documents, photos, records, publications, and educator resources.

National Oceanic and Atmospheric Association (NOAA) is a US government agency website that provides weather-related information and ocean research.

National Map is a website by the United States Geological Survey and other federal, state, and local agencies that delivers topographic information for the United States.

NationMaster is a massive central data source and a handy way to graphically compare nations.

Real-Time World Air Quality Index is a website that measures most locations in the world for air pollution in real time.

StateMaster is a unique statistical database, which allows you to research and compare a multitude of different data on US states.

United Nations (UN) is an international organization founded in 1945 and made up of 193 member states. The UN maintains international peace and security, protects human rights, delivers humanitarian aid, promotes sustainable development, and upholds international law.

United States Census Bureau is a US government agency that provides a population clock, data, surveys, statistics, a library with information and infographics, news about the economy, and much more.

United States Geological Survey (USGS) is a US government agency website that provides scientific information about the natural hazards that threaten lives, the natural resources we rely on, the health of our ecosystems and environment, and the impacts of climate and land-use change.

Whitehouse.gov is a US government website that provides the latest presidential news, information about the budget, policy, defense, and many more topics.

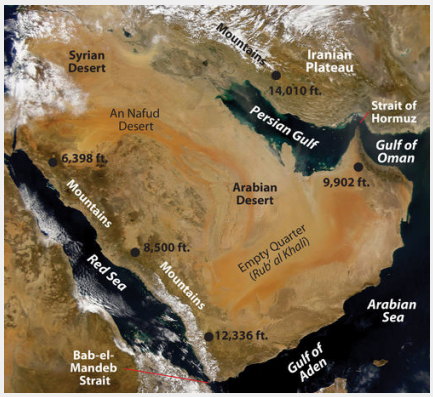
World Health Organization (WHO) is under the United Nations and provides leadership on matters critical to health, shapes the research agenda on health, and monitors the health situation and assessing health trends around the world. Their website provides information on the state of health around the world, outbreaks, current health news, and more.

LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

World Trade Organization (WTO) is an intergovernmental organization that regulates international trade. The website provides

LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

information on the history of the multilateral trading system, featured videos, news and events, trade topics, and more.

Image	Reference	Attributions
	[Figure 1]	**Credit:** Satellite image courtesy of NASA's Sea-viewing Wide Field-of-view Sensor project and John Nevard – public domain. **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/08d51ede4b1e33de7fa3bb4ac78df14b.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 2]	**Credit:** Map courtesy of University of Texas Libraries. **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/22929394ba52dcc6ae7eb4b6bef81fe7.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 3]	**Credit:** Wikimedia Commons – public domain. **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/b5a1ee91ddc6348cadb3f8c89f194576.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 4]	**Credit:** Photo courtesy of the White House – public domain. **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/43f0b62f34d69fde9219672551c7f71f.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

	[Figure 5]	**Credit:** Wikimedia Commons – public domain. **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/84dcf0573db5579eaa6786ae7b83d6d5.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 6]	**Credit:** Claus Wolf – Fast Food in Dammam – CC BY-NC-SA 2.0. **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/chapter/8-5-arabs-islam-and-oil/ **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 7]	**Credit:** Amina Tagemouati – Doha Cityscape – CC BY 2.0. **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/chapter/8-5-arabs-islam-and-oil/ **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 8]	**Credit:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeograp...islam-and-oil/ **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/52b58bf8694c62e0fd882619702196b3.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 9]	**Credit:** Wikimedia Commons – public domain. **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/1078ee8400bf4b1bcd88ec292519ba68.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

	[Figure 10]	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/6b6fcbfdb76cb5fc4a6fba5e8aab7e32.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 11]	**Credit:** Step – From atop the Gate, Sana'a Yemen – CC BY 2.0. **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/bb51a3a97010872558cd072b40ead7dc.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

This page titled 7.4: Arabs, Islam, and Oil (2 Days) is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by CK12 via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

7.5: Iraq, Turkey, and Iran (2 Days)

Chapter Challenges

1. Summarize Iraq's role in the Persian Gulf War and the Iraq War in 2003.
2. Understand how Iraq is divided ethnically and by the branches of Islam.
3. Explain why Turkey wants to be a member of the European Union (EU) and why it has not been accepted.
4. Outline Iran's physical geography and how it has used natural resources for economic gain.
5. Determine why young people might be dissatisfied with the policies of the Iranian government.

Learning Objectives

TEKS Regional Unit 7: Southwest Asia; Chapter 7.5

WG.6B Explain the processes that have caused changes in settlement patterns, including urbanization, transportation, access to and availability of resources, and economic activities.

WG.7D Examine benefits and challenges of globalization, including connectivity, standard of living, pandemics, and loss of local culture.

WG.8C Evaluate the economic and political relationships between settlements and the environment, including sustainable development and renewable/non-renewable resources. sustainable development and renewable/non-renewable resources.

WG.9A Identify physical and/or human factors such as climate, vegetation, language, trade networks, political units, river systems, and religion that constitute a region.

WG.10A Describe the forces that determine the distribution of goods and services in free enterprise, socialist, and communist economic systems.

WG.10D Compare global trade patterns over time and examine the implications of globalization, including outsourcing and free trade zones.

WG.12A Analyze how the creation, distribution, and management of key natural resources affects the location and patterns of movement of products, money, and people.

WG.13A Interpret maps to explain the division of land, including man-made and natural borders, into separate political units such as cities, states, or countries.

WG.14B Compare how democracy, dictatorship, monarchy, republic, theocracy, and totalitarian systems operate in specific countries.

WG.14C Analyze the human and physical factors that influence the power to control territory and resources, create conflict/war, and impact international political relations of sovereign nations such as China, the United States, Japan, and Russia and organized nation groups such as the United Nations (UN) and the European Union (EU).

WG.21C Create and interpret different types of maps to answer geographic questions, infer relationships, and analyze change.

WG.22B Generate summaries, generalizations, and thesis statements supported by evidence.

WG/22C Use geographic terminology correctly.

WG.22E Create original work using proper citations and understanding and avoiding plagiarism.

TEKS and ELPS for Regional World Geography Unit 07--Southwest Asia from TEKS Resource System

Iraq, Turkey, and Iran

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

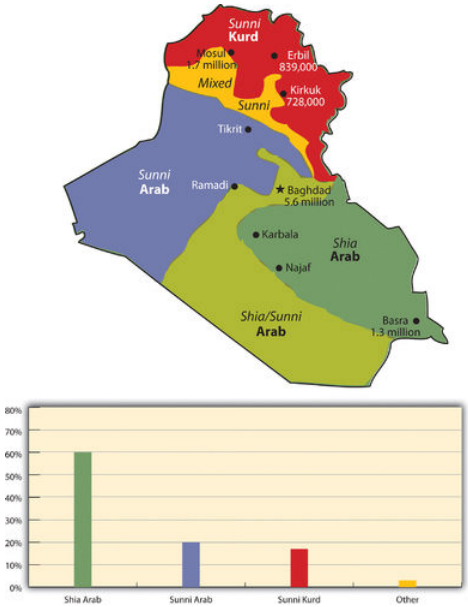
Iraq



The Tigris and Euphrates rivers and the Shatt al-Arab waterway between Iraq and Iran.

Iraq lies in the Fertile Crescent between the Tigris and Euphrates Rivers, where the ancient civilizations of Mesopotamia were established. Ancient cities such as Nineveh, Ur, and Babylon were located here. Present-day Iraq and Kuwait were established out of the British Mandate territory gained following Britain's defeat of the Turkish Ottoman Empire. Britain established straight-line political boundaries between Iraq and Jordan, Syria, and Saudi Arabia.

These types of boundaries are called geometric boundaries because they do not follow any physical feature. In 1961, when Britain withdrew from the region, the emir controlling the southern region bordering the Persian Gulf requested that Britain separate his oil-rich kingdom as an independent country. This country became Kuwait, and the rest of the region became Iraq. After a series of governments in Iraq, the Baath party came to power in 1968, paving the way for Saddam Hussein to gain power in 1979.



The two ethnic divisions are Arab and Kurd. The two religious divisions of Islam are Shia and Sunni. Karbala and Najaf both have holy sites for Shia Muslims.

Iran-Iraq War (1980–88)

In 1980, a disagreement arose over the Shatt al-Arab waterway in the Persian Gulf on the border between Iraq and Iran, and the feud led to war between the two countries. The people of Iran are not Arabs; their ethnic background is Persian. Most Iranians are Shia Muslims. Saddam Hussein and his Baath party were Arabs and Sunni Muslims. Ethnic and religious differences thus fueled the conflict.

The Shatt al-Arab waterway was quickly filled with wrecked ships. The local battle escalated into an all-out war, which ended in 1988 without anyone declaring a victory. The Iran-Iraq War was as close to World War III as the world has ever seen, with more

than a million casualties and a cost of more than one 100 billion dollars. World powers aligned themselves with one side or the other. Before the war, the Iranian government had been taken over by Islamic fundamentalists who opposed the US intervention in the region. Therefore, in the Iran-Iraq War, the United States supported Hussein and provided him with industrial supplies and materials.

The Persian Gulf War (1990–91)

After the Iran-Iraq War, Saddam Hussein looked to Kuwait to gain new oil wealth and expand access to the Persian Gulf. By taking over Kuwait, Iraq would gain an excellent port on the Persian Gulf and earn more income from oil reserves. Hussein accused Kuwait of slant drilling oil wells along the Iraqi border and removing oil that was legally Iraq's. It was common knowledge that both sides were engaged in this practice, but it was the excuse Hussein needed to invade Kuwait and reclaim it as the 19th province of Iraq.

In 1990, the Iraqi military invaded and occupied Kuwait. Though the world community opposed this action, it was not until Hussein nationalized all the oil assets of the international oil corporations that resistance was organized. Under the leadership of US president George H. W. Bush, the United Nations (UN) organized a military coalition to remove Hussein from Kuwait.

On January 16, 1991, Operation Desert Storm began. After 45 days of fighting, Iraq was overwhelmingly defeated and its military was ousted from Kuwait. This was a major victory for the coalition. It was during this time that President Bush publicly announced the emergence of the potential New World Order. Kuwait was not a democracy but a monarchy ruled by an emir.

When it became evident that Hussein would lose Kuwait, his forces dynamited all the oil facilities and set all the oil wells in Kuwait on fire. His position was that if he could not have the oil, then nobody would. This was one of the worst environmental catastrophes regarding oil on record. Oil flowed into the Persian Gulf and covered the water's surface up to three feet thick. Most mammals, birds, and organisms living on the water's surface died. Oil flowed out onto the desert sand into large petroleum lakes. The air pollution caused by burning oil wells dimmed the sun and caused serious health problems.

Ethnic and Cultural Divisions

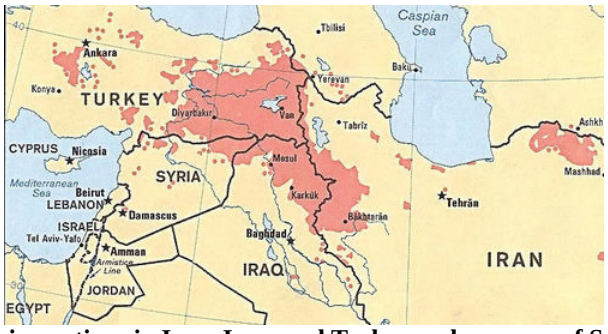
To keep Iraq from breaking apart after Operation Desert Storm, coalition forces allowed Hussein to remain in power. Ethnically and religiously, Iraq is divided into three primary groups that generally do not get along. Sunni Arabs dominate central Iraq in a region often referred to as the Sunni Triangle, which includes the three cities of Baghdad, Tikrit (Hussein's hometown), and Ramadi.

Sunnis were the most loyal to the Hussein government. Southeastern Iraq is dominated by Arabs who follow the Shia division of Islam, which is also followed by most of Iran's population. A group that is ethnically Kurdish and follows the Sunni division dominates northern Iraq. Kurds are not Arabs or Persians; rather, they originated from northern Europe centuries ago with their own religion, language, and customs. Many have converted to Islam.

Hussein was a Sunni Muslim, and when he was in power, he kept the other two groups under his power. He used chemical weapons on the Kurds during the Iran-Iraq War. In 1988, he used chemical weapons on the Kurdish town of Halabja and killed about 10 percent of the 80 thousand who lived there. Thousands of Kurds died in other attacks, and thousands more continue to suffer serious health effects.

After Operation Desert Storm, Hussein pushed the Kurds north until the UN and the United States restricted him at the 36th parallel, which became a security zone for the Kurds. The Arab Shia population in the south often clashed with Hussein's military in an attempt to gain more political power, and Hussein subjected them to similar harsh conditions and treatment.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org



Future Kurdistan would be the main portions in Iran, Iraq, and Turkey and a corner of Syria. The city of Diyarbakir in Turkey would be the Kurdish capital city.

The Arab Shia population in the southeast makes up most of the Iraqi people. The two main cities of Karbala and Najaf contain holy sites for Shia followers worldwide. The Shia population is three times larger than the Kurdish population in Iraq. More Kurds live outside Iraq than live in Iraq. The Kurds are the largest nation of people in the world without a country. About 25 million Kurds live in the Middle East, and most—about 14 million—live in Turkey. About eight million Kurds live in Iran, about seven million live in Iraq, and a few others live in neighboring countries. At the 1945 conference of the UN, they petitioned to have their own country called Kurdistan carved out of Iran, Iraq, and Turkey, but they were denied.

The Iraq War (2003–11)

After the September 11, 2001 attack on the United States, there was a renewed interest in weapons of mass destruction (WMD). Knowing that Hussein had used chemical weapons on the Kurds, the Iranians, and the Shia, there was a concern that he would use them again. UN Weapons inspectors in Iraq never could confirm that Hussein retained WMD. They had been destroyed, moved out of Iraq, or hidden. US president George W. Bush decided to invade Iraq in 2003 to remove Hussein from power. In the invasion, Hussein's two sons were killed and Hussein was captured. One aspect of the invasion plan was to use Iraq's vast oil reserves to help pay for the cost of the war, which quickly ballooned to more than a billion dollars a week. Fundamentalist Islamic insurgents made the war difficult.

The US invasion of Iraq brought about the removal of the Baath Party from power and Iraq came under a military occupation by a multinational coalition. An Iraqi Interim Government was formed that assumed sovereignty in 2004. A new constitution was drafted and approved by vote of the Iraqi people. Elections were held and a new government was formed under the newly drafted constitution.

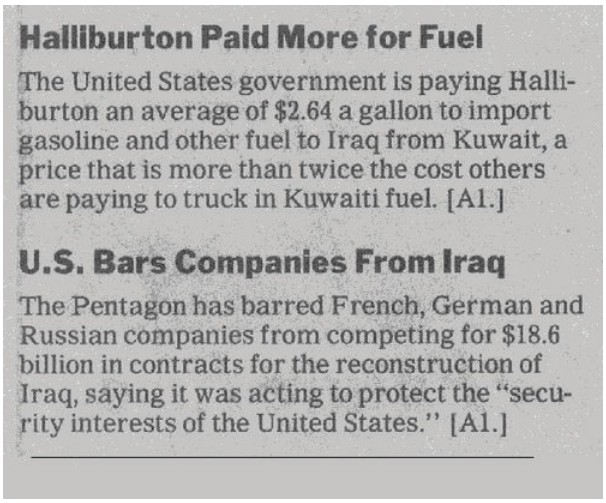
Occupying troops continued to remain as the country struggled to adapt to the reforms. Insurgencies developed that brought about an increase in violence that peaked in about 2007. By 2010, the combat operations by occupying troops were ending and the country worked to sustain stable political conditions. Under an agreed upon mandate, all combat troops were to withdraw as of the end of 2011. A number of US troops are to remain in Iraq in an advisory capacity.



The United States invaded Iraq in 2003 and removed Saddam Hussein from power.

Resources and Globalization

In geographic terms, the Persian Gulf War and the Iraq War were wars over resources—namely, oil. Wars have historically been fought over territory and resources. When the United States invaded in 2003, Hussein was contracting billions of dollars worth of projects to oil companies in France, Russia, and China. Other support projects were contracted out to other European countries. When the United States invaded, the contracts with were summarily canceled, and British and US oil contractors took over the projects.



Halliburton Paid More for Fuel

The United States government is paying Halliburton an average of $2.64 a gallon to import gasoline and other fuel to Iraq from Kuwait, a price that is more than twice the cost others are paying to truck in Kuwaiti fuel. [A1.]

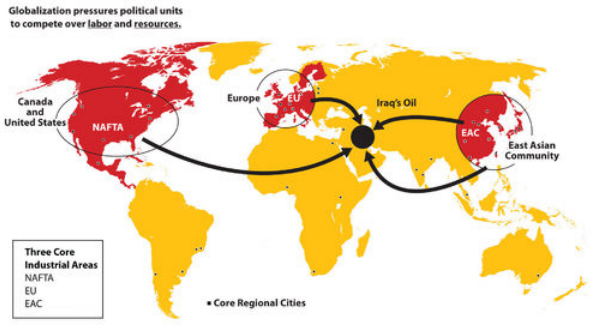
U.S. Bars Companies From Iraq

The Pentagon has barred French, German and Russian companies from competing for $18.6 billion in contracts for the reconstruction of Iraq, saying it was acting to protect the "security interests of the United States." [A1.]

After the US invasion, many of the contracts Iraq had with other countries were canceled.

Iraq is an example of the second wave of globalization. Neocolonialism has been the dominant force in Iraq's economy since before the Persian Gulf War. Industrialization requires high energy demands. Therefore, the industrialized countries of the world consume energy on a massive scale. Iraq is not a core economic country, but it holds vast petroleum reserves, making it vulnerable to exploitation by industrialized core countries.

The Persian Gulf War, initiated in response to Iraq's invasion of Kuwait, can be traced directly to globalism. It was Britain that established the straight-line borders separating Kuwait and Iraq. The war over the control of Kuwait in 1991 was a war over the control of resources, just as the ongoing competition between Sunni Muslims and Shia Muslims, for example, is a competition for the control of political power or resources and not a competition related to ethnic principles.



The East African Community (EAC) is not an official organization but a core economic area.

Hussein proved to be a destabilizing force and a potential threat to the established so-called New World Order of global security and trade as outlined by US president George H. W. Bush. The removal of Hussein from power brought to the surface the competition between the trilateral powers of North America, Europe, and East Asia. It remains to be seen who will have control of or access to Iraq's natural resources.

Politics, Oil Companies, and the Administration of US President George W. Bush

There are many connections between the administration of former US president George W. Bush and the international oil industry. Bush once owned the failed Texas oil company Arbusto Energy and was president of Spectrum 7 Energy Corporation, which bought out Arbusto. Bush was also on the board of Harken Energy Corporation when it bought out Spectrum 7 Energy. Bush's father,

former US president George H. W. Bush, owned the Zapata Oil Company, which drilled the first offshore Kuwaiti oil well and later merged to become Pennzoil. US vice president Dick Cheney was CEO of Halliburton, the world's most extensive oil service company. Commerce Secretary Donald Evans was former CEO of Tom Brown Inc., an independent oil and gas company based out of Denver. Secretary of State Condoleezza Rice was a Chevron Corporation board member and had an oil supertanker named after her—the Condoleezza Rice. The former US secretary of state under former president George H. W. Bush (Sr.) was James Baker III, who had been a central attorney for an oil consortium building one of the largest oil pipelines in Central Asia. President George W. Bush appointed Zalmay Khalilzad, a former aide to the American oil company UNOCAL, as special envoy to Afghanistan, then as ambassador to Iraq, and then to the UN.



This photo depicts vice president Dick Cheney and secretary of state Condoleeza Rice during the US presidential administration of George W. Bush.

The globalized economy forces political units to compete over valuable resources, which often results in the blending of those in leadership roles in the corporate world with those in positions of power in the political arena. The top personnel in the George W. Bush administration (2001–9) is an example of the relationships that develop between corporate leaders and political leaders. In this case, the relationship centered on the oil industry.

Turkey

Turkey is the only remaining country of the vast Ottoman Empire, which ruled the region for 700 years (1299–1923 C.E.). When the empire was at its peak in the 16th and 17th centuries, it controlled parts of Europe, North Africa, the Middle East, and Arabia. Located on the Bosporus—the straits that connect the Black Sea with the Mediterranean Sea—the ancient city of Constantinople was the capital of the Ottoman Empire. Called Istanbul today, this city is the largest in Turkey, but it is not the current capital. Turkey moved its capital to Ankara on the Anatolian Plateau, which is centrally located in Turkey.

Turkey has a small portion of its land area on the western side of the Bosporus to claim its connection to Europe. Most of Turkey's land area is a part of the Asian continent, and Turkey has often been referred to as Asia Minor. Mountains on Turkey's eastern border with Armenia include Mount Ararat, which is the highest peak in the country at 16,946 feet in elevation. Legend has it that Mount Ararat was the resting place of the legendary Noah's ark.

The people of Turkey are neither Arab nor Persian; they are Turkish and speak the Turkish language. As much as 90 percent of the Turkish population is Sunni Muslim, which is similar to many of the other Muslim countries in the Middle East.



The map shows the portion of Turkey in Europe to the west, the central Anatolian Plateau, the Euphrates and Tigris Rivers, and Mount Ararat on the Armenian border.

Turkey is an established secular democracy with a democratically elected leadership. To maintain its democracy, it has had to deal with Islamic fundamentalists, who have supported a shift to an Islamic religious state. Turkey has also had to negotiate with its neighbors, Syria and Iraq, over water rights to the Tigris and Euphrates Rivers. The rivers originate in Turkey but flow through the other countries. Turkey has built dams on these rivers, which restricts the flow of water to their neighbors. This has resulted in many conflicts over water as a shared resource.

Turkey borders northern Iraq. In 2017, the estimated population was almost 81 million people of which 70-75 percent were Turkish and 19 percent were Kurds. The Kurdish claim of a homeland in eastern Turkey has not been recognized by the Turkish government. Open rebellion has been expressed by Kurdish groups wishing to become independent of Turkey, but the Turkish government has suppressed any movement toward independence.

Many Kurds have migrated to Istanbul in search of work. They live and work in Istanbul and send money back to their families in eastern Turkey. The large city of Diyarbakir in eastern Turkey is predominantly Kurdish and is considered by many Kurds as the city that would be their capital if they had their own country of Kurdistan.



The capital city of Turkey is Ankara, which is located in the center of the country.

Turkey is a member of the North Atlantic Treaty Organization (NATO) and has been a US ally. The United States has been allowed to have military bases in Turkey, which were helpful in Operation Desert Storm during the First Persian Gulf War. In spite of being allies, Turkey did not allow the US military to use these bases as direct invasion points when the United States invaded Iraq in 2003. The Iraq War is a major concern for Turkey since Turkey has a major stake in the stability of the Middle East.

Possessing a small portion of its land area in Europe and being a member of NATO provides Turkey with an opening to join the European Union (EU). So far it has been denied membership, mainly because of Turkey's controversial human rights record, conflicts with the Kurds, disagreements with Greece over Cyprus, and low economic indicators. Conditions are improving, and at some future point, Turkey may have an opportunity to join the EU.

To date, the EU does not have an Islamic country in its membership; Turkey may be the first. The country has various ways of gaining wealth that could help support Europe's other industrial activities. Turkey grows large quantities of food in the central Anatolian Plateau. Vast fields of grain extend across this central plateau. Turkey also has oil resources in the east and minerals in the mountains bordering Armenia and Georgia.

Cyprus

The island of Cyprus in the eastern Mediterranean Sea is officially a part of Europe and a member of the EU. The island is separated by the Green Line, which is monitored by the UN. The Green Line divides the Greek south from the Turkish north. The two sides have been separated since a civil war in 1974. Turkish groups in the north have declared their half of the island the independent Turkish Republic of Northern Cyprus. Turkey is the only country that recognizes this proclamation. The rest of the world considers the whole island the Republic of Cyprus.



The island of Cyprus is divided by the Green Line, which is monitored by the UN. Turkish Cypriots control the north and have declared it the Turkish Republic of Northern Cyprus. Greek Cypriots control the southern half of the island. The whole island is considered one country by the UN, which does not recognize the Turkish Cypriots' claim to independence.

Iran

Iran covers a physical area larger than the US state of Alaska. It is a land of mountains and deserts. Iran's central and eastern regions are mainly desert with few inhabitants, and the northern and western regions of the country are mountainous. The Elburz Mountains in the north around the Caspian Sea reach as high as 18,000 feet in elevation near the capital city of Tehran.

The Zagros Mountains run along the border with Iraq and the Persian Gulf for more than 900 miles and can reach elevations greater than 14,000 feet. Similar to the Atlas Mountains in the Maghreb, Iran's mountains trap moisture, allowing minor agricultural activities in the valleys. Most of Iran's population lives in cities along the mountain ranges. Qanats—systems of shafts or wells along mountain slopes—bring water from the mountains to the valleys for irrigation and household use.

Persian Empire to Islamic Republic



This map illustrates the 2010 population estimates for the ethnic triangle of the Middle East, with Egypt, Turkey, and Iran anchoring each corner.

Iran was once the center of the Persian Empire, which has its origins as far back as 648 B.C.E. The country was called Persia until 1935. The Ethnic Triangle of the Middle East consists of Persians in Iran, Turks in Turkey, and Arabs in Arabia. Most of the 70 million people in Iran are Persian. Iran has a long history with the ancient Persian Empire and the various conquering armies that followed it.

During the rise of Islam, Iran had major contributions to the arts, mathematics, literature, philosophy, and science. The highly advanced carpet-weaving traditions from centuries past are but one example of the advancements in design and the technical expertise of the people. The country's Persian identity and culture continued throughout the centuries under different ruling powers. The Persian language remains and is a branch of the Indo-European language family. Arabic is widely used as a second language and a language used in science, which was helpful in reaching a broader audience and reaching out to the community with academic and scientific findings.



This map illustrates the main mountains and desert areas in Iran.

In 1971, Iran celebrated the 2,500th anniversary of Persia's first monarchy. The monarchy was ruled by a shah, which is a title for the sovereign leader in Iran similar to a king. The shah's royal family ruled Iran from 1923 to 1979, when Islamic fundamentalists took control of the government. It was during this revolution on November 4, 1979, that Ayatollah Ruhollah Khomeini, who had previously been exiled by the shah, urged Iranians to oppose US activities in Iran. Iranian students stormed the US embassy and took US citizens hostage. Fifty-two Americans were held for 414 days during the US presidency of Jimmy Carter.

The hostages were released the day that US President Ronald Reagan took office. Khomeini indicated he had not been aware of the students' plan but supported it. This is one reason the United States backed Saddam Hussein in the Iran-Iraq War of the 1980s. Khomeini ruled Iran until his death in 1989. Since then, Iran has been an Islamic state with an ayatollah as the Supreme Leader. An ayatollah is a high-ranking Shia cleric that is an expert in the Islamic faith and the Sharia (Muslim code of law based on the Koran). There are cases where women have reached the same status as an ayatollah and known as *Lady Mujtahideh*. Approximately 90 percent of Iran's population follows the Shia division of Islam.

Political Challenges

On the international front, Iran's leadership has indicated a drive to develop nuclear weapons and use them against Israel. This has caused concern in the global community. The government of Iran does not recognize the legitimacy of the nation of Israel. US president George W. Bush included Iran, along with Iraq and North Korea, in his 2002 Axis of Evil speech. The focus of this speech is about the lack of democratic freedoms and the restrictive measures of the Islamic fundamentalist government.

Iran is similar to Saudi Arabia in its restrictions of civil rights. A number of countries including the United States have placed trade sanctions against Iran regarding any materials associated with nuclear weapons or missiles. The US sanctions extend to an almost total trade embargo against Iran stemming from the 1979 revolution.

Protests demanding change have periodically erupted in the streets of Tehran. Ultimately, protesters are seeking personal freedoms and a more open society. The Arab Spring of 2011 was a phenomenon that spread across North Africa, the Arabian Peninsula, and the Middle East. Iran was not immune from the impact of the protests and demonstrations that occurred in their neighboring countries, but Iran was different.

First of all, Iranians are not Arab but Persian in their ethnicity. Their history and heritage create a distinct identity that separates them from the rest of the region. Many Iranian citizens want the same outcomes that the protesters and demonstrators want in the countries experiencing the Arab Spring revolutions. The difference is that Iranians have been demonstrating and protesting issues with their government in the years before 2011.

Political tensions in Iran have been high since the 2009 elections and even earlier. During the 2009 election in Iran, students and other individuals used the Internet, Twitter, and cell phones to organize a massive protest against the current president and in

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

support of opposition candidates. The demonstrations were called the Twitter Revolution.



During the 2009 election in Iran, students and other individuals used the Internet, Twitter, and cell phones to organize a protest against the current president and in support of opposition candidates. The demonstrations were called the Twitter Revolution.

Iran is at a crossroads in the conflict between conservative Islamic fundamentalists and Islamic reformers. The government of the Islamic state is controlled by Muslim clerics who tend to be more conservative in their rulings, but the young people are mainly on the side of the democratic reformers. Young people are becoming more familiar with Western culture. For example, the unofficial holiday of Valentine's Day has become extremely popular in Iran and is celebrated by a large sector of the population, mainly young people.

In an effort to curb the influence of Western culture, on February 13, 2011, the government of Iran officially banned all symbols or activities associated with Valentine's Day. One claim was that the day was named after a Christian martyr and therefore was not supportive of Islam.

Economic Resources

Iran has abundant oil and natural gas reserves that form the base of its economy. The UN has classified Iran's economy as semi-developed. The government has taken control of the oil and natural gas industry and implemented a type of central planning over many major businesses. Small-scale agriculture and village trading activities are not usually owned by the government. The Caspian Sea provides for fishing and has oil reserves under the seabed. Oil and gas revenues make up most of the state's income. However, fluctuations in commodity prices have resulted in a more volatile income stream, and Iran's manufacturing base has been increasing to support a more diversified economy.

Key Takeaways

- Iraq was ruled by Saddam Hussein from 1979 to 2003. Iraq invaded Kuwait in 1990, which prompted the First Persian Gulf War. Hussein's use of weapons of mass destruction provoked the US invasion in 2003, which eventually removed Hussein from power.
- The majority Arab population in Iraq shares the country with the Kurds in the north. Sunni and Shia groups have divided the country and opposed each other since the US invasion of 2003.
- Turkey has a relatively stable, democratically elected government. Turkey's physical geography provides for large supplies of food crops and hydroelectric energy.
- Iran is a religious state that has often been at war or clashed with its Middle Eastern neighbors. Reformers and many young people in Iran would like to see the country become more democratic and more open to personal freedoms.

Applying Knowledge

Discussion and Study Questions

1. Name three reasons Iraq gave for invading Kuwait in 1990. Why did the United States get involved in this war?
2. What are the three main geographic regions of Iraq? What groups are the majorities in each region?
3. Why was Saddam Hussein allowed to stay in power after Operation Desert Storm?

4. Why did the United States invade Iraq in 2003? What was one plan to finance the war?
5. Where are the two main mountain chains located in Iran? How do they support agriculture?
6. What three ethnic groups form an Ethnic Triangle that dominates the Middle East?
7. Why were protesters demonstrating in the streets of Tehran?
8. Where do Kurds hope to establish the proposed country of Kurdistan? When was the hope of establishing Kurdistan first proposed to the UN?
9. What economic group does Turkey want to join? What factors are keeping Turkey from joining this group?
10. Why are there conflicts in Iran over such things as Valentine's Day? What was the Twitter Revolution about?

Real-World Geography Exercise

1. Using Google Maps, complete the following activities:
   a. Locate each place on the bulleted list below.
   b. Find the nearest city with an international airport in proximity to each location on the bulleted list below.
   c. Calculate the distance and travel time by plane to each city from the Dallas/Ft. Worth International Airport.
2. Using NASA Latitude and Longitude Finder, determine the latitude and longitude for each location on the bulleted list below.
3. Be prepared to share and discuss your answers.

- Anatolian Plateau
- Bosporus
- Caspian Sea
- Cyprus
- Diyarbakir
- Elburz Mountains
- Euphrates River
- Karbala
- Kurdistan
- Najaf
- Shatt al-Arab
- Tigris River
- Zagros Mountains

Current Events

Geography Education Scoop It

Mardin's Assyrians, The Epitome of Multicultural Society

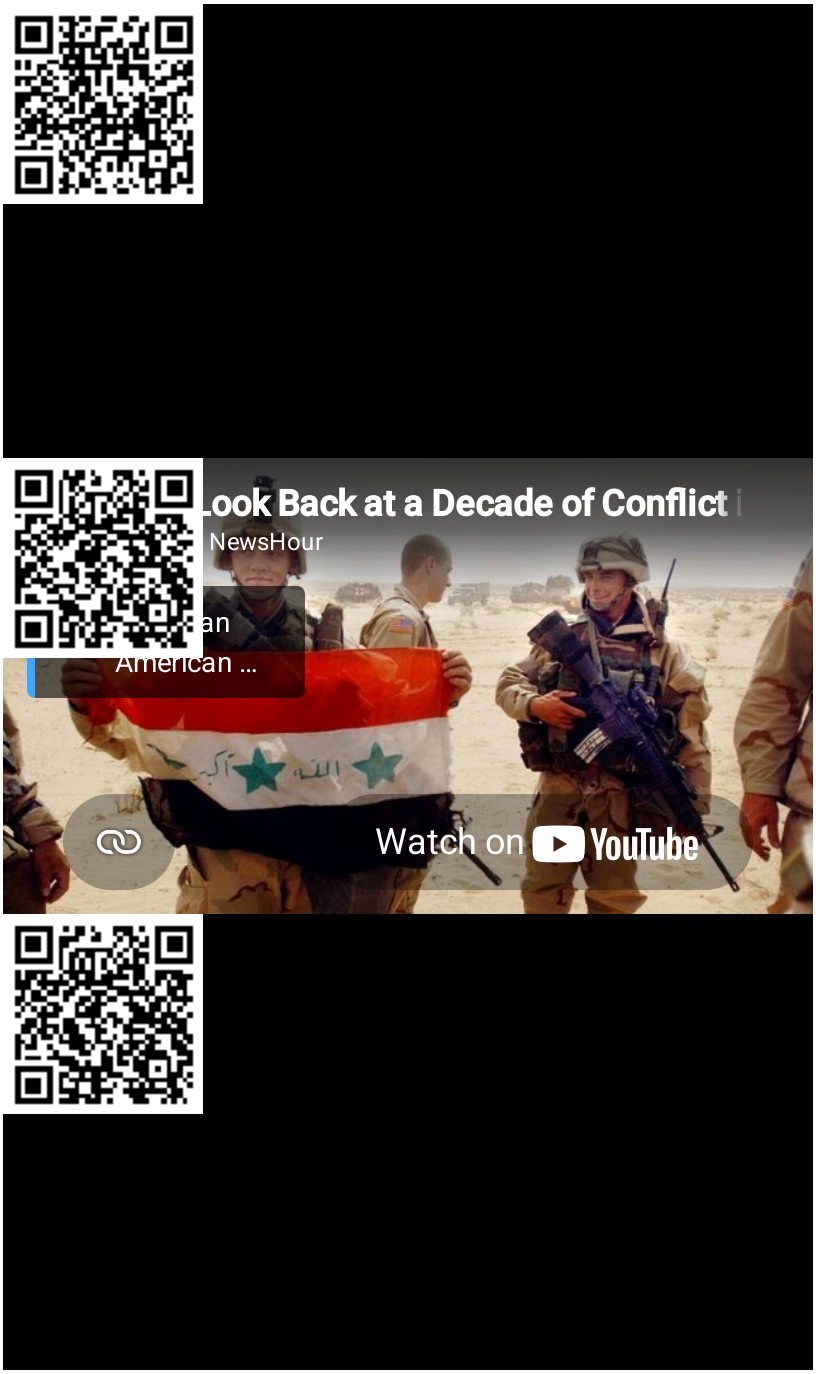
Beer History

Study: Christian Population in the Middle East is Dropping Rapidly

Turkey's New Maps are Reclaiming the Ottoman Empire

Gay Activists in Turkey

10 Years after the Invasion of Iraq: The Human Cost


Look Back at a Decade of Conflict i
NewsHour
an
American ...
Watch on YouTube



Helpful Websites for the Study of Geography

Canadian Encyclopedia is an encyclopedia funded by the Canadian government covering all branches of knowledge. Their scholarly collection includes interactive materials.

CIA World Factbook provides information on the people, history, government, economy, energy, geography, communications, transportation, military, and transnational issues for the world's entities.

Congress.gov is a US government website where you can find federal legislation, past and present, as well as information about the US legal system.

Drug Enforcement Administration (DEA) is a government agency website that provides current news, resources, topics of interest, information about drugs, careers in the DEA, and a tip hotline.

Library of Congress is the largest library in the world and provides manuscripts, files, information, pictures, and videos.

NASA Earth Observatory (NEO) is a US government agency website that allows users to search for and retrieve satellite images of Earth.

National Archives is a US government website that provides historical documents, photos, records, publications, and educator resources.

National Oceanic and Atmospheric Association (NOAA) is a US government agency website that provides weather-related information and ocean research.

National Map is a website by the United States Geological Survey and other federal, state, and local agencies that delivers topographic information for the United States.

NationMaster is a massive central data source and a handy way to graphically compare nations.

Real-Time World Air Quality Index is a website that measures most locations in the world for air pollution in real time.

StateMaster is a unique statistical database, which allows you to research and compare a multitude of different data on US states.

United Nations (UN) is an international organization founded in 1945 and made up of 193 member states. The UN maintains international peace and security, protects human rights, delivers humanitarian aid, promotes sustainable development, and upholds international law.

United States Census Bureau is a US government agency that provides a population clock, data, surveys, statistics, a library with information and infographics, news about the economy, and much more.

United States Geological Survey (USGS) is a US government agency website that provides scientific information about the natural hazards that threaten lives, the natural resources we rely on, the health of our ecosystems and environment, and the impacts of climate and land-use change.

Whitehouse.gov is a US government website that provides the latest presidential news, information about the budget, policy, defense, and many more topics.

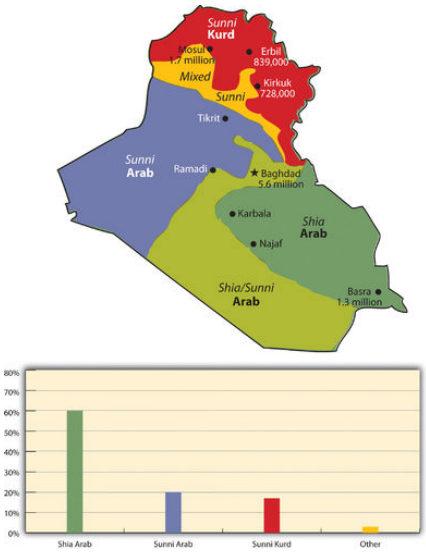
World Health Organization (WHO) is under the United Nations and provides leadership on matters critical to health, shapes the research agenda on health, and monitors the health situation and assessing health trends around the world. Their website provides information on the state of health around the world, outbreaks, current health news, and more.

World Trade Organization (WTO) is an intergovernmental organization that regulates international trade. The website provides information on the history of the multilateral trading system, featured videos, news and events, trade topics, and more.

References

Infoplease, “Greatest Natural Gas Reserves by Country, 2006,” http://www.infoplease.com/ipa/A0872966.html.

http://www.opec.org/opec_web/static_files_project/media/downloads/publications/ASB2010_2011.pdf.

Image	Reference	Attributions
	[Figure 1]	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/002d10c4e3563cc1eb2dfc5a6e56298d.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 2]	**Credit:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeograp...rkey-and-iran/ **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/993946d9dae41e0ad870547fc9fe8cdb.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 3]	**Credit:** Map courtesy of University of Texas Libraries. **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/5fa063527875642fa60e0d76b7394e9c.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 4]	**Credit:** US Department of Defense – public domain. **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/fa2448d0eba32353c495647b8e9f5cb7.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0



Halliburton Paid More for Fuel

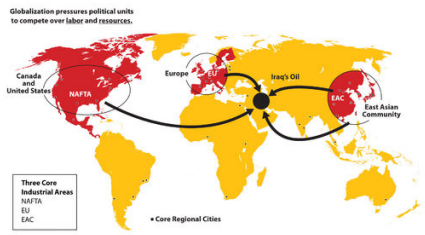
The United States government is paying Halliburton an average of $2.64 a gallon to import gasoline and other fuel to Iraq from Kuwait, a price that is more than twice the cost others are paying to truck in Kuwaiti fuel. [A1.]

U.S. Bars Companies From Iraq

The Pentagon has barred French, German and Russian companies from competing for $18.6 billion in contracts for the reconstruction of Iraq, saying it was acting to protect the "security interests of the United States." [A1.]

[Figure 5]

Credit: New York Times, December 10, 2003.
Source: http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/9cb3bbcb468b783e683897f4014261b5.jpg
License: CC BY-NC 3.0



[Figure 6]

Credit:
Source: http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeograp...rkey-and-iran/
http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/b95ccbaece2f1a2cd24e6bb50b849302.jpg
License: CC BY-NC 3.0



[Figure 7]

Credit: Photo courtesy of the White House – public domain.
Source: http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/5d5686ecafd3bae517b5d769b1d48623.jpg
License: CC BY-NC 3.0



[Figure 8]

Credit: cia world factbook
Source: http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/dd1bcc2ad20fed68ce03acd58a8d6f82.jpg
License: CC BY-NC 3.0

	[Figure 9]	**Credit:** Jeremy Vandel – Blue Mosque – CC BY-NC-ND 2.0. **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/deffe232219e372eb208d27785de83c0.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 10]	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/052220e8174f83a77a7f6756a83e0e2a.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 11]	**Credit:** Updated from map courtesy of University of Texas Libraries. **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/7e08fb717d6803167b212e53e7684cb1.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 12]	**Credit:** Updated from map courtesy of University of Texas Libraries. **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/865cc5196e382939c57c756081f0c714.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

	[Figure 13]	**Credit:** Wikimedia Commons – CC BY 2.0. **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/800px-6th_Day_-_Mousavi_inside_the_Crowd.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

This page titled 7.5: Iraq, Turkey, and Iran (2 Days) is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by CK12 via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

8: Africa (10 days)

8.1: Africa- Introducing the Realm (1 Day)
8.2: North Africa and the African Transition Zone (1 day)
8.3: Human Geography of Sub-Saharan Africa (2 Days)
8.4: West Africa (2 Days)
8.5: Central Africa (1 Day)
8.6: East Africa (1 Day)
8.7: Southern Africa (2 Days)

Thumbnail: Orthographic map of Africa with colonial borders, except Somalia. (CC BY-SA 3.0; Martin23230 via Wikipedia)

This page titled 8: Africa (10 days) is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by CK12 via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

8.1: Africa- Introducing the Realm (1 Day)

Chapter Challenges

1. Summarize the basic geography of Sub-Saharan Africa.
2. Identify the African Transition Zone, including the transitions that are occurring in the zone. Locate the main features on a map.
3. Understand how early kingdoms flourished in Sub-Saharan Africa before the colonial era. Identify how selective groups in these kingdoms participated in the supply operations for the slave trade.
4. Explain how European colonialism divided up Africa and the role the Berlin Conference played in the colonization process in Africa.
5. Outline how countries have transitioned from colonies to independent nations, including the many issues involved in this transition.

Learning Objectives

TEKS Regional Unit 08 Africa; Chapter 8.1 Introducing the Realm

WG.2A Describe the human and physical characteristics of the same regions at different periods of time to evaluate relationships between past events and current conditions.

WG.4C Explain the influence of climate on the distribution of biomes in different regions.

WG.5A Analyze how the character of a place is related to its political, economic, social, and cultural elements.

WG.11B Identify the factors affecting the location of different types of economic activities, including subsistence and commercial agriculture, manufacturing, and service industries.

WG.13A Interpret maps to explain the division of land, including man-made and natural borders, into separate political units such as cities, states, or countries.

WG.13B Compare maps of voting patterns or political boundaries to make inferences about the distribution of political power.

WG.14A Analyze current events to infer the physical and human processes that lead to the formation of boundaries and other political divisions.

WG.16D Compare life in a variety of urban and rural areas in the world to evaluate political, economic, social, and environmental changes.

WG.17A Describe and compare patterns of culture such as language, religion, land use, education, and customs that make specific regions of the world distinctive.

WG.17B Describe major world religions, including Animism, Buddhism, Christianity, Hinduism, Islam, Judaism, and Sikhism, and their spatial distribution.

WG.18A Analyze cultural changes in specific regions caused by migration, war, trade, innovations, and diffusion.

WG.18B Assess causes, effects, and perceptions of conflicts between groups of people, including modern genocides and terrorism.

WG.18C Identify examples of cultures that maintain traditional ways, including traditional economies.

WG.21A Analyze and evaluate the validity and utility of multiple sources of geographic information such as primary and secondary sources, aerial photographs, and maps.

WG.21B Locate places of contemporary geopolitical significance on a map.

WG.22A Design and draw appropriate graphics such as maps, diagrams, tables, and graphs to communicate geographic features, distributions, and relationships.

WG.22C Use geographic terminology correctly.

Africa: Introducing the Realm

There is a lot of variation in how the regions of Sub-Saharan Africa are identified on maps. The debate is not about what regions are in Sub-Saharan Africa but rather about which countries are to be included within each region. The regions have both similarities and differences. The cultural geography varies widely from country to country and from one ethnic group to another. There are also shared cultural patterns across all Sub-Saharan African regions. For example, colonialism has been a major historical factor in the shaping of the countries. Families are large, and the rapid rural-to-urban shift is occurring in all regions. Every region has large urban centers. They are often port cities that act as central core locations supported by a large peripheral rural hinterland.

Globalization has entered into the dynamics connecting these once-remote regions with the rest of the world. Advancements in communication and transportation technology have created networks connecting Africa with global markets. Sub-saharan Africa has a young population seeking to gain from opportunities or advantages. The political arena is dynamic because of changes in political leadership through coups or military takeovers.

Sub-Saharan Africa is home to some of the poorest countries in the world. Poverty is evident in the countryside and in the urban slums of the largest cities. Bitter civil wars are a part of every region's history. Violence and conflicts continue in some areas, while other areas exhibit political stability and thriving economies. The diversity in human geography is the most noteworthy dynamic in Sub-Saharan Africa. The variety of ethnic groups along with many languages and religions create strong centripetal and centrifugal forces.

Most of the population live an agrarian lifestyle. However, there are people who are developing the skills necessary to adapt to the rapid globalization that is importing new technology and new ideas to the continent. The urban core areas of the continent are the main focus of global trends in technology and communication. These urban core areas exhibit the dynamics of the core-periphery spatial relationship. Sub-Saharan Africa has many core areas and many peripheral areas. The core urban centers have political power because of the social elites who have connections to the global economy.



Africa is divided into regions along traditional boundaries.

These core urban areas attract people with large families from rural peripheral areas seeking employment. Millions of people in Africa who seek employment migrate to the cities or even other countries to find work. These immigrants are often not of the same ethnic group as those in power. Because of the inequalities, immigrants are at a disadvantage because of governmental discriminatory policies.

These dynamics can fuel protest activities with a goal of overthrowing the powerful elite. Various ideas have been proposed to help the move towards equality. One of the most favored options is the implementation of a democratic government, where citizens have

a vote.

Patterns and dynamics of people and places are repeated throughout the Sub-Saharan realm. The regions share common demographic trends of large family sizes, agrarian lifestyles, and low-income levels. The patterns of an economy based on agricultural production and mineral extraction as well as disruptive changes in political leadership are common. Each region has diverse ethnic groups and many different languages.

Christianity and Animism are the most common religions practiced south of the African Transition Zone. Whereas, Islam is widespread north of the zone. Division and civil unrest occur frequently because of the different belief systems struggling for political power. The culture of Sub-Saharan Africa is vast and complex.

Physical Geography of Sub-Saharan Africa

The African Transition Zone divides North Africa from the rest of Africa because of climatic and cultural dynamics. Dry, arid type B climates, common in the Sahara Desert, are dominant north of the zone. Tropical type A climates prevail south of the zone. Global climate changes continue to shape the continent.

The shifting sands of the Sahara are slowly moving southward toward the tropics. Desertification in the zone continues as natural conditions and human activity place pressure on the region through overgrazing and the lack of precipitation. Type B climates resurface again south of the tropics in the southern latitudes. The Kalahari and Namib Deserts are located in Southern Africa, mainly in the countries of Botswana and Namibia.

For a continent as large as Africa, Sub-Saharan Africa does not have extended mountain ranges comparable to the ranges in North America, South America, Europe, Asia, or the Antarctica. However, on the Ethiopian Highlands, the Ethiopian Plateau has an elevation as high as 15,000 feet. East Africa has a number of well-known volcanic peaks that are high in elevation. The tallest point in Africa—Mount Kilimanjaro in Tanzania near the border with Kenya—is 19,340 feet high. Nearby in Kenya**,** Mount Kenya is 17,058 feet high. The Rwenzori Mountains on The Congo/Uganda border reach more than 16,000 feet in elevation and create a rain shadow effect for the region.

Permanent glaciers exist on these ranges even though they are near the equator. On the western side of the continent, Mount Cameroon in Central Africa is more than 13,000 feet in elevation. The South Africa's Cape Ranges are low-lying mountains no higher than about 6,000 feet. The continent of Africa consists of basins and plateaus without long mountain chains. The only continuous feature is the eastern rift valleys that run along the tectonic plate boundaries from the Red Sea through to South Africa.



Africa has many scenic areas and many national parks set aside as game preserves, which have become major tourist attractions for world travelers.

The main rivers of Africa include the Nile, Niger, Congo, and Zambezi. The Nile River competes with the Amazon for the status as the longest river in the world. The White Nile branch begins in Lake Victoria in East Africa, and the Blue Nile branch starts in Lake Tana in Ethiopia. The Niger begins in Nigeria and flows through West Africa. The Congo River crosses the equator with a large tropical drainage basin that creates a flow of water second only to the Amazon in volume. The Zambezi River in the south is famous for the extensive Victoria Falls on the Zambia and Zimbabwe border. Victoria Falls is considered the largest waterfall in the world. Other significant rivers exist such as the Orange River, which makes up part of the border between South Africa and Namibia.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

There are a number of large lakes in Sub-Saharan Africa. The largest is Lake Victoria, which borders several East African countries and is considered to be the second-largest lake in the world in surface area. Only Lake Superior in North America has a greater surface area. A number of large lakes are located in the rift valleys of the east. Three of the largest lakes along the western rift are Lake Malawi, Lake Tanganyika, and Lake Albert. To the northeast of these in Kenya is Lake Turkana, which reaches to the Ethiopian border. Lake Chad is located in the African Transition Zone on the border between Chad, Mali, and Nigeria. Lake Chad has been severely reduced in size in recent years.



Fishers return with tilapia at Ggaba Landing Site, Lake Victoria, Uganda

The equator runs through the center of Sub-Saharan Africa, providing tropical type A climates. These regions usually have more rainfall, resulting in lighter, leached-out soils that may not be as productive as regions with richer volcanic soils, such as those found in the rift valleys. Root crops are common in Africa, as are millet and corn.

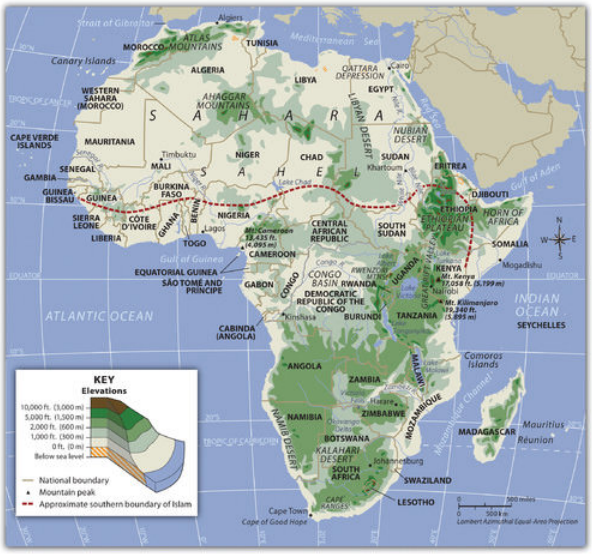
The savanna regions of the east and south have seasonal rains that affect the growing season. Soils in savanna areas are usually not as productive and cannot be depended on for the agricultural needs of growing populations. Savannas are usually grasslands or scrub forests with a seasonal precipitation pattern. Cattle and livestock grazing are common in savannas, and cattle migration follows the seasonal grazing conditions.

In specific areas of Southern Africa, larger farming operations exist in type C climates. However, Sub-Saharan Africa does not have large regions of rich alluvial soils found in the Northern Hemisphere. The ever-growing agrarian population has always depended on the land for food and sustenance, but these conditions are not favorable for Africa's future. Populations are growing faster than any increase in agricultural production.

Increasing populations in Sub-Saharan Africa are depleting the natural environment. Deforestation is occurring in areas where firewood is in high demand and trees are cut down faster than they can grow back. Expanding human populations are also encroaching on the natural biodiversity for which the African continent is renowned.

Animals such as rhinoceroses, elephants, and lions have been hunted to near extinction. The creation of game preserves and national parks has stemmed this tide, but poaching remains a serious problem even in these protected areas. Gorilla and chimpanzee populations have also been stressed by human population growth. These animals are being killed by humans for bush meat, and their habitats are being reduced by human activities.

LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org



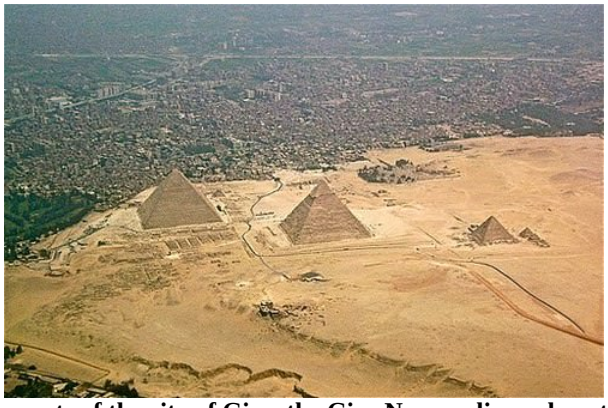
Sub-Saharan Africa does not have long mountain chains such as those found in the other continents. The Nile, Congo, and Niger Rivers are the main waterways. The Namib and Kalahari are the main deserts south of the African Transition Zone. The Great Rift Valleys are the longest physical features in East Africa.

Nile River Civilization

Human civilization also emerged along the Nile River valley of what is now Egypt. The pyramids and the Sphinx in the Giza Plateau just outside Cairo stand testimony to the human endeavors that took place here. Spring flooding of the Nile River brought nutrients and water to the land along the Nile Valley. The land could produce excess food, which subsequently led to the ability to support a structured, urbanized civilization.

The Nile River is the "lifeblood" of the region. In the fifth century B.C.E., the ancient Greek historian Herodotus suggested that Egypt was “the gift of the Nile.” The dating for the beginning of the civilization along the Nile River is often in question, but Egyptologists estimate the first dynasty ruled both Upper and Lower Egypt around 3100 B.C.E. Upper Egypt is in the south and Lower Egypt is in the north because the Nile River flows north. The terms “Upper” and “Lower” refer to elevation.

Geologists, using the erosion patterns of the Sphinx, estimate that it was constructed about 10,000 B.C.E. The ability of humans to harness the potential of the environment set the stage for technological advancements that continue to this day. The Egyptian civilization flourished for thousands of years and gave birth to a legacy that influenced their neighbors in the region, who benefited from their advancements



From north to south: parts of the city of Giza, the Giza Necropolis, and part of the Giza plateau.

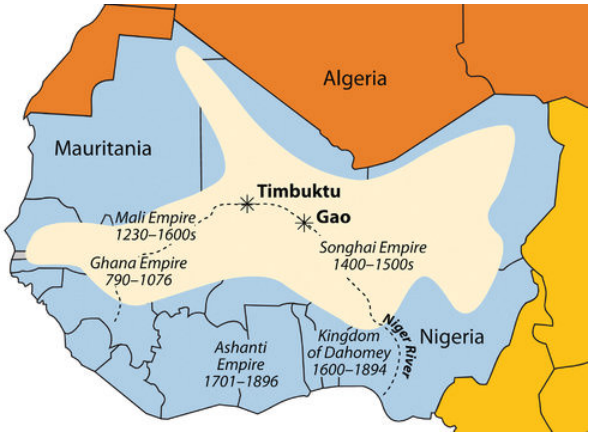
The human activities that created the civilizations in Mesopotamia and along Egypt’s Nile River gave humanity a rich heritage to help us understand our history. Many of our legends, stories, and myths have their origins in these cultures. Their cultural developments provided the basis for much of the Western world’s religious beliefs and early philosophical ideas.

https://k12.libretexts.org/@go/page/1962

The engineering feats needed to create the magnificent temples and pyramids have by themselves been studied and analyzed over the centuries. They give modern scientists and scholars a reason to pause and recognize the high level of organization and structure that went into developing and managing these civilizations. Various aspects of science and the arts were being developed by these ancient people. Writing, mathematics, engineering, and astronomy were becoming highly advanced. Artifacts such as clay tablets and hieroglyphs are still being discovered and interpreted. They shed additional light on the advancements of these civilizations and their contribution to our human civilization.

Kingdoms, Empires, and the Slave Trade

West Africa was home to a number of large empires that shaped the culture and people of present-day Africa. The Ghana Empire (790–1076 C.E.) was responsible for one of the early consolidations of power in West Africa. Though its power and wealth were vast, it was only the first of a number of empires to arise in the region. After the Ghana Empire came the Mali Empire (1230–1600 C.E.), which was known for its wealth and size. The empire held major mining operations including gold, copper, and salt. Expanding along the Niger River and to the Atlantic coast, the Mali Empire extended over an area the size of Western Europe. Originally a federation of local groups, the empire incorporated many smaller provinces or kingdoms and had a major influence on the region's laws and cultural heritage.



The main empires of West Africa are indicated on this map. The shaded region indicates the furthest expanse of the Songhai Empire at its peak in the 16th century.

One of the indigenous states that evolved out of the Mali Empire was that of the Songhai people, who were located to the east of the main Mali Empire. The Songhai had been based around the city of Gao for centuries. In the 15th century, they established the Songhai Empire, one of the largest empires in African history. The city of Timbuktu became prominent during this period as an urban center, and its educational institutions became well known. In the end, the Songhai Empire was defeated by Moroccan Berber forces that splintered the empire into many smaller kingdoms and ethnic clans.

South of the empires of the Niger River were coastal kingdoms, including the Ashanti and the Dahomey, which flourished during the colonial era. The local African groups had to contend with the colonial European traders and invaders, which had superior weapons and different technology. Besides the mining resources of gold, copper, salt, and ivory, the slave trade was a driving force that attracted trade ships from various European countries.

The Ashanti Empire was located along the Atlantic coast in an inland region of what is now Ghana and Ivory Coast. This area served as a trading corridor where goods from the northern regions crossed to make their way to the coastal trading towns. The Ashanti Empire took advantage of the trade opportunities and became wealthy. By the time the Europeans arrived, Ashanti trade relationships were well established and capable of supplying the colonial ships with slaves, ivory, and gold. The coastal area of Ghana was known as the Gold Coast during colonial times. Similarly, the country of Ivory Coast (Côte d'Ivoire) got its name from its participation in the elephant ivory trade.

This region of West Africa bordering the Atlantic was called the Slave Coast because of the high number of local people from this area who were sold into the European slave trade and shipped to the Americas. The once powerful Kingdom of Dahomey, east of the Ashanti Empire, was heavily involved in the slave trade. Slave trading with Europeans brought them rifles and other firearms that were useful in conflicts with their enemies. A major slave state along the Slave Coast, the kingdom became hated for selling its

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

war captives into transatlantic slavery rather than killing them, as was the custom in warfare. The Kingdom of Dahomey became the country of Benin after the colonial era.

The slave trade brought wealth to many of the slave-trading kingdoms on the African coast. The demand for slaves pushed many of the African kingdoms to expand their slave-trading activities, capturing more individuals whom they could sell to European slave traders. Millions of Africans were captured by other Africans to be sold into slavery, placed on ships, and sent to slave owners in the Americas. The total number sold into the Atlantic slave trade will never be known, but estimates range between 10 and 12 million.



Slaves kept for shipment were held in dungeons awaiting the arrival of the slave ships. This was the last doorway that slaves from Elmina, Ghana, saw on their way from the dungeon to the slave ship.

States and kingdoms existed throughout Sub-Saharan Africa. Early kingdoms flourished in the region that is now Ethiopia. East Africa's Axum Empire was an example of the powers of the early African savanna kingdoms located in the east.

The struggles between Islam and Christianity divided the region and gave way to the African Transition Zone, which serves as the dividing line between the two religions. Ethiopia has retained its Christian heritage, while to the north and east Islam has prevailed.

South of the equator, the ruins of Great Zimbabwe give testimony to the regional base of power that existed there in centuries past. The Zulu Empire thrived in the 19th century in the region that is now South Africa.

Colonialism in Sub-Saharan Africa

Wherever you go in the world, the impact of European colonialism is evident. Sub-Saharan Africa was broadly affected by colonial activities, the legacy of which can be recognized to this day. Colonial powers of Europe ventured into Africa to claim colonies. Many African groups were instrumental in capturing and holding slaves to trade with the European merchants.

By 1900, European colonial powers had claimed most of Africa. Only the Kingdom of Ethiopia and the area of Liberia, which was established as a home for freed slaves, remained independent. In 1884, Otto von Bismarck of Germany hosted the Berlin Conference, which to a great degree determined how Africa was colonized. This conference included 14 colonial European countries and the United States, and its purpose was to divide Africa and agree on colonial boundary lines.

Germany had few claims in Africa. Bismarck was hoping to benefit by playing the other countries against each other. At the time, more than 80 percent of Africa remained free of colonial control. On a large map of Africa, claims were argued over and boundary lines were drawn according to European agreements.

There was little regard for the concerns of local ethnic groups. Colonial boundaries divided communities into separate colonies. Ethnic boundaries were disregarded. Often-warring groups were placed together in the same colony. The Europeans, seeking profits from cheap labor and resources, did not consider the local people or culture and often employed brutal measures to subdue the local

people. Most of the current borders in Africa are a result of the Berlin Conference, and many of the geopolitical issues that confront Africa today can be traced back to this event specifically and to colonialism in general.

European colonialism remained strong in Africa until the end of World War II, which left many European countries economically depleted. In 1945, the United Nations (UN) was established. One of the primary UN objectives was to oversee the decolonization of European colonies. However, colonialism in Sub-Saharan Africa lingered on. It was not until the 1990s that the last colony was finally freed.

The transition from colonies to independent nations created conflict. Civil wars were fought over who would be in power after the Europeans left. The transition to full independence has exacted a heavy toll from African countries but has resulted in stronger political structures and greater democratic liberties in many cases. The first country to gain independence in Sub-Saharan Africa was Ghana in 1957.

During the era of independence after World War II, the Cold War between the United States and the Soviet Union enticed many of the African countries to support one or the other of the superpowers. The political pressure that divided African countries during the Cold War has persisted and is the basis of some of the current political problems. The European countries extracted raw materials and minerals from their African colonies, as well as slave labor.

Varying degrees of attention were given to education, medical care, and infrastructure development. The dependency that a colony had on a European country for economic income in some cases continued long after independence and currently continues. On the other hand, major technology transfers from Europe to Africa infused greater efficiencies into Africa's economic activities. Colonialism and the Cold War did bring about, in an unfortunate manner, the benefits of structured governments and greater democratic processes for many areas of the realm.



European Colonies in Africa, 1884

https://k12.libretexts.org/@go/page/1962



The Independence Arch in Accra, Ghana, built to commemorate Ghana's independence. The national motto, Freedom and Justice, is boldly inscribed at the top of the arch.

The transition from European colony to an independent state has not necessarily been a civil transition for African countries. Likewise, independent African countries have struggled to create stable governments or peaceful conditions—though stable governments and peaceful conditions have been established in some cases. In nearly all cases, removing the colonial powers from Africa was only half of the battle toward independence. The other half was establishing a functional, effective government.

Though each country has taken a slightly different path, most former colonies have endured civil unrest, conflict, or warfare in their push for stable governments. Coups, fraudulent elections, military regimes, and corruption have plagued the leadership in a number of African countries. Civil unrest usually precedes a change in leadership, and political power regularly changes hands by a military coup or an overthrow of the current leader.

The realm has had difficulty developing and maintaining effective political systems with democratic leadership. Political leaders have come and gone, many have been replaced before their terms were over, and a few have stayed long after their terms ended. When a leader is elected democratically, it is common to have widespread accusations of corruption, voter fraud, or ballot box scandals. Such government mismanagement and corruption have been common problems.

After the colonial era, it was not uncommon for new leaders to be connected to the old colonial power and to adopt the language and business arrangements of the European colonizer. This gave them an advantage over their competitors and provided a means of income gained by the support of their former European colonial business partners. The colonial business partners often wanted to keep ties with their former colonies to continue to profit from their resources. Many of these leaders stayed in power because of military backing or authoritarian rule funded by the profits from selling minerals or resources to their former colonial masters.

A few countries are still struggling to bring about some type of order and unity. However, there have been democratic and relatively stable progressive governments in Africa that have emerged from the transition in recent years. This is a hopeful trend for the future.

It is important to note that the objective of colonialism was to connect a colony with the homeland, not to connect African countries to each other. The legacy of this paradigm is that there is little cooperation between African countries today. Each individual country interacts more with its European colonial counterpart with regard to trade, economics, and cultural dynamics.

European colonialism isolated African countries from each other. Colonial powers often built new port cities to extract goods and resources from their colonies. They also developed transportation systems from the new ports to the interior to collect the resources and bring them back to the port. However, the colonial powers did not build a network of transportation systems that connected the region as a whole.

The current wave of globalization based on corporate colonialism continues to encourage the same pattern of discouraging interaction between countries in Africa. Instead, there is a concentration on trading with more economically powerful non-African countries. Most of the interaction between countries is a result of crisis or warfare, in which case large numbers of refugees cross the border into neighboring countries for personal survival or security.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

To begin to work together and promote trade, common transportation, security, and industry, 15 West African states came together in 1975 to create the Economic Community of West African States (ECOWAS). Since then, additional political and economic agreements have been signed by various African countries. In 2001, the more expansive African Union was created to help African states compete in the international marketplace.

Key Takeaways

- Sub-Saharan Africa includes the African Transition Zone and the regions south of the Sahara. The African Transition Zone is a transitional zone between type A and type B climates and between the religions of Islam and Christianity.
- Sub-Saharan Africa is a realm of plateaus and basins with four main river systems. Mountain ranges, volcanic peaks, and large lakes are found in or along the rift valleys of eastern Africa. The rift valleys were created by tectonic activity.
- Before the colonial era, many African kingdoms dominated regions of Sub-Saharan Africa. West Africa had a number of great kingdoms. Kingdoms along the coast contributed to the slave trade.
- European countries colonized almost the entire realm of Sub-Saharan Africa. European powers made agreements during the 1884 Berlin Conference to divide the realm and create boundary lines between their African colonies. Many of the lines remain as the current borders today.
- Colonies were designed to provide labor and resources to the homeland. Port cities, transportation systems, and other infrastructure were implemented to benefit the imperial power without regard for the development of the colony.
- African colonies received independence after World War II. The transition from colonies to independent countries has been plagued by civil war, political chaos, or economic devastation.

Vocabulary Terms

Chapter 8.1 Introducing the Realm

	A meeting of European Nations in 1884-1885 at which countries agreed on the rules in colonizing Africa. The Europeans did not take into account existing boundaries and/or ethnic divisions.
	White water rapids that can also include waterfalls
	Tropical rain forest located in Central Africa. The Congo River runs through this basin.
	The largest lake in Africa, it is the source of the Nile River
	Africa's tallest peak, a volcano located in Tanzania
	A valley created by the moving apart of tectonic plates. This exists in East Africa.
	Largest desert in the world measuring over 3,000 miles across Northern Africa
	Flat, grassy, mostly treeless plains located in the tropical regions of Africa

Applying Knowledge

Interactive Notebook Activities

1. Determine which of the countries in Sub-Saharan Africa are now experiencing civil war or national unrest over political leadership.
2. Analyze which countries of the realm have the most stable governments.

Discussion and Study Questions

1. What are the main boundaries that define Sub-Saharan Africa?
2. Where is the African Transition Zone? What are the main transitions that this zone represents?
3. What geological phenomenon has created the rift valleys of the east? What physical geographic features are found here?
4. What are some of the general environmental issues that can be found throughout the realm of Sub-Saharan Africa?
5. Name the African kingdoms that were involved in the supply of humans for the European slave trade.
6. How did imperial powers in Africa cultivate their colonies' dependence on the mother countries?
7. When did the colonies in Sub-Saharan Africa gain their independence?
8. What has been the usual pattern of transition from colonies to independent countries?
9. What country was the first in Sub-Saharan Africa to gain its independence? In what year did it gain independence?
10. How are the Sub-Saharan African countries continually isolated from their neighbors in the global economy?

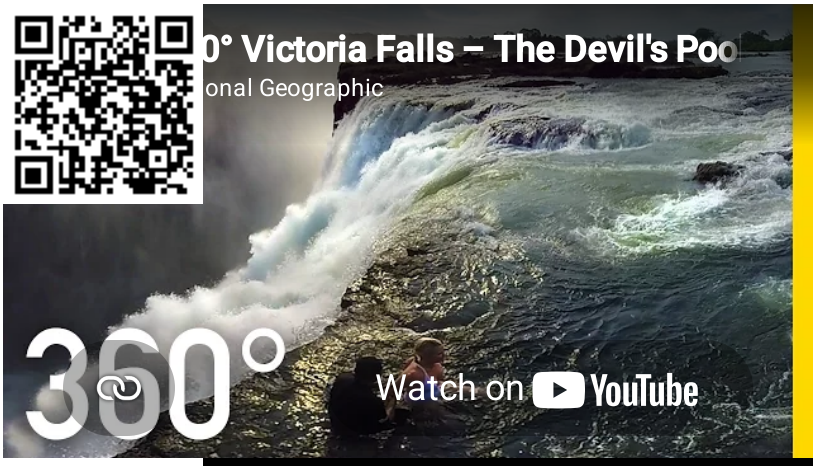
Real-World Geography Exercise

1. Using Google Maps, complete the following activities:
    a. Locate each place on the bulleted list below.
    b. Find the nearest city with an international airport in proximity to each location on the bulleted list below.
    c. Calculate the distance and travel time by plane to each city from the Denver International Airport.
2. Using NASA Latitude and Longitude Finder, determine the latitude and longitude for each location on the bulleted list below.
3. Be prepared to share and discuss your answers.

- African Transition Zone
- Blue Nile
- Cape of Good Hope
- Cape Ranges
- Central Africa
- Congo River
- East Africa
- Ethiopian Plateau
- Kalahari Desert
- Lake Albert
- Lake Chad
- Lake Malawi
- Lake Tana
- Lake Tanganyika
- Lake Turkana
- Lake Victoria
- Madagascar
- Mt. Cameroon
- Mt. Kilimanjaro
- Namib Desert
- Niger River
- Rwenzori Mountains
- Southern Africa
- Timbuktu
- Victoria Falls
- West Africa
- White Nile
- Zambezi River

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

Videos for Geography Enrichment







Helpful Websites for the Study of Geography

Canadian Encyclopedia is an encyclopedia funded by the Canadian government covering all branches of knowledge. Their scholarly collection includes interactive materials.

CIA World Factbook provides information on the people, history, government, economy, energy, geography, communications, transportation, military, and transnational issues for the world's entities.

Congress.gov is a US government website where you can find federal legislation, past and present, as well as information about the US legal system.

Drug Enforcement Administration (DEA) is a government agency website that provides current news, resources, topics of interest, information about drugs, careers in the DEA, and a tip hotline.

Library of Congress is the largest library in the world and provides manuscripts, files, information, pictures, and videos.

NASA Earth Observatory (NEO) is a US government agency website that allows users to search for and retrieve satellite images of Earth.

National Archives is a US government website that provides historical documents, photos, records, publications, and educator resources.

National Oceanic and Atmospheric Association (NOAA) is a US government agency website that provides weather-related information and ocean research.

National Map is a website by the United States Geological Survey and other federal, state, and local agencies that delivers topographic information for the United States.

NationMaster is a massive central data source and a handy way to graphically compare nations.

Real-Time World Air Quality Index is a website that measures most locations in the world for air pollution in real time.

StateMaster is a unique statistical database, which allows you to research and compare a multitude of different data on US states.

United Nations (UN) is an international organization founded in 1945 and made up of 193 member states. The UN maintains international peace and security, protects human rights, delivers humanitarian aid, promotes sustainable development, and upholds international law.

United States Census Bureau is a US government agency that provides a population clock, data, surveys, statistics, a library with information and infographics, news about the economy, and much more.

United States Geological Survey (USGS) is a US government agency website that provides scientific information about the natural hazards that threaten lives, the natural resources we rely on, the health of our ecosystems and environment, and the impacts of climate and land-use change.

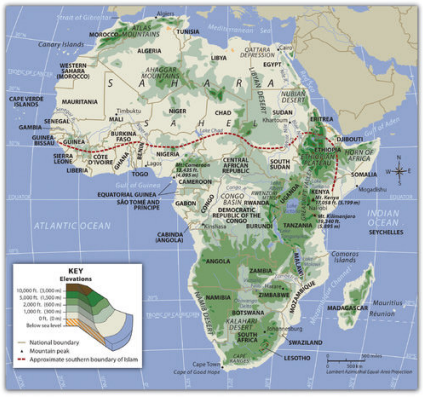
Whitehouse.gov is a US government website that provides the latest presidential news, information about the budget, policy, defense, and many more topics.

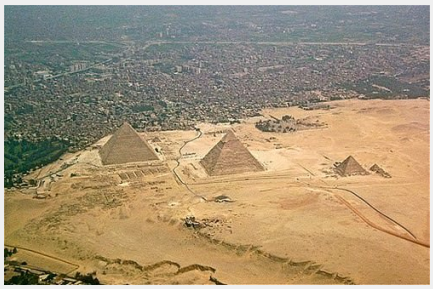
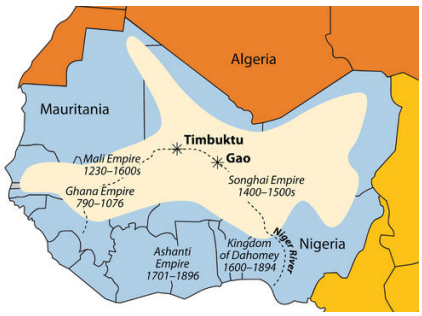
World Health Organization (WHO) is under the United Nations and provides leadership on matters critical to health, shapes the research agenda on health, and monitors the health situation and assessing health trends around the world. Their website provides information on the state of health around the world, outbreaks, current health news, and more.

World Trade Organization (WTO) is an intergovernmental organization that regulates international trade. The website provides

https://k12.libretexts.org/@go/page/1962

information on the history of the multilateral trading system, featured videos, news and events, trade topics, and more.

Image	Reference	Attributions
	[Figure 1]	**Credit:** https://2012books.lardbucket.org/boo...the-realm.html **Source:** https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/regional-geography-of-the-world-globalization-people-and-places/section_10/3143975c4dcf5ad0663ca8cbca8dee63.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 2]	**Credit:** https://2012books.lardbucket.org/boo...the-realm.html **Source:** https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/regional-geography-of-the-world-globalization-people-and-places/section_10/dd9784e7f1ee57d4f450573b3150b498.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 3]	**Credit:** By sarahemcc (Fishing Boats at Ggaba Landing Site, Lake Victoria) [CC BY 2.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/2.0)], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Ugandan_fishing_boats.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 4]	**Credit:** https://2012books.lardbucket.org/boo...an-africa.html **Source:** https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/regional-geography-of-the-world-globalization-people-and-places/section_10/206cc16af844203913e26f82bf70889c.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

	[Figure 5]	**Credit:** Robster1983 at English Wikipedia [CC0], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Giza-pyramids.JPG **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 6]	**Credit:** https://2012books.lardbucket.org/boo...the-realm.html **Source:** https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/regional-geography-of-the-world-globalization-people-and-places/section_10/da094e8e3843234a7b825f6e047cc298.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 7]	**Credit:** https://2012books.lardbucket.org/boo...the-realm.html **Source:** https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/regional-geography-of-the-world-globalization-people-and-places/section_10/318acae3468da3d64933c5f1e792db0f.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 8]	**Credit:** https://2012books.lardbucket.org/boo...the-realm.html **Source:** https://i.pinimg.com/originals/30/be/d3/30bed3ac4ade857d5d5b423020450093.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

This page titled 8.1: Africa- Introducing the Realm (1 Day) is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by CK12 via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

8.2: North Africa and the African Transition Zone (1 day)

Learning Objectives

1. Summarize the historical geography of North Africa, identify the major physical features and the main cities, and understand who the people are and where most of the population lives in the region.
2. Understand the unique geographic qualities of the Maghreb and explain how this region is connected to Europe.
3. Outline the political issues in North Africa and understand the transitions and conflicts occurring in the governments of the region.
4. Describe the main qualities of the African Transition Zone and explain how the dynamics of this zone are affecting the country of Sudan.

Learning Objectives

TEKS Regional Unit 08 Africa: Chapter 8.2 North Africa and the African Transition Zone

WG.1A Analyze the effects of physical and human geographic patterns and processes on the past and describe their impact on the present, including significant physical features and environmental conditions that influenced migration patterns and shaped the distribution of culture groups today.

WG.2A Describe the human and physical characteristics of the same regions at different periods of time to evaluate relationships between past events and current conditions.

WG.2B Explain how changes in societies have led to diverse uses of physical features.

WG.4B Describe different landforms and the physical processes that cause their development.

WG.5A Analyze how the character of a place is related to its political, economic, social, and cultural elements.

WG.6A Locate and Describe human and physical features that influence the size and distribution of settlements.

WG.10C Compare the ways people satisfy their basic needs through the production of goods and services such as subsistence agriculture versus commercial agriculture or cottage industries versus commercial industries.

WG.11A Understand the connections between levels of development and economic activities (primary, secondary, tertiary, and quaternary).

WG.11B Identify the factors affecting the location of different types of economic activities, including subsistence and commercial agriculture, manufacturing, and service industries.

WG.13A Interpret maps to explain the division of land, including man-made and natural borders, into separate political units such as cities, states, or countries.

WG.14A Analyze current events to infer the physical and human processes that lead to the formation of boundaries and other political divisions.

WG.15B Explain how citizenship practices, public policies, and decision making may be influenced by cultural beliefs, including nationalism and patriotism.

WG.16B Describe elements of culture, including language, religion, beliefs and customs, institutions, and technologies.

WG.16C Explain ways various groups of people perceive the characteristics of their own and other cultures, places, and regions differently.

WG.17A Describe and Compare patterns of culture such as language, religion, land use, education, and customs that make specific regions of the world distinctive.

WG.21C Create and Interpret different types of maps to answer geographic questions, infer relationships, and analyze change.

WG.22A Design and draw appropriate graphics such as maps, diagrams, tables, and graphs to communicate geographic features, distributions, and relationships.

WG/22C Use geographic terminology correctly.

WG.22D Use standard grammar, spelling, sentence structure, and punctuation.

TEKS and ELPS for Regional World Geography Unit 08--Africa from TEKS Resource System.

North Africa and the African Transition Zone

North Africa's primary connection with the Middle East and Central Asia is that Islam diffused to North Africa from the Middle East and Central Asia. Today, it is a Muslim-dominated realm with Arabic as its primary language. Historically, the ethnicity of North Africa was predominantly Berber with the nomadic Tuareg and other local groups interspersed. When Islam diffused into North Africa, the Arab influence and culture were infused with it.

Modern Egypt has become the cornerstone of the Arab world. More Arabs live in Cairo than in any other city on Earth. The three main areas of interest are the Maghreb of the northwest; the Nile River valley in the east; and the African Transition Zone, where the Sahara Desert transitions into the tropical type A climates of Central Africa's equatorial region.



The Maghreb traditionally includes Morocco, Algeria, and Tunisia, but Libya is also considered part of the Maghreb by many inhabitants of the region.

Islam diffused through North Africa to the Berber people of the Maghreb and entered Europe across the Strait of Gibraltar to the Iberian Peninsula. The Arab-Berber alliance, called the Moors, invaded Spain in 711 C.E. The Islamic influence thrived in Iberia and would have continued into mainland Europe if not stopped by Christian forces such as Charles Martel's army in the famous Battle of Tours. Islam was eventually pushed out of the Iberian Peninsula and held south of the Strait of Gibraltar. Islamic architecture and influence remain part of the heritage of Iberia.

The historical geography of North Africa is not complete without an understanding of the European influences that have controlled this region for centuries. The Roman Empire controlled much of the coastal area of the Mediterranean during its high point. The Romans built ports, aqueducts, roads, and infrastructure. After the fall of the Roman Empire, common bonds of religion and language were created for the people through the invasion of the Arabs, who introduced the Islamic faith.

North Africa was later dominated by European colonialism. France controlled and colonized the region of the Barbary Coast along North Africa's western waterfront, including Algeria, Tunisia, and parts of Morocco. Italians colonized the region that is now Libya. The Barbary Coast of the Mediterranean was once a haven for pirates and a danger to shipping during the colonial era. Even the United States involved itself with wars against the pirates off the coast of the Berber states of North Africa during the early 1800s.

After the fall of the Ottoman Empire, Britain controlled Egypt and parts of Sudan. The Spanish colonized parts of Morocco and Western Sahara. In due time, resistance movements were successful in defeating the colonial powers and declaring independence for all the countries of North Africa. However, the European influence remains through the region's dependence on trade and economic partnerships with Europe.

North Africa is separated from Sub-Saharan Africa by the African Transition Zone, a transitional area between Islamic-dominated North Africa and animist- and Christian-dominated Sub-Saharan Africa. It is also a transition between the Sahara Desert and the tropical type A climates of Africa's equatorial region.

This is a zone subject to shifting boundaries. The region was once a major trade route between the Mali Empire of the west and the trade centers of Ethiopia in the east. Camel caravans have crossed this sector of Africa for centuries. Many nomadic groups

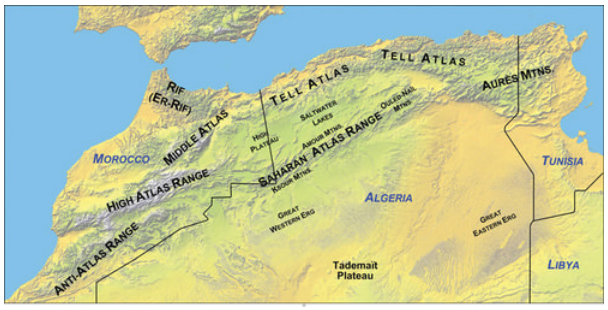
CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

continue to herd their livestock across the region in search of grazing.

The Maghreb: “Isle of the West”

The Maghreb is a region extending from Morocco to Libya that is distinguished by the main ranges of the Atlas Mountains, which reach elevations of near 13,000 thousand feet. The main Atlas range is often snow-covered at higher elevations. The name *Maghreb*, which in Arabic means “Isle of the West,” receives between 10 and 30 inches of rainfall per year. This is substantially more rainfall than what is received in the Sahara Desert to the south.

The Atlas Mountains extract precipitation from the air in the form of rain or snow, which allows fruits and vegetables to be grown in the fertile mountain valleys of the Maghreb. To the south of this region is the vast Sahara Desert with lower precipitation and warmer temperatures. Libya is actually outside the range of the Atlas Mountains but is associated with the Maghreb by most local inhabitants.



The Atlas Mountains of the Maghreb extend to the east and west of the main ranges.

Aided by a moderate type C climate, the northern coastal region of the Maghreb and the mountain valleys are a center for agricultural production, including grapes, dates, oranges, olives, and other food products. Think about how geography affects the population. Which climate type do most human groups gravitate toward? What conditions will you find when you combine this climate type and generous quantities of water and food?

As you fit the pieces of the geographic puzzle together, you can understand why populations centralize in some places and not in others. The Maghreb is an attractive place for human habitation, but it borders on the inhospitable vastness of the Sahara Desert. Most of the Maghreb’s residents live in cities along the Mediterranean coast. There are few people in the vast desert interior of these countries. The exceptions are groups such as the Tuareg, which are found in the Sahara.

The Maghreb is an expansive region encompassing the physically large countries of Algeria, Libya, and Morocco. Algeria, Africa's largest country, is similar in area to the entire United States east of the Mississippi River. Libya is larger than the state of Alaska. Morocco is the size of the state of California.

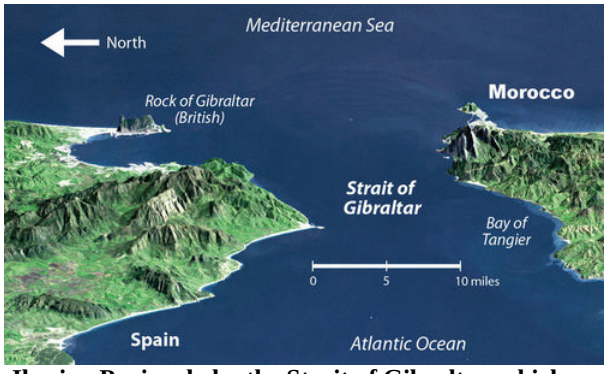
A large percentage of Algeria south of the Maghreb and the area south of the Mediterranean coastline in Libya fit the classification of desert conditions. The largest cities of Libya are along the coast, but other Libyan cities are positioned in the desert region. Tunisia, the smallest of the countries on the Mediterranean, is about the same size as the US state of Wisconsin and has mountains in its north and desert areas to the southwest.

All the countries of the Maghreb have former connections to Europe. These ties have strengthened in recent years because of an increase in trade and the economic dependencies that have been created between Europe and the Mediterranean. North Africa can grow fruit and vegetable crops that are not as plentiful in the colder northern latitudes. In the last half of the 20th century, an enormous amount of oil was discovered in the Maghreb, and Europe has a growing need for energy. Oil and natural gas exports now make up 95 percent of the export income for Algeria and Libya.

Economic Geography of the Maghreb

Europe, which is in the higher stages of the index of economic development, has small families with fewer young people to fill entry-level service jobs, and North Africa has a growing population of young people seeking employment. Many people from North Africa speak the same languages spoken in Europe. Therefore, the transition to a European lifestyle is straightforward. Migration from the shores of North Africa to Europe is not difficult. The Strait of Gibraltar, for example, is only about nine miles across from Morocco to Spain.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org



North Africa is separated from the Iberian Peninsula by the Strait of Gibraltar, which connects the Mediterranean Sea with the Atlantic Ocean. The distance from Morocco to Spain across the strait is about nine miles, making immigration to Europe from North Africa only a matter of a short boat ride.

European countries have attempted to implement measures to halt the tide of illegal immigration into their continent from North Africa but have not been successful. The need for cheap labor in European countries is a major economic factor in this equation. The core-periphery spatial relationship creates the push-pull forces of migration based on opportunities and advantages. Europe needs cheap labor and more energy, provides employment opportunities, and has an advantage in its higher standards of living.

North Africa can supply labor and oil, has high levels of unemployment, and suffers from poor economic conditions. These factors push people to emigrate from North Africa to places where conditions are more attractive. Europe is the core economic region, and North Africa is the peripheral economic region. People usually shift from periphery to core in their migration patterns, and this is the case across the Mediterranean.

European and American influences have been strong in North Africa. Western culture continues to compete with fundamental Islamic tendencies in the region, especially in urban centers. In Morocco, which is the farthest country from Mecca, democratic reforms have opened the country to more opportunities for women and have led to exposure to Western fashions, ideas, and products.

Tunisia has a supportive Westernized society. In Libya, birth control or family planning products have not always been supported by the government, so family size remained relatively high until about 1985 when it began to decline. Women are allowed to go to college in Libya, but a smaller percentage are enrolled compared to men. More than 90 percent of Libyans live in urban areas.

Exposure to Western concepts, along with urbanizing and industrializing of the economy, has caused a drop in family size in Libya. According to the CIA World Factbook, the birthrate has dropped from 7.5 children in 1975 to about 4.0 children in 1990, to 3.0 children in 2010, to an estimated 2.04 in 2017. More women are trading traditional dress for Western-style clothing and are entering the workforce to the extent they are allowed.

Political Geography of the Maghreb

Economic and political pressures are building across North Africa. Toward the end of 2010 and the spring of 2011, activists called for the governments in North Africa to implement change and address the push of North Africans for stronger democratic openness, less government corruption, and the sharing of wealth accumulated by those in power. Leaders have been reluctant to relinquish power and are being challenged by protests and revolution. The driving forces for the people have been high unemployment rates, high food prices, and the lack of adequate housing.

Western Sahara and Morocco

Western Sahara is the region south of Morocco. In the latter half of the 1970s, Morocco annexed and took control of this region following the withdrawal of Mauritanian control. A local resistance group called the Polisario Front challenged Morocco's claim to Western Sahara and staged a guerrilla war to fight for the independence of Western Sahara. By 1991, the United Nations (UN) had stepped in, brokered a halt to the fighting, and worked to resolve the matter.

Both sides have offered proposals to the UN. Morocco's plan advocates for annexation, and Polisario's plan is for independence. Western Sahara is mainly desert terrain and only has about 300,000 people. The UN delegation has indicated that independence is not realistic. However, talks continue between the factions to work out a solution.



Morocco and Western Sahara.

Algeria

Algeria has also experienced its share of violent clashes. The clashes are between Islamic fundamentalist groups and the democratically elected government. In the 1990s, the Islamic Salvation Front, which advocates for a fundamentalist Islamic state in Algeria, challenged the secular political mainstream. The electoral process was interrupted, and the government found itself fighting an Islamic insurgency within the country. By 1998, more than 100,000 people had been killed.

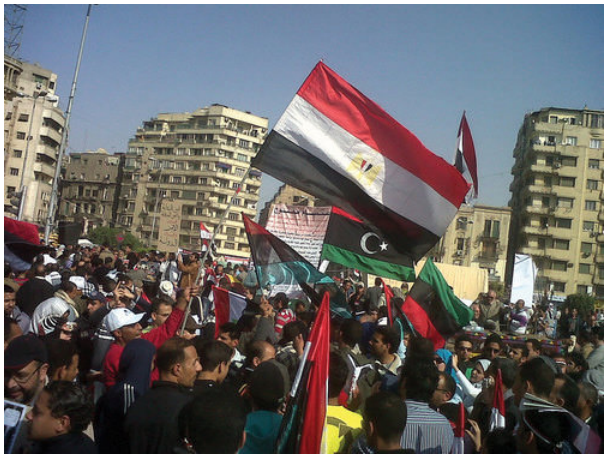
The horror of the violence received international attention. Islamic extremists widened their attacks and massacred entire villages. By the end of the decade, government forces gained control of the country, and the Islamic Salvation Front officially disbanded. Smaller extremist groups continued to operate. They joined forces with Osama bin Laden's al-Qaeda group to create an insurgent group called *al-Qaeda in the Lands of the Islamic Maghreb.* This group has continued a campaign of terror and violence against the Algerian government and people in the region who have Western interests.

Coinciding with similar protests across North Africa, during 2010 and 2011, there was an insurgence of protests and demonstrations against the government of Algeria by its people, who wanted better living conditions. The government made some concessions to address the issues, but the political climate in Algeria continues to be tense as the government struggles to find ways to satisfy the needs of the people.

Tunisia

Tunisia was once an outpost of the Roman Empire. In 1956, at the end of the colonial era, France recognized Tunisia's independence, and the country established its own government. The political problems in Tunisia today stem from the fact that little has changed in the government since the time of independence. The country's second president, Ben Ali, led the country for 24 years (1987–2011).

Ben Ali worked to stem the tide of Islamic fundamentalism, opened the country to establishing rights for women, and allowed more tolerance of religious diversity. However, under his leadership, the government struggled to find a balance between democratic openness and authoritarian measures to keep the country moving forward with economic development and social services for a growing population.



Protests in Cairo's Tahrir Square on March 4, 2011, were in support of demonstrations in Egypt and in Libya, which followed the protests in Tunisia.

Beginning in 2010, corruption, unemployment, and a lack of personal freedoms prompted Tunisians to take to the streets in massive protests. Their protests grew into a revolution. By the end of the year, President Ben Ali was removed from power and an

interim government was formed. Protests continued as the government shifted to adapt to the conditions. In 2011, a new constitutional assembly was formed to address changes in the government. Economic conditions have remained unstable during the transition.

Libya

Muammar Gadhafi came to power in Libya in 1969 by overthrowing the king. He used Libya's oil revenues to build up the country's infrastructure, strengthen his military, and create an anti-Western terrorist network with weapons production. Personal freedoms have been limited in Libya, and there has been no free speech, freedom of the press, or freedom of assembly.

Gadhafi supported various Islamic terrorist groups and nationalized all the oil assets of international corporations in Libya in the early 1980s. This action of nationalism directly opposed and angered many corporations. His policies caused the international oil companies, which operated much of the oil industry there, to pressure the US government to conduct a series of devastating military bombing raids on Libya in 1986 in an attempt to kill Gadhafi.

Gadhafi deployed his military along Libya's southern border with Chad in a zone called the Aozou Strip. This border territory was the site of a boundary dispute over land that was reported to hold uranium reserves. Libyan forces controlled the Aozou Strip for a number of years before Chad forced them out. In 1994, the UN ruled that the zone belonged to Chad, and the dispute was finally resolved.

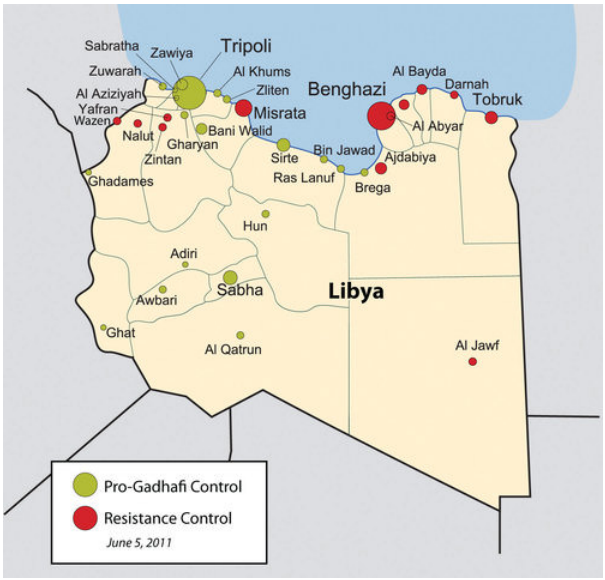
In other events, Libyan agents were accused of planting bombs on passenger airlines. Two tragic events that were blamed on Libya happened in 1988 when an explosion on Pan Am flight over Scotland killed 270 people, and in 1989, when an explosion of UTA flight 772 over Niger killed 170 people. After the 9/11 tragedy in New York, Gadhafi retreated from his aggressive anti-Western activities and agreed to dismantle some of his weapons production facilities and comply with international trade agreements. Libya then denounced terrorism, and the United States lifted economic sanctions against Libya and exchanged ambassadors.

Unrest in Libya surfaced again in 2011, coinciding with protests in neighboring Tunisia, Algeria, and Egypt. Factions in Libya that opposed Gadhafi's regime advocated for his removal from office and for more democratic freedoms. Based in Libya's second-largest city of Benghazi, in the eastern sector of the country, the resistance movement gained momentum and pushed for an all-out civil war that split the country in half.

Forces loyal to Gadhafi in the capital city of Tripoli in the western part of the country faced off against the separatists under the structure of the National Transitional Council (NTC). In 2011, Gadhafi had been in power for more than 42 years. His family controlled much of the country's wealth from the export of oil. Gadhafi's control of Libya did not allow for the establishment of strong administrative divisions within the government to share power.

The UN, through the North Atlantic Treaty Organization (NATO), implemented a no-fly zone over Libya and allowed military strikes against Gadhafi's forces to stop the massacre of civilians in the civil war. By the end of the summer of 2011, the resistance forces headquartered in Benghazi had pushed across to the western part of Libya and took control of Tripoli. Gadhafi was no longer in control of the country, as the NTC became the transitional power base.

Muammar Gadhafi was killed in October of 2011. Libya after Gadhafi will most likely be very different from the past four decades when he was in power. Nation building will become a major focus for North Africa, which may be more difficult for Libya than its neighbors because of the lack of government structure.



This map illustrates the control of cities in Libya based on the civil war as of June 5, 2011.

The Nile River and Egypt

The Nile River originates in East Africa from Lake Victoria and in Ethiopia from Lake Tana. The White Nile flows north from Lake Victoria through Uganda and into Sudan, where it converges with the Blue Nile at the city of Khartoum, Sudan's capital. The Blue Nile originates in Lake Tana in Ethiopia. From Khartoum, the Nile River flows north through the Nubian Desert into Egypt, where it eventually reaches the Mediterranean Sea. The fresh water of the Nile enables agriculture and transportation and supports a growing human population in the region.



The White Nile originates in Lake Victoria, and the Blue Nile originates in Lake Tana. They converge at Khartoum.

Until the Aswan High Dam was completed in 1968, the river flooded its banks yearly, depositing silt and nutrients onto the soil but causing enormous damage to infrastructure. As far back as when the pharaohs ruled Egypt, the people used flood irrigation to grow their crops. Today, water is pumped from the controlled Nile River onto the fields to water the crops. This change has increased the number of crops that can be grown per year. However, it has also caused a buildup of salt in the soil, resulting in declining soil quality. Without annual flooding, the salts cannot be dissolved away but remain in the soil, reducing yields. Almost one-third of Egypt's population works in agriculture and about one-half of the population is rural.



The Aswan High Dam is an embankment dam built across the Nile in Aswan, Egypt, between 1960 and 1970.

Population Dynamics

Cairo, Egypt's capital, lies at the northern end of the Nile River. With a population of more than 10 million, it is the largest North African city and home to more Arabs than any other city in the world. It is considered the cornerstone city of Arab culture. Cairo is so crowded that more than one million people live in its old cemetery, the City of the Dead. Cairo's residents, and the millions of people in Egypt depend on the Nile River for their survival.



The City of the Dead is an Islamic necropolis and cemetery below the Mokattam Hills in southeastern Cairo, Egypt.

About 95 percent of Egypt's population lives within 15 miles of the Nile River. As the population has grown, urban expansion has encroached on the farmland of the Nile Valley. Egypt can no longer produce enough food for its people. About 15 percent of its food comes from other countries, mainly the United States.

Conflicts between democratic reforms and Islamic fundamentalism are evident in Egypt. The growing population of about 97 million is a major concern. In Egypt's case, democratic reformers were able to promote a strong program of family planning and birth control to help reduce family size. The government even created a popular Egyptian soap opera to promote the concept that it was appropriate in an Arab culture to use family planning and have a small family.

The prime-time program, called *And the Nile Flows On*, told the story of a young village bride dealing with the issues of pregnancy and life complicated by the interjection of a progressive sheik and a meddling female doctor. The drama addressed many family planning and religious issues regarding the acceptability of breaking with tradition to address the growing population problem in Egypt.

Television programming is popular in Egypt, and even reruns of old American shows such as *Bonanza* and *Dallas* are dubbed into Arabic and shown on Egyptian television. Egypt is a cultural mix with a strong heritage steeped in Arab history with a secular side that is open to the outside world.

The cultural forces that create this paradox have not always been in unison. Egypt has a major connection to Western society because of tourism. The Pyramids of Giza and the Great Sphinx are major attractions that pull in millions of people per year from around the world. Tourism opens up Egypt to outside elements from various cultural backgrounds, most of which are secular.

Political Dynamics

On the political front, the democratically elected government has received strong opposition from the Islamic Brotherhood, which advocates for a more fundamentalist Islamic lifestyle and government structure. The democratic reformers that struggle with the Islamic Brotherhood for political power support a more open and democratic civil government. These two elements are what drive Egyptian culture and society.



On January 25, 2011, the “Day of Revolt” protests were held in Egypt. Tens of thousands of Egyptians went onto the streets to peaceably protest against the Mubarak government.

The political situation changed in Egypt with the Arab Spring of 2011. Student protests against government corruption and the lack of democratic reforms emerged with an intensity that gained the support of the Egyptian people and forced the Egyptian government to respond. Egyptian president Hosni Mubarak had been in power since 1981 after the assassination of the previous president, Anwar Sadat. President Mubarak was able to win every election for president that had been held since that time.

Millions of Egyptians took to the streets in early 2011 in civil protests against the Mubarak government. Massive protests and demonstrations continued until February 11, when President Mubarak announced his resignation. The transition to an interim government has been complicated by continued protests and calls for justice from the people. They have called for Mubarak to stand trial for stealing billions of dollars from the state and concealing it in his own bank accounts.

The people and the government continue to search for progressive opportunities to address their issues. What started out as the Arab Spring turned into the Arab Year as all three long-term leaders in Tunisia, Libya, and Egypt were removed from positions of power.

The African Transition Zone



The Tuareg are masters of the desert and camels. They often lead camel caravans on long trips through the desert.

S tretching across the widest part of Africa on the southern edge of the Sahara Desert is the African Transition Zone. Known as the Sahel, meaning “border or margin,” this zone is where the dry arid conditions of the desert north meet up with the region humid of the tropics. For thousands of years, the seasonal grazing lands of the Sahel have been home to nomadic groups herding their livestock across the zone and eking out a living held together by tradition and heritage.

Changing climate conditions and overgrazing has enhanced the desertification process, and the region is slowly turning into desert. The Sahara Desert is shifting southward, altering the economic activities of the millions of people who live in its path. Ten thousand years ago, North Africa and the Sahara Desert were tropical environments filled with all the biodiversity and wildlife now found in Sub-Saharan Africa. This desertification process has been occurring for centuries.

Political stability is hard to achieve in the African Transition Zone. The political borders established by European colonialism during the Berlin Conference of 1884 remain intact and create obstacles for the nomadic groups traveling through the Sahel in search of grazing land for their livestock. Political boundaries now restrict movement and keep people divided and separated into national identities.

The African Transition Zone is also in transition from a rural, traditional agrarian culture to a society confronting the information age and modern technology. Camel caravans that once transported goods and materials across wide expanses of desert terrain are being replaced with motor vehicles and aircraft. The many traditional groups across this zone are adapting to the conditions of the modern world but work to retain their values and the traditions of their heritage.

The colonial political borders have impeded progress in the region's effort to establish stable governments and control the land and resources within its borders. Post-independence governments have thus far been unable to establish stable economic conditions within many of the countries in the Sahel. Natural resources are being exploited for economic profit, which is changing the natural environment. Security and safety have become significant issues. Today this region is unstable, with political and cultural conflicts between the local groups and governments. The current conflicts in Sudan are examples of the instability.

Sudan: Slavery and Genocide

Comparable in size to the entire United States east of the Mississippi River, Sudan is the largest country in Africa. The capital city of Khartoum lies where the Blue Nile River converges with the White Nile. Khartoum's government has a black Arab majority and follows Islam with Sharia laws.

The African Transition Zone crosses Sudan and separates the Arab-Muslim north from the mainly African-Christian south. There has been a civil war between the north and the south for decades. Before a peace agreement brokered in 2005, military soldiers from the north would raid the villages in the south, taking women and children as slaves.

Though the Sudanese government denied the slave trade, thousands of Africans were owned by northern black Arabs in Sudan, and many still are. The world community has made little effort to intervene. The price for a slave in Sudan is about 50 US dollars.

The differences in religion, ethnicity, and culture have always divided southern Sudan from the north. Additional economic considerations might fuel the debate because of an increase in oil production in the region. In January 2011, the southern region of Sudan voted on a referendum that would allow the south to break away and become an independent country called the Republic of South Sudan. The acceptance of this new republic will change the map of the region and the dynamics between South Sudan and North Sudan.

The new Republic of South Sudan was formalized in July of 2011. Juba is designated as the capital with talk of creating a new forward capital in the center of the newly formed country in the future. The many clans and indigenous groups make it difficult for unity and cohesiveness in the new country. Armed groups in the various states continue to cause internal division, while at the same time boundary disputes continue to be worked out with North Sudan.

In 2003, various groups in Darfur complained that the Khartoum government was neglecting them. A militia group calling itself the Janjaweed was recruited by the local Arabs to counter the resistance in Darfur. The Janjaweed began an ethnic cleansing campaign that pushed into the Darfur region, burning villages, raping women, and killing anyone who opposed them. Refugees began to flee into the neighboring country of Chad.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org



South Sudan has elected to break away and become independent. The Darfur region has been experiencing genocide by Janjaweed militias backed by the Arab majority in northern Sudan.

In this particular case, the campaign was not based on religious divisions, because both sides were Muslim. This was an ethnic conflict in that the people of Darfur are of a traditional African background and the people of northern Sudan consider themselves Arab, even though they may have dark skin.

Accurate numbers have been difficult to verify, but as of 2010, an estimated 300,000 people have died in this conflict. In the BBC news report "Sudans Darfur Conflict," there are more than 2.7 million refugees, many of them in Chad. Just as the government of Sudan denied the slave trade, it denies that it supports the Janjaweed.

The African Union provided a modest number of peacekeeping troops before the UN stepped in to provide security. It has been up to the world community and Sudan to take more action and provide more assistance. Food, water, and care for the refugees have taxed the region's aid and support system.

The African Union

Former Libyan leader Muammar Gadhafi was instrumental in the development of the African Union (AU) in the mid-1990s. The Sirte Declaration was issued by the Organization of African Unity, which outlined the need for the creation of the AU. The AU was launched in Durban, South Africa, on July 9, 2002. Fifty-three countries formed this intergovernmental organization.

The focus of the AU is on the health, education, economic development, political stability, environmental sustainability, and general welfare of the people of Africa. The organization strives to integrate the socioeconomic and political stability of its members and promote a continent-wide effort for security and peace. The AU is working to create a proper political climate, one that helps its member states engage in the global economic marketplace by negotiating international issues and policies that affect Africa.

The dominating activities of colonialism and neocolonialism are big concerns for the AU. The AU's objective is to bring more unity to the political and economic arena between the African countries to address the transition to a globalized world. It faces many challenges within its realm, including health care issues such as HIV/AIDS and malaria that have devastated much of Africa.

The AU is working to bring political stability to countries such as Sudan and other countries experiencing civil unrest because of political turmoil or civil war, such as the Congo, Somalia, Sierra Leone, Ivory Coast, and Liberia. AU peacekeeping troops are assisting in this process. The legal issues regarding border disputes or territorial disputes such as that of Western Sahara are problems that the AU attempts to address.

In the global scale of economic and political supranationalism, the AU will be up against three main powerhouses: the European Union, the North American Free Trade Agreement, and the East Asian Community. Regions across the globe are working on trade

associations to create economic networks to bring about greater cooperation and commerce between nations. The AU is one part of that network that represents a growing percentage of the world's population and the second-largest continent on Earth.

Gadhafi was the AU chairman when the uprisings and demonstrations of the Arab Spring began in January of 2011, at which time his chairmanship ended. At the beginning of the civil war in Libya, the AU attempted to meet with Gadhafi to mediate the situation. The NATO no-fly zone declaration and intervention restricted AU activities in Libya. After Gadhafi was no longer in power in Libya by the fall of 2011, the AU continued to not recognize the NTC (National Transition Council) as the legitimate government of Libya.

Key Takeaways

- Three main physical features of North Africa are the Atlas Mountains, the Sahara Desert, and the Nile River.
- Most of North Africa's population lives along the Mediterranean coast or along the Nile River.
- The ethnic majority in the Maghreb are Berber, with Arabs dominating in Egypt.
- The Maghreb centers on the Atlas Mountains, which traditionally has provided for a diversity of food production.
- Oil has been found in North Africa, the export of which has surpassed the export of food products.
- Europe has had a strong influence on the region, ranging from the Roman Empire, to colonial activity, to becoming a destination for immigrants looking for employment and opportunities.
- North Africa has experienced serious political conflicts. Political leaders in Tunisia, Libya, and Egypt remained in power for decades. People have protested for economic and political reforms. The presidents of Egypt and Tunisia have stepped down, but Libya's longtime leader, Muammar Gadhafi, did not step down but instead engaged the country in a civil war.
- The African Transition Zone creates the southern boundary for North Africa. This zone serves as the transition between the arid type B climates and the tropical type A climates. It is also the transition between the dominance of Islam and the dominance of Christianity and animism.
- The African Transition Zone cuts through the center of Sudan and divides the country along religious and ethnic distinctions. Civil war has been waged in the south and in the Darfur region, which has split the country into separate regions. Southern Sudan has initiated the process for independence.

Vocabulary Terms

Chapter 8.2 North Africa and the Transition Zone

	One of the great empires of ancient Africa. Situated on a triangular peninsula on the Gulf of Tunis on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea
	An often triangular-shaped section of land formed as the waters of a river slow down and split into many channels as they deposit sand and silt that has been carried downriver
	An expansion of dry conditions to more humid areas that are next to deserts
	To adapt plants and animals from the wild for human use
	Longest river in the world flowing over 4,000 miles through Uganda, Sudan and Egypt
	A kind of Algerian music developed in the 1920s by poor urban children that is fast paced with danceable rhythms, sometimes used as a way of rebellion to show political unhappiness.
	A narrow area of dry grassland along the southern edge of the Sahara. It has traditionally been an area for farming and herding
	Farming that provides the basic needs of a family with little surplus

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

Applying Knowledge

Discussion and Study Questions

1. What is the name of the majority ethnic group that resides in the Maghreb? What is the main physical feature there?
2. What have been the main ties between North Africa and the European continent?
3. How did the construction of the Aswan High Dam change the way crops are grown along the Nile River?
4. What political changes have been occurring in North Africa? Why are they occurring?
5. Why has there been a civil war in Libya? How was the country divided in this civil war?
6. Where is the African Transition Zone? What does it signify?
7. What centripetal force brought villagers together in Timbuktu?
8. Name the country in the Sahel where slavery has become prominent. Why did no stop it?
9. How has the African Transition Zone divided Sudan? What are the main groups on each side?
10. What are the most serious problems in the Darfur region of Sudan? Who is conducting ethnic cleansing and why?

Real-World Geography Exercise

1. Using Google Maps, complete the following activities:
   a. Locate each place on the bulleted list below.
   b. Find the nearest city with an international airport in proximity to each location on the bulleted list below.
   c. Calculate the distance and travel time by plane to each city from the John F. Kennedy International Airport in New York City.
2. Using NASA Latitude and Longitude Finder, determine the latitude and longitude for each location on the bulleted list below.
3. Be prepared to share and discuss your answers.

- African Transition Zone
- Atlas Mountains
- Blue Nile
- Darfur
- Iberian Peninsula
- Lake Tana
- Lake Victoria
- Maghreb
- Nile River
- Strait of Gibraltar
- Western Sahara
- White Nile

Current Events

Geography Education Scoop It

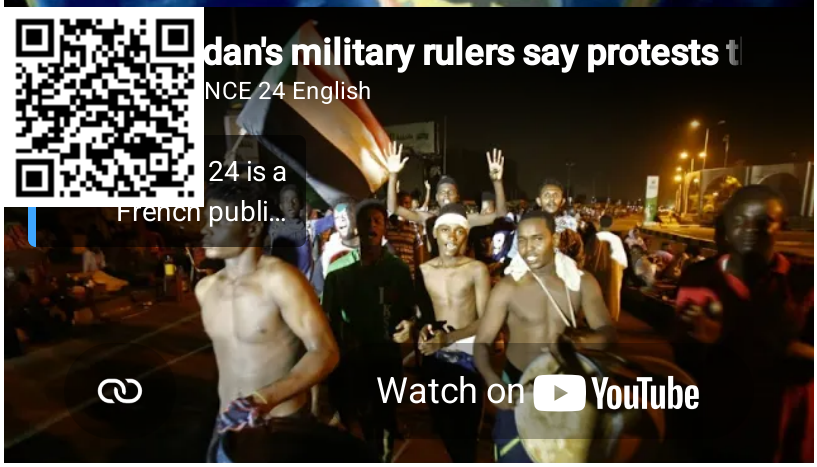
Marburg Virus in Bats -Sierra Leone

Survivors: Inside Sierra Leone's Ebola Epidemic

3D Virtual Tour of Egypt's Historical Sites


stination North Africa | National G
onal Geographic
Watch on YouTube


th high temperatures and rainfall in summer.
mate of Africa
Edu
Watch on YouTube


dan's military rulers say protests t
NCE 24 English
24 is a
French publi...
Watch on YouTube





Helpful Websites for the Study of Geography

Canadian Encyclopedia is an encyclopedia funded by the Canadian government covering all branches of knowledge. Their scholarly collection includes interactive materials.

CIA World Factbook provides information on the people, history, government, economy, energy, geography, communications, transportation, military, and transnational issues for the world's entities.

Congress.gov is a US government website where you can find federal legislation, past and present, as well as information about the US legal system.

Drug Enforcement Administration (DEA) is a government agency website that provides current news, resources, topics of interest, information about drugs, careers in the DEA, and a tip hotline.

Library of Congress is the largest library in the world and provides manuscripts, files, information, pictures, and videos.

NASA Earth Observatory (NEO) is a US government agency website that allows users to search for and retrieve satellite images of Earth.

National Archives is a US government website that provides historical documents, photos, records, publications, and educator resources.

National Oceanic and Atmospheric Association (NOAA) is a US government agency website that provides weather-related information and ocean research.

National Map is a website by the United States Geological Survey and other federal, state, and local agencies that delivers topographic information for the United States.

NationMaster is a massive central data source and a handy way to graphically compare nations.

Real-Time World Air Quality Index is a website that measures most locations in the world for air pollution in real time.

StateMaster is a unique statistical database, which allows you to research and compare a multitude of different data on US states.

United Nations (UN) is an international organization founded in 1945 and made up of 193 member states. The UN maintains international peace and security, protects human rights, delivers humanitarian aid, promotes sustainable development, and upholds international law.

United States Census Bureau is a US government agency that provides a population clock, data, surveys, statistics, a library with information and infographics, news about the economy, and much more.

United States Geological Survey (USGS) is a US government agency website that provides scientific information about the natural hazards that threaten lives, the natural resources we rely on, the health of our ecosystems and environment, and the impacts of climate and land-use change.

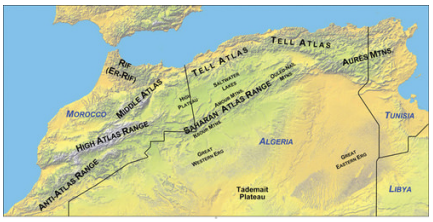
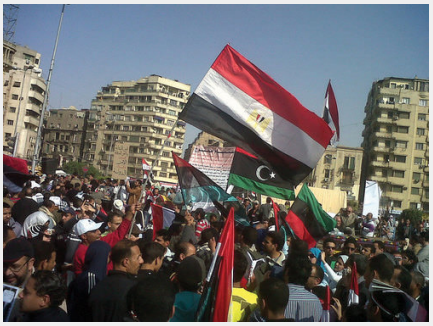
Whitehouse.gov is a US government website that provides the latest presidential news, information about the budget, policy, defense, and many more topics.

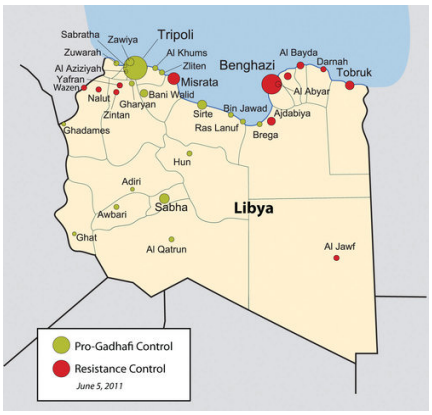
World Health Organization (WHO) is under the United Nations and provides leadership on matters critical to health, shapes the research agenda on health, and monitors the health situation and assessing health trends around the world. Their website provides information on the state of health around the world, outbreaks, current health news, and more.

World Trade Organization (WTO) is an intergovernmental organization that regulates international trade. The website provides

https://k12.libretexts.org/@go/page/1961

information on the history of the multilateral trading system, featured videos, news and events, trade topics, and more.

Image	Reference	Attributions
	[Figure 1]	**Credit:** Map courtesy of University of Texas Libraries. **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/99599531cded2a3da6e68208b4443a69.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 2]	**Credit:** Wikimedia Commons – public domain. **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/dce26f24597cce8ab26962d8bf30a9c8.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 3]	**Credit:** Satellite image courtesy of NASA SRTM Team – public domain. **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/28ba66f2bd496aa4a1b728257dafa7fb.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 4]	**Credit:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeograp...ansition-zone/ **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/72d9fdcf94f8fd6c239ba43523ef5876.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 5]	**Credit:** Tarek – Egyptian and Libyan Flags – CC BY-ND 2.0. **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/b9f7208fccaf30e30ad12c80b7e6bb48.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

	[Figure 6]	**Credit:** Wikimedia Commons – CC0 – public domain. **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/45402b808bc1c8374c7e6b1a0a6400eb.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 7]	**Credit:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeograp...ansition-zone/ **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/0ad0bd7b4605fd7eca70fe8b42665be2.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 8]	**Credit:** By PtitBen at English Wikipedia (Transferred from en.Wikipedia to Commons.) [Public domain], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Aswan_dam.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 10]	**Credit:** Muhammad Ghafari – CC BY 2.0. **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/8a0e02b8aa8c1780531590108f0119c9.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

	[Figure 11]	**Credit:** Marco Bellucci – Tuaregs with their dromedaries – CC BY 2.0. **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/72a20b24a7680500a7c38abfb622e9f6.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 12]	**Credit:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeograp...ansition-zone/ **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/e9e362cddddf5a9d738f2aa9992c12a7.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

This page titled 8.2: North Africa and the African Transition Zone (1 day) is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by CK12 via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

8.3: Human Geography of Sub-Saharan Africa (2 Days)

Chapter Challenges

1. Summarize how the core-periphery spatial relationship applies to Sub-Saharan Africa. Analyze how the concept of rural-to-urban shift applies to the development pattern.
2. Distinguish between the formal and informal sectors of the economy and understand how each would apply to the various core and peripheral regions of the realm.
3. Explain how countries fit into the index of economic development model and the relationship between family size, urbanization rates, and income levels.
4. Understand the diversity of languages and religions in the realm. Develop a theory about why, with the increasing population, the number of languages spoken decreases. Explain why many former European colonies still retain the language of their colonizer as their lingua franca, or official language.
5. Identify the various areas in Sub-Saharan Africa that have experienced devastating civil wars or political conflict in recent years.
6. Outline the general pattern of HIV infections in the realm. Understand why it is difficult to contain and prevent the spread of AIDS.
7. Explain why Sub-Saharan Africa has such great potential for economic development through tourism. Articulate the difficulties in creating a tourism market.

Learning Objectives

TEKS Regional Unit 08; Africa; Chapter 8.3 Human Geography of Sub-Saharan Africa

WG.5B Interpret political, economic, social, and demographic indicators (gross domestic product per capita, life expectancy, literacy, and infant mortality) to determine the level of development and standard of living in nations using the terms Human Development Index, less developed, newly industrialized, and more developed.

WG.6B Locate and describe human and physical features that influence the size and distribution of settlements.

WG.7A Construct and analyze population pyramids and use other data, graphics, and maps to describe the population characteristics of different societies and to predict future population trends.

WG.7B Construct and analyze population pyramids and use other data, graphics, and maps to describe the population characteristics of different societies and to predict future population trends.

WG.7C Describe trends in world population growth and distribution.

WG.7D Examine benefits and challenges of globalization, including connectivity, standard of living, pandemics, and loss of local culture.

WG.9A Identify physical and/or human factors such as climate, vegetation, language, trade networks, political units, river systems, and religion that constitute a region.

WG.9B Describe different types of regions, including formal, functional, and perceptual regions.

WG.11B Identify the factors affecting the location of different types of economic activities, including subsistence and commercial agriculture, manufacturing, and service industries.

WG.11C Assess how changes in climate, resources, and infrastructure (technology, transportation, and communication) affect the location and patterns of economic activities.

WG.12A Analyze how the creation, distribution, and management of key natural resources affects the location and patterns of movement of products, money, and people.

WG.13A Interpret maps to explain the division of land, including man-made and natural borders, into separate political units such as cities, states, or countries.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

WG.16D Compare life in a variety of urban and rural areas in the world to evaluate political, economic, social, and environmental changes.

WG.22B Generate summaries, generalizations, and thesis statements supported by evidence.

WG.22A Design and draw appropriate graphics such as maps, diagrams, tables, and graphs to communicate geographic features, distributions, and relationships.

WG.22C Use geographic terminology correctly.

WG.22D Use standard grammar, spelling, sentence structure, and punctuation.

TEKS and ELPS for Regional World Geography Unit 08--Africa from TEKS Resource System.

Human Geography of Sub-Saharan Africa

Economic Geography

The demographic data for each country in each region of Sub-Saharan Africa indicate the region's human geography. Urban percentages, family size, income levels, and the other data that can indicate the lifestyle or development level are helpful in understanding the trends in Sub-Saharan Africa.

The index of economic development illustrates the dynamics and conditions that exist in the realm. The data indicate the consistency of economic and development trends across Africa. The data does not, however, indicate differences in cultural dynamics and uniqueness in the ways that local people live.

The interesting part of studying Sub-Saharan Africa is the many ethnic and cultural groups in each country that bring to the surface a wide array of global diversity in our human community. Within each and every country are microcosms of human societies that hold particular customs that may be thousands of years old.

Globalization and technological advancements challenge every cultural group to adapt and innovate to make a living yet provide continuity in their heritage. The remote cultural groups of Sub-Saharan Africa are most susceptible to the volatile nature of globalization, which threatens their current way of life.

Sub-Saharan Africa is a peripheral world region with neocolonial economic patterns. Peripheral regions usually supply raw materials, food, and cheap labor to the core industrial countries. Most of the population in Sub-Saharan Africa works in subsistence agriculture to make a living and feed their families as families are large. In recent decades, there has been enormous rural-to-urban migration to the major cities, which are extremely overcrowded. Sub-Saharan Africa has more than 750 million people, and most earn the US equivalent of only $1–3 per day.

There is no single major core economic area in Sub-Saharan Africa. This realm has many core cities and the rest is periphery. Many of the core cities are improving their technology and infrastructure and entering into the globalized economy. Even so, as much as 70 percent of the people still work in agriculture, leaving little time to develop a large educated group of professionals to assist with social services and administrative responsibilities.

The realm depends heavily on outside support for technical and financial assistance. Computers, medical equipment, and other high-tech goods are all imported. African states have formed trade agreements and have joined the African Union to assist each other in economic development and trade.



The Zimbabwe Harare Eastgate Shopping Mall is part of the formal economy.



Roadside vendors of cowpea (shelled and whole pods), near Thies, Senegal are part of the informal economy.

Sub-Saharan Africa has nearly 40 urban areas of more than one million people. At the center of the central business districts (CBDs) are modern high-rise business offices well connected to the global economy. Outside the CBD are slums with no services and unsanitary conditions. The informal sector of the economy—that which is not regulated, controlled, or taxed—has become the primary system of doing business in most of the cities. The informal sector comprises trading, street markets, and any other business without financial records for cash transactions.

The lack of government regulation and control prevents taxes from being assessed or collected, which in turn hinders public services and infrastructure. The formal sector of the economy—that which the government can regulate, control, and tax—must pay to operate the government and support public services such as education, security, and transportation. In spite of the unhealthy conditions of the slums where millions of people already live, more migrants from the countryside continue to shift to the city in search of jobs and opportunities. African cities are growing rapidly, many without organized planning.

If the index of economic development were applied to Sub-Saharan Africa, a clear pattern would emerge. Rural areas would be in the lower stages of development, and only a few developing areas would be higher than stage 3. A large percentage of this realm would be in stage 1 or 2 of this model. Countries with higher standards of living, such as South Africa or Botswana, would be working through stage 3 or 4. This region has one of the fastest-growing populations of the world and economically lags behind countries in the Northern Hemisphere, which have transitioned into the higher stages of the index of economic development.

Incomes, Urbanization, and Family Size

The socioeconomic data illustrate the conditions for people in Africa in comparison to the rest of the world. African countries are at the lowest end of the statistics for development prospects. However, the larger cities are showing promise for advancement into the higher stages of development. Family sizes in the rural countries are some of the largest in the world. The average fertility rate for much of Africa is about 5. In Mali and Niger, the rate is higher than 7. One-third to one-half of the populations of these countries are under the age of 15. Children make up most of the population in many areas. Heavier burdens are placed on women, meaning that women are not easily able to get an education or work outside the home.



Maasai woman and her child

The populations of West African countries are increasing rapidly and will double in about 30 years at the current rate. This trend places an extra burden on the economy and on the environment. It is fueling one of the fastest rural-to-urban shifts in the world. West Africa is now only about 32 percent urban, and Burkina Faso and Niger are less than 20 percent urban. These are clear indications that agriculture is the largest sector of their economies and that most of the people live in rural areas or small villages.

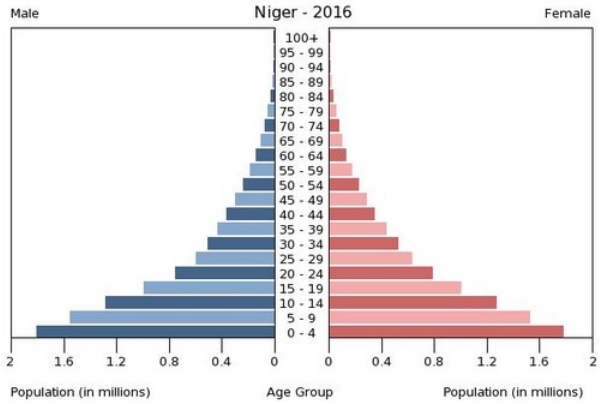
Personal income levels in West African countries are among the lowest in the world. As far as standard of living is concerned, these are poor countries. Few economic opportunities exist for the millions of young people entering the employment market.

The United Nations (UN) human development index lists all but two of West African countries in the lowest category of development. Sierra Leone is the lowest of the world. Ghana and Senegal were the two countries listed in the medium range. Senegal is the lowest country in the medium category, just barely rising above the lowest tier. A country listed in the lowest tier of the medium category translates into a region with low availability of opportunities and advantages for its people.

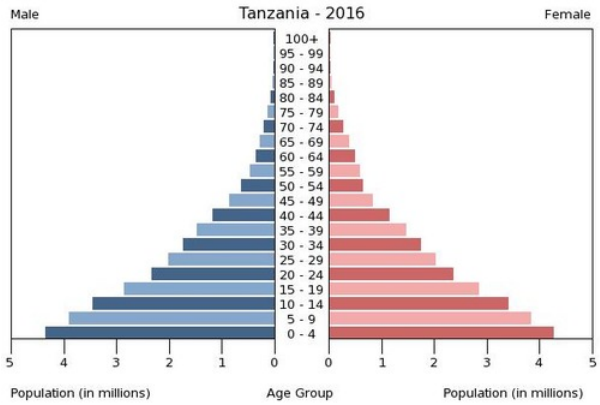
As a peripheral world region, the economic base is structured around agriculture with supportive extractive activities. Agricultural activities are renewable, but agricultural profit margins are slim. These countries are in a subsistence mode with a rapidly expanding population and few industrial or postindustrial activities to gain income.

No Sub-Saharan African nation is in stage 5 of the index of economic development. Nevertheless, there are rich cultural values and heritage of the realm. The energy of the people does not revolve around consumerism but is instead focused on the people themselves.

High levels of social interaction and community involvement bring about different cultural standards than those of a consumer society, which focuses more on the individual and less on community. Unless there is social unrest or open warfare, which does exist in various places, the people work hard to bring about a civil society based on family and tradition.

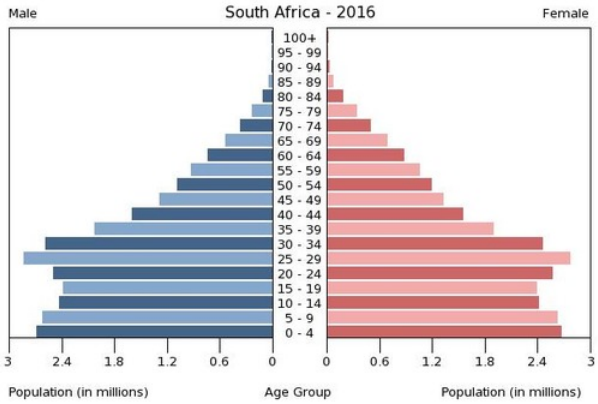


Age Structure of Niger: 0-14 years: 49.01 percent (male 4,757,806 / female 4,674,437); 15-24 years: 19.1 percent (male 1,815,689 / female 1,860,230); 25-54 years: 25.97 percent (male 2,495,927 / female 2,501,362); 55-64 years: 3.28 percent (male 328,082 / female 304,030); 65 years and over: 2.64 percent (male 259,046 / female 248,735) (2017 est.)



Age Structure of Tanzania: 0-14 years: 43.74 percent (male 11,921,393 / female 11,678,536); 15-24 years: 19.86 percent (male 5,361,747 / female 5,351,794); 25-54 years: 29.88 percent (male 8,098,183 / female 8,020,289); 55-64 years: 3.51 percent (male 836,313 / female 1,055,347); 65 years and over: 3.02 percent (male 687,118 / female 940,215) (2017 est.)

https://k12.libretexts.org/@go/page/1964



Age Structure of South Africa: 0-14 years: 28.27 percent (male 7,768,960 / female 7,733,706); 15-24 years: 17.61 percent (male 4,776,096 / female 4,881,962); 25-54 years: 41.78 percent (male 11,589,099 / female 11,323,869); 55-64 years: 6.66 percent (male 1,694,904 / female 1,955,391); 65 years and over: 5.68 percent (male 1,309,597 / female 1,807,968) (2017 est.)

The population pyramids of Niger, Tanzania, and South Africa illustrate the population growth dynamics of Sub-Saharan Africa. Niger's population pyramid illustrates a large family size and rapid population growth. Tanzania's pyramid is similar but shows signs of slowing population growth. South Africa, which is more urbanized and industrialized, shows signs of declining family sizes and fewer children.

Languages in Sub-Saharan Africa

Sub-Saharan Africa covers a large land area more than 2.3 times the size of the United States. Thousands of ethnic groups are scattered throughout the realm. There is immense diversity within the approximate population of 750 million people in Sub-Saharan Africa. Within each country are cultural and ethnic groups with their own history, language, and religion. More than 2,000 separate and distinct languages are spoken in all of Africa. Forty are spoken by more than one million people.

Many local languages are not written down and have no historical record or dictionary. Local languages without a written history are usually the first to be lost as globalization affects the realm. Nigeria, with more than 190 million people, is the most populous country in Africa. It is about the size of Texas and Oklahoma combined, and the African Transition Zone cuts through the country’s northern portion.

More than 500 separate languages are spoken in Nigeria alone. Three of the six dominant languages in Sub-Saharan Africa—spoken by at least 10 million people or more—are spoken in Nigeria: Hausa, Yoruba, and Ibo. The three remaining major languages of Sub-Saharan Africa are Swahili, Lingala, and Zulu.

Colonial activity changed much of how the African countries operated economically, socially, and politically. Language is one aspect of culture that indicates a colonial relationship. Many African countries today speak a European language as the official language. Mauritania is the only country that has Arabic as its official language. Nigeria has English plus other local languages. The official languages of most of West Africa are either French or English, and Guinea-Bissau’s official language is Portuguese.

This vestige of colonial power would seem inconsistent with the desire to be free of foreign domination. However, because often dozens to hundreds of local languages are spoken within the country, choosing the colonial language as the official language produces less of an advantage for one group wishing to dominate the political arena with its own local language and heritage.

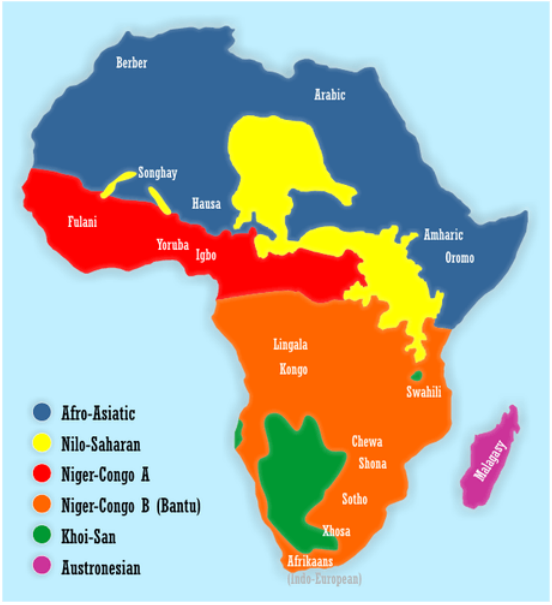
For example, a language problem arises when a government needs to print material for the country. What language do they use? In Nigeria, there would be more than 500 possible languages. What if the leadership used a language only spoken by a few people? The language of those in power would provide an advantage over those that could not understand it. What if there were more than 500 separate languages in Texas and Oklahoma? How would they function?

This is why many African countries have chosen a colonial language as their country’s lingua franca, or national language. Ghana, which is the size of the US state of Minnesota, has more than 80 spoken languages. Ghana and Nigeria have both chosen English as their national language to provide a cohesive and inclusive method of addressing the language dilemma.

A portion of the 2,000 languages spoken on the African continent will not survive. A large number of the languages are spoken by a small number of local groups that may or may not have a written text or alphabet. The influence of globalization causes the country's lingua franca to overshadow local languages, which are relegated to the older generations that may not be fluent in the languages of global business and commerce.

Young people often learn the lingua franca and may or may not pass their local language on to the next generation. This is how languages become extinct. Similar dynamics can be applied to local religious beliefs. Outside influence can often erode local beliefs and cause an evolution of religious tenets that eventually transform indigenous beliefs into patterns similar to the larger, more mainstream religions.

Language Families of Africa



There are six main language families with many variations of each. It is estimated that more than 2,000 languages are spoken in all Africa.

Religion in Sub-Saharan Africa

Before the monotheistic religions from the Middle East were even in existence, the people of Africa followed traditional animist beliefs. The diffusion of Christianity and Islam to the African continent convinced many African people to abandon their animist beliefs. African religions spread with the slave trade and became a part of the African Diaspora. Examples can be found in the Santeria religion in Cuba, Umbanda followers in Brazil, and Vodou (Voodoo) practitioners in Haiti. Many of these examples indicate a high rate of mixing between traditional religions and Christianity, something that is not as well accepted within Islam.

The current religious trends in Africa follow the pattern of the African Transition Zone. Most of the population north of the zone follows Islam, and most of the population living south of the zone follows Christianity. Large percentages of people in the region follow a wide array of traditional or animist beliefs. For example, According to the CIA World Factbook, as of the 2017 estimate, more than 51 percent of the people of Togo still followed local religions not affiliated with Christianity or Islam. Only about 29 percent of the population claimed to be Christian, and 20 percent claimed to follow Islam.

Along the African Transition Zone, followers of one religion will clash with followers of other religions. Countries such as Nigeria have a history of this type of social division, and Nigeria's government allows Islamic Sharia law to take precedence over civil law in the country's northern regions. For example, in 2002, the 52nd edition of the Miss World beauty pageant was to be held in Abuja, Nigeria's capital. However, it was moved because of religious riots in the nearby city of Kaduna.

At the same time, Nigerian news reported a case of a young woman charged with adultery in Muslim-dominated northern Nigeria. The woman was to be stoned to death for her crime. Northern Nigeria is north of the transition zone and is staunchly Islamic.

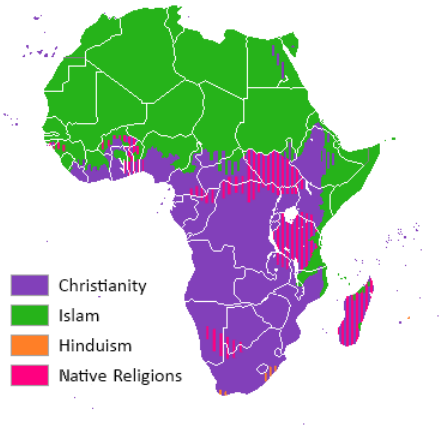
CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

Southern Nigeria is mainly Christian or animist. The northern Muslims were protesting the Miss World beauty pageant, and riots spilled over into the streets. Buildings were burned, cars were overturned, and more than 100 people were killed.

Meanwhile, people in the south were protesting the death sentence of the woman charged with adultery. Contestants for the Miss World contest began to pull out of the competition, some in protest and some for personal safety reasons. In the end, the woman sentenced to death was smuggled out of northern Nigeria to the safety of the south and the Miss World contest was moved to London.

Both Islam and Christianity have been on the rise in Africa. As the local beliefs are replaced with monotheistic religions, there is more integration with either the West (Europe and America) or the Middle East. Religious activity through Christian missionaries or the advancement of Islam sometimes coincides with economic support being brought in through the same channels, which is often welcome and enhances the global relationships that occur.

However, Africa is still full of traditional religions with rich spiritual histories. Spiritual forces are found in the environment. Deities of all kinds are worshipped throughout Africa. Christianity and Islam are latecomers to the region but have made inroads into the African culture.



Islam is prominent north of the African Transition Zone, and Christianity is more prominent south of the African Transition Zone.

Ethnic Divisions and Civil Wars

Sub-Saharan Africa is home to thousands of ethnic or traditional groups. Each has a separate identity and history, and often one group is in conflict with another. The slave trade and the establishment of colonial political boundaries or policies increased historical ethnic hostilities. Major civil wars have been fought throughout the history of Sub-Saharan Africa and continue at the present time.

Central Africa has endured ongoing brutal conflict in the past decade, with no solution in sight. More than five million people have died as a result of the civil war in the Congo. Fighting continues between various factions over political control or control over natural resources, such as diamonds and gold. Civil wars are devastating some African countries. Many other countries, such as Zimbabwe, Chad, and the Central African Republic, have also suffered economic collapse as a result of political unrest.

Rwanda's Tutsi-Hutu conflict has been historic in its violence and in the senseless, genocide or killing of innocent people. In 1994, the centuries-old conflict erupted into violence of unprecedented proportions. Hutu militias took revenge on the Tutsis for years of suppression and massacred anyone who did not support the Hutu cause. Tutsi rebels finally gained strength, fought back, and defeated the Hutu militias. More than one million people were killed, and more than one million defeated Hutus fled as refugees to neighboring countries, where many died of cholera and dysentery in refugee camps.



Skulls of victims from the Rwandan Genocide found at the Nyamata Memorial.

The civil war in Rwanda and the many refugees it created destabilized the entire Central African region. The shift in population and the increase in military arms along the Zairian border resulted in an extensive civil war in the Congo that has resulted in the deaths of more than five million people, many by disease or starvation.

One of the driving forces in these wars is the control of valuable mineral resources found in the Great Rift Valley along the eastern boundary of the Congo. Diamonds, gold, copper, zinc, and other minerals are abundant in this region, and wealth that can be gained from the mining of these products attracts political forces to compete for their control.

Civil wars have wreaked havoc on the countries of Angola, Sierra Leone, Liberia, and Somalia. All have experienced some amount of serious conflicts in the past decade. Many of the civil wars are not reported by the news media worldwide, even though the number of people affected, injured, and killed is deplorable. In places such as the Ivory Coast, Nigeria, and Zimbabwe, the streets have become battlegrounds.

Creating stability in parts of Africa has been challenging, as civil unrest and political corruption continue in many African countries. The core industrialized countries have been hesitant to step in or invest in the peace and stability of Africa. Governments of more than a few African countries have been unable to bring stability or to provide for their people. For example, Somalia has no central government; rather, it is ruled by warlords and village chiefs. Corruption, dictatorial rule, and military force have been major components of government rule in these cases.

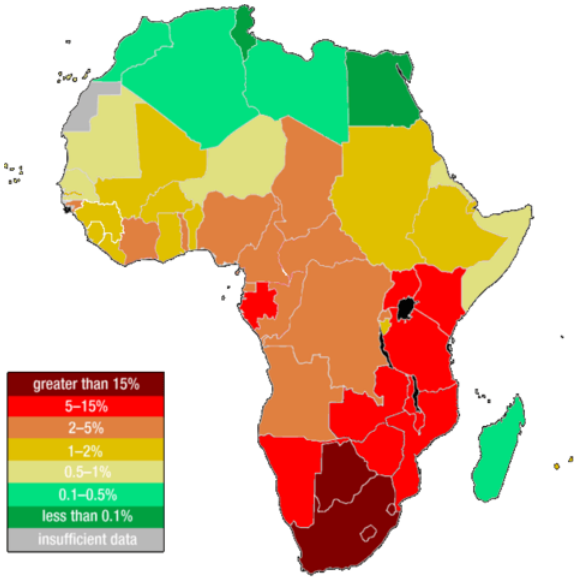
HIV and AIDS in Sub-Saharan Africa

Sub-Saharan Africa must cope with high numbers of people infected with HIV and AIDS. From South Africa to Kenya, there is a line of countries with some of the highest percentages of HIV-infected people in the world. The HIV virus has infected more than 24 percent of adults in Botswana, and some villages have lost an entire generation of adults to AIDS. The AIDS pandemic has become a major health crisis for Sub-Saharan Africa. According to the World Health Organization (WHO), as many as 30 million people in this realm are HIV-infected.

It is possible to live with HIV for years before dying of AIDS. HIV-infected individuals can pass the virus to others without knowing they have it, and millions of people die of AIDS in Sub-Saharan Africa without ever knowing they were infected. The lack of education, HIV testing, and medical services hinder progress toward stopping this deadly disease. Prevention is an ideal that has not materialized yet. Many people do not want to be tested out of fear of rejection by their families and friends if they are infected. AIDS will surely kill millions more in Africa before a solution is found.

Many other diseases are common in Sub-Saharan Africa. Some are spread by vectors in the environment. Mosquitoes spread illnesses such as malaria and yellow fever, which are common throughout the realm. Sleeping sickness is spread by the tsetse fly, which can also infect cattle and livestock. Hepatitis is widespread. Schistosomiasis, tuberculosis, and typhoid are also common.

Unsanitary conditions and polluted water are breeding grounds for microbes that cause diseases. People living in unsanitary conditions are more likely to come in contact with and become infected with these diseases and are also less likely to obtain medical attention at an early stage of the disease.



This map shows the estimated percentage of adults with HIV in Sub-Saharan Africa for each state based on best estimates by the World Health Organization and the United Nations.

Tourism in Sub-Saharan Africa

Sub-Saharan Africa has great potential for the development of tourism. Tourism is considered a post-industrial activity with mixed-income opportunities. If Africa can manage its resources and provide a safe environment for travelers, tourism will have a strong impact on Africa's economic growth and will play a significant role in its future.

Tourism is a growing sector of the global economy. Travel and tourism jobs are increasing worldwide. Africa as a whole attracts less than 5 percent of total world tourists and accounts for only a small percentage of international tourism income. Given the region's slim share of the tourism market and the expected growth of the sector worldwide, Africa can expect to increase its share of global tourism.

Sub-Saharan Africa has a strong supply-side potential to attract tourists. Beach resorts alone create a large draw for tourists. The coastal waters of the Indian Ocean boast some of the finest beaches in the world, with plenty of opportunities for sailing, diving, or other water sports. South Africa is proud of its secluded beaches and beautiful coastline. Other well-known coastal tourist destinations include Zanzibar, Tanzania; Benguerra Island in Mozambique; and the Seychelles. Other areas with tourism potential are the wildlife parks and game preserves. Cultural locations with a rich heritage of historical significance are growing in their attractiveness to and accessibility for world travelers.

Tourist Destinations in Sub-Saharan Africa

Africa excels in attracting tourists to its wildlife and game reserves. Safari tourism highlights exotic creatures, including elephants, lions, rhinos, hippos, and big game. Africa is full of extensive game reserves and national parks. The following are some of the most visited animal safari destinations (* indicates a UNESCO World Heritage Site):

- Kruger National Park, South Africa
- Selous Game Reserve, Tanzania*
- Amboseli Reserve, Kenya
- Serengeti National Park, Tanzania*
- Kalahari Game Reserve, Botswana
- Berenty Nature Reserve, Madagascar
- Virunga (Gorilla) National Park, Congo (Zaire)*

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

Sub-Saharan Africa is replete with natural features or attractions that tourists gravitate toward, particularly tourists who are in search of outstanding scenic sites or desire an environmental adventure. There are dozens of awe-inspiring national parks throughout Africa. The following are some of the more interesting physical geography locations in Sub-Saharan Africa (* indicates a UNESCO World Heritage Site):

- Mt. Kilimanjaro, Tanzania*
- Mt. Kenya National Park, Kenya*
- Ngorongoro Crater, Tanzania
- Victoria Falls, Zambia/Zimbabwe
- Kamale Pinnacle, Cameroon Mountains
- Zuma Rock, Nigeria
- Table Mt. National Park, South Africa

Cultural and heritage tourism has grown immensely in recent years. Cultural assets and heritage landscapes have always provided for excellent tourist attractions. Sub-Saharan Africa has a great wealth of culture and heritage to attract tourists. The following are a few of the most well-known cultural destinations in the realm (* indicates a UNESCO World Heritage Site):

- Timbuktu (Tombouctou), Mali*
- St. Peter's Basilica, Ivory Coast
- Ashanti-National Cultural Center, Ghana*
- Great Zimbabwe Ruins, Zimbabwe*
- Robben Island, South Africa*
- Soweto City Tour, South Africa
- Rock City of Lalibela, Ethiopia*
- Ancient City of Abomey, Benin*



Female bush elephants in Tanzania. Females usually live in herds.

Wildlife and big game are natural resources for tourism. Countries in Sub-Saharan Africa have created many protected areas for wildlife. Every African country, urban center, or rural village is its own unique tourism magnet. The tourism business, however, is broader than just the sites themselves. Considerations need to be made for transportation to and from the country and final destination.

Hotels and guest accommodations, such as food services, restaurants, and the availability of other types of consumer goods, need to be considered. Services need to be available that link the various components of a trip, such as guide services in national parks or city bus tours. The attractiveness and competitiveness of each tourism destination will depend on the site's quality and accessibility.

There are many positive and negative aspects of tourism, and a trade-off is usually needed. Heavy tourism traffic might have a negative impact on the environment, cultural stereotypes tend to be exploited, and the disparity between wealthy tourists and service workers earning a modest wage may lend itself to divisions and social friction.

Tourism demands higher levels of security and public health at all levels. Money spent on tourism development is money not spent on schools or clinics. On the other hand, without tourism income, there are no jobs. Tourism brings to the surface both centrifugal and centripetal cultural forces. To be successful, Africa will need to balance out the economic need for tourism with its willingness to comply with the requirements of the tourism industry.

Key Takeaways

- Sub-Saharan Africa's many core cities and peripheral regions create a high rural-to-urban shift.
- Much of the realm's economic activity is conducted in the informal sector.
- Most countries in this realm are in the earlier stages of the index of economic development.
- The integration into global markets has brought urbanization and development to many of the major core cities.
- The informal sector dominates many of the economic activities in Sub-Saharan Africa. The emergence of stable governments and economic structures usually results in a stronger formal sector of the economy, which in turn provides improved national infrastructure.
- Sub-Saharan Africa is a realm with a high diversity of languages and religions. In an attempt to provide an equal footing for all languages, many countries have chosen their colonial language as their official language to avoid giving speakers of one language any political advantage over another.
- Parts of Sub-Saharan Africa continue to experience social unrest and civil war. Armed conflicts in Rwanda and the Congo (Zaire) have either killed or affected millions of people.
- A high percentage of people in Sub-Saharan Africa are infected with HIV—up to one-fourth of the population of some countries. Health care, education, and cultural forces are important factors in combating AIDS and the tropical diseases common in the realm.
- Sub-Saharan Africa has enormous potential to exploit their physical features and cultural heritage to expand its tourism market. It is often difficult to balance the investments for adequate infrastructure and services required for tourism with other needs, such as education and health care.

Vocabulary Terms

Chapter 8.3 Human Geography of Sub-Saharan Africa

	Acquired Immune Deficiency Syndrome. The disease affects the body's cellular immunity, greatly lowering the resistance to infection and disease.
ancestor worship	the belief that respecting and honoring one's ancestors will cause them to live on in the spirit world after death
	Pertaining to traditional religious beliefs in which nature and objects, such as animals and mountains, are thought to have spirits
	The movement of the Bantu peoples southward throughout Africa, spreading their language and culture, from around 500 B.C.E. to around C.E. 1000
cash crops	crops, such as tobacco, sugar, and cotton, raised in large quantities in order to be sold for profit
	Human Immunodeficiency Virus. The virus that will eventually cause AIDS
	The deliberate killing of a large group of people, especially those of a particular ethnic group
	Disease that occurs over a wide geographic area and affects a very high proportion of the population. Such as AIDS

Applying Knowledge

Interactive Notebook Activities

1. Determine the 10 largest cities of Sub-Saharan Africa and locate them on a map.
2. Select a country in this realm that is indicated to have a higher percentage of people who do not follow Christianity or Islam. Research and outline the indigenous religions that are followed by the people who live there.
3. On a map of Africa, locate the tourist attractions mentioned in this section.

Discussion and Study Questions

1. How does the core-peripheral spatial relationship apply to Sub-Saharan Africa?
2. What is the difference between the formal and informal sectors of the economy?
3. How do the countries of Sub-Saharan Africa fit into the index of economic development model?
4. What roles do women play in the realm's socioeconomic environment?
5. Approximately how many languages are spoken in Africa? How many are spoken in Nigeria alone?
6. Why would a former colony under European imperialism agree to use the language of its colonizer as its national language when dozens or hundreds of languages are already spoken in the country?
7. How are Christianity and Islam distributed across Sub-Saharan Africa?
8. How are the armed conflicts in Rwanda, the Congo, and Somalia different from each other?
9. Why is the HIV/AIDS situation so difficult to combat?
10. What are some of the obstacles in increasing tourism development in Sub-Saharan Africa?

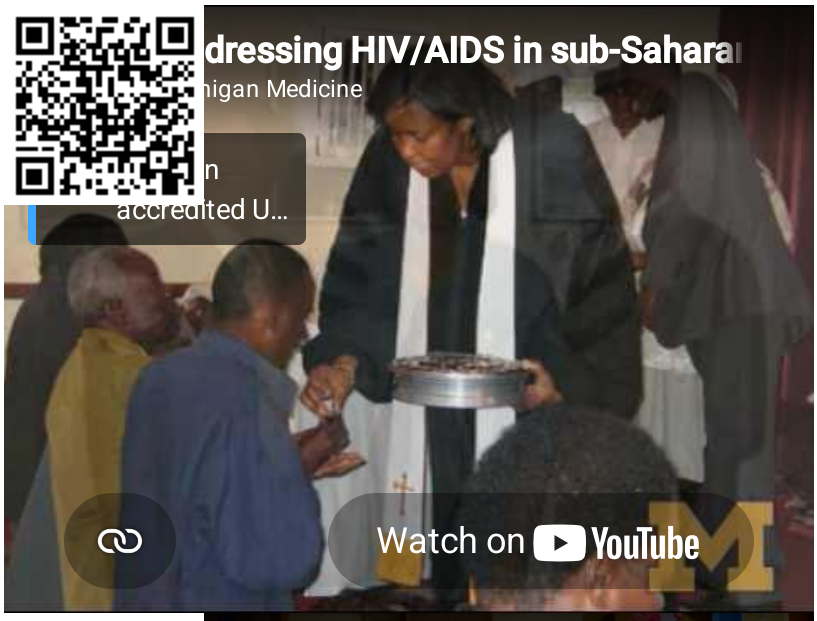
Mapping Exercise

ESRI GEO Inquiry

Foreign Aid: Students will identify major U.S. recipients and the categories of assistance provided by various government agencies. Students will be able to explain how foreign aid benefits the U.S.



https://k12.libretexts.org/@go/page/1964


dressing HIV/AIDS in sub-Sahara
higan Medicine
n
accredited U...
Watch on YouTube


come Inequality Trends in sub-Sah
DP Africa
Watch on YouTube


omoting girls' right to education in
ESCODakar
COMPLETION
FOR LOWER
SECONDARY
EDUCATION
IS ONLY
31%
Watch on YouTube



Helpful Websites for the Study of Geography

Canadian Encyclopedia is an encyclopedia funded by the Canadian government covering all branches of knowledge. Their scholarly collection includes interactive materials.

CIA World Factbook provides information on the people, history, government, economy, energy, geography, communications, transportation, military, and transnational issues for the world's entities.

Congress.gov is a US government website where you can find federal legislation, past and present, as well as information about the US legal system.

Drug Enforcement Administration (DEA) is a government agency website that provides current news, resources, topics of interest, information about drugs, careers in the DEA, and a tip hotline.

Library of Congress is the largest library in the world and provides manuscripts, files, information, pictures, and videos.

NASA Earth Observatory (NEO) is a US government agency website that allows users to search for and retrieve satellite images of Earth.

National Archives is a US government website that provides historical documents, photos, records, publications, and educator resources.

National Oceanic and Atmospheric Association (NOAA) is a US government agency website that provides weather-related information and ocean research.

National Map is a website by the United States Geological Survey and other federal, state, and local agencies that delivers topographic information for the United States.

NationMaster is a massive central data source and a handy way to graphically compare nations.

Real-Time World Air Quality Index is a website that measures most locations in the world for air pollution in real time.

StateMaster is a unique statistical database, which allows you to research and compare a multitude of different data on US states.

United Nations (UN) is an international organization founded in 1945 and made up of 193 member states. The UN maintains international peace and security, protects human rights, delivers humanitarian aid, promotes sustainable development, and upholds international law.

United States Census Bureau is a US government agency that provides a population clock, data, surveys, statistics, a library with information and infographics, news about the economy, and much more.

United States Geological Survey (USGS) is a US government agency website that provides scientific information about the natural hazards that threaten lives, the natural resources we rely on, the health of our ecosystems and environment, and the impacts of climate and land-use change.

Whitehouse.gov is a US government website that provides the latest presidential news, information about the budget, policy, defense, and many more topics.

World Health Organization (WHO) is under the United Nations and provides leadership on matters critical to health, shapes the research agenda on health, and monitors the health situation and assessing health trends around the world. Their website provides information on the state of health around the world, outbreaks, current health news, and more.

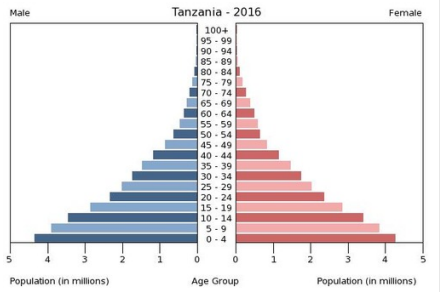
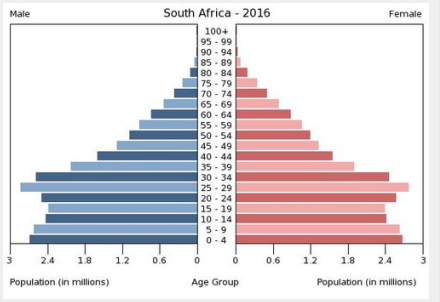
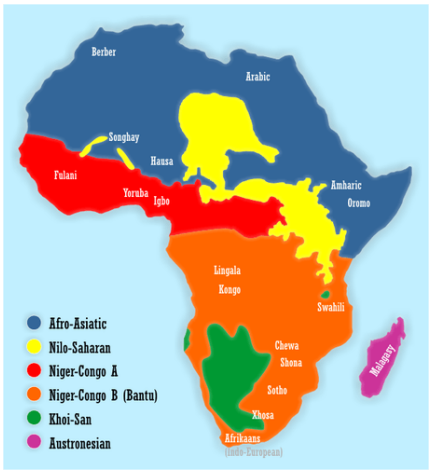
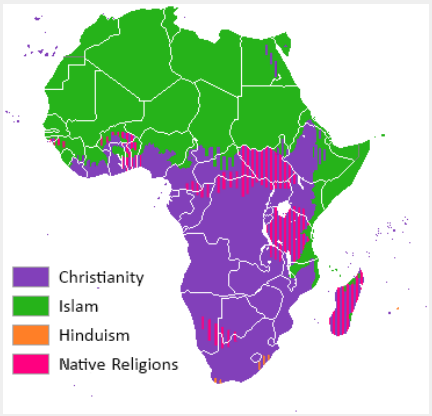
LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

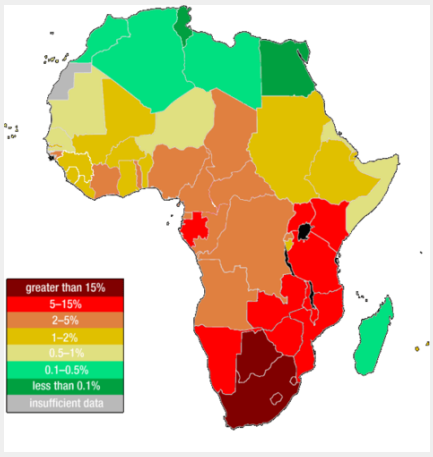
World Trade Organization (WTO) is an intergovernmental organization that regulates international trade. The website provides

LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

information on the history of the multilateral trading system, featured videos, news and events, trade topics, and more.

Image	Reference	Attributions
	[Figure 1]	**Credit:** Gary Bembridge **Source:** https://www.flickr.com/photos/tipsfortravellers/557269907 **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 2]	**Credit:** J. Ehlers, UC Riverside **Source:** https://upload.wikimedia.org/Wikipedia/commons/c/cb/Cowpea_vendors_Thies_Senegal_2008.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 3]	**Credit:** Author:Jack-z, Description:Maasai Woman Meeyu Sale Wearing her Finest by our Request [Attribution], from Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Maasai_Woman_Meeyu_Sale_Wearing_her_Finest.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

	[Figure 5]	**Credit:** CIA World Factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/tz.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 6]	**Credit:** CIA World Factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/sf.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 7]	**Source:** https://upload.wikimedia.org/Wikipedia/commons/3/35/African_language_families.png **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 8]	**Credit:** https://wyhs-human-geography.wikispa...saharan+africa **Source:** https://upload.wikimedia.org/Wikipedia/commons/7/7f/Religion_distribution_Africa_crop.png **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

	[Figure 9]	**Credit:** By The Dilly Lama [CC BY 2.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/2.0)], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Rwandan_Genocide.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 10]	**Credit:** http://bhafricaproject2012.wikispace...aids+in+africa **Source:** https://upload.wikimedia.org/Wikipedia/commons/5/56/Map-of-HIV-Prevalance-in-Africa.png **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 11]	**Credit:** By Ikiwaner [GFDL 1.2 (http://www.gnu.org/licenses/old-licenses/fdl-1.2.html)], from Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Serengeti_Elefantenherde2.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

This page titled 8.3: Human Geography of Sub-Saharan Africa (2 Days) is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by CK12 via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

8.4: West Africa (2 Days)

Chapter Challenges

1. Summarize the main geographic aspects of each country in West Africa.
2. Understand each country's development pattern and their current political situation.
3. Explain how family size and economic activities are related to population growth.
4. Outline the main economic activities of each country and how they are related to natural resources.

Learning Objectives

TEKS Regional Unit 08: Africa Chapter 8.4 West Africa

WG.1B Describe the human and physical characteristics of the same regions at different periods of time to evaluate relationships between past events and current conditions.

WG.5A Analyze how the character of a place is related to its political, economic, social, and cultural elements.

WG.5B Interpret political, economic, social, and demographic indicators (gross domestic product per capita, life expectancy, literacy, and infant mortality) to determine the level of development and standard of living in nations using the terms Human Development Index, less developed, newly industrialized, and more developed.

WG.7DExamine benefits and challenges of globalization, including connectivity, standard of living, pandemics, and loss of local culture.

WG.9A Identify physical and/or human factors such as climate, vegetation, language, trade networks, political units, river systems, and religion that constitute a region.

WG.9B Describe different types of regions, including formal, functional, and perceptual regions.

WG.11B Identify the factors affecting the location of different types of economic activities, including subsistence and commercial agriculture, manufacturing, and service industries.

WG.12B Analyze how the creation, distribution, and management of key natural resources affects the location and patterns of movement of products, money, and people.

WG.13A Interpret maps to explain the division of land, including man-made and natural borders, into separate political units such as cities, states, or countries.

WG.14C Analyze current events to infer the physical and human processes that lead to the formation of boundaries and other political divisions.

WG.16B Describe elements of culture, including language, religion, beliefs and customs, institutions, and technologies.

WG.18C Identify examples of cultures that maintain traditional ways, including traditional economies.

WG.22D Use standard grammar, spelling, sentence structure, and punctuation.

WG.22E Create original work using proper citations and understanding and avoiding plagiarism.

TEKS and ELPS for Regional World Geography Unit 08--Africa from TEKS Resource System.

West Africa

The region of West Africa includes the southern portion of the bulge of the continent, which extends westward to the Atlantic Ocean. This region is bisected by the African Transition Zone, which borders the southern edge of the Sahara Desert. The main physical features include the Sahara Desert and the Niger River. The Cameroon Highlands are located on the eastern border between Nigeria and Cameroon. At 4,100 miles long, the Nile River is the longest, while the Congo River is Africa's second longest at 2,922 miles in length. The Niger River is Africa's 3rd-longest river and extends more than 2,600 miles from the Guinea Highlands through Mali, Niger, and Nigeria before reaching the Atlantic Ocean in the Gulf of Guinea.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

Some geographers include the country of Chad or portions of it within the region of West Africa. In this textbook, Chad is listed with Central Africa. The portions of Chad located north of the African Transition Zone share similar characteristics with North Africa. Off the coast of Mauritania are the Cape Verde Islands, which are united as an independent country associated with Africa. Cape Verde was once a Portuguese colony but received its independence in 1975. Western Sahara has been in conflict with Morocco over independence and is most often associated with the region of North Africa because of the influence of Islam and because of its connection to Morocco.

The African Transition Zone cuts across the region of West Africa, indicating a division between Islam and Christianity and between the Sahara Desert and the tropics. This diversity in religion and climate is usually exhibited with a north/south division. Islam is the dominant religion on the north side of the African Transition Zone. Christianity is more dominant to the south. The two religions often clash in the areas where they meet. Traditional beliefs and animist religions are also practiced in the African Transition Zone.



This map shows the region of West Africa as defined in this chapter. The African Transition Zone crosses the middle of this region.

The terms “state” and “country” are often used interchangeably by the world community outside of the United States. Both are meant to refer to a physical unit with a sovereign and independent government. In Sub-Saharan Africa the term “state” is commonly used to refer to a country in any one of the various regions.

Niger



Map of Niger

The former French colony of Niger is landlocked, with the Sahara Desert making up its largest portion. Niger is a land of subsistence farmers, and most of the population lives in the southern regions. The country is less than 20 percent urban. Other economic activities include uranium mining, which is the country’s main export. The world demand for uranium has not been strong in recent years. Oil exploration has begun and international oil corporations have garnered contracts for drilling.

The Sahara Desert is moving southward, and the agrarian culture at the base of Niger's society is often plagued by drought and famine. The Niger River flows through the southwestern region and provides fresh water, but the northern region is mainly the Sahara Desert, and large portions are covered with sand dunes.

The country has extreme demographics. Niger has the highest fertility rate in the world, and half the population is under the age of 15, causing a population explosion that taxes the sparse natural resources and brings even more poverty to a country at the bottom end of the index of economic development. Infant mortality rates in Niger have been the highest in the world.

The mainly Sunni Muslim country has a rich cultural base but suffers from economic problems that appear to increase with the increase in population and desertification. Heavy national debt has hindered social services and has required a considerable amount of foreign aid from a number of sources. France has been a main contributor of providing economic aid along with the United Nations (UN).

The political conditions in Niger are typical of the region. For the first 30 years after independence from France, the country was ruled by a single political party and military rule. There have been several coups and various political leaders have been in power. A dispute remains with Libya over its northern border. Ethnic infighting with a minority Tuareg group has emerged in recent years, bringing conflict and discord.

The Tuareg, found throughout northwest Africa in the interior Saharan region, have many ethnic clans and have been masters of camel caravans, often with a nomadic heritage. Their clothing is often made of cloth colored with an indigo dye that distinguishes them from other ethnic groups. The Tuareg fought historic battles for an independent homeland against the French during the colonial era.

Mali



Map of Mali

To the west of Niger is Mali, another landlocked Muslim country dominated by the Sahara Desert. Mali was home to ancient empires. Wealth was historically gained from the mining of gold, salt, and copper. The Niger River flows through the entire southern region, providing a means of transportation and fishing as well as fresh water. The ancient city of Timbuktu, once a port on the Niger River, was a center of commerce and trade for the region and was used by the Tuareg as early as the 10th century.

Timbuktu has played an important role as an educational focal point for many of the peoples of the region. The University of Timbuktu is noted for its educational activities, colleges and madrasas (Islamic schools of learning). At one point in its history, it claimed to hold the largest collection of books in Africa. The capital city of Mali is not Timbuktu but Bamako, which is located in the southwest. Timbuktu remains a main tourist destination for the country and the region.

Mali shares similar political dynamics and demographics with Niger and the rest of the region. However, Mali now has a stable democratic government with little political conflict. There are issues with the Tuareg in the north and refugees from Ivory Coast in the south, but the country is politically stable in spite of the low standard of living and high population growth.

Mauritania



Map of Mauritania

Mauritania is also dominated by Islam and the Sahara Desert. Niger, Mali, and Mauritania are the largest of the West African states and together would cover the area of the United States east of the Mississippi River. The term “state” refers to countries with independent governments. Mauritania’s access to the Atlantic coast provides a shipping connection to the rest of the world. For years, the country fought over control of portions of Western Sahara but gave up those areas in 1975.

Unfortunately, the political and economic problems that are common in the region are evident in Mauritania. In 1960, the country gained its independence from the French, and a number of political coups and changes in government occurred as a result. Inter-ethnic conflicts exist between the African groups of the south and the Arab-Berber groups of the north.

Political unrest and economic hardships continue to add to the challenge of a growing population. Poverty, health care, and education have been major issues that require government support. Foreign aid has been critical to the operation of the country.

Large amounts of iron ore make up about 40 percent of the country’s exports. Fishing off of the coast has great potential but has been exploited by international fishing vessels. Thus, Mauritania is in danger of losing revenues and a declining resource base if protection is not secured. Even though the country is largely desert, most of the population works in subsistence agriculture.

Within certain communities in Mauritania, especially within the Arab Moor group, the concept of female beauty and prosperity was often associated with ample body size. Young girls were encouraged to eat high-fat foods in high quantities and at times were force-fed to put on weight. Being fat was an indication of wealth, and being thin was a sign of poverty and low self-esteem. This custom resulted in many women being considered overweight and obese by today’s health standards. This trend is not as common today, though it still exists. Many Mauritanian women consider this old-fashioned, and natural eating habits are more the standard. Global views regarding women might be contributing to the country’s current concept of beauty and health.

Senegal and the Gambia



Map of Senegal

https://k12.libretexts.org/@go/page/1967



Map of the Gambia

The country of Senegal on the Atlantic coast totally surrounds the independent country of the Gambia. Senegal was a French colony, while the Gambia was a British colony. The Gambia is an enclave of Senegal and extends on both sides of the Gambia River for about 186 miles. It is the smallest country on the mainland of Africa and is about the size of the US state of Connecticut. The two countries of Senegal and the Gambia were united into the confederation of Senegambia from 1982 to 1989 when it was dissolved. They have kept separate political identities ever since.

The capital of Senegal, Dakar, is located on the Cap-Vert Peninsula, which is the most extreme western extension of the African continent. Dakar was a main colonial port for French West Africa during colonial times. The French influence remains. The common currency in what were former French colonies is the West African Central African franc, which has a fixed rate in relation to the euro.

Guinea and Guinea-Bissau



Map of Guinea



Map of Guinea-Bissau

https://k12.libretexts.org/@go/page/1967

Freeing itself from the grip of Portuguese colonial rule was a hard-fought battle for Guinea-Bissau, which became independent in 1974. The political upheaval that followed up to the present has resulted in various coups, military rule, changes in leadership, and the assassination of their president in 2009. Without political stability, it is difficult to develop a growing economy. Graft, corruption, and civil war have devastated the country's infrastructure and hindered its economic development, making it among the poorest nations in the world. The country has to depend on outside aid to supply its basic needs.

The French colony of Guinea, which is larger than Guinea-Bissau, holds more promise due to its generous natural resource base, but Guinea has suffered the same types of political and economic disasters as its smaller neighbor. Though mineral resources are abundant, there is potential for increased agricultural production, where most of the people make their living. Guinea has a large amount of bauxite and other minerals, including diamonds and gold. The lack of infrastructure and political stability has discouraged investors from helping to develop these natural resources and converting them into national wealth.

Sierra Leone



Map of Sierra Leone

Sierra Leone has been devastated in the past decades due to brutal civil war and political turmoil. As a result, the country was one of the lowest in the world on the human development index. There has been little political stability. Military factions have wreaked havoc on the country since it gained independence from Britain in the early 1960s. After independence, the country's contested elections and multiple coups resulted in a ban on all but one political party and established military rule. At the core of the conflicts was competition for the control of the diamond industry, which was also a primary factor in the civil war.

The abuses of power escalated to a breaking point in the late 1980s, which set the stage for a decade-long civil war in the 1990s. A group calling themselves the Revolutionary United Front (RUF) pushed to take control of the eastern diamond mining sector through terrorist tactics and brute force. Thousands of people died and thousands more were mutilated by having their arms, legs, or other body parts cut off by machetes. Whole villages were destroyed and the residents killed, tortured, or maimed.

The government fell under various military coups and eventually resorted to hiring mercenaries to help push back the RUF forces. By 1998 the whole country resembled a military camp with arms and ammunition being trafficked to all sides. There was a total breakdown in state structures and institutions. At various times, there were agreements between the sides in hopes that a stable government could emerge, but the agreements broke down and the country continued to scramble for civility. Nigerian forces were actively fighting in the conflict. In 2000, British troops were employed to help evacuate foreign nationals and establish order. Military forces from neighboring Guinea also entered the country to attack RUF bases.

UN forces with US support eventually established a sense of control of the country. By 2003, major fighting was over and attempts were made to establish a civilian government. Approximately 50,000 people were killed in this civil war and as many as two million people were displaced. Sierra Leone set up a special court to address crimes against humanity. Sierra Leone has been working to establish a stable government and maintain a sense of order.



Diamond miners panning in the Kono District of Sierra Leone.

Diamonds have been used as currency to fund armed conflicts in this region, hence the term conflict diamonds or blood diamonds. The diamond trade still dominates and political factions still vie for control. Much of the diamond mining is uncontrolled, allowing considerable smuggling operations to operate. After the civil war, revenues from diamond mining increased from less than $10 million in 2000 to an estimated $130 million in 2004. The civil war destroyed the infrastructure of the country, and most of the resources were looted by forces on one side or another.

The economy has had a difficult time recovering. Most of the people make their living in subsistence agriculture. Medicine, food, and goods have been in a short supply. Many people have died due to the lack of these items during and after the civil war. Today the country struggles to recover as it works toward stabilization.

Liberia



Map of Liberia

To fully understand where Liberia is today as a country and as a people, one has to understand its background and its geopolitical history. Liberia has a unique background in that it was not a European colony and was not included in the Berlin Conference of 1884 as a country up for grabs in the scramble for African territory. The conference of colonial European powers who divided up Africa did establish borders for the majority of African countries. Liberia, which means “Land of the Free,” was a destination for freed slaves from the United States.

In 1847, Liberia became an independent country patterned after the US government, even naming its capital Monrovia after President James Monroe, the fifth US president. Many of the freed slaves from the United States returned to Africa and relocated to Liberia. The slavery experience in the United States gave returning Africans a different culture and history from those indigenous

to the African continent. Assimilation between the two groups was difficult. The division between the Americanized settler communities along the coast and the indigenous Africans of the interior continued to widen over the years.



These students in Bong County, Liberia, study by candlelight. They are part of the Accelerated Learning Program in the country, an effort to compress several years of education for older students who missed school during Liberia's civil war.

Centrifugal forces within the country surfaced in 1980 when a military-backed coup overthrew the government. This event became a turning point that escalated into social division and political unrest. Elections were held in 1985, which resulted in accusations of election fraud. Successive coups by various factions continued to plague the political arena. By 1989, civil war had commenced.

Military forces from the neighboring countries of Ghana, Guinea, Senegal, and Nigeria entered the conflict. Whoever was in charge of the government at any one time had plenty of opposition from the various factions. A warlord by the name of Charles Taylor became a major player and eventually took control of the government in 1997 following a bloody insurgency in the capital.

Marines from the United States were deployed to protect the US embassy and personnel. Nigerian military troops pushed into the conflict. By 2003, more than 15,000 peacekeeping soldiers from the United Nations (UN) were active in Liberia. The power of the government was reduced to a minimum, and the warlord president Taylor was allowed asylum in Nigeria and later brought before the UN court in The Hague for war crimes against humanity.

In the end, more than 200,000 people were killed and the country was devastated. With UN troops bringing stability, the 2005 presidential election brought Ellen Johnson-Sirleaf, an economist with a Harvard degree. She became the first elected female head of state in Africa.

Poverty and the lack of goods and services have been a persistent problem for the people of Liberia. An agrarian society, few global corporations have made investments because of the long-standing civil war. As was true for Sierra Leone and other African countries such as Angola, the diamond trade helped fund the civil war. Diamonds from Sierra Leone had an estimated export value of more than $300 million annually in 2010.

Diamonds from these countries are often called blood diamonds because of their use as currency to fund death and destruction. The concept of blood diamonds originated in the civil war in Angola years earlier. The UN banned the export of blood diamonds from Liberia during the war and finally lifted the ban in 2007. Looting and corruption by warlords and military forces pillaged the country's other resources, leaving most of the population with few opportunities and advantages for the future.



Map of the Ivory Coast

The former French colony of Ivory Coast is often referred to by its French name of Côte d'Ivoire. Before independence in 1960, Ivory Coast was one of France's most prosperous West African colonies. During the 1960s and 1970s, the economy grew, and its production of cocoa beans became the largest in the world. Its coffee production became the third highest in the world after Brazil and Colombia. Ivory Coast is the leading exporter of palm oil and pineapples in Africa. The potential for economic prosperity remains but has been diminished over the past two decades because of the economic downturn in commodity prices and political instability that resulted in a devastating civil war.

From 1960 to 1993, the country only had one political leader. Though this brought continuity to the government and the economy grew in the early years, authoritarian rule resulted in civil unrest and dissatisfaction with the conditions in the country. Coups in 1999 and 2001 triggered the beginning of political division. Rebel leaders from the northern part of the country challenged the government's legitimacy and pushed for land reform and a change in citizenship qualifications. Rebel groups took over the northern regions and vied for control over the prime cocoa-growing lands. Fighters under warlords and militias from Sierra Leone and Liberia encroached on the western sectors to gain a foothold.

By 2003, French troops patrolled the western border region to provide security and stability. The country experimented with a unity government, but this broke down when the rebel groups failed to disarm. By 2007 the government and rebel leaders from the north worked out an agreement to reunite the country and dismantle the dividing zone between the north and south. French and UN troops remain to help implement the peace process.



Woman in Abidjan, Ivory Coast

https://k12.libretexts.org/@go/page/1967

The people of Ivory Coast are highly diverse. Religious affiliations are evenly split between Muslim, Christian, and animist. The economic success in agricultural production and recent oil exploration have attracted people from neighboring countries seeking opportunities and advantages. After the 2007 political agreements, approximately 20 percent of the population was made up of immigrant workers from neighboring countries, which are predominantly Muslim.

The small percentage of non-Africans are from France, Lebanon, Vietnam, and Spain. There are also a high number of missionaries from North American Protestant churches. Attacks against non-native-born citizens have occurred; qualification for citizenship is a major concern, and natural-born citizens often support stronger restrictions on non-natives becoming citizens or holding political offices.

Ghana



Map of Ghana

Named after the former Ghana Empire, the region of the Gold Coast was home to the Ashanti kingdom, which thrived in the slave trade. Many of the European colonial powers had sought to build fortified beachheads on the coast and profit from the lucrative trade in slaves, gold, and ivory. In the end, it was the British that dominated the region and established the Gold Coast colony. The push for independence came in 1957. Ghana was the first European colony to gain independence in Sub-Saharan Africa.

Ghana remains a poor country, but it is endowed with natural resources. Even with half the population employed in agriculture, the country is experiencing positive economic growth. Gold and other mining operations contribute to the economy. Individual remittances and foreign aid remain a necessary component of the country's economic well being.

Kwame Nkrumah was the first prime minister and the first president. He advocated for a Pan-African concept that would pull the African countries together, opposed neocolonial activity, and increased trade and interaction within the African community. His ideas were welcome and are still celebrated, but his authoritarian rule brought about his downfall. In 1966, he was ousted in a military coup and exiled to Guinea.

The political dynamics that followed were typical of the region with a pattern of corruption, coups, and authoritarian rule. It was not until 1981, when Jerry Rawlings came to power, that all political parties were banned and a new constitution was introduced. By 1992, the political parties were reinstated and the country began to experience political stability and democratic rule, which has endured to the present, making Ghana one of the most stable democracies in Sub-Saharan Africa.



Ghana is a former British colony and was one of the first African colonies to gain independence (1957). Fishing is still a major economic activity along the coast.

Ghana is diverse in its people and in its physical geography. The physical terrain ranges from coastal plains and interior hills to the large Volta basin in the center. The Volta River was dammed up to produce hydroelectric power, resulting in the world's largest artificial lake, Lake Volta, which covers a large portion of eastern Ghana.

The cultural diversity is exemplified by many ethnic groups, more than 80 languages, and at least double that in the number of dialects spoken within the country. English is the official language and is used in all public education. Funding for education has been available, and the people have access to quality educational services and an increasing agenda of social services. Ghana is showing promise in providing its people with a stable and thriving prospect for growth and opportunities.

Burkina Faso



Map of Burkina Faso

Upstream on the Volta River is the former French colony of Upper Volta. In 1960, the former French colony attained full independence, and its name was changed in 1984 to Burkina Faso, meaning "the country of honorable people." Burkina Faso is a landlocked nation without a port city. The country lacks natural resources and has few industries. Subsistence agriculture is the main economic activity for about 90 percent of the population. Droughts and desertification continue because of overgrazing of the land and the natural southward shift of the Sahara Desert. Rainfall varies from forty inches in the south to only ten inches in the north. This is one of the poorest nations on Earth.

Political unrest and a series of military coups after independence have not provided stability. The current president has been in power since 1987 and continues to win in presidential elections. New limits may restrict his term in office past 2015. Many people seek employment in the neighboring countries of Ivory Coast and Ghana. This extremely poor nation occupies the second-to-last place on the UN's human development index. At less than 25 percent, Burkina Faso has the lowest literacy rate in the world. The poor economy offers few resources to increase educational services.



Map of Togo



Map of Benin

Both Togo and Benin were French colonies at the time of independence. The Berlin Conference in 1884 accepted Germany's control over the coastal region that became Togoland in 1905. After World War I, Germany lost this colony and the territory was administered between the British and the French. The French colony of Dahomey eventually became independent in 1960 and changed its name to the People's Republic of Benin in 1975.

Togo and Benin are both elongated countries with major port cities on the Gulf of Guinea along the Atlantic coast. Benin is about the same size in area as Liberia or the US state of Kentucky. Benin is twice the size in physical area as Togo. The south is a few degrees cooler than the north, where the scrub forests and grasslands of the savanna-type landscape can be more arid, as it is closer to the African Transition Zone. A nature reserve and a national park in Benin's northern portion attract tourists to see big game animals such as elephants, lions, and hippos in their natural environment. Both countries have a poor economy with most of the people working in agriculture. The political dynamics are similar to other West African states.

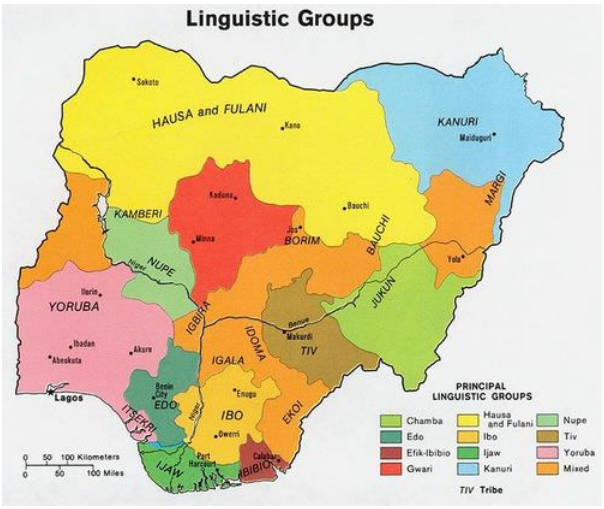
CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org



Map of Nigeria

Africa's most populous country is Nigeria. The exact population has been difficult to determine, but 2017 estimates report the population to be more than 190 million. This is a country of more than 250 different ethnic groups with twice that many separate languages or dialects. English is the official language, along with Hausa, Yoruba, and Igbo (Ibo), all of which are spoken by 10 million people or more. The distribution of the major ethnic groups is illustrated by the different regions of the country.

Hausa groups are found mainly in the northern region, Kanuri groups in the northeast, Yoruba in the southwest, and Igbo (Ibo) in the southeast. Ethnic division has also caused serious confrontations and violence. In 1967, a separatist movement in the eastern Igbo region created the independent nation of Biafra. This sparked an all-out civil war that lasted more than two years and resulted in more than one million deaths. Political divisions did not end even after the two sides reconciled and the country was united under the same government in 1970. Political instability in Nigeria has resulted in an almost endless number of military coups and government leaders being removed from office.



There are many linguistic groups in Nigeria but only four main ethnic groups: Yoruba, Hausa, Kanuri, and Igbo (Ibo), each in the four corners of the country.

The size and diversity of this country create a host of centrifugal forces that can bring about divisions along any number of cultural lines. Religious issues add to political instability. The north is mainly Muslim, as it is located in the African Transition Zone. The south is mainly Christian. A large percentage of the population follows animist religions with many different traditional beliefs. Clashes have erupted in the streets that pit Muslims and Christians against each other. Several northern provinces have pushed to have the Sharia criminal code made into the area's civil law. There are regions where it is not uncommon for people to have a mix of Christian and animist beliefs.

Family size has been large in Nigeria, which has caused an exploding population. Statistically, Nigeria has more people of African heritage than any other country in the world. The population density is equivalent to having half the population of the United States

pushed into an area the size of Texas and Oklahoma. Most of the population makes their living on subsistence agriculture, but millions are employed in the growing urban service sector.

Nigeria's main economic engine is the oil industry, which accounts for up to 80 percent of government revenues and is the number one export product. Nigeria is a member of the Organization of Petroleum Exporting Countries (OPEC) and is one of the world's top ten oil-exporting countries. The lucrative oil business has attracted many seeking to share in the profits.

The government's distribution of oil revenues has brought about even more infighting, corruption, and mismanagement within the political leadership. Rebels and militant groups along the Niger Delta, where most of the oil activity is located, have attacked the oil industry's infrastructure and taken workers hostage. They want a larger share of the revenues to remain in Nigeria and to go to their people rather than the government or CEOs of international corporations.

Poverty, a low standard of living, the lack of opportunities and advantages, a poor educational system, or the lack of social services does not diminish the human spirit. Confronting all these issues and more, the people of West Africa and Nigeria are vibrant, energetic, and hard working and value the institutions of family and religion. Just because they have not transitioned to a consumer society does not mean they cannot find fulfillment and happiness in their lives.

A survey conducted by social scientists in 2001 and reported by BBC News in 2003, indicated that Nigeria had the highest percentage of happy people of any country in the world at that time. The status of each country may change from year to year, but the interesting part is that the survey confirmed that money or income level does not always equate to happiness.

Countries such as Nigeria, with a low level of per-capita income, can still highly value their heritage and the traditions that revolve around their family and community and transcend the global push for economic gain and the possession of consumer items. Much can be said for the vibrant cultural attributes of the people of West Africa and its developing countries.

Key Takeaways

- Most of West Africa lies in the African Transition Zone, with portions north and south of the transitional region. Dry, desert conditions exist to the north and tropical conditions exist to the south.
- The main economic activity in the region is subsistence agriculture. Minerals, diamonds, or oil are also extracted in varying amounts in West Africa.
- West Africa has a large number of independent states that share similar economic qualities of poverty with rapidly expanding populations. Foreign aid and international assistance have been extensive.
- The transition from a colony to an independent nation has not been without serious political conflicts. Bloody civil wars, military coups, and political unrest have plagued the region.
- In spite of the political difficulties, poverty and the lack of resources, the people of West Africa hold vibrant cultural values that revolve around family and religion. The diversity of languages, religious beliefs, and rich cultural traditions provide an African heritage that is celebrated and valued by its people.

Vocabulary Terms

Chapter 8.4 West Africa

	People who live in what is now called Ghana, in west Africa, and who are known for their artful weaving and colorful asasia, or kente cloth
	an island off the coast of Senegal that served as a major departure point for slaves during the slave trade
	an impressive city that is completely safe. The city has many beautiful mosques
	first used by Berber nomads, could travel 60 miles a day and go longer than other animals without water

Applying Knowledge

Discussion and Study Questions

1. What has been the general political pattern after independence in West Africa?
2. Which country has the highest number of ethnic groups? What are the four main ethnic groups there?
3. Why are Senegal and the Gambia two separate countries? What river flows through this area?
4. How do most of the people in West Africa make a living?
5. What are blood diamonds? What two countries in West Africa have had civil wars based on them?
6. How did Liberia become a country? Why was Liberia never colonized by Europeans?
7. With more than eighty indigenous languages, why is English the official language of Ghana?
8. What was the Pan-African concept, and how did it affect West Africa?
9. How have natural resources contributed to the wealth of the region?
10. How will these countries address their high population growth in the future?

Real-World Geography Exercise

1. Using Google Maps, complete the following activities:
    a. Locate each place on the bulleted list below.
    b. Find the nearest city with an international airport in proximity to each location on the bulleted list below.
    c. Calculate the distance and travel time by plane to each city from the San Francisco International Airport.
2. Using NASA Latitude and Longitude Finder, determine the latitude and longitude for each location on the bulleted list below.
3. Be prepared to share and discuss your answers.

- Cameroon Highlands
- Gambia River
- Lake Volta
- Niger Delta
- Timbuktu
- Volta River

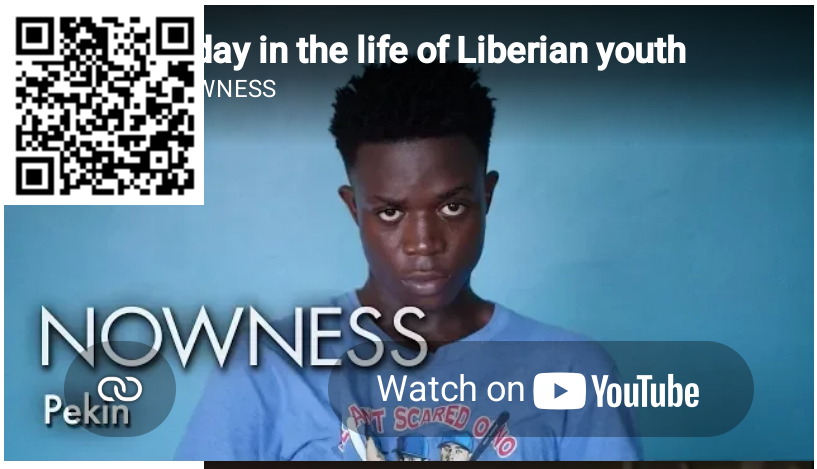
Mapping Exercise

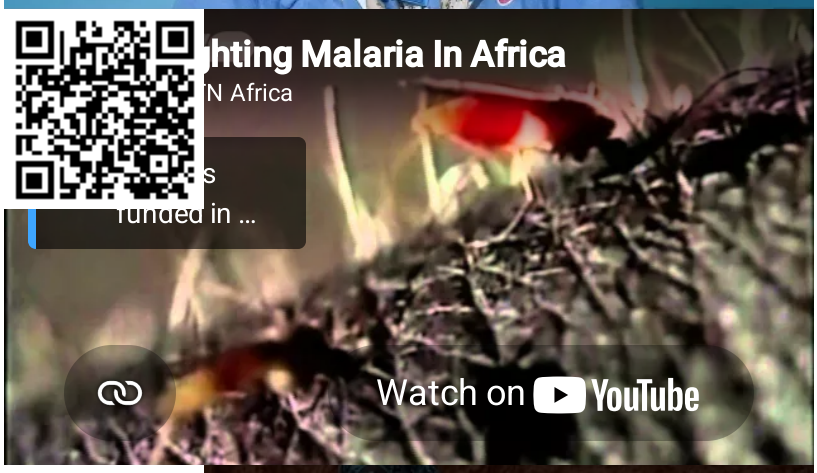
ESRI GEOInquiry

Malaria: Students will investigate the spatial patterns of malaria risks. Students will analyze environmental factors related to malaria control in Africa.



https://k12.libretexts.org/@go/page/1967


day in the life of Liberian youth
WNESS
NOWNESS
Pekin
Watch on YouTube


hting Malaria In Africa
N Africa
s
funded in ...
Watch on YouTube


side Ivory Coast's hidden gold rush
Economist
Watch on YouTube


li's Geographic Challenge
Arid Desert
Northern Core
MALI
Timbuktu
Gao
Niger River
NIGER
Fertile Savanna Region
Bamako
Southern Core
BURKINA FASO
GUINEA
Watch on YouTube


geria's Geographic Challenge
CHAD
Hausa-Fulani
BENIN
NIGERIA
Abuja
Yoruba
Igbo
Ijaw
Gulf of Guinea
Watch on YouTube


Village In Mauritania Finds Its Wa
ld Food Programme
Watch on YouTube



Helpful Websites for the Study of Geography

Canadian Encyclopedia is an encyclopedia funded by the Canadian government covering all branches of knowledge. Their scholarly collection includes interactive materials.

CIA World Factbook provides information on the people, history, government, economy, energy, geography, communications, transportation, military, and transnational issues for the world's entities.

Congress.gov is a US government website where you can find federal legislation, past and present, as well as information about the US legal system.

Drug Enforcement Administration (DEA) is a government agency website that provides current news, resources, topics of interest, information about drugs, careers in the DEA, and a tip hotline.

Library of Congress is the largest library in the world and provides manuscripts, files, information, pictures, and videos.

NASA Earth Observatory (NEO) is a US government agency website that allows users to search for and retrieve satellite images of Earth.

National Archives is a US government website that provides historical documents, photos, records, publications, and educator resources.

National Oceanic and Atmospheric Association (NOAA) is a US government agency website that provides weather-related information and ocean research.

National Map is a website by the United States Geological Survey and other federal, state, and local agencies that delivers topographic information for the United States.

NationMaster is a massive central data source and a handy way to graphically compare nations.

Real-Time World Air Quality Index is a website that measures most locations in the world for air pollution in real time.

StateMaster is a unique statistical database, which allows you to research and compare a multitude of different data on US states.

United Nations (UN) is an international organization founded in 1945 and made up of 193 member states. The UN maintains international peace and security, protects human rights, delivers humanitarian aid, promotes sustainable development, and upholds international law.

United States Census Bureau is a US government agency that provides a population clock, data, surveys, statistics, a library with information and infographics, news about the economy, and much more.

United States Geological Survey (USGS) is a US government agency website that provides scientific information about the natural hazards that threaten lives, the natural resources we rely on, the health of our ecosystems and environment, and the impacts of climate and land-use change.

Whitehouse.gov is a US government website that provides the latest presidential news, information about the budget, policy, defense, and many more topics.

World Health Organization (WHO) is under the United Nations and provides leadership on matters critical to health, shapes the research agenda on health, and monitors the health situation and assessing health trends around the world. Their website provides information on the state of health around the world, outbreaks, current health news, and more.

LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

World Trade Organization (WTO) is an intergovernmental organization that regulates international trade. The website provides

https://k12.libretexts.org/@go/page/1967

information on the history of the multilateral trading system, featured videos, news and events, trade topics, and more.

Image	Reference	Attributions
	[Figure 1]	**Credit:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeograp...3-west-africa/ **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/36eea46a6295213ba1be9329de919045.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 2]	**Credit:** CIA World Factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/ng.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 3]	**Credit:** CIA World Factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/ml.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

	[Figure 4]	**Credit:** CIA World Factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/mr.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 5]	**Credit:** CIA World Factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/sg.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 6]	**Credit:** CIA World Factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/ga.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 7]	**Credit:** CIA World Factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/gv.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

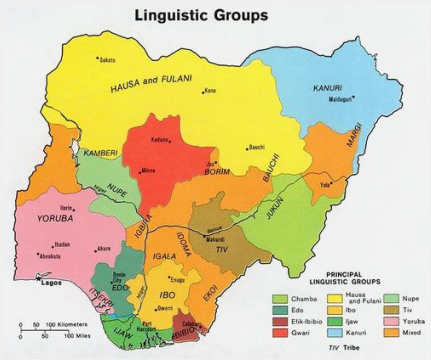
	[Figure 8]	**Credit:** CIA World Factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/pu.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 9]	**Credit:** CIA World Factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/sl.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 10]	**Credit:** By USAID [Public domain], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://upload.wikimedia.org/Wikipedia/commons/7/7f/Sierra_Leone_miners_panning.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

	[Figure 11]	**Credit:** CIA World Factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/li.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 12]	**Credit:** By USAID [Public domain], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Liberian_students.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 13]	**Credit:** CIA World Factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/iv.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

	[Figure 14]	**Credit:** By Steve Evans from India and USA (West Africa) [CC BY 2.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/2.0)], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Ivorian_woman.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 15]	**Credit:** CIA World Factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/gh.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 16]	**Credit:** By hiyori13 [CC BY-SA 2.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/2.0)], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Fishing_boats_Cape_Coast_Ghana.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

	[Figure 17]	**Credit:** CIA World Factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/uv.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 18]	**Credit:** CIA World Factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/to.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 19]	**Credit:** CIA World Factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/bn.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

https://k12.libretexts.org/@go/page/1967

	**[Figure 20]**	**Credit:** CIA World Factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/ni.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	**[Figure 21]**	**Credit:** Central Intelligene Agency, CIA **Source:** Perry-Castañeda Library Map Collection **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

This page titled 8.4: West Africa (2 Days) is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by CK12 via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

8.5: Central Africa (1 Day)

Chapter Challenges

1. Summarize the attributes of the Central African countries.
2. Outline the major armed conflicts in the region and why they are occurring.
3. Explain how local culture and tradition remain evident in the daily lives of Central African people.
4. Understand the role of women in Central Africa.

Learning Objectives

TEKS Regional Unit 08; Africa Chapter 8.5 Central Africa

WG.5B Interpret political, economic, social, and demographic indicators (gross domestic product per capita, life expectancy, literacy, and infant mortality) to determine the level of development and standard of living in nations using the terms Human Development Index, less developed, newly industrialized, and more developed.

WG.6A Locate and describe human and physical features that influence the size and distribution of settlements.

WG.8C Evaluate the economic and political relationships between settlements and the environment, including sustainable development and renewable/non-renewable resources.

WG.14A Analyze current events to infer the physical and human processes that lead to the formation of boundaries and other political divisions.

WG.15B Explain how citizenship practices, public policies, and decision making may be influenced by cultural beliefs, including nationalism and patriotism.

WG.16B Describe elements of culture, including language, religion, beliefs and customs, institutions, and technologies.

WG.16C Explain ways various groups of people perceive the characteristics of their own and other cultures, places, and regions differently.

WG.17A Describe and compare patterns of culture such as language, religion, land use, education, and customs that make specific regions of the world distinctive.

WG.17C Compare economic, political, or social opportunities in different cultures for women, ethnic and religious minorities, and other underrepresented populations.

WG.18A Analyze cultural changes in specific regions caused by migration, war, trade, innovations, and diffusion.

WG.18B Assess causes, effects, and perceptions of conflicts between groups of people, including modern genocides and terrorism.

WG.22A Design and draw appropriate graphics such as maps, diagrams, tables, and graphs to communicate geographic features, distributions, and relationships.

WG.22C Use geographic terminology correctly.

WG.22D Use standard grammar, spelling, sentence structure, and punctuation.

TEKS and ELPS for Regional World Geography Unit 08--Africa from TEKS Resource System.

Central Africa

Central African Republics

Central Africa covers a large physical area that can range from desert conditions to the north in Chad to tropical rain forests and mountains in the equatorial region of the Congo. The entire region is roughly the same size as the United States west of the Mississippi River. The countries included in the region vary with different organizations or geographic perspectives.

In this textbook, the countries include Cameroon, Congo, Chad, the Central African Republic, Gabon, Equatorial Guinea, the Congo, Rwanda, and Burundi. Located off of the west coast of Central Africa is the small twin-island country of São Tomé and Príncipe. Burundi and Rwanda are often included in the region of East Africa, but their connection to the Congo makes them more relevant to the Central African region.

The equator runs through the middle of Central Africa. Type A climates are dominant in the region, complete with tropical rain forests and jungle environments. In the north is the African Transition Zone, which runs through Chad. In Chad, the arid region of the Sahara Desert transitions into the humid tropics. Central Africa usually only includes portions of Sub-Saharan Africa south of the African Transition Zone. Southern Chad exhibits qualities similar to Central Africa, and the northern areas exhibit qualities similar to North Africa or the northern regions of Niger, Mali, or Mauritania.

The physical geography varies with each country in Central Africa. The most prominent physical landscape is the tropical rain forests of the equatorial region. Highlands can be found in both the western and eastern regions of Central Africa. The Cameroon Highlands are a product of a geologic rift in tectonic plates that created São Tomé and Príncipe, the island portion of Equatorial Guinea, and the mountainous portions of the mainland on the border between Nigeria and Cameroon.

There are a number of volcanoes in Cameroon. Mount Cameroon is an active volcano in Cameroon near the Gulf of Guinea. It is the highest point in Sub-Saharan western and central Africa at more than 13,000 feet. It is the 4th highest peak in Africa and the 31st most prominent in the world. This mountain is part of the area of volcanic activity known as the Cameroon Volcanic Line, which also includes Lake Nyos. Lake Nyos is the sight of a disaster which occurred in 1986, where 1,700 people were killed. The most recent eruption of Mount Cameroon occurred on February 3, 2012. More information about Mount Cameroon can be found here.

Lake Chad in the north is a large, shallow body of water that lies on the border of Chad, Niger, Nigeria, and Cameroon. The size of Lake Chad varies widely because it expands and contracts with the seasonal variations in precipitation. Lake Chad provides water for local livestock and fishing for millions of people. Its location on the border of four countries has caused political infighting over local water rights, which are valuable commodities in such an arid climate.



The shore of Lake Chad on the coast of the Lac region.

The average depth of Lake Chad ranges from five to 35 feet. Climatic conditions and diversion of the lake for human purposes have caused the water to recede. If these conditions continue, the lake might virtually disappear by the end of the 21st century, which would have disastrous effects on both the human population around the lake and biodiversity. Waterfowl, crocodiles, fish, and many other animals depend on Lake Chad for their survival. Its loss would create an environmental catastrophe.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org



Chad is often included in other regions, but in this text, it is included with Central Africa. The Congo River is the main river of this region.

On the eastern border of the Congo is a portion of the Great Rift Valley, which extends from Southern Africa in Mozambique to Lebanon in the Middle East. Lake Tanganyika and Lake Albert are two of the larger lakes in Central Africa along the western section of the Great Rift Valley. Lake Tanganyika is more than 418 miles long and runs the entire length of the boundary between the Congo and Tanzania. These are deep water lakes. Lake Tanganyika is the world's second deepest lake, with a depth of 4,800 feet. Because of its depth, it is also the world's second largest lake by volume after Lake Baikal in Russia.

Fish and fresh water from Lake Tanganyika support millions of people who make their living directly from the lake's resources. The Great Rift Valley is bordered by high mountains such as the Rwenzori Range and its highlands, which include active volcanoes. A number of volcanoes are located in the Congo, not far from the border with Rwanda. In 2002, Mount Nyiragongo, a volcano with an elevation of 11,358 feet in the eastern highlands of the Congo, experienced a series of eruptions that killed a few dozen people, destroyed thousands of buildings, and caused the evacuation of as many as 400,000 people. Various volcanoes in this range have active lava lakes in their craters at their peaks.

At the heart of Central Africa is the massive Congo River and its tributaries. It is the deepest river system in the world and has some stretches that run more than 700 feet deep, providing habitats for a wide range of organisms and fish species. The Congo River basin is second only to the size of the Amazon basin in South America. Home to Africa's largest tropical rain forest, this region is host to a massive variety of plant and animal species, which create an extensive environmental resource base.

Human activity has been encroaching on this environmental region filled with extensive biodiversity. Logging, slash-and-burn agriculture, and civil war have devastated large areas of the Congo basin, resulting in the loss of habitat for many tropical species. Deforestation has been on the rise in Central Africa and the Congo basin. Endangered primates such as chimpanzees and gorillas, along with monkeys and game animals, have struggled to adjust to the shrinking of their habitat and the decline of their populations. The endangered mountain gorillas in the northern region of the highlands have gained attention through the efforts of scientists, who have attempted to understand and preserve their ecosystems. Mountain gorillas have been dwindling in numbers because of poaching, civil war, and hunting.

Conflicts and Unrest in Central Africa

The two landlocked countries of Chad and the Central African Republic have endured unstable conditions in their transitions to independent, stable democratic states. Chad had been in dispute with Libya over the Aozou Strip bordering their two countries, an area deemed rich in minerals and uranium. However, in 1994, Chad was awarded sovereignty over the Aozou Strip by the United Nations (UN) International Court of Justice.

Chad is a temporary home of more than 250,000 refugees from the ethnic cleansing campaign in the Darfur region of the Sudan. Thousands more from the Central African Republic have sought refuge in Chad. Meanwhile, Chad's government has been plagued with corruption and mismanagement, a state of affairs that has hampered its efforts to offer humanitarian aid to its refugees.

Similarly, the Central African Republic is troubled by a history of unstable and short-lived democratic governments. Military coups and transitional governments are frequent. Civil unrest erupts into chaos. Rebel groups control large parts of the countryside. It is difficult for the people to access reliable public services such as health care, education, and transportation systems when the government is not sustainable.

Cameroon and Gabon have more stable governments than Chad or the Central African Republic. Still, they are not without political issues. Cameroon was a German colony as a result of the Berlin Conference of 1884 where the colonial European countries divided up Africa. It remained so until after World War I, when it was divided between the British and the French. Finally, in 1961, the two sides were merged into one country under one government.

The approximate 200 ethnic groups place pressure on the government to address social concerns. Even though the government has become stable more recently, social pressures between traditional groups and groups with a European colonial background have erupted into social unrest. The European Anglo factions have gone so far as to threaten to separate the once-British portion and secede from Cameroon.

Formerly a French colony, Gabon has transitioned to independence successfully. The country's small population of about 1.5 million people, along with adequate natural resources, has facilitated Gabon's development into a country with a relatively stable democratic government and a higher standard of living. Gabon is geared toward attracting more foreign investments and continues to progress forward in the index of economic development.

Equatorial Guinea and the island nation of São Tomé and Príncipe are small countries on the west coast of Central Africa. Serious violence erupted in the former Spanish colony of Equatorial Guinea after it gained independence in 1968. The first elected president governed through authoritarian rule. After a few years in office, he unleashed a reign of terror that resulted in the death of more than one-third of the population and totally neglected the country's public service sector and infrastructure.

He was overthrown and executed by his successor, who then implemented authoritarian measures to make sure he would remain in power and continue to control all the revenues from the extensive oil activity in the offshore waters around his country. The billions in oil revenues have remained in the hands of the president and his family-controlled cabinet. Equatorial Guinea is Sub-Saharan Africa's third-largest oil exporter. However, most of the country's citizens have benefited little from the vast wealth of the lucrative oil industry.

The former Portuguese colony of São Tomé and Príncipe consists of two small islands off the coast of Gabon. The islands received their independence in 1975, but that is when their problems in establishing a stable government began. Political turmoil delayed the arrival of democratic reforms for a decade. Elections for leadership were not held until 1991, and after the elections, leadership changed repeatedly because of political infighting. In 1995 and 2003, two coups were attempted without success. The democratic process has been complicated by offshore oil discovery, which has brought an influx of outside workers and media attention to the country. Multinational oil companies have begun to invest heavily in the development of oil production in the region.

Rwanda has been severely affected by the difficulties associated with the transition between colony and independent nation. Ethnic divisions erupted to challenge the country's stability and future. The division between the Tutsis and the Hutus has deep historic roots. In 1994, the centuries-old conflict between the two ethnic groups became violent in unprecedented proportions and resulted in the senseless killing of hundreds of thousands of innocent people.

The Hutus amassed large militias and took revenge on the Tutsis for years of oppression. Hutu militias rounded up and killed all Tutsis, moderates, and anyone not supporting the Hutu cause. The killing of hundreds of thousands of people continued from city to city throughout the countryside. Within a few months, the genocide is estimated to have caused the death of as many as one million people.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

The atrocities of the Rwandan genocide extended across the population. Men, women, and children were encouraged to kill their neighbors by hacking them to death with machetes. If they refused to comply, they themselves were threatened with death. Victims were herded into schools and churches, where they were massacred and the buildings would be burned to the ground. As people fled the region, the number of Tutsi refugees entering neighboring countries ballooned to more than a million.

Tutsi rebels finally gained strength, defeated the Hutu militias, and ended the slaughter. Fearing retribution for the more than one million Tutsis who had been massacred, more than a million defeated Hutus fled as refugees across the borders into Uganda, Burundi, the Congo, Uganda, and Tanzania. Refugee camps housing thousands of people each were constructed without proper sanitation or supplies of drinking water. Diseases such as cholera and dysentery swept through the camps and killed thousands of refugees. The country of Rwanda was left divided and devastated.

The aftermath of the genocide and conflict continues to incite civil unrest and political division in Rwanda. The search for common ground between the different ethnic groups is divisive and conflict ridden. Now Tutsi leaders dominate the Rwandan government.

The entire Central African region was devastated by the massive shifts of refugees and the brutal killing of so many people. The competition for the control of resources and the increase in military arms along the Zairian border became a major component of the civil war that plagued the Congo during the same period. Up to five million people died in the Congo because of warfare, disease, and starvation. The wars in the Congo involved military actions by the Tutsis from the Rwandan and Ugandan governments and Hutu militias.

The small country of Burundi also has been caught up in the conflicts in Rwanda and the Congo. Germany claimed the region of Burundi as a colony in the European scramble for Africa's resources. After World War I, they handed Burundi over to Belgium. Burundi and Rwanda were both part of Belgium's African colonial empire and were together called Ruanda-Urundi. The two countries were later separated. Burundi achieved independence in 1962.

Unfortunately, the ethnic conflict between the Hutus and the Tutsis that tore apart Rwanda in the genocidal war in 1994 had also plagued Burundi. In 1965, the military was controlled by Tutsi leadership. When the Hutus revolted, they were repressed. The entire government came under Tutsi control. Hutu attacks in 1972 resulted in a systematic retaliation by the Tutsis that killed approximately 200,000 Hutus and forced another 150,000 to flee the country. Civil unrest between these two groups continues to plague the political and social structures of Burundi.

The names of the Democratic Republic of the Congo (a former Belgian colony) and the Republic of the Congo (a former French colony) are confusing. At one point after they had become independent, both countries chose the name *Republic of Congo*. To keep them straight, they were commonly referred to by their respective capital cities—that is, Congo-Leopoldville (the larger eastern country, also known as Zaire) and Congo-Brazzaville (the smaller western country). The larger former Belgian colony has since become simply the Congo or is referred to unofficially as the Belgian Congo, and the smaller former French colony has become Congo.

In 1966, Joseph Mobutu, the political leader of the Congo, officially changed the nation's name to the Democratic Republic of the Congo. In 1971, the name was changed to the Republic of Zaire. In 1997, after a bitter civil war and the overthrow of Mobutu, the new president, Laurent Kabila, changed Zaire back to the Democratic Republic of the Congo, often referred to as the Congo. To keep the two names separate, many refer to the Congo as Congo-Zaire.

The confusing name situation exemplifies the difficulties and changes in government leadership that have transpired since colonial times in the two countries. The former French colony to the west side of the Congo River has survived with fewer conflicts than its eastern neighbor but has not escaped a civil war. From 1997 to 1999, Congo had a harsh civil war, and the end result was the overthrow of a democratically elected president and the installation of a former president. Tens of thousands are reported to have been killed. Related conflicts erupted in various regions that extended into 2003 before they were finally resolved.

The former Belgian colony of the Congo is nearly as large as the United States east of the Mississippi River and is a challenge to govern. The population—distributed between about 250 different ethnic groups and about as many languages—was estimated at more than 83 million in 2017. Authoritarian rule from political leaders such as Mobutu from 1965 to 1997 polarized the country's many factions and played world leaders against each other.

The Congo acted as a *swing state* in the Cold War between the United States and the Soviet Union. As mentioned, Mobutu changed the name of the country and pillaged the country's finances for personal gain. He stashed away for himself billions of dollars in public funds in foreign bank accounts that should have been spent on the people of the country.

The two wars in the Congo have resulted in the highest number of deaths since World War II. The First Congo War (1996 to 1997) occurred when President Mobutu was overthrown by militant forces led by rebel leader Kabila, who was a long-standing political opponent of Mobutu and was backed by Ugandan and Rwandan militant groups. Mobutu was eventually forced from office and fled the country.

Kabila declared himself president and changed the official title of the country from Zaire back to the Democratic Republic of the Congo. This transition in political power caused a shift in the militant rebel groups, which created the conditions for the Second Congo War (1998 to 2003), which was even more brutal than the first. The assassination of President Kabila in 2001 permitted his adopted son Joseph Kabila to take power and run the country up to the present.

The Second Congo War raged through the Congo, bringing destruction to the country and the deaths of millions of people. Besides political control of the country, a main objective of the combatants was to dominate the resource-rich eastern sector of the country, where valuable reserves of zinc, diamonds, copper, and gold can be found in the eastern region. Before the war ended, the surrounding countries of Angola, Zimbabwe, Namibia, Uganda, and Rwanda had troops fighting on one side or the other.

The civil war formally ended in 2003 when rebel groups and the government worked out a shared political arrangement. Many rebel groups remained engaged in the eastern region of the Congo long after the agreement was reached. The total number of deaths resulting from the civil wars in the Congo was estimated in 2008 at about 5.4 million. The majority were killed by the war and the remaining by disease and starvation.

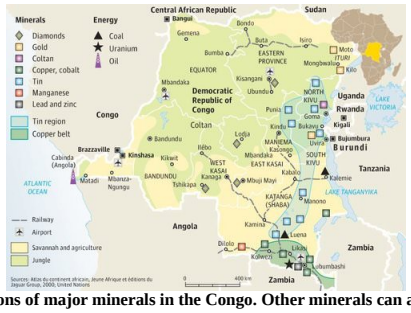
Armed military conflicts in the Congo did not end with the Second Congo War. Conflicts continue in the eastern region. These armed confrontations are often referred to as the Kivu conflict because they are taking place in the provinces of North and South Kivu in the Congo's eastern region along the borders with Rwanda and Burundi. Rebels are fighting against forces from the Congo and Rwanda. As recently as 2009, fighting continued deep in the interior of Central Africa near the Rwandan border between various militias.

People in the Congo are still dying because of the devastation of the war. Those not killed in actual warfare are dying of hunger and disease where food, medicine, and health care are not available. The death rate in 2008 was estimated to be as high as 45,000 people per month in the eastern and central regions—many of them children. Survivors of the civil war report horrendous terrorist campaigns conducted by various militias that used mass rape, mutilation, and torture as a means of control and social pressure. The United Nations had more than 18,000 troops in the Congo as of 2007 to help curb the civil unrest and militant activities.

Understanding that most wars are fought over the control of resources is a major step in comprehending the conflicts in Central Africa. The conflicts in the Congo are likely to continue because of vast caches of mineral wealth in the country that have yet to be extracted. Economic pressure to control the extraction activities of raw materials is often the driving force behind rebel groups in places such as the Congo. Local factions usually sell the raw materials for prices well below market value.

The sale of precious minerals such as cobalt, coltan, gold, and diamonds has helped fund the wars in the Congo. The country produces more cobalt ore than any other country in the world. Cobalt is a valued metal used in aircraft engines, medical implants, and high-performance batteries. The major mining operations for cobalt ore are located in the southeastern Katanga state, where there are also large reserves of copper.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org



This map shows the locations of major minerals in the Congo. Other minerals can also be found in the region.

Coltan is a mineral from which tantalum comes, and it is valuable for its use in electronic circuits. Tantalum is found in most modern electronic devices in high demand worldwide, from video game systems to cell phones. Most of the coltan in the world comes from mines in the Congo in the eastern Kiva regions. The eastern region is also home to a high percentage of the world's industrial diamond reserves. Other minerals and ores are also found in abundance in the region. The sale of precious gems and rare minerals can bring huge profits. However, the wealth seldom reaches the hands of those who work in the mines.

Learning about the geopolitics of Central Africa is critical to developing an understanding of how colonial activity gave shape to Central African countries. Moreover, it helps us to understand why multinational corporations are now very involved in creating the markets for the resources found there. The core economic regions of the world require the raw materials and resources that are extracted from peripheral places such as the Congo to fuel their economic activities. Globalization connects the core to the periphery. In resource-rich places such as the Congo, this relationship is only going to become more interactive.

The Other Side of Life in Central Africa



A Sunday afternoon football match takes place in Bujumbura, Burundi.

Sports and entertainment seem to be a universal human activity. Football (American soccer) is the most popular sport in the Central African states. Football can be found in even the poorest areas. Other traditional sports include wrestling, archery, and track-and-field events. In Chad, for example, a type of freestyle wrestling in which the wrestlers wear animal hides and cover themselves with dust to prepare for the match is widely practiced. Canoe racing can be seen in Cameroon. Board games such as mancala, a count-and-capture African stone game, are also common. Western-style sports such as basketball, baseball, and cricket are played in many of the urban areas.

A great variety of cultural traditions spring from the thousands of ethnic groups, distinct languages, and different religious beliefs found in Africa. Cuisine and drink vary as widely as the people's traditions and are important elements of any celebration. Every country has its own unique way of promoting and celebrating its cultural diversity. Even poor countries, such as Chad, possess a rich cultural heritage. Chad has opened its own Chad National Museum and the Chad Cultural Center. Rwanda, with its civil wars and ethnic divisions, still honors its holidays with ceremonies and celebrations.

Many rural and urban women in the Central African Republic transform food crops into beverages for sale in the informal economy. Hard liquor and beer are common products that can be brewed or distilled from grains, sorghum, or other local crops. For religious reasons, some people do not drink alcoholic beverages. Juices and soft drinks are available as well as coffee and tea, which are the more traditional beverages of the region.

Coffee is grown in the tropics, a climate prevalent in many of the countries in Sub-Saharan Africa. Coffee or tea is a major export product of almost all the Central African countries. In many areas, tea was introduced through colonial diffusion and has become not only a preferred beverage but an export product. Coffee has been the number one export product of Rwanda and Burundi for many years. Neighboring Uganda is the 3rd-largest coffee producer in Africa after Ethiopia and Ivory Coast. All three of them are among the top coffee producers in the world.

The cuisines of Central Africa can be as diverse as each local population, but they have retained much of their local tastes and flavors based on available ingredients. The slave trade introduced items that are now quite common, such as chili peppers, peanuts, and cassavas. Nevertheless, food preparation is based mainly on traditional methods. Plantains and cassavas are mainstays often served with spicy sauces and grilled meat. Tomatoes, onions, and spinach are common ingredients.



Women processing fresh cassava for cooking.

Root crops of yams, sweet potatoes, and maniocs are widely served. Fruits and vegetables are popular. Specialty stews are choice entrees that may contain ginger, okra, chicken, and various spices. Bambara is a favorite sugary porridge with peanuts and rice that is common in Central Africa. Traditional meats of chicken, goat, or beef are universal, but wild game such as antelope, monkey, or crocodile are widespread. Fish is a main protein source served with other spicy dishes or dried to be eaten later. When meat is scarce, insects such as cicadas, crickets, termites, and grasshoppers also serve as a form of protein in the Central Africa cuisine.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

The Role of Women

Women's issues, such as social equality, economic development, and population growth, remain a concern in Central Africa. The treatment of women reflects the attitudes and traditions of a society. Most of the Central African countries are patriarchal or male-dominated, a trend that can be witnessed in local activities or sports, in the construction of the government, or in the sex ratio of the business sector. With an average family size of five or more, few opportunities exist for women to break out of their traditional roles within their culture and receive a secondary education or to seek employment.

The Central African region has different types of marriages that vary from country to country. Some traditional societies still arrange their children's marriages, but this practice is becoming less common as society becomes more contemporary. Marriages between two people with different ethnic backgrounds are becoming more widespread in the urban areas. Cities are places where people with diverse backgrounds come together to live and work, which can lead to an increase in mixed marriages. Cosmopolitan areas are also more likely to have connections with outside cultures through media and communication technology and are more tolerant of diverse traditions.

One of the marriage traditions that exists in regions of Central Africa is polygamy, which is the practice of a man or a woman having more than one spouse. In Africa, as in most places in the world, it is far more likely for a man to have more than one spouse than for a woman to have more than one spouse. Polygamy is practiced in areas where traditional beliefs allow it.

Approximately 30 to 40 percent of women in the Central African Republic are in polygamous unions. The law sanctions polygamy as long as spouses are aware of the arrangement and agree to it before they marry. In Cameroon, both monogamous and polygamous marriages are practiced. The average family is large and extended. Monogamous relationships are the standard in Christian areas such as Burundi and in more contemporary urban societies.

Women caring for large families do not always have the opportunity to earn an education or obtain the training required for employment opportunities. Circumstances shaped by culture, tradition, or economic necessity are not necessarily supportive of women advancing in the private or public sectors. Even if the legal code of the country does not discriminate against women, traditional practices and the social status of men often keep women subjugated. Many societies are male dominated, and violence against women is still common and even accepted in Central Africa.



Women in the Congo have not attained equality with men in the Congo.

One of the worst cases of violence and discrimination against women exists in the eastern regions of the Congo, where abuse against women, including sexual violence and rape, is listed by United Nations humanitarian officials as the worst in the world. The civil wars in the Congo have created a difficult climate for women, often with tragic results. Violence against women has become an accepted practice in some areas.

During the Congo wars, women were often raped and taken as slaves to serve the soldiers. If and when the women were released from captivity, it was not uncommon for them to commit suicide. Improvements in health care, education, and child care are needed to improve living circumstances for women and may in turn positively affect population growth in the region.

Key Takeaways

- Central Africa covers a large physical area about the size of the United States west of the Mississippi River. Most of the region is in the tropics and has a type A climate.
- Central Africa is a relatively poor region economically. National wealth has been garnered traditionally from the export of food crops such as coffee or tea but more recently from mineral and oil extraction.
- The civil war in Rwanda in 1994 was the result of conflict between the Tutsi and Hutu ethnic groups. The historic division was manipulated by colonial powers and erupted into brutal violence that led to the death of as many as a million innocent people; nearly as many refugees took shelter in neighboring countries.
- The civil wars in the Congo are based on political control as well as control over valuable resources in the eastern states. The two main Congo wars resulted in an estimated 5.4 million deaths from either direct military conflict or the devastation that resulted through starvation and disease.
- Central Africa resonates with cultural and ethnic diversity. Hundreds of ethnic groups live and work together with a high degree of interaction. Traditional cuisine and beverages such as coffee, tea, or beer can be found throughout the region.
- Women's issues range from cosmopolitan in the urban areas, where mixed marriages are common, to harsh conditions in which violence and abuse is commonplace. Large family sizes and male-dominated traditions make it difficult for women to transition to positions of equality.

Vocabulary Terms

Chapter 8.5 Central Africa

	Carved boxes containing the skulls and bones of deceased ancestors, created by the Fang, who live in Gabon, southern Cameroon, and Equatorial Guinea
	Belgian King who opened up the African Interior to European trade along the Congo River and by 1884 controlled the area known as the Congo Free State
	a person who flees from a place to escape danger or unfair treatment
	the practice of farming a site until the soil is exhausted, then moving on to a new site

Applying Knowledge

Interactive Notebook Activity

1. Find out what is occurring at the present time in the countries of Rwanda and the Congo in regard to armed conflicts and civil war.
2. Search to see if any news is available where you live about current affairs in Central Africa.

Discussion and Study Questions

1. What are the main physical geographic features in Central Africa?
2. What is unique about Lake Chad and Lake Tanganyika? How are they different?
3. What caused the Rwandan civil war? Which two groups were in conflict?
4. What caused the First and Second Congo Wars? Why does the Kivu conflict exist?
5. What is the relationship between the poor, remote peripheral regions of the Congo and the core economic areas of the world with high standards of living and urban lifestyles?
6. What are some of the food and beverage choices for people in Central Africa?
7. Are there any differences between marriage traditions in the Central African Republic and where you live?
8. What are some of the main women's issues in Central Africa?
9. What is the relationship between family size and women's issues?
10. Which country in Central Africa has the highest standard of living and a stable government?

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

Real-World Geography Exercise

1. Using Google Maps, complete the following activities:
   a. Locate each place on the bulleted list below.
   b. Find the nearest city with an international airport in proximity to each location on the bulleted list below.
   c. Calculate the distance and travel time by plane to each city from the McCarran International Airport in Las Vegas, Nevada.
2. Using NASA Latitude and Longitude Finder, determine the latitude and longitude for each location on the bulleted list below.
3. Be prepared to share and discuss your answers.

- Aozou Strip
- Cameroon Highlands
- Congo River
- Great Rift Valley
- Lake Albert
- Lake Chad
- Lake Tanganyika
- Rwenzori Range

Current and Past Events

Geography Education Scoop It

Why This Ebola Outbreak is a Special Challenge

Ebola Cases in Congo rise to 900, breaking record

How the US and Rwanda have had falling out over used clothes

Videos for Geography Enrichment





CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org



Canadian Encyclopedia is an encyclopedia funded by the Canadian government covering all branches of knowledge. Their scholarly collection includes interactive materials.

CIA World Factbook provides information on the people, history, government, economy, energy, geography, communications, transportation, military, and transnational issues for the world's entities.

Congress.gov is a US government website where you can find federal legislation, past and present, as well as information about the US legal system.

Drug Enforcement Administration (DEA) is a government agency website that provides current news, resources, topics of interest, information about drugs, careers in the DEA, and a tip hotline.

Library of Congress is the largest library in the world and provides manuscripts, files, information, pictures, and videos.

NASA Earth Observatory (NEO) is a US government agency website that allows users to search for and retrieve satellite images of Earth.

National Archives is a US government website that provides historical documents, photos, records, publications, and educator resources.

National Oceanic and Atmospheric Association (NOAA) is a US government agency website that provides weather-related information and ocean research.

National Map is a website by the United States Geological Survey and other federal, state, and local agencies that delivers topographic information for the United States.

NationMaster is a massive central data source and a handy way to graphically compare nations.

Real-Time World Air Quality Index is a website that measures most locations in the world for air pollution in real time.

StateMaster is a unique statistical database, which allows you to research and compare a multitude of different data on US states.

United Nations (UN) is an international organization founded in 1945 and made up of 193 member states. The UN maintains international peace and security, protects human rights, delivers humanitarian aid, promotes sustainable development, and upholds international law.

United States Census Bureau is a US government agency that provides a population clock, data, surveys, statistics, a library with information and infographics, news about the economy, and much more.

United States Geological Survey (USGS) is a US government agency website that provides scientific information about the natural hazards that threaten lives, the natural resources we rely on, the health of our ecosystems and environment, and the impacts of climate and land-use change.

Whitehouse.gov is a US government website that provides the latest presidential news, information about the budget, policy, defense, and many more topics.

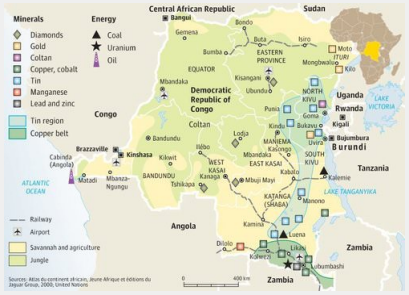
World Health Organization (WHO) is under the United Nations and provides leadership on matters critical to health, shapes the research agenda on health, and monitors the health situation and assessing health trends around the world. Their website provides information on the state of health around the world, outbreaks, current health news, and more.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

World Trade Organization (WTO) is an intergovernmental organization that regulates international trade. The website provides information on the history of the multilateral trading system, featured

LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

videos, news and events, trade topics, and more.

Image	Reference	Attributions
	[Figure 1]	**Credit:** By Jacques Taberlet [CC BY-SA 3.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0)], from Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Lac_Yoa2.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 2]	**Credit:** https://2012books.lardbucket.org/boo...al-africa.html **Source:** https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/regional-geography-of-the-world-globalization-people-and-places/section_10/a07b509a0ef636da197db77dd53d7096.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 3]	**Credit:** https://steigan.no/2013/01/apokalyps...les-om-afrika/ **Source:** https://steigan.no/wp-content/uploads/2013/01/minerals-congo.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 4]	**Credit:** By Geordie Mott (originally posted to Flickr as Le Match) [CC BY 2.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/2.0)], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Le_Match.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 5]	**Credit:** By Selengoumadavid [CC BY-SA 4.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0)], from Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Manioc_transformation.JPG **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

	[Figure 6]	**Credit:** https://www.laprogressive.com/wp-con...ongo-women.gif **Source:** https://www.laprogressive.com/wp-content/uploads/2011/12/congo-women.gif **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

This page titled 8.5: Central Africa (1 Day) is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by CK12 via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

8.6: East Africa (1 Day)

Chapter Challenges

1. Summarize the physical layout and features of East Africa, including the Great Rift Valley.
2. Outline the significance that the wildlife and natural beauty of vast regions such as the Serengeti have for the economic activities of the region.
3. Explain how each country in East Africa is different from the others and what geographic attributes they have in common.
4. Analyze the affect the African Transition Zone has had on the Horn of Africa.
5. Learn how and why the country of Somalia is divided into several political regions.

Learning Objectives

TEKS Regional Unit 08 Africa; Chapter 8.6 East Africa

WG.3B Describe the physical processes that affect the environments of regions, including weather, tectonic forces, erosion, and soil-building processes.

WG.3C Examine the physical processes that affect the lithosphere, atmosphere, hydrosphere, and biosphere.

WG.4Q Explain how elevation, latitude, wind systems, ocean currents, position on a continent, and mountain barriers influence temperature, precipitation, and distribution of climate regions.

WG/4B Describe different landforms and the physical processes that cause their development.

WG.8A Compare ways that humans depend on, adapt to, and modify the physical environment, including the influences of culture and technology.

WG.8C Evaluate the economic and political relationships between settlements and the environment, including sustainable development and renewable/non-renewable resources.

WG.9A Identify physical and/or human factors such as climate, vegetation, language, trade networks, political units, river systems, and religion that constitute a region.

WG.12A Analyze how the creation, distribution, and management of key natural resources affects the location and patterns of movement of products, money, and people.

WG.18A Analyze cultural changes in specific regions caused by migration, war, trade, innovations, and diffusion.

WG.22A Design and draw appropriate graphics such as maps, diagrams, tables, and graphs to communicate geographic features, distributions, and relationships.

WG.22C Use geographic terminology correctly.

WG.22D Use standard grammar, spelling, sentence structure, and punctuation.

TEKS and ELPS for Regional World Geography Unit 08--Africa from TEKS Resource System.

East Africa

Physical Geography

East Africa is a region that begins in Tanzania in the south and extends north through the great grasslands and scrub forest of the savannas of Kenya and Uganda and then across the highlands of Ethiopia, including the Great Rift Valley. The region also comprises the countries of Somalia, Djibouti, and Eritrea, which are located in the African Transition Zone between North Africa and Sub-Saharan Africa.

Rwanda and Burundi are physically in East Africa but are covered in the chapter of Central Africa because of their border activities with the Congo. The world's second-largest lake by surface area is Lake Victoria, which borders Uganda, Tanzania, and Kenya. Lake Victoria provides fish and fresh water for millions of people in the surrounding region. The White Nile starts at Lake Victoria and flows north to the city of Khartoum in Sudan, where it converges with the Blue Nile to become the Nile River. The source of the Blue Nile is Lake Tana in the highlands of Ethiopia.



Map of East Africa

The highest mountain in Africa, Mount Kilimanjaro (19,340 feet), is located in Tanzania near the border with Kenya. The second highest peak, Mount Kenya (17,058 feet), located just north of the country's capital of Nairobi, near the equator, is the source of Kenya's name. Both mountains are inactive volcanoes and have permanent snow at their peaks. They provide fresh water, which flows down their mountainsides, to the surrounding areas.

Mountain ranges in the Western Highlands of the Congo have a greater effect on climate than these two massive peaks. For example, the Rwenzori Mountains on the Congo–Uganda border have permanent snow and glaciers and reach elevations of more than 16,000 feet. These ranges create a rain shadow effect that cuts off moisture for the region from the westerly equatorial winds

This same effect is created by the highlands of Ethiopia, which reach as high as 15,000 feet in elevation and restrict precipitation in areas to the east. The lower level of rainfall transforms much of the region from a tropical rain forest into a savanna-type landscape with few forests, more open grasslands, and sporadic trees. Dry desert-like conditions can be found in a number of places along the Great Rift Valley.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org



The African portion of the rift extends from Mozambique to the Red Sea. The valley is created by the movement of tectonic plates.

The Great Rift Valley provides evidence of a split in the African Plate, dividing it into two smaller tectonic plates: the Somalian Plate and the Nubian Plate. The Great Rift Valley in East Africa is divided into the Western Rift and the Eastern Rift. The Western Rift runs along the border with the Congo. A series of deep water lakes run along its valley. On the western edge of the Western Rift are the highlands, which have a series of high-elevation mountain ranges, including the Rwenzori Mountains, the highest in the series. The Virunga Mountains on the Congo–Uganda border are home to endangered mountain gorillas. The Western Rift includes a series of deep water lakes, such as Lake Tanganyika, Lake Edward, and Lake Albert. Lake Victoria is located between the Western Rift and the Eastern Rift.

The Eastern Rift does not have deep water lakes. Rather, it is a wide valley or basin with shallow lakes that do not have outlets. The lakes have higher levels of sodium carbonate and mineral buildup because of a high rate of evaporation. The differences in water composition of the lakes along the Eastern Rift vary from freshwater to extremely alkaline. Alkaline water creates an ideal breeding ground for algae and other species of fish, such as tilapia, which thrive in this environment.

Millions of birds feed off the abundant supply of algae and fish. Birds attract other wildlife, which in turn creates a unique set of environmental ecosystems. The eastern edge of the Eastern Rift is home to the inactive volcanic peaks of Mount Kilimanjaro and Mount Kenya. A number of other volcanic peaks are present in the Eastern Rift, such as Ol Doinyo Lengai, an active volcano.

The erosion patterns of the highlands have caused a buildup of sediments on the rift valley floor, creating a favorable environment for the preservation of biological remains, including both human and animal remains. Important fossils and bones of several hominid species have been found in the Great Rift Valley. One of the most famous finds came in 1974 when the nearly complete skeleton of an australopithecine nicknamed “Lucy.”

Lucy was discovered by anthropologist Donald Johanson. Noted anthropologists Richard and Mary Leakey have also done significant work in this region. Since the 1970's, remains of hominids from about 10 million years ago were discovered in the northern region of the Great Rift Valley. Discoveries at the 30-mile-long Olduvai Gorge indicate that early hominid species might have lived in the region for millions of years.



Hiking the Great Rift Valley in Tanzania.

Serengeti and Game Reserves

The Great Rift Valley and the surrounding savannas in Kenya and Tanzania are home to some of the largest game reserves in Africa, with a broad variety of big game animals. One of these large regions is the vast Serengeti Plain, located in northern Tanzania and southern Kenya. The governments of Tanzania and Kenya maintain national parks, national game reserves, and wildlife sanctuaries in their countries, most notably in the Serengeti Plain. Legal protection for as much as 80 percent of the Serengeti has been provided. The protections restrict hunting and commercial agriculture and provide protection status for the wildlife. The word *Serengeti* means “Endless Plains.”



Masai Giraffe in Serengeti National Park, Tanzania

The Serengeti Plain is host to an extraordinary diversity of large mammals and fauna. The largest migration of land animals in the world occurs in the Serengeti. Every fall and spring, as many as two million wildebeests, antelope, and other grazing animals migrate from the northern hills to the southern plains in search of grass and food. The Ngorongoro Conservation Area, which is a UNESCO World Heritage Site, and the Ngorongoro Crater are located on the Tanzanian side of the border. The enormous crater is the basin of an extinct volcano that has been transformed into a protected national park for the animals that graze on the grassy plains. This is a dry region because the Ngorongoro Highlands create a rain shadow for the area.

Dozens of other protected areas throughout Eastern Africa have been established in an effort to protect and sustain the valuable ecosystems for the large animals that have found their habitat encroached upon elsewhere by the ever-expanding human population. Kenya has more than 55 nationally protected areas that serve as parks, reserves, or sanctuaries for wildlife. The Amboseli National Park and Mount Kenya National Park are two of the more well-known protected areas.

LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

The “big five” game animals—elephants, rhinoceroses, lions, leopards, and buffalo—and all the other unique animals found in the same ecosystems, translate into income from tourists from around the world who wish to experience this type of environment. The national park systems in Uganda and Ethiopia have made provisions to provide more sanctuaries for wildlife in areas where the human population is growing and the political situation has not always been stable.

Tanzania



Map of Tanzania

Germany gained control of the region of what is now Tanzania in their scramble for African territory in the late 1800's. Germany relinquished the colony to Britain after World War I. Off the coast of East Africa is the island of Zanzibar, which has been an island trading post for centuries and drew in shipping trade from the Middle East, India, and other parts of Africa. The spice trade attracted European ships throughout colonial times.

During British occupation, the mainland region was called Tanganyika, named after the large lake on the eastern edge. In 1960, the colony gained independence from Great Britain, and four years later Zanzibar and Tanganyika came together to form the country of Tanzania. Zanzibar remains an important travel destination. Major tourism infrastructure has been developed there. The coastal city of Dar es Salaam is the primate city of the country and acts as the capital.

In 1996, Dodoma was declared the official capital. Dodoma is a type of *forward capital*, because the declaration of Dodoma as the official capital was intended to move the political power inland, toward the country’s center. The parliament meets in Dodoma, but major government offices remain in Dar es Salaam, making Dar es Salaam the de facto capital of the country.

Tanzania is an agricultural country. As much as 80 percent of the people make their living off the land. The rural nature of the population signifies that the country is at the lower end of the index of economic development with larger families and lower incomes. An emphasis on tourism is a growing trend in Tanzania. The government has stepped up efforts to expand the tourism sector of the economy. Oil and natural gas exploration has also been emphasized in hopes of raising the level of national wealth.



The famous elephant tusks landmark in Mombasa, Kenya.

There are more than 100 ethnic groups in Tanzania. Swahili, an indigenous language, is the lingua franca, and English is used in the higher legal courts and in the universities for higher education. Swahili is used as a second language throughout much of East Africa and serves as a major cultural connection between the many ethnic groups. Tanzania is unique in this aspect; the indigenous language of Swahili was chosen as the lingua franca rather than the colonial language. Most people learn at least two or three languages, depending on their circumstances. The religious balance of Tanzania’s population of more than 40 million people is almost evenly divided three ways amongst Christianity, Islam, and traditional religions.

Kenya



Map of Kenya

During colonial times, the British considered the land area now called Kenya to be a Crown protectorate area. The coastal city of Mombasa has been an international shipping port for centuries and is now the busiest port in the region. Persian, Arab, Indian, and even Chinese ships made port in Mombasa during its earliest years to take part in the trade of slaves, ivory, and spices. Portugal sought early control of the trade center but eventually lost out to Britain.

Arab and Middle Eastern shippers brought Islam to the region, and Europeans brought Christianity. Hinduism and Sikhism from India found their way into the country with workers brought over by the British to help build a railroad to Uganda. Kenya gained independence in 1963 and has worked throughout the latter part of the 20th century to establish a stable democratic government.

Nairobi, Kenya’s capital, has become a central core urban area that serves the greater East African region as an economic hub for development and globalization. The largest city in the region, Nairobi is continually expanding and draws in people from rural areas seeking opportunities and advantages. It also has become a destination for international corporations planning to expand business ventures into Africa. Kenya has experienced economic growth and decline as market prices and agricultural production have fluctuated.

The Kenyan government has been working with the International Monetary Fund (IMF) and the World Bank to support its economic reform initiatives and reduce waste and corruption in its fiscal processes. The countries of Uganda, Tanzania, and Kenya developed the East African Community (EAC) as a trading bloc to support mutual development and economic partnerships.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

Kenya has more than 40 different ethnic groups, each with its own unique cultural history and traditions. Of the many ethnic groups in Kenya, the Maasai have gained international attention and are often given wide exposure in tourism information. The Maasai are a small minority of Kenya's population but are known for wearing vivid attire and unique jewelry. Their historical lands have been the border region between Kenya and Tanzania.

Cattle, a sign of wealth, have been at the center of Maasai traditions and culture and provide for their livelihood. Tourism brings to the surface the diversity of cultures that coexist within Kenya's environmental attractions, and the country is working to enhance its international draw in the tourism marketplace.

Uganda



Map of Uganda

Uganda is a small, landlocked country on the northern shores of Lake Victoria. The Western Rift borders it on the west, forming both high mountains and deep lakes. Lakes Albert, Edward, and George are three of the larger bodies of water. The Nile River flows out of Lake Victoria through Lake Kyoga and Lake Albert on its way north, providing an abundant fresh water supply and a transportation route.

The Rwenzori Mountains and the Virunga Mountains shadow the country from the west. Mountain gorillas, an eastern gorilla sub-species, inhabit this region. They are extremely endangered. Only about 700 mountain gorillas live in Africa. One of the two main populations of gorillas lives in the national parks of the Virunga Mountains in Rwanda, Uganda, and the Congo. The second population is found only in a national park in Uganda. The lowland eastern gorilla population is also threatened, and their population continues to decline. Poaching, habitat loss, disease, and warfare have devastated their populations in the past century.



Baby Mountain Gorilla in Virunga National Park

Uganda is a poor country and has experienced serious political and ethnic conflicts in recent decades. In 1971, the brutal dictator Idi Amin sought to rid the country of his opponents and many foreigners. He killed many of Uganda's own people and destroyed the economy in the process. He was ousted in 1979 and lived in exile in Saudi Arabia until his death. Uganda was in conflict with Sudan in the 1990's, during the bloody civil war in neighboring Rwanda. Uganda sided with the Tutsi groups in the region and has had to deal with ethnic division within its own borders. Uganda has many troops engaged in the conflict along the unstable border region of the Congo.

Uganda is an agrarian state with natural mineral wealth. The potential for added national wealth through mineral extraction exists, but there is no way to fund the extraction operations. Agriculture is the principal employment of Uganda's labor force, and most workers earn fewer than two dollars per day US equivalent. Coffee has been and continues to be a main export crop. Uganda is about the same size in terms of land area as the US state of Wyoming. Uganda has an estimated population of more than 39 million people. Population growth without economic growth places a heavy strain on Uganda's natural resources.

Ethiopia



Map of Ethiopa

With more than 105 million inhabitants, Ethiopia has the second largest population in Africa. Ethiopia was never colonized by the Europeans in the scramble for Africa, but during World War II, it suffered a brief occupation by Italy (1936–41). From 1930 to 1974, Emperor Haile Selassie ruled the country until he was deposed in a military coup. Many Rastafarians in Jamaica consider Selassie to be the second coming of Christ and a messiah for the African people. According to Rastafarian traditions, Ethiopia was the biblical Zion.

After Selassie was deposed, the government shifted to a one-party Communist state. Successive years in Ethiopia were filled with massive uprisings, bloody coups, and devastating droughts, which brought about massive refugee problems and civil unrest. Famine in the 1980's caused the deaths of more than one million people. The Communist element in Ethiopia diminished when the Soviet Union collapsed in 1991. The country's first multiparty elections were held in 1995.

The region of Eritrea had been a part of a federation with Ethiopia. In 1993, Eritrea declared independence, sparking a boundary war with Ethiopia that eventually concluded in a peace treaty and independence in 2000. The final boundary is still disputed. The breaking off of Eritrea left Ethiopia a landlocked country with no port city.

The capital and largest city in Ethiopia is Addis Ababa, which is the center for various international organizations serving East Africa and Africa in general, such as the African Union and the United Nations (UN) Economic Commission for Africa. This city is the hub of activity for the country and for international aid for the region.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org



The bustling center of Addis Ababa.

The Great Rift Valley bisects Ethiopia. Highlands dominate the northwest, and minor highlands exist southwest of the rift. The Ethiopian Plateau encompasses the Northwest Highlands and is home to Lake Tana, the source of the Blue Nile. Elevations on the Ethiopian Plateau average more than 5,000 feet, and the highest peak, Ras Dashan, reaches up to 14,928 feet.

The climate includes sporadic rain in early spring. The typical rainy season extends from June to September, but the rest of the year is usually dry. The high elevations of the highlands cause a rain shadow effect in the deep valleys or basins on the dry side of the region. Eastern Ethiopia is arid, with desert-like conditions. The impact of overpopulation on the natural environment has been deforestation and higher rates of soil erosion. Thus continued loss of animal species is inevitable. Fortunately, Ethiopia has established natural parks and game reserves to protect wildlife and big game.

Ethiopia has been inhabited by divergent kingdoms and civilizations, giving rise to a rich heritage and many cultural traditions—so much so that Ethiopia is home to eight UNESCO World Heritage Sites. More than 60 percent of the population is Christian, and about 30 percent of the population is Muslim. Many traditional religions can be found in rural areas. In contrast to other African countries, Christianity came to Ethiopia directly from the Middle East rather than from European colonizers or missionaries from Western countries.

In Ethiopia, Christianity was structured into the Ethiopian Orthodox Church, a church that has endured through centuries. Religious tradition claims that the Ethiopian Orthodox Church is in possession of the lost Ark of the Covenant, which once rested in the holy of holies in the great temple of Solomon in Jerusalem. Ethiopia does not use the Gregorian calendar, which is the calendar used in the most of the Western world. Instead, Ethiopia uses a calendar based upon the calendar of the Coptic Christian Church, which is about eight years behind the Gregorian calendar because of differences in how the year is calculated and in differences in the dating of the life of Jesus.

The large and growing population of Ethiopia is made up of many ethnic groups. The three largest ethnic groups are Oromo (35 percent), Amhara (27 percent), and Tigray (6 percent). A number of minority ethnic groups make up the remaining 32 percent. The dominance of the Oromo, Amhara, and Tigray groups provides advantages when it comes to determining which language to use for primary education or in community politics in a region.

At least 84 separate local languages are spoken in Ethiopia. The lingua franca for higher education and for common use is English. The tradition in many elementary schools is to use Amharic as the primary language for instruction, but this is breaking down as other languages increase in usage because of population increases.

Eritrea



Map of Eritrea

Eritrea was an Italian colony before joining with Ethiopia in a federation in 1952. Since declaring independence in 1993, Eritrea has had a difficult time balancing positive economic growth with its border dispute with Ethiopia. The border war with Ethiopia drained this small, poor country of economic resources and destroyed valuable infrastructure. The agrarian culture and economic activities common in Africa also exists in Eritrea. Farming and raising livestock are the main activities of as much as 80 percent of its citizens.

The government has controlled almost every aspect of business and industry within its command economy structure. In 2008, in an attempt to attract business and connect with global markets, the port city of Massawa opened a free-trade zone and has been attracting business connections. Mineral extraction is being explored by multinational corporations, and various foreign governments have been working to establish stronger ties.

Eritrea is located north of the African Transition Zone. Most countries north of the African Transition Zone have an Islamic majority, but that is not necessarily the case in Eritrea. Statistical data are difficult to confirm, but Christianity is believed to be as prominent as Islam in Eritrea. The main Christian denomination is the Eritrean Orthodox Church, with smaller percentages of Roman Catholics and Protestants. Most Muslims are Sunni.

The government highly regulates religious activities and requires all churches to register with the state and provide personal information regarding its members. Members of religious groups not registered with the state may be subject to arrest or imprisonment for violation of this requirement. Examples of groups not approved by the government of Eritrea as of 2010 include Baha'is and Jehovah's Witnesses.

LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

Djibouti



Map of Djibouti

The Bab el-Mandeb Strait, between the Red Sea and the Arabian Sea, separates Africa from Asia on the southwestern tip of the Arabian Peninsula. The strait is a narrow strategic choke point for international shipping transferring cargo from Europe to Asia through the Red Sea and the Suez Canal. On the African side of the strait is the small former French colony of the Republic of Djibouti.

Natural resources within the country are sparse, and the republic depends on its relationship with countries such as the United States or its former colonizer to augment its financial status, keep the region stable, and protect valuable shipping in the nearby waterways. The United States has an important military base in Djibouti, which is the only major US military base in Sub-Saharan Africa. The French also have a major military base located in Djibouti.

The significance of the Djibouti's location means it is a critical place for monitoring both the war on terrorism and incidences of piracy off the Horn of Africa. A main objective of having European and US military bases in Djibouti is to ensure safe passage of oil tankers through the strait providing European countries and the United States with petroleum from the Persian Gulf states.

Like many other African countries transitioning from colonies to independent countries, Djibouti has experienced political infighting that has been detrimental to the country's economic situation. The government struggles with foreign debt and a lack of economic development opportunities. Most of the population lives in the capital city of Djibouti, where the unemployment rate is extremely high. Its vital location is the country's main asset, and foreign aid has been a major part of the country's economic equation.

Somalia



Map of Somalia

The country presently called Somalia resisted the forces of European colonizers scrambling for African land in the 1800's. The various kingdoms and their powerful leaders kept the colonial forces out well beyond World War I. Somalia's close vicinity to the Arabian Peninsula and the prevalence of Arab trade provided a direct connection through which Islam was quickly diffused from Arabia to Africa. Political alliances were fused between the Somalian kingdoms and the Ottoman Empire. The leaders of the Horn of Africa used Islam as a centripetal force in uniting the people against outside forces.

It was not until 1920, as a direct result of the use of airplanes in warfare, that the northern region of Somaliland buckled under to the British colonial forces. The eastern and southern regions were soon dominated by Italy. Britain finally withdrew from British Somaliland in 1960. The country then joined with the Italian portions of the region to form a new nation, Somalia.

An authoritarian socialist regime established power in 1969 and lasted until 1991. The socialist regime in Somalia initiated a territorial war in 1978 in an attempt to gain back territory in the eastern parts of Ethiopia's Ogaden region, which was once part of the various Somalian kingdoms. The war only intensified the divisions in the region. After 1991, the country descended into political chaos, economic turmoil, and factional fighting.

Northern clans who opposed the central government broke away in a move toward independence, and the old British Somaliland became the Republic of Somaliland in 1991. Somaliland operates independently from the rest of Somalia and prints its own currency. The northeast region of the country referred to as Puntland also broke away from the central government. Somaliland sought total independence, while Puntland was in favor of belonging to a national union but wanted to maintain autonomy.

Both autonomous regions have their own governments and are relatively stable, but they have had conflicts regarding the territory between them. Neither is recognized by outside entities as independent countries. Puntland's port of Bosaso has developed into a rapidly growing economic city and has expanded from 50,000 to more than 500,000 people since the year 2000. Plans are in the works for a new airport and an economic free-trade zone, which should attract additional business and an influx of additional immigrants from other parts of Somalia and the region.

Southern Somalia has been broken down into regions ruled by warlords who have pillaged the country and control vital transportation links. A total government breakdown occurred in 1991, leading to a meltdown in all areas of society. Food distribution was hampered through pillaging and a lack of fuel and structured transportation. Electrical power was lost and clan warfare became the rule of law.

A famine subsequently caused an estimated 300,000 deaths. The United Nations (UN) stepped in with food and peacekeeping troops. In 1992, the United States dispatched marines in Operation Restore Hope, which stabilized the distribution of food but was unsuccessful in stabilizing the political situation and establishing a legitimate government. In 1993, 19 US soldiers were killed in a battle in the capital, Mogadishu, after of which the US withdrew its troops. The UN withdrew its peacekeeping troops in 1995.



US Army soldiers coming down a street in Kismayo, Somalia. The US Army uses a M998 High-Mobility Multipurpose Wheeled Vehicle (HMMWV) to broadcast messages to the Somali locals that line the street on both sides. This mission is in direct support of Operation Restore Hope.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

Despite a lack of effective national governance, the informal economy in Somalia continues to thrive. Trading through personal transactions and the private marketplace continues to provide for the needs of the people. The main sources of revenue are agricultural goods and livestock, as well as money sent by people from outside the country to their families in Somalia.

Banking and businesses have struggled to adapt to the continual conflicts, yet various hotels and service agencies continue to operate under the protection of private security militias. Telecommunication firms continue to offer service with low calling rates for urban areas.

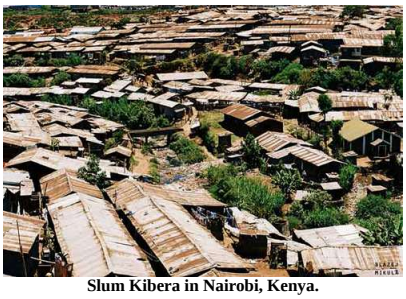
The educational system is heavily supported by the private sector because of the collapse of the central government. Secondary education at the university level is struggling in the south but is more established in Puntland and Somaliland, where they are funded by central authorities.

Income from piracy on the high seas has brought in millions to the private warlords that manage the operations. Stabilizing the country and showing economic progress will remain a difficult task for whoever leads Somalia.

The Rural-to-Urban Shift

The average family size in East Africa is about 5.5, which is typical of the entire continent of Africa and translates into exploding population growth. In many areas of Africa in general and East Africa in particular, most of the population (as much as 80 percent) makes its living off the land in agricultural pursuits. Large families in rural areas create the conditions for the highest levels of rural-to-urban shift of any continent in the world.

The large cities—with expanding business operations complete with communication and transportation systems that link up with global activities—are an attractive draw for people seeking greater employment opportunities. In East Africa, each of the three largest cities—Nairobi, Dar es Salaam, and Addis Ababa—is more populous than Chicago, the third largest US city. In West Africa, the city of Lagos, Nigeria, is more populous than New York City and Chicago combined. These cities are all riding the worldwide wave of globalization and are core centers of economic activity for the business sector and corporate enterprises.



Slum Kibera in Nairobi, Kenya.

The other regions of Africa all have central cities that act as economic core areas and attract the multitudes from rural areas looking for employment and opportunities. International connections are indicative of local economic development, which is causing the urban areas to grow at exponential rates. Cities heavily affected by a high level of rural-to-urban shift often cannot build infrastructure fast enough to keep up with demand.

Self-constructed slums and squatter settlements, which lack basic public services such as electricity, sewage disposal, running water, or transportation systems, circle the cities. All the large cities of Africa are expanding at unsustainable rates. Traffic congestion, trash buildup, high crime rates, health problems, and air pollution are some of the common results.

In the next few decades, Africa could witness the growth of megacities that might continue to expand and grow for another century. For example, if the current rates continue, Ethiopia's population of over 105 million people in 2017 (estimate) will most likely double by 2040. Urban areas will continue to be target destinations for employment opportunities, and rural-to-urban shift will drive the populations of cities such as Addis Ababa to double, triple, or quadruple in size by 2020.

Key Takeaways

- The physical geography of East Africa is dominated by the Great Rift Valley, which extends through the middle of the region from north to south.
- Associated with the rift valleys are vast savannas such as the Serengeti Plain, large lakes, high mountains, and the highlands of Ethiopia.
- East Africa has extensive habitat for large herds of big game animals, mountains for great apes, and enough prey for the big cats such as lions and cheetahs.
- Countries are establishing game preserves, national parks, and conservation areas to protect these animals and their natural habitats and to provide economic opportunities to gain wealth through tourism.
- Most of the populations of countries in East Africa earn their livelihood through agricultural activities because the region has a high percentage of people living in rural areas.
- Large families fuel an ever-increasing rural-to-urban shift in the population, causing the cities to grow at an unprecedented rate.
- Areas along the African Transition Zone have experienced a higher degree of political conflict and civil unrest.
- Somalia has the highest level of political division and fragmentation based on religion and ethnic backgrounds, which contributed to the secession of the two autonomous regions of Somaliland and Puntland. The central government is neither stable nor strong enough to govern the fragmented country.
- Diversity in the region is remarkably high; there are hundreds of different indigenous ethnic groups, each with its own language and culture.
- Religious activity is divided amongst Christianity, Islam, and traditional beliefs.
- Islam is more favored in the African Transition Zone and to the north, while Christianity and animism are more prominent to the south of the zone.

Vocabulary Terms

Chapter 8.6 East Africa

	East African trading kingdom along the Red Sea today known as Ethiopia which grew wealthy from trade. Located on the Red Sea
	East African ethnic group that lives on the grasslands of the rift valleys in Kenya and Tanzania
Olduvai Gorge	a gorge in northeastern Tanzania where anthropologists have found some of the earliest human remains
	An area in East Africa containing some of the best grasslands in the world along with unique grazing animals

Applying Knowledge

Interactive Notebook Activity

1. Find out what the news media is reporting regarding current events and political stability in Somalia.
2. Research the endangered status of mountain gorillas in East Africa.

Discussion and Study Questions

1. Where do the White Nile and the Blue Nile begin? Where do they converge?
2. What is the Great Rift Valley? How is the Western Rift different from the Eastern Rift?

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

3. What has been found at Olduvai Gorge? Why is this significant?
4. How have Kenya and Tanzania attempted to preserve and protect the environment?
5. Where is the Serengeti Plain? How does it bring national wealth to its home countries?
6. What are the main religions in Ethiopia, Eritrea, and Somalia? How did belief systems diffuse to Ethiopia, Eritrea, and Somalia? What regions did they diffuse from?
7. What is Tanzania's lingua franca? How is this different from other African countries?
8. What are the main political regions of Somalia? How does Somalia's central government function?
9. What is Djibouti's main asset? Why would the United States or France want to control Djibouti?
10. What two main factors cause a high level of rural-to-urban shift?

Real-World Geography Exercise

Using Google Maps, locate each one of the places below. Next, choose one location that is interesting to you and create a SWAY or a PowerPoint presentation. Include important facts, images, maps, and videos. Be prepared to share your presentation.

- Bab el-Mandeb Strait
- Blue Nile
- Bosaso
- Dar es Salaam
- Eastern Rift Valley
- Ethiopian Plateau
- Great Rift Valley
- Lake Albert
- Lake Edward
- Lake Tana
- Lake Turkana
- Lake Victoria
- Mombassa
- Mt. Kenya
- Mt. Kilimanjaro
- Nile River
- Ol Doinyo Lengai
- Olduvai Gorge
- Puntland
- Rwenzori Mountains
- Serengeti Plain
- Somaliland
- Virunga Mountains
- Western Rift Valley
- White Nile
- Zanzibar

Current Events

Geography Education Scoop It

Millions of Flamingos

Volcano Team Get Measure of Threat to Great Rift Valley

Tanzanian Rangers Harness New Technology to Fight Poachers

Kenya Dams Will Ruin the Serengeti

Videos for Geography Enrichment



https://k12.libretexts.org/@go/page/1968


ography Now! Eritrea
graphy Now
Watch on YouTube


nzania Serengeti Best Of part 1
anianature
Watch on YouTube





Helpful Websites for the Study of Geography

Canadian Encyclopedia is an encyclopedia funded by the Canadian government covering all branches of knowledge. Their scholarly collection includes interactive materials.

CIA World Factbook provides information on the people, history, government, economy, energy, geography, communications, transportation, military, and transnational issues for the world's entities.

Congress.gov is a US government website where you can find federal legislation, past and present, as well as information about the US legal system.

Drug Enforcement Administration (DEA) is a government agency website that provides current news, resources, topics of interest, information about drugs, careers in the DEA, and a tip hotline.

Library of Congress is the largest library in the world and provides manuscripts, files, information, pictures, and videos.

NASA Earth Observatory (NEO) is a US government agency website that allows users to search for and retrieve satellite images of Earth.

National Archives is a US government website that provides historical documents, photos, records, publications, and educator resources.

National Oceanic and Atmospheric Association (NOAA) is a US government agency website that provides weather-related information and ocean research.

National Map is a website by the United States Geological Survey and other federal, state, and local agencies that delivers topographic information for the United States.

NationMaster is a massive central data source and a handy way to graphically compare nations.

Real-Time World Air Quality Index is a website that measures most locations in the world for air pollution in real time.

StateMaster is a unique statistical database, which allows you to research and compare a multitude of different data on US states.

United Nations (UN) is an international organization founded in 1945 and made up of 193 member states. The UN maintains international peace and security, protects human rights, delivers humanitarian aid, promotes sustainable development, and upholds international law.

United States Census Bureau is a US government agency that provides a population clock, data, surveys, statistics, a library with information and infographics, news about the economy, and much more.

United States Geological Survey (USGS) is a US government agency website that provides scientific information about the natural hazards that threaten lives, the natural resources we rely on, the health of our ecosystems and environment, and the impacts of climate and land-use change.

Whitehouse.gov is a US government website that provides the latest presidential news, information about the budget, policy, defense, and many more topics.

World Health Organization (WHO) is under the United Nations and provides leadership on matters critical to health, shapes the research agenda on health, and monitors the health situation and assessing health trends around the world. Their website provides information on the state of health around the world, outbreaks, current health news, and more.

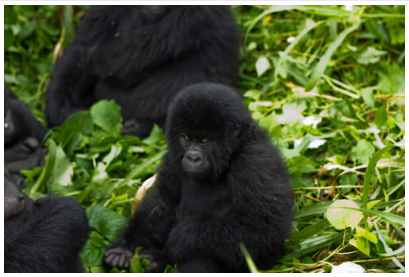
CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

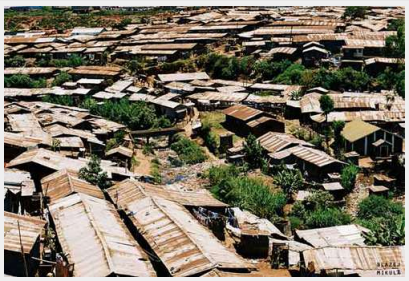
World Trade Organization (WTO) is an intergovernmental organization that regulates international trade. The website provides information on the history of the multilateral trading system, featured

LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

videos, news and events, trade topics, and more.

Image	Reference	Attributions
	[Figure 1]	**Credit:** https://2012books.lardbucket.org/boo...st-africa.html **Source:** https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/regional-geography-of-the-world-globalization-people-and-places/section_10/7af7edb83bd283ae8e1b9a2115ad8219.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 2]	**Credit:** By Redgeographics [GFDL (http://www.gnu.org/copyleft/fdl.html) or CC BY-SA 4.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0)], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:MapGreatRiftValley.png **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 3]	**Credit:** https://2012books.lardbucket.org/boo...st-africa.html **Source:** https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/regional-geography-of-the-world-globalization-people-and-places/section_10/7b7450a5eff5805abe1e554e3c47742f.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 4]	**Credit:** CIA World Factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/tz.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 5]	**Credit:** By Sandro Senn [Public domain], from Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://upload.wikimedia.org/Wikipedia/commons/b/bf/Tusks_in_City_of_Mombasa.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

	[Figure 6]	**Credit:** CIA World Factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/ke.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 7]	**Credit:** CIA World Factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/ug.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 8]	**Credit:** Cai Tjeenk Willink **Source:** https://upload.wikimedia.org/Wikipedia/commons/b/be/Virunga_Mountain_Gorilla.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 9]	**Credit:** CIA World Factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/et.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 11]	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/er.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 12]	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/dj.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

	[Figure 13]	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/so.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 15]	**Credit:** Blazej Mikula **Source:** https://upload.wikimedia.org/Wikipedia/commons/7/76/Kibera.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

This page titled 8.6: East Africa (1 Day) is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by CK12 via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

8.7: Southern Africa (2 Days)

Chapter Challenges

1. Summarize the major physical features of the region and explain the role that natural resources play in the economic activities of the people.
2. Outline the differences between the mainland of Africa and Madagascar.
3. Explain how each country in the region is different from each other with its own unique circumstances.
4. Determine how ethnicity has played a role in the political situation of each country.
5. Understand apartheid's effect on South Africa.

Learning Objectives

TEKS Regional Unit 08 Africa: Chapter 8.7 Southern Africa

WG.4B Describe different landforms and the physical processes that cause their development.

WG.5A Analyze how the character of a place is related to its political, economic, social, and cultural elements.

WG.6A Locate and describe human and physical features that influence the size and distribution of settlements.

WG.6B Explain the processes that have caused changes in settlement patterns, including urbanization, transportation, access to and availability of resources, and economic activities.

WB.12A Analyze how the creation, distribution, and management of key natural resources affects the location and patterns of movement of products, money, and people.

WG.13A Interpret maps to explain the division of land, including man-made and natural borders, into separate political units such as cities, states, or countries.

WG.14A Analyze current events to infer the physical and human processes that lead to the formation of boundaries and other political divisions.

WG.15A Identify and give examples of different points of view that influence the development of public policies and decision-making processes on local, state, national, and international levels.

WG.15B Explain how citizenship practices, public policies, and decision making may be influenced by cultural beliefs, including nationalism and patriotism.

WG.16C Explain ways various groups of people perceive the characteristics of their own and other cultures, places, and regions differently.

WG.17A Describe and compare patterns of culture such as language, religion, land use, education, and customs that make specific regions of the world distinctive.

WG.22A Design and draw appropriate graphics such as maps, diagrams, tables, and graphs to communicate geographic features, distributions, and relationships.

WG.22C Use geographic terminology correctly.

WG.22D Use standard grammar, spelling, sentence structure, and punctuation.

TEKS and ELPS for Regional World Geography Unit 08--Africa from TEKS Resource System.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org



Map of Southern Africa

The region of the African continent south of the Congo and Tanzania is named Southern Africa. The physical location is the large part of Africa to the south of the extensive Congo River basin. Southern Africa is home to a number of river systems; the Zambezi River is the most prominent. The Zambezi flows from the northwest corner of Zambia and western Angola all the way to the Indian Ocean on the coast of Mozambique. Along the way, the Zambezi River flows over the mighty Victoria Falls on the border between Zambia and Zimbabwe. Victoria Falls is the largest waterfall in the world and is a major tourist attraction for the region.



Victoria Falls is a waterfall in southern Africa on the Zambezi River at the border between Zambia and Zimbabwe. It is the largest waterfall in the world.

Southern Africa includes both type B and type C climates. The Tropic of Capricorn runs straight through the middle of the region, indicating that the southern portion is outside of the tropics. The Kalahari Desert, which lies mainly in Botswana, is an extensive desert region with an arid mixture of grasslands and sand. When there is adequate rainfall, the grasslands provide excellent grazing for wildlife. Precipitation varies from three to ten inches per year.

The Kalahari is home to game reserves and national parks. Large areas of dry salt pans stretch over ancient lake beds. The salt pans fill with water after heavy rainfall but are dry the remainder of the year. The Namib Desert, found along the west coast of Namibia, receives little rainfall. Moderate type C climates are found south of the Kalahari Desert in South Africa, where conditions are suitable for a variety of agricultural activities, including fruit orchards and an expanding wine industry.

https://k12.libretexts.org/@go/page/8254



A thunderstorm in the Kalahari Desert near Stampriet, Namibia.

Madagascar

Madagascar is included in this unit on Southern Africa, but it does not share its cultural geography or biodiversity.

The countries on the Southern African mainland share many of the demographic qualities of the rest of Africa: large family size, agrarian economies, multiple ethnic groups, rural populations, political instability, and a high rate of rural-to urban shift. Southern Africa is set apart from other Sub-Saharan African regions because of its mineral resources, including copper, diamonds, gold, zinc, chromium, platinum, manganese, iron ore, and coal.

Countries in Southern Africa are quite large in physical area, except three smaller landlocked states: Lesotho, Swaziland, and Malawi. The larger countries--South Africa, Botswana, Mozambique, Zimbabwe, Zambia, Namibia, and Angola--all have extensive mineral deposits.

The vast mineral resources make this one of the wealthiest regions of Africa with the greatest potential for economic growth. A physical band of mineral resources in Southern Africa stretches from the rich oil fields off the northwest coast of Angola, east through the diamond-mining region, and into the northern Copper Belt of Zambia. A region of rich mineral deposits continues from the unique geological formation called the Great Dyke in central Zimbabwe through the Bushveld basin into South Africa.

From here, it extends southwest through the central gold- and diamond-mining regions of South Africa toward the southern coast. Mining activity exists on both sides of the belt of mineral resources. Diamond mining is found in parts of Botswana and along the coast of Namibia. Coal can be found in central Mozambique. The countries that are able to conduct the necessary extractive processes are creating national wealth and increasing the standard of living for their people.



Map of Madagascar

Madagascar is located to the east of the continent, in the Indian Ocean. Madagascar is the world's fourth-largest island and is similar in area to France. Surrounding Madagascar are the independent island states of the Seychelles, Comoros, and Mauritius. Madagascar is included in this unit on Southern Africa but does not share its cultural geography or biodiversity.

Madagascar broke away from the mainland more than 160 million years ago and developed its own environmental conditions and cultural heritage. The early human inhabitants of Madagascar can trace their ancestry to the regions of Malaysia and Indonesia in Southeast Asia. People from the African mainland also joined the population. The whole island later came under the colonial domination of France but won its independence in 1960.

Madagascar's unique physical environment is home to many plants and animals found nowhere else in the world. At least 33 varieties of lemurs and many tropical bird species and other organisms are found only on Madagascar. It is an area of high biodiversity and is home to about five percent of all the animals and plants in the world. Tropical rain forests can be found on the eastern edge on the windward side of the island. The western side of the island experiences a rain shadow effect because of the height of the central highlands, which reach as high as 9,435 feet. The western side of the island has a smaller population and receives less precipitation.



The indri Lemur in Madagascar is known locally as babakoto, which translates to "Ancestor of Man."

https://k12.libretexts.org/@go/page/8254

Since 1990, the eastern tropical rain forest has experienced a sharp decline because of extensive logging, slash-and-burn agriculture, mining operations, and drought. Population growth has placed a heavier demand on the environment, which in turn puts stress on the habitats of many of the unusual organisms that are unique to the island. Typical of many African nations, agriculture is Madagascar's main economic activity. About 80 percent of the 25 million people who live on the island earn their living off the land.

Deforestation is occurring on all parts of the island and is more severe in areas where human habitation leads to a high demand for firewood used in cooking. In other parts of Africa, important environmental areas have been protected or transformed into national parks and wildlife preserves. Though protected areas do exist on Madagascar, efforts to protect the environment and the wildlife have been hampered by the lack of available funding and the population's high demand for natural resources.

Angola



Map of Angola

The largest country in Southern Africa is Angola. Located on the west coast of the continent, the country includes the small exclave of Cabinda to the north, which borders the Congo River and is separated from the main body of Angola. Cabinda is a major oil producer and remains a foothold for rebel groups seeking greater control over oil resources. Offshore oil activity has increased in the northern region of Angola and has attracted international oil companies from many countries.

In 2007, Angola was the largest oil exporter to China, which has become one of Angola's largest financial supporters. Oil revenues have helped Angola rebuild after a bitter civil war (1975–2002) devastated the country and its infrastructure. Angola is also burdened with thousands of refugees seeking safety from the civil wars in the Congo.

Angola was a Portuguese colony and fought hard for independence, which it received in 1975. After independence, strong factions clashed to obtain political power. At the same time, the Cold War was at a high point. The United States and the Soviet Union both used their influence to support political leadership in Angola and other parts of Africa to reflect their respective ideologies. Even Cuba had a large number of military troops in Angola in support of a socialist agenda.

As the factions within Angola fought for power, the country was deeply divided. Thus began a 27-year civil war that finally ended in 2002. The country has been working to recover from this turmoil ever since. Foreign aid and charitable organizations have helped feed the people, and oil revenues are beginning to support recovery. The government of Angola has suffered from serious corruption. Much of the wealth is centralized in the hands of an elite few and does not filter down to the general population.

Natural resources were a major factor in the long, drawn-out civil war. Angola was one of the original countries in which the term *blood diamonds* was used. Resistant groups would mine the diamonds, sell them on the world market, and use that income to fund their military pursuits. Revenue from the diamond trade fueled the death and destruction of the newly independent country.

Diamonds are still being mined in Angola and bringing in considerable national income. The industry is not always controlled or managed to lessen the number of diamonds reaching the market from dubious sources. Natural resources have helped the country look to a future in which a more stable government can work to rebuild the country's infrastructure and improve the standard of living for its people.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org



Map of Namibia

Namibia is a dry, arid land with few people. Its population density of about 6.5 people per square mile in 2009 was the second-lowest in the world after Mongolia. The physical geography of this large country is dominated by arid plateaus and desert regions with changes in elevation between them. The Namib Desert, characterized by enormous sand dunes, runs along the entire west coast. It meets up with the Great Escarpment, which is a sharp rise in elevation of as much as a mile high toward the interior. A central plateau dominates the north-south interior, and the Kalahari Desert is to the east.

Natural resources are abundant. Uranium and diamonds are the major export products; lead, zinc, tin, silver, copper, and tungsten are also mined. The coastal waters support a substantial fishing industry. Namibia's constitution contains language that addresses environmental conservation and the protection of wildlife habitat. The country has created nature conservancies, which have advanced the activities of ecotourism, a source of national wealth promoted by the government.

The Berlin Conference of 1884, when the colonial European powers met to divide up Africa, resulted in the German colonization of the region of Namibia. The German influence remains evident in the dominant religion. Most of the Christians in Namibia, which now make up about 80 percent of the population, are Lutherans.

By 1920, the region known as South West Africa had been transferred to South Africa by the League of Nations. South West Africa had to endure the political policies of apartheid while under the jurisdiction of South Africa. By 1966, local uprisings and a push for sovereignty resulted in a socialist independence movement that created the South West Africa People's Organization (SWAPO). This organization was entrenched in a guerilla war with South Africa, which led to the return of Namibia to United Nations (UN) supervision. The name *Namibia* was adopted during this era. Socialist countries such as Cuba provided supported SWAPO's movement for autonomy.

The 1980s brought about a transition in the governing process in the Namibian War of Independence. In 1985, South Africa installed an interim government in Namibia. A UN peace plan was reached that included Namibia in 1988, and Namibia finally gained its independence in 1990 following South Africa's withdrawal from Angola in their civil war. SWAPO has become the dominant Namibian political affiliation. As a recently independent country, Namibia has had to work through a natural transition process to create a stable government to sustain itself as an independent country.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

Zambia



Map of Zambia

The landlocked country of Zambia was known as Northern Rhodesia during colonial times. From 1891 to 1923, it was administered by Britain's South Africa Company. Then it became a colony of Great Britain. The name was changed to Zambia when the country was granted independence in 1964. Lusaka is its primate city and capital.

Mining in the Copper Belt to the north provides both economic activity and employment opportunities for the people, but long distances from major seaports and the fluctuation in world commodity prices do not provide a stable economic situation for the mining industry. Though most of the population makes their living by subsistence agriculture, the country has a large urbanized population that heavily depends on the mining industry for employment and economic support.

The country is expected to double in population in about 35 years if current rates continue. The average family size is more than five members. The larger towns and cities along the major transportation routes are the main population centers. Unemployment remains high in these urban areas, and there are few opportunities for economic development. More than 70 ethnic groups can be found in Zambia, including a small but growing Chinese population. English is the official language, but many other languages are spoken. Most of the people are Christians with a wide variety of denominations. Animist and traditional beliefs are also common.

Malawi



Map of Malawi

Malawi is a landlocked nation that became independent in 1964. The British controlled the region in 1891 and named their colony Nyasaland after Lake Nyasa, a large lake in Malawi; the lake is also called Lake Malawi. The lake serves as the eastern border of the country. Another name for Lake Malawi is Calendar Lake, named so because of its physical dimensions, which are 52 miles wide and 365 miles long. Lake Malawi is a deep water lake with depths reaching 2,300 feet. The great depths of the lake are caused

by the Great Rift Valley, which created the depression the lake rests in. The lake provides for the livelihoods for millions of people who live along its shores and depend on its resources of fish and fresh water.



Lake Malawi is an African Great Lake and the southernmost lake in the East African Rift system, located between Malawi, Mozambique and Tanzania.

Malawi is not a technologically developed country. Only about 15 percent of the population lives in urban areas. About 90 percent of the country's exports are agricultural products of tea, sugar, coffee, and tobacco. Malawi's government requires substantial assistance from the international community, such as the World Bank and the International Monetary Fund (IMF). Complicating the situation are instances of government corruption that have led to the withholding of international aid. Another major problem for Malawi is the significant number of HIV-infected people. Also, the average family size is large, and rapid population growth places an ever-increasing demand on natural resources.

Mozambique



Map of Mozambique

Before colonial Europeans arrived in the region of Mozambique along Africa's east coast, the Bantu people of a number of ethnic subgroups were the dominant people, and they still make up more than 99 percent of the population. Portugal had claimed the region as a colony as early as the 16th century. Portugal strongly resisted releasing its claims to Mozambique but did so after much opposition. The country became independent in 1975.

The transition from colony to independent nation was a struggle for Mozambique. The rebel groups that had been instrumental in fighting a guerrilla war for independence against Portugal remained active after 1975 and fighting continued after independence. The country fell into a violent civil war from 1977 to 1992. Central elements in this war were involvement or influence by Zimbabwe and South Africa on one side and Marxist support from the Soviet Union on the other.

More than one million people died in this brutal war, which also devastated the country, destroyed valuable infrastructure, and created more than one million refugees who sought sanctuary in neighboring countries. At the same time, most people of Portuguese descent left because of safety concerns. A peace agreement was finally reached in 1992. Since then, the country has struggled to create a stable government and provide a safe environment for its people.

Foreign aid has remained a necessity to provide economic stability for Mozambique. The agrarian society includes a high percentage of the population that lives below the poverty line. Selective mining operations and the introduction of garment manufacturing augments the main agricultural activities. Since 2000, the government has worked to implement economic reforms and to curb excess spending. Both have had a positive effect on economic growth.

It is not unusual for foreign debt to plague developing countries, and Mozambique has suffered from a high level of national debt that has threatened to bankrupt the country. Debt relief for Mozambique came through the International Monetary Fund's debt forgiveness program. Both debt forgiveness and loan rescheduling agreements were implemented. The positive growth pattern indicates that even desperately poor countries can work to improve the standard of living for their people if there are adequate resources and opportunities for employment. Still, rapid population growth potentially cancels out economic gains and threatens to deplete valuable resources, thereby creating an even more difficult path for future stability.

Zimbabwe



Map of Zimbabwe

There is no better way to understand Zimbabwe than to become familiar with the history and heritage of the people who live there. The Great Zimbabwe Kingdom flourished from about 1250 to 1450, when it was eclipsed by succeeding kingdoms. Ruins from the extensive stone architecture of that era remain and are a major tourist attraction. These kingdoms were major trading centers for the region but later clashed with the colonial powers that desired to dominate regional trade for themselves. The Bantu civilization of Southern Africa established a number of kingdoms that existed in Zimbabwe up to the colonial era.



Inside of the Great Enclosure, which is part of the Great Zimbabwe ruins.

Zimbabwe experienced similar colonial activity to that which befell Zambia, its neighbor to the north. Britain arrived in the late 1800s, and by 1923 they called their newly controlled colony Southern Rhodesia, after Cecil Rhodes, who headed the British South

Africa Company, a mercantile company that broke new ground in the region. The British were able to put down any resistance to their activity and consolidated their holdings.

In 1965, the white-dominated leadership of the Rhodesian government unilaterally declared its independence, but Britain did not recognize this action. The United Nations (UN) issued sanctions against the white leadership. The response was an internal guerrilla uprising to fight for free elections that would include black Africans. Independence was finally granted in 1980, and the country's name was officially changed from Rhodesia to Zimbabwe.

In 1980, Robert Mugabe came to power as the first president and extended his authoritarian rule for 30 years. During this time, the country experienced civil unrest and political turmoil. Mugabe was accused of corruption, election rigging, and pillaging of public funds for personal gain. Under his leadership, there were accusations of government mismanagement, human rights abuses, and hyperinflation of the country's currency.

In 2008, inflation led to serious devaluation of the currency. The Reserve Bank of Zimbabwe printed banknotes in the denomination of 100 trillion dollars that were only worth a few US dollars in the international exchange. Zimbabwe citizens continue to work through these difficult economic conditions.

Mugabe initiated a land reform policy that would take land owned by people of white European ancestry and redistribute it to people of black African ancestry. During the colonial era, white Europeans, who only made up a small percentage of the population, moved in and took control of most of the agricultural lands. Land reform was a progressive policy and was meant to provide a greater level of equality within the country. However, the disorganized methods used to carry out the plan resulted in violence and the confiscation of farmland with little regard for the rule of law.

Thousands of white farmers and their families left the country. Some were killed when their farms were taken over by force. Mugabe was accused of corruption in making sure his cronies benefited from the land reform without being concerned about the general population. The disruption in the agricultural sector resulted in a drastic reduction in agricultural output. The country shifted from a once sustainable, prosperous agricultural sector with extensive exports to an agricultural system that was in disarray. The result was food shortages and the loss of enormous agricultural export profits.

Shaping a stable post-Mugabe government will be a challenge for Zimbabwe. Solving the problems resulting from the transition from exploitive colonial rule to personal authoritarian rule will be a difficult undertaking. The country has serious economic problems that have lowered the number of opportunities and advantages for its people. Life expectancy has dropped from about 60 years in 1990 to fewer than 40 years two decades later.

Health care, education, and social services have not reached the level needed to sustain a healthy society by world standards. The HIV/AIDS epidemic has hit Zimbabwe hard, affecting a higher percentage of its population than most of the other African countries. Political turmoil, civil unrest, and violence have reduced the level of law and order within the country. These issues are indicators that within the globalization process, countries such as Zimbabwe will be losing out on the opportunity to attract foreign investments, manufacturing expansions, or employment opportunities being developed elsewhere to meet the demands of the marketplace.

Botswana



Map of Botswana

https://k12.libretexts.org/@go/page/8254

The country of Botswana is relatively flat, and the Kalahari Desert covers as much as 70 percent of its land area. By the time it established independence from Britain in 1966, the lack of agricultural lands had reduced the country's economic level to the lowest in the world. At that time, the country was called Bechuanaland.

Botswana has transitioned more smoothly than other African countries into a stable political system with a fast-growing economy. It has an emerging service sector, extensive diamond mining, and expanding industrial ambitions. Personal incomes are rising, and the standard of living is reaching upward to the second highest in the region after South Africa.

Botswana is fortunate to have had uninterrupted civilian political leadership for the decades following independence. This stable government has implemented progressive social policies and attracted significant capital investments to create one of the most dynamic economies in Africa. Diamond mining has been the principle extraction activity dominating the country's export income. The stability of the country has enhanced the tourism market and created a growing ecotourism industry. The vast Kalahari Desert and the well-protected game reserves provide attractive tourist destinations.



Gnus and Zebras in Chobe National Park, Botswana

Far from the fast-growing urban development of the big cities in Botswana, there exists a dispute between the government of Botswana and the indigenous San people who live in the middle of the Central Kalahari Game Reserve. The government has established programs to move the San from the reserve to other locations where they would become less nomadic and settle into a more agrarian lifestyle.

According to the government position, this is to keep the natural habitat and wildlife from being affected by human activity, thereby promoting tourism. The courts, however, ruled against the forced move of the San out of the Central Kalahari Game Reserve. Critics of the government program claim the real reason for the move is to clear the land of human habitation so the area can be developed for mining purposes. Estimates indicate that fewer than 100,000 San presently live in Southern Africa. About 55,000 San live in Botswana.

Botswana's government has advanced one of Africa's most progressive and comprehensive programs for dealing with HIV/AIDS. Medical care, education, and social services are being strengthened. Botswana ranks at the top end in terms of the percentage of people who are infected with HIV/AIDS. This epidemic cuts across all levels of society and culture. The social stigma attached to being infected with HIV discourages individuals from being tested for the disease or seeking medical care. Addressing this epidemic is a challenge throughout Southern Africa.



Map of South Africa

Anchoring Sub-Saharan Africa to the south is the country of South Africa. Its large land area and vast mineral resources support a population of more than 54 million people. The Cape of Good Hope on the southern tip of the continent is a transition point from the Atlantic Ocean to the Indian Ocean. Its strategic location was important for the control of shipping during the early colonial era before the Suez Canal provided a shortcut between Europe and Asia, bypassing most of Africa. The European colonial era first brought Dutch explorers to the Cape of Good Hope, where they established the city of Cape Town as a stopover and resupply outpost on their way to rest of Asia.

South Africa is home to many indigenous ethnic groups and is demonstrative of the diverse pattern of human geography. The country has a history of both ethnic diversity and ethnic division. Two of the largest African groups are the Xhosa and the Zulu. The European component of the ethnic mosaic was enhanced by colonial and neocolonial activities. After the arrival of the first Dutch ships, other Europeans followed and competed with the African groups for land and control.

The discovery of first diamonds and then gold prompted Britain's involvement in South Africa. The Boer Wars (1880–81 and 1899–1902) were fought between the Dutch-based Boers and Britain for control of South Africa's mineral resources. South Africa became a British colony dominated by a white power structure. The Boers (later known as Afrikaners) spoke Afrikaans and were prominent in the South African political system.

Segregation first developed as an informal separation of the racial groups but evolved into the legally institutionalized policy of apartheid, which separated people into black, white, and colored (mixed race) racial categories. A fourth category was developed for people from Indian or Asian backgrounds. Apartheid eventually found its way into every aspect of South African culture.

In the larger scale of society, access and separation were based on race. Each racial group had its own beaches, buses, hospitals, schools, universities, and so on. The legal system divided the population according to race, with the white minority receiving every advantage. There were extensive and detailed rules for every aspect of daily activity, including which public restroom or drinking fountain could be used, which color an individual's telephone could be, and which park bench a person could sit on.

The government also sanctioned separate homelands for people from different ethnic groups. People were physically removed from their homes and transported to their respective new homelands based on their racial or ethnic background. The policy of apartheid not only divided the country at that time but set up racial barriers that will take generations to overcome.

The controversial policy of apartheid in South Africa achieved international attention. Many countries condemned it and implemented economic sanctions and trade restrictions against South Africa. Opposition grew within the country and erupted into violence and social unrest. As a result, the white-dominated government of South Africa began to dismantle the apartheid system in the 1990s.

The ban on political opposition parties, such as the African National Congress, was lifted, and after 27 years in prison, Nelson Mandela was released from prison, where he had held for his resistance activities. The apartheid legislation was repealed, and a new era began. Mandela was the first African to be elected president of South Africa in the new multiracial elections of 1994. His presidency, which ended in 1999, set the stage for a multiracial society. South Africa is still working through the consequences from years of racial separation.

LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

South Africa has large, modern cities such as Cape Town, Johannesburg, and Durban, each about the size of the US city of Chicago or larger. The cities of Pretoria, East Rand, and Port Elizabeth are also major metropolitan areas and have more than one million people each. These urban centers all contribute to and support the extensive mining and agricultural activities that provide national wealth. As the country that exports more diamonds than any other in the world, South Africa has gained much national income from the extraction of mineral resources, which are being tapped by some of the largest mining operations on Earth.



Cape Town is a coastal city in South Africa. It is the second most populous urban area in South Africa after Johannesburg.

Large parts of South Africa have a moderate climate and good soils, which combine to produce enormous quantities of agricultural products, both for domestic consumption and for export profits. Mining and agriculture have provided extensive opportunities for employment. These opportunities draw in migrants from neighboring countries that have experienced either political unrest or poor economic conditions. These immigrants add to the cultural dynamics of an already ethnically diverse country.

South Africa's manufacturing sector is not well developed. The country depends on Europe, East Asia, and the United States, the three main core economic areas of the world, to provide postindustrial goods. There are few well-paying manufacturing jobs to provide for a growing or stable South African middle class.

The structure and dynamics of the current economic activities have brought about a two-tiered socioeconomic system. Most of the population may work in the mines, in agricultural activities, or in the service sector, but they are not directly benefiting from the profits of their labor, other than earning a wage. These people find themselves in the poorer working-class majority of the population.



Gold miners in South Africa must endure difficult working conditions.

The landowners, mining corporation executives, and social elite that control the service sector or are employed in activities such as banking or the commodity markets are receiving higher incomes and have created a wealthier upper class. Apartheid supported this class division. The current free and open legal system has yet to bring about a change in the socioeconomic structure of the population. Millions of poor ethnic minorities find themselves in living conditions similar to their economically depressed neighbors in other parts of Africa, while the wealthier upper class has established a good standard of living similar to that of the core economic areas of the world.

South Africa redrew its internal provincial boundaries in 1994. The large former Cape Province in the south, which had been a former British center of power, was divided into three smaller provinces. The large Transvaal Province in the north, which had been a center for Afrikaners, was divided into four smaller provinces. Orange Free State changed its name to Free State and Natal Province changed its name to KwaZulu-Natal. The changes were made based on the size and political management of the country that had come with the transfer of power when Mandela became president. The European colonial pattern of settlement was adjusted to represent a more South African pattern of political administration.

The 2010 World Cup Soccer Games

In 2010, South Africa was chosen to host the World Cup soccer games. The African teams included Algeria, Cameroon, Ivory Coast, Ghana, Nigeria, and South Africa. The World Cup is held once every four years. The cost to host the games was enormous and also a testimony to the people and government of South Africa. The country had to build five new stadiums and upgrade five existing stadiums for the games. The largest stadium was Soccer City in Johannesburg, with a capacity of about 84,490. Overall construction costs were estimated to be more than one billion dollars. Transportation infrastructure and road networks were also improved.

The preparations and costs that South Africa undertook to hold the games were not without controversy. Sections of shack dwellers in Durban and in other places were relocated to be out of the sight of international visitors attending the games. This move was made to improve the country's image for tourism. There were also reports of strikes by the construction workers building the stadiums, many of them temporary workers making about 300 dollars per month, who argued that their wages were too low.

South Africa's unemployment rate at the time was about 25 percent, and the country continues to struggle with unemployment. The hope was that the infrastructure improvements would benefit the country for the long term and that tourism would increase if the individuals who came for the games encouraged others to visit. South Africa was banking on this event to boost its economic conditions and strengthen its standing in the global marketplace.

The impact of sports on society—both positive and negative—can be enormous. Hosting the World Cup necessitated the strengthening of South Africa's security operations to meet FIFA (Fédération Internationale de Football Association) standards to handle the high influx of participants and visitors. It has been estimated that South Africa invested about $4.3 billion to host the games. These are billions of dollars that did not go toward providing water, medical clinics, and educational support to the poorest neighborhoods and communities. The financial investments indicate the power and attraction that the World Cup holds on a global basis. No African team was in the final match, but soccer is a widely supported sport throughout Africa.

Swaziland and Lesotho



Map of Swaziland



Map of Lesotho

https://k12.libretexts.org/@go/page/8254

The two small landlocked enclaves of Swaziland and Lesotho are independent countries surrounded by South Africa. Mozambique borders Swaziland to the north. Under British occupation, the area of Lesotho was called Basutoland. Upon achieving independence in 1966, the area was renamed the Kingdom of Lesotho. The country is mountainous, and most of the land area is more than one mile in elevation.

The Sotho people have a Bantu background and speak a Bantu language. More than 80 percent are Christian. Lesotho is the size of the US state of Maryland and has a population of approximately two million people. The main economic activity has been based on agriculture, but a large percentage of income comes from remittances from Lesotho citizens who work in South Africa. Light manufacturing is beginning to emerge to improve the economy.

Lesotho is a constitutional monarchy, which means the government is led by a prime minister, but the king retains his ceremonial position. Reforming the country from a kingdom to a democratic-style government has not been without obstacles. The country has been subjected to political unrest, resulting in many years of military rule and violent internal conflicts. Lesotho is trying to stabilize its political situation and economy.

The Swazi Kingdom functioned under relative autonomy during colonial times, and Britain granted independence to Swaziland in 1968. The Swazi are a Bantu people who migrated into Southern Africa centuries ago with the Xhosas and Zulus. Swaziland has low mountains to the north with the grasslands and scrub forests of the savannas in the east and rain forests in the west. It is ruled by an absolute monarch, one of the last in the world. Political unrest has led to challenges to his rule. Reformers are pushing for modification of the government and for some element of democratic reform, but reforms are slow in materializing. The small country of Swaziland is about the size of the US state of New Jersey. There are more than one million people, and one-third of the population is infected with HIV/AIDS.

Key Takeaways

- Southern Africa is located along the Tropic of Capricorn and is host to various climate zones, including tropical, desert, and moderate type C climates. Extensive agricultural activity can be found south of the Tropic of Capricorn, where moderate climates prevail.
- Madagascar is separated from the mainland of Africa and provides a habitat for animals not found on the mainland. The mainland region is large with many different physical landscapes.
- The mainland region of Southern Africa has extensive mineral deposits that provide resources for its countries to gain national wealth. Approaches to translating mineral deposits into wealth have varied among the countries.
- Many ethnic groups can be found in Southern Africa, ranging from the San in the Kalahari to the Zulu groups to the south. Colonialism made its footprint on the region by creating borders and providing colonial names. The transition from a colony to an independent nation has caused political and economic difficulties.
- South Africa had an apartheid system in place stemming from the colonial era. The apartheid system was dismantled after the 1994 election of President Nelson Mandela. South Africa went so far as to change its provincial system from four to nine provinces to more appropriately politically administer the country.

Vocabulary Terms

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

	A political group that was founded in 1912 to unite African people and was opposed to apartheid
	A policy of complete separation of the races, instituted by the white minority government of South Africa in 1948
	Conflict between Dutch and British settlers for control of South Africa
	A steep slope with a nearly flat top
	A city established in what is now Zimbabwe by the Shona around 1000 it became the capital of a thriving gold trade in Southern Africa
	A state founded in the 15th century by a man named Mutota and that extended throughout all of present-day Zimbabwe
	One of the leaders of the African National Congress who led a struggle to end apartheid and was elected president in 1994 in the first all-race election in South Africa
	The banning of trade to isolate a country; economic and political penalties used by other countries on South Africa to end apartheid
	One of the largest indigenous tribal groups in South Africa

Applying Knowledge

Discussion and Study Questions

1. What is threatening Madagascar's biodiversity?
2. What do the Great Dyke and the Bushveld basin offer for economic development?
3. What did Namibia do to address environmental conservation and protect its wildlife?
4. Name the country that provided support for SWAPO. Why do you think they did so?
5. Why is Lake Malawi called Calendar Lake? What process created Lake Malawi?
6. How did the Cold War influence Southern African countries?
7. What economic condition plagues most developing countries that seek aid from the IMF and the World Bank?
8. Why has Botswana reached a higher standard of living for its people than other countries in Southern Africa?
9. How has the policy of apartheid affected South Africa? When did apartheid officially end?
10. How do the people of Swaziland or Lesotho fit into the two-tiered system of social stratification in South Africa?

Real-World Geography Exercise

1. Using Google Maps, complete the following activities:
   a. Locate each place on the bulleted list below.
   b. Find the nearest city with an international airport in proximity to each location on the bulleted list below.
   c. Calculate the distance and travel time by plane to each city from the Seattle-Tacoma International Airport.
2. Using NASA Latitude and Longitude Finder, determine the latitude and longitude for each location on the bulleted list below.
3. Be prepared to share and discuss your answers.

- Bushveld basin
- Cabinda
- Cape of Good Hope
- Copper Belt

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

- Great Dyke
- Great Escarpment
- Kalahari Desert
- Lake Malawi
- Namib Desert
- Victoria Falls
- Zambezi River

Current Events

Geography Education Scoop It

Tablet PCs Preserve Indigenous knowledge

Nine Reasons to Visit the Okavango Delta in Botswana

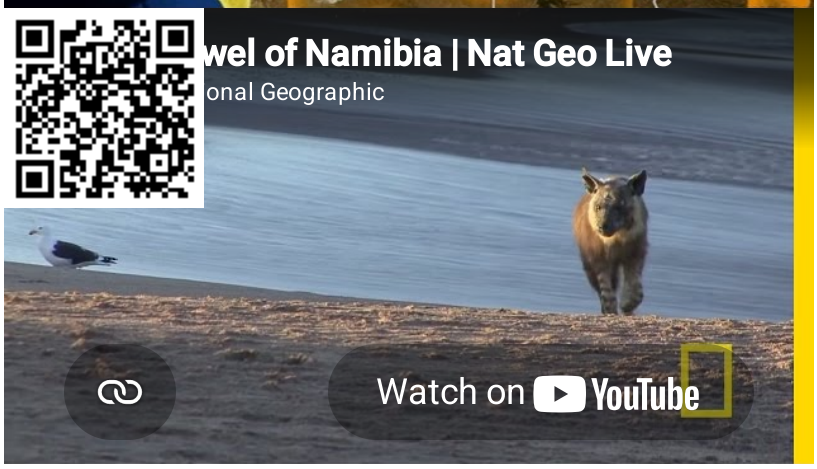
Kalahari's New Day

Zimbabwe Poised for Significant Power Boost as China Rachets Up Investment

Angola Borrowing 1 Million From World Bank

Videos for Geography Enrichment



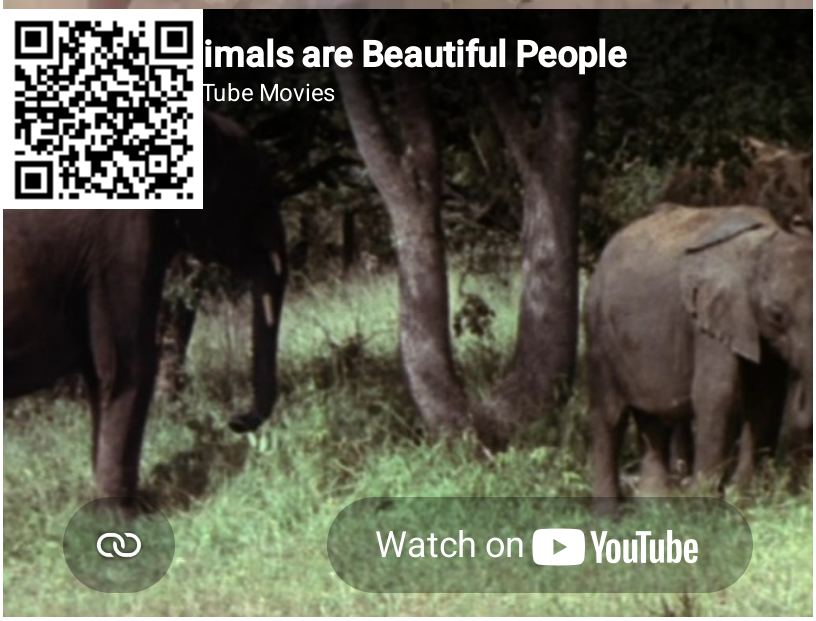



ozambique's Geographic Challeng
TANZANIA
ZAMBIA
MALAWI
Natural Gas
MOZAMBIQUE
Coal
Quelimane
MADAGASCAR
ZIMBABWE
Shona
Beira
SOUTH AFRICA
SWAZILAND
Maputo
Watch on YouTube


ploring the Skeleton Coast in Afric
Studios
Watch on YouTube


uth Africa's Geographic Challenge
Pretoria
Johannesburg
Mpumalanga
North-West
SWAZILAND
SOUTH AFRICA
Free State
Kwazulu-Natal
Richards Bay
LESOTHO
Durban
Northern Cape
Eastern Cape
Western Cape
Cape Town
Port Elizabeth
Watch on YouTube


ADAGASCAR The People, Country
s Richardson
Watch on YouTube


imals are Beautiful People
Tube Movies
Watch on YouTube



Helpful Websites for the Study of Geography

Canadian Encyclopedia is an encyclopedia funded by the Canadian government covering all branches of knowledge. Their scholarly collection includes interactive materials.

CIA World Factbook provides information on the people, history, government, economy, energy, geography, communications, transportation, military, and transnational issues for the world's entities.

Congress.gov is a US government website where you can find federal legislation, past and present, as well as information about the US legal system.

Drug Enforcement Administration (DEA) is a government agency website that provides current news, resources, topics of interest, information about drugs, careers in the DEA, and a tip hotline.

Library of Congress is the largest library in the world and provides manuscripts, files, information, pictures, and videos.

NASA Earth Observatory (NEO) is a US government agency website that allows users to search for and retrieve satellite images of Earth.

National Archives is a US government website that provides historical documents, photos, records, publications, and educator resources.

National Oceanic and Atmospheric Association (NOAA) is a US government agency website that provides weather-related information and ocean research.

National Map is a website by the United States Geological Survey and other federal, state, and local agencies that delivers topographic information for the United States.

NationMaster is a massive central data source and a handy way to graphically compare nations.

Real-Time World Air Quality Index is a website that measures most locations in the world for air pollution in real time.

StateMaster is a unique statistical database, which allows you to research and compare a multitude of different data on US states.

United Nations (UN) is an international organization founded in 1945 and made up of 193 member states. The UN maintains international peace and security, protects human rights, delivers humanitarian aid, promotes sustainable development, and upholds international law.

United States Census Bureau is a US government agency that provides a population clock, data, surveys, statistics, a library with information and infographics, news about the economy, and much more.

United States Geological Survey (USGS) is a US government agency website that provides scientific information about the natural hazards that threaten lives, the natural resources we rely on, the health of our ecosystems and environment, and the impacts of climate and land-use change.

Whitehouse.gov is a US government website that provides the latest presidential news, information about the budget, policy, defense, and many more topics.

World Health Organization (WHO) is under the United Nations and provides leadership on matters critical to health, shapes the research agenda on health, and monitors the health situation and assessing health trends around the world. Their website provides information on the state of health around the world, outbreaks, current health news, and more.

World Trade Organization (WTO) is an intergovernmental organization that regulates international trade. The website provides

LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

information on the history of the multilateral trading system, featured videos, news and events, trade topics, and more.

Image	Reference	Attributions
	[Figure 1]	**Credit:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeograp...uthern-africa/ **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/a447b4771f068814eddc92c5d6d45101.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 2]	**Credit:** By Vberger (Transfered from fr.Wikipedia.org) [Public domain], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Victoria5.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 3]	**Credit:** By Hp.Baumeler [CC BY-SA 4.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0)], from Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Gewitter_in_der_Kalahari.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

	[Figure 4]	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/ma.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 5]	**Credit:** By Erik Patel (email) [CC BY-SA 3.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0)], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Indri_indri_001.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 6]	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/ao.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

	[Figure 7]	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/wa.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 8]	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/za.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 9]	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/mi.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

	[Figure 10]	**Credit:** http://safarinotes.blogspot.com/2012...t-for-oil.html **Source:** http://2.bp.blogspot.com/-ozSu1iAFbrs/UMhU13hKc4I/AAAAAAAABos/vPGdA04BmgQ/s1600/Lake+Malawi+Pristine.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 11]	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/mz.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 12]	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/zi.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 13]	**Credit:** By Image taken by Jan Derk in 1997 in Zimbabwe. (en:Image:Great-Zimbabwe-2.jpg) [Public domain], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Great-Zimbabwe-2.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

	[Figure 14]	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/bc.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 15]	**Credit:** By Gorgo (Photo taken by author) [Public domain], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Gnus_zebras_chobe_national_park.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 16]	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/sf.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 17]	**Credit:** By Damien du Toit [CC BY 2.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/2.0)], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:CapeTPano123.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

	[Figure 18]	**Credit:** https://usilive.org/opinions/job-los...of-the-system/ **Source:** https://usilive.org/wp-content/uploads/2015/08/South-africa-gold-miners.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 19]	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/wz.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 20]	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/lt.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

8.7: Southern Africa (2 Days) is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

9: South Asia (10 days)

9.1: South Asia- Introducing the Realm (2 Days)

9.2: South Asia- The Peripheral States (2 Days)

9.3: Pakistan and Bangladesh (2 Days)

9.4: India (2 Days)

9.5: Religions of South Asia (2 Days)

This page titled 9: South Asia (10 days) is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by CK12 via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

9.1: South Asia- Introducing the Realm (2 Days)

Chapter Challenges

1. Summarize the realm's physical geography. Identify each country's main features and physical attributes and locate the realm's main river systems.
2. Understand the dynamics of the monsoon and how it affects human activities.
3. Outline the early civilizations of South Asia and learn how they gave rise to the early human development patterns that have shaped the realm.
4. Describe how European colonialism impacted the realm.
5. Learn about the basic demographic trends the realm is experiencing. Understand how rapid population growth is a primary concern for the countries of South Asia.

Learning Objectives

TEKS Regional Unit 09 South Asia: Chapter 9.1 Introducing the Realm

WG.1A Analyze the effects of physical and human geographic patterns and processes on the past and describe their impact on the present, including significant physical features and environmental conditions that influenced migration patterns and shaped the distribution of culture groups today.

WG.2A Describe the human and physical characteristics of the same regions at different periods of time to evaluate relationships between past events and current conditions.

WG.1B Trace the spatial diffusion of phenomena such as the Colombian Exchange or the diffusion of American popular culture and describe the effects on regions of contact.

WG.3B Describe the physical processes that affect the environments of regions, including weather, tectonic forces, erosion, and soil-building processes.

WG.4A Explain how elevation, latitude, wind systems, ocean currents, position on a continent, and mountain barriers influence temperature, precipitation, and distribution of climate regions.

WG.4B Explain the influence of climate on the distribution of biomes in different regions.

WG.5A Analyze how the character of a place is related to its political, economic, social, and cultural elements.

WG.7A Construct and Analyze population pyramids and use other data, graphics, and maps to describe the population characteristics of different societies and to predict future population trends.

WG.7C Describe trends in world population growth and distribution.

WG.21A Analyze and evaluate the validity and utility of multiple sources of geographic information such as primary and secondary sources, aerial photographs, and maps.

WG.22A Design and draw appropriate graphics such as maps, diagrams, tables, and graphs to communicate geographic features, distributions, and relationships.

WG.22C Use geographic terminology correctly.

WG.22D Use standard grammar, spelling, sentence structure, and punctuation.

TEKS and ELPS for Regional World Geography Unit 09--South Asia from TEKS Resource System.

South Asia: Introducing the Realm

The Physical Geography

The landmass of South Asia was formed by the Indian Plate colliding with the Eurasian Plate. This action started about 70 million years ago and gave rise to the highest mountain ranges in the world. Most of the South Asian landmass is formed from the land in the original Indian Plate. Pressure from tectonic action against the plates causes the Himalayas to rise in elevation by as much as one to five millimeters per year. Destructive earthquakes and tremors are frequent in this seismically active realm. The great size of the Himalayas has intensely influenced the beliefs and traditions of the people in the realm. Some of the mountains are considered sacred to certain religions that exist here.



Mount Everest is the world's highest peak at 29,035 feet.

The Himalayan Mountains dominate the physical landscape in the northern region of South Asia. Mount Everest is the tallest peak in the world at 29,035 feet. Three key rivers cross South Asia, all originating from the Himalayas. The Indus River, which has been a center of human civilization for thousands of years, starts in Tibet and flows through the center of Pakistan. The Ganges River flows through northern India, creating a core region of the country. The Brahmaputra River flows through Tibet and then enters India from the east, where it meets up with the Ganges in Bangladesh to flow into the Bay of Bengal.

While the northern part of this region includes some of the highest elevations in the world, the Maldives in the south has some of the lowest elevations, some barely above sea level. The coastal regions in southern Bangladesh also have low elevations. When the seasonal reversal of winds called the monsoon arrives every year, there is heavy flooding and its effect on the infrastructure of the region is disastrous. The extensive Thar Desert in western India and parts of Pakistan, on the other hand, does not receive monsoon rains. In fact, much of southwest Pakistan—a region called Baluchistan—is dry, with desert conditions.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org



This region is home to Jaipur, Jodhpur and many culturally important cities.

The mountains on the border between Pakistan and Afghanistan extend through Kashmir and then meet up with the high ranges of the Himalayas. The Himalayas create a natural barrier between India and China, with the kingdoms of Nepal and Bhutan acting as buffer states with Tibet. Farther south along the east and west coasts of India are shorter mountain ranges called ghats.

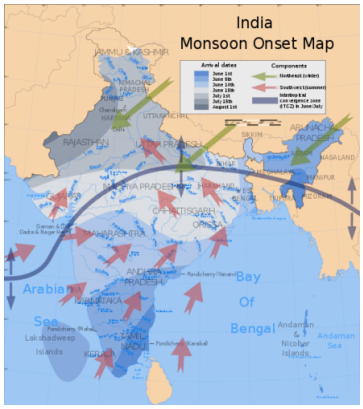
The Western Ghats reach as high as 8,000 feet, but average around 3,000 feet. These ghats are home to an extensive range of biodiversity. The Eastern Ghats are not as high as the Western Ghats but have similar physical qualities. The ghats provide a habitat for a wide range of animals and are also home to large coffee and tea estates. The Deccan Plateau lies between the Eastern and Western Ghats. The Central Indian Plateau and the Chota-Nagpur Plateau are located in the central parts of India, north of the two Ghat ranges. The monsoon rains ensure that an average of about 52 inches of rain per year falls on the Chota-Nagpur Plateau, which has a tiger reserve and is also a refuge for Asian elephants.



The Chota Nagpur Plateau is a plateau in eastern India.

The Monsoon

A monsoon is a seasonal reversal of winds that is associated with heavy rains. The summer monsoon rains—usually falling between June and September—feed the rivers and streams of South Asia and provide the water needed for agricultural production. In the summer, the continent heats up, with the Thar Desert fueling the system. The rising hot air creates a vacuum that pulls in warm moist air from the Bay of Bengal and the Indian Ocean. This action shifts moisture-laden clouds over the land, where the water is precipitated out in the form of rain.



This map shows the average onset (monsoon arrival) dates and wind directions prevalent during India's southwest summer monsoon.

The monsoon rains bring moisture to South Asia right up to the Himalayas. As moisture-laden clouds rise in elevation in the mountains, the water vapor condenses in the form of rain or snow and feeds the streams and basins that flow into the major rivers, such as the Brahmaputra, Ganges, and Indus. The Western Ghats creates a similar system in the south along the west coast of India.



Western Ghats, Maharashtra, India, in May during the dry season.

LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org



Western Ghats, Maharashtra, India, in August, during Monsoon season.

Parts of Bangladesh and eastern India receive as much as six feet of rain during the monsoon season, and some areas experience severe flooding. The worst-hit places are along the coast of the Bay of Bengal, such as in Bangladesh. There is less danger of flooding in western India and Pakistan because by the time the rain clouds have moved across India they have lost their moisture.

Desert conditions are evident in the west, near the Pakistan border in the great Thar Desert. On average, fewer than ten inches of rainfall per year in this massive desert. On the northern rim of the region, the height of the Himalayas restricts the warm moist monsoon air from moving across the mountain range. The Himalayas act as a precipitation barrier and create a strong rain shadow effect for Tibet and Western China. The monsoon is responsible for much of the rainfall in South Asia.



A "monsoon burst" over Mumbai.

By October, the system has run its course and the monsoon season is generally over. In the winter, the cold, dry air above the Asian continent blows to the south, and the winter monsoon is characterized by cool, dry winds coming from the north. South Asia experiences a dry season during the winter months. Small sections of South Asia, such as Sri Lanka and southeastern India, experience a rainy winter monsoon as well as a rainy summer monsoon. In their case, the winter monsoon winds that come down from the north have a chance to pick up moisture from the Bay of Bengal before depositing it on their shores.

Early Civilizations

The Indian subcontinent has a long history of human occupation and is an area where cities independently developed and civilization emerged. The earliest civilization on the subcontinent was the Indus Valley Civilization, in existence from about 3300 B.C.E. to 1500 B.C.E. This Bronze Age civilization started as a series of small villages that became linked in a wider regional network.



The Indus Valley Civilization, or Harappan Civilization, was a Bronze Age civilization (3300–1300 B.C.E.; mature period 2600–1900 B.C.E.) mainly in the northwestern regions of South Asia, extending from what today is northeast Afghanistan to Pakistan and northwest India.

Urban centers developed into various religious and trade networks that spanned as far as Central Asia, Southwest Asia, and perhaps Egypt. The civilization is known for its planned structures. The cities and villages of the urban phases were planned with major streets going north/south and east/west. It had a system of drains that channeled waste water outside the city. The artifacts of pottery and metallurgy all had a similar style that was spread over a vast land area, a fact that aided in the recognition of the expanse of the culture.



Excavated ruins of Mohenjo-Daro, Sindh province, Pakistan, showing the Great Bath in the foreground.

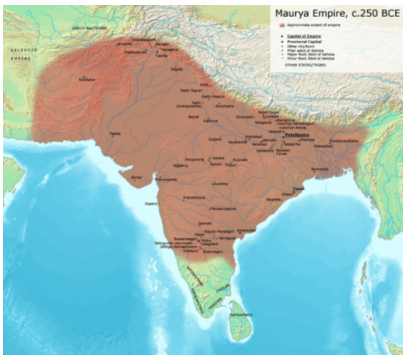
Invasions by outsiders have the potential effect of bringing with them an influx of new ideas, concepts, and technology. Likewise, the Indus Valley Civilization had an impact on the region that it encompassed. Little is known of the historical events of earlier times. Some of the evidence we rely on today to discern historical events is gleaned from language, religion, and ethnicity.

Significant to South Asia is the presence of Indo-European languages. It is presumed that these languages were brought to the region by immigrants from the west, where these languages were dominant. Aryans from Persia and other cultures might have diffused languages such as Hindi to South Asia, which later may have led to Hindi, for example, becoming the lingua franca of the region.

LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

The northern plains of South Asia, which extend through the Ganges River valley over to the Indus River valley of present-day Pakistan, were fertile grounds for a number of empires that controlled the region throughout history. After the decline of the Indus Valley Civilization, various phases of Iron Age traditions emerged. Most of this Iron Age culture is defined by the presence of iron metallurgy and distinctive characteristics of ceramics.

The Mauryan Empire existed between 322 and 185 B.C.E. and was one of the most extensive and powerful political and military empires in ancient India. This empire was founded by Chandragupta Maurya in 322 B.C.E., who began to extend his regime westward, easily conquering areas that had been disrupted by the expansion of Alexander the Great's armies. The Mauryan Empire was prosperous and greatly expanded the region's trade, agriculture, and economic activities.



The Maurya Empire was a geographically extensive Iron Age historical power founded by Chandragupta Maurya which dominated ancient India between 322 B.C.E. and 187 B.C.E.

This empire created a single and efficient system of finance, administration, and security. One of the greatest emperors in the Mauryan dynasty was Ashoka the Great, who ruled over a long period of peace and prosperity. Ashoka embraced Buddhism and focused on peace for much of his rule. He created hospitals and schools and renovated major road systems throughout the empire. His advancement of Buddhist ideals is credited with being the reason why most of the population on the island of Sri Lanka is Buddhist to this day.



Ashoka the Great, was an Indian emperor of the Maurya Dynasty, who ruled almost all of the Indian subcontinent from c. 268 to 232 B.C.E.

Islam became a powerful force in South Asia upon its diffusion to the subcontinent. Muslim dynasties or kingdoms that ruled India between 1206 and 1526 are referred to as the Delhi Sultanate. The Delhi Sultanate ended in 1526 when it was absorbed into the expanding Mughal Empire. The Islamic Mughal Empire ruled over much of northern and central India from the 1500s to about the middle of the 19th century.

After 1725, the Mughal Empire began to decline because of many factors, one of those factors being European colonialism. The Mughal Empire had been religiously tolerant but Muslim oriented. The classic period of this empire began in 1556 and ended in 1707. Many of the monuments we associate with India, including the Taj Mahal, the Red Fort in Lahore, and the Agra Fort, were built during the classical period.



The largest manufacturing industry in the Mughal Empire was textile manufacturing.

Colonialism in South Asia

The force of colonialism was felt around the world, including in South Asia. South Asia provides an excellent example of colonialism's role in establishing most of the current political borders in the world. From the 16th century onward, ships from colonial Europe began to arrive in South Asia to conduct trade. The British East India Company was chartered in 1600 to trade in Asia and India. They traded in spices, silk, cotton, and other goods. Later, to take advantage of conflicts and bitter rivalries between kingdoms, European powers began to establish colonies. Britain controlled South Asia from 1857 to 1947.

Goa is the smallest state in modern-day India. In the 16th century, it was first encountered by Portuguese traders, who annexed it shortly after arriving. Goa was a colony of Portugal for the next 450 years. By the mid-1800s, most of the population of the tiny area had been forcibly converted to Christianity. Many of the Hindu traditions, however, survived in the region.

LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

Hindu holidays are celebrated amongst the expatriate community in India. Christian holidays are also celebrated, especially Christmas and Easter. The cathedrals and secular architecture in many of the historic buildings of Goa are European in style, reflecting its Portuguese origins. This architecture is locally termed “Indo-Portuguese.” Goa was one of the longest-held colonial possessions in the world. It was finally annexed to India in 1961.



The Basilica of Bom Jesus is located in Goa, India, and is a UNESCO World Heritage Site.

The British no longer controlled South Asia after 1947. Local resistance and the devastating effects of World War II meant the British Empire could not be controlled as it once was. Great Britain pulled away from empire building to focus on its own redevelopment. Upon the British withdrawal from India, Britain realized the immense cultural differences between the Muslims and Hindus and created political boundaries based on those differences.

West Pakistan was carved out of western India, and East Pakistan was carved from eastern India. However, the new borders separating Hindu and Muslim majorities ran through population groups, and some of the population now found itself to be on the wrong side of the border. The West Pakistan-India partition grew into a civil war, as Hindus and Muslims struggled to migrate to their country of choice.

More than one million people died in the civil war, a war that is still referred to in today’s political dialogue between Pakistan and India. The Sikhs, who are indigenous to the Punjab region in the middle, also suffered greatly. Some people decided not to migrate, which explains why India has the largest Muslim population of any non-Muslim state.

Another civil war erupted in 1973 between West Pakistan and East Pakistan. When the states were first created in 1947, they operated under the same government despite having no common border and being over 900 miles apart and populated by people with no ethnic similarities. The civil war lasted about three months and resulted in the creation of the sovereign countries of Pakistan and Bangladesh. The name Bangladesh is based on the Bengali ethnicity of most of the people who live there. Both Pakistan and Bangladesh are among the top ten most populous countries in the world.

Language is probably one of the more pervasive ways that Europeans impacted South Asia. In modern-day India and Pakistan, English is the language of choice in secondary education. It is often the language used by the government and military. Unlike many other Asian countries, much of the signage and advertising in Pakistan and India is in English, even in rural areas. Educated people switch back and forth, using English words or entire English sentences during conversation in their native tongue. Some scholars have termed this Hinglish or Urglish as the base languages of northern India and Pakistan are Hindi and Urdu, respectively.

The British game of cricket is an important cultural and national sport in South Asia. The constant conflict between the nations of India and Pakistan is reflected in the intense rivalry between their national cricket teams. The Cricket World Cup is held every four years and is awarded by the International Cricket Council. South Asian countries have won the Cricket World Cup three times: India (1983), Pakistan (1992), and Sri Lanka (1996).



Cricket is the most popular sport in India.

Population in South Asia

South Asia is one of the most populous realms in the world. Large populations are a product of large family sizes and a high fertility rate. The rural population of South Asia has traditionally had large families, and religious traditions generally support this. However, the least densely populated country in South Asia is the Kingdom of Bhutan. Bhutan has a population density of approximately 50 people per square mile. Bhutan is mountainous with little arable land. More than one-third of the people in Bhutan live in an urban setting. Population overgrowth for the realm is a serious concern. An increase in population requires additional natural resources, energy, and food production, all of which are in short supply in many areas.

South Asia’s growing population has placed exceedingly high demands on agricultural production. The amount of area available for food production divided by the population may be a more helpful indicator of population distribution than total population density. For example, large portions of Pakistan are deserts and mountains that do not provide arable land for food production.

India has the Thar Desert and the northern mountains. Nepal has the Himalayas. The small country of the Maldives, with its many islands, has almost no arable land. The number of people per square mile of arable land, which is called the physiologic density, can be an important indicator of a country’s status. Total population densities are high in South Asia, but the physiologic densities are even more surprising.

In Bangladesh, for example, more than 5,000 people depend on every square mile of arable land. In Sri Lanka, the physiologic density reaches to more than 6,000 people per square mile, and in Pakistan, it is more than 2,400. The data are averages, which indicate that the population density in the fertile river valleys and the agricultural lowlands might be even higher. Urban areas of South Asia are expanding rapidly.

LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org



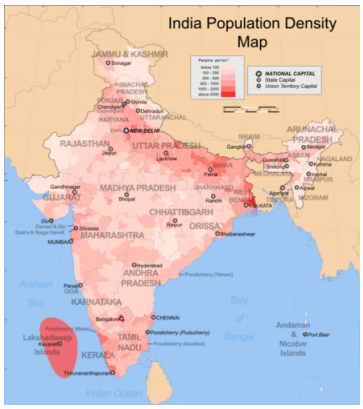
Thyagaraya Nagar is a neighborhood in the city of Chennai, India. It is a popular shopping district.

The population of South Asia is relatively young. In Pakistan, about 35 percent of the population is under the age of 15, while about 30 percent of India's almost 1.3 billion people are under the age of 15. Many of these young people live in rural areas, as most of the people of South Asia work in agriculture and live a subsistence lifestyle. As the population increases, the cities reflect the growth in the urban population and the large influx of migrants arriving from rural areas.

Rural-to-urban shift is extremely high in South Asia and will continue to fuel the expansion of the urban centers into some of the largest cities on the planet. The rural-to-urban shift that is occurring in South Asia also coincides with an increase in the region's interaction with the global economy.

The South Asian countries are transitioning through the five stages of the index of economic development. The more rural agricultural regions are in the lower stages of the index. The realm experienced rapid population growth during the latter half of the 20th century. As death rates declined and family size remained high, the population swiftly increased. India, for example, grew from fewer than 400 million in 1950 to more than one billion at the turn of the century.

The more urbanized areas are transitioning into stage 3 of the index and experiencing a significant rural-to-urban shift. Large cities such as Mumbai have sectors that are in the latter stages of the index because of their urbanized workforce and higher incomes. Family size is decreasing in the more urbanized areas and in the realm as a whole. Demographers predict that eventually the population will stabilize.



India is the second-most populated country in the world with nearly a fifth of the world's population. This map reflects the 2001 census.

At the current rates of population growth, the population of South Asia will double in about 50 years. Without continued attention to how the societies address family planning and birth control, South Asia will likely face serious resource shortages in the future.

Key Takeaways

- All of the South Asian countries border India by either a physical or a marine boundary. The Himalayas form a natural boundary between South Asia and East Asia (China). The realm is surrounded by deserts, the Indian Ocean, and the high Himalayan ranges.
- The summer monsoon arrives in South Asia in late May or early June and subsides by early October. The rains that accompany the monsoon account for most of the rainfall for South Asia. Water is a primary resource, and the larger river systems are home to large populations.
- The Indus River Valley was a location of early human civilization. The large empires of the realm gave way to European colonialism. The British dominated the realm for 90 years from 1857 to 1947 and established the main boundaries of the realm.
- Population growth is a major concern for South Asia. The already enormous populations of South Asia continue to increase, challenging the economic systems and depleting natural resources at an unsustainable rate.

Vocabulary Terms

Chapter 9.1 Introducing the Realm

	A Bay that the Ganges River flows into, North of the Indian Ocean, On the eastern side of India, South of Tibet, West of China
	River that begins in Tibet, flows through northeast India and Bangladesh, joining with the Ganges to empty into the Bay of Bengal
	A high area of land at the center of the Indian subcontinent., it lies between the Adrian Sea and the Bay of Bengal and it is made of lava, which produces a rich b east by the Eastern Ghats and the Western Ghats
Eastern Ghats	eroded coastal mountains east of the Deccan Plateau in Southern India
	A river of South Asia that flows southeast from the Himalayas to the Bay of Bengal., India's most important river, flows across northern India into Bangladesh, the "liquid form of God"
	A range of mountains with the highest peaks in the world including Mt. Everest. The Himalayas stretch from Pakistan to Bhutan
Hindu Kush Mountains	large mountain range located in northern Pakistan and that provide a barrier between Pakistan and Afghanistan. The Khyber Pass is used to travel between the tw
	A river in South Asia that flows from the Himalayas to the Arabian Sea, the earliest Indian civilization began in the valley of this river
	a shallow body of water in the center of an atoll
monsoon	regional winds that predictably change direction with the passing of the seasons. These winds blow from land to sea in the winter, and from sea to land in t accompanied by precipitation.
	Highest peak in the world, located in the Himalayas
	A large landmass that is part of a continent
	A chain of eroded mountains in India that forms a triangle of rugged hills with the Eastern Ghats. It prevents yearly rainy winds from reaching the Deccan Plateau

Applying Knowledge

Discussion and Study Questions

1. Why are the Himalayan Mountains continuing to increase in elevation? Which of the countries of South Asia border the Himalayas?
2. What are the three major rivers of South Asia? Where do they start and into what bodies of water do they flow? Why have these river basins been such an important part of the early civilizations of the realm and why are they core population areas today?
3. Why does the monsoon usually arrive in late May or early June? What is the main precipitation pattern that accompanies the monsoon? Why is the monsoon a major source of support for South Asia's large population?
4. What changes did British colonialism bring to South Asia? When did the British control South Asia? Why do you think the British lost control when they did?
5. Why is the high population growth rate a serious concern for South Asian countries? What can these countries do to address the high population growth rate?
6. How can Pakistan have a higher fertility rate than Bangladesh but still have the same growth rate and doubling time?
7. Why would the country of the Maldives be concerned about climate change?
8. How would you assess the status of each country with regard to the index of economic development?
9. What are the three dominant religions of the realm? How did religion play a role in establishing the realms' borders? What happened to East Pakistan?

Real-World Geography Exercise

1. Using Google Maps, complete the following activities:
   a. Locate each place on the bulleted list below.
   b. Find the nearest city with an international airport in proximity to each location on the bulleted list below.
   c. Calculate the distance and travel time by plane to each city from the Charlotte-Douglas International Airport in Charlotte, North Carolina.
2. Using NASA Latitude and Longitude Finder, determine the latitude and longitude for each location on the bulleted list below.
3. Be prepared to share and discuss your answers.

- Arabian Sea
- Baluchistan
- Bay of Bengal
- Brahmaputra River
- Central Indian Plateau
- Chota-Nagpur Plateau
- Deccan Plateau
- Eastern Ghats
- Ganges River
- Himalayas
- Indian Ocean
- Indus River
- Kashmir
- Mt. Everest
- Punjab
- Thar Desert
- Western Ghats

Current Events

Geography Education Scoop It

Indian Ocean Oil and Gas

India is Changing Some Cities Names and Muslims Fear Loss of Their Heritage

US Cuts off India Preferential Trade Status

India, China Set To Form A Working Group On Energy

Indian Lawyers Who Fought The Country's Battle For LGBT Rights Among Times' 100 Most Influential People In The World

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org







Helpful Websites for the Study of Geography

Canadian Encyclopedia is an encyclopedia funded by the Canadian government covering all branches of knowledge. Their scholarly collection includes interactive materials.

CIA World Factbook provides information on the people, history, government, economy, energy, geography, communications, transportation, military, and transnational issues for the world's entities.

Congress.gov is a US government website where you can find federal legislation, past and present, as well as information about the US legal system.

Drug Enforcement Administration (DEA) is a government agency website that provides current news, resources, topics of interest, information about drugs, careers in the DEA, and a tip hotline.

Library of Congress is the largest library in the world and provides manuscripts, files, information, pictures, and videos.

NASA Earth Observatory (NEO) is a US government agency website that allows users to search for and retrieve satellite images of Earth.

National Archives is a US government website that provides historical documents, photos, records, publications, and educator resources.

National Oceanic and Atmospheric Association (NOAA) is a US government agency website that provides weather-related information and ocean research.

National Map is a website by the United States Geological Survey and other federal, state, and local agencies that delivers topographic information for the United States.

NationMaster is a massive central data source and a handy way to graphically compare nations.

Real-Time World Air Quality Index is a website that measures most locations in the world for air pollution in real time.

StateMaster is a unique statistical database, which allows you to research and compare a multitude of different data on US states.

United Nations (UN) is an international organization founded in 1945 and made up of 193 member states. The UN maintains international peace and security, protects human rights, delivers humanitarian aid, promotes sustainable development, and upholds international law.

United States Census Bureau is a US government agency that provides a population clock, data, surveys, statistics, a library with information and infographics, news about the economy, and much more.

United States Geological Survey (USGS) is a US government agency website that provides scientific information about the natural hazards that threaten lives, the natural resources we rely on, the health of our ecosystems and environment, and the impacts of climate and land-use change.

Whitehouse.gov is a US government website that provides the latest presidential news, information about the budget, policy, defense, and many more topics.

World Health Organization (WHO) is under the United Nations and provides leadership on matters critical to health, shapes the research agenda on health, and monitors the health situation and assessing health trends around the world. Their website provides information on the state of health around the world, outbreaks, current health news, and more.

World Trade Organization (WTO) is an intergovernmental organization that regulates international trade. The website provides information on the history of the multilateral trading system, featured videos, news and events, trade topics, and more.

WG.4B Describe different landforms and the physical processes that cause their development.

WG.5A Analyze how the character of a place is related to its political, economic, social, and cultural elements.

WG.6A Locate and describe human and physical features that influence the size and distribution of settlements.

WG.6B Explain the processes that have caused changes in settlement patterns, including urbanization, transportation, access to and availability of resources, and economic activities.

WB.12A Analyze how the creation, distribution, and management of key natural resources affects the location and patterns of movement of products, money, and people.

WG.13A Interpret maps to explain the division of land, including man-made and natural borders, into separate political units such as cities, states, or countries.

WG.14A Analyze current events to infer the physical and human processes that lead to the formation of boundaries and other political divisions.

WG.15A Identify and give examples of different points of view that influence the development of public policies and decision-making processes on local, state, national, and international levels.

WG.15B Explain how citizenship practices, public policies, and decision making may be influenced by cultural beliefs, including nationalism and patriotism.

WG.16C Explain ways various groups of people perceive the characteristics of their own and other cultures, places, and regions differently.

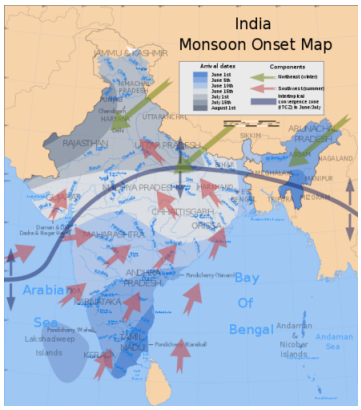
WG.17A Describe and compare patterns of culture such as language, religion, land use, education, and customs that make specific regions of the world distinctive.

WG.22A Design and draw appropriate graphics such as maps, diagrams, tables, and graphs to communicate geographic features, distributions, and relationships.

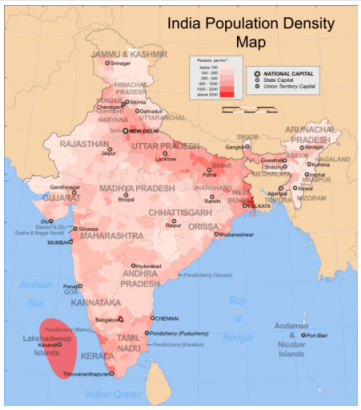
WG.22C Use geographic terminology correctly.

WG.22D Use standard grammar, spelling, sentence structure, and punctuation.

LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

Image	Reference	Attributions
	[Figure 1]	**Credit:** By Mount_Everest_as_seen_from_Drukair2.jpg: shrimpo1967derivative work: Papa Lima Whiskey 2 [CC BY-SA 2.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/2.0)], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Mount_Everest_as_seen_from_Drukair2_PLW_edit.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 2]	**Credit:** By sushmita balasubramani (Flickr: the vast expanse of the Thar desrt) [CC BY 2.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/2.0)], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Thar_desert_Rajasthan_India.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 3]	**Credit:** By Biswarup Ganguly [GFDL (http://www.gnu.org/copyleft/fdl.html) or CC BY 3.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/3.0)], from Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Chiraundi_-_Ranchi_8709.JPG **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 4]	**Credit:** By Saravask, based on work by Planemad and Nichalp [CC BY-SA 3.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0)], from Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:India_southwest_summer_monsoon_onset_map_en.svg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 5]	**Credit:** By Arne Hückelheim [CC BY-SA 3.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0) or GFDL (http://www.gnu.org/copyleft/fdl.html)], from Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:MatheranPanoramaPointDrySeason.JPG **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 6]	**Credit:** By Arne Hückelheim [CC BY-SA 3.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0) or GFDL (http://www.gnu.org/copyleft/fdl.html)], from Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:MatheranPanoramaPointMonsoon.JPG **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

	[Figure 7]	**Credit:** By Enygmatic-Halycon (Flickr) [CC BY-SA 2.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/2.0)], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Mumbai_india_monsoon_clouds.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 9]	**Credit:** By The original uploader was M.Imran at English Wikipedia. (Transferred from en.Wikipedia to Commons.) [CC SA 1.0 (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/sa/1.0/)], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Mohenjodaro_Sindh.jpeg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 12]	**Credit:** [Public domain], from Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Renaldis_muslin_woman.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 13]	**Credit:** By Omkarsawant1996 [CC BY-SA 4.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0)], from Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Front_door_of_basilica_bom_jesus.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 14]	**Credit:** By Prabhat1729 [CC BY-SA 4.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0)], from Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://upload.wikimedia.org/Wikipedia/commons/5/5e/Cricket_being_played_on_a_Summer_Morning_in_India.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0



[Figure 16]

Credit: By This Image was created by User:PlaneMad.If you are using the image under the creative commons share alike license please credit the photo CC-by-sa PlaneMad/Wikimedia and include a link to this page. No explicit permission is needed from me, but id appreciate an email if my work has been of help to you.If you dont want to release your work under a creative commons license, please mail me at arun.planemad@gmail.com or catch me at my Website to negotiate a custom license as per your needs. [CC BY-SA 3.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0)], from Wikimedia Commons
Source: https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:India_population_density_map_en.svg
License: CC BY-NC 3.0

This page titled 9.1: South Asia- Introducing the Realm (2 Days) is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by CK12 via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

9.2: South Asia- The Peripheral States (2 Days)

Chapter Challenges

1. Outline the main physical features of the countries described in this section.
2. Understand how cultural differences in religion and ethnicity continue to cause conflict and division in South Asian countries and regions.
3. Outline how and why Kashmir is divided and its importance for the region.
4. Describe how tourism has been a means of gaining wealth for the listed countries.
5. Summarize the main environmental concerns that are apparent in each of the countries.

Learning Objectives

TEKS Regional Unit 09 South Asia: Chapter 9.2 The Peripheral States

WG.1A Analyze the effects of physical and human geographic patterns and processes on the past and describe their impact on the present, including significant physical features and environmental conditions that influenced migration patterns and shaped the distribution of culture groups today.

WG.2A Describe the human and physical characteristics of the same regions at different periods of time to evaluate relationships between past events and current conditions.

WG.5A Analyze how the character of a place is related to its political, economic, social, and cultural elements.

WG.6A Locate and describe human and physical features that influence the size and distribution of settlements.

WG.11A Understand the connections between levels of development and economic activities (primary, secondary, tertiary, and quaternary).

WG.13A Interpret maps to explain the division of land, including man-made and natural borders, into separate political units such as cities, states, or countries.

WG.14A Analyze current events to infer the physical and human processes that lead to the formation of boundaries and other political divisions.

WG.14C Analyze the human and physical factors that influence the power to control territory and resources, create conflict/war, and impact international political relations of sovereign nations.

WG.16C Explain ways various groups of people perceive the characteristics of their own and other cultures, places, and regions differently.

WG.16D Compare life in a variety of urban and rural areas in the world to evaluate political, economic, social, and environmental changes.

WG.22C Use geographic terminology correctly.

WG.22D Use standard grammar, spelling, sentence structure, and punctuation.

TEKS and ELPS for Regional World Geography Unit 09-- South Asia from TEKS Resource

South Asia: The Peripheral States

The Indian subcontinent is a large landmass that juts into the Indian Ocean along the southern side of Asia, between Afghanistan and Myanmar and south of China. The Indian perimeter includes the southern countries of the Maldives and Sri Lanka, and the northern regions of the Punjab, Kashmir, Nepal, and Bhutan. This landmass has a long tectonic history and has been formed by the collision of the Indian Tectonic Plate with the Eurasian Plate. This tectonic collision has given rise to the highest mountain chains and ranges in the world along the northern and northwestern part of the Indian subcontinent known as the Himalayas.

LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org



A view of the Himalayas from Tibet.

The Karakoram Mountains are located in northern Pakistan and Kashmir. Together with the other Himalayan Mountain ranges, they form an arc that stretches across the entire northern border of South Asia. Nepal and Bhutan are both located in the Himalayas. The Himalayan ranges have some of the highest peaks in the region, including Mount Everest (located on the border between Nepal and China) and K2 (located in Pakistan).

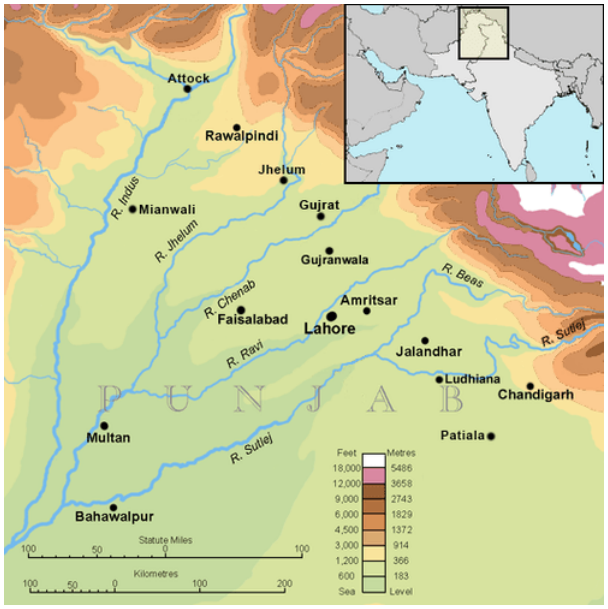
In western Pakistan and western Afghanistan, the Hindu Kush mountain ranges that border this area are found. The Indus River flows from the northern part of the Karakoram mountains and creates a large, fertile flood plain. Along its northern area, the Indus River System has four main tributaries. Together, these rivers constitute the five rivers of the Punjab regions of Pakistan and India. Punjab means the “land of the five rivers” in the Punjabi language.



The Indus River near Skardu, in Gilgit.

Punjab

Punjab is a fertile agricultural region with a high population density located on the border between India and Pakistan. Areas of Punjab lie in both India and Pakistan. Where there are ample fresh water and bountiful food production, there is usually a high population density. Punjab is the most densely populated region in Pakistan. India has a separate state called Punjab. Its river valleys are excellent areas for agricultural production and contribute heavily to the provisions needed to feed the enormous populations of the two countries.



Punjab is a geographical and cultural region in the northern part of the Indian subcontinent, comprising areas of eastern Pakistan and northern India.

The Punjabi people are found in the Punjab State of India and the Punjab Province of Pakistan. This large cultural area was separated into two countries during Partition at the time of Indian independence and the creation of Pakistan in 1947. Most of the people in Punjab speak Punjabi, an Indo-European language. In a larger context, people with Punjabi background are considered one of the main ethnic groups in South Asia. Punjabis account for about 45 percent of the population of Pakistan.



This picture shows a wedding in Lahore, Pakistan, with men and women dressed in traditional outfits.

In Pakistan, the Punjabis are grouped in clans and groups that correspond with traditional occupations. Traditionally, Punjabis are farmers and warriors, and in modern times are associated with agricultural professions and military life. Punjabis in Pakistan are predominantly Muslim, although a Christian minority exists. Indian Punjabis belong to traditional groups, including many of the same groups as in Pakistan, but many more. Most of the Muslim populations of Punjab migrated to Pakistan in 1947. As a result, most of the Indian Punjabis are Sikh with a Christian minority.



President Obama greets Arjan Singh, Marshal of the Indian Air Force, at the At Home Reception on the Central Lawn of Mughal Garden in New Delhi. The highest-ranking general in the history of the Indian Air Force is a Punjabi Sikh.

The Punjab region of Pakistan and India is the homeland of the Sikhs, people who follow a religion that is different from Islam or Hinduism. Sikhism was founded by Guru Nanak Dev (1469-1538). All distinctions of caste, creed, race, or gender are rejected in this religion. In Sikhism, there is no priestly class. Every person is equally and fully responsible for leading a moral life, which eventually leads to universal salvation. Heaven and hell are not physical places, and God is the cosmic universal spirit. Historically, traditional Sikh men wear turbans on their heads and never cut their hair or beard. Sikhism is a universal religion. A prominent Sikh landmark and spiritual center is their Golden Temple, located in the city of Amritsar in the Indian state of Punjab.



Sri Harmandir Sahib ("The abode of God"), also known as the Golden Temple, is located in the city of Amritsar, Punjab, India. It is one of the most revered spiritual sites of Sikhism.

Sikhism is a system of religious philosophy and expression, known as the Gurmat or the counsel of the gurus, or the Sikh Dharma (or way of life). Sikhism comes from the Hindi and Punjabi word *sikhna*, which means “to learn.” The principal belief in Sikhism is faith in the universal God. Sikhism promotes the pursuit of salvation through discipline and personal meditation on the name and message of God. However, it must be mentioned that Sikhs have a non-anthropomorphic concept of God; that is, Sikhs do not envision God as having any form or shape or mind similar to that of humans.



Guru Nanak Dev Ji (April 15, 1469-September 22, 1539) was the founder of the religion of Sikhism and the first of the eleven Sikh Gurus.

During the British colonial occupation of South Asia, Sikhs were elevated to positions of power to help the British rule over Muslim and Hindu populations. The Sikhs are often overshadowed by the large Hindu and Muslim populations in the realm. Many of the Sikhs would like to have their own nation-state, free from Muslim or Hindu domination, and would like to see the Punjab region become the new homeland for this nation-state, called Khalistan.

They have held rallies and demonstrations to promote the creation of Khalistan. The Indian government has cracked down on militant movements that support the Khalistan concept. The Khalistan movement was more popular in the 1970s and 1980s and has been scaled down in recent decades. Proponents still attempt to attract young people and foreign donations to its cause. Khalistan does not have the support of the Pakistani and Indian governments. Khalistan is an example of the devolutionary push for a nation-state political unit for a particular group of people with similar aspirations or heritage.



Sikhs protest against India's opposition to their proposed homeland (nation-state) in Punjab called Khalistan.

The Kingdom of Kashmir

Located in the high mountains of the north is the former Kingdom of Kashmir, a separate kingdom before the British divided South Asia. In 1947, when the British drew the boundary between India and Pakistan, the leader of Kashmir, the maharajah, chose not to be a part of either country but to remain independent. About 75 percent of the population in Kashmir was Muslim. The rest, including the maharajah, were mainly Hindu. This arrangement worked for a time until the Muslim majority was encouraged by their fellow Muslims in Pakistan to join Pakistan.

After a Muslim uprising, the maharajah asked the Indian military for assistance. India obliged because they saw it as an opportunity to oppose Pakistan one more time. Today Kashmir is divided, with Pakistan controlling the northern region, India controlling the southern region, and China controlling a portion of the eastern region. A cease-fire has been implemented, but outbreaks of fighting have occurred. The future of Kashmir is unclear. None of the countries involved wants to start a large-scale war, because they all have nuclear weapons.



Kashmir is the northernmost geographical region of the Indian subcontinent.

The conflict in Kashmir is about strategic location and control of water rather than labor and resources. It is unknown whether there are abundant minerals in the mountains in Kashmir to be mined, but regardless, there is little mining activity going on, not enough to cause conflict. One of the main physical geography features of importance is water. The Indus River flows through Kashmir from Tibet and into Pakistan. The control of this river system is critical to the survival of people living in northern Pakistan.

If India were to place a dam on the river and divert the water to their side of the border, to the dry regions of the south, Pakistan could suffer a water shortage in the northern part of the country. Another aspect of the Kashmir conflict goes back to the division of Pakistan and India, which pitted Muslims against Hindus along the border region. The religious differences have come to the surface again in the conflict over the control of Kashmir. Extremist movements within Kashmir by the Muslim population have fueled the division between those who support Pakistan and those who support Hindu-dominated India.

The Kingdom of Bhutan



Map of Bhutan

Landlocked and mountainous, the small Kingdom of Bhutan is remotely located next to the high Himalayas between China and India. The mountain peaks reach more than 23,000 feet. Bhutan is about half the size in physical area of the US state of Kentucky and has fewer than one million people. The southern plains are warm, with subtropical weather, but the higher altitudes of the snow-capped mountains have polar-type climates.

The local people call their country the “Land of the Thunder Dragon” because of the harsh storms they experience. Bhutan has large areas of natural habitat that have not been disturbed by human activity. The natural environment and the unique heritage and culture of the people make Bhutan an attractive destination for world travelers.

Bhutan is a small country without much industry or high-tech corporate involvement. Forestry and agriculture are the main economic activities, which account for approximately 60 percent of the country's population. Grazing livestock and subsistence agriculture are the primary types of farming. Increasing the country's modest infrastructure is hampered by its high mountains and remote location. India is Bhutan's main trading partner and has played an important role in the country's development and economic situation.



Paro Dzong is the center of civil and religious authority in the Paro valley in western Bhutan.

Modern transportation and communication technologies are being introduced in Bhutan and are changing how the country is connected to the global economy. Satellite and cable television, mobile phone networks, the Internet, and major airline service are opening the doors of opportunity and interaction between the people of Bhutan and the rest of the world. Introduction of technological services has prompted Bhutan's government to take steps to protect its environment and unique heritage.

Tourism has become a major focus of the changes. The country has stepped up its efforts to develop tourism but has targeted a specific type of traveler. Bhutan is an expensive place to visit, which has been the biggest deterrent for travelers. Visitors from places other than India and Bangladesh must agree to strict requirements set by the suppliers of Bhutanese tourism, including large daily fees just to be in the country. Tourism is increasing in Bhutan but remains highly selective in its requirements and regulations. These measures are to ensure that the environmental health of the country remains intact and that there is minimal cultural impact from outsiders.

Buddhism is the state religion and is followed by about 75 percent of the population. Hinduism is the second-largest religion and is followed by the other 25 percent of the population. One of the principles of the government in regulating development projects has been the concept of gross national happiness (GNH), which is used as a guide to determine the impact of a project on the culture and people of Bhutan.

The stern measures regarding development have protected the country from serious environmental degradation and have helped to sustain the lifestyles of the Bhutanese people. Some measures may appear harsh to outsiders, but the country is implementing these measures to promote the health and well-being of its people. For example, tobacco products are banned from being sold in the country. Democratic elections are becoming standard after centuries of rule by a monarchy. The intent of the transition is to provide the people with more direct control of their government and country.

Interesting points about the culture of Bhutan include the issue of marriage. Marriages based on love are becoming more common in the cities, while arranged marriages remain a tradition in many of the smaller villages. Under the current legal system, women have the right to inheritance. Homes and personal possessions are passed down through a family's female children. Traditionally, male children do not inherit. Men are expected to earn their own livelihood and if they get married will most often live in the wife's house.



Map of Nepal

Bordering the highest mountain range in the world, the Himalayas, the country of Nepal is isolated from any seacoast and buffered from the outside world by India and China. Nepal is about the same size in physical area as Bangladesh and is home to almost 30 million people. More than 80 percent of its people work the land in a region that is suffering from severe deforestation and soil erosion. Trees are cut down to build houses, to cook food, and to keep warm. Without trees to hold the soil, the monsoon rains wash soil from the mountain fields into the valleys.



Deforestation is a serious problem. The trees are cut down for firewood and building materials. The winding road connects Kathmandu with Tibet.

The combination of the fast-growing population with the loss of food-growing capacity means it is only a matter of time before a major crisis occurs in Nepal. Nepal's best farmland is in the Terai lowlands of southern Nepal, while the north is mountainous. The towering elevation of the Himalayas restricts human habitation in the north. High population growth has also been outstripping the country's economic growth rate in recent years.



Mist rising from the rice fields in the Terai Lowlands of Nepal.

Nepal has an abundance of tourist attractions, Mount Everest being its best known. In addition, there are hundreds of ancient temples and monasteries. Swift flowing streams and high-mountain terrain support a modest trekking industry. Visitors to Nepal

have an opportunity to glimpse a rich culture that few outsiders have witnessed. The downside is that tourism demands an investment in infrastructure and services.

Such investments direct funds away from schools, medical clinics, and public services needed by the Nepalese people. Income from tourism is needed and always welcome, but the trade-off with investments is a difficult choice to make. Tourism in Nepal is not as restrictive as that of Bhutan, and the unique physical and cultural landscapes will continue to draw travelers from throughout the world.

Hinduism is the main religion in Nepal, but a blend of Buddhism is more prevalent in the north. The guardian deity of Nepal is Shiva. Pashupatinath Temple**,** the world's most significant Shiva worship site, is located in the capital city of Kathmandu. This Shiva temple is not only a UNESCO World Heritage Site but a major destination for Hindu pilgrims from around the world. Buddhist and Hindu beliefs often mix in Nepal. There are certain situations where the same deities and temples can be honored or worshipped by members of both religions.



The Pashupatinath Temple is a famous and sacred Hindu temple complex.

In a different part of Nepal, Lumbini—near the city of Bhairahawa, on the border with India—is another UNESCO World Heritage Site. This site is the birthplace of the Siddhartha Gautama, the founder of Buddhism. Prince Siddhartha Gautama was born about 563 BCE, near Lumbini. The city has recognized the prince with a number of monasteries and temples built in his honor.

An entire development zone is restricted to nothing but monasteries and temples. No other commercial or public buildings—such as hotels, shops, or businesses—can be constructed in the zone. The different branches of the Buddhist faith each have their own specific designated sections of the zone. Lumbini is a major pilgrimage site for Buddhist believers from around the world.



Lumbinī, which means "the lovely," is a Buddhist pilgrimage site in the Rupandehi District of Province No. 5 in Nepal.

In the late 1700s, local states of Nepal were consolidated into the one kingdom and ruled by a monarchy. The kingdom was ruled by royal families until the mid-1900s. Nepal has been free of British influence since 1947 but has had trouble establishing a stable central government. The royal family in charge of the kingdom was replaced in 1951, and further democratic reforms were made in 1990. Communist partisans from China have been active in insurgent activities.

Frequent protests and civil unrest have caused political instability, which has discouraged tourism and has depressed the economy even further. The Maoist Communist movement and other opposition political parties held mass protests, culminating in a peace accord. Ensuing elections created the establishment of a federal democratic republic. The first president of Nepal was sworn into office in 2008. There is still much tension in the country between those loyal to the royal family and those wanting the royal family to be dissolved. Without a stable government, economic and political progress in Nepal will be a serious challenge.



Map of Sri Lanka

Sri Lanka is a beautiful island about half of the size of Nepal. The island has a warm, tropical type A climate, with forested hills and mountains in the center. Rivers flow from the center outward to water the farm fields of rice and other crops. The best farmland is located in the Sinhalese-controlled areas of the southwestern portions of the island. Cinnamon is native to the island and has been cultivated since colonial times as an important export. Coconuts, coffee, and tea are also important export products.

The island is home to various national parks, four biosphere reserves, and several wild elephant herds. Sri Lanka has the potential to become a major tourist destination with high incomes and a hub for international trade. Factors working against Sri Lanka reaching its potential are not based on its physical geography or location, but rather they are linked back to colonialism and cultural or ethnic divisions between the Sinhalese majority and the Tamil minority.

The people of South Asia follow various religions. Sri Lanka has its own unique circumstances and is a mixed country with a strong Buddhist majority and an active Hindu minority. The conflict between the majority and the minority ethnic groups fueled a low-level civil war on the island for decades. Differences in religion, ethnicity, and politics have brought the country to halt on various occasions.



A Buddhist statue in the ancient capital city of Polonnaruwa.

Sinhalese people from somewhere in northern India moved to the island of Sri Lanka about 2,500 years ago. The Sinhalese brought with them Buddhism and the Sinhala language, which belongs to the Indo-European language family. They established themselves on the island for centuries. Sri Lanka was first colonized by Portugal, then Holland. When the British colonized South Asia, they took control of Sri Lanka. It was called Ceylon at that time and changed its name to Sri Lanka in 1972.

The higher elevations of the center of the island were excellent for tea production. British colonizers established tea plantations there. To work the plantations, Britain brought thousands of additional Tamil laborers from southern India across the Polk Strait to Ceylon. Most of the Tamil speak a Dravidian language and follow the Hindu religion.

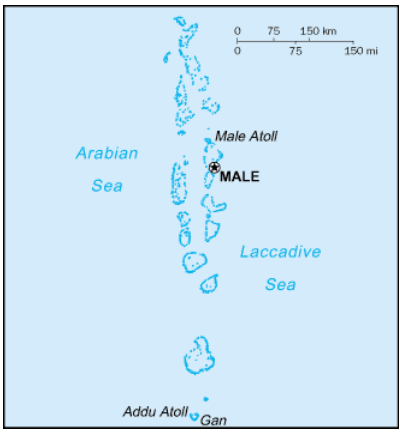


The International Organization for Standardization (ISO) considers Ceylon tea, which is grown in Sri Lanka, the cleanest tea in the world.

When the British were forced out of South Asia and left Ceylon, the Tamils remained on the island. The Tamils now make up only 10 percent of the population and live mainly in the northeastern region of the island. They have been pressuring the Sinhalese majority to split the island politically and grant them independence. An insurgent civil war was waged for decades between the Tamil guerillas—called the Tamil Tigers—and the Sinhalese government. About 60,000 to 80,000 people died in this conflict.

Originally only controlling the Jaffna Peninsula, the Tamil Tigers later made claims on a large portion of the northeastern part of the island. The Tamil Tigers created a government in the north called *Eelam* and wanted to legitimize it. The Sri Lankan president announced an end to the civil war in 2009, and the Tigers admitted defeat at that time. This civil war devastated Sri Lanka's tourism industry and discouraged foreign investments, further reducing economic opportunities for the island.

The Maldives



Map of the Maldives

Just north of the Equator in the Indian Ocean to the southwest of India lie the Maldives, a group of low-lying islands that consists of 26 atolls encompassing a territory of only about 115 square miles. Within the atolls are approximately 1,200 small islands, of which about 200 are inhabited. Portugal controlled the Maldives from 1558 during their colonial expansion into Asia. Holland took over from the Portuguese in 1654.

The Maldives became a British protectorate in 1887, which lasted until 1965 when independence was achieved. Three years later the country became a republic. The Maldives is a country with many extremes. It is Asia's smallest nation in both physical area and population. The island nation has the smallest physical area of any country with a majority Muslim population. The average elevation—four feet and 11 inches above sea level—is the lowest in the world for any country.

Fishing and tourism are the chief methods for Maldivians to earn a living. Tourism has increased in recent years. The many islands and atolls are attractive destinations for world travelers. The first tourist resort opened in 1972. Since that time, dozens of world-

class resort facilities have opened for business across the archipelago. Tourism is the country's number one means of gaining wealth. The coral reefs that make up the island chain are excellent for diving and water sports. The tropical climate and miles of sandy beaches provide for an attractive tourism agenda.



The Maldives has become one of the world's best scuba diving destinations.

The Maldives is an example of an entire country that could be in danger of flooding because of climate change if polar ice melts and sea levels rise. Concerns over the future of the islands gave a reason for the president of the country to announce a plan in 2008 to purchase land in other countries in case sea levels rise to a point where the Maldives are no longer habitable.

The purchase of land from tourism receipts would provide a place for the Maldivians to move in case they had to evacuate the islands. The administration of the Maldives has worked hard to lobby the international community to address the increase in greenhouse gas emissions and the possibility of an increase in sea level caused by the global warming aspect of climate change.

Key Takeaways

- Punjab is a highly productive agricultural region located partly in Pakistan and partly in India. The region is home to the Sikh population, which has proposed having its own nation-state.
- Kashmir is divided between Pakistan, China, and India. The religious differences and the control of a valuable water source are at the core of this conflict.
- Nepal borders the Himalayan Mountains and has an economy based on agriculture and tourism. High population growth has been stripping the land of trees, causing serious deforestation issues and soil erosion.
- The Kingdom of Bhutan has placed major restrictions on tourism to protect its environment and limit outside influences on its culture.
- The beautiful tropical island of Sri Lanka experienced a low-level civil war for decades between the Sinhalese Buddhist majority and the Tamil Hindu minority. The island has an excellent location and potential for economic development.
- The archipelago of the Maldives is a small country that depends on tourism for its economic survival. The low elevation of its land area makes it subject to flooding due to the effects of climate change.

Vocabulary Terms

Chapter 9.2 The Peripheral States

outsourcing – the practice of hiring labor from sources outside of the company or outside of the nation in which the company is located

monsoon – seasonal winds that bring moist air in the summer and dry air in the winter across much of southern and eastern Asia

subcontinent – large land mass that is part of a larger continental landmass

polytheism – belief in multiple gods

Applying Knowledge

Discussion and Study Questions

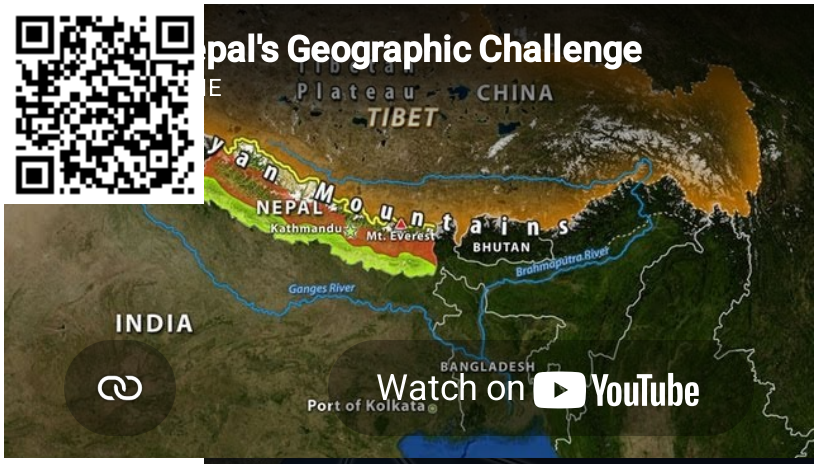
1. Why is the Punjab region vital to both Pakistan and India?
2. What has been one political goal of the Sikhs living in Punjab?
3. What three countries control parts of the Kingdom of Kashmir?
4. Why is the region of Kashmir vital to South Asia's viability?
5. Why is Bhutan so selective about admitting tourists?
6. Explain Bhutan's guiding philosophy regarding development.
7. Why is Nepal experiencing environmental degradation?
8. What was the civil war about in Sri Lanka? What did each side want?
9. What is it about each country listed that is attractive to the tourism industry?
10. What plan was announced to address the Maldives's environmental concerns?

Real-World Geography Exercise

Using Google Maps, locate each one of the places below. Next, choose one of the places and create a SWAY or a PowerPoint presentation. Include important facts, maps, images, and videos.

- Jaffna Peninsula
- Lumbini
- Mt. Everest
- Polk Strait
- Tarai lowlands

Videos for Geography Enrichment







Helpful Websites for the Study of Geography

Canadian Encyclopedia is an encyclopedia funded by the Canadian government covering all branches of knowledge. Their scholarly collection includes interactive materials.

CIA World Factbook provides information on the people, history, government, economy, energy, geography, communications, transportation, military, and transnational issues for the world's entities.

Congress.gov is a US government website where you can find federal legislation, past and present, as well as information about the US legal system.

Drug Enforcement Administration (DEA) is a government agency website that provides current news, resources, topics of interest, information about drugs, careers in the DEA, and a tip hotline.

Library of Congress is the largest library in the world and provides manuscripts, files, information, pictures, and videos.

NASA Earth Observatory (NEO) is a US government agency website that allows users to search for and retrieve satellite images of Earth.

National Archives is a US government website that provides historical documents, photos, records, publications, and educator resources.

National Oceanic and Atmospheric Association (NOAA) is a US government agency website that provides weather-related information and ocean research.

National Map is a website by the United States Geological Survey and other federal, state, and local agencies that delivers topographic information for the United States.

NationMaster is a massive central data source and a handy way to graphically compare nations.

Real-Time World Air Quality Index is a website that measures most locations in the world for air pollution in real time.

StateMaster is a unique statistical database, which allows you to research and compare a multitude of different data on US states.

United Nations (UN) is an international organization founded in 1945 and made up of 193 member states. The UN maintains international peace and security, protects human rights, delivers humanitarian aid, promotes sustainable development, and upholds international law.

United States Census Bureau is a US government agency that provides a population clock, data, surveys, statistics, a library with information and infographics, news about the economy, and much more.

United States Geological Survey (USGS) is a US government agency website that provides scientific information about the natural hazards that threaten lives, the natural resources we rely on, the health of our ecosystems and environment, and the impacts of climate and land-use change.

Whitehouse.gov is a US government website that provides the latest presidential news, information about the budget, policy, defense, and many more topics.

World Health Organization (WHO) is under the United Nations and provides leadership on matters critical to health, shapes the research agenda on health, and monitors the health situation and assessing health trends around the world. Their website provides information on the state of health around the world, outbreaks, current health news, and more.

LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

World Trade Organization (WTO) is an intergovernmental organization that regulates international trade. The website provides

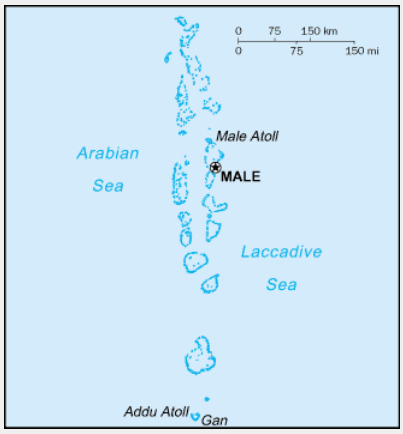
LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

information on the history of the multilateral trading system, featured videos, news and events, trade topics, and more.

Image	Reference	Attributions
	[Figure 1]	**Credit:** By Michel Royon (talk · contribs) [CC0], from Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Himalaya_nord.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 2]	**Credit:** Kogo [GFDL (http://www.gnu.org/copyleft/fdl.html)], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Indus_near_Skardu.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 4]	**Credit:** By Alvi Haroon [CC0], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Pakistani_Punjabis_at_a_wedding.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 7]	**Credit:** See page for author [Public domain], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:GuruNanakFresco-Goindwal.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 8]	**Credit:** https://2012books.lardbucket.org/boo...-of-south.html **Source:** https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/regional-geography-of-the-world-globalization-people-and-places/section_12/028f5f2bac0415e5def3042c09a013e2.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

	[Figure 9]	**Credit:** By CIA [Public domain], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Kashmir_region_2004.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 10]	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/bt.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 12]	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/np.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 13]	**Credit:** https://2012books.lardbucket.org/boo...outh-asia.html **Source:** https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/regional-geography-of-the-world-globalization-people-and-places/section_12/7b18d49dd1f8779eebe0a2b442334cb9.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

	[Figure 14]	**Credit:** Erik Schmidt **Source:** http://farm1.staticflickr.com/102/312634036_43fc20636c_z.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 15]	**Credit:** Thapa.laxman **Source:** https://upload.wikimedia.org/Wikipedia/commons/thumb/2/2f/Pashupati_dec_20_2009.jpg/640px-Pashupati_dec_20_2009.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 16]	**Credit:** By Yves Picq http://veton.picq.fr [GFDL (http://www.gnu.org/copyleft/fdl.html) or CC BY-SA 3.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0)], from Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Nepal_DSCN2126a.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 17]	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/ce.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 19]	**Credit:** By Pulasti (talk) (Uploads) (Pulasti (talk) (Uploads)) [Public domain], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Sri_Lanka_030.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

	[Figure 20]	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/mv.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 21]	**Credit:** By This illustration was made by (User:Royonx) and released under the license(s) stated above. You are free to use it for any purpose as long as you credit me and follow the terms of the license.Example : © Michel Royon / Wikimedia CommonsIf you use this image outside of the Wikimedia projects, I would be happy to hear from you par courriel (royonx gmail.com). Thanks !Ce message en français [CC0], from Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Banana_Reef.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

This page titled 9.2: South Asia- The Peripheral States (2 Days) is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by CK12 via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

9.3: Pakistan and Bangladesh (2 Days)

Chapter Challenges

1. Outline how Pakistan and Bangladesh are similar in their populations and economic dynamics but different in their physical environments.
2. Understand why the two countries were once under the same government and separated in 1972 when East Pakistan became Bangladesh.
3. Describe the various regions of Pakistan and their physical and cultural landscapes.
4. Comprehend the impact that large populations have on the natural environment and outline the main environmental issues that confront these two countries.

Student Learning Objectives

TEKS Regional Unit 09 South Asia: Chapter 9.3 Pakistan and Bangladesh

WG.1A Analyze the effects of physical and human geographic patterns and processes on the past and describe their impact on the present, including significant physical features and environmental conditions that influenced migration patterns and shaped the distribution of culture groups today.

WG.2A Describe the human and physical characteristics of the same regions at different periods of time to evaluate relationships between past events and current conditions.

WG.5A Analyze how the character of a place is related to its political, economic, social, and cultural elements.

WG.8B Describe the interaction between humans and the physical environment and analyze the consequences of extreme weather and other natural disasters such as El Niño, floods, tsunamis, and volcanoes.

WG9A Identify physical and/or human factors such as climate, vegetation, language, trade networks, political units, river systems, and religion that constitute a region.

WG.10C Compare the ways people satisfy their basic needs through the production of goods and services such as subsistence agriculture versus commercial agriculture or cottage industries versus commercial industries.

WG.10D Compare global trade patterns over time and examine the implications of globalization.

WG.13A Interpret maps to explain the division of land, including man-made and natural borders, into separate political units such as cities, states, or countries.

WG.14A Analyze current events to infer the physical and human processes that lead to the formation of boundaries and other political divisions.

WG.14C Analyze the human and physical factors that influence the power to control territory and resources, create conflict/war, and impact international political relations of sovereign nations.

WG.15B Identify and give examples of different points of view that influence the development of public policies and decision-making processes on local, state, national, and international levels.

WG.16B Describe elements of culture, including language, religion, beliefs and customs, institutions, and technologies.

WG.16C Explain ways various groups of people perceive the characteristics of their own and other cultures, places, and regions differently.

WG.16D Compare life in a variety of urban and rural areas in the world to evaluate political, economic, social, and environmental changes.

WG.18B Assess causes, effects, and perceptions of conflicts between groups of people, including modern genocides and terrorism.

WG.22C Use geographic terminology correctly.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

WG.22D Use standard grammar, spelling, sentence structure, and punctuation. [WG.22D]

TEKS and ELPS for Regional World Geography Unit 09--South Asia from TEKS Resource System.

Pakistan and Bangladesh

Pakistan and Bangladesh are two separate and independent countries physically divided by India. Historically, this was not always the case: from 1947 to 1971 they were administered under the same government. The two countries share a number of attributes. They both have Muslim majorities and both have high population densities. The countries are two of the top 10 most populous countries in the world. Their populations are youthful and mainly rural.

Agriculture is the main economic activity in each country. Rural-to-urban shift is a major trend affecting urban development. Infrastructure is lacking in many areas of each country. These similar factors indicate that both Pakistan and Bangladesh will face comparable challenges in providing for their large populations and protecting their natural environments.

The Muslim League was responsible for the formation of a united Pakistan, a predominantly Muslim state for South Asian Muslims. Pakistan was created from the former Indian territories of Sindh, North West Frontier Provinces, West Punjab, Balochistan, and East Bengal. Pakistan was formed with two separate physical regions, defined by religious predominance. East Bengal, on the eastern side of India, was known as East Pakistan, while the remainder, separated by more than 1000 miles, was known as West Pakistan. The two physical units were united politically.

East and West Pakistan, administered by one government, became independent in 1947 when Britain was forced out. Pakistan (East and West) adopted its constitution in 1956 and became an Islamic republic. In 1970, a massive cyclone hit the coast of East Pakistan and the central government in West Pakistan responded weakly to the devastation. The Bengali populations were angered over the government's lack of consideration for them in response to the cyclone and in other matters.

The Indo-Pakistan War changed the situation. In this war, East Pakistan, with the aid of the Indian military, challenged West Pakistan and declared independence to become Bangladesh in 1972. West Pakistan became the current country of Pakistan.

Pakistan



Map of Pakistan

The physical area of Pakistan is equivalent to the US states of Texas and Louisiana combined. Much of Pakistan's land area comprises either deserts or mountains. The high Himalayan ranges border Pakistan to the north. The lack of rainfall in the western part of the country restricts agricultural production in the mountain valleys and near the river basins. The Indus River flows roughly northeast/southwest along the eastern side of Pakistan, flowing into the Arabian Sea.



The Cold Desert is a high-altitude desert located near Skardu, in Pakistan's northern Gilgit-Baltistan region.

River sediments are deposited in large areas found between river channels and oxbow lakes formed from the constantly changing river channels. These “lands between the rivers” are called “doabs” and represent some of the most fertile lands in the Indian subcontinent. The Indus River flows from the northern part of the Karakoram mountains and creates a large, fertile flood plain that comprises much of eastern Pakistan. Pakistan has traditionally been a land of farming. The Indus River Valley and Punjab are the dominant core areas where most of the people live and where population densities are remarkably high.



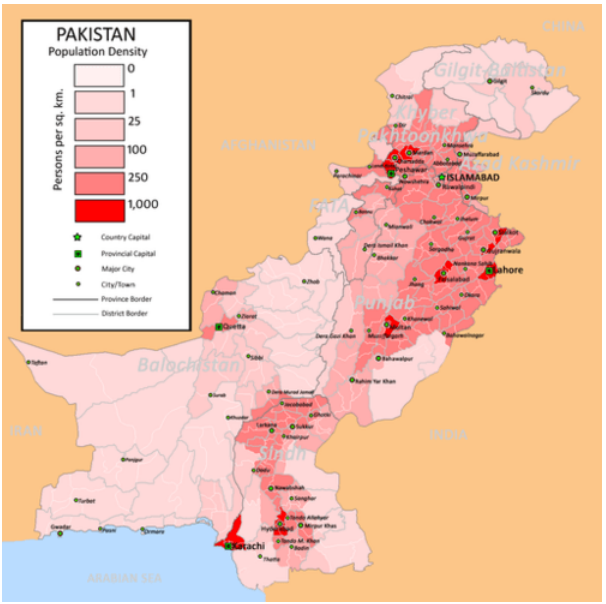
The Karakoram is a large mountain range spanning the borders of Pakistan, India, and China.

Approximately 64 percent of the population lives in rural areas and makes a living in agriculture. Most of the people are economically poor by world standards. In spite of the rural nature of the population, the average family size has decreased from seven to four in recent decades. Nevertheless, the population has exploded from about 34 million in 1951 to almost 205 million as of 2017. About half of the population is under the age of 20, and 35 percent is under the age of 15.

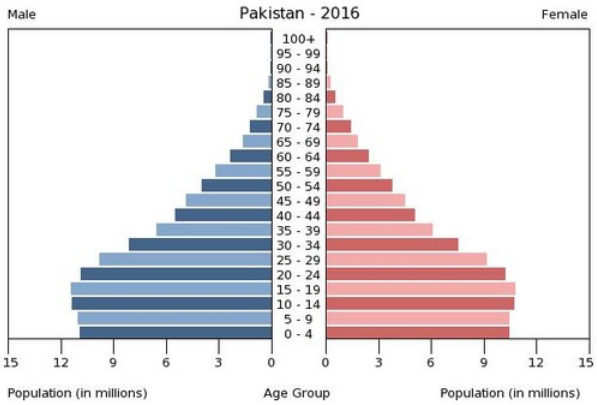
United Nations Estimates of the Population of Pakistan

	Total population (in thousands)	Population aged 0–14 (%)	Population aged 15–64 (%)	Population aged 65+ (%)
1950	37,547	40.3	54.1	5.6
1955	41,109	40.3	54.8	4.9
1960	45,920	40.4	55.3	4.3
1965	51,993	41.6	54.5	3.9
1970	59,383	42.6	53.6	3.8
1975	68,483	43.2	53.1	3.7
1980	80,493	43.4	52.9	3.7
1985	95,470	43.4	52.9	3.8
1990	111,845	43.7	52.5	3.8
1995	127,347	43.3	52.9	3.8
2000	144,522	41.4	54.7	3.9
2005	158,645	38.1	57.8	4.1
2011	173,593	35.4	60.3	4.3

Source

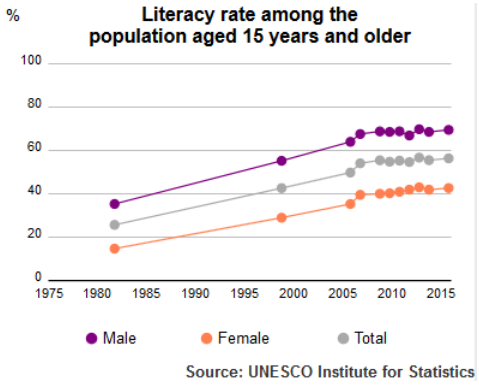


According to OECD/World Bank, the population in Pakistan increased by 23 million from 1990 to 2008, with a 54 percent growth in population.



Age Structure of Pakistan: 0-14 years: 31.36 percent (male 33,005,623/female 31,265,463); 15-24 years: 21.14 percent (male 22,337,897/female 20,980,455); 25-54 years: 37.45 percent (male 39,846,417/female 36,907,683); 55-64 years: 5.57 percent (male 5,739,817/female 5,669,495); 65 years and over: 4.48 percent (male 4,261,917/female 4,910,094)

A lack of adequate medical care, an absence of family planning, and the low status of women have created an ever-increasing population, which will have dire consequences for the future of Pakistan. Service and infrastructure to address the needs of this youthful population are not available to the necessary degree. Schools and educational opportunities for children are rarely funded at the needed levels. As of 2015, only about 57 percent of Pakistan's population was literate (69.5 percent for men, and 45.8 percent for women).



Literacy rate of over-15 Pakistan population (1980–2015) by UNESCO Institute of Statistics.

Karachi was the capital of Pakistan when it was under British rule. Karachi is a port city located on the Arabian Sea. To establish a presence in the north, near Kashmir, the capital was moved to Islamabad in 1960. This example of a *forward capital* was an expression of geopolitical assertiveness by Pakistan against India. The lingua franca of the country for the business sector and the social elite continues to be English, even though Urdu is considered the national language of Pakistan and is used as a lingua franca in many areas. More than 60 languages are spoken in the country. There are as many ethnic groups in Pakistan as there are languages. The three most prominent ethnic groups are Punjabis, Pashtuns, and Sindhis.

First languages of Pakistan

Punjabi		48%
Sindhi		12%
Saraiki		10%
Pashto		8%
Urdu		8%
Balochi		3%
Others		11%

Ethnic groups in Pakistan

Punjabi		48%
Sindhi		12%
Saraiki		10%
Pashto		8%
Urdu		8%
Balochi		3%
Others		11%

Source

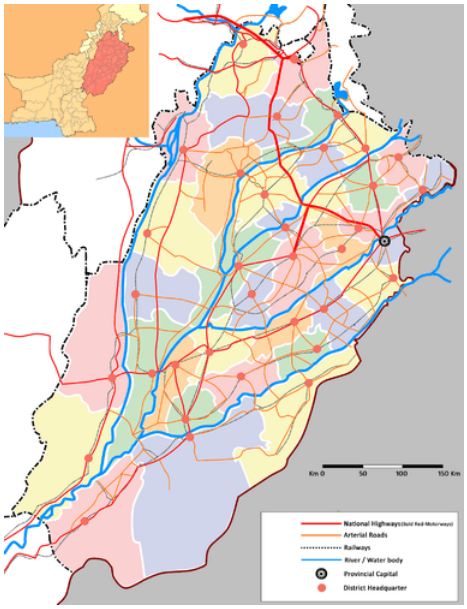
Regions of Pakistan

The three main physical geographic regions of Pakistan are the Indus River Basin, the Baluchistan Plateau, and the northern highlands. These physical regions are generally associated with the country's main political provinces. The four main provinces include the Punjab, Balochistan, Sindh, and Khyber Pakhtunkhwa (North West Frontier).



Moola Chotuk is a hidden paradise in Balochistan.

To the north is the disputed region of Kashmir known as the Northern Areas. Each of these regions represents a different aspect of the country. The North West Frontier has a series of Tribal Areas bordering Afghanistan that have been traditionally under their own local control. Agents under Tribal Agencies have attempted to administer some type of structure and responsibility for the areas, with little success.



Map of the Province of Punjab in Pakistan, indicating districts, rivers, major and arterial roads and railways.

List of major cities in Punjab

Rank	City	District	Population
1	**Lahore**	Lahore	14,500,000
2	**Faisalabad**	Faisalabad	7,380,000
3	**Rawalpindi**	Rawalpindi	5,891,656
4	**Multan**	Multan	5,206,481
5	**R.Y.Khan**	R.Y.Khan	4,814,006
6	**Gujranwala**	Gujranwala	4,769,090
7	**Sargodha**	Sargodha	4,557,514
8	**Bahawalpur**	Bahawalpur	2,443,929
9	**Sialkot**	Sialkot	1,910,863
10	**Sheikhupura**	Sheikhupura	426,980
11	**Jhang**	Jhang	372,645
12	**Gujrat**	Gujrat	530,645
13	**D.G.Khan**	D.G.Khan	630,645
Source: World Gazetteer 2010			

This is a list of each city's urban populations and does not indicate total district populations

As explained previously, Punjab is a core area of Pakistan, and has about 60 percent of Pakistan’s population. The five rivers of Punjab border India and provide the fresh water necessary to grow food to support a large population. Irrigation canals create a water management network that provides water throughout the region. The southern portion of Punjab includes the arid conditions of the Thar Desert.

The northern sector includes the foothills of the mountains and has cooler temperatures in the higher elevations. Punjab is anchored by the cities of Lahore, Faisalabad, and Multan. Lahore is the cultural center of Pakistan and is home to the University of the Punjab and many magnificent mosques and palaces built during its early history.



The University of Lahore is a private university located in Lahore, Punjab, Pakistan.

In the 1980s, many Punjabis migrated to Europe, the Middle East, and North America seeking opportunities and employment. This diaspora of people from Punjab provided cultural and business ties with Pakistan. For example, trade connections between Punjab and the United States are increasing.

Punjab is the most industrialized of all the provinces. Manufacturing has increased with industries producing everything from vehicles to electrical appliances to textiles. The industrialization of Punjab is an indication of its skilled workforce and the highest literacy rate in Pakistan, at about 80 percent.

Balochistan



Balochistan Canyons

Balochistan encompasses a large portion of southwest Pakistan to the west of the Indus River. The region connects the Middle East and Iran with the rest of Asia. The landscape consists of barren terrain, sandy deserts, and rocky surfaces. Balochistan covers about 44 percent of the entire country and is the largest political unit. The sparse population ekes a living out of the few mountain valleys where water can be found.

Local politics provides the basic structure for society in this region. Within the Balochistan province of Pakistan are several coastal and interior rivers. The interior rivers flow from the Hindu Kush Mountains of Afghanistan, while most of the rivers along the coastal deserts from west of Karachi to the Iranian border are seasonal in nature and provide one of the few sources of fresh water in those coastal regions. Much of the coastal region is arid desert with sand dunes and large volcanic mountainous features.

The Sindh

The Sindh region of the southeast is anchored by Karachi, Pakistan's largest city and major port. The Indus River is the border on the west and the Punjab region lies to the north. To the east of the Sindh is the border with India and the great Thar Desert. The Sindh is a region that misses out on the rains from the summer monsoon and the retreating monsoon season when the winds sweep in from the north over South Asia.

The city of Hyderabad**,** Pakistan, is located along the Indus River, which is a key food-growing area. Food crops consist of wheat and other small grains, with cotton as a major cash crop that helps support the textile industry of the region.

Rural-to-urban shift has pushed large numbers of Sindh residents into the city of Karachi to look for opportunities and employment. In previous sections, slums and shantytowns have been described and explained for cities such as Mexico City and São Paulo. Karachi has similar development patterns. The central business district has a thriving business sector that anchors the southern part of the country. The city has a large port facility on the Arabian Sea.

As a city of 12 to 15 million people or more, there are always problems with a lack of public services, law enforcement, or adequate infrastructure. Urban centers usually have a strong informal economy that provides a means for many of the citizens to get by but is outside the control of the city or national government. The Sindh is the second most populous region of Pakistan, after Punjab.

Khyber Pakhtunkhwa (The North West Frontier)

The North West Frontier is a broad expanse of territory that extends from the northern edge of Baluchistan to the Northern Areas of the former Kingdom of Kashmir. Sandwiched between the tribal areas along the Afghanistan border and the well-watered lands of Punjab, the Khyber Pakhtunkhwa Province is dominated by remote mountain ranges with fertile valleys. The famous Khyber Pass, a major chokepoint into Afghanistan, is located here.



The Khyber Pass (elevation: 3,510 ft) is a mountain pass in the north of Pakistan, close to the border with Afghanistan.

The frontier is a breeding ground for anti-Western culture and anti-American sentiments, mainly fueled by the US military activity in Afghanistan. The Taliban movement that once controlled the government of Afghanistan has been active and generally more organized in this region than in Afghanistan. A push for more fundamentalist Islamic law has been a major initiative of the local leaders. Support for education and modernization is minimal. The government of Pakistan has also stepped up its military actions in the region to counter the activities of the militant Islamic extremists.

The Tribal Areas

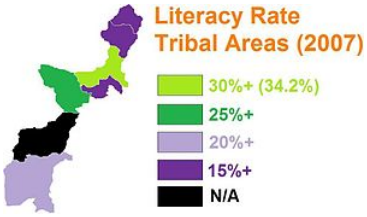


Federally Administered Tribal Areas (FATA)

https://k12.libretexts.org/@go/page/1984

The North West Frontier borders the Tribal Areas, where clans and local leaders are standard parts of the sociopolitical structure. These remote areas have seldom been fully controlled by either the colonial governments (the British) or the current government of Pakistan. There are about seven main areas that fall under this description. Accountability for the areas has been difficult and even when the national government stepped in to exercise authority, there was serious resistance that halted any real established interaction.

These remote areas are where groups such as al-Qaeda and the Taliban often find a safe haven. South and North Waziristan are two of the main areas that have been controlled by Tribal Agencies and not directly by the Pakistani government.



Northern Areas with Disputed Kashmir

Pakistan's Northern Areas include the territories that were once part of the Kingdom of Kashmir, the boundaries of which are disputed with India. The region is, in other words, interconnected with the issues related to Kashmir that involve Pakistan, India, and China. There are two main political entities: the large northern section bordering Afghanistan is called Gilgit-Baltistan, and the narrow section near Islamabad is called Azad Kashmir (Azad Jammu and Kashmir).

The Northern Areas are highlands, bordered to the north by the towering Karakoram and Pamir mountain ranges. K2, the world's second highest mountain, which reaches 28,250 feet, is located here. The Northern Areas are sparsely populated except for the Indus River valley. The conflicts over these territories fuel nationalistic forces in both Pakistan and India.

The conflicts are as much between Islam and Hinduism as they are between political factions. The early war between India and Pakistan over the border that the British placed between them in 1947 almost seems to be reenacted in the more recent conflicts over the region of Kashmir.



The Highlands of the Northern Areas in Pakistan.

Religion and Politics in Pakistan

Today most of the people living in Pakistan are Muslim. About 85 percent of the Muslim population in Pakistan is Sunni and about 15 percent of the Muslim population is Shia, which is consistent with the percentages of the two Islamic divisions worldwide. Islam is considered the state religion of Pakistan. The state is a federal republic with a parliamentarian style of government.

As an *Islamic state* following the Sharia laws of the Koran, it has been a challenge for Pakistan to try to balance instituting democratic reforms while staying true to fundamental Islamic teachings. Pakistan has held elections for government leaders, and the status of women has improved. Women have held many governmental and political positions, including prime minister.

The military has been a foundation of power for those in charge. As a result of weak economic conditions throughout the country, it has been the military that has received primary attention and is the strongest institution within the government. Pakistan has demonstrated its nuclear weapons capability in recent years, which established it as a major player in regional affairs.

Pakistan has suffered from inadequate funding for public schools. As a rule, the wealthy urban elites have been the only families who could afford to send their children to college. With half the population consisting of young people, there are few opportunities to look forward to in Pakistan. Education has been supported in the form of Islamic religious schools called madrassas, which teach children the Koran and Islamic law.

Much of the funding for religious schools comes from outside sources such as Saudi Arabia. The result is a religious education that does not provide the skills needed for the modern world. Pakistan has worked to build schools, colleges, and universities to educate its people. The situation is that population growth has been outpacing what little budget was allocated for educational purposes.

The government of Pakistan has struggled to meet the challenge posed by the democratic structure of its constitution. The combination of a federal republic and an Islamic state creates a unique and at times difficult balance in administrative politics. The legislative body of Pakistan consists of a National Assembly and a Senate. The leader of the National Assembly is the prime minister.

The elected president not only is in charge of the military but is also head of state. The military establishment and the Inter-Services Intelligence (ISI) agency hold major political power in Pakistan. The political leadership has often vacillated between military and civilian rule. Transitions between the two types of leadership have been conducted through civil unrest or political demonstrations in the streets.

Benazir Bhutto: The First Female Prime Minister of Pakistan

Women's roles in Pakistani leadership have been complex. To understand the impact of electing the first woman prime minister in Pakistan, one has to go back to 1972. At that time, East Pakistan gained its independence and changed its name to Bangladesh. At roughly the same time, Pakistan elected President Zulfikar Ali Bhutto to power. After ruling for five years, Zulfikar Ali Bhutto was ousted from power and sentenced to death by General Zia, who became the next president.

General Zia was the first military general to also be president. He allowed the Islamic Sharia law to be introduced into the legal system, which bolstered the influence of Islam on the military and government services. In 1988, General Zia was killed in an unexplained plane crash. The daughter of the first president—Zulfikar Ali Bhutto—was then elected as prime minister. The 35-year-old Benazir Bhutto was the first female prime minister of Pakistan.



Benazir Bhutto on a visit to Washington, D.C. in 1989.

Benazir Bhutto's tenure as prime minister was short-lived. After a year and a half, the president removed her from office on accusations of corruption. She ran again in 1993 and was reelected to the prime minister position. Charges of corruption continued and she was removed as prime minister a second time in 1996. Political corruption, or the accusations of such a charge, is not uncommon in Pakistan or other countries with volatile political situations.

To keep from being prosecuted by her opposition, Benazir Bhutto left Pakistan in 1998 and lived in Dubai. She did not return to Pakistan until 2007, under an agreement reached with the military general who was president at the time, General Pervez Musharraf. Benazir Bhutto was given amnesty for any and all claims against her.

The elimination of the corruption charges against her allowed Benazir Bhutto to become a candidate for the office of president. She organized an effective campaign. Her campaign for the presidency energized the political landscape of the country. In

December of 2007, her campaign was cut short. Benazir Bhutto was assassinated after departing a political rally.

She was assassinated a few weeks before the polls were to open for the election. Benazir Bhutto was the leading opposition candidate. Her death rallied support against General Musharraf with continued calls for his removal from office. General Musharraf resigned from the presidency in 2008. The winner of the presidential elections that followed was none other than Benazir Bhutto's husband, Asif Ali Zardari. President Zardari blamed the Taliban for the assassination of his wife.

Environmental Issues in Pakistan

Pakistan is confronted with severe environmental issues. One of the concerns is a fault zone that runs directly through the region. Pakistan's regions are divided by the Eurasian tectonic plate and the Indian tectonic plate. Shifting tectonic plates cause earthquakes, and there have been several major ones in Pakistan's recent history. For example, an earthquake of 7.6 magnitude in 2005 in the northern region of the North West Frontier claimed about 89,000 lives in Pakistan and a few thousand others in neighboring India and Afghanistan.

About 150 aftershocks were felt the next day, many of which were over the 6.0 level on the Richter scale. This particular event in 2005 was listed as the 14th most devastating earthquake on record at the time. It left over three million people without a home in Pakistan alone and more people were left homeless in neighboring areas. Hardest hit outside of Pakistan was the portion of Kashmir that is controlled by India.

Many countries, including the United States, stepped up and supported the aid effort to reach people in the devastated region. Major earthquakes that cause devastation for the large populations here are common along this tectonic plate boundary.

Another environmental issue in Pakistan is water pollution. Raw sewage discharges into the rivers and streams and contaminates the drinking water for many Pakistanis. Most of the population lives in rural areas and relies on natural untreated water for their consumption. The water sources are heavily polluted, triggering disease and health problems.

The urban areas lack public water works to handle fresh water supplies or to dispose of sewage properly. Industrial wastes and agricultural runoff also pollute and damage water supplies. Floods and natural runoff can carry pollutants from the land or urban areas into the rivers and streams that are used by human communities. The net effect of all these factors is that the majority of Pakistan's population lacks safe drinking water.

Deforestation is another environmental problem in Pakistan because the demand for wood for cooking fuel and building is on the rise. Only about 2.5 percent of Pakistan is forested. In the last two decades, Pakistan has lost about one-fourth of its forest cover. The removal of forests causes widespread soil erosion during heavy rains and decreases natural habitat for organisms and wild animals.

Efforts to protect the biodiversity of the country have been minimal and are complicated by the increase in population, which is expected to double in about 45 years if population growth remains on its current trajectory. The reality is that deforestation is likely to continue in Pakistan, with little hope of a solution anytime soon.

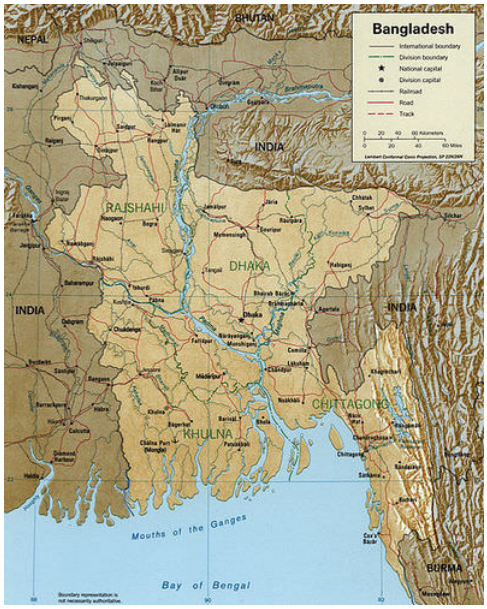
Bangladesh



Map of Bangladesh

https://k12.libretexts.org/@go/page/1984

Bangladesh is a low-lying country that is associated with the types of marshy environments found in tropical areas and river deltas. The region is extremely prone to flooding, particularly during the monsoon season because of the high amount of rainfall. One of the most important rivers of Bangladesh flows southward from the Himalayas through India and into Bangladesh. While in India, this river is known as the Brahmaputra River, but when it enters Bangladesh, it is known as the Jamuna River. It provides a major waterway for this region and empties into the Bay of Bengal.



Rivers of Bangladesh, including the Brahmaputra.

Contributing to the immense flow of water through the country are the Ganges and the Meghna rivers, which join up with the Brahmaputra River near the sea. The Ganges flows through northern India and is a major source of fresh water for a large population before it reaches Bangladesh.

The Meghna is a collection of tributaries within the boundaries of Bangladesh that flows out of the eastern part of the country. The Meghna is a deep river that can reach depths of almost 2,000 feet with an average depth of more than 1,000 feet. The hundreds of water channels throughout the relatively flat country provide for transportation routes for boats and ships that move goods and people from place to place. There are few bridges, so land travel is restricted when rainfall is heavy.



The Meghna River is one of the most important rivers in Bangladesh.

Population and Globalization

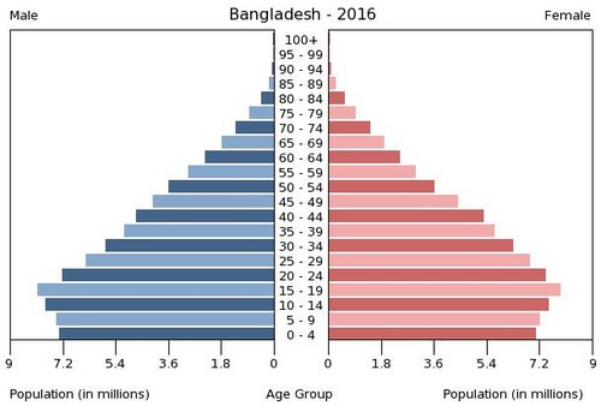
Imagine a country the size of the US state of Wisconsin. Now imagine half of the entire population of the United States living within its borders. With an estimated population of about 161.1 million in 2012 and a land area of only 55,556 square miles, it is one of the most densely populated countries on the planet.

Population (millions)

https://k12.libretexts.org/@go/page/1984

Year	Population	Per Annum Growth Rate
1971	67.8	—
1980	80.6	+1.94%
1990	105.3	+2.71%
2000	129.6	+2.10%
2010	148.7	+1.38%
2012	161.1	+4.09%

Source: OECD/World Bank



Age Structure of Bangladesh: 0-14 years: 27.76 percent (male 22,283,780 / female 21,521,977); 15-24 years: 19.36 percent (male 15,309,543 / female 15,241,971); 25-54 years: 39.73 percent (male 30,094,014 / female 32,614,286); 55-64 years: 6.93 percent (male 5,405,900 / female 5,527,330); 65 years and over: 6.23 percent (male 4,666,033 / female 5,161,744)

Most of the population in Bangladesh is rural, agriculturally grounded, and poor. The larger cities, such as the capital of Dhaka, have modern conveniences, complete with Internet cafes, shopping districts, and contemporary goods. The rural areas often suffer from a lack of adequate transportation, infrastructure, and public services.

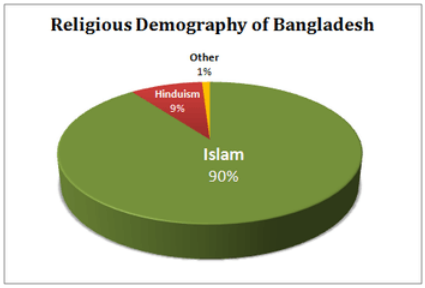
Poverty is common; income levels average the equivalent of a few US dollars per day. Remarkably, the culture remains vibrant and active, pursuing livelihoods that seek out every opportunity or advantage available to them.

There are many ethnic groups in Bangladesh, and many languages are spoken. The official and most widely used language in Bangladesh is Bengali, which is an Indo-Aryan language of Sanskrit origin and has its own script. A Presidential Order in 1987 made Bengali the official language for the government of Bangladesh. Bengali is also the main language for the Indian state of West Bengal, which neighbors Bangladesh. English is used as the lingua franca among the middle and upper classes and in higher education. Many minor languages are spoken in Bangladesh and in the region as a whole.



The official national language of Bangladesh is Modern Standard Bengali. It serves as the lingua franca of the nation, with 98 percent of Bangladeshis fluent in Bengali (including dialects) as their first language.

Most of the population, about 90 percent, is Muslim, with all but about three percent Sunni. There is a sizable minority, about 9 percent, which adheres to Hinduism, Buddhism, Christianity, or animism. The US State Department considers Bangladesh to be a moderate Islamic democratic country.



Religions in Bangladesh

Bangladesh suffers from a demographic dilemma. Its tropical climate, availability of fresh water, and productive agricultural land have augmented a high population growth rate. The ever-increasing population is a growing concern. The government has stepped up its support for women's health, birth control, and family planning services. This is an Islamic country, but practical approaches and common sense in regard to population control have won out over Islamic fundamentalism, which has not always supported family planning.

This poor and highly populated country has experienced political problems. Most of the people work in agriculture, while the remaining population is primarily concentrated in the service sector. Small business enterprises have been encouraged by the issuing of microcredit, or small loans, to assist people in using their skills to earn income.

Globalization is evident in Bangladesh. As a result of the availability of cheap labor, sweatshops have been implemented to manufacture clothing for export to the world markets. The country also receives financial remittances from Bangladeshis working overseas in places such as the oil-rich region of the Middle East, which also is predominantly Muslim and is attracting cheap labor for its economic development projects funded by oil revenues.



Sweatshop in Bangladesh

One example of how Bangladesh has been able to acquire materials such as steel is in the recycling of old ships. Shipping companies that have ships that are no longer viable for modern shipping have brought them to the shores of Bangladesh to be stripped down, taken apart, and the materials recycled.

Environmental Issues

The summer monsoons are both a blessing and a curse in Bangladesh. The blessing of the monsoon rains is that they bring fresh water to grow food. The northeast part of Bangladesh receives the highest amount of rainfall, averaging about 18 feet per year, while the western part of the country averages only about four feet per year. Most of the rain falls during the monsoon season.

Bangladesh can grow abundant food crops of rice and grain in the fertile deltas of the Ganges and Brahmaputra Rivers, rivers that ultimately empty into the Bay of Bengal. About 55 percent of the land area is arable and can be used for farming, but flooding causes serious damage to cropland by eroding soil and washing away seeds or crops.

Every year, countless people die because of the flooding, which can cover as much as one-third of the country. One of the worst flooding events in Bangladesh's history was experienced in 1998, when river flooding destroyed more than 300,000 homes and caused more than 1,000 deaths, rendering more than 30 million people homeless.

Most parts of Bangladesh are fewer than 40 feet above sea level, and the country is vulnerable to major flooding according to various global warming scenarios. Half of the country could be flooded with a three-foot rise in sea level. Storm surges from cyclones killed as many as one 150,000 people in 1991. In comparison, about 2,000 people died when Hurricane Katrina hit New Orleans in 2006.

The high death toll from flooding does not receive its due attention from Western news media. Environmental concerns increase with the long-term projections of climate change. If sea level rises or if storms increase, then the low-lying agricultural lands of Bangladesh would suffer even more flooding and devastation. This would decrease the food supply of a growing population.

Another environmental problem for Bangladesh is deforestation. Wood is traditionally used for cooking and construction. The needs of a larger population have caused widespread deforestation. Brick and cement have become alternative building materials, and cow dung has become a widely used cooking fuel even though it reduces the fertilizer base for agriculture. Even so, these adaptations have not halted the deforestation problem. The main remaining forests are located along the southern borders with India and Burma and in the northeast sector.

Bangladeshis suffer because of widespread water pollution from naturally occurring arsenic that contaminates water wells. The pyrite bedrock underneath much of western Bangladesh has large amounts of arsenic in it. Millions of people drink groundwater contaminated with this arsenic on a daily basis. Arsenic kills people slowly, by building up in their bodies, rotting their fingernails, giving them dark spots and bleeding sores. Arsenic is a slow killer and a carcinogen that increases the risk of skin cancer and tumors inside the body.

Villagers in Bangladesh began being affected by these symptoms in the 1970s. In 1993, official tests indicated that up to 95 percent of the wells in one of the villages in the western region were contaminated. The widespread water contamination has also had a social cost. Reports indicate that husbands are sending their disfigured wives back to their families of origin, and some young

people are remaining single. Stories are told of people who believe that health problems are contagious or genetic and can be passed on to children.

Key Takeaways

- When Britain's colonialism ended in South Asia in 1947, the Muslim League was instrumental in creating the united Muslim state with both East Pakistan and West Pakistan under one government. East Pakistan broke away and became the independent country of Bangladesh in 1972.
- Both Pakistan and Bangladesh have large populations that are increasing rapidly. Both countries have agriculturally based economies. Rural-to-urban shift is occurring at an ever-increasing rate in both countries. Population growth places a heavy tax on natural resources and social services.
- The political units within Pakistan include four main provinces. Tribal Areas border Afghanistan and are controlled by local leaders. The Northern Areas are disputed with India. Each of the provinces has its own unique physical and human landscapes.
- Earthquakes are common in Pakistan because the country is located on a tectonic plate boundary. Deforestation and water pollution are two other major environmental concerns.
- Bangladesh is a low-lying country with the Brahmaputra River, Ganges River, and the Meghna River flowing into the Bay of Bengal. Flooding is a major environmental concern that has devastated the country on a regular basis.

Vocabulary Terms

Chapter 9.3 Pakistan and Bangladesh

	intense tropical storm system with high winds and heavy rains
	major river system found in Pakistan
	religion observed by most people in Pakistan and Bangladesh
	for centuries, the pass used by people traveling through South Asia from the north
	The separation; division into two or more territorial units having separate political status
	official language of Pakistan

Applying Knowledge

Discussion and Study Questions

1. What happened to East Pakistan? Why did its name change?
2. Why does Pakistan have a forward capital? Where is it? Where did the capital used to be?
3. Compare the population density of Pakistan, Bangladesh, and the United States.
4. What are the four main provinces of Pakistan? How are they different from each other?
5. How is Bangladesh affected by the summer monsoon? How much rain can it receive annually?
6. What are the main environmental problems in Pakistan? In Bangladesh?
7. What type of government does Pakistan have? What is the law based on?
8. How could both countries address their population growth situation?
9. Who was the first woman prime minister of Pakistan? What happened to her?
10. How has microcredit aided in the economic development of Bangladesh?

Real-World Geography Exercise

1. Using Google Maps, complete the following activities:
    a. Locate each place on the bulleted list below.

b. Find the nearest city with an international airport in proximity to each location on the bulleted list below.
c. Calculate the distance and travel time by plane to each city from the Orlando International Airport in Orlando, Florida.

2. Using NASA Latitude and Longitude Finder, determine the latitude and longitude for each location on the bulleted list below.
3. Be prepared to share and discuss your answers.

- Arabian Sea
- Azad Kashmir
- Baluchistan
- Bay of Bengal
- Brahmaputra River
- Ganges River
- Gilgit-Baltistan
- Hyderabad
- Indus River
- Karachi
- Khyber Pakhtunkhwa
- Khyber Pass
- Lahore
- Meghna River
- Northern Areas
- Punjab
- Sindh
- Thar Desert

Current Events

Geography Education Scoop It

HIV Outbreak Sparks Panic in Southern Pakistan

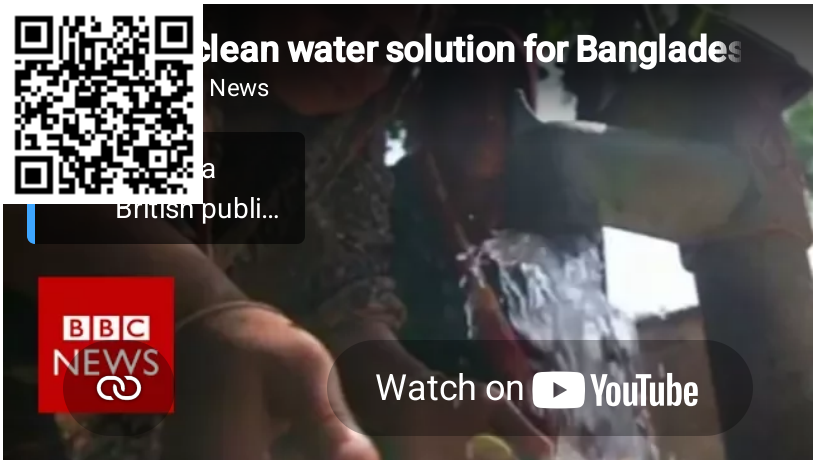
Cab-Hailing Company Careem Launches Women Drivers In Conservative Pakistan

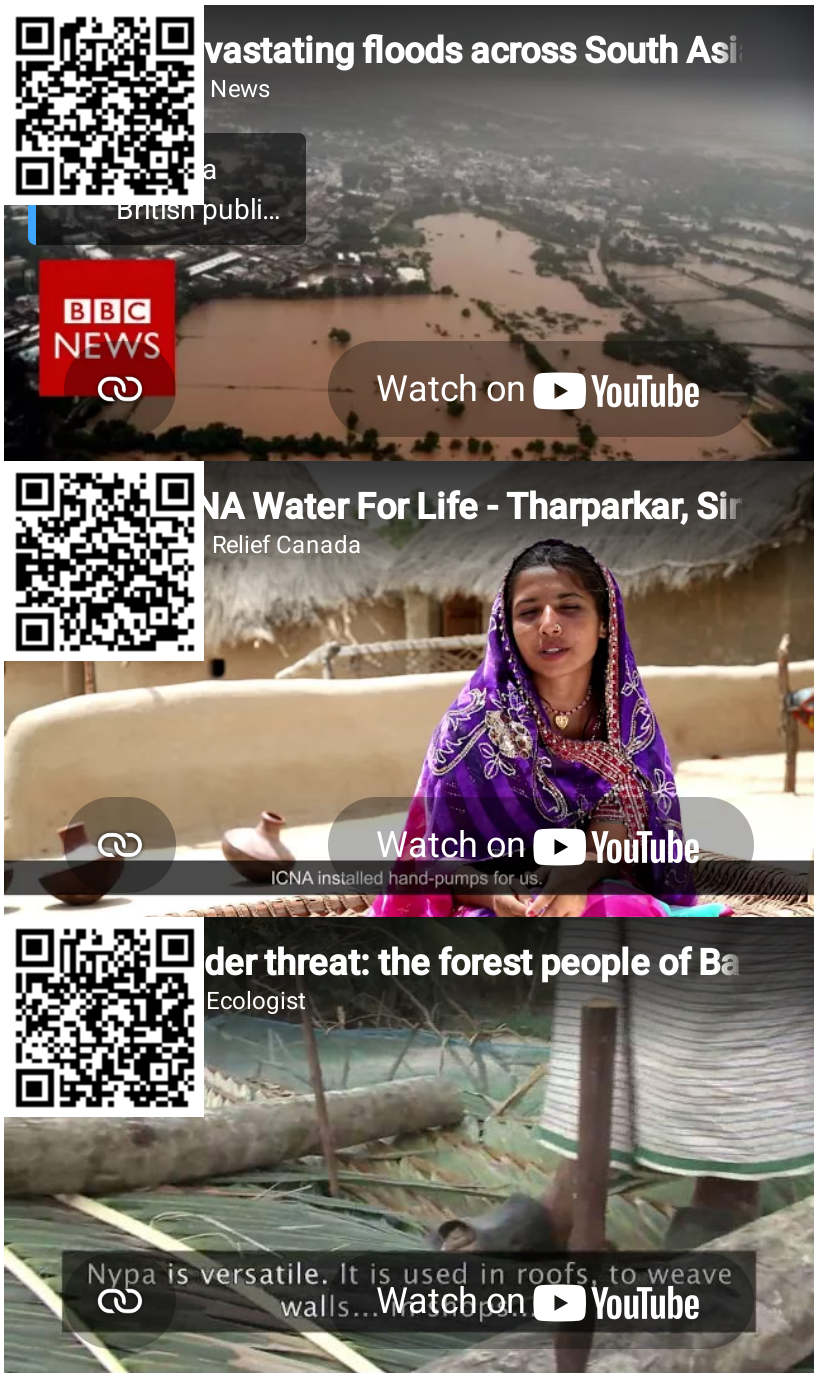
Is Sindhi an ‘endangered’ language?

Why have we forgotten the long lost glory of the Punjabi language?

Bangladesh In The Next Three Decades

Videos for Geography Enrichment





Helpful Websites for the Study of Geography

Canadian Encyclopedia is an encyclopedia funded by the Canadian government covering all branches of knowledge. Their scholarly collection includes interactive materials.

CIA World Factbook provides information on the people, history, government, economy, energy, geography, communications, transportation, military, and transnational issues for the world's entities.

Congress.gov is a US government website where you can find federal legislation, past and present, as well as information about the US legal system.

Drug Enforcement Administration (DEA) is a government agency website that provides current news, resources, topics of interest, information about drugs, careers in the DEA, and a tip hotline.

Library of Congress is the largest library in the world and provides manuscripts, files, information, pictures, and videos.

NASA Earth Observatory (NEO) is a US government agency website that allows users to search for and retrieve satellite images of Earth.

National Archives is a US government website that provides historical documents, photos, records, publications, and educator resources.

National Oceanic and Atmospheric Association (NOAA) is a US government agency website that provides weather-related information and ocean research.

National Map is a website by the United States Geological Survey and other federal, state, and local agencies that delivers topographic information for the United States.

NationMaster is a massive central data source and a handy way to graphically compare nations.

Real-Time World Air Quality Index is a website that measures most locations in the world for air pollution in real time.

StateMaster is a unique statistical database, which allows you to research and compare a multitude of different data on US states.

United Nations (UN) is an international organization founded in 1945 and made up of 193 member states. The UN maintains international peace and security, protects human rights, delivers humanitarian aid, promotes sustainable development, and upholds international law.

United States Census Bureau is a US government agency that provides a population clock, data, surveys, statistics, a library with information and infographics, news about the economy, and much more.

United States Geological Survey (USGS) is a US government agency website that provides scientific information about the natural hazards that threaten lives, the natural resources we rely on, the health of our ecosystems and environment, and the impacts of climate and land-use change.

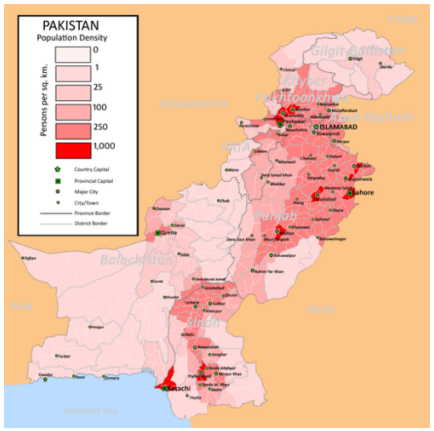
Whitehouse.gov is a US government website that provides the latest presidential news, information about the budget, policy, defense, and many more topics.

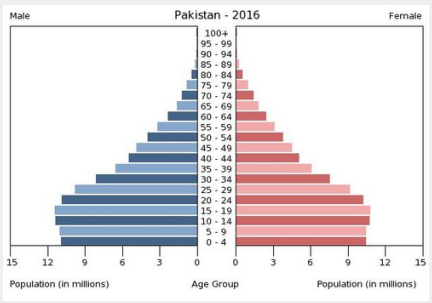
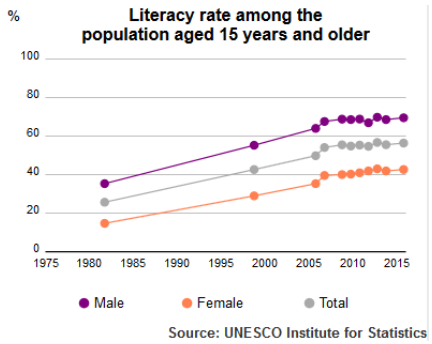
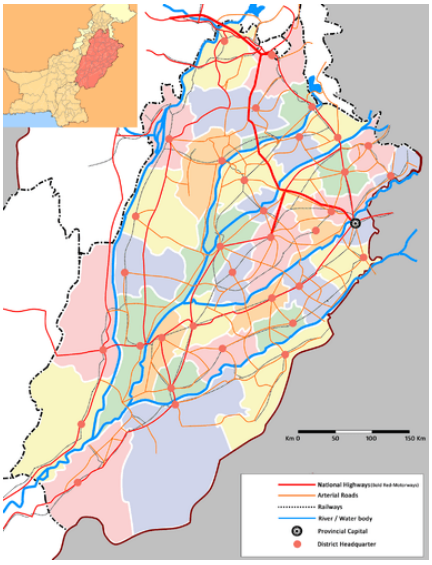
World Health Organization (WHO) is under the United Nations and provides leadership on matters critical to health, shapes the research agenda on health, and monitors the health situation and assessing health trends around the world. Their website provides information on the state of health around the world, outbreaks, current health news, and more.

World Trade Organization (WTO) is an intergovernmental organization that regulates international trade. The website provides

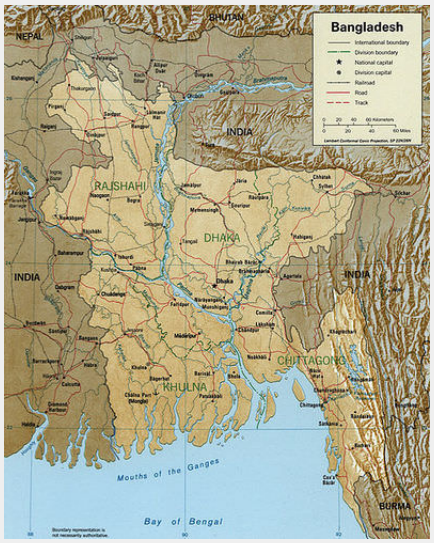
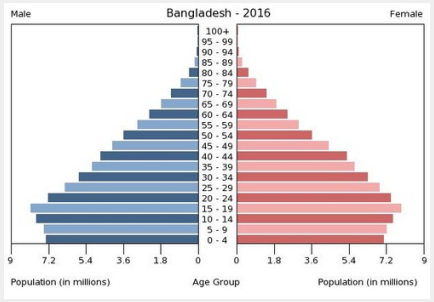
LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

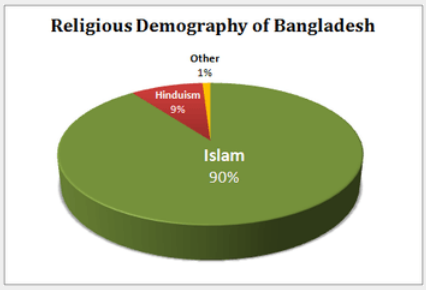
information on the history of the multilateral trading system, featured videos, news and events, trade topics, and more.

Image	Reference	Attributions
	[Figure 1]	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/pk.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 2]	**Credit:** By Aneesjavaid [CC BY-SA 4.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0)], from Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:SHIGAR.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 3]	**Credit:** By Guilhem Vellut from Paris (Glacier) [CC BY-SA 2.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/2.0)], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Baltoro_glacier_from_air.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 4]	**Credit:** Nomi887 at en.Wikipedia [CC BY-SA 3.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0) or GFDL (http://www.gnu.org/copyleft/fdl.html)], from Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Pakistan_population_density.png **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

	[Figure 5]	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/pk.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 6]	**Credit:** By UNESCO Institute for Statistics [Attribution], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:UIS_Literacy_Rate_Pakistan_population_plus15_1980_2015.png **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 7]	**Credit:** By Furqanlw [CC BY-SA 4.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0)], from Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Moola_Chotuk_Hidden_paradise_in_Balochistan.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 8]	**Credit:** By Nomi887 [CC BY-SA 3.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0) or GFDL (http://www.gnu.org/copyleft/fdl.html)], from Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://upload.wikimedia.org/Wikipedia/commons/a/a9/Punjab-Map.PNG **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 9]	**Credit:** By Farhan Khurram [CC BY-SA 4.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0)], from Wikimedia Commons **Source:**

		https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:University_of_Lahore_Panorama.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 10]	**Credit:** By Uzair189 [CC BY-SA 4.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0)], from Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Baluchistan_Canyons.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 11]	**Credit:** By James Mollison (James Mollison) [CC BY-SA 2.5 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/2.5)], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:KhyberPassPakistan.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 13]	**Credit:** Tore Urnes, http://www.flickr.com/photos/urnes/2663083945. **Source:** https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/regional-geography-of-the-world-globalization-people-and-places/s12-south-asia.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 14]	**Credit:** By SRA Gerald B. Johnson, United States Department of Defense (DefenseImagery.mil, VIRIN DF-SC-91-09102) [Public domain], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Benazir_bhutto_1988.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

	[Figure 15]	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/bg.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 16]	**Credit:** http://hdl.loc.gov/loc.gmd/g7645.ct001002 **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Bangladesh_LOC_1996_map.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 17]	**Credit:** By Mashroor Nitol [CC BY-SA 2.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/2.0)], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://upload.wikimedia.org/Wikipedia/commons/e/e5/Meghna_River_by_Mashroor_Nitol.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 18]	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/bg.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

	[Figure 19]	**Credit:** By MapMaster [CC BY 3.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/3.0)], from Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Languages_of_Bangladesh_map.svg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 20]	**Credit:** https://en.Wikipedia.org/wiki/Demogr..._of_Bangladesh **Source:** https://upload.wikimedia.org/Wikipedia/commons/thumb/9/93/Bangladesh_religions.png/350px-Bangladesh_religions.png **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 21]	**Credit:** https://4a4b.wikispaces.com/7+unit+7...desh+sweatshop **Source:** http://asia.media.fashionmag.com/m/23be/67ad/8609/4bcb/8adb/ce9e/4ce5/f268/8a4e/a112/510x800/a112.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

This page titled 9.3: Pakistan and Bangladesh (2 Days) is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by CK12 via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

9.4: India (2 Days)

Chapter Challenges

1. Outline the basic activities of British colonialism that affected the realm.
2. Understand the basic qualities of the rural and urban characteristics of India.
3. Summarize the main economic activities and economic conditions in India.
4. Describe the differences between various geographic regions of India.
5. Explain the measures the Indian government has taken to protect the biodiversity of India.

Learning Objectives

TEKS Regional Unit 09 South Asia: Chapter 9.4 India

WG.2A Describe the human and physical characteristics of the same regions at different periods of time to evaluate relationships between past events and current conditions.

WG.2B Explain how changes in societies have led to diverse uses of physical features.

WG,4C Explain the influence of climate on the distribution of biomes in different regions.

WG.6B Explain the processes that have caused changes in settlement patterns, including urbanization, transportation, access to and availability of resources, and economic activities.

WG.10D Compare global trade patterns over time and examine the implications of globalization, including outsourcing and free trade zones.

WG.11C Assess how changes in climate, resources, and infrastructure (technology, transportation, and communication) affect the location and patterns of economic activities.

WG.22B Generate summaries, generalizations, and thesis statements supported by evidence.

WG/22C Use geographic terminology correctly.

WG.22D Use standard grammar, spelling, sentence structure, and punctuation.

TEKS and ELPS for Regional World Geography Unit 09--South Asia from TEKS Resource System.

India



Map of India

India and Colonialism

India is considered the world's largest democracy. As the historic geography and the development patterns of India are examined, the complexities of this Hindu state surface. European colonizers of South Asia included the Dutch, Portuguese, French, and, finally, the British. In search of raw materials, cheap labor, and expanding markets, Europeans used their advancements in technology to take over and dominate the regional industrial base.

The East India Company was a base of British operations in South Asia and evolved to become the administrative government of the region by 1857. The British government created an administrative structure to govern South Asia. Their centralized government in India employed many Sikhs in positions of the administration to help rule over the largely Muslim and Hindu population. The English language was introduced as a lingua franca for the colonies.

In truth, colonialism did more than establish the current boundaries of South Asia. Besides bringing the region under one central government and providing a lingua franca, India's colonizers developed the main port cities of Bombay, Calcutta, and Madras (now called Mumbai, Kolkata, and Chennai, respectively. The names of the port cities have been reverted to their original Hindi forms).

The port cities were access points for connecting goods with markets between India and Europe. Mumbai became the largest city and the economic center of India. In 1912, to exploit the interior of India, the British moved their colonial capital from Kolkata, which was the port for the densely populated Ganges River basin, to New Delhi. Chennai was a port access to southern India and the core of the Dravidian ethnic south.

Britain exploited India by extending railroad lines from the three main port cities into the hinterlands, to transport materials from the interior back to the port for export. The Indian Railroad is one of the largest rail networks on Earth. The problem with colonial railroads was that they did not necessarily connect cities with other cities. The British colonizers connected rail lines between the hinterland and the ports for resource exploitation and export of commercial goods. Today, the same port cities act as focal points for the import/export activity of globalization and remain core industrial centers for South Asia. They are now well connected with the other cities of India.

Goa is the smallest state of modern-day India. In the 16th century, it was first encountered by Portuguese traders, who annexed it shortly thereafter to become a colony of Portugal, which it was for the next 450 years. Goa was one of the longest-held colonial possessions in the world and was not annexed by India until 1961. By the mid-1800s, most of the population of this tiny area had been forcibly converted to Christianity.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org



Goa is a state in India within the coastal region known as the Konkan, in Western India. It is bounded by Maharashtra to the north and Karnataka to the east and south, with the Arabian Sea forming its Western coast. It is India's smallest state by area and the fourth smallest by population.

Although many Hindu traditions survived the colonial period, and Hindu holidays are celebrated here, Goa is known for its Christian holiday celebrations, especially Christmas and Easter. The cathedral and secular architecture in many of the historic buildings of Goa are European in style, reflecting its Portuguese origins.



Hindu-Christianity Unity Memorial at Miramar Beach in Goa, India.

The People of India

Contrasts in India are explicitly evident in the regional differences of its human geography. The north-south contrasts are apparent through the lingua franca and ethnic divisions. The main lingua franca in the north is Hindi. In the Dravidian-dominated south, the main lingua franca is English. The densely populated core region along the Ganges River, anchored on each end by Delhi/New Delhi and Kolkata, has traditionally been called the heartland of India.

The south is anchored by the port city of Chennai and the large city of Bangalore. Chennai has been a traditional industrial center. The industrial infrastructure has shifted to more modern facilities in other cities, giving over to a “rustbelt” syndrome for portions of the Chennai region. India is a dynamic country, with shifts and changes constantly occurring. Any attempt to stereotype India into cultural regions would be problematic.



Hindi is the official language of the government, and both Hindi and English are the lingua franca.

In 2017, India had almost 1.3 billion people, which is about one-sixth of the human population of the earth. An 80 percent majority follow Hindu beliefs. About 13 percent of the population is Muslim. Thirteen may not seem like a high percentage, but in this case it equates to about 140 million people. This is equivalent to all the Muslims who reside in the countries of Iraq, Saudi Arabia, Syria, and Egypt combined. India is sometimes called the third-largest Muslim country in the world, after Indonesia and Pakistan, because of its large Muslim minority.

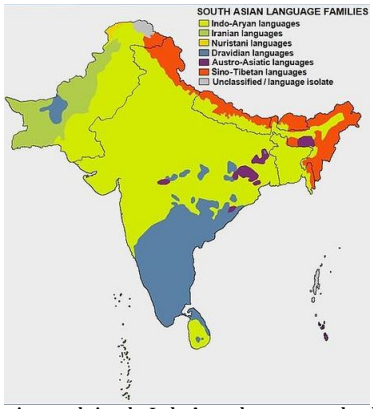
Population trends for major religious groups in India (1951–2011)

LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

Religious group	Population % **1951**	Population % **1961**	Population % **1971**	Population % **1981**	Population % **1991**	Population % **2001**	Population % **2011**
Hinduism	84.1%	83.45%	82.73%	82.30%	81.53%	80.46%	79.80%
Islam	9.8%	10.69%	11.21%	11.75%	12.61%	13.43%	14.23%
Christianity	2.3%	2.44%	2.60%	2.44%	2.32%	2.34%	2.30%
Sikhism	1.79%	1.79%	1.89%	1.92%	1.94%	1.87%	1.72%
Buddhism	0.74%	0.74%	0.70%	0.70%	0.77%	0.77%	0.70%
Jainism	0.46%	0.46%	0.48%	0.47%	0.40%	0.41%	0.37%
Zoroastrianism	0.13%	0.09%	0.09%	0.09%	0.08%	0.06%	n/a
Others/Religion not specified	0.43%	0.43%	0.41%	0.42%	0.44%	0.72%	0.9%

Source

India essentially has two lingua francas: English and Hindi, of which Hindi is the official language of the Indian government. India has 28 states and 14 recognized major languages. Many different languages are spoken in rural areas. The languages of northern India are mainly based on the Indo-European language family. Languages used in the south are mainly from the Dravidian language family. A few regions that border Tibet in the north use languages from the Sino-Tibetan language family.



Languages spoken in India belong to several language families, the major ones being the Indo-Aryan languages spoken by 76.5 percent of Indians and the Dravidian languages spoken by 20.5 percent of Indians. Languages spoken by the remaining 3 percent of the population belong to the Austroasiatic, Sino-Tibetan, Tai-Kadai, and a few other minor language families. India has the world's second highest number of languages after Papua New Guinea.

First, Second, and Third Languages by Number of Speakers in India (2001 Census)

Language	**First language speakers**	**First language speakers as a percentage of total population**	**Second language speakers**	**Third language speakers**	**Total speakers**	**T t**
Hindi	422,048,642	41.03	98,207,180	31,160,696	551,416,518	5
English	226,449	0.02	86,125,221	38,993,066	125,344,736	1
Bengali	83,369,769	8.10	6,637,222	1,108,088	91,115,079	8
Telugu	74,002,856	7.19	9,723,626	1,266,019	84,992,501	8
Marathi	71,936,894	6.99	9,546,414	2,701,498	84,184,806	8
Tamil	60,793,814	5.91	4,992,253	956,335	66,742,402	6
Urdu	51,536,111	5.01	6,535,489	1,007,912	59,079,512	5
Kannada	37,924,011	3.69	11,455,287	1,396,428	50,775,726	4
Gujarati	46,091,617	4.48	3,476,355	703,989	50,271,961	4
Odia	33,017,446	3.21	3,272,151	319,525	36,609,122	3
Malayalam	33,066,392	3.21	499,188	195,885	33,761,465	3
Sanskrit	14,135	<0.01	1,234,931	3,742,223	4,991,289	0

Source

Urban versus Rural

Rural and urban life within the Indian Subcontinent varies according to wealth and opportunity. While concentrated in specific areas across the landscape, in general the population in rural areas is discontinuous and spread thinly. In urban areas, the populations are very concentrated with many times the population density found in rural areas. India has six world-class cities: Kolkata, Mumbai, Delhi, Chennai, Bangalore, and Hyderabad.

Top 25 Cities in India by Population

Rank	City	Population (2011)	Population (2001)	State or union territory
1	**Mumbai**	12,442,373	11,978,450	Maharashtra
2	**Delhi**	11,034,555	9,879,172	Delhi
3	**Bangalore**	8,443,675	4,301,326	Karnataka
4	**Hyderabad**	6,993,262	3,637,483	Telangana
5	**Ahmedabad**	5,577,940	3,520,085	Gujarat
6	**Chennai**	4,646,732	4,343,645	Tamil Nadu
7	**Kolkata**	4,496,694	4,572,876	West Bengal
8	**Surat**	4,467,797	2,433,835	Gujarat
9	**Pune**	3,124,458	2,538,473	Maharashtra
10	**Jaipur**	3,046,163	2,322,575	Rajasthan
11	**Lucknow**	2,817,105	2,185,927	Uttar Pradesh
12	**Kanpur**	2,765,348	2,551,337	Uttar Pradesh
13	**Nagpur**	2,405,665	2,052,066	Maharashtra
14	**Visakhapatnam**	2,035,922	982,904	Andhra Pradesh
15	**Indore**	1,960,631	1,474,968	Madhya Pradesh
16	**Thane**	1,818,872	1,262,551	Maharashtra
17	**Bhopal**	1,798,218	1,437,354	Madhya Pradesh
18	**Pimpri-Chinchwad**	1,729,359	1,012,472	Maharashtra
19	**Patna**	1,683,200	1,366,444	Bihar
20	**Vadodara**	1,666,703	1,306,227	Gujarat
21	**Ghaziabad**	1,636,068	968,256	Uttar Pradesh
22	**Ludhiana**	1,613,878	1,398,467	Punjab
23	**Coimbatore**	1,601,438	930,882	Tamil Nadu
24	**Agra**	1,585,704	1,275,134	Uttar Pradesh
25	**Madurai**	1,561,129	928,869	Tamil Nadu

Source

India's interior is mainly composed of villages. In rural villages, much of the economy is based on subsistence strategies, primarily agriculture and small cottage industries. The lifestyle is focused on the agricultural cycles of soil preparation, sowing, and harvesting as well as tending animals, particularly water buffalo, cattle, goats, and sheep. About 65 percent of the population lives in rural areas and makes a living in agriculture.

About 35 percent of the population—which is equal to the entire US population—is urbanized. India is rapidly progressing toward urbanization and industrialization. Changes in technology, however, tend to be slow in dispersing to the rural villages. More than half the villages in India do not have road access for motor vehicles. For residents of those villages, walking, animal carts, and trains are the main methods of transportation. Agricultural technology is primitive. Diffusion of new ideas, products, or methods can be slow. Modern communication technology is helping connect these remote regions.



Plowing the field the traditional way in Manthralaya, AP, India.

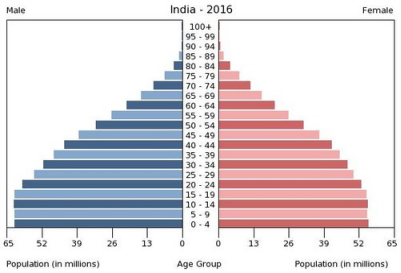
India's cities are dynamic places, with millions of people, cars, buses, and trucks all found in the streets. In many areas of urban centers, traffic may be stopped to await the movement of a sacred cow or a donkey or bullock cart loaded with merchandise. Indian cities are growing at an unsustainable rate. Overcrowded and congested, the main cities are modernizing and trying to keep up with global trends.



A crowd of people on a street in Mumbai, India.

Traditionally, family size was large. Large family size results in a swell of young people migrating to urban areas to seek greater opportunities and advantages. In modern times, family size has been reduced to about three children, an accomplishment that did not come easily because of the religious beliefs of most of India's people. If current trends continue, India will overtake China as the most populous country in the world in about 50 years.

India's Population Pyramid



Age Structure of India: 0-14 years: 27.34 percent (male 186,087,665/female 164,398,204); 15-24 years: 17.9 percent (male 121,879,786/female 107,583,437); 25-54 years: 41.08 percent (male 271,744,709/female 254,834,569); 55-64 years: 7.45 percent (male 47,846,122/female 47,632,532); 65 years and over: 6.24 percent (male 37,837,801/female 42,091,086)

The level of official governmental control is usually different in an urban setting from what it is in the rural areas. There may be more police or military personnel in areas of heavy traffic or in urban areas that need extra control. A central feature of many Indian cities is an older central city that represents the protected part of the city.

In Delhi, for example, New Delhi represents the new construction of government buildings that was begun during the British occupation of the region as part of the British Empire. Old Delhi represents the old markets, government buildings, palaces, fortresses, and mosques that were built during the Mogul Empire, between the mid-1500s and the mid-1800s.



The front view of National Museum New Delhi India.

These older parts of the cities, particularly the markets, are bustling with activities, merchants, shoppers, cab drivers, and pedal and motor rickshaws. Rickshaws are either bicycle-driven cabs or cabs based on enclosed motor scooters.



Carts parked on the spice market, Khari Baoli Road in Old Delhi, India.

In urban areas, there is a socioeconomic hierarchy of a small group of people who are wealthy and can afford all the amenities we associate with modern life—electricity, clean water, television, computers, and the like. One of the things that characterize modern Indian cities is an expanding middle class. Many young people see the kinds of material goods that are available in the West and are creating job markets and opportunities to allow them to reach or maintain this type of lifestyle. One of the major markets to support this burgeoning middle class is the information technology field, as well as outsourcing in many of the cities of peninsular India.

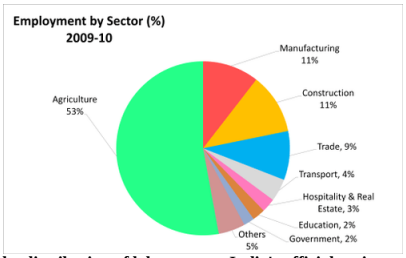
India is a country with considerable contrast between the wealthy urban elites and the poor rural villagers, many of whom move to the cities and live in slums and work for little pay. Low labor costs have enabled Indian cities to industrialize in many ways similar to Western cities, complete with computers, Internet services, and other modern communications services.

India's growing middle class is a product of educational opportunities and technological advancements. This available skilled labor base has allowed India's industrial and information sectors to take advantage of economic opportunities in the global marketplace to grow and expand their activities. Development within India is augmented by outsourcing activities by American and European corporations to India. Service center jobs created by business process outsourcing (BPO) are in high demand by skilled Indian workers.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

India's Economic Situation

In the past decade, India has possessed the second fastest growing economy in the world, after China. India's economy continues to rapidly expand and have a tremendous impact on the world economy. In spite of the size of the economy, India's population has a low average per capita income. Approximately one-fourth of the people living in India live in poverty. The World Bank classifies India as a low-income economy.



This chart shows the distribution of labor among India's official major economic categories.

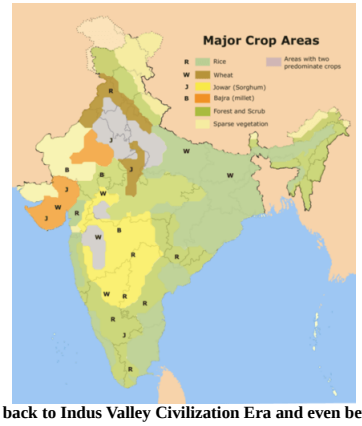
India has followed a central economic model for most of its development since it declared independence. The central government has exerted strict control over private sector economic development, foreign trade, and foreign investment. Through various economic reforms since the 1990s, India is beginning to open up these markets by reducing government control on foreign investment and trade. Many publicly owned businesses are being privatized. Globalization efforts have been vigorous in India. There has been substantial growth in information services, health care, and the industrial sector



Mumbai is the entertainment, fashion and commercial center of India.

The economy is extremely diverse and has focused on agriculture, handicrafts, textiles, manufacturing, some industry, and a vast number of services. A 60 percent majority of the population earns its income directly from agriculture and agriculture-related services. Land holdings by individual farmers are small, often less than five acres. When combined with the inadequate use of modern farming technologies, small land holdings become inadequately productive and impractical.

Monsoons are critical for the success of India's agricultural crops during any given season. Because the rainfall of many agricultural areas is tied to the monsoon rains of only a few months, a weak or delayed rainfall can have disastrous effects on the agricultural economy. Agricultural products include commercial crops such as coffee and a variety of spices. An essential product for perfume and incense is sandalwood, harvested primarily in the dense forests of the state of Karnataka, in southwestern India. Bamboo, rice, and lentils provide an important basis for the local economy as well.



The history of Agriculture in India dates back to Indus Valley Civilization Era and even before that in some parts of Southern India.

Over the last two decades, information technology and related services are transforming India's economy and society. In turn, India is transforming the world's information technologies in terms of production and service as well as the export of skilled workers in financial, computer hardware, software engineering, and software services. Manufacturing and industry are becoming a more important part of India's economy as it begins to expand.

Manufacturing and industry account for almost one-third of the gross domestic product (GDP) and contribute jobs to almost one-fifth of the total workforce. Major economic sectors such as manufacturing, industry, biotechnology, telecommunications, aviation, shipbuilding, and retail are exhibiting strong growth rates.

A large number of educated young people who are fluent in English are changing India into a "back office" target for global outsourcing for customer services. These customer services focus on computer-related products but also include service-related industries and online sales companies. The level of outsourcing of information activity to India has been substantial.

Any work that can be conducted over the Internet or telephone can be outsourced to anywhere in the world that has high-speed communication links. Countries that are attractive to BPO are countries where the English language is prominent, where employment costs are low, and where there is an adequate labor base of skilled or educated workers that can be trained in the services required. India has been the main destination for BPO activity from the United States. Firms with service work or computer programming are drawn to India because English is a lingua franca and India has an adequate skilled labor base to draw from.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org



About 2.8 million people work in outsourcing sector in India.

Tourism has always been an important part of India's economy and has been focused on the unique natural environments as well as historical cities, monuments, and temples found throughout the country. Of particular importance are the Mogul-period tombs, palaces, and mosques in Delhi, Agra, and Jaipur, India's "Golden Triangle" of tourism.

India is a country of contrasts. Scenic beauty abounds from the Eastern and Western Ghats to the high mountains of the Himalayas. The monsoon rains provide abundant agricultural crops for densely populated regions such as the Ganges River basin. On the other hand, places such as the Thar Desert are sparsely inhabited.

There is a wide gap between the wealthy elite and the massive numbers of people who live in poverty. Mumbai has some of the largest slums in Asia, yet it is the financial capital of India, teeming with economic activity. As incomes rise for the middle class in India, the price of automobiles becomes more accessible. On the downside, an escalation in the numbers of motor vehicles in use tends to lead to an escalation in the levels of air pollution and traffic congestion.

Similarly, an expansion of transportation systems increases the use of fossil fuels. India is a major competitor for fossil fuels exported from the Persian Gulf and other Organization of Petroleum Exporting Countries (OPEC) sources. The continued industrialization and urbanization in India foretell an increase in demand for energy. Rising energy costs and demand, combined with economic growth, have caused a serious problem for India.

Many areas will be without power as they are shut off the power grid for hours or days, a process known as load-shedding. This allows industry and manufacturing to use energy resources during peak times. In general, India is poor in natural gas and oil resources and is heavily dependent on coal and foreign oil imports. India is rich in alternative energy resources, such as solar, wind, and biofuels. However, alternative energy resources have not been sufficiently developed.

Vehicle Manufacturing



The Nano is considered the world's most inexpensive car.

An example of India's growing economic milieu is motor vehicle manufacturing. India's vehicle manufacturing base is expanding rapidly. Vehicle manufacturing companies from North America, Europe, and East Asia are all active in India, and India also has its own share of vehicle manufacturing companies. For example, Mumbai-based Tata Motors Ltd. is the country's foremost vehicle production corporation and it claims to be the second-largest commercial vehicle manufacturer in the world.

Tata Motors is India's largest designer and manufacturer of commercial buses and trucks, and it also produces the most inexpensive car in the world, the Tata Nano. Tata Motors manufactures mid-sized and larger automobiles, too. The company has expanded operations to Spain, Thailand, South Korea, and the United Kingdom. The company is an example of an Indian-based international corporation that is a force in the global marketplace. In 2010, India was recognized as a major competitor with Thailand, South Korea, and Japan as the fourth main exporter of autos in Asia.

The Indian Cinema

Cinema makes up a large portion of the entertainment sector in India. India's cinema industry is often referred to as "Bollywood," a combination of Bombay and Hollywood. Technically, Bollywood is only the segment of the Indian cinema that is based out of Bombay (Mumbai), but the title is sometimes misleadingly used to refer to the entire movie industry in India.

Bollywood is the leading movie maker in India and has a world-class film production center. In the past few years, India has been producing as many as one thousand films annually. The highest annual output for the US film industry is only about two-thirds of what India produces. According to the Guinness Book of World Records, India's city of Hyderabad has the most extensive film production center in the world. The Telugu film industry operates the studio in Hyderabad.



Bollywood actresses in Mumbai.

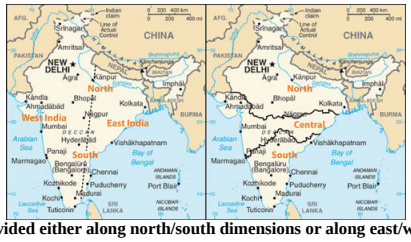
Indian films are produced in more than a dozen languages and appeal to a wide domestic and international audience. Indian movies range from long epic productions with stories within stories to dramas, musicals, and theatrical presentations. Their popularity extends beyond South Asia. Indian movies with modest dress, lack of explicit sexual scenes, and a focus on drama are popular in places such as Egypt, the Middle East, and other African countries.

cK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

Movie stars are energetically promoted and enjoy celebrity in India, as is the case with the entertainment industry in the United States and Europe. The cinema is part of the cultural experience in Indian society. Urban life in India reserves a large presence for the entertainment industry, particularly the Indian film industry. One of the prime artistic endeavors in urban India is movie posters depicting all the glory of the latest Bollywood movie. Most of these colorful posters are painted by hand and they tend to be large. Some are several stories high.

India: East and West

India makes up the largest physical area of the South Asia realm. Another way of looking at the physical and human landscapes of India is to study spatial characteristics. Additionally, the economic side of the equation can be illustrated by dividing India between east and west according to economic development patterns. To do this, on a map of India draw an imaginary line from the border with Nepal in the north, near Kanpur, to the Polk Strait border with Sri Lanka in the south. This division of India illustrates two sides of India's economic pattern: an economically progressive West India and an economically stagnant East India.



India can be divided either along north/south dimensions or along east/west dimensions.

The progressive western side of India is anchored by Mumbai and its surrounding industrial community. Mumbai is the economic giant of India with the country's main financial markets. It has been a magnet for high-tech firms and manufacturing. Mumbai's port provides access to global markets and is connected to international trade networks. Auto manufacturing, the film industry, and computer firms all have major centers in the large urban metropolitan areas of the west.

Large industrial cities such as Bangalore and Hyderabad have established themselves as high-tech production centers, attracting international business in the computer industry and the information sector. Chemical processing has been ongoing in Bhopal, which is noted for an environmental disaster, a gas leak in 1984 that resulted in the deaths of as many as 10,000 people.

The nation's capital is located in New Delhi, which borders the massive city of (Old) Delhi. The western half of India has been progressing along a pattern with a positive economic outlook that views the global community outside of India as a partner in its success.

The eastern half of India has not been as prosperous as the west in its economic growth. The renowned city of Kolkata has traditionally anchored the eastern sector, but its factories have deteriorated into rustbelt status with aging and outdated heavy industries. The high-intensity labor activities of textile and domestic goods manufacturing are not as economically viable as they were in the past.

The stagnant economic scene in the east is signified by the low average income levels of many of the states in the eastern region. Neighboring Bangladesh offers little in support of economic growth, and Myanmar, another neighbor to the east, has its own set of problems and lacks support for East India. The eastern half of India does not have strong partnerships with the global economy found in the west and thus relies more on internal resources for survival.

India: North and South

There are differences in the geographic patterns between the northern and southern halves of India as well as between the eastern and western halves—depending on the criteria used to compare them. Climate patterns, for example, are more diverse in the north, with a wide range of temperatures throughout the seasons. Winter temperatures in the mountainous north are cold and summer temperatures in the Thar Desert can be extremely high.

Southern India has a more moderate range of temperatures throughout the year. The far north has high mountains. The south has only the low-lying Eastern and Western Ghats. The north has the extensive Ganges River basin. The south has different drainage networks based on the plateaus of the region.

Besides the physical aspects, there are cultural differences between the north and south as well. India is a complex societal mix of many ethnic groups, languages, and traditions. There are some recognizable trends that have been commonly stated between the northern and southern parts of India. The north is portrayed as a competitive, faster-paced society. The south has been portrayed as more relaxed and less competitive.

Indo-European languages are mainly spoken in the north and Dravidian languages are predominantly spoken in the south. Hindi is more commonly the lingua franca of the north, while English is more frequently the lingua franca of the south. People in the north are of Indo-Aryan descent, while the people in the south have a Dravidian heritage. Hinduism dominates all of India, but the north has a wider diversity of religions, such as Sikhism, Buddhism, and Islam, practiced by a large number of people. The south has a substantial Christian population along its west coast.

Food is an important part of the culture of societies, and there are clear distinctions between the cuisine of the north and of the south in India. Indian cooking is primarily vegetarian, emphasizing aspects of Hinduism. However, many dishes, particularly in North India, contain goat, chicken, lamb, fish, and other meats. Beef is not eaten by Hindus, while pork and some species of fish are not traditionally eaten by Muslims.

North India has more wheat-based products and less rice. Their dishes are prepared with spices and herbs, including chili peppers. Northern Indian food is characterized by its use of dairy products, such as yogurt, milk, homemade cheeses, and clarified butter. Onions, ghee, and spices are the common base for different types of curries. Griddles are used for preparing different types of flat bread, like chapattis, naan, and kulcha. Rice, lentils, and chickpeas are a staple part of the diet in North India.



North Indian cuisine is a part of Indian cuisine, from the region of Northern India which includes the Pakistani provinces. This dish is called Boondi Ka Laddu.

Food in the southern parts of India includes more rice as a staple, and seafood is common along the coastal areas. Coconut oil is used as a basis for cooking. Sambar, a stew made of peas and vegetables, is an important staple of the region. Rice and idlis (a type of cake or bread made from steaming fermented black lentils) is a staple in the cuisine as well. Chili peppers are also common in South Indian cooking.

https://k12.libretexts.org/@go/page/1991



Sambar is a lentil-based vegetable stew or chowder popular in South Indian cuisine.

Biodiversity and the Environment

Because of population growth and resource depletion, India struggles with major environmental problems. Water pollution along the Ganges is severe and affects the largest concentration of people in India. India is the second-largest consumer of coal in the world, coal that is mainly burned to produce electricity. Burning coal adds significantly to air pollution. A rise in the number of vehicles in use, combined with few emission controls, destroys the air quality. Deforestation also adds to the issues of environmental degradation in India.

India has a number of rare animal species that need habitat if they are going to survive. A few of the larger animals include the Indian Rhinoceros, Clouded Leopard, Indian Leopard, Snow Leopard, Asiatic Lion, Bengal Tiger, Asian Water Buffalo, Asian Elephant, Striped Hyena, and the Red Panda. Many species are endangered or threatened along with many other lesser-known organisms. The high human population growth throughout South Asia places a strain on the natural habitat of wild animals. Habitat loss caused by human development makes holding on to the wide array of biodiversity difficult.



The Indian Leopard is a near-threatened species that once lived throughout South Asia.

India has instituted measures designed to preserve its biodiversity. The Indian government has created sanctuaries for threatened or endangered species. National parks were established before India declared independence and were substantially expanded in recent decades. In 1972, The Wildlife Protection Act was instituted to create critical habitat for tigers and other rare species. There are hundreds of protected wildlife areas and 15 biosphere reserves in India. Four of the biospheres were created in conjunction with the World Network of Biosphere Reserves.

The Indian government has established protected areas throughout the country, many of which are in the highland regions and the northern mountains. For example, the Gir Wildlife Sanctuary, including an area preserved for Asian Lions, is located on the Kathiawar Peninsula north of Mumbai, which juts out into the Arabian Sea. India is the only place left with Asian Lions in the wild. Tigers, elephants, rhinos, and leopards can be found in the sanctuaries.

The country has about 92 national parks, which are also home to rare wildlife species, and more than 350 wildlife sanctuaries of all sizes. There are about 28 tiger reserves in India. The country also has a number of marine reserves and protected areas along its coastlines.

The efforts of the Indian government to protect the country's biodiversity constitute an admirable environmental undertaking. The government has stepped up law enforcement efforts to combat poaching, which is a major cause of the decrease in numbers of rare species. Poachers kill animals such as tigers, leopards, elephants, and rhinos for their hides, horns, or body parts, which are sold on the black market in Asia for large sums of money.

Many of the rare, threatened, or endangered species of India would not have a chance of survival without the government efforts to protect and provide for them. Balancing finding resources for rapid human population growth with wildlife management will continue to be a challenge in the years ahead for India and all countries of the planet

Key Takeaways

- Colonialism had a tremendous impact on South Asia and its people. Colonial development patterns were implemented to control the people and to extract resources, not necessarily to benefit the realm.
- India has a wide disparity between its poor rural areas with agricultural economies and its wealthier bustling cities with expanding business sectors.
- Various urban centers of India have positioned themselves well to take advantage of the global economy and expand their manufacturing and industrial base. India is becoming a major manufacturing country for vehicles and high-tech industries.
- There are noticeable economic differences between the more progressive Western India and the stagnant economic conditions of Eastern India. There is also a noticeable cultural difference between the North and the South in India in the categories of language, ethnicity, food, and society.
- The Indian government has created national parks, wildlife sanctuaries, and game reserves to help protect rare, threatened, or endangered species.

Vocabulary Terms

LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

Aryan	a member of an Indo-European people who crossed into India around 1500 B.C.
	The religious and moral duties of the Hindus
	Ancient Indian culture, dating back to 2500 B.C., that included the people of the entire Indus River region
	To focus the mind inward in order to find spiritual awareness
	To move from one place to settle in another
	A person who spreads his or her religious beliefs to others
	A leader who used nonviolence to oppose the British rule of India
	A strong wind that blows across East Asia at certain times of the year
	The lasting peace that Buddhist seek by giving up selfish desires
Siddhartha Gautama	an Indian prince who founded Buddhism; also known as Buddha.
	A large landmass that juts out from a continent

Applying Knowledge

Discussion and Study Questions

1. Outline the main ways in which British colonialism impacted South Asia.
2. What are the three main language families in India? What is the lingua franca?
3. List the main qualities that are different between the rural and urban areas of India.
4. How did British colonizers transport resources from the hinterland to the port cities for export back to Great Britain? How has this system changed since 1947?
5. Explain the various ways in which the rapid population growth is impacting India.
6. Why is India a major target for BPO?
7. List various ways the Indian film industry impacts India and the world.
8. How is economic development different between Western India and Eastern India?
9. Outline some cultural differences between the North and the South in India.
10. How has the government of India worked to protect the biodiversity of the natural environment? What are some of the animals that are being protected?

Real-World Geography Exercise

1. Using Google Maps, complete the following activities:
   a. Locate each place on the bulleted list below.
   b. Find the nearest city with an international airport in proximity to each location on the bulleted list below.
   c. Calculate the distance and travel time by plane to each city from the Phoenix Sky Harbor International Airport in Phoenix, Arizona.
2. Using NASA Latitude and Longitude Finder, determine the latitude and longitude for each location on the bulleted list below.
3. Be prepared to share and discuss your answers.

- Agra
- Bangalore
- Bombay (Mumbai)
- Bhopal
- Calcutta (Kolkata)
- Delhi
- Goa
- Hyderabad
- Jaipur
- Kathiawar Peninsula
- Madras (Chennai)
- New Delhi

Current Events

Geography Education Scoop It

The Influence of Indian Languages On English

Why Gold Is Still the Preferred Investment Option for Indians?

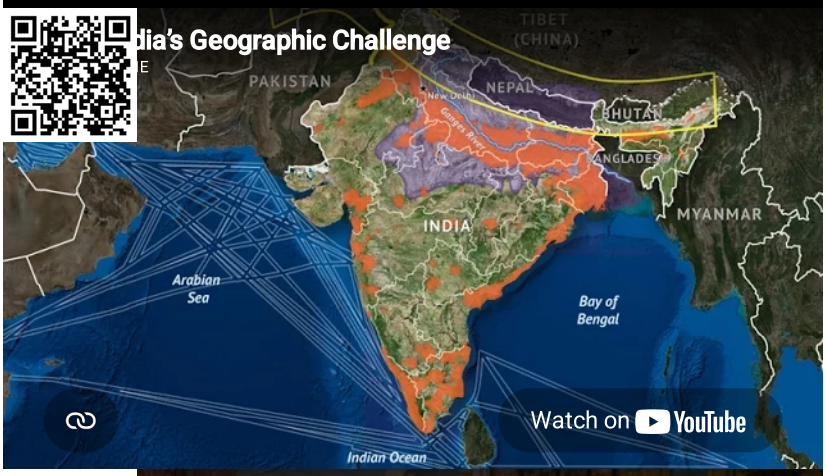
Mumbai: What India's Landmark LGBT Ruling Means for Bollywood

Top Ten Most Richest Celebrities in Bollywood

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org


dian Agriculture Faces Complex Problems
NewsHour
an American public broadcast service.
Watch on YouTube


dia's Geographic Challenge
TIBET (CHINA)
PAKISTAN
NEPAL
BHUTAN
INDIA
MYANMAR
Arabian Sea
Bay of Bengal
Indian Ocean
Watch on YouTube


ny is India growing so fast? | CNBC Explains
BC International
CNBC EXPLAINS
WHY IS INDIA GROWING SO FAST?
Watch on YouTube



Helpful Websites for the Study of Geography

Canadian Encyclopedia is an encyclopedia funded by the Canadian government covering all branches of knowledge. Their scholarly collection includes interactive materials.

CIA World Factbook provides information on the people, history, government, economy, energy, geography, communications, transportation, military, and transnational issues for the world's entities.

Congress.gov is a US government website where you can find federal legislation, past and present, as well as information about the US legal system.

Drug Enforcement Administration (DEA) is a government agency website that provides current news, resources, topics of interest, information about drugs, careers in the DEA, and a tip hotline.

Library of Congress is the largest library in the world and provides manuscripts, files, information, pictures, and videos.

NASA Earth Observatory (NEO) is a US government agency website that allows users to search for and retrieve satellite images of Earth.

National Archives is a US government website that provides historical documents, photos, records, publications, and educator resources.

National Oceanic and Atmospheric Association (NOAA) is a US government agency website that provides weather-related information and ocean research.

National Map is a website by the United States Geological Survey and other federal, state, and local agencies that delivers topographic information for the United States.

NationMaster is a massive central data source and a handy way to graphically compare nations.

Real-Time World Air Quality Index is a website that measures most locations in the world for air pollution in real time.

StateMaster is a unique statistical database, which allows you to research and compare a multitude of different data on US states.

United Nations (UN) is an international organization founded in 1945 and made up of 193 member states. The UN maintains international peace and security, protects human rights, delivers humanitarian aid, promotes sustainable development, and upholds international law.

United States Census Bureau is a US government agency that provides a population clock, data, surveys, statistics, a library with information and infographics, news about the economy, and much more.

United States Geological Survey (USGS) is a US government agency website that provides scientific information about the natural hazards that threaten lives, the natural resources we rely on, the health of our ecosystems and environment, and the impacts of climate and land-use change.

Whitehouse.gov is a US government website that provides the latest presidential news, information about the budget, policy, defense, and many more topics.

World Health Organization (WHO) is under the United Nations and provides leadership on matters critical to health, shapes the research agenda on health, and monitors the health situation and assessing health trends around the world. Their website provides information on the state of health around the world, outbreaks, current health news, and more.

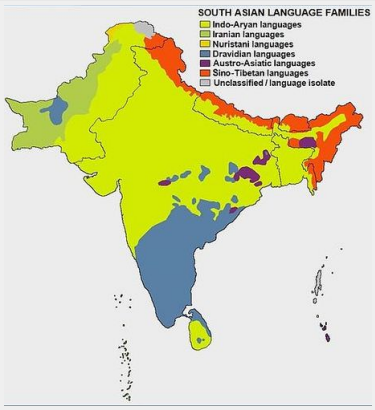
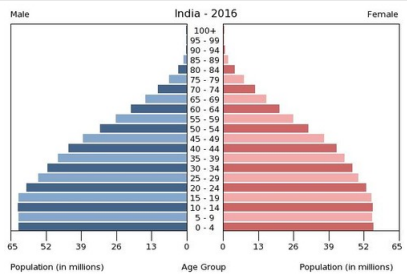
LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

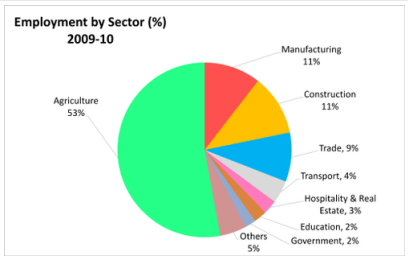
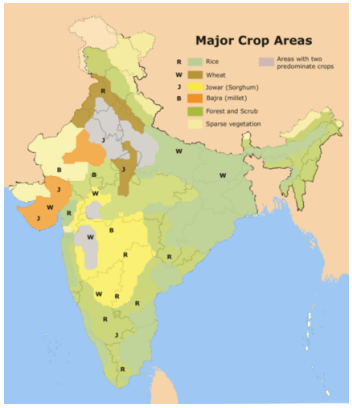
World Trade Organization (WTO) is an intergovernmental organization that regulates international trade. The website provides information on the history of the multilateral trading system, featured

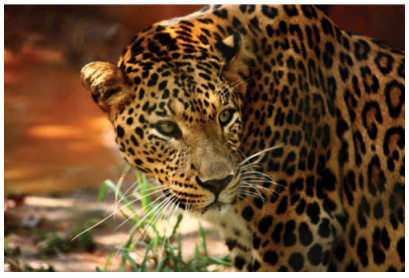
LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

videos, news and events, trade topics, and more.

Image	Reference	Attributions
	[Figure 1]	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/in.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 2]	**Credit:** Inshaanshah62 **Source:** https://upload.wikimedia.org/Wikipedia/en/d/df/Districts_and_Sub-Districts_of_Goa.png **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 3]	**Credit:** Nikkul at English Wikipedia [CC BY-SA 3.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0)], from Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Goa_Memorial.JPG **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 4]	**Credit:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeograp...ter/9-4-india/ **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/ac0ce0e718be93711fac2c6321a4561d.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

	[Figure 5]	**Credit:** By The original uploader was Kitkatcrazy at English Wikipedia. [GFDL (http://www.gnu.org/copyleft/fdl.html) or CC-BY-SA-3.0 (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0/)], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:South_Asian_Language_Families.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 6]	**Credit:** By Ananth BS (originally posted to Flickr as Annadatha) [CC BY 2.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/2.0)], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://upload.wikimedia.org/Wikipedia/commons/4/41/India_Farming.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 7]	**Credit:** Reuben Strayer **Source:** https://c1.staticflickr.com/5/4057/4292513198_2847894743_b.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 8]	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/in.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 9]	**Credit:** By Miya.m (Miya.m's file) [GFDL (http://www.gnu.org/copyleft/fdl.html) or CC BY-SA 3.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0)], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:India_national_museum_01.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

	[Figure 11]	**Credit:** By M Tracy Hunter [CC BY-SA 4.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0)], from Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:2010_Percent_labor_employment_in_India_by_its_economic_sectors.png **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 12]	**Credit:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeograp...ter/9-4-india/ **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/efee7dab89fdaa450404739c40161cde.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 13]	**Credit:** By This Image was created by User:Amog.If you would like to use the image please mail me at amogrr@gmail.com [CC BY-SA 2.5 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/2.5) or CC BY-SA 2.5 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/2.5)], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Major_crop_areas_India.png **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 14]	**Credit:** By Pithwilds [CC BY-SA 3.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0)], from Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Gurgoan5.JPG **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 15]	**Credit:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeograp...ter/9-4-india/ **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/f2a461d555fb6fe3c71588c4045677c1.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

	[Figure 17]	**Credit:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeograp...ter/9-4-india/ **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/dc7a17b0d5ae8d35de01620c1df4e768.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 18]	**Credit:** http://indiancookingmanual.com/2017/...ondi-ka-laddu/ **Source:** http://indiancookingmanual.com/wp-content/uploads/2017/03/20170130_122035.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 19]	**Credit:** By Samphotography [CC BY-SA 4.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0)], from Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Indian_Sambar.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 20]	**Credit:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeograp...ter/9-4-india/ **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/c1c212b971b1098ad5bc5c98a53cc8a3.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

This page titled 9.4: India (2 Days) is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by CK12 via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

9.5: Religions of South Asia (2 Days)

Chapter Challenges

1. Outline the basic religions of the realm. Name the largest minority religion.
2. Understand the basic structure and concepts of Hinduism, including the caste system.
3. Describe how Buddhism differs from Hinduism.
4. Summarize religions other than Buddhism and Hinduism that are prominent in India.

Learning Objectives

TEKS Regional Unit 09 South India: Chapter 9.5 Religions of South Asia

WG.16B Describe elements of culture, including language, religion, beliefs and customs, institutions, and technologies.

WG.17A Describe and compare patterns of culture such as language, religion, land use, education, and customs that make specific regions of the world distinctive. make specific regions of the world distinctive.

WG.17B Describe major world religions, including animism, Buddhism, Christianity, Hinduism, Islam, Judaism, and Sikhism, and their spatial distribution.

WG.22C Use geographic terminology correctly.

WG.22D Use standard grammar, spelling, sentence structure, and punctuation.

TEKS and ELPS for Regional World Geography Unit 09--South Asia from TEKS Resource System.

Religions of South Asia

The realm of India and its surrounding countries is the native land for more than a few ancient religions. There are people in the realm who continue to adhere to animist beliefs who are not followers of any of the main world religions. The oldest world religions of India are Hinduism and Buddhism. Other important religions in the realm include Islam, Christianity, Sikhism, Zoroastrianism, Jainism, and the Baha'i faith.

India is at times labeled a Hindu state, but the accuracy of the label is dubious. A more suitable way to describe India is to say that it is a secular country where approximately 80 percent of the population follows Hindu traditions. Islam is the second-most popular religion, practiced by about 13 percent of the population. Christianity is India's third-largest religion, practiced by about 3 percent of the population. Sikhism accounts for about 2 percent of the population of India. Buddhism and Jainism are two other minority religions that have their origins in South Asia. And finally, there are still Indians who practice animist religions that predate all the other religions listed, especially in remote areas.

Hinduism

Hinduism is one of the world's oldest major religions still practiced. Its origins can be traced to ancient Vedic civilizations in India approximately 3,000 years ago. The religion is found mainly in India, and it has the third highest number of believers of religions in the world. Hinduism does not originate from a single teacher but from many traditions. The Hindu belief system consists of a number of schools of thought, with a wide variety of rituals and practices.

Hinduism has a vast body of written scripture that discusses theology, mythology, and philosophy as well as providing important guidance on the practice of dharma, religious or right living. These texts include the *Vedas* and the *Upanishads*. Other important scripts include the *Tantras*, the *Agamas*, the *Purānas*, and the epics of the *Mahābhārata* and the *Rāmāyana*. The *Bhagavad Gitā* is a small part of the *Mahābhārata* that is a conversation between one of the Pandava brothers and the god Krishna, concerning the meaning of life and worthiness. This is often thought to be a summary of the spiritual teachings of the Vedas.

Predominantly, Hinduism follows the teachings of many gods or goddesses, frequently including a Supreme Being. While there are hundreds, if not thousands, of gods and goddesses, many are thought to represent different aspects of the same individual or Supreme Being. These individuals can be recognized by items that they are holding as well as by the vehicle or avatar that carries them.

The three main deities and most widely venerated of the Hindu faith are Shiva the Destroyer, Vishnu the Preserver, and Brahma the Creator. There is a continuous cycle in which the original creation was accomplished by Brahma, Shiva destroys the universe, and Vishnu will recreate or preserve that universe from destruction. Different Hindu traditions have venerated each of the three main deities as the all-encompassing Supreme Being.



Statue of Shiva at Murudeshwar, a town in Bhatkal Taluk of Uttara Kannada district in the state of Karnataka, India.

The polytheistic traditions of Hinduism consider a large number of deities or spiritual entities. Since there is no one creed or unified systems of beliefs, Hinduism has been referred to as more of a religious tradition than a religion. There is freedom for the individual as to the form of worship or individual beliefs. The religion, in general, is more of a tradition and lifestyle with different avenues of practice. This allows for the diversity of spiritual deities or their manifestations within one Hindu faith.

Hinduism is a diverse religion, making it difficult to define set doctrines that are accepted by all denominations. Within the wide spectrum of religious traditions are general concepts that are common to Hindu beliefs. Hindus believe in Dharma (code of conduct or duty), Samsara (reincarnation/rebirth), Karma (personal actions and choices), and Moksha (salvation) by belief in God and through an individual path of faith.

Reincarnation is a cycle of death and rebirth for a soul until it reaches Moksha. Karma governs how the soul is reincarnated. Actions in this life determine the soul's life cycle for the next life. Positive and upright works will draw one closer to God and a rebirth through reincarnation into a life with a wider consciousness or higher caste level. Evil or bad actions take the soul farther from God and into a lower form of worldly life or caste level. In the Hindu faith, the eternal natural law applies to all life forms. The cycle of death and rebirth for the soul is necessary to reach the ultimate goal of reaching the universal divine spirit. Yoga is often used as a practice or path for following the traditions.

Pilgrimages are common in Hindu practice. Holy sites are located throughout India and are regular destinations for the Hindu faithful. Pilgrimage is not required but is routinely conducted by many Hindus. A variety of cities and other holy places are pilgrimage destinations for Hindus. Varanasi, one such city, is considered by many as the holiest city of Hinduism. Located on the Ganges River,

Varanasi is home to a large number of temples and shrines. The most visited shrine in Varanasi is one in honor of a manifestation of Shiva. Hindu festivals are held in Varanasi throughout the year, many along the banks of the Ganges. More than one million Hindu pilgrims visit Varanasi annually.

Varanasi contains 88 ghats (a set of steps leading to the water) that provide access to the Ganges River. Some ghats are used for bathing, some for religious rituals, and others for the cremation of the dead. Mother Ganga, as the river is referred to in Hinduism, is considered holy by many Hindu followers. Devotees ritually bathe in the river or take the water, which they believe to be holy, home to ill family members. Some Hindus believe that water can cure illnesses. Others believe that bathing in the Ganges will wash away sins.



Ghats in Varanasi are riverfront steps leading to the banks of the River Ganges.

Hindu Marriage Act

India's 1955 Hindu Marriage Act addresses the issues of marrying outside of one's religion or caste. The act proclaims that all Jains, Buddhists, Sikhs, and Hindus of any sect, creed, or caste level are considered as Hindus and can intermarry. A non-Hindu is allowed to marry a Hindu, with the provision that specific legal stipulations must be followed, regardless of the ceremony. Every Hindu marriage has to be witnessed by the Sacred Fire, in deference to Agni, the fire deity. To complete the marriage, the bride and groom must together encircle the Sacred Fire seven times.

The Hindu Caste System

The exact origins of Hinduism and the caste system are unknown, but powerful nomadic Aryan warriors appeared in northern India about 1500 BCE. The Aryans conquered most of India at the time, including the Dravidian groups of central and southern India. They organized society into separate groups or castes. Every person was born into an unchanging group or caste that remained his or her status for the rest of his or her life.

All lifetime activities were conducted within one's own caste. The caste a person was born into was considered to be based on what they had done in a past life. The caste system has evolved differently in different parts of Asia. Each Hindu branch has its own levels of castes, and thousands of sublevels have been established over time. In Hinduism, the basic system originated around five main caste levels:

1. **Brahmin:** priests, teachers, and judges
2. **Kshatriya:** warrior, ruler, or landowner
3. **Vaishya:** merchants, artisans, and farmers
4. **Shudra:** workers and laborers
5. **Dalits (Untouchables or Harijan):** outcasts or tribal groups

The Dalits (Untouchables or Harijan) traditionally worked in jobs relating to "polluting activities," including anything unclean or dead. Dalits have been restricted from entering Hindu places of worship or drinking water from the same sources as members of higher castes. They often had to work at night and sleep during the day. In many areas, Dalits needed to take their shoes off while passing by upper-caste neighbors. Dalits could leave their Hindu caste by converting to Christianity, Buddhism, or Islam.

The Indian government has implemented a positive affirmative action plan and provided the Dalits with representation in public offices and certain employment privileges. This policy has received harsh opposition by upper-caste groups. Technically, the caste system is illegal under current Indian law. Nevertheless, the opportunities that are available to the upper castes remain out of reach to many of the lowest castes. In some areas, education and industrialization have diminished the caste system's influence. In other areas, Hindu fundamentalists have pushed for a stronger Hindu-based social structure and opposed any reforms.

Traditional socioeconomic status tends to be more important in rural areas, where the caste system is more formally adhered to. If you live in a community of millions of people, caste affiliations tend not to be important. However, in a smaller, more rural community, these relationships and the status they hold can be very important, especially as many of the castes are associated with traditional village tasks, such as religious leaders, politicians, farmers, leather workers, or other activities.

Buddhism

Around 535 BCE in northern India, a prince by the name of Siddhartha Gautama broke from the local traditions that shaped Hinduism and taught religious salvation through meditation, the rejection of earthly desires, and reverence for all life forms. Siddhartha is recognized as the first Buddha. He taught that through many cycles of rebirth a person can attain enlightenment and no longer have a need for desire or selfish interests.

Enlightenment is being free from suffering and is reaching a state of liberation often referred to as Nirvana. Buddhism is considered a "dharmic" faith that concerns following a path of duty for a proper life. According to Buddhism, life is dictated by karma, which connects our actions with future experiences. Buddhism spread across the Indian Subcontinent after the 6th century B.C.E. and became the region's dominant religion within 1,500 years. However, since that time, the religion has diminished in the Indian Subcontinent, although it has seen some revival under the influence of Buddhist scholars. Buddhism predominates in the northernmost areas of India.

Various branches of Buddhism have developed, with many schools established within each branch. Buddhism can be divided geographically into southern, northern, and eastern Buddhism. Scholars and Buddhists practitioners may arrive at various methods of classification of the various schools of thought within the Buddhist faith. One feature common throughout all branches of the faith is that Buddhism does not have caste levels.

The southern branch of Buddhism is known as Theravada Buddhism (*the Teaching of the Elders*), most prominent in Southeast Asia and Sri Lanka. This branch, referred to as the oldest branch of Buddhism attempts to follow the original Buddha's teachings. Meditation and concentration are seen as keys to enlightenment. Spiritual forces do exist but it is up to the individual to attain his or her own path toward awakening.

The northern variety of Buddhism is associated with the Vajrayana Buddhist tradition and is often called Tibetan Buddhism. It has its strongest allegiance in Tibet, Western China, Bhutan, Nepal, and parts of Mongolia. Rooted in the Buddha's original teaching, Northern Buddhism seeks to break out of the cycle of birth, death, and rebirth. Spiritual techniques are often used, along with the main principle of meditation. Vajrayana Buddhism is considered by some to be a branch of Mahayana Buddhism.

In the east, the main form of Buddhism is the Mahayana tradition, which is most common in Japan, Taiwan, Korea, parts of Vietnam, and eastern China. There are various forms of eastern traditions, including Zen Buddhism. Meditative in nature, there is a strong emphasis on universal compassion, altruism, and selflessness. Considered by many to be compatible with other religions, it is often touted as more a lifestyle than a religion. The meditative activities are often said to focus on calming the body and mind, which can provide a positive outcome for anyone seeking inner direction, even those following other religions.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org



For Buddhists, Bodh Gaya is the most important of the main four pilgrimage sites related to the life of Gautama Buddha, the other three being Kushinagar, Lumbini, and Sarnath. In 2002, Mahabodhi Temple, located in Bodh Gaya, became a UNESCO World Heritage Site.

All branches of Buddhism teach nonviolence, honesty, selflessness, tolerance, and moral living. Buddhism holds to the Four Noble Truths and the Eightfold Path (The Middle Way) to enlightenment. Suffering is a standard component of humanity. Only through the Eightfold Path to enlightenment is freedom from suffering possible. Enlightenment comes through wisdom, ethical conduct, and meditation. Buddhism has become the world's fourth main religion, with most of its followers in Asia.

The Four Noble Truths

The Four Noble Truths

1. Suffering exists.
2. Suffering arises from attachment to desires.
3. Suffering ceases when desire ceases.
4. Freedom from suffering is possible by practicing the Eightfold Path.

The Middle Way or Eightfold Path

Attainable through wisdom

1. Right view
2. Right intention

Attainable through ethical conduct

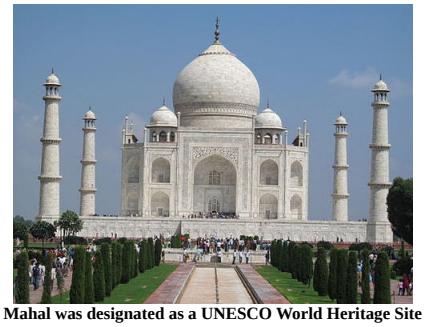
3. Right speech
4. Right action
5. Right livelihood

Attainable through meditation

6. Right effort
7. Right mindfulness
8. Right concentration

Islam

Islam diffused to South Asia from the Middle East through traders and merchants shortly after its creation. The Mogul Empire dominated northern India for centuries and is an example of the Islamic presence in the region. India has the largest Muslim minority in the world. In 2010, India had an estimated population of 140 million Muslims, which made up about 14 percent of the population.



The Taj Mahal was designated as a UNESCO World Heritage Site in 1983.

India has the third-largest Muslim population in the world, after Indonesia and Pakistan. Most Muslims in India live in the north along the Ganges River Basin and in Nepal. There is also a large Muslim population in eastern India near the border with Bangladesh. Kashmir, in northern India, also continues to hold a significant Muslim population.

Christianity

Christianity is India's third-largest religion, practiced by about three percent of the population. Christianity is a monotheistic religion following the teachings of Jesus Christ that originated in the Middle East. Tradition has it that Christianity first came to India through first century C.E. missionary activity linked to the Apostle Thomas, and later arrived in other parts of India through the activities of western missionaries from 1500 C.E. onward.



The renovated Mar Thoma Syro-Malabar Catholic Church, Kodungaloor, built 52 B.C.E.

A major Christian stronghold is the state and city of Goa on the southwest coast, a colony of Portugal from the 1500s to the mid 1900s. There is also a strong Christian presence in eastern India, in the region bordering Myanmar.

Jainism

Jainism or Jain Dharma is a spiritual, religious, and philosophical tradition in India that dates back to about the 9th century BCE. Jains believe that their religion's origins extend to the distant past. A Jain is a follower of Jinas (the saints), who are humans who have rediscovered the dharma (or the way) and have become fully liberated. These Jinas can then teach this spiritual path to other people. A major characteristic of Jainism is the emphasis on the consequences of physical and mental behavior. There are about five million Jains in India, and others around the world.

Great care must be taken while going about one's daily life, as Jains believe that everything is alive and that all beings possess a soul. All life is considered worthy of respect and all life is equal and deserves protection, especially the life of the world's smallest creatures. While in India, you can recognize Jains, because many of the strictest adherents will wear masks to prevent themselves from inhaling insects and thus destroying the insects' souls. Jains are a religious minority, with around six million followers in modern-day India.

All followers of Jainism are vegetarians. Their diet is part of the practice of nonviolence at the heart of their religion. They will eat only food items such as fresh fruit, vegetables, cereals, and legumes. Most root vegetables such as potatoes and onions are avoided by the more devout because of the harm that would be done to the plants themselves or other organisms in the soil when the roots are pulled. Additionally, Jainists will not eat honey, consume any food that may have fermented overnight, or drink water that has not been filtered.

Sikhism

Sikhism is a monotheistic religion centered on justice and faith. In Sikhism, salvation can be obtained through devotion to God and through disciplined meditation. There is a high importance placed on the principle of equality between all people in the Sikh religion. There should be no discrimination on the basis of gender, creed, caste, or ethnicity. Every person is equal. The writings of former Sikh gurus are the basis for the religion.

The center of the Sikh religion is found in the Golden Temple, in the city of Amritsar, in Punjab. This is where Sikhs gather to unite in the faith and associate with each other. There are about 26 million Sikhs in the world, and about three-fourths of them live in the Punjab state of India.

Baha'i Faith

The Baha'i Faith is found in many large urban areas of the Indian subcontinent, particularly New Delhi, where a large temple complex is found. This temple is commonly known as the "Lotus Temple" based on its shape, which looks like a large lotus flower. Two million Baha'is live within India, which has the largest population of Baha'is in the world.

Iran has the second-highest Baha'i population in the world. There is also a major Baha'i temple and center in Haifa, Israel. The Baha'i Faith was founded by Bahá'u'lláahBahá'u'lláh in Persia (Iran) during the 19th century C.E. This religion focuses on the spiritual oneness of humanity and the unity of the other major world religions.



India has the largest population of Baha'i in the world.

Zoroastrianism

Zoroastrianism originated in Iran (or Persia). In fact, it was once the dominant religion of Greater Iran, but it has now dwindled to about 200,000 Zoroastrians around the world, with concentrations in Iran, India (primarily Mumbai), and Pakistan (primarily Karachi and Lahore). Zoroastrianism follows the teachings of the prophet Zoroaster (also known as Zarathustra or Zarthosht).

This philosophy acknowledges the divine authority of Ahura Mazda (Mazdaism) as proclaimed by Zoroaster. One of the tangible forms of this religion is the use of fire as a purifying agent in ceremonies. The temples are commonly known as "fire temples." Additionally, because of a prohibition of burials of bodies in the ground, Zoroastrians allow natural exposure of bodies to the elements in structures known as "Towers of Silence." The greatest numbers of followers of Zoroastrianism can be found in India, with additional numbers in southern Pakistan.

Key Takeaways

- Hinduism is one of the world's oldest still-practiced religions. There is no one specific path in the religion. Hinduism is more of a religious tradition based on core concepts than it is a formal religion.
- The caste system is a Hindu practice of placing people in social layers with similar occupations, privileges, and status. The untouchables are the lowest caste.
- Buddhism was created around 535 B.C.E. from the traditions that shaped Hinduism by Siddhartha Gautama, who taught religious salvation through meditation, the rejection of earthly desires, and reverence for all life forms. There is no caste system in Buddhism, which has a number of branches that vary throughout Asia.
- Islam and Christianity are the second and third largest religions in India but did not originate in South Asia. Jainism and Sikhism got their start in South Asia and are still practiced by millions of people. The Baha'i Faith and Zoroastrianism are also active in India.

Vocabulary Terms

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

	divine force or supreme power
	the top of the caste system- priests, teachers
	1. Brahmin 2. Kshatriyas 3. Vaishya 4. Sudra 5. Untouchables (Dalitas): a social class that a person belongs to by birth.
	law, obligation, duty
	A practice used in Buddhism that helps lead ones will lead their life by.
	Gandhi's term for the "children of God" who were formerly known as "untouchables"
	first major religion in India
	a religion whose followers believe there is one god and that Muhammad is his prophet
	(Hinduism and Buddhism) the effects of a person's actions that determine his destiny in his next life
	second level of the varnas in the Hindu caste system; WARRIORS
	belief in multiple Gods
reincarnation	the rebirth of a soul in another living being most often another human being
	the endless cycle of birth and suffering and death and rebirth
	founder of Buddhism
	unskilled workers
	monotheistic religion centered on justice and faith. salvation can be obtained through devotion to God and through disciplined meditation.
	lowest class of people in the caste system of Hinduism, do all the dirty work of society
	third level of the varnas in the Hindu caste system; identifies merchants who engaged in commerce; commoners
	sacred texts, Ancient Sanskrit writings that are the earliest sacred texts of Hinduism.

Applying Knowledge

Discussion and Study Questions

1. What are the major religions in India in terms of population percentage?
2. What are four of the main concepts of Hinduism? How is yoga related to Hinduism?
3. Who are the three main deities in the Hindu tradition? What are each of these three associated with?
4. Is the caste system a centripetal force or a centrifugal force? In other words, does it divide or unite India?
5. What is the relationship between Hinduism and the Ganges River? What are ghats used for?
6. What is the caste system based on? How does one become a member of a caste level?
7. Does the United States have a caste system? What other countries or groups have caste-type levels?
8. What is the difference between Hinduism and Buddhism? Who started Buddhism, and when?
9. What are the three main branches of Buddhism, based on geographic location?
10. What are the general aspects of Jainism? How is this religion different from Islam?

Current Events

Geography Education Scoop It

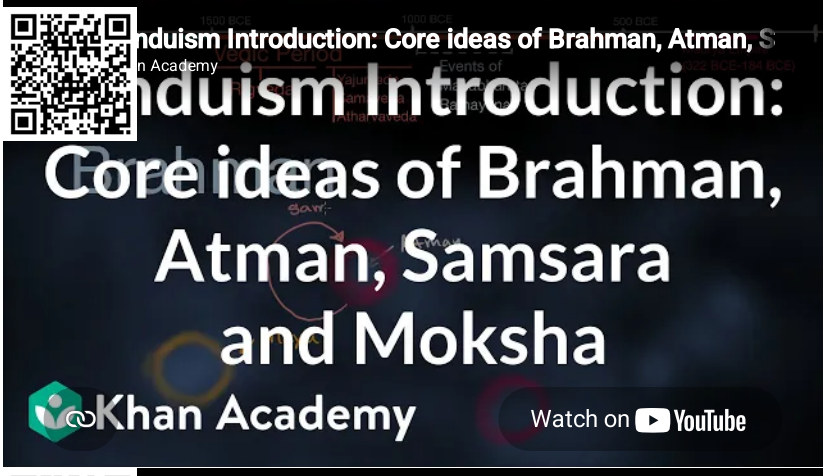
- The Real Threat to Hinduism: The Slow Death of India's Rivers
- Can Empathy Be Learned? Science Offers Some Clues
- Sikhism; A Misunderstood Religion
- Indian Roots of Tibetan Buddhism
- Muslims Masquerade As Hindus for India Jobs

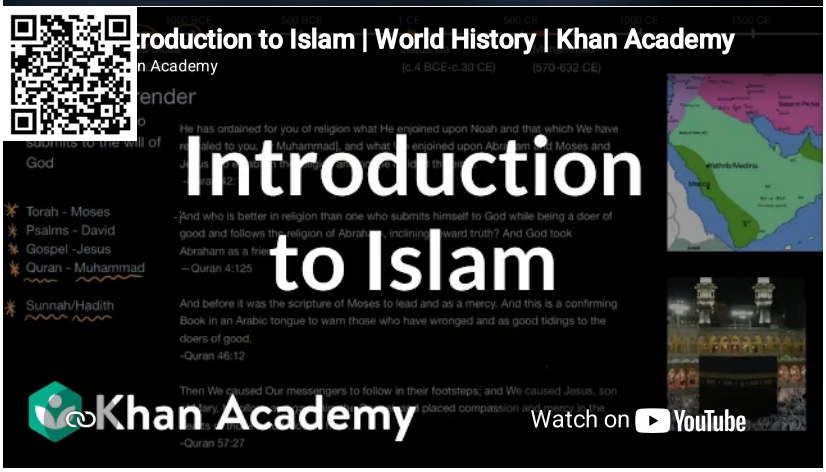
Videos for Geography Enrichment



CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org


ddhism | World History | Khan Academy
n Academy
Buddha
(ca. 563-483 BCE?)
Gupta Empire (320-550)
(322 BCE-184 BCE)
Lumbini
Kushinagar
Sarnath
Bodh Gaya
Khan Academy
Watch on YouTube


nduism Introduction: Core ideas of Brahman, Atman, S
n Academy
nduism Introduction:
Core ideas of Brahman,
Atman, Samsara
and Moksha
Khan Academy
Watch on YouTube


roduction to Islam | World History | Khan Academy
n Academy
(c.4 BCE-c.30 CE)
(570-632 CE)
ender
God
Torah - Moses
Psalms - David
Gospel -Jesus
Quran - Muhammad
Sunnah/Hadith
Introduction
to Islam
Khan Academy
Watch on YouTube



Helpful Websites for the Study of Geography

Canadian Encyclopedia is an encyclopedia funded by the Canadian government covering all branches of knowledge. Their scholarly collection includes interactive materials.

CIA World Factbook provides information on the people, history, government, economy, energy, geography, communications, transportation, military, and transnational issues for the world's entities.

Congress.gov is a US government website where you can find federal legislation, past and present, as well as information about the US legal system.

Drug Enforcement Administration (DEA) is a government agency website that provides current news, resources, topics of interest, information about drugs, careers in the DEA, and a tip hotline.

Library of Congress is the largest library in the world and provides manuscripts, files, information, pictures, and videos.

NASA Earth Observatory (NEO) is a US government agency website that allows users to search for and retrieve satellite images of Earth.

National Archives is a US government website that provides historical documents, photos, records, publications, and educator resources.

National Oceanic and Atmospheric Association (NOAA) is a US government agency website that provides weather-related information and ocean research.

National Map is a website by the United States Geological Survey and other federal, state, and local agencies that delivers topographic information for the United States.

NationMaster is a massive central data source and a handy way to graphically compare nations.

Real-Time World Air Quality Index is a website that measures most locations in the world for air pollution in real time.

StateMaster is a unique statistical database, which allows you to research and compare a multitude of different data on US states.

United Nations (UN) is an international organization founded in 1945 and made up of 193 member states. The UN maintains international peace and security, protects human rights, delivers humanitarian aid, promotes sustainable development, and upholds international law.

United States Census Bureau is a US government agency that provides a population clock, data, surveys, statistics, a library with information and infographics, news about the economy, and much more.

United States Geological Survey (USGS) is a US government agency website that provides scientific information about the natural hazards that threaten lives, the natural resources we rely on, the health of our ecosystems and environment, and the impacts of climate and land-use change.

Whitehouse.gov is a US government website that provides the latest presidential news, information about the budget, policy, defense, and many more topics.

World Health Organization (WHO) is under the United Nations and provides leadership on matters critical to health, shapes the research agenda on health, and monitors the health situation and assessing health trends around the world. Their website provides information on the state of health around the world, outbreaks, current health news, and more.

World Trade Organization (WTO) is an intergovernmental organization that regulates international trade. The website provides information on the history of the multilateral trading system, featured

LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

videos, news and events, trade topics, and more.

Image	Reference	Attributions
	[Figure 1]	**Credit:** By Thejas Panarkandy from India (Murudeshwara Statue) [CC BY-SA 2.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/2.0) or CC BY-SA 2.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/2.0)], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Shiva_cropped.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 2]	**Credit:** By Patrick Barry from san francisco, ca, usa [CC BY-SA 2.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/2.0)], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Chet_Singh_Ghat_in_Varanasi.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 3]	**Credit:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeograp...nd-south-asia/ **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/f2dd08ac8d96c249c65c32b47b8619bb.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 4]	**Credit:** By Anas Kuthbudeen [CC BY-SA 3.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0)], from Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Taj_Mahal_islamic_architecture.JPG **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 5]	**Credit:** Sujithvv at English Wikipedia [GFDL (http://www.gnu.org/copyleft/fdl.html) or CC BY-SA 3.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0)], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Kodungaloor_Mar_Thoma_Church.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

	[Figure 6]	**Credit:** nomo/michael hoefner **Source:** https://upload.wikimedia.org/Wikipedia/commons/5/5f/Bahai-house-of-worship-delhi2.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

9.5: Religions of South Asia (2 Days) is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

10: Southeast Asia (10 days)

10.1: East Asia- Introducing the Realm (1 Day)

10.2: Emergence of Modern China (2 Days)

10.3: China's Periphery (2 Days)

10.4: Japan, North Korea, and South Korea (2 Days)

10.5: Southeast Asia- Introducing the Realm (1 Day)

10.6: Islands of Southeast Asia (1 Day)

10.7: The Mainland Countries- Vietnam, Laos, Cambodia, Thailand, and Myanmar (1 day)

This page titled 10: Southeast Asia (10 days) is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by CK12 via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

10.1: East Asia- Introducing the Realm (1 Day)

Chapter Challenges

1. Outline the countries and territories that are included in East Asia.
2. Describe the main physical features and climate types of each country.
3. Understand the relationship between physical geography and human populations in East Asia.
4. Summarize the main objectives in building the Three Gorges Dam.
5. Describe how colonialism impacted China.
6. Outline the various countries and regions that were controlled by colonial interests.
7. Outline the three-way split in China after its revolution and where each of the three groups ended up living.

Learning Objectives

TEKS Regional Unit 10 East and Southeast Asia: Chapter 10.1 Introducing the Realm

WG.1A Analyze the effects of physical and human geographic patterns and processes on the past and describe their impact on the present, including significant physical features and environmental conditions that influenced migration patterns and shaped the distribution of culture groups today.

WG.5A Analyze how the character of a place is related to its political, economic, social, and cultural elements.

WG.6A Locate and describe human and physical features that influence the size and distribution of settlements.

WG.6B Explain the processes that have caused changes in settlement patterns, including urbanization, transportation, access to and availability of resources, and economic activities.

WG.8A Compare ways that humans depend on, adapt to, and modify the physical environment, including the influences of culture and technology.

WG.9A Identify physical and/or human factors such as climate, vegetation, language, trade networks, political units, river systems, and religion that constitute a region.

WG.10A Describe the forces that determine the distribution of goods and services in free enterprise, socialist, and communist economic systems.

WG.13A Interpret maps to explain the division of land, including man-made and natural borders, into separate political units such as cities, states, or countries.

WG.14C Analyze the human and physical factors that influence the power to control territory and resources, create conflict/war, and impact international political relations of sovereign nations such as China.

WG.22C Use geographic terminology correctly.

WG.22D Use standard grammar, spelling, sentence structure, and punctuation.

TEKS and ELPS for Regional World Geography Unit 10-- East and Southeast Asia from TEKS Resource System.

East Asia: Introducing the Realm

Physical Geography

East Asia is surrounded by a series of mountain ranges in the west, Mongolia, and Russia in the north, and Southeast Asia to the south. The Himalayas border Tibet and Nepal; the Karakoram Ranges, Pamirs, and the Tian Shan Mountains shadow Central Asia; and the Altay Mountains are next to Russia. The Himalayan Mountains are among the highest mountain ranges in the world, and Mount Everest is the planet's tallest peak.



The Tian Shan, meaning the "Mountains of Heaven," is a large system of mountain ranges located in Central Asia.

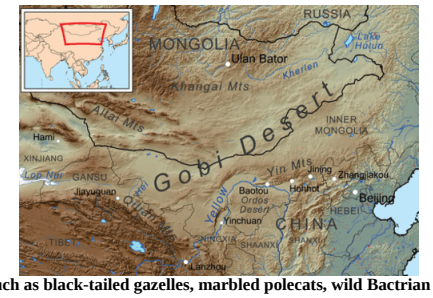
These high ranges create a rain shadow effect, generating the dry arid conditions of type B climates that dominate western China. The desert conditions of western China give rise to a large uninhabitable region in its center. Melting snow from the high elevations feeds many of the streams that transition into the major rivers that flow toward the east.

Created by tectonic plate action, the many mountain ranges are also home to earthquakes and tremors that are devastating to life. The Indian tectonic plate is still pushing northward into the Eurasian plate, forcing the Himalayan ranges upward. With an average elevation of 15,000 feet, the Tibetan Plateau is the largest plateau region of the world. It has high elevations and type H climates.

The plateau is sparsely populated and the only places with human habitation are the river valleys. Lhasa is the largest city of the sparsely populated region. Sometimes called "the Roof of the World," the Tibetan Plateau is over three miles above sea level and is surrounded by majestic mountain ranges, including Mount Everest and K2. The small amount of precipitation that occurs often comes in the form of hailstorms mixed with wind. Its landscape is generally rocky and barren.

The vast arid regions of western China extend into the Gobi Desert between Mongolia and China. Colder type D climates dominate the Mongolian steppe and northern China. The eastern coast of the Asian continent is home to islands and peninsulas, which include Taiwan and the countries of Japan and North and South Korea.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org



The Gobi Desert is home to many animals, such as black-tailed gazelles, marbled polecats, wild Bactrian camels, Mongolian wild ass and sand plovers.

North Korea's type D climates are similar to the northern tier of the United States, comparable to North Dakota. Taiwan is farther south, producing a warmer tropical type A climate. The mountainous islands of Japan have been formed as a result of tectonic plates and are prone to earthquakes. Since water moderates temperature, the coastal areas of East Asia have more moderate temperatures than the interior areas do. A type C climate is dominant in Japan, but the north has a colder type D climate.

The densely populated fertile river valleys of central and southeastern China are matched by contrasting economic conditions. Rich alluvial soils and moderate temperatures create excellent farmland that provides enormous food production to fuel an ever-growing population.

Most of China's population lives in its eastern region, called China Proper, with type C climates, fresh water, and good soils. China Proper has dense population clusters that correspond to the areas of type C climate that extend south from Shanghai to Hong Kong. Around the world, most humans have gravitated toward type C climates. These climates have produced fertile agricultural lands that provide an abundance of food for the enormous Chinese population.



Shanghai is the most populous city in the world.

To the south, the temperatures are warmer, with hot and humid summers and dry, warm winters. The climates of China Proper are conducive for human habitation, which has transformed the region into a highly populated human community. The North China Plain at the mouth of the Yellow River (*Huang He River*) has rich farmland and is the most densely populated region in China.



The North China Plain is based on the deposits of the Yellow River and is the largest alluvial plain of China.

Northwest of Beijing is Inner Mongolia and the Gobi Desert, a desert that extends into the independent country of Mongolia. Arid type B climates dominate the region all the way to the southern half of Mongolia. The northern half of Mongolia is colder with continental type D climates. In the higher elevations of the highlands in western Mongolia, there is a section of type H highland climates.

Its climate and location identify Mongolia as a landlocked country in the northern latitudes with a low level of precipitation. The areas of type D climate that extend north from Beijing through Northeast China at times receive more precipitation than northern Mongolia. Northeast China features China's great forests and excellent agricultural land. Many of China's abundant natural mineral resources are found in this area. Balancing mineral extraction with the preservation of agricultural land and timber resources is a continual concern.

Lying north of the Great Wall and encompassing the autonomous region of Inner Mongolia is the vast Mongolian steppe, which includes broad flat grasslands that extend north into the highlands. North China includes the Yellow River basin as well as the municipalities of Beijing and Tianjin. Areas around parts of the Yellow River are productive agricultural lands, including vast areas of loess that have been terraced for cultivation. Loess is fine silt or windblown soil that is yellow in color in this region. Deciduous forests continue to exist in this region, despite aggressive clearcutting for agricultural purposes. The Great Wall of China sits on top of the hills in this region.



The Great Wall of China is a series of fortifications made of stone, brick, tamped earth, wood, and other materials.

Most of western China is arid, with a type B climate. Western China has large regions like the Takla Makan Desert that are uninhabited and inhospitable because of hot summers and long cold winters exacerbated by the cold winds sweeping down from the north. In a local Uyghur language, the name *Takla Makan* means "*You will go in but you will not go out.*" To the far west are the high mountains bordering Central Asia that restrict travel and trade with the rest of the continent. Northwestern China is a mountainous region featuring glaciers, deserts, and basins.

https://k12.libretexts.org/@go/page/1975



China and its main climate regions

The central portion of China Proper is subtropical. This large region includes the southern portion of the Yangtze River and the cities of Shanghai and Chongqing. Alluvial processes give this area excellent agricultural land. Its climate is warm and humid in the summers with mild winters. Monsoons create well-defined summer rainy seasons.

Tropical China lies in the extreme south and includes Hainan Island and the small islands that neighbor it. Annual temperatures are higher here than in the subtropical region and rainfall amounts brought by the summer monsoons are substantial. This area is characterized by low mountains and hills.



Hainan is the smallest and southernmost province of the People's Republic of China (PRC), consisting of various islands in the South China Sea.

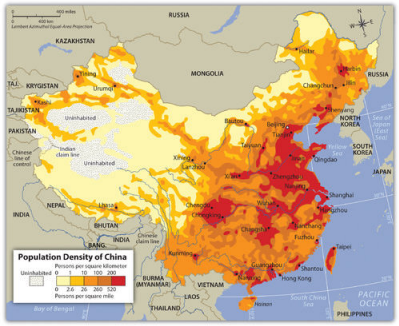
River Basins of China

There are two major river systems that provide fresh water to the vast agricultural regions of the central part of China Proper. The Yellow River is named after the light-colored silt that washes into the river. It flows from the Tibetan highlands through the North China Plain into the Yellow Sea. Dams, canals, and irrigation projects along the river provide water for extensive agricultural operations. Crops of wheat, sorghum, corn, and soybeans are common with vegetables, fruit, and tobacco grown in smaller plots.

The North China Plain has to grow enough food to feed its one thousand people per square mile average density. This plain does not usually produce a food surplus because of the high demand from the large population of the region. Beijing borders the North China Plain. Its nearest port, Tianjin, continues to expand and grow, creating an economic center of industrial activity that relies on the peripheral regions for food and raw materials. Cotton is an example of a key industrial crop grown here.

The Yangtze River flows out of the Tibetan Plateau through the Sichuan Province, through the Three Gorges region and its lower basin into the East China Sea. Agricultural production along the river includes extensive rice and wheat farming. Large cities are located on this river, including Wuhan and Chongqing. Nanjing and Shanghai are situated near the delta on the coast. Shanghai is the largest city in China and is a growing metropolis.

The Three Gorges Dam of the Yangtze River is the world’s largest dam. It produces a large percentage of electricity for central China. Oceangoing ships can travel up the Yangtze to Wuhan and, utilizing locks in the Three Gorges Dam, these cargo vessels can travel all the way upriver to Chongqing. The Yangtze River is a valuable and vital transportation corridor for the transport of goods between periphery and core and between the different urban centers of activity. Sichuan is among the top five provinces in China in terms of population and is dependent on the Yangtze River system to provide for its needs and connect it with the rest of China.



The region of eastern China that is favorable to large populations is called China Proper.

Northeast China was formerly known as Manchuria, named after the Manchu ethnic group that had dominated the region in Chinese history. Two river basins create a favorable industrial climate for economic activity. The lower Liao River Basin and the Songhua River Basin cut through Northeast China. The cities of Harbin and Shenyang are industrial centers located on these rivers. This region is known as the Northeast China Plain.

It has extensive farming activities located next to an industrial landscape of smokestacks, factories, and warehouses. Considerable mineral wealth and iron ore deposits in the region have augmented the industrial activities and have created serious environmental concerns because of excessive air and water pollution. At its high point in the 1970s, this was China’s main steel production area, but the region is being reduced to a rustbelt since many of China’s manufacturing centers are now being developed in the southern regions of China Proper.



Shenyang is an important industrial center in China.

The southernmost region of China Proper is home to the Pearl River Basin, an important agricultural and commercial district. Though smaller in size than the Yangtze River Basin, major global urban centers are located on its estuary, where the mouth of the river flows into the South China Sea. The system includes the Xi River, Pearl River, and their tributaries. As the third-longest river system in China, these rivers process an enormous amount of water and have the second-highest volume of water flow after the Yangtze.

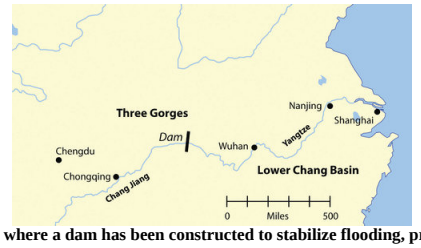
Guangzhou, Macau, and Hong Kong are the largest cities located here, alongside the rapidly expanding industrial center of Shenzhen. Macau was a former Portuguese colony and Hong Kong was a former British colony. These urban areas are now hubs for international trade and global commerce. Guangzhou is one of the largest cities in China, along with Shanghai, Beijing, Wuhan, and Tianjin. Cantonese heritage and traditions form a foundation for the cultural background of the people who live here.



An estuary is a wide area at the mouth of a river where it meets the sea. Hong Kong is located on the eastern side of the Pearl River Estuary, and the former Portuguese colony of Macau is located on the western side of the waterway.

Three Gorges Dam

The Three Gorges Dam on the Yangtze River is known in China as the New China Dam. Its hydroelectric production system is the largest on Earth. The river system is the world's third longest, after the Nile and the Amazon. Ideas for this project go back to the days just after the last dynasty fell. Plans and development began in the decades before 1994, when the construction of the dam began. The main purposes of the dam are to control the massive flooding along the Yangtze, produce hydroelectric power, and increase shipping capacity along the river.



The Yangtze River flows through three deep gorges where a dam has been constructed to stabilize flooding, produce electricity, and support river transportation.

- Dam length: 7,661 feet
- Dam height: 610 feet
- Dam width (at base): 377 feet
- Physical construction began: December 14, 1994
- Construction cost: estimated 39 billion US dollars
- Estimated surface area of the reservoir: 403 square miles
- Estimated length of the reservoir: 375 miles
- Capacity of 32 generators totaling 22,500 MW (equivalent to about 20 nuclear power plants the size of the Watts Bar 1, the newest US nuclear reactor)

Before the construction of the dam, flooding along the Yangtze cost thousands of lives and billions of dollars in damage. In 1954, the river flooded, causing the deaths of more than 33,000 people and displacing an additional 18 million people. The giant city of Wuhan was flooded for three months. In 1998, a similar flood caused billions of dollars in damage, flooded thousands of acres of farmland, resulted in more than 1,526 deaths, and displaced more than 2.3 million people.

The dam was rigorously tested in 2009 when a massive flood worked its way through the waterway. The dam was able to withstand the pressure by containing the excess water and controlling the flow downstream. The dam saved many lives and prevented billions of dollars in potential damage. The savings in human lives and in preventing economic damage are projected to outweigh the cost of the dam in only a few decades.

The dam produces most of the electricity for the lower Yangtze Basin, including Shanghai, the largest city in China. Five years of the dam producing electricity has already paid for about one-third of its construction costs, which is equivalent to burning approximately 150 million tons of coal. This reduces the emission of millions of tons of carbon dioxide, sulfur, and nitrogen oxides into the atmosphere, which reduces air pollution and does not contribute to climate change.

Heavy freight traffic on the Yangtze was the norm even before the dam was built. In fact, it has the highest rates of transport of any river. The building of the dam has augmented the amount of freight traffic.

All the positive attributes of the Three Gorges Dam have contributed to the economic development of China. This is a testimony to the engineering and technological capacity of the nation. However, this project has also created its own problems and negative impacts on culture and the environment. By 2008, the number of people forced to relocate from the flooding of the reservoir had reached 1.24 million. Historic villages and hundreds of archaeological sites were flooded. Thousands of farmers had to be relocated to places with less productive soils. Compensation to the farmers for relocation was forfeited because of corruption and fraud. Much of the scenic beauty of the river basin is now under water.

Animal species like the critically endangered Siberian Cranes, who had wintered in the former wetlands of the river, had to find habitat elsewhere. The endangered Yangtze River Dolphin has been doomed to extinction because of the dam and the amplified river activity. The dam restricts the flushing of water pollution and creates a massive potential for landslides along its banks, exacerbating the potential for the silting in of the reservoir and the clogging of the dam's turbines.

The dam also sits on a fault zone and there is concern that the massive weight of the water in the reservoir could trigger earthquakes that may destroy the dam, with catastrophic consequences. Large development projects tend to have an enormous impact on the people and the environment. The building of the Three Gorges Dam has created controversy, with strong arguments on both sides of the

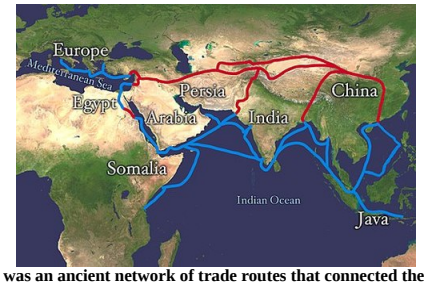
CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

issue. To further complicate the situation, other large dams are being proposed or are under construction along the same river.

Chinese Dynasties and Colonialism

The earliest Chinese dynasty dates to around 2200 B.C.E. It was located in the rich North China Plain. Organized as a political system, Chinese dynasties created the Chinese state, which provided for a continuous transfer of power, ideas, and culture from one generation to another. From 206 to 220 C.E., the Han Dynasty established the Chinese identity. Chinese people became known as People of Han or Han Chinese. The last dynasty, the Qing (Manchu) Dynasty, which ruled between 1644 and 1911, claimed control of a region including all of China, Mongolia, Southeast Asia, and Korea. Dynastic rule ended in China in 1911.

European colonialism arrived in China during the Qing Dynasty. China had been an industrialized state for centuries. Long before the empires of Rome and Greece were at their peak, China's industrial cities flourished with the concepts of clean drinking water, transportation, and technology. Paper, gunpowder, and printing were used in China centuries before they arrived in Europe. The Silk Road, which crossed the often dangerous elevations of the high mountain passes, was the main trading link between China and Europe.



The Silk Road was an ancient network of trade routes that connected the East and West.

European colonial powers met tough resistance in China. They were kept at bay for years. Meanwhile, the Industrial Revolution in Europe, which cranked out mass-produced products at a cheap price, provided an advantage over Chinese production. British colonizers also exported opium, an addictive narcotic, from their colonies in South Asia to China to help break down Chinese culture. By importing tons of opium into China, the British were able to instigate social problems.

The first Opium Wars of 1839–1842 ended with Britain gaining an upper hand and laying claim to most of central China. Other European powers also sought to gain a foothold in China. Portugal gained the port of Macau. Germany took control of the coastal region of the rich North China Plain. France carved off part of southern China and Southeast Asia. Russia came from the north to lay claim to the northern sections of China. Japan, which was just across the waterfront from China, took control of Korea and the island of Formosa (now called Taiwan). Claims on China increased as colonialism moved in to take control of the Chinese mainland.

Though European powers laid claim to parts of China, they often fought among themselves. China did not produce heavy military weapons as early as the Europeans did and therefore could not fend them off upon their invasion. Chinese culture, which had flourished for 4,000 years, quickly eroded through outside intrusion. It was not until about 1900, when a rebellion against foreigners (known as the Boxer Rebellion) was organized by the Chinese people, that the conflict reached recognizable dimensions. The Qing Dynasty dissolved in 1911, which also signified an end to the advancements of European colonialism, even though European colonies remained in China.

Three-Way Split in China

European colonialism in China slowed after 1911, and World War I severely weakened European powers. The Japanese colonizers, on the other hand, continued to make advancements. Japan did not have far to travel to resupply troops and support its military. In China, a doctor by the name of Dr. Sun Yat-sen promoted the independent Chinese Republic, free from a dynastic rule, Japanese, or European colonial influence. Political parties of Nationalists and Communists also worked to establish the republic. Dr. Sun Yat-sen died in 1925. The Nationalists, under the leadership of Chiang Kai-shek, defeated the Communists and established a national government. Foreigners were evicted. The Communists were driven out of politics.



Both the Republic of China (ROC) and the People's Republic of China (PRC) consider Dr. Sun Yat-sen to be a famous Chinese historical figure.

Nationalists, Communists, and Japan conducted a three-way war over the control of China. Japan's military took control of parts of Northeast China, known as Manchuria, and made advancements on the eastern coast. Nationalists defeated the Communists for power and were pushing them into the mountains. The Chinese people were in support of the two parties working together to defeat the Japanese.

The Long March of 1934 was a 6,000-mile retreat by the Communists through rural China, pursued by Nationalist forces. The people of the countryside gave aid to the efforts of the Communists. The Chinese were primarily interested in the defeat of Japan, a country that was brutally killing massive numbers of China's people in their aggressive war.

In 1945, the defeat of Japan in World War II by the United States changed many things. Japan's admission of defeat prompted the end of Japanese control of territory in China, Taiwan, Korea, Southeast Asia, and the Pacific. By 1948, the Communists, who were becoming well organized, were defeating the Nationalists. Chiang Kai-shek gathered his people and what Chinese treasures he could and fled by boat to the island of Formosa (Taiwan), which in 1945 had just been freed from Japan.

Taiwan was declared the official Republic of China (ROC). The Communists took over the mainland government. In 1949, Communist leader Mao Zedong declared the establishment of the People's Republic of China (PRC) with its capital in Peking (Beijing). Japan was devastated by US bombing and defeated in World War II. Its infrastructure destroyed and its colonies lost, Japan had to begin the long process of rebuilding its country.

Korea was finally liberated from the Chinese dynasties and Japanese colonialism but began to experience an internal political division. Political structures in the second half of the 20th century in East Asia were vastly different from the political structures that had been in place when the century began.

Key Takeaways

- China is the largest country in physical area and in population in East Asia. The realm is isolated by the high mountains in the west, which cause a major rain shadow and desert conditions in the western regions. Mongolia is the only landlocked country. The other countries and territories are located along the Pacific Rim.
- Robust population growth has been supported by adequate food production in the major river valleys and coastal regions of East Asia. Coastal areas receive adequate precipitation and allow access to fishing for human activities.
- The Three Gorges Dam was constructed on the Yangtze River to control flooding, generate electricity, and support shipping. The dam is the largest in the world. Downsides of the dam have included the relocation of human settlements, erosion, and other environmental concerns.
- Colonialism infiltrated China and challenged its last dynasty. By 1911, both the dynasty and European colonialism were in demise. In a three-way battle for power in China, the Communists emerged in 1949 to take control. The Nationalists fled to Formosa to form their own government.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

Vocabulary Terms

Chapter 10.1 Introducing the Realm

	The cultivation or farming of aquatic plants and animals.
	An uprising in China in 1900, spurred by angry Chinese militants, the "Boxers", over foreign control; several hundred Europeans, Christians, and Chinese died.
	A wealthy country with an advanced economy, usually have many industries and provide a comfortable way of life for most of its people.
	A poorer country with a less advanced economy. In general, developing countries are trying to increase their industries and improve life for their citizens.
	Fourth longest river, runs through the fertile region of East Asia.
	Electricity that is generated from the power of moving water.
	A seasonal wind, especially in South Asia.
	One of the most fertile regions of China.
	A raised area, such as a hill or mountain, with a mostly level top.
	An economic and social region that includes countries of EastAsia, Southeast Asia, Australia, New Zealand, Chile and the west coast of the United States.
Three Gorges Dam	Built to control flooding of the Chang Jiang River it also produces a large percentage of the electricity for central China.
	Tropical storm that occurs in the western Pacific. Also known as a hurricane or tropical cyclone.
	The longest river in Asia, runs 3,900 miles from Xizang (Tibet) to the East China Sea.

Applying Knowledge

Discussion and Study Questions

1. Outline the countries or territories that make up the region known as East Asia.
2. How is East Asia separated from the rest of Asia? How did this keep the realm isolated for many centuries?
3. What is the only landlocked country in East Asia? Describe its physical features.
4. What are the main climate types in each of the countries in East Asia?
5. Where are the four main river basins in China Proper? How do they contribute to China's development?
6. What are the three main benefits of the Three Gorges Dam? What are three of the negative impacts?
7. What was significant about the Han and Qing Dynasties? When did dynastic rule end in China?
8. How did the British attempt to break down Chinese culture? What was China's response?
9. What was the relationship between Japan, Korea, and China before World War II?
10. What was the three-way split in China about? What happened to each of the three groups?

Real-World Geography Exercise

1. Using Google Maps, complete the following activities:
   a. Locate each place on the bulleted list below.
   b. Find the nearest city with an international airport in proximity to each location on the bulleted list below.
   c. Calculate the distance and travel time by plane to each city from the Miami International Airport in Miami, Florida.
2. Using NASA Latitude and Longitude Finder, determine the latitude and longitude for each location on the bulleted list below.
3. Be prepared to share and discuss your answers.

- Altay Mountains
- Chang Jiang River
- China Proper
- Chongqing
- Formosa
- Gobi Desert
- Guangzhou
- Hainan Island
- Harbin
- Hong Kong
- Huang He River
- Inner Mongolia
- Karakoram Ranges
- Liao River
- Macau
- Nanjing
- North China Plain
- Northeast China Plain
- Pamirs
- Pearl River
- Shanghai
- Shenyang
- Shenzhen
- Songhua River
- Taiwan
- Takla Makan Desert
- Three Gorges Dam
- Tianjin
- Tian Shan
- Tibet
- Western China
- Wuhan

- Xizang
- Yangtze River
- Yellow River

Current Events

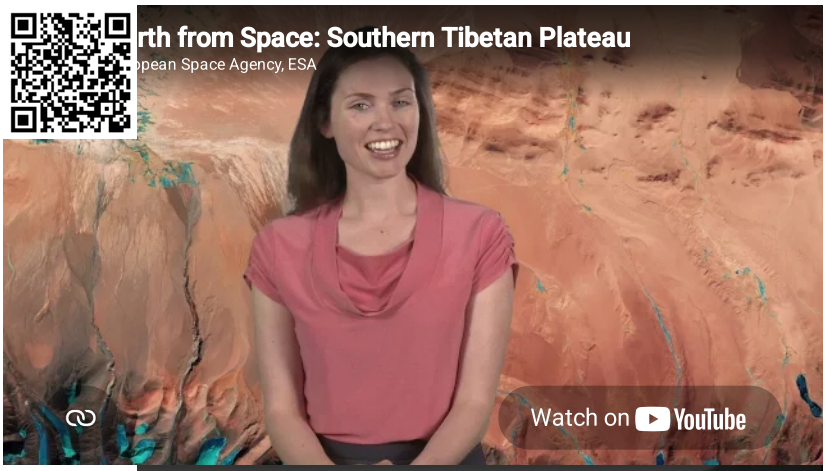
Geography Education Scoop It

The Chinese Are Obsessed With Building Giant Dams

'The Threat Is Real': Protein Supply Chain Disrupted As Hog Disease Spreads

Healthcare Marketing Should Target Baby Boomers In China

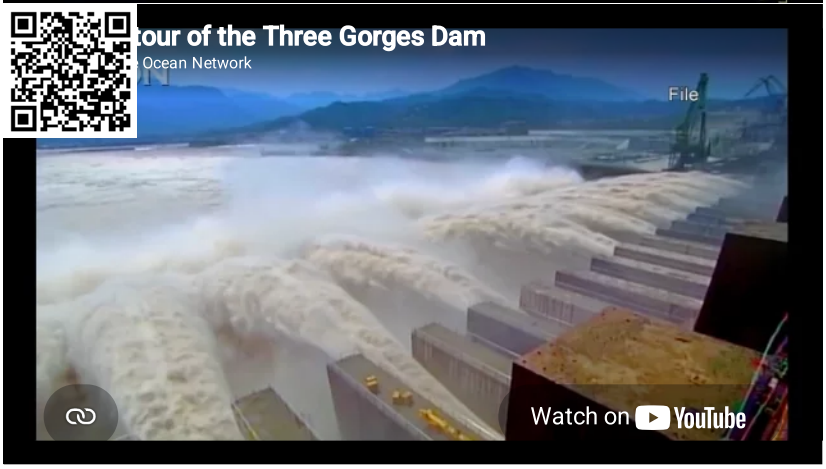
Videos for Geography Enrichment






ium Wars | World History | Khan Academy
n Academy
Qing Dynasty
Shanghai
Ningbo
1840
First Opium War
(1839-1842)
Opium Wars
1860
Khan Academy
Watch on YouTube


erview of Chinese history 1911 - 1949 | The 20th centu
n Academy
Chinese History
1911 - 1949
Sun Yat-sen
Chiang Kai-shek
Yuan Shikai
Mao Zedong
Khan Academy
Watch on YouTube


tour of the Three Gorges Dam
Ocean Network
File
Watch on YouTube



Helpful Websites for the Study of Geography

Canadian Encyclopedia is an encyclopedia funded by the Canadian government covering all branches of knowledge. Their scholarly collection includes interactive materials.

CIA World Factbook provides information on the people, history, government, economy, energy, geography, communications, transportation, military, and transnational issues for the world's entities.

Congress.gov is a US government website where you can find federal legislation, past and present, as well as information about the US legal system.

Drug Enforcement Administration (DEA) is a government agency website that provides current news, resources, topics of interest, information about drugs, careers in the DEA, and a tip hotline.

Library of Congress is the largest library in the world and provides manuscripts, files, information, pictures, and videos.

NASA Earth Observatory (NEO) is a US government agency website that allows users to search for and retrieve satellite images of Earth.

National Archives is a US government website that provides historical documents, photos, records, publications, and educator resources.

National Oceanic and Atmospheric Association (NOAA) is a US government agency website that provides weather-related information and ocean research.

National Map is a website by the United States Geological Survey and other federal, state, and local agencies that delivers topographic information for the United States.

NationMaster is a massive central data source and a handy way to graphically compare nations.

Real-Time World Air Quality Index is a website that measures most locations in the world for air pollution in real time.

StateMaster is a unique statistical database, which allows you to research and compare a multitude of different data on US states.

United Nations (UN) is an international organization founded in 1945 and made up of 193 member states. The UN maintains international peace and security, protects human rights, delivers humanitarian aid, promotes sustainable development, and upholds international law.

United States Census Bureau is a US government agency that provides a population clock, data, surveys, statistics, a library with information and infographics, news about the economy, and much more.

United States Geological Survey (USGS) is a US government agency website that provides scientific information about the natural hazards that threaten lives, the natural resources we rely on, the health of our ecosystems and environment, and the impacts of climate and land-use change.

Whitehouse.gov is a US government website that provides the latest presidential news, information about the budget, policy, defense, and many more topics.

World Health Organization (WHO) is under the United Nations and provides leadership on matters critical to health, shapes the research agenda on health, and monitors the health situation and assessing health trends around the world. Their website provides information on the state of health around the world, outbreaks, current health news, and more.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

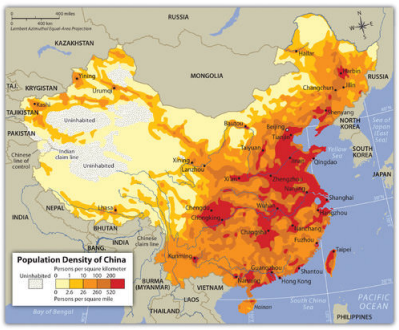
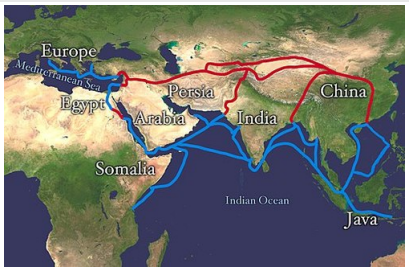
World Trade Organization (WTO) is an intergovernmental organization that regulates international trade. The website provides information on the history of the multilateral trading system, featured

LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

videos, news and events, trade topics, and more.

Image	Reference	Attributions
	[Figure 1]	**Credit:** By Chen Zhao [CC BY 2.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/2.0)], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Central_Tian_Shan_mountains.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 2]	**Credit:** By Kmusser [CC BY-SA 3.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0)], from Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Gobi_desert_map.png **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 4]	**Credit:** By en:User:Alanmak Alan Mak [GFDL (http://www.gnu.org/copyleft/fdl.html) or CC-BY-SA-3.0 (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0/)], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:ChinaGeography.png **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 5]	**Credit:** Severin.stalder [CC BY-SA 3.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0)], from Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:The_Great_Wall_of_China_at_Jinshanling-edit.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 6]	**Credit:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeograp...ing-the-realm/ **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/846dff7213971b04f6c6f095bb67ea89.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

https://k12.libretexts.org/@go/page/1975

	[Figure 8]	**Credit:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeograp...ing-the-realm/ **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/2188ec2232f5d9f5d0ebdb4ee61601bd.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 9]	**Credit:** By Aaron Sorrell [CC BY 2.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/2.0)], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Sanhao_bridge.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 10]	**Credit:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeograp...ing-the-realm/ **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/6cfbf3761d3de6b0bc4b6613d49979c7.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 11]	**Credit:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeograp...ing-the-realm/ **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/502bcbf1d4062fefd8595764071647d9.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 12]	**Credit:** By Whole_world_-_land_and_oceans_12000.jpg: NASA/Goddard Space Flight Centerderivative work: Splette (talk)NASA - Visible Earth, images combined and scaled down by HighInBC (20 megabyte upload limit)NASA VIsible Earth [Public domain], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Silk_route.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 13]	**Credit:** By Central Bank of the Republic of China (Taiwan) (http://www.currency.cbc.gov.tw/Emoney/A1/T02.html) [Attribution], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://upload.wikimedia.org/Wikipedia/commons/e/e7/TWD100f.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

This page titled 10.1: East Asia- Introducing the Realm (1 Day) is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by CK12 via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

10.2: Emergence of Modern China (2 Days)

Chapter Challenges

1. Summarize the main steps China has taken to transition from a strict Communist country established in 1949 to a more open society with a capitalist type of economy today.
2. Outline the location of the political units of China with the autonomous regions and special administrative units.
3. Establish the connection between the autonomous regions and ethnicity.
4. Understand the population dynamics of China. Learn about the one-child-only policy and evaluate how it has affected Chinese society and culture.
5. Describe how China has shifted its economic policies and structure in the past few decades.
6. Outline the changes in economic development with China's open door to Western trade.
7. Sketch out the historical geopolitical objectives of China and how they relate to China today.

Learning Objectives

TEKS Regional Unit 10 East and Southeast Asia: Chapter 10.2 Emergence of Modern China

WG.1A Analyze the effects of physical and human geographic patterns and processes on the past and describe their impact on the present, including significant physical features and environmental conditions that influenced migration patterns and shaped the distribution of culture groups today.

WG.2A Describe the human and physical characteristics of the same regions at different periods of time to evaluate relationships between past events and current conditions.

WG.5A Analyze how the character of a place is related to its political, economic, social, and cultural elements.

WG.6A Locate and describe human and physical features that influence the size and distribution of settlements.

WG.6B Explain the processes that have caused changes in settlement patterns, including urbanization, transportation, access to and availability of resources, and economic activities.

WG.7A Construct and analyze population pyramids and use other data, graphics, and maps to describe the population characteristics of different societies and to predict future population trends.

WG.7C Describe trends in world population growth and distribution.

WG.9A Identify physical and/or human factors such as climate, vegetation, language, trade networks, political units, river systems, and religion that constitute a region.

WG.10A Describe the forces that determine the distribution of goods and services in free enterprise, socialist, and communist economic systems.

WG.10B Classify where specific countries fall along the economic spectrum between free enterprise and communism.

WG.13A Interpret maps to explain the division of land, including man-made and natural borders, into separate political units such as cities, states, or countries.

WG.14A Analyze current events to infer the physical and human processes that lead to the formation of boundaries and other political divisions.

WG.14C Analyze the human and physical factors that influence the power to control territory and resources, create conflict/war, and impact international political relations of sovereign nations such as China.

WG.18A Analyze cultural changes in specific regions caused by migration, war, trade, innovations, and diffusion.

WG.18C Identify examples of cultures that maintain traditional ways, including traditional economies.

WG.18D Evaluate the spread of cultural traits to find examples of cultural convergence and divergence such as the spread of democratic ideas.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

WG.21B Locate places of contemporary geopolitical significance on a map.

WG.22C Use geographic terminology correctly.

WG.22D Use standard grammar, spelling, sentence structure, and punctuation.

TEKS and ELPS for Regional World Geography Unit 10--East and Southeast Asia from TEKS Resource System.

Emergence of Modern China

China Modernizes

China is the world's largest Communist country. Isolated from Europeans and Central Asians by the Himalayas and other high mountain ranges, Chinese culture has endured for thousands of years. Rich in history, adventure, and intrigue, a tour through China would reveal a people with a deep, longstanding love of the land, traditions as old as recorded history, and a spirit of commerce and hard work that sustains them to this day.

The form of Communism promoted by Mao Zedong was not the same as the type of Communism practiced in the Soviet Union. Various Communist experiments were forced upon the Chinese people, with disastrous results. For example, in 1958, the Great Leap Forward was announced. In this program, people were divided into communes, and peasant armies were to work the land while citizens were asked to donate their pots and pans to produce scrap metal and increase the country's industrial output. The goal was to improve productivity and increase efficiency. The opposite occurred, and millions of Chinese died of starvation during this era.

Another disaster began in 1966 and continued until Mao died in 1976. The Great Proletarian Cultural Revolution wreaked havoc on four thousand years of Chinese traditional culture in a purge of elitism and a drive toward total loyalty to the Communist Party. Armies of indoctrinated students were released into the countryside and the cities to report anyone opposing the party line.

Schools were closed, universities were attacked, and intellectuals were killed. Anyone suspected of subversion might be tortured into signing a confession. Violence, anarchy, and economic disaster followed this onslaught of anti-Democratic terror. Estimates vary, but most sources indicate that about 30 million people lost their lives during the Mao Zedong era through purges, starvation, and conflict.

During the early decades of Communism in China, all travel into or out of China was severely restricted by the so-called Bamboo Curtain. The United States had backed the nationalist movement during the Chinese Civil War and continued to support Chiang Kai-shek in Formosa (Taiwan). The United States did not recognize Communist China. The US embassy was in Taiwan, not in Beijing.

As China was experiencing its disastrous experiments with Communism, the core economic areas of the world were advancing with commercial technology and high-tech electronics and sending rockets to the moon. China lagged behind in its industrial activities and became a country based on agriculture. A visit to China by US president Richard Nixon in 1972 signaled the opening of diplomatic relations with the United States and was also viewed as a Cold War move against the Soviet Union.

The Chinese Communist Party's approach when it took power was to institute a "planned economy." A planned economy, sometimes called a command economy, stands in marked contrast to a market economy. In a planned economy, the government controls all aspects of the economy, including what goods and products should be produced, how much of each should be produced, how products will be sold or distributed and for what (if any) price, who should have jobs and what jobs they should have, how much people will be paid, and all other decisions related to the economy.

In a planned economy, businesses are nationalized. That is, businesses are owned by the government rather than by any private entity. By contrast, in a market economy, businesses are privately owned, and most decisions are driven by consumer and investor behavior.

The decade of the 1980s was a transition for China in that there was a shift of focus from China's Communist economy to a more market-oriented economy. The economic collapse of the Soviet Union in the early 1990s coincided with the opening of China to trade with the West. In 1992, China announced that it would transition to a socialist market economy, a hybrid of a Communist-planned economy and a market economy.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

A series of statements by China's political leaders suggested that in order for China to enjoy a more mature form of socialism, greater national wealth was needed. They further indicated that socialism and poverty should not be considered synonymous and that the country was ready to turn its attention to increasing the wealth and quality of life of its citizens.

During the next decade, China experienced enormous growth in its economy. At the beginning of this century, China was ranked in the top five of the world's largest trading nations, joining ranks with the United States, Germany, Japan, and France. The sheer size of China's population contributes to the magnitude of its economy. This does not, however, mean that most of China's population has a high standard of living.

Political Units

China can be divided into regions utilizing various criteria: political regions, economic regions, natural regions, and climatic regions to name a few. The Communist government of the People's Republic of China (PRC) is made up of a number of types of political units. The main region of China Proper includes 22 provinces, including the island province of Hainan in the south. The island formerly known as Formosa, now called Taiwan, is considered by China to be its twenty-third province but in actuality remains under its own government—the Republic of China (ROC).

Mainland China includes five autonomous regions, each with a designated minority group; four municipalities; and two special administrative regions (SARs) that hold considerable autonomy. All but Taiwan are included in the region called mainland China, except the SARs Hong Kong and Macau.

The autonomous regions exist as a kind of a compromise between China and the regions that would prefer to be totally independent and that have large non-Han or ethnic minority populations. These five autonomous regions are Tibet, Guangxi, Xinjiang, Inner Mongolia, and Ningxia. It should be noted that "autonomous" is how China would describe these regions, but that description is arguable. In reality, the autonomous regions have very little legal ability to govern themselves.

Four of China's cities have governance structures that are roughly on par with that of the provinces. The directly controlled municipalities are Beijing, Tianjin, Shanghai, and Chongqing and encompass large geographic areas well beyond the city limits, including towns, villages, and rural areas.

The two SARs of China are Hong Kong and Macau. Hong Kong was part of the British Empire and later a British protectorate until its governance reverted to China in 1997. Known informally under Chinese law as "one country, two systems," Hong Kong and Macau are guaranteed a great degree of autonomy for at least the first 50 years after the transfer from Britain to China. China is responsible for defense and some portions of foreign affairs, while Hong Kong and Macau are responsible for most other matters of state, including their legal systems, law enforcement, immigration laws, monetary systems, customs policies, and others.



China and its administrative divisions, including autonomous regions, municipalities, and SARs

China's Communist government is controlled by the Chinese Communist Party, which is protected and guaranteed power by the country's constitution. Compared to the more open democratic political systems of Western Europe and North America, China is considered an authoritarian state, complete with heavy restrictions on the Internet, the press, freedom of assembly, reproductive

rights, and freedom of religion. Economic trade with the West has created more openness with travel and business, which has begun to challenge or erode the hard-line politics of decades past.

The People

Population

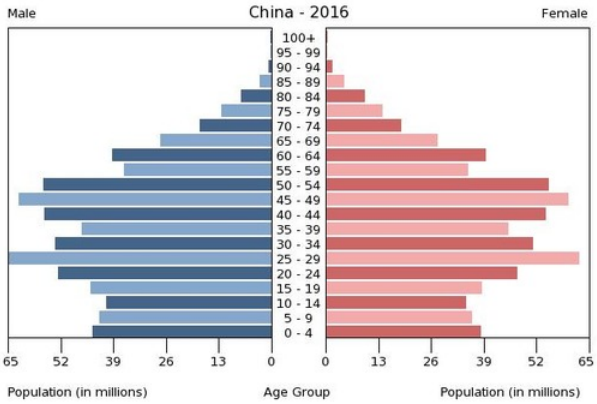
With 4,000 years of culture to build on, China continues to press forward into the 21st century. In 2010, China had more people than any other country in the world, about 1.33 billion. Most of its people live in China Proper, in the eastern regions of the country. China Proper has the best agricultural lands in the country, the most fertile river basins, and the most moderate climates. For perspective, China has over one billion more people than the United States, with most of those people living in the southeastern portion of China. During Mao's time, there was little concern for population growth, but in recent decades China has implemented measures to deal with its teeming population.

The government of China has taken the responsibility to address its growing population and the country's ability to provide for the needs of the additional populace. In 1978, China implemented the one-child-only statute, limiting family size to one child. The policy allows for exemptions under certain conditions. Couples living in rural areas and people of minority status are two examples of exempted conditions and may be permitted more than one child, especially if the first child is a girl. Peripheral administrative regions like Macau and Hong Kong are exempt.

The one-child-only policy was implemented in an attempt to address environmental, economic, and social issues related to population growth. This policy has helped reduce China's potential population by hundreds of millions of people, but the controversial policy has not been easy to implement or make effective. There are growing concerns regarding the policy's negative impact on society. In response to the one-child-only policy, there have been reports of female infanticide and a higher number of abortions. However, surveys taken by independent agencies indicate that about three-fourths of China's population supports it.

Economic incentives pressure families to abide by the one-child-only policy. Government benefits and social programs offer incentives that may be lost if couples have more than one child. Enforcement of the policy has been left to the provincial authorities with varying levels of success. Parents eager to have a boy to carry on the family name might abort a female baby. Though now illegal, the use of ultrasound equipment to determine the gender of a fetus is widespread.

Some provinces in China have a severe shortage of women because of the policy. Men in provinces where women are scarce may have to migrate to find a wife. In China, there are more boys born than girls. The ratio averages more than 10 percent more boys than girls, with some provinces reaching more than 25 percent. This imbalance creates cultural issues that may have a negative impact on traditional society. Conventional society is challenged when there are a large number of unmarried young men in an area that may not have adequate employment opportunities for them or available women for potential marriage.



Age structure in China: 0-14 years: 17.15 percent (male 127,484,177/female 109,113,241); 15-24 years: 12.78 percent (male 94,215,607/female 82,050,623); 25-54 years: 48.51 percent (male 341,466,438/female 327,661,460); 55-64 years: 10.75 percent (male 74,771,050/female 73,441,177); 65 years and over: 10.81 percent (male 71,103,029/female 77,995,969)

More than 50 percent of China's population lives in rural areas, meaning there is potential for high levels of rural-to-urban migration. The core industrial cities located in China Proper attract migrants in a periphery-to-core migration pattern. China hopes that this urbanization and industrial activity will also support its population control methods and fuel the industrial labor base.

China's urbanization increased at an unprecedented rate from 17 percent in 1978 to 47 percent in 2010. This rural-to-urban shift has been one of the largest in human history. It still continues; many workers shift from holding temporary employment in the cities to returning to their families in the countryside between jobs.

Ethnic Groups

Han Chinese is the largest ethnic group in China, with about 90 percent of the country's population. Some of the largest minority groups include Zhuang (Tai) in the south, Manchu in the northeast, Mongolian in the north-central region, Uyghur in Western China, and Tibetan in Tibet, although many other minority groups exist. The main language in China, Mandarin, is spoken in different ways in different parts of the country, particularly in the north and the south. The number of languages in China (over 290) roughly corresponds to the number of ethnic groups in the country.



The languages most commonly spoken belong to the Sinitic branch of the Sino-Tibetan language family, which contains Mandarin (spoken by 70 percent of the population).

In Western China, where the percentage of Han Chinese is quite low, most of the population is Uyghur, a group that tends to be Muslim. There are also Kazahks, Kyrgyz, and Tajiks from Central Asia, who are also predominantly Muslim. In 2010, the precise number of Muslims in China was not known, but government reports indicated there were about 21 million. Other reports indicate there may be three times that many. Minority groups like the Uyghurs have often experienced discrimination by the Chinese government, which has taken measures to marginalize minority groups.



Temple of the Filial Blessing, a place for lineage religion, in Wenzhou, Zhejiang.

As a Communist country, there is no official religion in China, nor is any supported by the Chinese government. Before Communism, most of the people followed a type of Buddhism. Other belief systems included Taoism and the teachings of

Confucius. Christianity does exist in China, but it is illegal to proselytize. Despite that, the Christian population in China has grown rapidly in recent decades. The exact number is unknown, but the *CIA World Factbook* estimates three to fourth percent of the population to be Christian, or somewhere between 39 and 52 million adherents.

There are many other sects and religious groups in China that have gained attention in recent years. Among these are the followers of Falun Gong, which emerged in the 1990s and has elements of Buddhism and Taoism in its beliefs. The group claims to be more of a science than a religion. The Chinese government believes otherwise and banned the Falun Gong in 1999 after the group staged a large protest against the Communist Party. The crackdown by the government included many arrests and stiff prison sentences. The group is currently banned by the government.

Economic Summary

In the past two decades, China has shifted its economy from a closed system with a centrally planned, government-controlled market to one with more open trade and a flexible production structure. These economic reforms have allowed capitalistic tendencies to drive production, have promoted increased involvement in private enterprise, and have increased international investment in the Chinese economy.

China has phased out collective farms and has increased agricultural production. The approach to free enterprise and international trade and investment has become more open, and the Chinese economy has grown at a rapid rate. Open trade and interaction with the global community have allowed China to catch up with the rest of the world in terms of information and communication technology, and computer and Internet use in China has opened up many sectors to new opportunities and employment possibilities. China's policy of creating special economic zones (SEZs) has increased urban and economic growth in coastal cities, fueling the strong rural-to-urban shift in the population.



Special economic zones of China (SEZs) are special economic zones located in mainland China.

The fast-paced growth of the Chinese economy in the past decade has brought with it some negative consequences. The exploitation of resources and the heavy utilization of the environment have resulted in serious soil erosion and air pollution. The water table in many parts of China has decreased because of heavy demands on the nation's water supply. Arable land is being lost to erosion and inadequate land-use practices.

Rural areas have not received consideration or resources equal to the coastal cities, so conditions remain poor for most rural people. Half of China's population earns the equivalent of a few dollars per day, while a fortunate few earn high salaries. Unemployment is at an elevated level for tens of millions of migrants who shift from location to location, looking for work. There is also an unfortunate degree of corruption within the government and state-run offices.

Compared to Western countries, China is an authoritarian state that does not allow labor unions, free speech, freedom of religion, or freedom of the press. There has been more openness in China's economic reforms and in travel, but other strict rules of the state remain. There is no minimum wage law for factory workers, who work long hours and do not receive benefits or sick leave. There

are fewer safety requirements or government regulations for security. China is trying to have the best of both worlds: the efficiency of an authoritarian government and an efficient market-driven capitalist economy.

Growth of Enterprise and Industry

During the 1980s, following the death of Mao Zedong, China went through a transition period. The new leader, Deng Xiaoping, realized that in order for China to compete in the world market, its economy would have to be modernized. The challenge was to open up to the outside without the outside placing pressure on the Communist system inside of China. The so-called Bamboo Curtain, which referred to the restriction of movement of goods and people across Chinese borders, diminished.

To attract business and tap into the global market economy, China established SEZs along the coast at strategic port cities. SEZs attracted international corporations who wanted to manufacture goods cheaply, while China's population of 1.3 billion people provided an enormous labor pool and consumer market. China's modernization efforts paid off in the 1990s, when world trade increased and US trade with China exploded.

By the year 2000, China had profited greatly because of its expanded manufacturing capacity. The coastal cities and the SEZs had become core industrial centers, attracting enormous numbers of migrants—most of them poor agricultural workers—looking for work in the factories. Compared to other jobs, factory jobs are prized employment opportunities. Rural-to-urban shift has kicked in and China's urban growth is occurring at unprecedented rates.

Chinese people are moving to the cities looking for work, just like people in many other areas of the world. The SEZs encourage multinational corporations to move their overseas operations to China and take advantage of the lower labor and production costs. China benefits from the new business opportunities and by the creation of jobs for its citizens. SEZs operate under the objectives of providing tax incentives for foreign companies, exporting market-driven manufactured products, and creating joint partnerships so that everyone benefits. In the past decade, four main cities have been designated as SEZs, along with the entire province of Hainan Island to the south. Many coastal cities were also designated as development areas for industrial expansion.



This picture depicts the inside of an electronics factory in Shenzhen, China.

In 2006, the president of China called for an expansion of the economy to focus on more innovative activities. The government allowed additional funding for more research in the areas of genetics and gene therapy, computer software development, semiconductors, and alternative energy technologies. China has a high-level energy demand to fuel its expanding economy and provide for a large population, so alternative energy development has been expanding into wind and solar power for both domestic and commercial purposes. China's industrial sector is advancing to compete in the global marketplace and muscle into the high-tech economy once dominated by core areas of Japan, Western Europe, and the United States.

Geopolitics

The political environment of China cannot be separated from its geography. To understand the larger political picture of China's position in the world, one has to understand China's geography. In terms of its land area, China is a large country. It includes an immense peripheral region surrounding China Proper consisting of minority populations and buffer states.

The core of China is the Han Chinese heartland of China Proper. This is where most of the population lives and where the best agricultural land for food production is located. The surrounding periphery consists of autonomous regions and minority populations, including Tibet, Western China, Inner Mongolia, and Northwestern China. Tibet is a buffer state between China and India; high mountains provide a buffer between India and Tibet. Nepal, Bhutan, and Kashmir are also buffer states between China and South Asia. High mountain ranges extend all along China's western boundary.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

Western China has a majority Muslim population closely aligned with ethnic groups in Central Asia. Inner Mongolia and the independent country of Mongolia create a buffer between China and Russia. China's actual border with Russia is remote and distant. Northeast China was historically called Manchuria and is home to the Manchus, who are not Han Chinese.

Even the isolated sovereign country of North Korea acts as a buffer between China and the world superpower of the United States through its surrogate South Korea. The border with Southeast Asia is mountainous with difficult terrain and very little access. All these buffer regions insulate the Han heartland from the outside. China's power base is actually a territorial island insulated and isolated from the rest of the world. Technology and trade have opened links between the Han Chinese heartland and the global marketplace.

In the scope of geopolitics (the study of the geography of international relations), the core of China is protected on all fronts except one, the eastern coast. Coastal China is accessible to anyone with a ship. Coastal China is where Japan and the European colonialists such as France, Great Britain, Portugal, and Germany all came to carve up China for its imperial advancements. Also located along the coast is the island of Taiwan with the independent government of the ROC.

Taiwan has been on friendly terms with the United States, which has posed a threat to the Chinese mainland. The coast makes China vulnerable. The challenge for China has been to neutralize the coastal threat and reduce its vulnerability. This is where the SEZs make a difference: the Chinese economy has relied on the SEZs to attract foreign corporations to conduct their business with the Chinese in these coastal cities. The economic world has forged ties with the Chinese along China's coastal waters. The extensive coastal development creates a situation where it is now in everyone's best interest to make the coastal region of China safe and prosperous.

In the geopolitical sense, China has historically operated under three main premises. The first premise is that China must secure a buffer zone in the periphery, which includes the regions along China's borders. Second, the country needs to continue to maintain unity within the Han Chinese majority that anchors the core region of China Proper. The third component of China's geopolitical strategy is to protect and secure its vulnerable coastal region. The country needs to find a way to marginalize outside influence and keep the heartland protected from invaders. These three geopolitical directives were designed before the postindustrial economy emerged with the information age, but the main themes of securing and protecting China remain.

China has additional political issues within the core region of China Proper. To maintain a unified Han Chinese power base, there should not be uneven levels of equity in the standards of living within the core region. Manufacturing has rapidly increased in the coastal cities of the SEZs and other development areas. The standard of living in the coastal cities has improved, which has created a disparity between the coastal cities and the rural regions of the interior.

Factory workers can earn the equivalent of 50 cents an hour, while their counterparts working in the fields in agriculture are only making the equivalent of a few dollars per day. As a Communist country, this was one of the basic foundational principles within a socialist society—the even distribution of wealth. It kept everyone equal, at least in theory. The more open capitalist economy is changing this and challenging the equality issue.

China is also economically unevenly reliant on its ability to maintain a high level of export manufacturing as its method of gaining wealth. The country does not have a type of geography that holds adequate agricultural resources to provide for its vast population. Manufacturing requires good political and economic relationships with the international community. In summary, China's eastern coast development is a risk that China is forced to take. The risk is a trade-off. On one hand, the eastern coast is the most geopolitically vulnerable side of China, but on the other hand, it is where the most extensive economic gains have been made in recent years.

China's Bamboo Curtain has disappeared, and the country is no longer isolated from the rest of the world. Economic development has created a strong degree of dependency on other countries through the doorways of China's coastal cities. China is becoming dependent on the outside world for oil, raw materials, and technology. Multinational corporations are dependent on China for low-cost manufactured goods. China is becoming more integrated within the network of the global economy.

Key Takeaways

- China has embarked on a number of serious transitions since the Communist republic was declared in 1949. Since that time, the country has shifted from a command economy to a market economy and has opened up trade to the West. This has opened up more opportunities for the Chinese people as well.
- China has a number of autonomous regions and municipalities. Many of these political units are also home to minority ethnic groups. Han Chinese make up about 90 percent of the people of China.
- China's large population has prompted the government to implement a one-child-only policy, which has resulted in a decrease in population growth but has also caused an imbalance in the percentages of boys and girls being born in many of the provinces.
- The creation of SEZs along the coast, and an open-trade policy, have rapidly developed China's manufacturing sector. This trend has attracted multinational corporations to move their operations to China to tap into the low labor and overhead costs and receive tax incentives from the Chinese government. The result has been an increase in the rural-to-urban shift in China's population.
- China's historical geopolitical situation was to secure a buffer around its heartland, unify the Han majority, and protect its vulnerable coastal region. Economic trade and interaction with the global economy have made China dependent on other countries for its continual economic success.

Vocabulary Terms

	Known as the "Father of Modern China", he was a Chinese political and military leader who served as the leader of the Republic of China between 1928 and 1975; improved transportation, education, industry.
	Production of goods and services is determined by a central government, which usually owns the means of production. Production does not necessarily reflect consumer demand. Also called a planned economy.
	A movement based on the teachings of the Chinese philosopher, Confucius. He stressed the importance of education in an ordered society in which one respects one's elders and obeys the government.
	A group of people in a country who share a unique culture and identity.
	The merging of regional economies in which nations become dependent on each other for goods and services.
	A program implemented by Mao Zedong in 1958 to speed economic development in China.
	The basic support systems needed to keep an economy going, including power, communications, transportation, water, sanitation, and education systems.
	A type of economy in which the production of goods and services is determined by the demand of the consumers. Also known as a demand economy or capitalism.
	Leader of Communist Party who defeated the Nationalist Party in 1949 and declared China a communist state.
	Adopted by China in 1979, this policy was in reaction to its rapidly growing population. This policy restricted families to only one child and outlawed early marriage.
	These provincial-level regions of China enjoy the highest degree of autonomy, and no or less interference by either the Central Government or the Chinese Communist Party.

Applying Knowledge

Discussion and Study Questions

1. What did the Bamboo Curtain refer to? How has China changed with regard to its Bamboo Curtain?
2. What are SEZs? Where would we find them in China? Why are they located where they are located?
3. Which region of China has the highest population density? Why do they live here rather than in other areas of China?
4. What policy has China implemented to help curb population growth? What are some of the results of these policies?
5. What are the five autonomous regions based on in China? Where are they located?
6. Why did China shift from a command economy to a market economy?
7. What are the main ethnic groups, languages, and religions in China?
8. Considering current conditions, what are the major development patterns in China?
9. Under what four main principles do the SEZs operate?

10. What were the three main historical objectives in China's geopolitical situation?

Real-World Geography Exercises

Using Google Maps, locate each one of the cities on the list below. Calculate the distance and how long it would take to travel by airplane from the Portland International Airport in Portland, Oregon, to each location. Be prepared to share and discuss your answers.

Airport	City served
Beijing Capital International Airport	Beijing
Shanghai Pudong International Airport	Shanghai
Guangzhou Baiyun International Airport	Guangzhou
Chengdu Shuangliu International Airport	Chengdu
Shenzhen Bao'an International Airport	Shenzhen
Kunming Changshui International Airport	Kunming
Shanghai Hongqiao International Airport	Shanghai
Xi'an Xianyang International Airport	Xi'an
Chongqing Jiangbei International Airport	Chongqing
Hangzhou Xiaoshan International Airport	Hangzhou
Nanjing Lukou International Airport	Nanjing
Zhengzhou Xinzheng International Airport	Zhengzhou
Changsha Huanghua International Airport	Changsha
Qingdao Liuting International Airport	Qingdao
Wuhan Tianhe International Airport	Wuhan
Haikou Meilan International Airport	Haikou
Ürümqi Diwopu International Airport	Ürümqi
Tianjin Binhai International Airport	Tianjin
Sanya Phoenix International Airport	Sanya

Source

Current Events

Geographic Education Scoop It

Australia Has Blocked Huawei And ZTE From Providing Equipment For Its 5G Network

AI Ambulances And Robot Doctors: China Seeks Digital Salve To Ease Hospital Strain

Trade War Could Chill China's Growing Investment In US Economy

China's Culture Distorted by Western Translations


ina's Political Geography - Provinc
n Chinese Now
Watch on YouTube

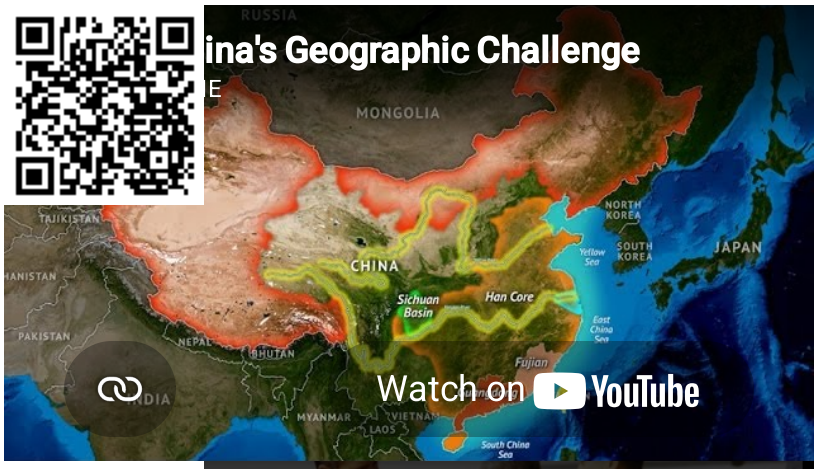

orld Business: China's Population
dbusiness
Watch on YouTube

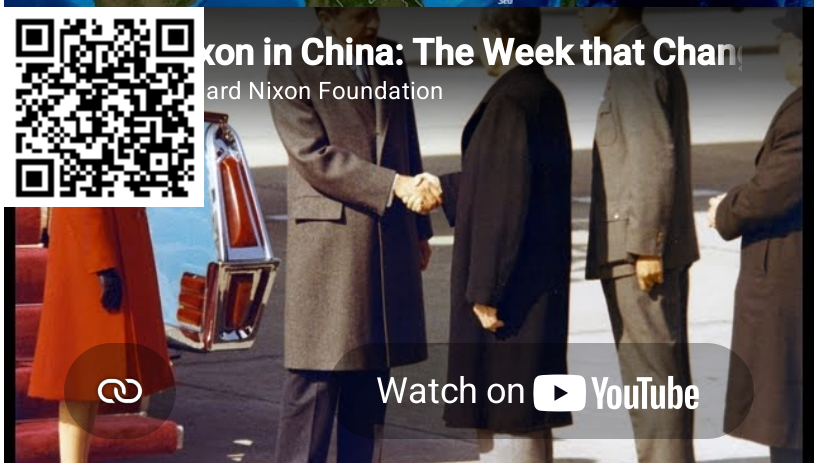

eserving Cultural Heritage for Chi
Hong Kong Polytechnic University
Watch on YouTube
The Orochen people expressed their warmest gratitude to the students.


Watch on YouTube


Watch on YouTube


Watch on YouTube
WWW.CCTV-AMERICA.COM
@CCTV_America
CCTVAmerica
CCTV America





Helpful Websites for the Study of Geography

Canadian Encyclopedia is an encyclopedia funded by the Canadian government covering all branches of knowledge. Their scholarly collection includes interactive materials.

CIA World Factbook provides information on the people, history, government, economy, energy, geography, communications, transportation, military, and transnational issues for the world's entities.

Congress.gov is a US government website where you can find federal legislation, past and present, as well as information about the US legal system.

Drug Enforcement Administration (DEA) is a government agency website that provides current news, resources, topics of interest, information about drugs, careers in the DEA, and a tip hotline.

Library of Congress is the largest library in the world and provides manuscripts, files, information, pictures, and videos.

NASA Earth Observatory (NEO) is a US government agency website that allows users to search for and retrieve satellite images of Earth.

National Archives is a US government website that provides historical documents, photos, records, publications, and educator resources.

National Oceanic and Atmospheric Association (NOAA) is a US government agency website that provides weather-related information and ocean research.

National Map is a website by the United States Geological Survey and other federal, state, and local agencies that delivers topographic information for the United States.

NationMaster is a massive central data source and a handy way to graphically compare nations.

Real-Time World Air Quality Index is a website that measures most locations in the world for air pollution in real time.

StateMaster is a unique statistical database, which allows you to research and compare a multitude of different data on US states.

United Nations (UN) is an international organization founded in 1945 and made up of 193 member states. The UN maintains international peace and security, protects human rights, delivers humanitarian aid, promotes sustainable development, and upholds international law.

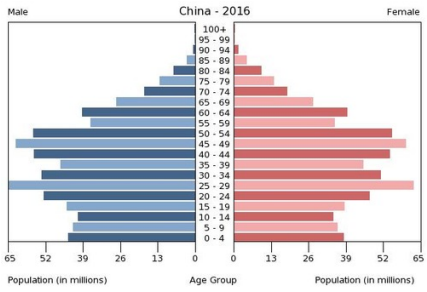
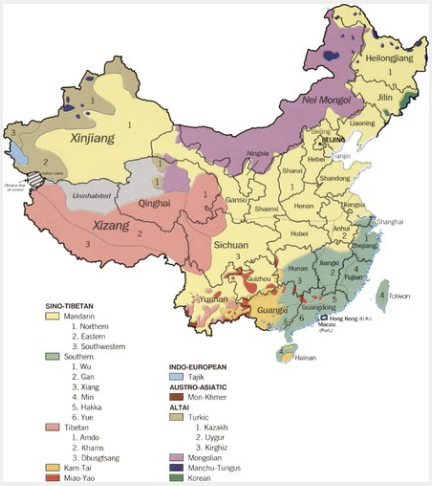
United States Census Bureau is a US government agency that provides a population clock, data, surveys, statistics, a library with information and infographics, news about the economy, and much more.

United States Geological Survey (USGS) is a US government agency website that provides scientific information about the natural hazards that threaten lives, the natural resources we rely on, the health of our ecosystems and environment, and the impacts of climate and land-use change.

Whitehouse.gov is a US government website that provides the latest presidential news, information about the budget, policy, defense, and many more topics.

World Health Organization (WHO) is under the United Nations and provides leadership on matters critical to health, shapes the research agenda on health, and monitors the health situation and assessing health trends around the world. Their website provides information on the state of health around the world, outbreaks, current health news, and more.

World Trade Organization (WTO) is an intergovernmental organization that regulates international trade. The website provides information on the history of the multilateral trading system, featured videos, news and events, trade topics, and more.

Image	Reference	Attributions
	[Figure 1]	**Credit:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeograp...merging-china/ **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/a84bc086764dac58a8c9c4467677ce79.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 2]	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/ch.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 3]	**Credit:** Jiang **Source:** https://upload.wikimedia.org/Wikipedia/commons/5/55/China_linguistic_map.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 6]	**Credit:** By Steve Jurvetson from Menlo Park, USA (glue worksUploaded by Zolo) [CC BY 2.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/2.0)], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Electronics_factory_in_Shenzhen.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

This page titled 10.2: Emergence of Modern China (2 Days) is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by CK12 via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

10.3: China's Periphery (2 Days)

Chapter Challenges

1. Outline Hong Kong’s progression from a British colony through the transformation into a special autonomous region of China.
2. Describe why Hong Kong and Shenzhen have been important to the development of the Chinese economy.
3. Understand the development of and reasons for a government for Taiwan that is separate from the government of mainland China.
4. Describe the current relationship between Taiwan and mainland China.
5. Explain the challenges that Tibet has experienced in becoming an autonomous region of China.
6. Understand who the Dalai Lama is and describe his traditional position within Tibet.
7. Summarize the role Mongolia played during the Cold War and learn how that role is changing as Mongolia becomes more involved in the global economy.
8. Explain why the peripheral regions of Tibet, Hong Kong, and Taiwan are important to the Chinese government and the vitality of the country.

Learning Objectives

TEKS Regional Unit 10 East and Southeast Asia: Chapter 10.3 China's Periphery

WG.2A Describe the human and physical characteristics of the same regions at different periods of time to evaluate relationships between past events and current conditions.

WG.4C Explain the influence of climate on the distribution of biomes in different regions.

WG.5A Analyze how the character of a place is related to its political, economic, social, and cultural elements.

WG.6A Locate and describe human and physical features that influence the size and distribution of settlements.

WG.8A Compare ways that humans depend on, adapt to, and modify the physical environment, including the influences of culture and technology.

WG.10C Compare the ways people satisfy their basic needs through the production of goods and services such as subsistence agriculture versus commercial agriculture or cottage industries versus commercial industries.

WG.16B Describe elements of culture, including language, religion, beliefs and customs, institutions, and technologies.

WG.16C Explain ways various groups of people perceive the characteristics of their own and other cultures, places, and regions differently. regions differently.

WG.16D Compare life in a variety of urban and rural areas in the world to evaluate political, economic, social, and environmental changes.

WG.17A Describe and compare patterns of culture such as language, religion, land use, education, and customs that make specific regions of the world distinctive. make specific regions of the world distinctive.

WG.17B Describe major world religions, including animism, Buddhism and their spatial distribution.

WG.22E Create original work using proper citations and understanding and avoiding plagiarism.

WG.22C Use geographic terminology correctly.

WG.22D Use standard grammar, spelling, sentence structure, and punctuation.

TEKS and ELPS for Regional World Geography Unit 10--East and Southeast Asia from TEKS Resource System.

China's Periphery

The heartland of China has always been part of China Proper. Surrounding China Proper are a number of autonomous regions, associated territories, and independent countries. These peripheral areas buffer China Proper from the rest of the world. They also provide China with either access to trade relationships or access to raw materials needed for development. Each peripheral political unit has its own unique physical and cultural characteristics and, in many cases, a minority population that is other than Han Chinese.

Hong Kong and Shenzhen



Map of Hong Kong

Hong Kong is a former British colony and includes a number of islands on the southern coast of China. Hong Kong includes an excellent port, Victoria—one of the best in Asia. Victoria's deep water port is on the interior side of Hong Kong Island and is protected from the sea, allowing ship access to an extensive sheltered harbor area. To the north of Hong Kong Island is a peninsula called New Territories, which the British agreed to lease from China in 1897 for a period of 99 years. Bordering the New Territories on the mainland is the rapidly growing industrial city of Shenzhen.

Hong Kong was a major entry point into China for Britain during the colonial era. The colony was a British outpost that created a doorway for British expansion into China. The port allowed for an early trade relationship to become established. The trade relationship was broken during the Korean War in the 1950s. Britain and China found themselves on opposite sides of the war. China was a newly created Communist country and sided with North Korea. Great Britain was a capitalist country and sided with South Korea.

The boundary between the busy port of Hong Kong and China was closed. This left Hong Kong with a world-class port but no access to its main markets in China. Instead of closing the port and shutting down shipping, the business community of Hong Kong took advantage of its unique situation and first-rate port to create a world trade center. Ships would import raw materials, which would be processed or manufactured into finished products. The products would then be shipped back out at a profit.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org



The Special Administrative Region (SAR) of Hong Kong, with Shenzhen across the Border from the New Territories.

From the theory of how countries gain wealth, recall that manufacturing was traditionally the method with the highest value-added profits. Hong Kong is a good example of this in action. That is, manufacturing was a successful method of gaining wealth for Hong Kong. First, low-level goods such as clothing and textiles were produced with Hong Kong's cheap labor and low costs. As business increased, higher-level technical goods were produced, such as radios and other electronic products, and incomes increased.

Soon, Hong Kong was a business and banking center trading with all global markets. International trade attracted a strong financial network that enhanced the free market system in Hong Kong. Business in Hong Kong attracted attention in Beijing. Chinese leader Deng Xiaoping, who had begun China's open door policy in the 1980s, viewed Hong Kong as a major access point to establish trade and commerce with. In the 1990s, the special economic zone of Shenzhen became an important development area for Chinese industries and multinational corporations. China once again used Hong Kong as a major trade corridor so that about one-fourth of all the country's imports and exports were being shipped through the port of Hong Kong.



Shenzhen is a major city in Guangdong Province, China.

During the 1990s, as China actively invested in its industrial sector, it sought ways to attract the business generated by Taiwan and Hong Kong, two economic tigers. Opportunity came knocking in 1997 when the 99-year lease of the New Territories to Britain expired. China did not want to renew the lease. A deal covering all of Hong Kong was made between China and Great Britain. Britain would relinquish all its claims to Victoria, the port, and all of Hong Kong if China would allow the area to remain non-Communist and under its own autonomy for 50 years. China agreed, and Britain left Hong Kong in 1997.

Hong Kong became associated with mainland China as a special autonomous region but remained capitalist and democratic in its operations. This opened the door for Taiwan and other trading partners to increase trade with China through Hong Kong. Shenzhen,

a special economic zone (SEZ) across the border from Hong Kong in China, was ready to capitalize on its accessibility to the port and the enormous trade that had been established by Hong Kong.

Shenzhen became one of the fastest growing cities in the world and has become a center of manufacturing and trade for the global economy. It grew from a moderately sized city of about 350,000 in the early 1980s to a city of 10 and a half million by 2010 and is still growing. One of Shenzhen's largest trading partners is the Walmart Corporation, as factories in the city produce goods for export to the United States and sale in Walmarts around the country. Shenzhen has established a port of its own and is a magnet for international trade.

More than 95 percent of the seven million people living in Hong Kong are ethnically Chinese. The people have strong ties to mainland China but value their separate and independent economic and political status. Hong Kong is a major financial and banking center for Asia and has been working with the Chinese government to provide private banking services for Chinese citizens.

The small land size of Hong Kong makes it a high-priced real estate destination. The cost of living is high, and space is at a premium and expensive. Nevertheless, Hong Kong attracts millions of visitors per year and has established itself as a tourism hub for people desiring to visit southern China. Tens of millions of tourists each year use Hong Kong as a base or stopover point to enter China's southern provinces. Hong Kong offers visitors immense shopping possibilities in a safe and modern environment that is attractive to people from all over the world. Cantonese is the official language, but English is widely spoken in Hong Kong because of Britain's influence and because of world trade relationships.



This picture shows Victoria Harbor in Hong Kong.

Macau



Map of Macau

Across the Pearl River Estuary to the west is the former Portuguese colony of Macau. The arrangement between China and the British government over Hong Kong provided a pattern that was also applied to Macau. At the end of 1999, Portugal relinquished its claim to Macau and the colony was turned over to the Chinese government under an agreement similar to the agreement between Britain and China regarding Hong Kong. Macau was enabled to retain its autonomy and free-market economy for 50 years

as it becomes a special administrative region (SAR) of China. Macau is a much smaller territory than Hong Kong, and home to only about one-half of a million residents.



Macao is 37 miles southwest of Hong Kong and 90 miles from Guangzhou of Mainland China.

Taiwan



Map of Taiwan

Taiwan is separated from the Chinese mainland by the Taiwan Strait. In 2017, the population of the island, which is about the size of the US state of Maryland, was approximately 23 million. The island is mountainous and has rugged national parks in its interior, while most of the people in Taiwan live in bustling cities along the coast. Taiwan's push for good education and technical skills for its citizens has paid off in the form of high incomes and an industrialized economy.

After World War II, when China raised its Bamboo Curtain, the United States cut its trade relations with the Communist mainland. However, the United States did trade a great deal with the Nationalists in Taiwan. The deep tensions that exist between China and Taiwan are easy to understand given the history that led to Taiwan's current existence. One of the flashpoints in China-Taiwan relations has been the "One China" policy. Originally asserted by Beijing, the principle contends that there is only one indivisible China, which encompasses all of China, including Taiwan, Hong Kong, Macau, and Tibet.

During the Cold War, the sizeable population of mainland China was attractive to US corporations that sought trade with China. In 1972, for the benefit of the United States and to counter the influence of the Soviet Union, US president Richard Nixon organized a visit to Beijing that opened the door to US-China diplomatic relations. There were conditions placed on the open door agreement that followed. One condition that mainland China imposed was for the US government to recognize the Communist government in Beijing as the official China.

To do this, the United States had to move their US embassy from Taipei, the capital city of Taiwan, to Beijing, and recognize only the Beijing government as the official China. The United States agreed to this policy. As a result, no government official in the US State Department, cabinet level or higher, can officially visit Taiwan. At the same time, no equal-level diplomat from Taiwan can officially visit the United States. This policy placed Taiwan in an ambiguous position: Is Taiwan an independent country or is it a part of mainland China?

Mainland China has always demanded that in order for countries to have good relations with the People's Republic of China (PRC), they must not recognize Taiwan (the Republic of China, or ROC). This has caused intermittent problems for the United States and other countries. The termination of diplomatic relations between the United States and the ROC was a huge blow for Taiwan, even though the United States continued to conduct trade with the island.

The United States has always supported Taiwan's economic independence. In 2007, the United States sold military arms to Taiwan. As a result, China began to deny routine access to its ports for US ships. Taiwan's status on the world stage has fluctuated. For about 20 years after the Nationalists set up a government in Taiwan, the ROC held a seat in the United Nations (UN), and the UN recognized Taiwan's claim as the legitimate government of China. In 1971, the UN changed its position and gave the seat to Beijing. The UN indicated it could not give a seat to Taiwan because Taiwan is not recognized as a legal nation.

In 2000, Taiwan renewed its efforts to be internationally recognized as a sovereign nation and announced tentative plans to formally secede from China. China responded with many threats and conducted military exercises across the strait from Taiwan. The military exercises were seen as another threat, essentially a show of military might meant to intimidate Taiwan into retreating from its secessionist position. The United States supported Taiwan by parking a naval fleet nearby, which incensed the mainland government. In 2005, China passed a law authorizing the use of military force to stop any secessionist actions by Taiwan.

Taiwan's economy continues to use its skilled labor base. In years past, Taiwan's factories produced textiles and light clothing. As incomes and skills advanced, production shifted to electronics and high-end goods, which it has since been exporting around the world. Taiwan has achieved a high standard of living for its people. When trade opened up through Hong Kong with mainland China, many Taiwanese industries shifted production to the SEZs along China's coast. Labor in SEZs is less expensive, leading to a corresponding rise in profits. Unfortunately, this has resulted in higher unemployment levels in Taiwan.



Street in Taiwan, ROC, illustrating modern businesses and use of scooters for transportation.

In the past few years, Taiwan's focus has turned from secession to trade. In 2008, Taiwan elected a government that, though nationalist in its ideology, is committed to strengthening trade and investment with China. Taiwan entered the World Trade Organization (WTO) in 2001 using the name Chinese Taipei. That move started a cascade of actions that improved "cross-strait" trading conditions, and within just a few years, direct trade between China and Taiwan has become extensive.

The question of Taiwan's political status remains unresolved and volatile, but trade and investment between China and Taiwan are robust and growing. Taiwan has been able to independently compete in world-class sporting events, including the Olympics, under the name Chinese Taipei.

Autonomous Region of Tibet

Located in mountainous southwestern China, Tibet is classified as one of China's autonomous regions, a disputed political arrangement. It is debatable whether Tibet or any of the other Chinese regions are actually autonomous. The legal structures allow for very little self-governance, and most new initiatives require approval from the Chinese central government. Tibet had been an independent entity through much of its history and governed itself as a Buddhist theocracy. Its theocratic political system established the Dalai Lama as both the head of state and the religious leader of the Tibetan people.

Tibet has had a complicated history with China. This is as true of its early history as it is today. In its early history, Tibet was an independent kingdom with its unique type of Buddhism as its state religion. It was during this era that a system of Lamaism, a

hierarchy of monks or other religious leaders, took hold. China's influence in Tibet fluctuated during the later years of the kingdom, in the 10th century. The Mongols absorbed Tibet into their empire during the first part of their conquests in the 13th century. However, in the 15th century, the Mongols gave considerable local authority to the Dalai Lama, making him the spiritual leader as well as a powerful political figure.

Tibet came under the control of China during the Qing Dynasty. When imperialist rule ended in China in 1911, Tibet began to once again assert its independence. Chinese, British, and Tibetan officials met and came up with an agreement that partitioned Tibet into Inner Tibet, which would be controlled by China, and Outer Tibet, which would be independent. China later indicated its intention to control all of Tibet, a move resented by the Tibetan people.

When Communists took control of China in 1949, the Dalai Lama was originally allowed control over domestic affairs while China would control all other governmental functions. The Chinese government then took steps to reduce the powers of the Dalai Lama and the Panchen Lama. With the intention of spreading Communism to Tibet, China destroyed monasteries, religious symbols and icons, and other long-practiced ways of life were threatened. The Tibetans considered the Chinese political dominance a cruel and invading force. Monasteries were burned, monks were beaten or imprisoned, and Buddhism was suppressed.



Potala Palace in Lhasa, Tibet, rests at 12,100 feet above sea level.

Tibetans revolted in 1956. Backed by the United States, the revolt continued even as China indicated it would suspend the transformation of Tibet. China brutally crushed the revolt in 1959, leaving tens of thousands of Tibetans dead or imprisoned. The Dalai Lama and thousands of Tibetans fled to Dharamsala, India, where they established a government in exile. At this point, China had a firm grip on Tibet, and in 1965 the reorganization of Tibet into a Chinese socialist region began in full force.

During the 1980s and early 1990s, China expressed some willingness to relent in its authoritarian control of Tibet. However, they demanded that the Dalai Lama renounce claims of Tibetan independence, which he refused. Demonstrations and continued violence occurred throughout this period. Chinese-Tibetan relations were further damaged when the Panchen Lama died mysteriously shortly after criticizing socialist reform in Tibet. The Panchen Lama is the next-highest Buddhist official under the Dalai Lama.

There is now a controversy with the Chinese government over the selection of the 11th Panchen Lama. China and Tibet both claimed the authority over choosing the Panchen Lama and each named a different person to take on the role. The situation illustrates the conflict over the minds and the people of Tibet.

Who is the Dalai Lama?

The Dalai Lama is the spiritual and political leader of all Tibetans. The Dalai Lama is thought to be the current incarnation of past Buddhist Masters or Tulkus. The Masters have grown behind the cycle of death and rebirth and choose their own time of rebirth to help educate humanity on how to live. As indicated, the Dalai Lama was always considered the head of state for the government of Tibet and its capital was located in Lhasa.

Tenzin Gyatso is the rebirth of the 13th Dalai Lama. When he was 15 years old, on November 17, 1950, he became Tibet's 14th Dalai Lama. This occurred only one month after China's invasion of Tibet. The Dalai Lama originally, under military pressure from China, ratified the 1951 Seventeen Point agreement. In 1959, he left Tibet and went into exile in India. China has

crushed any attempt of Tibetan resistance. While in India, the Dalai Lama has established the Tibetan government in exile and is attempting to preserve Tibetan culture among the thousands of refugees that have accompanied him.



The Dalai Lama

In 2008, a peaceful protest led by Buddhist monks turned violent. Chinese authorities responded with a harsh crackdown. The world's attention was focused on China at the time because the Olympic Games were underway in Beijing. China has often been a target for protests because of its human rights violations against Tibetans and other minority groups. Little attention was drawn to Tibet during the 2008 Olympic Games. China wanted to showcase its advancements in industrial development and culture and did not want the world to focus on the controversial issues with Tibet.

The population of Tibet is only about three million. People mainly live in the mountain valleys, below 7,000 feet. Lhasa is Tibet's main urban center as well as its capital. In the past couple of decades, China has softened its treatment of Tibetans and restored some of the monasteries. China has also moved thousands of ethnically Chinese people into Tibet to shift the ethnic balance of the population. A major rail line now directly connects Beijing with Lhasa, Tibet. Lhasa will soon have a majority Chinese population with cultural similarities that reflect more the attributes of China Proper than Tibet.



Lhasa is spread across the valley floor. The Potala Palace rises from the old city.

China wants to maintain the mountainous, rural region—with little inhabitable land area and very few people—as a buffer state between India and the Han Chinese heartland of China Proper. Tibet is also becoming more important to the government of Beijing and the business people in Shenzhen and Shanghai. The core-peripheral spatial relationship can be applied to Tibet and its relationship with China.

Tibet is a peripheral region with raw materials that provide benefits to the core areas of China, which require the raw materials for industrial development. Tibet can play an important role in the larger picture of the Chinese economy. The mountains of Tibet potentially hold vast amounts of natural resources that could support the growing industrial economy in China, which is based on

manufacturing goods for the global export markets. China will ensure that Tibet becomes economically integrated with the rest of China in spite of the cultural differences that may exist.

Mongolia



Map of Mongolia

Mongolia ranks as the world's 19th largest country in terms of square miles. Mongolia shares a similar geography with much of Kazakhstan, which is the world's largest landlocked nation; Mongolia is second-largest. Despite Mongolia's large land area (slightly smaller than the US state of Alaska or the country of Iran), its population is only about three million, and the country is the least densely populated country in the world.

Mountains, high plains, and grass-covered steppe cover much of Mongolia, a country that receives only between four and 10 inches of rain per year, precipitation that usually comes in the form of snow. The Gobi Desert to the south, extending from southern Mongolia into northern China, receives even less precipitation. Inner Mongolia is a sparsely inhabited autonomous region south of Mongolia that is governed by the Chinese government.

Mongolia's modern capital city of Ulan Bator is home to about one-third of the people of Mongolia. It has the coldest average temperature of any world capital. Mongolia's history includes the great Mongol Empire of Genghis Khan, which was established in the 13th century. The Soviet Union used Mongolia as a buffer state with China. Mongolia's Communist party dominated politics until the Soviet Union collapsed in the 1990s. The current government in Ulan Bator has to contend with Mongolia's position between the two large economies of Russia and China.

Tibetan Buddhism is the dominant religion in Mongolia and is practiced by about 50 percent of the population. The Communist influence is evident in that approximately 40 percent of the population considers itself nonreligious. Most of the people are of Mongol ethnicity. Today, about 30 percent of the people are still seminomadic and migrate seasonally to accommodate good grazing for their livestock.

A round yurt, which can be constructed at whatever location is selected for the season and disassembled for mobility, is the traditional dwelling. Mongolian culture and heritage revolve around a rural agrarian culture with an extensive reliance on horses. Archery, wrestling, and equestrian events are some of the most popular sporting activities.



Mongolian wrestling, known as Bokeh, is the folk wrestling style of Mongols in Mongolia.

Mongolia's economy has traditionally been centered on agriculture, but mining has grown in recent years to be a major economic sector. Mongolia has rich mineral resources of coal, molybdenum, copper, gold, tin, and tungsten. Being landlocked cuts Mongolia off from the global economy, but the large amounts of mineral reserves are in demand by core industrial areas for manufacturing

and should boost the poor economic conditions that dominate Mongolia's economy. China has increased its business presence in Mongolia and has been drawing Mongolia's attention away from its former Soviet ally to become a major trading partner.

Key Takeaways

- Hong Kong was a British colony with an excellent port that provided access to China during the colonial era. Hong Kong became an economic tiger and regained its importance for trade with the mainland during the open door policy of China in the 1980s. The colony was returned to China in 1997 under an autonomous arrangement.
- Taiwan created an independent government after the three-way split in China. The separation from the mainland government has created strained relations between Beijing and Taipei. In recent years, trade and economic exchanges have brought the two Chinas together and they have become more dependent on each other.
- Tibet established itself as a Buddhist theocracy before the 1949 declaration of the Communist PRC. The Dalai Lama ruled as both political and religious leader of Tibet until China took control. The Dalai Lama fled to India, where he set up a government in exile to continue to promote Tibetan culture and support Tibet.
- Mongolia is an independent landlocked country with a small population and a large land area. It receives only modest amounts of rainfall. The country was a historic buffer state between the Communist countries of the Soviet Union and China. Mongolia is working to capitalize on its natural resources to engage the global economic situation.

Vocabulary Terms

Chapter 10.3 China's Periphery

	A religion that originated in India about 500 B.C. and spread to China, where it grew into a major religion by A.D. 400.
	A title was given to spiritual leaders of the Tibetan people.
	A desert located in northern China and southeast Mongolia, and a prime location for finding dinosaur fossils.
	An area in which business and trade laws are different from the rest of the country.
	An autonomous region of the People's Republic of China in the Tibetan Plateau in Asia.

Applying Knowledge

Discussion and Study Questions

1. What makes the port of Hong Kong significant in both physical characteristics and relative location?
2. Why was Hong Kong important to China? How did Hong Kong become an economic tiger?
3. Where is Shenzhen? Why did this city emerge as one of the fastest growing cities in the world?
4. Why does Taiwan have a different government from mainland China? What type of government does it have?
5. Why is it that a US president or any cabinet-level US official cannot visit Taiwan but can visit Communist Beijing?
6. How did Taiwan develop a high standard of living for its people whereas mainland China lagged behind?
7. Who is the Dalai Lama? Where did the Dalai Lama rule? Where is the Dalai Lama today?
8. What is Tibet's relationship with China? Why does China want or need Tibet?
9. How was Mongolia viewed by its neighbors during the Cold War? How does China view Mongolia today?
10. What is Mongolia's physical geography like? What has been the traditional lifestyle in Mongolia?

Real-World Geography Exercise

Imagine that you would like to travel to one of the places below. Using the Internet, research what you would need to do to take a trip. What is the cost of airlines, hotels, restaurants, etc.? Create a three-week itinerary to include the cost of plane tickets, lodging, food, tours, and other travel incidentals. Be prepared to share your project.

- Gobi Desert
- Hong Kong
- Inner Mongolia
- Lhasa
- Macau
- Mongolia
- New Territories
- Shenzhen
- Taipei
- Taiwan
- Tibet
- Ulan Bator

Current Events

Geography Education Scoop It

Taiwan Legalizes Same-Sex Marriage In Historic First For Asia

Taiwan Urges China To 'Repent' For Tiananmen, China Paper Says Event Is Merely History

Hong Kong’s Billionaire Class Shrinks The Most As Trade War Wrought Havoc On Global Markets, Wiping Out Worldwide Fortunes

Hong Kong: The Ideal Transit Hub For Wildlife Traffickers

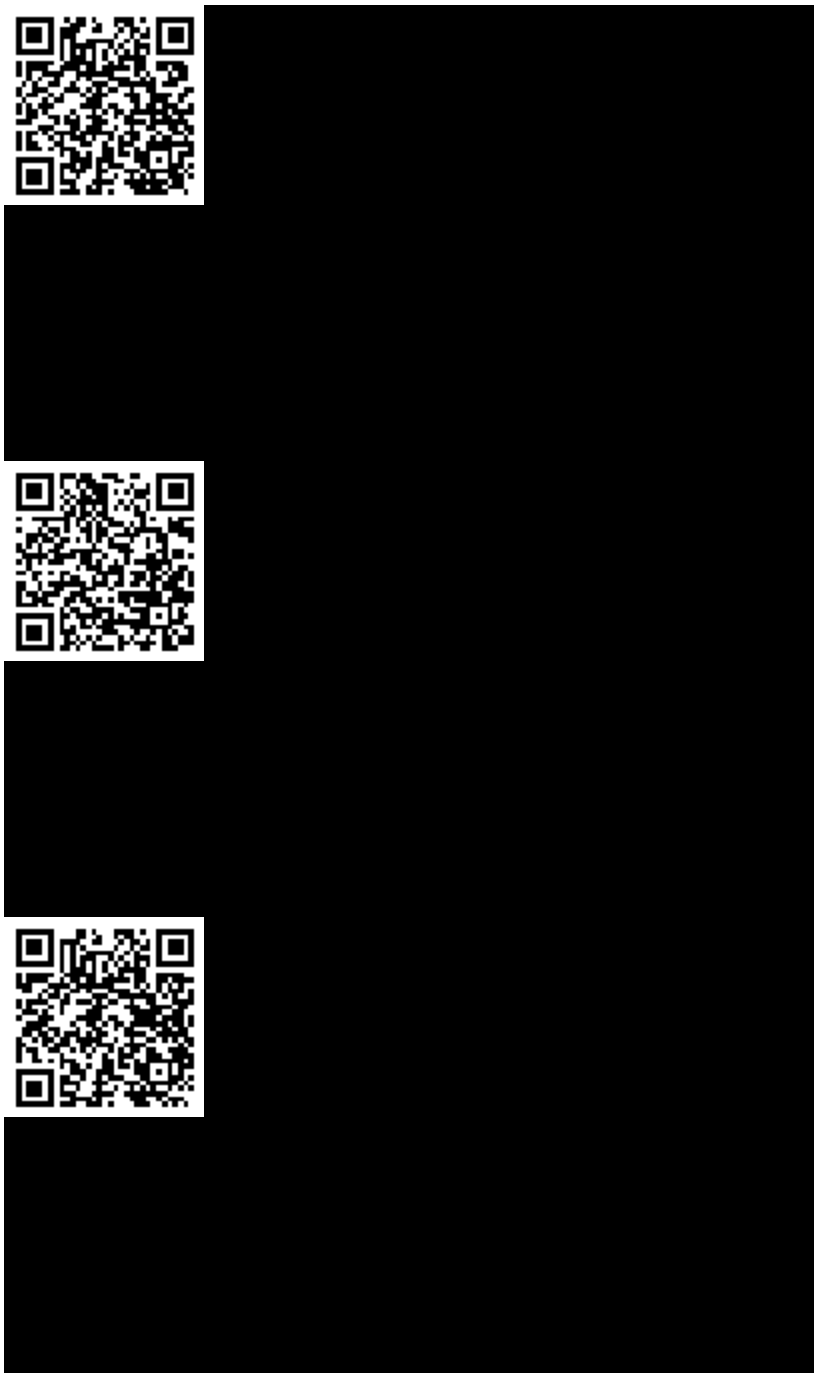
Protests, Self-Immolation Signs Of A Desperate Tibet

Two Tibetan Writers Released

Videos for Geography Enrichment



https://k12.libretexts.org/@go/page/1976

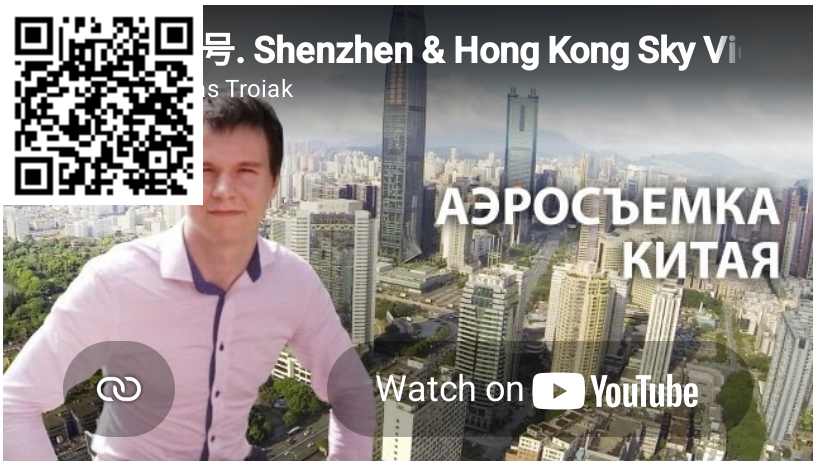


https://k12.libretexts.org/@go/page/1976


e Thaw: Taiwan and China's Chan
U.S.-China Institute
Watch on YouTube


no is the Dalai Lama?
onChina
Watch on YouTube


ongolia Vacation Travel Video Gui
oza Travel
EXPOZA TRAVEL
MONGOLIA
Watch on YouTube



Helpful Websites for the Study of Geography

Canadian Encyclopedia is an encyclopedia funded by the Canadian government covering all branches of knowledge. Their scholarly collection includes interactive materials.

CIA World Factbook provides information on the people, history, government, economy, energy, geography, communications, transportation, military, and transnational issues for the world's entities.

Congress.gov is a US government website where you can find federal legislation, past and present, as well as information about the US legal system.

Drug Enforcement Administration (DEA) is a government agency website that provides current news, resources, topics of interest, information about drugs, careers in the DEA, and a tip hotline.

Library of Congress is the largest library in the world and provides manuscripts, files, information, pictures, and videos.

NASA Earth Observatory (NEO) is a US government agency website that allows users to search for and retrieve satellite images of Earth.

National Archives is a US government website that provides historical documents, photos, records, publications, and educator resources.

National Oceanic and Atmospheric Association (NOAA) is a US government agency website that provides weather-related information and ocean research.

National Map is a website by the United States Geological Survey and other federal, state, and local agencies that delivers topographic information for the United States.

NationMaster is a massive central data source and a handy way to graphically compare nations.

Real-Time World Air Quality Index is a website that measures most locations in the world for air pollution in real time.

StateMaster is a unique statistical database, which allows you to research and compare a multitude of different data on US states.

United Nations (UN) is an international organization founded in 1945 and made up of 193 member states. The UN maintains international peace and security, protects human rights, delivers humanitarian aid, promotes sustainable development, and upholds international law.

United States Census Bureau is a US government agency that provides a population clock, data, surveys, statistics, a library with information and infographics, news about the economy, and much more.

United States Geological Survey (USGS) is a US government agency website that provides scientific information about the natural hazards that threaten lives, the natural resources we rely on, the health of our ecosystems and environment, and the impacts of climate and land-use change.

Whitehouse.gov is a US government website that provides the latest presidential news, information about the budget, policy, defense, and many more topics.

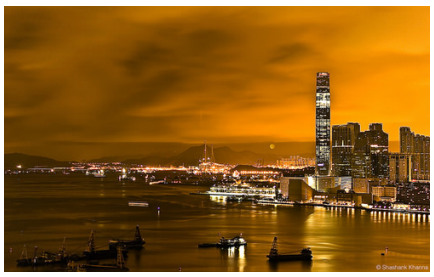
World Health Organization (WHO) is under the United Nations and provides leadership on matters critical to health, shapes the research agenda on health, and monitors the health situation and assessing health trends around the world. Their website provides information on the state of health around the world, outbreaks, current health news, and more.

LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

World Trade Organization (WTO) is an intergovernmental organization that regulates international trade. The website provides

LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

information on the history of the multilateral trading system, featured videos, news and events, trade topics, and more.

Image	Reference	Attributions
	[Figure 1]	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/hk.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 2]	**Credit:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeograp...nas-periphery/ **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/2574a9d29a3d4c65818e4d7ccaf945f8.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 3]	**Credit:** By Brücke-Osteuropa [Public domain], from Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:ZTE_Shenzhen.JPG **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 4]	**Credit:** Shashank Khanna – Victoria Harbor, Hong Kong – CC BY-NC 2.0. **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/chapter/10-2-chinas-periphery/ **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

	[Figure 5]	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/mc.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 6]	**Credit:** By Billy Au (Photo taken by original uploader) [CC BY-SA 2.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/2.0)], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Macau_peninsula.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 7]	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/tw.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 8]	**Credit:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeograp...nas-periphery/ **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/161f617c7ac11220f2fdde9dd4602109.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

	[Figure 9]	**Credit:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeograp...nas-periphery/ **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/76d716225614103a58cf646e2fa140d6.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 10]	**Credit:** By *christopher* (Flickr: dalailama1_20121014_4639) [CC BY 2.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/2.0)], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Dalailama1_20121014_4639.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 11]	**Credit:** By Qeqertaq [CC BY-SA 3.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0)], from Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Lhasa_from_the_Pabonka_Monastery.JPG **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 12]	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/mg.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

This page titled 10.3: China's Periphery (2 Days) is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by CK12 via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

10.4: Japan, North Korea, and South Korea (2 Days)

Chapter Challenges

1. Summarize the physical geography of the Korean peninsula.
2. Understand how North Korea and South Korea developed independently.
3. Outline the political structure of North Korea.
4. Describe how South Korea developed a high standard of living and a prosperous economy.
5. Express how the concept of regional complementarity can apply to the Koreas.

Learning Objectives

TEKS Regional Unit 10 East and Southeast Asia: Chapter 10.4 Japan, North, and South Korea

WG.1B Trace the spatial diffusion of phenomena such as the Columbian Exchange or the diffusion of American popular culture and describe the effects on regions of contact.

WG.2A Describe the human and physical characteristics of the same regions at different periods of time to evaluate relationships between past events and current conditions.

WG.5A Analyze how the character of a place is related to its political, economic, social, and cultural elements.

WG.5B Interpret political, economic, social, and demographic indicators (gross domestic product per capita, life expectancy, literacy, and infant mortality) to determine the level of development and standard of living in nations using the terms Human Development Index, less developed, newly industrialized, and more developed.

WG.10A Describe the forces that determine the distribution of goods and services in free enterprise, socialist, and communist economic systems.

WG.10B Classify where specific countries fall along the economic spectrum between free enterprise and communism.

WG.13A Interpret maps to explain the division of land, including man-made and natural borders, into separate political units such as cities, states, or countries.

WG.14A Analyze current events to infer the physical and human processes that lead to the formation of boundaries and other political divisions.

WG.14B Compare how democracy, dictatorship, monarchy, republic, theocracy, and totalitarian systems operate in specific countries.

WG.15B Explain how citizenship practices, public policies, and decision making may be influenced by cultural beliefs, including nationalism and patriotism.

WG.17A Describe and compare patterns of culture such as language, religion, land use, education, and customs that make specific regions of the world distinctive. make specific regions of the world distinctive.

WG.18A Analyze cultural changes in specific regions caused by migration, war, trade, innovations, and diffusion.

WG.21A Locate places of contemporary geopolitical significance on a map.

WG.22C Use geographic terminology correctly.

WG.22D Use standard grammar, spelling, sentence structure, and punctuation.

TEKS and ELPS for Regional World Geography Unit 10--East and Southeast Asia from TEKS Resource System.

Japan, North Korea, and South Korea

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org



Map of Japan

Japan consists of islands that lie along the Pacific Rim east of China and across the Sea of Japan from the Korean Peninsula. Most of the archipelago, which has more than 3,000 islands, is just north of 30° latitude. Four islands make up most of the country: Shikoku, Kyushu, Hokkaido, and Honshu. The islands have tall mountains originating from volcanic activity. Many of the volcanoes are active, including the famous Mount Fuji.

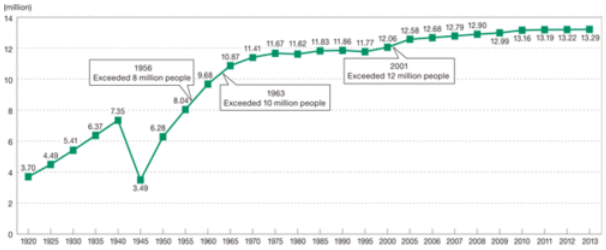
The physical area of all Japan's islands is equivalent to about the size of the US state of Montana. The mountainous islands of Japan extend into two climate zones. All but the northern region of Japan has a type C climate. The island of Hokkaido in northern Japan has a type D climate and receives enough snow for downhill skiing. Japan hosted the Winter Olympics in 1998. Mount Fuji, located just west of Tokyo, is a widely photographed mountain because of its symmetrical volcanic cone.



Japan has 108 active volcanoes.

The largest metropolitan urban area in the world that can be verified is Tokyo, with a population of more than 38 million. The Tokyo metropolitan area is located in an extensive agricultural region called the Kanto Plain and includes the conurbation of Tokyo, Yokohama, and Kawasaki. The second-largest urban area in Japan is located in the Kansai District and includes the cities of Kobe, Osaka**,** and Kyoto.

Japan is a mountainous region, and most of its large cities are located in low-lying areas along the coast. Most of the population (67 percent) lives in urban areas such as Japan's core area, an urbanized region from Tokyo to Nagasaki. According to the CIA World Factbook, the 2017 (estimate) population of Japan was more than 126 million, less than half the size of the United States.



Tokyo's historical population since 1920.

Tokyo is located where three tectonic plates meet: the Eurasian Plate, the Philippine Plate, and the Pacific Plate. Earthquakes result when these plates shift, leading to extensive damage and destruction. In 1923, a large earthquake struck the Tokyo area and killed an estimated 143,000 people. In 1995, an earthquake near Kobe killed about 5,500 people and injured another 26,000.



The average elevation in Tokyo is 131 feet.

In March 2011, a magnitude 9.0 earthquake struck 43 miles off of the eastern coast of northern Japan. The earthquake itself caused extensive damage to the island of Honshu. A shockwave after the earthquake created a tsunami of more than 130 feet high that crashed into the eastern coast of Japan causing enormous damage to infrastructure as well as the loss of life. Hundreds of aftershocks were recorded. At least three registered over 7.0 in magnitude. This is the strongest earthquake to ever hit Japan in recorded history. It resulted in more than 15,500 deaths and wreaked serious damage across Japan in the value of billions of dollars. Thousands of additional people remain missing.

Nuclear power plants along the coast were hit hard by the tsunami, which knocked out their cooling systems and resulted in the meltdown of at least three reactors. The nuclear meltdowns created explosions that released a sizeable quantity of nuclear material into the atmosphere. This is considered the worst nuclear accident since the 1986 reactor meltdown at the Soviet plant at Chernobyl, located north of Kyiv in present-day Ukraine. The next big earthquake could happen at any time since Japan is located in an active tectonic plate zone.

Development

The country of Japan is an interesting study in isolation geography and economic development. For centuries, shogun lords and samurai warriors ruled Japan, and Japan's society was highly organized and structured. Urban centers were well planned, and skilled artisans developed methods of creating high-grade metal products. While agriculture was always important, Japan always existed as a semi-urban community because the mountainous terrain forced most of the population to live along the country's coasts.

Without a large rural population to begin with, Japan never really experienced the rural-to-urban shift common in the rest of the world. Coastal fishing, always a prominent economic activity, remains so today. The capital city of Tokyo was formerly called Edo and was a major city even before the colonial era. Japan developed its own unique type of urbanized cultural heritage.



By the mid-18th century, Edo had a population of more than one million.

Encounters with European colonial ships prompted Japan to industrialize. For the most part, the Japanese kept the Europeans out and only traded with select ships that were allowed to approach the shores. The fact that European ships were there at all was enough to convince the Japanese to evaluate their position in the world. During the colonial era, Britain was the most avid colonizer with the largest and best-equipped navy on the high seas.

Britain colonized parts of the Americas, the Middle East, Africa, South Asia, and Australia and was advancing in East Asia when they encountered the Japanese. Both Japan and Great Britain are island countries. Japan reasoned that if Great Britain could

become so powerful, they should also have the potential to become powerful. Japan encompassed a number of islands and had more land area than Britain, but Japan did not have the coal and iron ore reserves that Britain had.

Around 1868, a group of reformers worked to bring about a change in direction for Japan. Named after the emperor, the movement was called the Meiji Restoration (the return of enlightened rule). Japanese modernizers studied the British pattern of development. The Japanese reformers were advised by the British about how to organize their industries and how to lay out transportation and delivery systems.

Today, the British influence in Japan is easily seen in that both Japanese and British drivers drive on the left side of the road. The modernizers realized that to compete on the high seas in the world community they had to move beyond samurai swords and wooden ships. Iron ore and coal would have to become the goods to fuel their own industrial revolution. Labor and resources were valuable elements of early industrialization in all areas of the world, including Asia.

Japan began to industrialize and build its economic and military power by first utilizing the few resources found in Japan. Since it was already semi-urban and had an organized social order with skilled artisan traditions, the road to industrialization moved quickly. Japan needed raw materials and expanded to take over the island of Formosa (Taiwan) and the Korean Peninsula in the late 19th and early 20th centuries.

Japan was on its way to becoming a colonial power in its own right. They expanded to take control of the southern part of Sakhalin Island from Russia and part of Manchuria (Northeast China) from the Chinese. Japanese industries grew quickly as they put the local people to work and extracted the raw materials they needed from their newly taken colonies.

The three-way split in China revealed that the Japanese colonizers were a major force in China even after the other European powers had halted their colonial activities. Japan's relative location as an independent island country provided both quick access to their neighbors and also protection from them. By World War II, Japan's economic and military power had expanded until they were dominating Asia's Pacific Rim community.

The Japanese military believed that they could invade the western coast of North America and eventually take control of the entire United States. Their attack on Pearl Harbor, Hawaii, in 1941, was meant to be only a beginning. The United States rallied its people and resources to fight against the Japanese in World War II. The Soviet Union also turned to fight the Japanese empire.

The end came after atomic bombs were dropped by the United States on the Japanese cities of Hiroshima and Nagasaki. The terms of Japan's surrender in 1945 stipulated that Japan had to give up claims on the Russian islands, Korea, Taiwan, China, and all the other places that they had previously controlled. Japan also lost the Kurile Islands—off its northern shores—to the Soviet Union.

The islands have never been returned. Japan offered Russia an enormous amount of cash for them but the matter remains unresolved. The Kurile Island chain continues to be controlled by Russia. Japan also agreed not to have a military for offensive purposes. Japan was decimated during World War II, its infrastructure and economy destroyed.

Economic Growth

Since 1945, Japan has risen to become Asia's economic superpower and the economic center of one of the three core areas of the world. Japanese manufacturing has set a standard for global production. For example, think of all the automobiles that are Japanese products: Toyota, Honda, Mitsubishi, Subaru, Nissan, Isuzu, Mazda, and Suzuki. How many Russian, Brazilian, Chinese, or Indonesian autos are sold in the United States?

The term "economic tiger" is used in Asia to indicate an entity with an aggressive and fast-growing economy. Japan has surpassed this benchmark and is called the economic dragon of Asia. The four economic tigers competing with Japan are Singapore, Hong Kong, Taiwan, and South Korea. Japan came back from total devastation in 1945 to become a world economic superpower.

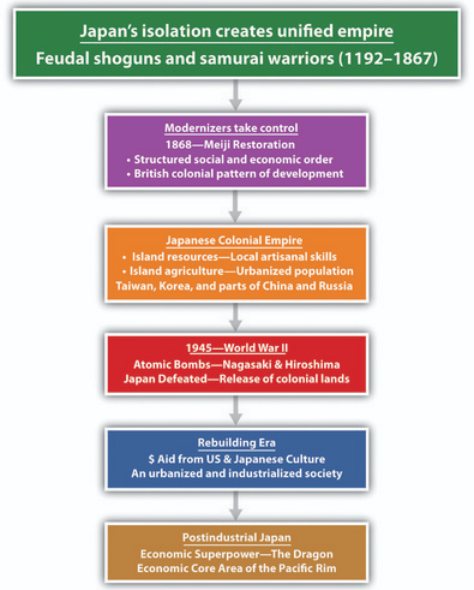
Japan's recovery in the last half of the century has been remarkable. If an island nation like Japan could accomplish this rapid growth in its economy, why couldn't other similar-sized countries accomplish the same level of growth? What was it that caused the Japanese people to not only recover so quickly but rise above the world's standard to excel in their economic endeavors?

The answer could be related to the fact that Japan already had an industrialized and urbanized society before the war. The United States did help rebuild some of Japan's infrastructure that had been destroyed during World War II—things like ports and transportation systems to help bring aid and provide for humanitarian support. However, the Japanese people were able to not only

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

recover from the devastation of World War II but also rise to the level of an economic superpower to compete with the United States.

Japan used internal organization and strong centripetal dynamics to create a highly functional and cohesive society that focused on creating a manufacturing sector that catapulted the country's economy from devastation to financial success.



The loss of colonies after World War II prompted Japan to look elsewhere for its raw materials. Extensive networks of trade were developed to provide the necessary materials for the rapidly growing manufacturing sector. The urbanized region around Tokyo, including the cities of Yokohama and Kawasaki, grew to accommodate the growth of the industry. Japan's coastal interior has a number of large cities and urban areas that rapidly increased with the growing manufacturing sector.

The basis for Japan's technological and economic development may be related to its geographic location and cultural development. Japan's pattern of economic development has similarities to the patterns of other Asian entities that have created thriving economic conditions. Hong Kong and Taiwan are both small islands with few natural resources, yet they have become economic tigers.

Explaining how or why countries develop at different rates can be complex because there may be many interrelated reasons. One element might be centripetal cultural forces that hold a country together and drive it forward. The ability to manage labor and resources would be another part of the economic situation. The theory of how countries gain wealth may shed some light on this issue.

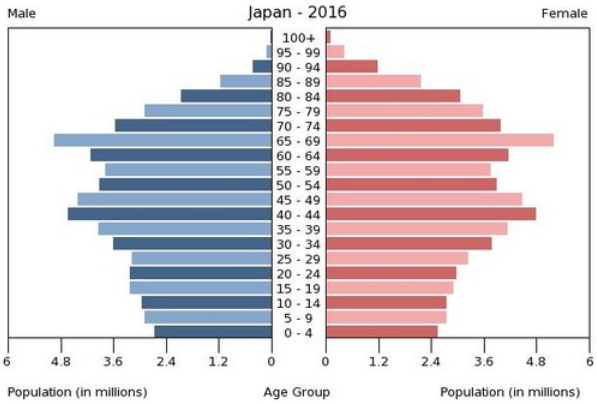
Japan used manufacturing as a major means of gaining wealth from value-added profits. This is the same method the Asian economic tigers also developed their economies. Japan developed itself into a core economic country that took advantage of the peripheral countries for labor and resources during the colonial era. Japan took advantage of every opportunity that presented itself to become a world manufacturing center.

Modern Japan

Japan is a homogeneous society. In 2010, all but 1 percent of the population was ethnically Japanese. Japan resembles a nation-state, where people of a common heritage and aspirations hold to a unified government. This provides a strong centripetal force that unites the people under one culture and one language. However, religious allegiances in Japan vary, and there are a good number of people who indicate nonreligious ideologies.

Shintoism and Buddhism are the main religious traditions. Shintoism includes a veneration of ancestors and the divine forces of nature. There is no one single written text for Shintoism. This religion is a loosely knit set of concepts based on morality, attitude, sensibility, and right practice. It is possible for a Shinto priest to conduct a wedding for a couple, whereas the funeral for either of the spouses might be conducted by a Buddhist priest.

Modernization has brought new opportunities and problems to the Japanese people. With a highly urban and industrial society, personal incomes in Japan are high and family size is quite low, at about 1.2 children. The replacement level for a given population is about 2.1 children, which means Japan has a declining population. The population is aging and there are not enough young people to take entry-level jobs.



The Age Structure in Japan: 0-14 years: 12.84 percent (male 8,361,611/female 7,875,045); 15-24 years: 9.64 percent (male 6,417,085/female 5,778,904); 25-54 years: 37.5 percent (male 23,435,323/female 23,980,781); 55-64 years: 12.15 percent (male 7,692,424/female 7,665,157); 65 years and over: 27.87 percent (male 15,397,309/female 19,847,759)

The family has been at the center of Japanese tradition, and the elderly have been venerated and honored. As the country has become more economically developed, higher incomes for young people have prompted a shift toward convenience and consumer amenities. Consumer goods are available, but all the oil and about 60 percent of the food products have to be imported. During the offseason, fruit, for example, is expensive. Beef is at a premium price, so fish is a staple source of protein. Income levels are high, but the cost of living in places like Tokyo is also quite high.

Japan is facing a labor shortage for many low-level service jobs that had traditionally been held by young people entering the workforce. Japan is an island country that has prided itself in being 99 percent Japanese. Countries in stage 5 of the index of economic development usually enter a negative population growth pattern. According to population statistics, Japan is at the start of a serious population decline, with a negative population growth pattern.

While Western Europe and the United States also have a declining percentage of young people, in those countries the declining youth cohort has been replaced by an elevated level of immigration, both legal and illegal. Culturally, this is not an attractive option for Japan, but they are forced to address the labor shortage in any way they can. Their economy will depend on the ability to acquire cheap labor and resources to compete in the global marketplace.

As the economic dragon of Asia, Japan has had an enormous economic impact on the East Asian Community (EAC). The shortage of cheap labor has forced Japan to look elsewhere for new manufacturing ventures. China is an attractive country in this respect because of its substantial population and low standard of living for many of its citizens. Japan is looking to take advantage of its geographical location to establish a more positive trade situation with its Asian neighbors.

The dynamics of Japan's economy are uniquely similar to that of the United States and Europe. All three core economic areas are competing for inexpensive labor and resources to fuel their economies. Japan’s history as a colonizer has caused serious cultural attitudes against it from its Asian neighbors. Nevertheless, economics usually drive politics, and Japan wields enormous economic power. Japan now engages in trade with China and continues to be a core economic country in the global economy.

Centripetal Forces Hold a State Together

- Ethnic Unity and Tolerance
- Social/Economic Equity
- Just and Fair Legal System
- Charismatic Leadership
- Religious Acceptance
- Nationalism

- Common Heritage
- Common Language
- Any Other Unifying Force

Korea

The Korean Peninsula juts out into the Pacific Rim from northwestern Asia. The peninsula is bound by the Sea of Japan (the East Sea) and the Yellow Sea. North and South Korea share the peninsula. These countries have been separated by the Korean demilitarized zone **(**DMZ**)** since 1953. To the west and north is China and to the far north along the coast is Russia.

Korea is separated from China by the Yellow Sea and the Yalu and Tumen Rivers to the north. The Yalu and Tumen rivers form the actual border between North Korea and China. Japan is located just east of the Korean Peninsula across the Korea Strait. The Korean Peninsula is now split between South Korea and North Korea. The capital city of North Korea is Pyongyang, and Seoul is the capital of South Korea.

The topography of the Korean Peninsula is mountainous with arable land. Approximately 70 percent of the Korean Peninsula is mountainous. The bedrock is predominantly composed of volcanic and granitic rocks that have been severely modified by glacial processes over the 25,000 years. The highest peak in North Korea rises more than 9,000 feet. The Korean Peninsula can be thought of as four general areas:

- Western Region with an extensive coastal plain, river basins, and small foothills
- Eastern Region with high mountain ranges and a narrow coastal plain
- Southeastern Basin
- Southwestern Region of mountains and valleys



The Korean Peninsula is a peninsula in East Asia.

Off of the southern and western coasts of the Korean Peninsula are about 3,000 small and mostly uninhabited islands, all within the territory of South Korea. South Korea's largest island has an area of 712 square miles. It is the highest point of land in South Korea, at 6,398 feet above sea level.

North and South Korea have very different, yet related, environmental issues, primarily related to the degree of industrialization. With a low level of industrialism, North Korea has severe issues of water pollution as well as deforestation and related soil erosion and degradation. Other issues in North Korea include inadequate supplies of clean drinking water and many waterborne diseases. South Korea has water pollution associated with sewage discharge and industrial effluent from its many industrial centers. Air pollution is severe at times in the larger cities, which also contributes to higher levels of acid rain.

The physical size in square miles of North Korea (46,540 square miles) is similar to the physical area of the US state of Pennsylvania. South Korea (38,502 square miles) is similar to the physical area of Tennessee. For centuries, Korea was a unified kingdom that was often invaded by outsiders. After the fall of the Chinese Qing (Manchu) Dynasty, the Japanese took control of the Korean Peninsula (1910) and controlled it as a colony. Japanese colonial rule ended in 1945 when the United States defeated Japan, forcing it to give up its colonial possessions. The structure of modern Korea is a result of the ending of World War II.



Japan had occupied the Korean peninsula between 1910 and 1945.



United Nations Forces crossing the 38th parallel line in Korea during the Korean War

The conclusion of World War II was a critical period for the Korean Peninsula. The United States and the Soviet Union both fought against the Japanese in Korea. When the war was over, the Soviet Union took administrative control of the peninsula north of the 38th parallel, and the United States established administrative control over the area south of the 38th parallel.

The United States and the Soviet Union divided Korea approximately in half and eventually established governments in their respective regions that were sympathetic to each nation's own ideology. The Soviet Union administered the northern portion; the United States administered the southern region. Politics deeply affected each of the regions. Communism dominated North Korea and capitalism dominated South Korea.

In 1950, with aid from China and the Soviet Union, the Communists from the north invaded the south. After bitter fighting, a peace agreement was reached in 1953 to officially divide the Korean Peninsula near the 38th parallel. Korea remains divided to this day. The United States has thousands of soldiers stationed along the Cease-Fire Line (or DMZ), which is the most heavily guarded border in the world.

The Division of Korea Timeline

- 1945: After the surrender of Japan, the Korean peninsula is divided between Soviet and American occupation forces at the 38th parallel.
- 1945: South Korea created a franchise to raise money and funds to recover.
- 1945: 6 September, Establishment of the Peoples Republic of Korea with Yuh Woon-Hyung, but 1946 February, US Army breaks it and Yuh Woon Hyung is murdered.
- 1946: US-USSR Joint-Commission on the formation of a Korean Government reaches an impasse. The Joint-commission is dissolved as the Cold War begins.
- 1948: 10 May. United Nations (UN) sponsored elections are held in South Korea.
- 1948: 15 August. Establishment of the Republic of Korea with Syngman Rhee as President.

- 1948: 9 September. Establishment of the Democratic People's Republic of Korea with Kim Il-sung as Premier.
- 1949: The murder of Kim Gu. Kim Gu was a Korean independence activist who believed in, and fought for, a unified Korea. He strongly objected to the formation of a separate South Korean state. He was shot in his home by a South Korean Army lieutenant.
- 1950: 25 June. The Korean War begins.
- 1950: August. UN Forces are driven back to the Southeast corner of the Korean Peninsula (The Pusan Perimeter).
- 1950: September. UN Troops make an Amphibious Landing at Inchon.
- 1950: November. Chinese Forces enter the war.
- 1953: The Korean War is halted by the Korean Armistice Agreement that has remained in force until now.
- 1960: A student uprising begins the April Revolution which overthrows the autocratic First Republic of South Korea. Syngman Rhee resigns and goes into exile.
- 1961: 16 May. Military forces, headed by General Park Chung Hee, overthrow the Second Republic of South Korea in what is known as the Military Coup d'état of 16 May.
- 1961: 12 November. Summit conference for normalization of Kor-Japanese relations.
- 1962: Start of the first Five-year plans of South Korea.
- 1964: South Korea joined the Vietnam War.
- 1965: 22 June. Signing of the Treaty on Basic Relations between Japan and the Republic of Korea. Earned both much controversy and procurement of budgets for later economic developments.
- 1967: Start of the second Five-year plans of South Korea.
- 1968: 21 January. An unsuccessful attempt of North Korean commandos to assassinate President Park Chung Hee- the Blue House Raid.
- 1968: 1 April. Establishment of the Pohang Iron and Steel Company.
- 1968: 5 December. Proclamation of the National Education Charter.
- 1970: 22 April. Start of the government-operated New Community Movement.
- 1970: Gyeongbu Expressway is completed and opened to traffic.
- 1972: Start of the third Five-year plans of South Korea.
- 1972: 12 August. The first Red Cross talks between North and South Korea are held.
- 1972: President Park Chung Hee declares Emergency Martial Law and changes the Constitution in August, which may allow him to become the permanent ruler. This is similar to Gojong of the Korean Empire stating his country's governmental system as 'autocratic' in the constitution- for greater leadership and less opposition.
- 1974: 15 August. The assassination of first lady Yuk Young-soo by self-proclaimed North Korean Mun Segwang.
- 1976: 18 August. The Axe Murder Incident in Panmunjom, Joint Security Area. Triggers former North Korean leader Kim Il-sung's first official apology to the South.
- 1976: 12 October: Discontinuation of rice imports, the accomplishment of total self-sufficiency in rice by the Unification Rice.
- 1977: Start of the fourth Five-year plans of South Korea.
- 1977: 22 December. Celebration of achievement of 10 billion dollars gained by exports.
- 1978: 26 October. Detection of the third underground tunnel. Made by North Korea to attack South Korea.
- 1978: 10 December. Achievement of US $1,117 as Gross National Product (GNP).
- 1979: American president Jimmy Carter visits Korea. Threatens Park by stating he would reduce the US forces in Korea if he does not stop the ongoing Nuclear Weapons Development project.
- 1979: 26 October, President Park Chung Hee is assassinated by the chief of KCIA, Kim Jaegyu (Assassination of Park Chung Hee).
- 1979: Coup d'état of December Twelfth, Chun Doo Hwan gets military power.
- 1980: Gwangju massacre. Martial Law is declared throughout the nation. The city of Gwangju becomes a battleground between dissenters and the Armed Forces (18–27 May). The official death toll was set at 200 people but some reports claim over 1000 casualties.
- 1987: A student uprising begins the June Democracy Movement, which overthrows the autocratic Fifth Republic of South Korea. The ruling party of Fifth Republic, Democratic Justice Party, declares democratic elections.
- 1988: 24th Olympic Games held in Seoul.

- 1990: 11 September: South Korea and the USSR established diplomatic relations.
- 1991: 17 September: North Korea (DPRK) and South Korea (ROK) join the United Nations (UN).
- 1991: 26 December: The end of the Cold War as the Soviet Union ceased to exist and North Korea loses military and economic aid.
- 1992: 11 August: South Korea's first satellite, KITSAT-1 is successfully launched from Guiana Space Center.
- 1992: 24 August: South Korea and the People's Republic of China (PRC) establish diplomatic relations.
- 1993: Test of Rodong-1, a single stage, mobile liquid propellant medium range ballistic missile by the DPRK.
- 1994: Kim Jong Il takes control of North Korea upon the death of his father Kim Il-Sung. Start of the Arduous March.
- 1998: Taepodong-1, a two-stage intermediate-range ballistic missile is developed and tested by the DPRK. End of the Arduous March. It is possible that up to 3.5 million people died in the march.
- 1999: The DPRK promises to freeze long-range missile tests.
- 2002: The 2002 FIFA World Cup jointly held by Korea and Japan. South Korea national football team makes it to the semi-finals for the first time in Korean football history. The DPRK pledges to extend the moratorium on missile tests beyond 2003.
- 2004: The DPRK reaffirms moratorium.
- 2005: The DPRK fires a short-range missile into the East Sea.
- 2006: Test of Taepodong-2 by DPRK, a successor of Taepodong-1.There is a nuclear test in the DPRK. US officials assert it might have been a misfire.
- 2007: The second summit between DPRK and ROK leaders is held, with Roh Moo-hyun representing the south and Kim Jong Il the north. The DPRK fires short-range missile into the East Sea.
- 2009: North Korea launches a rocket (Unha), supposedly for space exploration. This move affects relationships with Japan, the United States and South Korea. The DPRK conducts another nuclear test.
- 2010: North Korea launches missile attacks Korean Pohang class corvette, ROKS Cheonan. 46 Korean soldiers die because of the attack. At November, North Korean army rains artillery fire on Yeon-Pyeong-Do island.
- 2011: Kim Jong Il dies, Kim Jong-un takes over as the Supreme Leader of North Korea. The National Intelligence Service discovers Communist spies who have been working underground for the DPRK for almost 10 years. One of the members was a former Democratic Party representative. Their mission was to influence the party named above and extract military secret information.
- 2012: 13 April: The Kim Regime of the DPRK tested a rocket, officially called "Unha-3", an expendable launch system developed from the Soviet Scud rockets. The rocket was to send a satellite, called Kwangmyŏngsŏng-3, into orbit. The rocket failed to launch the satellite and fell into the Yellow Sea. The mission ultimately ended in complete failure.
- 2012: 12 December: DPRK has a successful launch of Kwangmyŏngsŏng-3 Unit 2 it was launched from the Sohae Satellite Launching Ground. A South Korean military official cited 3 stage success. DPRK confirmed.
- 2012: 19 December: Park Geun-Hye, a daughter of Park Chung-hee, is elected as the first female and the 11th president of South Korea.
- 2013: 8 December: Jang Song Thaek, uncle of North Korean Leader Kim Jong Un, was ousted from all-powerful posts on various charges. The official Korean Central News Agency said the political bureau of the Central Committee of the Workers' Party of Korea stripped Jang of all posts, depriving him of all titles and expelling him and removing his name from the party.
- 2013: 12 December: North Korean Supreme Leader Kim Jong Un, executes his Uncle, Jang Song-thaek, as a "traitor for all ages." Jang Song-thaek's execution was said to be set up by his own wife, Kim Kyong-hui, Late Supreme Leader Kim Jong Il's sister. Jang Song-Thaek was considered to be the most powerful official in the DPRK Regime.
- 2016: 9 December: The impeachment vote of President Park Geun-hye took place, whilst 234 members in the 300-member National Assembly voting in favor of the impeachment and temporary suspension of her presidential powers and duties. Hwang Kyo-ahn, then prime minister, became acting president while the Constitutional Court of Korea was due to determine whether to accept the impeachment.
- 2017: 10 March: The court upheld the impeachment in a unanimous 8–0 decision, removing Park from the office.
- 2017: 10 May: Moon Jae-in was sworn into office immediately after official votes were counted on May 10th, replacing Acting President and Prime Minister Hwang Kyo-ahn.

Source

North Korea



Map of North Korea

The government of North Korea (the Democratic People's Republic of Korea, or DPRK) was formed with the leadership of Communist dictator Kim Il Sung, who shaped his country with a mix of Soviet and Chinese authoritarian rule. Having few personal freedoms, the people worked hard to rebuild a state. Using the threat of a US military invasion as a means of rallying his people, Kim Il Sung built up a military of more than one million soldiers, one of the largest in the world. People could not travel in or out of the country without strict regulation. North Korea existed without much notice until the 1990s, when things suddenly changed.

When the Soviet Union fell in 1991, North Korea lost a valued source of financial support and oil. Without fuel and funding, many of the factories closed. Unemployment rates rose significantly. Meanwhile, China adopted a more open posture and began to increase its level of trade with the West. The result was that China began to lose interest in propping up North Korea politically. North Korea was facing serious problems. Massive food shortages caused famine and starvation, and thousands of people died. Kim Il Sung died in 1994 and the country lost its leader. He had ruled the country since World War II and in the end, became a deified "Supreme Leader."



An official portrait of Kim Il-sung, issued after his death.

The government dictatorship continued as the Great Leader's son, Kim Jong Il, took over the leadership role. Kim Jong Il, known as the "Dear Leader," took repression of his people to new levels. Televisions and radios sold in North Korea can only receive government-controlled frequencies. Cell phones and the Internet are banned. The government takes a hard line against dissenters. If you are caught speaking against the state or taking any action to support dissent, you can be arrested, fined, placed in a prison

camp, or executed. People are not allowed to leave or enter the country without government approval. Only a couple hundred tourists are allowed into the country per year and are closely escorted.



Kim Jun-un II

Kim Jong Il has taken hard measures to stay in power and to avoid yielding to the capitalist frenzy of corporate colonialism. He has nuclear weapon capability and has used his military weapons production as a bargaining chip against the United States and other world powers. North Korea has demonized the United States as the ultimate threat and has used state-funded propaganda to indoctrinate its people. North Korea's government continually tells its people that the United States will invade at any minute and to be prepared for the worst. Propaganda has been used to create and enforce military, economic, and political policies for an ideology that supports the unification of all of Korea under Communist control.

North Korea is mainly mountainous, and there is little quality farmland. While only 2 percent of the land is in permanent crops, about one-third of the population works in agriculture. The best farmland in North Korea is located south of the capital city of Pyongyang. The capital is a restricted area where only the most loyal to the state can live. There is a serious shortage of goods and services. Electricity is not available on a dependable basis.



North Korea's sparse agricultural resources limit agricultural production.

https://k12.libretexts.org/@go/page/1978



Mansudae Assembly Hall, the seat of the Supreme People's Assembly, the North Korean parliament.

Massive international food aid has sustained the people of North Korea. Outside food aid is accepted even though Kim Jong Il has continued a policy of self-reliance and self-sufficiency called Juche. *Juche* is designed to keep Korea from becoming dependent on the outside. The policy of *Juche* has been quite effective in isolating the people of North Korea and keeping dictator Kim Jong Il in power. The policy of *Juche* also holds back the wave of corporate capitalism that seeks to exploit labor and resources in global markets for economic profit.

One way that North Koreans are finding out about the outside world is through smuggled cell phones and videos from South Korea. Popular videos include South Korean soap operas, because of the common heritage, language, and ethnicity. The North Korean government has attempted to crack down on smuggled videos by going from home to home. Electricity is turned off before entering the home. Once the electricity is turned off, videos cannot be removed from the video player. The government agents then confiscate the video.

Citizens found with smuggled videos are punished with fines or imprisonment. Desperate North Koreans have escaped across the border into northern China, where thousands of refugees have tried to find better opportunities for their future. China's economy is growing and North Korea's economy is stagnant, which creates strong push-pull forces on migration.

South Korea



Map of South Korea

In 1993, South Korea became a complete democracy with its first democratically elected president. Seoul is the capital city and is home to almost ten million people. Seoul is located south of the Cease-Fire Line, also known as the DMZ, which is commonly referred to as the 38th parallel. The United States has many military installations in this area.

South Korea manufactures automobiles, electronic goods, and textiles that are sold around the world. South Korea is a democracy that has used state capitalism to develop its economy. After the World War II era, South Korea was ruled by a military government that implemented land reform and received external economic aid. Large agricultural estates were broken up and redistributed to the people. Agricultural production increased to meet the demands of the population. South Korea has much more agricultural production than North Korea and is therefore in providing food for the high population density. A once-modest manufacturing sector has grown to become a major production center for export trade.

The 50 million people who live in South Korea have a much higher standard of living than the residents of North Korea. Personal income in the north is barely equivalent to a few dollars per day, while personal income in the south is similar to that of Western countries. The economic growth of the south was a result of state-controlled capitalism, rather than free-enterprise capitalism.

The state has controlled or owned most of the industrial operations and sold its products in the global marketplace. Giant corporations, which forced industrialization along the coastal region, have promoted South Korea as the world's leading shipbuilding nation. South Korean corporations include Daewoo, Samsung, Kia Motors, Hyundai, and the Orion Group. As an economic tiger, South Korea continues to reform its economic system to adapt to global economic conditions.

South Korea has announced plans to conduct a comprehensive overhaul of its energy and transportation networks. Government funding will augment efforts to create more green-based initiatives. Part of this effort will focus on lower energy dependency with environmentally friendly energy developments such as wind, solar, bike lanes, and new lighting technologies. High-speed rail service and increased capacity in electronic transmissions lines are planned as part of the next generation of energy-efficient technologies that will increase economic efficiency. These policies have been enacted to update South Korea's economy and create new products for manufacturing export.

Buddhism was introduced into the Korean Peninsula, as were many other aspects of Chinese culture that had significant effects on Korean heritage. Buddhism has been a prominent religion in Korea for centuries. The teachings of Confucius are also widely regarded. About 30 percent of the population claims Christianity as their religious background. About 20 percent of the Christians are Protestant and 10 percent are Catholic. This is the highest Christian percentage of any Asian country.

Up to one-half of the population makes no claims or professions of faith in any organized religion. Before 1948, Pyongyang was a notable Christian center. At that time, approximately 300,000 people identified as Christian. After the establishment of a Communist government in North Korea, many of the Christians fled to South Korea to avoid persecution.

Religious Affiliation in Korea by Age

Age	Buddhism	Catholicism	Protestantism	Other religions	No affiliation
20-29	10%	7%	18%	1%	65%
30-39	12%	8%	19%	1%	62%
40-49	16%	7%	20%	1%	57%
50-59	22%	9%	19%	1%	49%
60-69	26%	10%	21%	1%	42%
70-79	27%	10%	21%	1%	41%
80-85	24%	10%	22%	2%	42%
above 85	21%	11%	23%	2%	43%
Other religions include Won Buddhism, Confucianism, Cheondoism, Daesun Jinrihoe, Daejongism, and Jeungsanism.					

Source

Unification of North and South

What if North Korea and South Korea would become unified again? In the field of geography, there is a concept of regional complementarity, which exists when two separate regions possess qualities that would work to complement each if unified into one unit. North and South Korea are the classic illustrations of regional complementarity. The North is mountainous and has access to minerals, coal, iron ore, and nitrates (fertilizers) that are needed in the South for industrialization and food production. The South

has the most farmland and can produce large harvests of rice and other food crops. The South has industrial technology and capital needed for development in the North. If and when these two countries are reunited, they could work well as an economic unit.

The harder question is how and under what circumstances the two Koreas could ever come to terms of unification. What about the thirty-five to forty thousand US soldiers along the DMZ? What type of government would unified Korea have? There are many young people in South Korea that would like to see the US military leave Korea and the two sides united. The generation of soldiers that survived the Korean War in the 1950s understands the bitterness and difficulties caused by the division. This segment of the population is highly supportive of maintaining the presence of the US military on the border with North Korea. Unification is not likely to take place until this generation either passes away or comes to terms with unification.

The brutal dictatorship of Kim Jong Il, with his claimed nuclear capabilities, has been a main barrier to unification. This is a political division, not technically a cultural division, even though the societies are quite different at the present time. The geography of this situation is similar to that of East and West Germany after World War II and during the Cold War. Korea may have different qualities from Germany, but unification may be possible under certain conditions, foremost being different leadership in the north.

What is the Great Unification Buddha?

The Great Unification Buddha, called "Tongil Daebul" is a 48-foot gilt-bronze statue that weighs 108 tons. It sits on top of a 15-foot high pedestal. The total height is 62 feet, which does not include the lightning rod and nimbus. The lotus pedestal is adorned with 16 ornately engraved panels. The forehead of the statue is embedded with eight 3-inch amber stones. In the center of the amber stones is a 4-inch stone of jade.

Tongil Daebul sits with crossed legs, half-closed eyes in meditation, and a perceptible smile. He wears a robe that drapes over his torso and reveals his right shoulder. The hands of the Tongil Daebul are positioned in the mudra (a symbolic gesture), which symbolizes the "enlightened one." Within the hollow statue are the original Buddhist scriptures (Tripitaka) and three pieces of the Buddha's sari (remains collected after his creation), which were donated by the Myanmar government.

The Great Unification Buddha was a long term project completed with 4.1 million dollars in donations from people visiting the temple. Tongil Daebul represents the hope of the Korean people for the reunification of the divided country.



Sinheungsa is a head temple of the Jogye Order of Korean Buddhism.

Source

Key Takeaways

- Japan’s mountainous archipelago has provided isolation and protection for the Japanese people to maintain their unique culture and heritage. The islands were created by tectonic plate action, which continues to cause earthquakes in the region.
- Japan was a colonial power that colonized much of the Asian Pacific region. Its defeat in World War II devastated the country and liberated all its colonies. Since 1945, Japan has been developing one of the strongest economies in the world through manufacturing.

- Japan is a highly industrialized country that is in stage 5 of the index of economic development. The country's small family size and declining population are a concern for economic growth in the future.
- The Korean Peninsula is divided in two by the DMZ. North Korea is a Communist dictatorship with a low standard of living and no civil rights. South Korea is a capitalist democracy with a high standard of living and a free-market economy.
- North Korea is more mountainous and lacks arable land to grow food. South Korea has more farmland and fewer mountains. If the two countries were to be united with a common economy, they would complement each other with a balance of natural resources.

Vocabulary Terms

Chapter 10.4 Japan, Korea, and South Korea

	A country with rapid economic growth due to cheap labor, high technology, and aggressive exports. (Hong Kong, Singapore, South Korea and Taiwan.)
	The largest plain in Japan located in the Kanto Region of central Honshū
	Created by an agreement between North Korea, China and the United Nations in 1953, itis a strip of land running across the Korean Peninsula that serves as buffer soon between North and South Korea
	Japan's highest mountain
	A professional soldier in Japan who served the interests of landowners and clan chiefs
	The ethnic religion of Japan that focuses on ritual practices to be carried out diligently, to establish a connection between present-day Japan and its ancient past
	The general of the emperor's army with the powers of a military dictator, a position created by the Japanese emperor in 1192 after a struggle between two powerful clans
	A fee (tax) that a country charges on imports or exports
	The kingdoms formed in the peninsula of Korea by A.D. 300-– Koguryo in the northeast, Paekche in the southwest, and Silla in the southeast
	The capital city of Japan
	A giant ocean wave, caused by an underwater earthquake or volcanic eruption, with a great destructive power

Applying Knowledge

Discussion and Study Questions

1. What climate types are found in Japan? How does climate type correspond to the population?
2. Why has Japan never experienced a strong rural-to-urban shift in its population?
3. What is the ethnic makeup of Japan? Why does this pattern exist in Japan?
4. Does Japan have a high or low population growth rate? What problems arise from this situation?
5. How did Japan become an economic superpower after 1945?
6. How would South Korean soap operas pose a serious threat to North Korea?

7. How did South Korea develop such a robust economy with such a small physical area?
8. Why are thousands of US soldiers positioned on the DMZ?
9. How does North Korea's policy of *Juche* align with the global economy?
10. Explain how the concept of regional complementarity applies to the two Koreas.

Real-World Geography Exercise

Go to the Weather Channel. Find out what the current weather is for five of the locations below. How do you think the weather impacts the economy? Be prepared to share your answers.

- Edo
- Hokkaido
- Honshu
- Kansai District
- Kanto Plain
- Kawasaki
- Kobe
- Korea Strait
- Kurile Islands
- Kyoto
- Kyushu
- Mt. Fuji
- Osaka
- Pyongyang
- Sakhalin Island
- Sea of Japan
- Seoul
- Shikoku
- Yellow Sea
- Tokyo
- Yokohama

Videos for Geography Enrichment

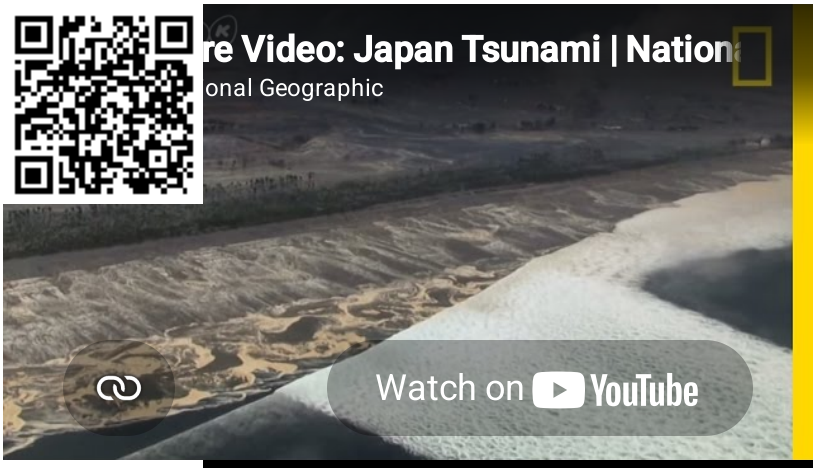


https://k12.libretexts.org/@go/page/1978


roshima atomic bomb: Survivor re
News
a
British publi...
BBC NEWS
Watch on YouTube

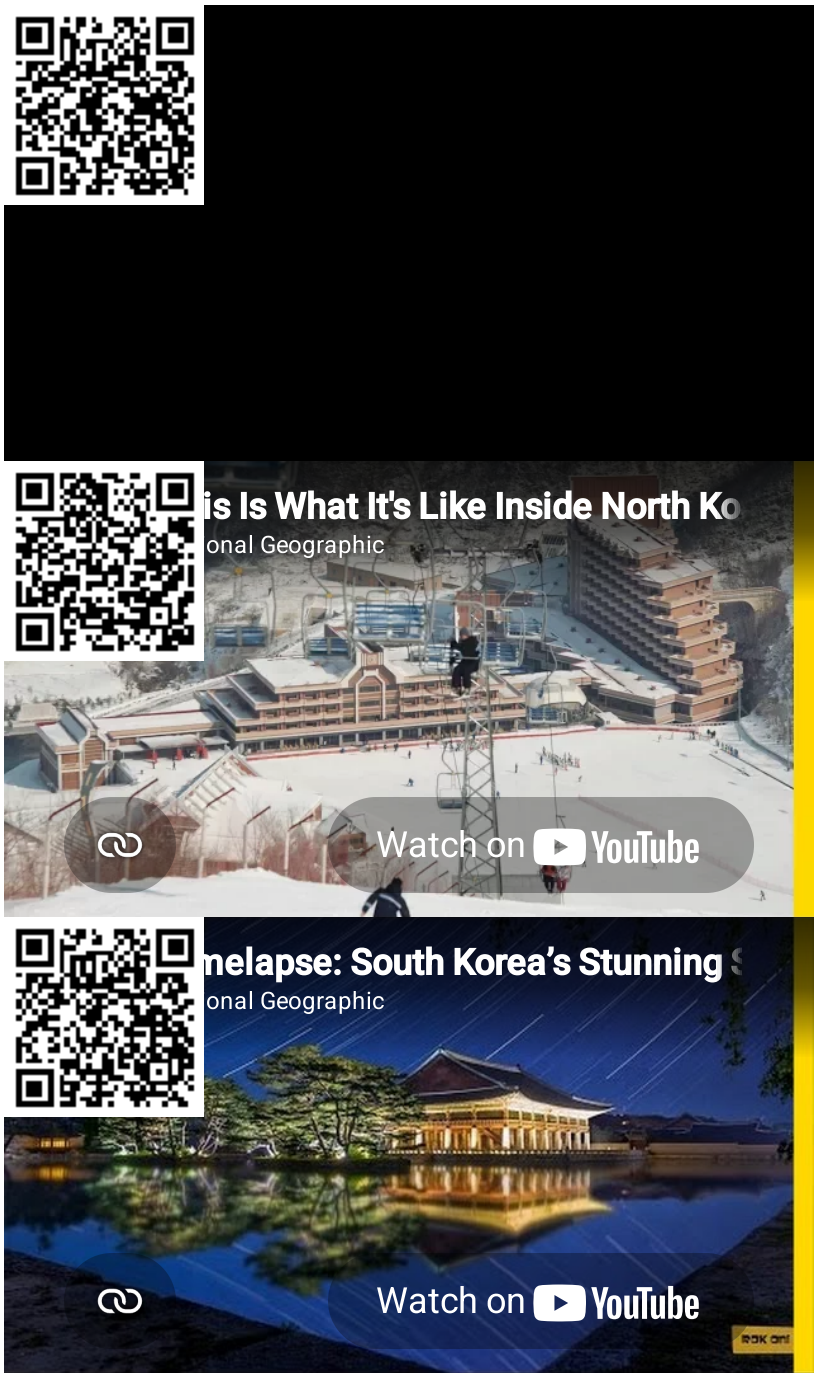

side North Korea | National Geogra
onal Geographic
Watch on YouTube

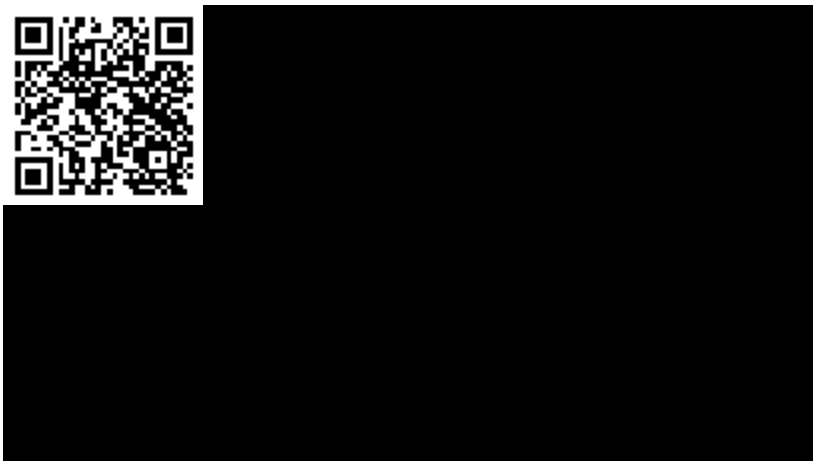

pan's Geographic Challenge
E
NORTH KOREA
Sea of Japan (East Sea)
SOUTH KOREA
CHINA
JAPAN
HONSHU
HOKKAIDO
PACIFIC OCEAN
SHIKOKU
KYUSHU
East China Sea
RYUKYU ISLANDS
Watch on YouTube


re Video: Japan Tsunami | Nation
onal Geographic
Watch on YouTube


rean War overview | The 20th cent
n Academy
Korean War overview
Watch on YouTube
Khan Academy


rth Korea's Geographic Challenge
KOGURYO KINGDOM 5TH C.
CHINA
Hamkyong Mountains
Dandong-Sinuiju gap
NORTH KOREA
Pyongyang
Taebaeck Mountains
Watch on YouTube
JAPAN


is Is What It's Like Inside North Ko
onal Geographic
Watch on YouTube
melapse: South Korea's Stunning S
onal Geographic
Watch on YouTube



Helpful Websites for the Study of Geography

Canadian Encyclopedia is an encyclopedia funded by the Canadian government covering all branches of knowledge. Their scholarly collection includes interactive materials.

CIA World Factbook provides information on the people, history, government, economy, energy, geography, communications, transportation, military, and transnational issues for the world's entities.

Congress.gov is a US government website where you can find federal legislation, past and present, as well as information about the US legal system.

Drug Enforcement Administration (DEA) is a government agency website that provides current news, resources, topics of interest, information about drugs, careers in the DEA, and a tip hotline.

Library of Congress is the largest library in the world and provides manuscripts, files, information, pictures, and videos.

NASA Earth Observatory (NEO) is a US government agency website that allows users to search for and retrieve satellite images of Earth.

National Archives is a US government website that provides historical documents, photos, records, publications, and educator resources.

National Oceanic and Atmospheric Association (NOAA) is a US government agency website that provides weather-related information and ocean research.

National Map is a website by the United States Geological Survey and other federal, state, and local agencies that delivers topographic information for the United States.

NationMaster is a massive central data source and a handy way to graphically compare nations.

Real-Time World Air Quality Index is a website that measures most locations in the world for air pollution in real time.

StateMaster is a unique statistical database, which allows you to research and compare a multitude of different data on US states.

United Nations (UN) is an international organization founded in 1945 and made up of 193 member states. The UN maintains international peace and security, protects human rights, delivers humanitarian aid, promotes sustainable development, and upholds international law.

United States Census Bureau is a US government agency that provides a population clock, data, surveys, statistics, a library with information and infographics, news about the economy, and much more.

United States Geological Survey (USGS) is a US government agency website that provides scientific information about the natural hazards that threaten lives, the natural resources we rely on, the health of our ecosystems and environment, and the impacts of climate and land-use change.

Whitehouse.gov is a US government website that provides the latest presidential news, information about the budget, policy, defense, and many more topics.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

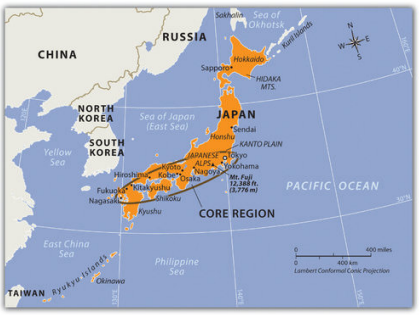
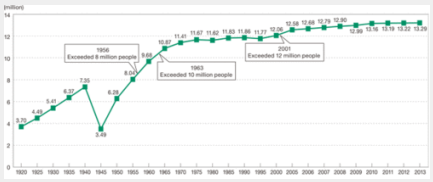
World Health Organization (WHO) is under the United Nations and provides leadership on matters critical to health, shapes the research agenda on health, and monitors the health situation and assessing health trends around the world. Their website provides information on the state of health around the world, outbreaks, current health news, and more.

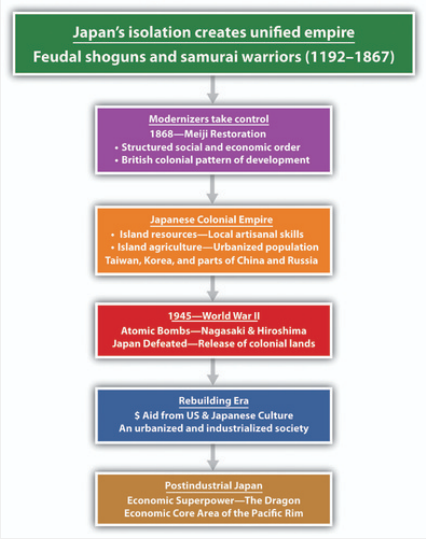
LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

World Trade Organization (WTO) is an intergovernmental organization that regulates international trade. The website provides

LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

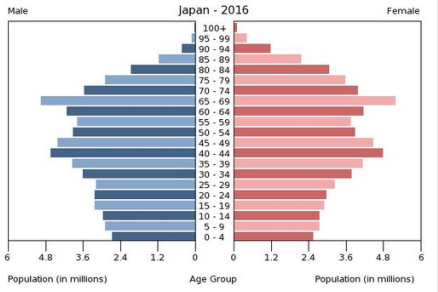
information on the history of the multilateral trading system, featured videos, news and events, trade topics, and more.

Image	Reference	Attributions
	[Figure 1]	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/ja.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 2]	**Credit:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeograp...rth-and-south/ **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/8db197f34d9f9ed990a6dbb851a24fc7.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 3]	**Credit:** By Matsuyama Mayumi [CC BY-SA 4.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0)], from Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Tokyo_historical_population.gif **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 5]	**Credit:** [Public domain], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Edo_Panorama_old_Tokyo_color_photochrom.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0



[Figure 6]

Credit: Steve46814 at English Wikipedia [CC BY-SA 3.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0)], from Wikimedia Commons
Source: Photo used by permission of Jane Elizabeth Keeler. ; https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Korea-Sinheungsa-Bronze_Buddha-02.jpg
License: CC BY-NC 3.0



[Figure 7]

Credit: cia world factbook
Source: https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/ja.html
License: CC BY-NC 3.0



[Figure 8]

Credit: By Ksiom [GFDL (http://www.gnu.org/copyleft/fdl.html) or CC-BY-SA-3.0 (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0/)], from Wikimedia Commons
Source: https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Korean_Peninsula_topographic_map.png
License: CC BY-NC 3.0

	[Figure 9]	**Credit:** http://shspd10group1.wikispaces.com/The+Korean+War **Source:** http://shspd10group1.wikispaces.com/file/view/38th.jpg/93672014/435x302/38th.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 10]	**Source:** https://upload.wikimedia.org/Wikipedia/en/c/c8/1950_sign_denoting_the_38th_parallel_line_in_Korea.jpeg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 11]	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/kn.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 12]	**Credit:** By unknownPhotograph: Gilad Rom (Kim_Il_Song_Portrait.jpg) [CC BY 2.5 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/2.5), CC-BY-SA-3.0 (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0/) or GFDL (http://www.gnu.org/copyleft/fdl.html)], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Kim_Il_Sung_Portrait-2.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

	[Figure 13]	**Credit:** Wikimedia **Source:** Kim Jong-un 2019 (cropped) **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 14]	**Credit:** By Attribution to (Stephan) at Flickr and http://nk.subnetwork.org/ (https://www.flickr.com/photos/fljckr/2605046372) [CC BY-SA 3.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0)], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:North_Korea-Sariwon_Migok_Farm-01.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 15]	**Credit:** By Roman Harak (North Korea - Nothing) [CC BY-SA 2.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/2.0)], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Mansudae_Assembly_Hall.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 16]	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/ks.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0



[Figure 17]

Credit: Steve46814 at English Wikipedia [CC BY-SA 3.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0)], from Wikimedia Commons
Source: https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Korea-Sinheungsa-Bronze_Buddha-02.jpg
License: CC BY-NC 3.0

This page titled 10.4: Japan, North Korea, and South Korea (2 Days) is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by CK12 via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

10.5: Southeast Asia- Introducing the Realm (1 Day)

Chapter Challenges

1. Understand the geographical differences between the mainland region and the insular region.
2. Summarize how the region was colonized. Learn how colonial activities influence each country's cultural situation.
3. Realize how the physical geography has been influenced by tectonic activity.
4. Outline the main ethnic and religious affiliations of Southeast Asia and explain why they are so diverse.
5. Comprehend the impact and influence of the overseas Chinese in the region.

Learning Objectives

TEKS Regional Unit 10 East and Southeast Asia: Chapter 10.5 Southeast Asia-Introducing the Realm

WG.1A Analyze the effects of physical and human geographic patterns and processes on the past and describe their impact on the present, including significant physical features and environmental conditions that influenced migration patterns and shaped the distribution of culture groups today.

WG.3B Describe the physical processes that affect the environments of regions, including weather, tectonic forces, erosion, and soil-building processes.

WG.3C Examine the physical processes that affect the lithosphere, atmosphere, hydrosphere, and biosphere. Examine the physical processes that affect the lithosphere, atmosphere, hydrosphere, and biosphere.

WG.4A Explain how elevation, latitude, wind systems, ocean currents, position on a continent, and temperature, precipitation, and distribution of climate regions.

WG.4C Explain the influence of climate on the distribution of biomes in different regions.

WG.8A Compare ways that humans depend on, adapt to, and modify the physical environment, including the influences of culture and technology.

WG.10D Compare global trade patterns over time and examine the implications of globalization, including outsourcing and free trade zones.

WG.22D Use geographic terminology correctly.

WG.22D Use standard grammar, spelling, sentence structure, and punctuation.

TEKS and ELPS for Regional World Geography Unit 10--East and Southeast Asia from TEKS Resource System.

Southeast Asia: Introducing the Realm

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org



Map of Southeast Asia

The islands and the mainland of Southeast Asia include a wide array of physical and cultural landscapes. The entire realm is located in the tropics except the northernmost region of Myanmar, which extends north of the Tropic of Cancer. A tropical type A climate dominates the region and rainfall is generally abundant. The tropical waters of the region help moderate the climate.

Southeast Asia is located between the Indian Ocean on the west and the Pacific Ocean on the east. Bordering the many islands and peninsulas are various seas, bays, straits, and gulfs that help create the complex maritime boundaries of the realm. The South China Sea is a major body of water that acts as a separator between the mainland and the insular region. The thousands of islands that make up the various countries or lie along their coastal waters create a matrix of passageways and unique physical geography.

The three longest rivers of the realm, Mekong, Red, and Irrawaddy, are located on the mainland and have their headwaters in the high elevations of Himalayan ranges of China. The Mekong River makes its way from the high Himalayas in China and helps form the political borders of Laos and Thailand on its way through Cambodia to Vietnam where it creates a giant delta near Ho Chi Minh City (Saigon).

The Red River flows out of China and through Hanoi to the Red River delta on the Gulf of Tonkin. The Irrawaddy River flows through the length of Burma providing for the core area of the country. Another major river of the mainland is the Chao Phraya of Thailand. With its many tributaries, the Chao Phraya creates a favorable core area that is home to the largest population of the country.

Many other rivers can be found on both the mainland and the insular region. The rivers transport water and sediments from the interior to the coasts, often creating large deltas with rich soils that are major agricultural areas. Multiple crops of rice and food products can be grown in the fertile river valleys and deltas. The agricultural abundance is needed to support the ever-increasing populations of the realm.

Tectonic plate activity has been responsible for the existence of the many islands and has created the mountainous terrain of the various countries. High mountain ranges can have peaks that reach elevations of over 15,000 feet. The high-elevation ranges of New Guinea, which are along the equator, actually have glaciers, ice, and snow that remain year-round.

The island of Borneo, in the center of the insular region, is a segment of ancient rock that has been pushed upward by tectonic forces to form a mountainous land mass. The mountains on Borneo have been worn down over time by erosion. Mountains and highlands stretch across the northern border of the realm along the borders with India and China. The interior nature of this border makes it less accessible.

Similar dynamics can be found in the interior of the islands of the insular region, where the isolation and remoteness have helped create the environmental conditions for unique flora and fauna. In the highland areas the human cultural landscape can be diverse.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

Time and isolation have worked together to form the traditions and cultural ways that give local groups their identity and heritage.

Tectonic activity makes the region vulnerable to earthquakes and volcanic eruptions. The volcanic peak of Mount Pinatubo, in the Philippines, erupted in 1991, spewing ash and smoke into the atmosphere and impacting much of the planet. An earthquake of 9.0 magnitude occurred off the coast of the Indonesian island of Sumatra in 2004 and caused widespread disaster throughout the wider region of the Indian Ocean. As many as one 150,000 deaths were reported, mainly from flooding. A 35-foot-high wall of water from the tsunami devastated many coastal areas from Thailand to India.

Impact of Colonialism

Southeast Asia has not escaped the impact of globalization, both colonial and corporate. As Europeans expanded their colonial activities, they made their way into Southeast Asia. Southeast Asia was heavily influenced by European colonialism. The only area of the region that was not colonized by the Europeans was Thailand, which was called Siam during the colonial era. It remained an independent kingdom throughout the colonial period and was a buffer state between French and British colonizers. The Japanese colonial empire controlled much of Southeast Asia before World War II.

Some of the countries and regions of Southeast Asia became known by their colonial connection. Indonesia was once referred to as the Dutch East Indies, which was influential in the labeling of the Caribbean as the West Indies. French Indochina is a term legitimized for historical references to the former French claims in Southeast Asia. Malaya and British Borneo each had its own currency based on a dollar unit that was legal tender for the regions of the Federation of Malaya, Singapore, Sarawak, North Borneo, and Brunei.

Independence from the European powers and freedom from Japanese imperialism by the end of World War II provided a new identification for the various countries of the realm. Cultural and economic ties remain between many former colonies and their European counterparts.

East Timor, a former Portuguese colony south of Indonesia, has been the most recent colony to gain independence. Timor is an island just north of Australia. The western portion is claimed by Indonesia. The whole island was annexed to Indonesia in 1975. As a result of separatist movements that entailed conflict and violence, the eastern portion was finally granted independence in 2002. Since then, East Timor has been working to establish itself as a country and is now negotiating its offshore boundary to include important oil and gas reserves.

Cultural Introduction

Southeast Asia has a population of more than 600 million people. More than half of the population lives on the many islands of Indonesia and the Philippines. The small island of Java in Indonesia is one of the most densely populated places on Earth. More than half of the more than 260 million people who live in Indonesia live on the island of Java. The island of Luzon in the Philippines is also one of the more densely populated areas of the insular region.

The Philippines has over 104 million Filipino people, Vietnam has more than 96 million, and Thailand has more than 68 million. Local areas with high food-producing capacity are also high population centers, which would include deltas, river valleys, and fertile plains.

The ethnic mosaic of Southeast Asia is a result of the emergence of local differences between people who have evolved into identifiable cultural or ethnic groups. Though there are a multitude of specific ethnic groups, a number of the larger ones stand out with recognizable populations. On the mainland the Burmese, Thai, Khmer, and Vietnamese are the largest groups, coinciding with the physical countries from Burma to Vietnam.

A similar situation can be found in the insular region. Many distinct groups can exist on the many islands of the region. The island of New Guinea, for example, has hundreds of local groups with their own languages and traditions. The large number of ethnic groups is dominated by Indonesians, Malays, and Filipinos, coinciding with the countries of Indonesia, Malaysia, and the Philippines.

Each of these main groups has many subgroups that hold to their own cultural heritage in the areas where they exist. The many islands of Indonesia and the Philippines create the opportunity for diversity to continue to thrive, in spite of the globalization process that increased the interaction and communication opportunities between groups.

Indonesia is also home to the largest Muslim population in the world. All major religions can be found here. The Philippine population is predominantly Christian, but there is a minority Muslim community, including rebel insurgents. Most of people in Malaysia follow Islam. About 95 percent of the people in Thailand and more than 60 percent of the people in Laos are Buddhist. Hinduism is present in the Indonesian island of Bali and in various other locations in the region. Animism and local religions can be found in rural and remote areas. Southeast Asia is a mix of many ethnic groups, each with its own history, culture, and religious preference.

Country	Religions
India Andaman and Nicobar Islands	**Hinduism** (69%), Christianity, Islam, Sikhism and others
Brunei	**Islam** (67%), Buddhism, Christianity, others (indigenous beliefs, etc.)
Burma	**Buddhism** (89%), Islam, Christianity, Hinduism, Animism, others
Cambodia	**Buddhism** (97%), Islam, Christianity, Animism, others
Christmas Island	**Buddhism** (75%), Islam, Christianity
Cocos (Keeling) Islands	**Islam** (80%), others
East Timor	**Roman Catholicism** (97%), Protestantism, Islam, Hinduism, Buddhism
Indonesia	**Islam** (87.18%), Protestantism, Roman Catholicism, Hinduism, Buddhism, Confucianism, others
Laos	**Buddhism** (67%), Animism, Christianity, others
Malaysia	**Islam** (60.4%), Buddhism, Christianity, Hinduism, Animism
Philippines	**Roman Catholicism** (80%), Islam (11%), Iglesia ni Cristo (Church of Christ) (3%), Buddhism (2%), Animism (1.25%), others (0.35%)
Singapore	**Buddhism**, Christianity, Islam, Taoism, Hinduism, others
Thailand	**Buddhism** (93.83%), Islam (4.56%), Christianity (0.8%), Hinduism (0.011%), others (0.079%)
Vietnam	**Vietnamese folk religion** (45.3%), Buddhism (16.4%), Christianity (8.2%), Other (0.4%), Unaffiliated (29.6%)

Source

Overseas Chinese

Southeast Asia is also home to over 30 million overseas Chinese—ethnic Chinese who live outside of China. The Chinese exodus to the realm was the greatest during the last Chinese dynasties and during the colonial era. European colonial powers enhanced this migration pattern by leveraging the use of people with Chinese heritage in their governing over the local populations in the realm.

Life has often been difficult for overseas Chinese. The Japanese occupation of the realm during World War II was a time of harsh discrimination against Chinese. Japanese occupation and colonialism diminished with the end of World War II. The overseas Chinese minority retained an economic advantage because of their former colonial status and their economic connections.

Chinatowns emerged in many of the major cities of Southeast Asia. The discrimination against the Chinese, fueled by religious or socioeconomic differences, often continued after World War II by the local ethnic majorities. Nevertheless, overseas Chinese in Southeast Asia have been instrumental in promoting the global business arrangements that have established the Pacific Rim as a major player in the international economy.

Country	Currency	Population (2017)	Main industries
Brunei	**B$** Brunei dollar	443,593	Petroleum, Petrochemicals, Fishing
Cambodia	៛ Riel	16,204,486	Clothing, Gold, Agriculture
East Timor	**US$** US dollar	1,291,358	Petroleum, Coffee, Electronics
Indonesia	**IDR** Rupiah	260,580,739	Coal, Petroleum, Palm oil
Laos	₭ Kip	7,126,706	Copper, Electronics, Tin
Malaysia	**RM** Ringgit	31,381,992	Electronics, Petroleum, Palm oil
Myanmar	**K** Kyat	55,123,814	Natural gas, Agriculture, Clothing
Philippines	₱ Weight	104,256,076	Electronics, Timber, Automotive
Singapore	**S$** Singapore dollar	5,888,926	Electronics, Petroleum, Chemicals
Thailand	฿ Baht	68,414,135	Electronics, Automotive, Rubber
Vietnam	₫ Dong	96,160,163	Electronics, Clothing, Agriculture

Source

Key Takeaways

- Southeast Asia can be studied by dividing up the realm into two geographic regions: the mainland and the insular region. The mainland borders China and India and has extensive river systems. The insular region is made up of islands and peninsulas between Asia and Australia, often with mountainous interiors.
- France and Britain colonized the mainland region of Southeast Asia. Burma was a British colony and the rest was under French colonial rule. The Japanese took control of the region briefly before World War II ended in 1945. Siam was the only area not colonized. Siam became the country of Thailand.
- The physical geography of the mainland and the insular region is dominated by a tropical type A climate. Cooler temperatures may be found in the mountainous regions and more even temperatures ranges can be found along the coasts. Tectonic plate activity is responsible for the many earthquakes and volcanic eruptions that occur in the realm.

- Southeast Asia is ethnically, religiously, and linguistically diverse. A number of major ethnic groups dominate in the mainland and insular region but are only examples of the multitude of smaller groups that exist in the realm. One minority group is the overseas Chinese, who immigrated to the realm during the colonial era.

Vocabulary Terms

Chapter 10.5 Southeast Asia; Introducing the Realm

	A set of closely grouped islands.
	A French colony in Southeast Asia comprised of Cambodia, Laos, and Vietnam.
	A powerful empire that lasted roughly from the 9th to 15th centuries in what is now Cambodia.
	A major river that runs south from southern China through Laos, Cambodia, and Vietnam.
	The former name of Thailand.
	The Vietnamese New Year and most important holiday in Vietnam.
	The region is located in the low latitudes and characterized by warm temperatures year round and abundant rainfall. Within the tropical climate region are the sub regions of tropical rainforest and savanna
	Found in tropical areas near the equator where the climate is charact erized by plentiful rainfall and warm year round temperatures. This biome is home to a great variety of plant and animal life.

Applying Knowledge

Discussion and Study Questions

1. Which countries of Southeast Asia are in the mainland region? Which countries are in the insular region?
2. What are the four main rivers of the mainland region and how do they contribute to each region's economic activities?
3. How has tectonic plate activity been evident in Southeast Asia? How has the rest of the world been influenced by tectonic activity in the realm?
4. Which European countries have been the main colonizers and which countries did each colonize? How has the colonial experience influenced the realm?
5. Where are the main population centers? Why are these locations favorable to such large populations? Which countries are the most populous?
6. What are the main ethnic groups on the mainland and in the insular region? Why are there so many ethnic groups in this realm? How has physical geography contributed to the diversity?
7. What are the main religious affiliations of the realm? Which countries have the largest Buddhist, Muslim, and Christian populations? How do you think this diversity of religious beliefs could create difficulties in the workplace?
8. What is the newest country to declare independence in the realm? Which European country colonized the area? Why didn't this country gain its independence many decades ago?
9. How have the overseas Chinese influenced the realm of Southeast Asia? Why have the overseas Chinese been so influential in the economic situation of the Pacific Rim?
10. What other region of the world has similar dynamics in physical geography and colonial activities to the insular region of Southeast Asia?

Real-World Geography Exercise

Go to Real-Time World Air Quality Index. Choose five of the locations below and find the current air quality index. Which areas have the best air quality? Which areas have the worst air quality? How does the air quality impact the quality of life for people in each region? Be prepared to share your answers.

- Chao Phraya River
- Gulf of Tonkin
- Ho Chi Minh City
- Indochina
- Insular Region
- Irrawaddy River
- Mainland Region
- Mekong River
- Red River
- Saigon

Helpful Websites for the Study of Geography

Canadian Encyclopedia is an encyclopedia funded by the Canadian government covering all branches of knowledge. Their scholarly collection includes interactive materials.

CIA World Factbook provides information on the people, history, government, economy, energy, geography, communications, transportation, military, and transnational issues for the world's entities.

Congress.gov is a US government website where you can find federal legislation, past and present, as well as information about the US legal system.

Drug Enforcement Administration (DEA) is a government agency website that provides current news, resources, topics of interest, information about drugs, careers in the DEA, and a tip hotline.

Library of Congress is the largest library in the world and provides manuscripts, files, information, pictures, and videos.

NASA Earth Observatory (NEO) is a US government agency website that allows users to search for and retrieve satellite images of Earth.

National Archives is a US government website that provides historical documents, photos, records, publications, and educator resources.

National Oceanic and Atmospheric Association (NOAA) is a US government agency website that provides weather-related information and ocean research.

National Map is a website by the United States Geological Survey and other federal, state, and local agencies that delivers topographic information for the United States.

NationMaster is a massive central data source and a handy way to graphically compare nations.

Real-Time World Air Quality Index is a website that measures most locations in the world for air pollution in real time.

StateMaster is a unique statistical database which allows you to research and compare a multitude of different data on US states.

United Nations (UN) is an international organization founded in 1945 and made up of 193 member states. The UN maintains international peace and security, protects human rights, delivers humanitarian aid, promotes sustainable development, and upholds international law.

United States Census Bureau is a US government agency that provides a population clock, data, surveys, statistics, a library with information and infographics, news about the economy, and much more.

United States Geological Survey (USGS) is a US government agency website that provides scientific information about the natural hazards that threaten lives, the natural resources we rely on, the health of our ecosystems and environment, and the impacts of climate and land-use change.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

Whitehouse.gov is a US government website that provides the latest presidential news, information about the budget, policy, defense, and many more topics.

World Health Organization (WHO) is under the United Nations and provides leadership on matters critical to health; shapes the research agenda on health; and monitors the health situation and assessing health trends around the world. Their website provides information on the state of health around the world, outbreaks, current health news, and more.

World Trade Organization (WTO) is an intergovernmental organization that regulates international trade. The website provides information on the history of the multilateral trading system, featured videos, news and events, trade topics, and more.

Image	Reference	Attributions
	[Figure 1]	**Credit:** Updated from map courtesy of University of Texas Libraries. **Source:** https://legacy.lib.utexas.edu/maps/middle_east_and_asia/southeast_asia_pol_2003.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

This page titled 10.5: Southeast Asia- Introducing the Realm (1 Day) is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by CK12 via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

10.6: Islands of Southeast Asia (1 Day)

Chapter Challenges

1. Summarize the economic development of each of the countries in this section.
2. Understand that Malaysia is divided between the Malay Peninsula and the island of Borneo.
3. Outline how the structured island nation of Singapore became an economic tiger.
4. Describe the physical geography of Indonesia and the population dynamics of the island of Java.
5. Summarize the cultural characteristics of the Philippines.
6. Learn why the Philippines is a popular destination for business process outsourcing (BPO).

Learning Objectives

TEKS Regional Unit 10 East and Southeast Asia: Chapter 10.6 Islands of Southeast Asia

WG.7D Construct and analyze population pyramids and use other data, graphics, and maps to describe the population characteristics of different societies and to predict future population trends.

WG.9A Identify physical and/or human factors such as climate, vegetation, language, trade networks, political units, river systems, and religion that constitute a region.

WG.10D Compare global trade patterns over time and examine the implications of globalization, including outsourcing and free trade zones.

WG.11C Assess how changes in climate, resources, and infrastructure (technology, transportation, and communication) affect the location and patterns of economic activities.

WG.12C Analyze how the creation, distribution, and management of key natural resources affects the location and patterns of movement of products, money, and people.

WG.14A Analyze current events to infer the physical and human processes that lead to the formation of boundaries and other political divisions.

WG.16C Describe distinctive cultural patterns and landscapes associated with...regions of the world and how these patterns influenced the processes of innovation and diffusion.

WG.17C Describe and compare patterns of culture such as language, religion, land use, education, and customs that make specific regions of the world distinctive. make specific regions of the world distinctive.

WG.17B Describe major world religions, including animism, Buddhism,...Hinduism, Islam,... and their spatial distribution.

WG.18B Assess causes, effects, and perceptions of conflicts between groups of people, including modern genocides and terrorism.

WG.18C Identify examples of cultures that maintain traditional ways, including traditional economies.

WG.21B Locate places of contemporary geopolitical significance on a map.

WG.22B Generate summaries, generalizations, and thesis statements supported by evidence.

WG.22C Use geographic terminology correctly.

WG.22D Use standard grammar, spelling, sentence structure, and punctuation.

TEKS and ELPS for Regional World Geography Unit 10--East and Southeast Asia from TEKS Resource System

Islands of Southeast Asia

The islands of Southeast Asia includes the countries of Malaysia, Singapore, Brunei, East Timor, Indonesia, and the Philippines. Of the Southeast Asian countries, East Timor most recently gained its independence. There are major differences in cultural, economic, and political dynamics, and in the ethnic groups that make up the dominant majorities in each. There is also a high level of linguistic and religious diversity.

The physical geography varies from island to island. Some have high mountain relief and others are low-lying and relatively flat. Active tectonic plate action in the region causes earthquakes and volcanic activity, resulting in the destruction of infrastructure and loss of life. Earthquakes and volcanic activity greatly impacted human life on the islands.

Economic forces continue to prompt the countries of Southeast Asia to enter into trade relationships that integrate them with global networks based on dependency and reliance. The old colonial powers may no longer control them politically but may impact them economically. The new dynamics of corporate colonialism, with their economic power located in the core economic regions, still seek to exploit the countries of Southeast Asia for their labor and resources.

These Asian nations are working to develop their own economies and use their own labor and resources to gain national wealth and increase the standard of living for their people. Each country has to contend with globalization forces within the international network of economic relationships.

Malaysia



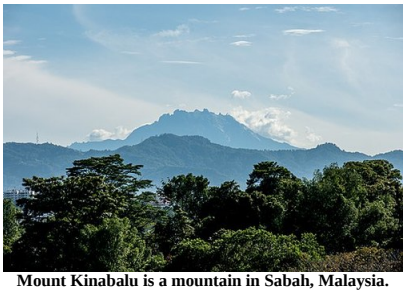
Map of Malaysia

Malaysia is a country made up of various British colonies that came together as a federation and then became an independent country. Britain started establishing colonies in the region in the late 1700s. The two main areas include the western colonies on the Malay Peninsula and the eastern colonies on the island of Borneo. The western settlements were part of the Malay Peninsula, which included the colonies of Pinang and Singapore.

Eventually, the British took control of the eastern colonies of Brunei, Sarawak, and Sabah on the island of Borneo. In 1957, the western colonies on the mainland peninsula broke from their British colonizers and became an independent country called the Federation of Malaya. In 1963, the British Borneo colonies of Sarawak and Sabah joined the Federation of Malaya to form the current country, which is called Malaysia. In 1965, Singapore broke off from Malaysia and became an independent country. Brunei, which was still a British protectorate, became independent in 1984.

Malaysia has two mainland areas separated by the South China Sea. The regions of Sarawak and Sabah, on the island of Borneo, are called East Malaysia. The mainland on the Malay Peninsula is called West Malaysia. These regions have similar physical landscapes, which include coastal plains with nearby densely forested foothills and mountains. The highest mountains, rising 13,436 feet, are in East Malaysia on the island of Borneo. Located near the equator, Malaysia has a tropical Type A climate with monsoons regularly occurring from October to February.

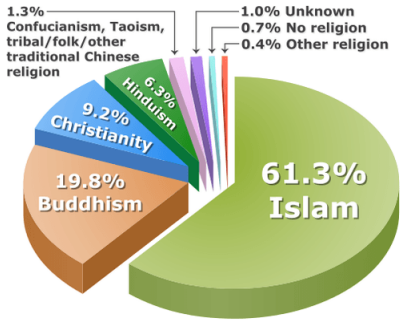
CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org



Mount Kinabalu is a mountain in Sabah, Malaysia.

Diversity of Culture and Ethnicity in Malaysia

Malaysia's culture is diverse in that several major religions are practiced within its borders. Islam is considered the official religion and is supported by at least 61.3 percent of the population. About 19.8 percent of the people are Buddhists, 9.2 percent Christians, and 6.3 percent Hindu. The remaining percentages of the population include traditional Chinese religions and local tribal beliefs.

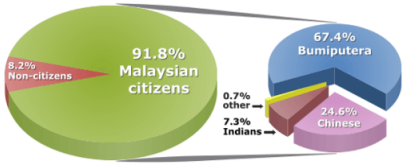


The percentage distribution of Malaysian population by a religion based on 2010 census.

In this Islamic country, there are concerns that Muslims get preferential treatment by government programs and policies. There are even special judicial legal courts for Muslims only to work out issues regarding marriage, custody, inheritance, or other conflicting Islamic issues regarding faith and obligation. This court only hears Islamic issues and no other legal matters.

There have been movements by minority extremist groups that would like to see Malaysia shift toward a true Islamic state, complete with the Sharia Criminal Code as the law of the land. The movement, however, has been put down by the government. Since 9/11 in the United States, there has been more concern about extremist religious views in Malaysia.

People of Malay ethnic background, also called Bumiputera, make up approximately 67.4 percent of the population. People of Chinese descent are the second-largest group at about 24.6 percent. An additional 7.3 percent of the population is made up of indigenous groups. During British colonialism, a number of people from South Asia were brought to Malaysia. For example, Tamils were brought from India to work the plantations. Their Hindu beliefs were infused into the culture. Some Tamils also converted to Christianity. Sikhs were brought from South Asia to help Britain run the country as police, soldiers, or security officers. The Sikhs who came brought their religion with them, which added to the multi-religious dynamics of the country.



The percentage distribution of Malaysian population by ethnic group based on the 2010 census.

Malaysia's diverse ethnic and cultural mix often results in strong centrifugal forces that push and pull on the societal dynamics of the country. China has been active in the business community and has established strong economic ties with regional countries that have Chinese populations. The single largest minority group in the province of Sarawak on Borneo is Chinese.

As a minority group, Chinese citizens of Malaysia have felt discrimination. Since the official language is Malay and the official religion is Islam, there have been concerns about discrimination against all minority groups. Working through the cultural and ethnic diversity has been a major challenge for the country. Each minority religious or ethnic group desires to celebrate its own special holidays.

For example, there is the usual New Year's celebration on January 1, and then there is the traditional 15-day Chinese New Year celebration celebrated at a different time of the year. Sikhs celebrate the Sikh New Year. Buddhists celebrate a holiday in honor of the life and enlightenment of Buddha. Christians celebrate Christmas and Easter. Many other holidays of significance are respected or honored by various minority groups.

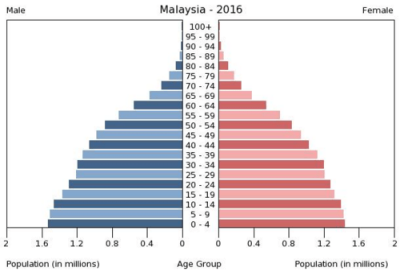
Economic Development in Malaysia

Malaysia has rapidly advanced its economy in recent decades and is modernizing its infrastructure—roads, bridges, highways, and urban facilities. In the capital city, Kuala Lumpur, Malaysia built a modern central business district (CBD) with a twin high-rise office building claimed to be the world's tallest at the time of construction. Before the global economic downturn that started in 2007, Malaysia had developed a fast-growing economy and was industrializing at a rapid rate.

Malaysia has taken advantage of its location on a major shipping lane and has shifted to manufacturing as an important sector of its economy. The country has been a leader in the export of natural resources such as tin, rubber, and palm oil, and has developed its agricultural and extractive sectors to gain income. The 1980s and 1990s were prosperous times for the country and it matured its manufacturing base from light textiles into electronics and heavy industries.

One aspect of the country that is looming on the horizon and may cause problems is the high population growth rate. In 2017, Malaysia's population was estimated at more than 31 million, with a doubling time of about 40 years. Though the country is 70 percent urban, family size (fertility rate) is 2.1, which indicates an increasing population growth pattern. One-third of the population is under the age of 15.

Malaysia is one case where the general principle is that if a country urbanizes and industrializes the family size will go down has not taken place fast enough. The fertility rate has dropped from 5.0 to 2.1, but it needs to get below a rate of about 2.0 if the country is going to successfully stabilize its population growth. Unless the country addresses this population growth, the demand for resources might outstrip economic progress in the future.



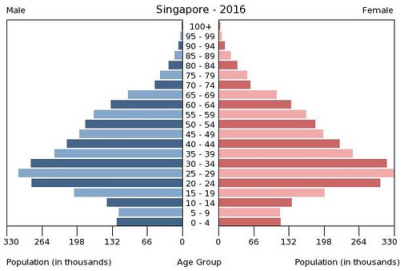
Age structure of Malaysia: 0-14 years: 27.83% (male 4,493,084/female 4,238,991); 15-24 years: 16.81 percent (male 2,677,834/female 2,598,958); 25-54 years: 41 percent (male 6,507,499/female 6,358,762); 55-64 years: 8.27% (male 1,316,331/female 1,277,558); 65 years and over: 6.1 percent (male 907,850/female 1,005,125)

Singapore



Map of Singapore

Singapore, which is located between Malaysia and Indonesia, has a population of almost 6 billion people, according to the CIA World Factbook 2017 estimate. Most of the population is located along the southern coast with a few dense clusters located in the central areas. English and Mandarin are the most common languages spoken in Singapore, but other languages include Malay, Tamil, and several Chinese dialects. Buddhism is the most prominent religion practiced in Singapore, followed by Christianity and then by people who do not adhere to any religion.



Age structure of Singapore: 0-14 years: 12.82% (male 386,139/female 368,874); 15-24 years: 16.56 percent (male 479,683/female 495,649); 25-54 years: 50.53 percent (male 1,448,463/female 1,527,038); 55-64 years: 10.46% (male 308,477/female 307,557); 65 years and over: 9.63 percent (male 258,597/female 308,449)

Language used most frequently at home		
Language		Percent
English		36.9%
Mandarin		34.9%
Malay		10.7%
Tamil		3.3%
Others		14.2%

Source

Religion in Singapore, 2015		
Religion		Percent
Buddhism		33.2%
Christianity		18.8%
No religion		18.5%
Islam		14.0%
Taoism and folk religion		10.0%
Hinduism		5.0%
Other religions		0.6%

Source

Under British colonial rule, the island of Singapore was included in the Malaysian federation. It broke away and became independent in 1965. It is a small island measuring about 30 miles long at its widest point. Singapore is about 240 square miles in area. Its most valuable resource is its relative location, and it is similar to Hong Kong in its development. With a good port, Singapore is a hub for

ships sailing between Europe and China. It serves Southeast Asia as anentrepôt, or break-of-bulk point, where goods are offloaded from large ships and transported to smaller vessels for distribution to the Southeast Asian community.

Singapore has made good strategic utilization of its geographic location by serving as a distribution center for goods and materials processed in the region. Crude oil from Indonesia is unloaded and refined here. Raw materials are shipped in, manufactured into finished products, and then shipped out to global markets. Since Singapore is small, it has had to concentrate on manufacturing goods that provide for optimal profits. As an economic tiger, Singapore has transitioned through the same stages as Taiwan, South Korea, and Hong Kong to become an economic power in Southeast Asia.

To keep labor costs low, initial manufactured products were textiles, clothing, and cheap goods. As incomes and labor skills rose, so did the complexity of the manufactured goods. The government of Singapore has targeted certain types of products to ensure a high-profit margin and a global market need. This has included automation equipment, biotechnology, and high-end information technologies.

Singapore does not manufacture automobiles but it does manufacture automation robotic components that most modern auto manufacturers will purchase and use. Medical technology is expensive and is in high demand the world over. Singapore is targeting this market. The information age has spawned new technologies that are evolving rapidly and, once again, Singapore has been at the center of this industry. Singapore has been a center for the production of computer disc drives for a multitude of global corporations.

Singapore Island is a swampy place with no natural resources. All production components, food goods, construction materials, and energy must be imported. Importing everything has raised the cost of living. To compete with the other Asian economic tigers in the global marketplace, Singapore has implemented severe control measures on its operations. There are harsh penalties for criminal activities and for even misdemeanor offenses. Singapore is a safe place to live because of its strict state rules. It has an authoritarian government, which strives to create an attractive place for international corporations to operate. One of the objectives is to eliminate corruption and establish a business-friendly environment.

The government of Singapore has entered into trade agreements with two of its neighbors to provide raw materials and cheap labor. A trade triangle has been established with Singapore, Malaysia, and Indonesia. Malaysia and Indonesia provide Singapore with raw materials and cheap labor; Singapore provides its neighbors with technical know-how and financial support. This arrangement is beneficial to all three countries.

Singapore is an excellent example of the upper end of the economic spectrum in Southeast Asia. Singapore is already 100 percent urban with high incomes based on high-tech manufacturing and processing of raw materials. Singapore is an economic hub for Southeast Asia, complete with global airline connections and is located on a major shipping lane. Singapore's world-class port is one of the busiest in Asia.



Singapore's central business district is the core financial and commercial hub.

Indonesia



Map of Indonesia

The country of Indonesia is the world's largest archipelago state, consisting of more than 17,500 islands, about one-third of which are inhabited. Indonesia is the sixteenth-largest country in the world by area. The combined area of all the islands and regions of Indonesia would equal the size of the country of Mexico. The country shares land borders with the Borneo side of Malaysia, the western half of the island of Timor, and the western portion of the island of New Guinea, which is shared with the country of Papua New Guinea.

The country's location on both sides of the equator provides a tropical Type A climate, complete with a monsoon season. Average rainfall can vary from 70 to 240 inches per year. The highest mountain is in West Papua and rises to about 16,024 feet. Indonesia is located on the Pacific Rim, where tectonic plate activity produces earthquakes and volcanic activity.

The country is home to over one hundred 50 active volcanoes, including two of the most famous ones, Krakatoa and Tambora. Both had devastating eruptions in the past two centuries. One of the most violent volcanic explosions ever recorded in human history came from Krakatoa, which is located between the islands of Java and Sumatra.

A series of eruptions in 1883 was heard as far away as the coast of Africa. Shockwaves reverberated around the globe seven times. Ash erupted into the atmosphere to a height of about 50 miles. The official death toll was 36,417, but estimates from local sources place it as high as 120,000. Global temperatures fell by about two degrees Fahrenheit, and weather patterns were disrupted for the next five years. Krakatoa remains active. Over the past few decades, the volcanic peak has been growing at the average rate of about five inches per week.

The tropical climate and the archipelago nature of the country provide for enormous biodiversity within the environment. Second only to Brazil in its biodiversity, Indonesia is home to an enormous number of unique plants and animals. The habitats of many of these creatures are being encroached upon by human activity. The remote islands have more of a chance of escaping habitat devastation and remaining intact, but agricultural and extractive economic activities have converted much of the natural environment into a cultural landscape that is not conducive to environmental sustainability.

Animals such as orangutans are losing their natural forests and may become extinct if current trends continue. The timber industry has brought about deforestation. Slash and burn agriculture has destroyed forest habitat, and human development patterns such as roads and urbanization have altered the ecosystems of the region. According to recent reports, Indonesia is one of the largest emitters of carbon dioxide in the world because of the high number of forest fires set each year.

In 2009, the United States brokered a deal with Indonesia to forgive 30 million dollars of its debt if the country would work to protect forests on the island of Sumatra, which is home to endangered indigenous animals such as tigers, elephants, rhinos, and orangutans.

In 2017, the population of Indonesia was more than 260 million people . Indonesia has the fourth-largest population of any country in the world, after the United States, India, and China. Indonesia also has more Muslims than any other country in the world. More than one-half of the population of Indonesia lives on Java, the island where Jakarta, the capital city, is located.

Java is the most populous island in the world and has a population density of more than 2,400 people per square mile. Java is the size in area of the US state of Louisiana. Java has 143 million people, whereas Louisiana has 4.68 million people. Jakarta is a world-class city that is larger than New York City and encompasses a large metropolitan area, complete with many manufacturing centers, business complexes, and housing districts.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org



The major ethnolinguistic groups within Indonesia.

The many islands of Indonesia are home to a large number of diverse ethnic and religious groups that vary as widely as any Southeast Asian nation. There may be as many as 300 distinct ethnic groups in Indonesia. Many of the ethnic groups are further divided by islands or distance. More than 250 separate languages and hundreds of additional dialects are spoken. There are an estimated 750 languages spoken on the island of New Guinea itself, with hundreds of them spoken on the Indonesian side of the island, in a population of less than three million.

Largest languages in Indonesia (Figures indicate numbers of native speakers except for the national language, Indonesian)

LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

Language	Number (millions)	Year surveyed	Main areas where spoken
Indonesian/Malay	210	2010	throughout Indonesia
Javanese	84.3	2000 (census)	throughout Java Island and several provinces in Sumatra and Kalimantan island.
Sundanese	42.0	2016	West Java, Banten, Jakarta
Madurese	13.6	2000 (census)	Madura Island (East Java)
Minangkabau	5.5	2007	West Sumatra, Riau, Jambi, Bengkulu, Jakarta
Palembang Malay	3.9	2000 (census)	South Sumatra
Minahasa	3.8	2001	North Sulawesi
Buginese	3.5	1991	South Sulawesi
Banjarese	3.5	2000 (census)	South Kalimantan, East Kalimantan, Central Kalimantan
Acehnese	3.5	2000 (census)	Aceh
Balinese	3.3	2000 (census)	Bali Island and Lombok Island
Betawi	2.7	1993	Jakarta
Sasak	2.1	1989	Lombok Island (West Nusa Tenggara)
Batak Toba	2.0	1991	North Sumatra, Riau, Riau Islands, Jakarta
Ambonese Malay	1.9	1987	Maluku
Makassarese	1.6	1989	South Sulawesi
Chinese-Min Nan	1.3	2000	North Sumatra, Riau, Riau Islands, West Kalimantan
Batak Dairi	1.2	1991	North Sumatra
Batak Simalungun	1.2	2000 (census)	North Sumatra
Batak Mandailing	1.1	2000 (census)	North Sumatra
Jambi Malay	1.0	2000 (census)	Jambi
Mongondow	0.9	1989	North Sulawesi
Gorontalo	0.9	1989	Gorontalo (province)
Ngaju Dayak	0.9	2003	Central Kalimantan
Nias	0.8	2000 (census)	Nias Island, North Sumatra
Batak Angkola	0.7	1991	North Sumatra
Manado Malay	0.8	2001	North Sulawesi
North Moluccan Malay	0.7	2001	North Maluku
Chinese-Hakka	0.6	1982	Bangka Belitung, Riau Islands and West Kalimantan
Batak Karo	0.6	1991	North Sumatra
Uab Meto	0.6	1997	West Timor (East Nusa Tenggara)
Bima	0.5	1989	Sumbawa Island (West Nusa Tenggara)
Manggarai	0.5	1989	Flores Island (East Nusa Tenggara)
Toraja-Sa'dan	0.5	1990	South Sulawesi, West Sulawesi
Komering	0.5	2000 (census)	South Sumatra
Tetum	0.4	2004	West Timor (East Nusa Tenggara)
Rejang	0.4	2000 (census)	Bengkulu
Muna	0.3	1989	Southeast Sulawesi
Basa Semawa	0.3	1989	Sumbawa Island (West Nusa Tenggara)
Bangka Malay	0.3	2000 (census)	Bangka Island (Bangka Belitung)
Osing	0.3	2000 (census)	East Java
Gayo	0.3	2000 (census)	Aceh
Chinese-Cantonese	0.3	2000	North Sumatra, Riau Islands, Jakarta
Tolaki	0.3	1991	Southeast Sulawesi
Lewotobi	0.3	2000	Flores Island (East Nusa Tenggara)
Tae’	0.3	1992	South Sulawesi

Source

The most prevalent language group in the country as a whole is Javanese. Javanese includes the official language of Indonesian, which is taught in schools and used in business and politics as the *lingua franca* of the country. Many people speak more than one language or even a number of languages to communicate throughout the country.

Islam was diffused to Indonesia in the 13th century and by the 16th century had become the dominant religion. The Indonesian constitution allows for religious freedom, although more than 85 percent of the population follows Islam. There are at least four other religions that are officially recognized: Christianity (both Protestantism and Roman Catholicism), Hinduism, Buddhism, and Confucianism. Since Islam is followed by such a large percentage of the population, the other religions do not carry the same influence.

Regional and ethnic differences play a role in the varied religious dynamics. The island of Bali, for example, is home to a majority Hindu population. Most of the Buddhists are ethnically Chinese, and they only make up a small percentage of the population. Christians and Muslims have had conflicts on the island of Sulawesi. It is common to find the practice of these religions less than orthodox in the rural communities of the country.

In spite of the diversity within the population, the country of Indonesia has established a high degree of nationalism as a centripetal force that holds the country together. There is stability in spite of the surface tensions or ethnic and religious conflicts that may erupt. An example of the social tensions is demonstrated in the case of Chinese citizens of Indonesia, who only make up about one percent of the population but have influence over the privately owned business sector of the economy. This inequitable relationship has resulted in resentment by other segments of the population, often with violent results.

Some of the islands—or portions of them—have attempted to break away in a devolutionary manner and become independent countries. Just as East Timor became independent, the most western province of Aceh on the island of Sumatra had a similar movement toward independence. West Papua on the island of New Guinea has also had an independence movement.

Agriculture has been the historic base of the Indonesian economy. In 2010, it accounted for about 13 percent of the nation's gross domestic product (GDP). Agriculture is the largest employment sector—approximately 42 percent of the workforce. This equates to more than half of the population being rural. Many of the agricultural methods in rural areas are traditional; for example, farmers use water buffalo or oxen for tilling the land. The tropical climate and adequate rainfall provide for multiple crops of rice per year in many areas. Spices, coffee, tea, palm oil, and rubber are also produced in substantial quantities.

Industries are an important building block for how a country gains wealth. In the case of Indonesia, industry accounts for about 40 percent of its GDP and employs about 20 percent of its workforce. Major industries include oil, natural gas, mining, and textiles or clothing manufacturing. Indonesia's economy has been affected by global markets, but in 2005 still managed to run a trade surplus. Japan has been its main trading partner, and China has also been a major supplier of imported goods. Indonesia has been taking advantage of the trade triangle it has with its neighbors, Singapore and Malaysia, to increase its import and export trade activities.

The political background of Indonesia is similar in dynamics to many of its neighbors. Colonized by Europeans, Indonesia was previously called the Dutch East Indies, which explains why the islands of the Caribbean were called the West Indies. The Dutch colonized Indonesia in the early 17th century but had to relinquish possession of the archipelago to the Japanese in World War II. In 1945, after the Japanese surrendered, Indonesia declared its independence, which was finally granted in 1949. The country's government quickly moved toward authoritarian rule.

During a 50-year time period, there were only two authoritarian leaders: Sukarno (1949–68) and Suharto (1968–99). Near the end of Sukarno's rule, there were violent conflicts between Sukarno's military and the Communist Party of Indonesia, which resulted in more than 500,000 deaths. Suharto's regime was credited for substantial economic growth but was also accused of serious corruption and the repression of opposition political voices. Since 1999, Indonesia has conducted free parliamentary elections and is now considered the third-largest democracy, after India and the United States.

Brunei



Map of Brunei

There are noticeable similarities between the oil-rich sheikdoms of the Persian Gulf region in the Middle East and the small sultanate of Brunei on the northern coast of Borneo. Bordered by Sarawak, the sultanate is actually two small separate regions along the coast of the South China Sea. The former British protectorate of Brunei is today a major oil and natural gas exporter. It provides a high standard of living for its small population.

The compact country is about the size of the US state of Delaware. The country's population for 2017 was 443,593 people. Brunei is attracting immigrants seeking opportunities and advantages. It is called a sultanate because the kingdom has been ruled by sultans (rulers) from the same family for the past six centuries.

The main ethnic groups in Brunei are Malay, at 66 percent, and Chinese, at 11 percent. Brunei is an Islamic State with Islam as its state religion. About two-thirds of the population is Muslim. Buddhism is the second-most popular religion. The ruling sultan is not only head of state but also prime minister of the government and leader of the Islamic faith.

Similar to states in the Middle East where Islam is the official religion, alcohol is banned and the public consumption or sale of it is illegal. Prohibition against alcohol has eliminated the establishments of pubs and nightclubs. Non-Muslims and visitors to the country can legally hold small quantities of alcohol for personal consumption.

The people of Brunei have a high standard of living, with the availability of modern amenities. The government has been concerned about integrating the country into the global economy. Natural gas and crude oil bring in about 90 percent of exports and just over half of the GDP. Education and medical care are free. Food, housing, and rice farming are subsidized by the state. The state has been working to expand the economy beyond natural gas and oil. Agricultural production has increased and unemployment has been a major focus. The wealthy emirate has also been developing its tourism sector and the financial and banking industry.

Brunei may have to take a lesson from the United Arab Emirates (UAE)—that is, to work to develop a free trade zone to attract international trade—if the country wants to continue to gain wealth once the oil and natural gas run out. It has an excellent location on the South China Sea but would have to compete with the established economic tigers of Singapore and Hong Kong as well as the other rising urban centers in the region, such as Kuala Lumpur and Bangkok.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org



Map of the Philippines

Located on the eastern side of the Southeast Asian community is the archipelago state of the Philippines. With more than 7,100 islands, many volcanic peaks, and an expanse of coastal waterways, the Philippines is home to more than 90 million people in a combined land area about the size of Arizona. The Philippines was a Spanish colony. The name is taken from Spain's 16th-century King Philip II.

Spain relinquished its claim on the Philippines to the United States in 1898 after its defeat in the Spanish-American War. The people of the Philippines wanted independence at that time and fought a bitter war with the United States in which more than one million people died. The United States allowed the Philippines to become a commonwealth in 1935. The independence movement was placed on hold while the Japanese invaded and controlled the Philippines during World War II. After the war was over, the United States granted the Philippines its independence in 1946.

Environmental Forces in the Philippines

The islands of the Philippines are of volcanic origin. They are mainly mountainous and covered in a tropical rainforest. The highest mountain, at 9,692 feet, is Mount Apo, which is located on the southern island of Mindanao. The Philippines has many active volcanoes. The northern island of Luzon is home to the Taal Volcano, Mount Pinatubo, and Mount Mayon. The Pacific tectonic plate reaches the southern edge of the Philippine plate where it meets up with the Eurasian Plate.

The juncture of tectonic plates creates a similar situation to that of Tokyo, which is at the opposite end of the Philippine plate. Active seismic forces result in many earthquakes. As many as 20 earthquakes per day can be registered here, though many are too weak to be noticed. In 1990, an earthquake on the island of Luzon registered at a magnitude of 7.8 and killed more than 1,621 people and caused extensive infrastructure damage.

Luzon's Mount Pinatubo volcano has been active in recent years. Before 1991, the mountain attracted little attention, was heavily forested and was home to tribal indigenous people. The volcano had a colossal eruption in 1991 that was recorded as the second largest in a century, after Alaska's 1912 Novarupta eruption. Mount Pinatubo began giving signs of an eruption, which were heeded by the government. Thousands of people were evacuated from the area, which saved lives.

The eruption caused billions of dollars in damage. More than 800 people were killed, and more than two million were directly impacted. The eruption destroyed more than 8,000 homes and the overall effects of the volcano were felt around the world.

Mount Pinatubo's eruption forced billions of tons of magma, ash, sulfur dioxide, minerals, and particulates into the atmosphere and onto the earth's surface. The sun was blocked out, temperatures dropped, and ash piled up in nearby areas, causing extensive damage to roofs, roadways, and agricultural lands. The damage from the eruption was amplified by the fact that a full-scale typhoon hit the country on the same date, bringing torrential rainfall and wind that mixed with the ash in the air to create extremely dangerous environmental conditions. The damage had a massive impact on the entire economy of the Philippines.

The eruption severely damaged civilian infrastructure and US military bases in the region. The Subic Bay Naval Base was 50 miles to the southwest of Mount Pinatubo's summit, while Clark Air Base was less than 16 miles to the east. Enormous clouds of ash covered everything. As a result of the damage to the operations at the bases, the United States Air Force evacuated and moved all air base personnel and military assets to bases in Guam, Okinawa, or Hawaii. The United States ultimately abandoned Clark Air Base, while Subic Bay reverted to the Philippines.

There are 37 volcanoes in the Philippines, of which 18 are still active. Mount Mayon is the most active volcano at the present time. It has had 47 eruptions in recorded history. The eruption in 1993 killed 68 people and caused the evacuation of 60,000 more.

Earthquakes and volcanoes are not the only serious natural concerns of the Philippine Islands. They are also directly in the center of the Western Pacific's major typhoon belt. As many as 20 typhoons occur yearly in the area of the islands, and as half that amount hit the islands directly. The 1991 typhoon Thelma/Uring killed almost 8,000 people. The 1911 typhoon dumped over 46 inches of rain in a 24-hour period.

Flooding is usually the main problem with typhoons and is the number one killer related to typhoon deaths. Typhoon activity also brings precipitation to the islands and the region. The Philippines are in the major path of typhoons in the Pacific and will continue to combat the effects of these powerful forces of nature.

Philippine Political Geography

The Philippines are divided into three main geopolitical regions, which are Luzon, Visayas**,** and Mindanao. The northern island of Luzon is home to the nation's national capital region with Quezon, the largest city, and Manila, the capital. Both cities are a part of metropolitan Manila, which has a population of more than 20 million. The northern island of Luzon is home to half the population of the country. The central Philippines consists of the Visayas Island group, including the islands between the Sulu Sea and the Philippine Sea. The southern region of the country is anchored by the large island of Mindanao.

The government of the Philippines is a constitutional republic with an elected president. With independence in 1946 came various leaders who have shaped the political landscape of the Philippines. After recovering from the devastation of World War II, the country prospered during the 1960s and showed positive economic gains. The political scene entered a difficult political era with the election of President Ferdinand Marcos in 1965, which turned into an authoritative dictatorship. During his time in power, the economy became sluggish and social unrest began to arise in opposition to his leadership.

Barred by law from being elected for a third time, Ferdinand Marcos declared martial law in 1972 under the premise that there was too much political conflict with Communist elements and Islamic insurgencies. Marcos ruled with his wife Imelda Marcos until 1986, when conditions worsened and the two were implicated in the assassination of opposition leader Benigno Aquino. Corruption, vote rigging, and the dictatorial actions of President Marcos caught up with him through mass protests, which eventually led to his removal from office.

He left the Philippines for his exile in Hawaii. It was later alleged that during his 20 years in office, Ferdinand and Imelda Marcos had embezzled billions of dollars of public funds and moved them to bank accounts in Switzerland, the United States, other countries, and into fictitious money-laundering corporations. Ferdinand Marcos died of illness in 1989 in Honolulu.

Imelda Marcos returned to the Philippines to run for public office and even attempted a failed run for the presidency. Imelda was known for her thousands of shoes, which she had acquired while in power. Many of them are in a shoe museum in the Philippines. She was also known for her extravagant spending trips around the world. Several different political leaders have come to power since the Ferdinand Marcos era. Political stability has been difficult to achieve. The national leadership has faced Islamic insurgencies, attempted coups, corruption in the government, and high national debt. These issues continue today but a modest level of stability has encouraged economic growth.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

Philippine Cultural Geography

The Philippines is a diverse country with hundreds of ethnic groups. Many tribal groups, as well as a large number of immigrants from Asia, Spain, and the United States, have made the Philippines home. Together with Spanish influence, mixed ethnic groups have been created. They are an example of the confluence of cultures that make up the country. The Philippines is the only country in Asia where Roman Catholicism predominates, other than recently independent East Timor.

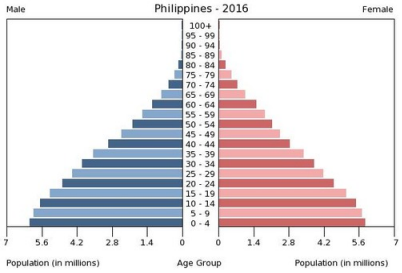
Christians make up about 90 percent of the population. All but 10 percent identify themselves as Roman Catholic. A modest Muslim population is prominent in the southern island of Mindanao and neighboring islands. Islamic fundamentalism has increased the insurgency in the region, causing political and economic turmoil and conflict. People of Chinese heritage often follow Buddhism, Taoism, or Chinese folk religions. Various tribal groups still follow their cultural animist beliefs and have traditional shaman religious leaders.

The Philippines is home to more than 180 native languages and dialects. English and Filipino were declared the official languages of the Philippines in 1987. Tagalog is the main language spoken. Filipino is a version of Tagalog that is used in many of the urban areas. English and Tagalog are used in different parts of the country.

Population by Language (2010)

Language	Speakers		
Tagalog	24.44 %		22,512,089
Cebuano	21.35 %		19,665,453
Ilokano	8.77 %		8,074,536
Hiligaynon	8.44 %		7,773,655
Waray	3.97 %		3,660,645
Other local languages/dialects	26.09 %		24,027,005
Other foreign languages/dialects	0.09 %		78,862
Not reported/not stated	0.01 %		6,450
TOTAL	92,097,978		
Source: Philippine Statistics Authority			

The population growth rate is considerable. According to the CIA World Factbook, the population is currently above 104 million people. The average family size is 3.02, which will continue to influence the economic situation of the country.



Age Structure in the Philippines: 0-14 years: 33.39 percent (male 17,764,826/female 17,050,168); 15-24 years: 19.16 percent (male 10,199,389/female 9,780,025); 25-54 years: 36.99 percent (male 19,597,675/female 18,964,900); 55-64 years: 5.97 percent (male 2,844,739/female 3,375,139); 65 years and over: 4.49 percent (male 1,930,273/female 2,748,942)

The Global Economy and Outsourcing in the Philippines

The modest level of political stability has caused the Philippines to become an attractive destination for global corporations who seek to outsource their information and technology service jobs. Any work that can be conducted over the Internet or telephone can be outsourced to anywhere in the world with high-speed communication links. Countries that are attractive to business process outsourcing (BPO) are countries where the English language is prominent, where employment costs are low, and where there is an adequate labor base of skilled or educated workers that can be trained in the services required.

All three of these requirements are met by the labor force of the Philippines. The historical influence of the United States has provided a base of English language speakers. The country also has an adequate population base with the education or professional skills necessary to meet these demands. Corporate colonialism has the Philippines in its business focus and is finding a good source of available labor.

In 2005, information technology and BPO amounted to about 34 billion dollars globally. Since 2005, that amount has increased dramatically, doubling and tripling in some countries by 2009. India has been a major destination for BPO, but the Philippines is gaining ground and increasing its infrastructure in an attempt to gain a larger share of the market. Other countries around the world are a part of this outsourcing market. This type of business activity shifts jobs from one country to another. A country might lose these types of jobs, but its corporations can remain competitive in the global marketplace if they can cut costs of operation by outsourcing their service work to a low-cost country.

Jeepneys

The term jeepney is derived from the use of early US army jeeps left over from World War II that were used as base vehicles transformed into a type of taxi. These transformed vehicles took on a cultural identity as jeepneys with their flamboyant colors and extended seating. Jeepneys are now produced for this purpose and are the most widely used public transportation mode in the Philippines. An electric version of the jeepney is being developed for a number of Asian countries.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org



A typical jeepney waits for passengers in front of the supermarket in Legazpi City, Albay, Philippines.

Corporate giants in the United States like America Online, Texas Instruments, Citibank, Hewlett Packard, J.P. Morgan Chase & Co., and the McClatchy Company (third-largest US newspaper company) have been shifting call centers and other back-office functions to the Philippines. Other European companies like Germany's global Siemens Corporation, Royal Dutch Shell, Swedish Telecom provider Ericsson Telecommunications, and Danish shipping giant Maersk are examples of corporations that have established outsourcing centers in the Philippines.

The economic savings can be considerable. BPO wages in the Philippines are one-fifth of the wages paid for the same jobs in the United States. Those same wages are double the national average wages for Philippine employees. A rise in the number of outsourced jobs is welcome news for the Philippines, whose economy is in need of a boost.

Timor-Leste



Map of Timor-Leste

Timor-Leste is an island of southern Indonesia not far from Australia. The island is divided by its colonial history. The eastern half was a Portuguese colony beginning in the 16th century. Portuguese colonizers introduced Christianity in the form of Roman Catholicism. The western half was associated with Indonesia, which was a Dutch colony during the colonial era.

The Japanese occupied the Dutch colony during World War II but had to give it up after they surrendered in 1945. Indonesia received its independence in 1949 and laid claim to the whole island of Timor. Timor-Leste made a declaration of independence in 1975 but was occupied by Indonesia. A bitter civil war erupted. A year later, Indonesia declared it its 27th province.

The civil war resulted in the deaths of as many as 250,000 people. It was not until 1999 that Indonesia finally ceded its political control over Timor-Leste. The Australian military has been instrumental in securing Timor-Leste for independence and has been serving as a peacekeeping force for internal security for the past decade. The United Nations (UN) recognized Timor-Leste as a sovereign independent country in 2002.

Timor-Leste has a population of about 1.291 million. About 98 percent of the population is Roman Catholic. The only other predominant Catholic country in Asia is the Philippines. About 90 percent of the population still works in agriculture. The country has had a difficult time establishing a stable government and reducing conflict. Almost all its infrastructure was damaged in the civil war and rebuilding has been slow. Poor and impoverished due to the civil war over independence, the country does have some opportunity derived from the large natural gas field in the vicinity. Timor-Leste has been working to gain control of its maritime boundaries to benefit from the offshore natural resources.

Key Takeaways

- Malaysia was a former British colony made up of various regions from both the Malay Peninsula and the island of Borneo. Modern Malaysia has diverse cultural dynamics and is modernizing its economy to compete with the core economic areas of the world.
- Singapore is an economic tiger that doesn't have natural resources but makes good use of an excellent location. High-tech manufacturing has been Singapore's main method of gaining wealth.
- Indonesia is made up of thousands of islands and hundreds of ethnic groups. Indonesia is the fourth-most populous country in the world and has the world's largest Muslim population. More than half the population lives on the island of Java.
- The Philippines has more than ninety million people on thousands of islands. The country was colonized by Spain and was then a possession of the United States before it gained independence. Roman Catholicism and the English language are common in the Philippines, both of which augment a large outsourcing industry.
- Brunei is a small Muslim emirate with high incomes because of oil revenues. East Timor is half of a small island north of Australia. It is a former Portuguese colony and just gained its independence in 2002.

Vocabulary Terms

Chapter 10.6 Islands of Southeast Asia

	Formed from the nationalized colonies of the Dutch East India Company, which came under the administration of the Dutch government in 1800
	A monotheistic religion based on the teachings of the prophet Muhammad
	The capital city of Indonesia and largest city in Southeast Asia
	This country is the world's leading producer of palm oil
	The second peninsula of mainland southeast Asia; the narrow strip of land serves as a bridge between the mainland and islands
	An independent country that is very small in an area and population
	The practice of having certain job functions done outside a company instead of having an in-house department or employee handle them; functions can be outsourced to e

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

Applying Knowledge

Discussion and Study Questions

1. Which European country colonized each of the Southeast Asian nations discussed in this lesson?
2. What is the dominant religion in each country? Name the two Roman Catholic countries in Asia.
3. What cultural and ethnic issues does Malaysia need to address?
4. What type of economic activity has Singapore engaged in to gain wealth?
5. How does the growth triangle that Singapore is engaged in work? How does each partner benefit?
6. How does an *entrepôt* fit into the core-periphery spatial relationship in Southeast Asia?
7. What environmental problems exist in Indonesia and the Philippines? Which are natural phenomena?
8. Where are devolutionary forces active in Indonesia? How could the government address them?
9. What are the three main regions of the Philippines? Which region has the largest population?
10. What qualities or conditions are necessary for BPO?

Real-World Geography Exercise

1. Using Google Maps, complete the following activities:
   a. Locate each place on the bulleted list below.
   b. Find the nearest city with an international airport in proximity to each location on the bulleted list below.
   c. Calculate the distance and travel time by plane to each city from the Newark Liberty International Airport in Newark, New Jersey.
2. Using NASA Latitude and Longitude Finder, determine the latitude and longitude for each location on the bulleted list below.
3. Be prepared to share and discuss your answers.

- Aceh
- Bali
- Borneo
- East Malaysia
- Java
- Luzon
- Mindanao
- Pinang
- Quezon
- Sarawak
- Sabah
- Sumatra
- Visayas
- West Papua

Current Events

Educational Geography Scoop It

- Malaysia Timber Industry Still Growing Strong
- Malaysia Making Rice Production More Environment-Friendly
- Singapore Arrivals To Be Checked After Reported Monkeypox Outbreak
- Singapore's Youngest Billionaire Kishin RK On How He Is Disrupting The Real Estate Industry
- How This Trans Politico Is Changing Indonesia From The Inside
- Indonesia Bans Gay Themed Emoticons From Social Media

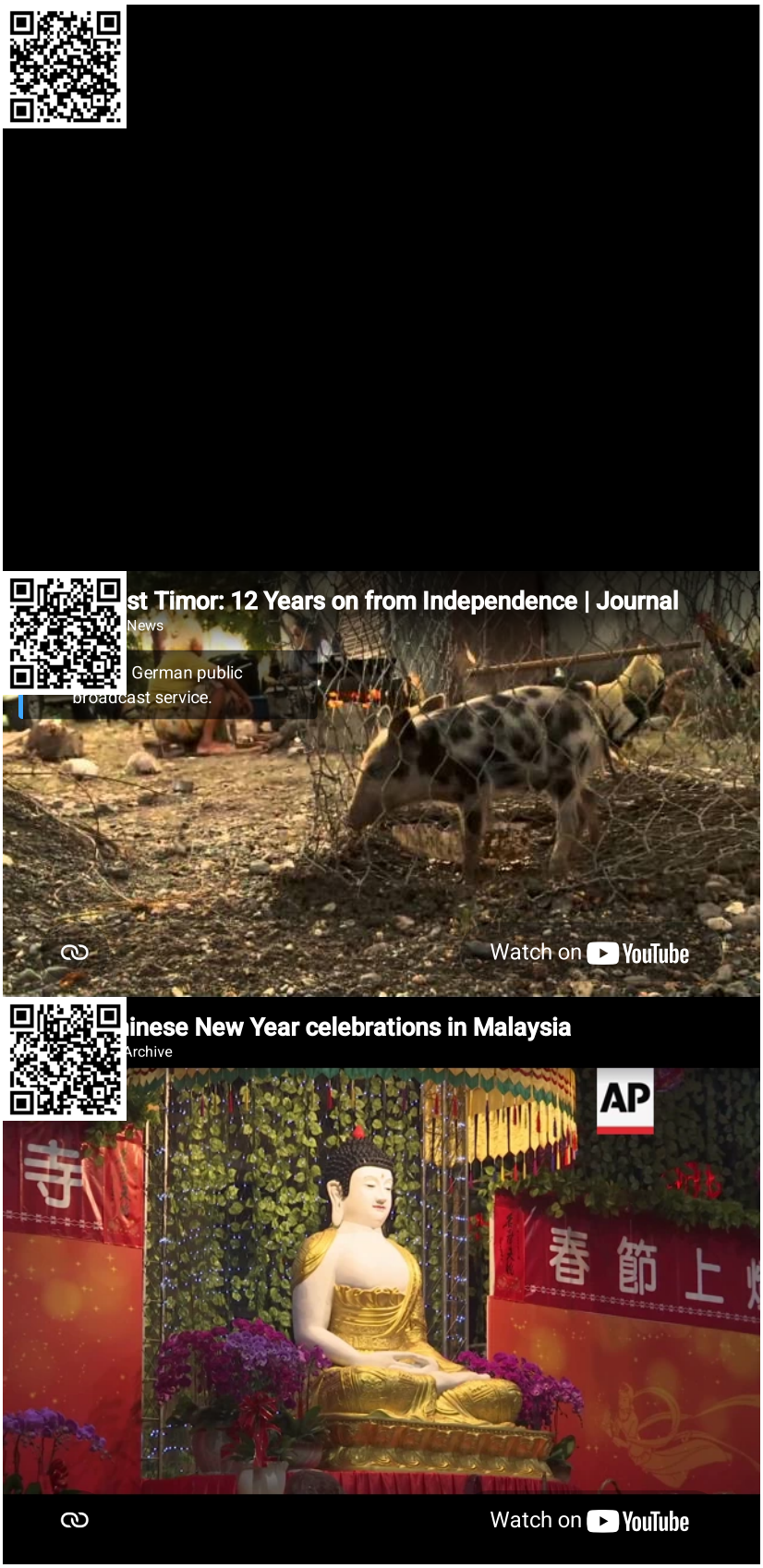
Videos for Geography Enrichment




alaysia Human Development Report: The Facts #MHDI
DR
MALAYSIA'S GROWTH
AND DEVELOPMENT
OVER THE PAST
40 YEARS
IS A STORY OF
TWO HALVES
(KIND OF LIKE A FOOTBALL MATCH)
Watch on YouTube


stcard From Indonesia: Our Adventure Home
ti Ramanta
INDONESIA
OUR ADVENTURE HOME
Watch on YouTube


unei (Asia) Vacation Travel Video Guide
oza Travel
EXPOZA TRAVEL
BRUNEI
Watch on YouTube

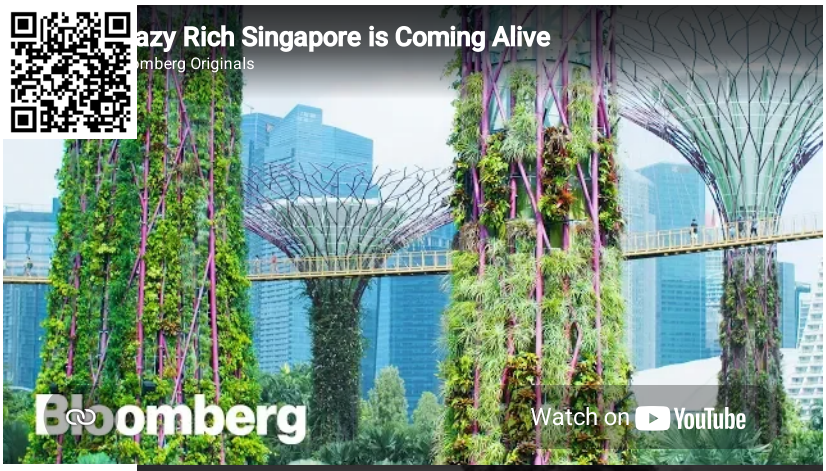


https://k12.libretexts.org/@go/page/1980


donesia's Geographic Challenge
I N D O N E S I A
Watch on YouTube


alaysia's Geographic Challenge
Gulf of Thailand
PHILIPPINES
South China Sea
Penang
M A L A Y S I A
BRUNEI
Kuala Lumpur
Malacca Strait
Johor Bahru
SINGAPORE
Borneo
I N D O N E S I A
Watch on YouTube


e Philippines - Geological processes behind the 1991
ogical Processes
Watch on YouTube





Helpful Websites for the Study of Geography

Canadian Encyclopedia is an encyclopedia funded by the Canadian government covering all branches of knowledge. Their scholarly collection includes interactive materials.

CIA World Factbook provides information on the people, history, government, economy, energy, geography, communications, transportation, military, and transnational issues for the world's entities.

Congress.gov is a US government website where you can find federal legislation, past and present, as well as information about the US legal system.

Drug Enforcement Administration (DEA) is a government agency website that provides current news, resources, topics of interest, information about drugs, careers in the DEA, and a tip hotline.

Library of Congress is the largest library in the world and provides manuscripts, files, information, pictures, and videos.

NASA Earth Observatory (NEO) is a US government agency website that allows users to search for and retrieve satellite images of Earth.

National Archives is a US government website that provides historical documents, photos, records, publications, and educator resources.

National Oceanic and Atmospheric Association (NOAA) is a US government agency website that provides weather-related information and ocean research.

National Map is a website by the United States Geological Survey and other federal, state, and local agencies that delivers topographic information for the United States.

NationMaster is a massive central data source and a handy way to graphically compare nations.

Real-Time World Air Quality Index is a website that measures most locations in the world for air pollution in real time.

StateMaster is a unique statistical database, which allows you to research and compare a multitude of different data on US states.

United Nations (UN) is an international organization founded in 1945 and made up of 193 member states. The UN maintains international peace and security, protects human rights, delivers humanitarian aid, promotes sustainable development, and upholds international law.

United States Census Bureau is a US government agency that provides a population clock, data, surveys, statistics, a library with information and infographics, news about the economy, and much more.

United States Geological Survey (USGS) is a US government agency website that provides scientific information about the natural hazards that threaten lives, the natural resources we rely on, the health of our ecosystems and environment, and the impacts of climate and land-use change.

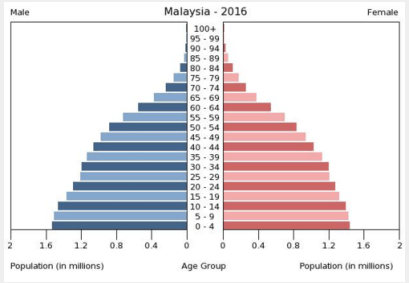
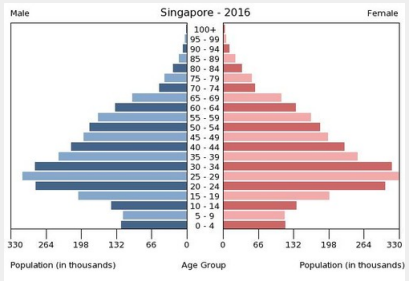
Whitehouse.gov is a US government website that provides the latest presidential news, information about the budget, policy, defense, and many more topics.

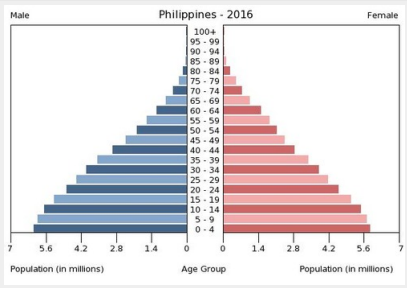
World Health Organization (WHO) is under the United Nations and provides leadership on matters critical to health, shapes the research agenda on health, and monitors the health situation and assessing health trends around the world. Their website provides information on the state of health around the world, outbreaks, current health news, and more.

World Trade Organization (WTO) is an intergovernmental organization that regulates international trade. The website provides information on the history of the multilateral trading system, featured

LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

videos, news and events, trade topics, and more.

Image	Reference	Attributions
	[Figure 1]	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/my.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 2]	**Credit:** Photo by CEphoto, Uwe Aranas / **Source:** https://upload.wikimedia.org/Wikipedia/commons/f/fc/MountKinabalu_from_CheSuiKhorPagodaKK-01.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 5]	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/my.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 6]	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/sn.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 7]	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/sn.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 8]	**Credit:** By chensiyuan (chensiyuan) [GFDL (http://www.gnu.org/copyleft/fdl.html) or CC BY-SA 4.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0)], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:1_Singapore_city_skyline_2010_day_panorama.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

	[Figure 9]	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/id.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 10]	**Credit:** By Gunawan Kartapranata [CC BY-SA 3.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0) or GFDL (http://www.gnu.org/copyleft/fdl.html)], from Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Indonesia_Ethnic_Groups_Map_English.svg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 11]	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/bx.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 12]	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/rp.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 13]	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/rp.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 14]	**Credit:** By Lawrence Ruiz [CC BY-SA 4.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0)], from Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Jeepney_in_Legazpi_City.JPG **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0



[Figure 15]

Credit: cia world factbook
Source: https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/tt.html
License: CC BY-NC 3.0

This page titled 10.6: Islands of Southeast Asia (1 Day) is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by CK12 via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

10.7: The Mainland Countries- Vietnam, Laos, Cambodia, Thailand, and Myanmar (1 day)

Chapter Challenges

1. Summarize the main economic activities of each country.
2. Understand how Vietnam was divided by civil war and the impact the war had on the country.
3. Realize how the country of Laos is addressing its rural landlocked economic situation.
4. Describe the radical conditions that led to the creation of Democratic Kampuchea.
5. Outline the physical geography of Thailand and how this country has developed its economy.
6. Comprehend the conditions in Burma.
7. Learn why the Burmese people would be opposing the government.

Learning Objectives

TEKS Regional Unit 10 East and Southeast Asia: Chapter 10.7 The Mainland Countries: Vietnam, Laos, Cambodia, Thailand, and Myanmar

WG.5A Analyze how the character of a place is related to its political, economic, social, and cultural elements.

WG.6B Explain the processes that have caused changes in settlement patterns, including urbanization, transportation, access to and availability of resources, and economic activities.

WG.9A Identify physical and/or human factors such as climate, vegetation, language, trade networks, political units, river systems, and religion that constitute a region.

WG.10B Classify where specific countries fall along the economic spectrum between free enterprise and communism.

WG.14B Compare how democracy, dictatorship, monarchy, republic, theocracy, and totalitarian systems operate in specific countries.

WG.15A Identify and give examples of different points of view that influence the development of public policies and decision-making processes on local, state, national, and international levels.

WG.17C Compare economic, political, or social opportunities in different cultures for women, ethnic and religious minorities, and other underrepresented populations.

WG.18B Assess causes, effects, and perceptions of conflicts between groups of people, including modern genocides and terrorism.

WG.18D Valuate the spread of cultural traits to find examples of cultural convergence and divergence such as the spread of democratic ideas.

WG.21B Locate places of contemporary geopolitical significance on a map.

WG.21C Create and interpret different types of maps to answer geographic questions, infer relationships, and analyze change.

WG.22A Design and draw appropriate graphics such as maps, diagrams, tables, and graphs to communicate geographic features, distributions, and relationships.

WG.22C Use geographic terminology correctly.

WG.22D Use standard grammar, spelling, sentence structure, and punctuation.

TEKS and ELPS for Regional World Geography Unit 10--East and Southeast Asia from TEKS Resource System.

The Mainland Countries: Vietnam, Laos, Cambodia, Thailand, and Myanmar

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org



Map of Vietnam

The elongated state of Vietnam is slightly larger than Italy and about three times the size of the US state of New Mexico. In 2017 it was estimated to have a population of more than 96 million people. Sixty percent of the population is under age 21. This indicates that the population was only about half its current size at the end of the Vietnam War. Vietnam has two main urban core areas: Ho Chi Minh City (Saigon) in the south and the capital, Hanoi, in the north.

The middle region of Vietnam is narrow, with higher elevation. Each core area is located along a major river delta. The Red River delta is located east of Hanoi in the north, and the mighty Mekong River delta is located next to Saigon in the south. These river deltas deposit silt from upstream and provide excellent farmland for growing multiple crops of rice and food grains per year. Vietnam has a tropical type A climate with a long coastline. Fishing provides protein to balance out nutritional needs.

More than 55 percent of the population works in agriculture. Family size has dropped dramatically because of population growth and a trend toward urbanization. Rural-to-urban shift has caused the two main urban core cities to grow rapidly. Saigon is the largest city in Vietnam and has a port that can accommodate oceangoing vessels. Hanoi, the capital, is not a port city and is located inland from the nearest port of Haiphong on the coast of the Gulf of Tonkin.

Political Geography of Vietnam

An understanding of Vietnam is not complete without understanding the changes in political control the country of Vietnam has experienced. Different Chinese dynasties controlled Vietnam at different times. When France colonized Vietnam, it imposed the French language as the *lingua franca* and Christianity as the main religion. Both changes met resistance, but the religious persecution of Buddhism by the French colonizers created harsh adversarial conditions within the culture.

The French domination started in 1858. The Japanese replaced it in 1940, and this lasted until the end of World War II. With the defeat of Japan in 1945, the French desired to regain control of Vietnam. The French aggressively pushed into the country, but met serious resistance and were finally defeated in 1954 with their loss at the battle of Dien Bien Phu.

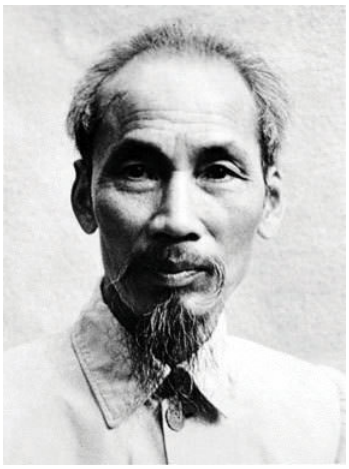


The two main cities of Vietnam are both located next to large rivers. The capital, Hanoi, in the north is on the Red River. Ho Chi Minh City (Saigon) to the south is next to the delta of the Mekong River.

In the mid-1950s, the Vietnamese began asserting their request for an independent country. The dynamics were similar to that of Korea. After 1954, Vietnam needed to establish a government for their independent country. They were not unified. The northern section rallied around Hanoi and was aligned with Communist ideology. The southern region organized around Saigon and aligned itself with capitalism and democratic reforms.

During the Cold War, the United States opposed Communism wherever it emerged. Vietnam was one such case. Supporting South Vietnam against the Communists in the north started not long after the defeat of France. By 1960, US advisers were working to bolster South Vietnam's military power. After the assassination of John F. Kennedy, President Lyndon Johnson had to make a choice to either pull out of Vietnam or push the US military to fully engage the Communists in North Vietnam.

Not wishing Vietnam and its neighbors to "go Communist" through a domino effect—where if one country fell to Communism its neighbors would follow—President Johnson decided to escalate the war in Vietnam. By 1965, more than one half of a million US soldiers were on the ground in Vietnam. Just as Vietnam was divided by political and economic ideology, the Vietnam War also divided the US population. Protests were common on college campuses and public support for the war was often met with public opposition.



Portrait of Ho Chi Minh, the Communist Leader of North Vietnam during the Cold War.

The US government, under President Richard Nixon, finally decided to pull all US troops out from Vietnam after a cease-fire was agreed upon in a Paris peace conference in 1973. More than 57,000 US soldiers had died in the Vietnam War. Two years later, in

1975, the North Vietnamese Communists invaded South Vietnam and took control of the entire country. Vietnam was unified under a Communist regime.

More than two million people from South Vietnam escaped as refugees and fled to Hong Kong, the United States, or wherever they could go. Thousands were accepted by the United States, which caused ethnic rifts in US communities. The United States placed an embargo on Vietnam and refused to trade with them. The United States did not open diplomatic relations with Vietnam again until 1996. The Vietnam War devastated the infrastructure and economy of the country. Roads, bridges, and valuable distribution systems were destroyed. Vietnam could only turn to what it does best: growing rice and food for its people.



Man hauling cut wood on a bicycle cart near the city of Hue, Vietnam.

Modern Vietnam

For the past three decades, Vietnam has been recovering and slowly integrating itself with the outside world. Its population has doubled; most of the population was born after the Vietnam War. Their main goal is to seek out opportunities and advantages to provide for themselves and their families. Vietnam has been a rural agrarian society. The two main core cities, however, are now waking up to the outside world, and the outside world is discovering them.

Looking for cheap labor and economic profits, economic tigers such as Taiwan are turning to Saigon to set up light manufacturing operations. People from the rural areas are migrating to the cities looking for employment. Saigon has more than 8.5 million people and has a special economic zone (SEZ) located nearby, so rural-to-urban shift is taking place.

After 1975, the city of Saigon was renamed Ho Chi Minh City after the victorious Communist leader, Ho Chi Minh. Many of the people who live there and who live in the United States still refer to it as Saigon.

Any country that experiences rapid urbanization or economic change suffers from growing pains. Conflicts usually erupt over control of resources and land ownership, ethnic groups usually vie for power, and environmental damage is usually extensive. All of these issues are evident in Vietnam. The Communist government has acted to moderate both the problems and the economic growth.

The future of Vietnam may be similar to most of Southeast Asia as it balances out the strong forces of local culture and the demands of a competitive global economy. The growing population will add to the demand for resources and employment opportunities. Vietnam has been a relatively poor country but it still has been able to export rice and other agricultural products. In recent years, the Communist government has implemented a series of reforms moving toward a market economy, which has encouraged economic development and international trade.

Globalization has prompted a strong rural-to-urban shift within Vietnam. The rural countryside is steeped in its agrarian heritage based on growing rice and food crops, but the urban centers have been energized by modern technology and outside economic interest. Vietnam has enormous growth potential. The country's urban centers are shifting from stage 2 of the index of economic development into stage 3, where the urbanization rates are the strongest.

The rapid rise of the global economy that is connected to Vietnam's major cities has provided jobs and opportunities that are highly sought after by the growing population. The city streets are filled with motorbikes and bicycle traffic. Cars are becoming more plentiful. Ho Chi Minh city has been a major destination for the export textile industry and other industries seeking a cheap labor base. Cell phones and Internet services have connected a once-isolated country with the rest of the world.



Map of Laos

The geography of Laos centers on the Mekong River basin and rugged mountain terrain. Laos is landlocked. Vietnam shields Laos from the South China Sea to the east and Cambodia to the south. It does not have a port city to the outside world. The mountains reach up to 9,242 feet. The Type A climate provides a rainy season and a dry season. The rains usually fall between May and November, followed by a dry season for the remainder of the year. The Mekong River flows through the land and provides fresh water, irrigation, and transportation. The country's capital and largest city, Vientiane, is located on the Mekong River. Laos is about the same size in area as the US state of Utah.

The Lao Kingdom coalesced in the 1500s and was eventually absorbed by the Kingdom of Siam, which thrived during the 18th and 19th centuries. France came in during the colonial era and created a French Indochina. Laos received independence from France in 1949. Laos is a rural country with about 80 percent of the population working in agriculture.

Globalization has not yet been established in this country and infrastructure is less developed. Electricity is not available on a consistent basis and transportation systems are basic. There are not any railroads and there are few paved roads. Clean water for human consumption is not always available. The economy is based on agriculture, with some outside investments in mining and natural resources.

Two-thirds of the people in Laos are Buddhists. Animist traditions and spirit worship have the next highest percentage of followers. Muslims and Christians make up a small percentage of the population. Lao make up the largest ethnic group and 70 percent of the population. Other ethnicities include the Hmong and mountain tribal groups, which can be found in various remote regions of the country.

The remoteness and rural heritage of the many tribal people have started to attract tourism. Tourism has increased in recent years, partially due to the Chinese government allowing its citizens to travel outside their borders from China into Laos. Laos has two UNESCO World Heritage Sites: the historic town of Luang Prabang, and the southern site of Wat Phou (Vat Phu), which is an ancient Hindu temple complex.



Vat Phou is a ruined Khmer Hindu temple complex in southern Laos. It is located at the base of mount Phu kao, some 3.7 miles from the Mekong in Champasak Province.

Laos is a poor country. It has fewer employment opportunities for its citizens than other developing countries have. The one-party Communist political system of the Cold War has been decentralizing control and working to encourage entrepreneurial activities.

Foreign investments are increasing in the areas of mining, hydroelectric production, and major construction projects.

The World Bank and other agencies have supported efforts to improve infrastructure and provide opportunities for the people of Laos. China has been partnering with the Laotian government to help build rail transport in the country. These efforts have assisted in reducing poverty and increasing the economic and physical health of the country.

Cambodia



Map of Cambodia

A Notorious History

Cambodia is about the same size in area as the US state of Missouri. The population in 2017 was estimated at more than 16.2 million. The Khmers created the Angkor Empire, which reached its peak between the 10th and 13th centuries. Preceding the colonial period, the Angkor Empire entered into a long era of decline.

France took control of the region in the latter part of the 17th century. Japan took control of the region before World War II and then relinquished it when they surrendered to end World War II. France regained control of Cambodia after the Japanese army was defeated. Cambodia finally received independence from France in 1953.

To understand Cambodia, one has to understand its recent history. This country has undergone some of the most extreme social transitions in modern times. The Khmer Rouge, under the leadership of Pol Pot, turned society upside down, giving the country a legacy that it will carry forward as integration continues into the world community.

Between 1969 and 1973, while the United States was fighting the Vietnam War, US forces bombed and briefly invaded Cambodia in an effort to disrupt the North Vietnamese military operations and oppose the Khmer Rouge. Millions of Cambodians were made refugees by the war, and many ended up in Phnom Penh. The number of casualties from the US bombing missions in Cambodia is unknown.

The US war in Vietnam had spilled over into Laos and Cambodia and advanced the opportunities for the Khmer Rouge regime to gain power. Pol Pot's Communist forces of the Khmer Rouge finally captured Cambodia's capital of Phnom Penh in 1975. The Khmer Rouge evacuated all cities and towns and forced the people to move to the rural areas.

The country's name was changed to Democratic Kampuchea. China's Great Cultural Revolution and the Great Leap Forward disaster were influential for Pol Pot's radical experiment. Since Vietnam was supported by the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics (USSR), the Khmer Rouge looked to China for arms and support.

Pol Pot was creating an agricultural model for a new country based on 11th-century ideals. People in urban areas were forcibly marched off into the countryside for labor in agriculture. Anyone who resisted or even hinted at rebellion was killed. All traces of Westernized ideas, technology, medical practice, religion, or books were destroyed. Thousands of people were systematically killed in an attempt to bring into being a rural agrarian utopian society.

The thousands who were systematically eliminated gave rise to the term Killing Fields, meaning fields where massive groups of people were forced to dig their own graves and then were killed. The mass killings were reminiscent of those carried out by Hitler, Stalin, and Mao. Pol Pot's regime also targeted ethnic minority groups. Muslims and Chinese suffered serious purges. Professional, educated people, such as doctors, lawyers, and teachers, were also targeted for execution.

According to some reports, the very act of wearing eyeglasses was a death sentence as it was a symbol of intellectualism. In a country of eight million in 1970, more than two million people were executed or died as a result of Pol Pot's policies. The total number will never be known. Hundreds of thousands became refugees in neighboring countries.

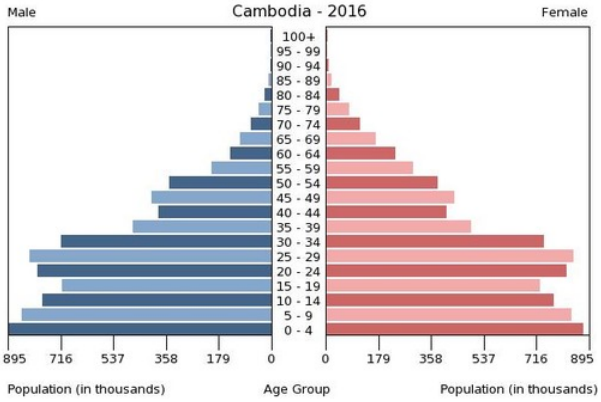


Skulls of the victims from the killing fields of Pol Pot and the Khmer Rouge in Cambodia from the 1970s.

By 1978, the Khmer Rouge was isolated in the countryside. Vietnamese forces controlled the urban areas. A decade of civil war and unrest followed. Paris peace talks, cease-fires, United Nations–sponsored elections and coalition governments have since helped provide political stability. Pol Pot died under unclear circumstances in 1998 while being held under house arrest. As of 1999, the Khmer Rouge elements that were still in existence had surrendered or were arrested. Many of the Khmer Rouge leaders were charged with crimes against humanity by the United Nations–sponsored tribunals.

Modern Cambodia

Cambodia is working to become a democratic and open country with established trade relationships with global markets. The people have struggled to create a stable society that can rebound from their legacy of turmoil and conflict. The country's population is relatively young. The rural areas and the generations who remain there continue to lack the basic amenities of modern society. Education, electricity, and modern infrastructure are lacking. More than half the population works in agriculture. Since less than 25 percent of the population lives in cities, Cambodia is likely to experience a high rural-to-urban shift in its future.



Age Structure of Cambodia: 0-14 years: 31.01 percent (male 2,537,753/female 2,487,633); 15-24 years: 18.36 percent (male 1,471,965/female 1,503,977); 25-54 years: 40.68 percent (male 3,229,901/female 3,361,475); 55-64 years: 5.69 percent (male 374,663/female 547,971); 65 years and over: 4.25 percent (male 258,584/female 430,564)

People are returning to religious practices that were banned during the Pol Pot era. Buddhism is the dominant religion of about 95 percent of the population. Small percentages of the population also practice Christianity, Hinduism, Islam, or tribal beliefs. There are at least 20 distinct hill tribes that hold to their own traditions and cultural ways. The country has historically been self-sufficient with food, but the rapid population growth, political instability, and lack of infrastructure are challenging the future of the country.

Agriculture has been the main economic activity, though textiles (clothing manufacturing) have increased in recent years because of the low cost of labor combined with an abundant workforce. The international business sector has sought to exploit this opportunity, but multinational corporations are hesitant to invest in a country that suffers from political instability or a high level of corruption within the public and private sector.



Angkor Wat is said to be the largest religious structure in the world.

Cambodia has been attempting to build a sustainable economy. The textile industry is the number one source of national wealth. Sweatshops and low-tech manufacturing have begun to take root in the expanding capital city of Phnom Penh. Tourism is another sector that has experienced rapid growth. Though nonexistent in earlier decades, tourism is becoming more popular. Cambodian tourism provides travelers with an experience that is more pristine and less commercialized. Tourism has been rated as the second-largest sector of the economy.

One of the main sites that attract many visitors is the extraordinary ancient site of Angkor Wat (Angkor means “city” and Wat “temple”). This site is one of the best-preserved showcases of Khmer architecture from its early empire years. Angkor Wat is being developed as a major tourist attraction. The 12th-century complex was first a Hindu site dedicated to Vishnu, and then it was converted to a Buddhist site.

Angkor Wat has become an international tourist destination. It is one of the largest temple complexes in existence in the world and is a UNESCO World Heritage Site. The city of Angkor has been estimated to have been the largest city in the world at its peak. As many as 1,000 other temples and ancient structures have been recovered in the same area in recent years.

Cambodia has pressing environmental problems. The United Nations has designated the country as the nation with the third-highest number of land mines on Earth. Since 1970, more than 60,000 people have been killed, and many more injured or maimed because of unexploded land mines in rural areas.

The growing population, attempting to recover from decades of devastation, has cut down the rainforest at one of the highest rates in the world. In 1970, rainforests covered about 70 percent of the country. Today there is only about three percent of the rainforest left. A rise in the need for resources, along with illegal timber activities, has devastated the forests, resulting in a high level of soil erosion and loss of habitat for indigenous species. The loss of natural resources is likely to hinder the country’s economic growth.

LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org



Map of Thailand

Thailand is larger than Laos and Cambodia combined but smaller than Burma. The physical regions that make up Thailand include the mountainous north, where peaks reach up to 8,415 feet; the large southeastern plateau bordering the Mekong River; and the mainly flat valley that dominates the center of the country. The southern part of the country includes the narrow isthmus that broadens out to create the Malay Peninsula.

The tropical Type A climate has dry and rainy seasons similar to Cambodia. The weather pattern in the main part of Thailand, north of the Malay Peninsula, has three seasons. The main rainy season lasts between June and October, when the southwest monsoon arrives with heavy rain clouds from over the Indian Ocean.

After the rainy season, the land cools off and starts to receive the northeast monsoon, which is a cool dry wind that blows from November to February. Considered the dry season, its characteristics are lower humidity and cooler temperatures.

From March to May, the temperatures rise and the land heats up. Then the cycle starts over again with the introduction of the rainy season. The weather pattern in the southern part of Thailand in the Malay Peninsula receives more rain throughout the year, with two rainy seasons that peak from April through May and then again from October through December.

Thailand was formerly known as the Kingdom of Siam. In 1932, a constitutional monarchy was established after a revolution. The name was officially changed to Thailand in 1939. The ruling monarch remains head of state but a prime minister is head of the government. Siam was never colonized by either the Europeans or the Japanese. The leaders of Siam played France and Britain against each other and remained independent of colonial domination.

During World War II, the Japanese did extend influence in the region. Thailand briefly engaged the Japanese military in World War II but worked out an armistice that used the Japanese military to regain territories lost to Britain or France. At the same time, Thailand was working to support Allied efforts in the region.

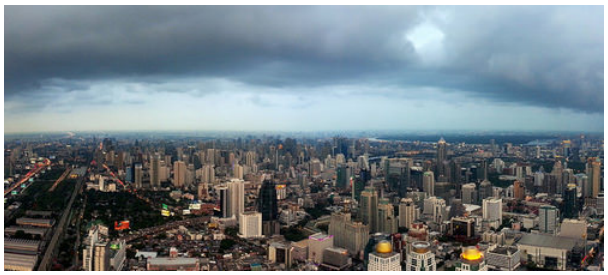
About three-fourths of the population is ethnically Thai. There is a noticeable Chinese population and a small percentage of people who are ethnically Malay. There are various minority groups and hill tribes. The country's official language is Thai. Buddhism is adhered to by about 95 percent of the population. The ruling monarch is considered the defender of the Buddhist faith. Southern Buddhism is fervently practiced here. Thailand does not use the Western Gregorian calendar.

Thailand uses an official calendar based on an Eastern translation of the Buddhist era, which essentially adds 543 years to the Gregorian calendar. For example, when it was 2010 C.E. in the West, it was 2553 in Thailand.

There have been clashes between Thailand's small Muslim minority groups in the south, which have been increasing since 9/11. Islamic influences have been increasing near the border with Malaysia, which is about 60 percent Muslim. The Buddhist

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

government of Thailand has sought to keep extremist groups like Al-Qaeda from operating within its borders. A series of Muslim-inspired bombings in recent years have increased social tensions and brought more attention to the religious division in the south.



Modern city of Bangkok with high-rise office buildings and business district.

Thailand has an excellent record of economic growth and has been one of Southeast Asia's best performers in the past couple of decades. Thailand is developing its infrastructure and has established measures to attract foreign investments and support free-enterprise economic activities. The recent slowdown in the global economy and internal political problems have caused a sharp downturn in Thailand's economic growth. Nevertheless, Thailand remains a strong economic force and one of the best economies in the region. The positive indicators include a strong focus on infrastructure, industrial exports, and tourism.

Urbanization rates are increasing; at least one-third of the population lives in cities. Family size has fallen to lower than two children per family, while education rates have increased. The country has also tapped into its natural resources for export profits as the world's third-largest exporter of tin and the second-largest exporter of tungsten. Light manufacturing has taken off and become a major component of the economy, accounting for about 45 percent of the gross domestic product (GDP). The country is a major manufacturer of textiles, footwear, jewelry, auto parts, and electrical components. Thailand has been the major exporter of rice in the world and has a strong agricultural base.

Thailand is a newly industrialized country and is working on building national wealth: a balance of agriculture, extractive activities, manufacturing, and postindustrial activities (tourism). Thailand is considered the third-largest manufacturer of motor vehicles in Asia, after Japan and Korea. Vehicle producers from the United States and Asia are manufacturing large numbers of cars and trucks in Thailand.

Toyota dominates the market in both truck and auto production. Truck production is increased by Mitsubishi, Nissan, Chevrolet, Ford, and Mazda. Honda, from Japan, and the Tata Motor Corporation, from India, are expanding their operations in Thailand. Thailand is in a good position to advance its economy and shift the whole country into the next stage of development to become a major participant in the global economic marketplace.

The tourism industry has grown immensely in Thailand over the past few decades. Green and lush tropical mountain landscapes, the exquisite architecture of ancient Buddhist temples, and beautiful golden beaches along warm tropical coastlines make for an excellent tourism market. Some of the best world-class tropical beach resorts are located along the sandy and sunny shores of Thailand. The country is open to outsiders and has welcomed tourism as part of its economic equation. The relatively stable country provides a safe and exciting tourism agenda that has a global clientele.

The country of Thailand has the potential to recover from the global economic downturn and once again claim its role as an economic tiger of Southeast Asia. If political stability serves to enhance economic investments, the country will continue to experience economic growth. The low population growth is a model for other countries in the region. Thailand provides a good example of the theory that as a country urbanizes and industrializes, family size will usually go down.

Thailand is also moving forward in the index of economic development. It is in stage 3, where there is a strong rural-to-urban shift in the population. The capital city of Bangkok has stage 4 development patterns and is an economic core area for the country and the region. As large as New York City, Bangkok has developed into the political, cultural, and economic center of Southeast Asia. Often referred to as the "Venice of the East" because of its city canals, Bangkok has become a global city with a population of more than eight million people.



Map of Myanmar (Burma)

The Union of Myanmar (Union of Burma) is the official name for Burma. Since 1989, the military authorities in Burma have promoted the name Myanmar as a conventional name for their state. The US government and many other governments have not recognized or accepted the name change. Some groups within Burma do not accept the name because the translation of Myanmar is also the name of an ethnic minority in Burma. The use of the name Burma or Myanmar is split around the world and within the country.

Myanmar is the largest country on the Southeast Asian mainland in terms of physical area. It is about the same size in area as the US state of Texas and had a population in 2017 of more than 55 million. The country has a central mass with a southern protrusion that borders Thailand toward the Malay Peninsula. The northern border area between India and China has high mountains that are part of the Himalayas, with towering peaks extending to 19,295 feet. The Irrawaddy River cuts through the center of the country from north to south, creating a delta in the largest city, Rangoon. Most of the country's population lives along this river valley.

There are differences in the physical landscape between the north and south. The northernmost area is mountainous with evergreen forests. Cool temperatures are found in the north and warmer annual temperatures are found in the south. To the west of the Irrawaddy River and north of Mandalay the land cover is mainly deciduous forests. The eastern region from Mandalay to the Laos border is scrub forests and grasslands. This area is considered the dry zone, with an annual rainfall of about 40 inches.

The more tropical south and coastal areas can receive higher levels of precipitation. The area around the core city of Mandalay was a major focus of agricultural development before British colonialism. Dryland crops were most common. During the colonial era, the British looked to the rich farmlands of the southern Irrawaddy delta and emphasized Rangoon as the center of their exploitations. Wetland rice is a major crop of the southern Irrawaddy basin. The southwest and the southern protrusion are mainly tropical evergreen forests. There has been oil exploration along the coastal regions of the Bay of Bengal and along the Andaman Sea.

The country was colonized by the British and was once a part of Great Britain's empire in South Asia as a province of India. Burma was one of the most prosperous colonies of Britain until World War II, when the Japanese invaded and war devastated the region. Democratic rule existed from 1948 until 1962, when an authoritarian military dictatorship took over the country. A revolutionary council ruled the country between 1962 and 1974. This government nationalized most of the businesses, factories, and media outlets. The overall operating principle of the council was a concept called the Burmese Way of Socialism. This concept was based on central planning and Communist principles mixed with Buddhist beliefs.

Between 1974 and 1988, the sole political party of the country was the Burma Socialist Program Party, which was controlled by the same military general and his comrades who had been in control for decades. During this time, the rest of the world was advancing in technology and economic development and moving forward with advancements in health care and education. Burma remained

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

an impoverished and isolated nation. A number of countries, including the United States, have trade restrictions with Burma. For decades, the authoritarian regime in Burma has been accused of serious human rights violations, which have largely been ignored by the outside world.

Protests against the military rule have always existed in Burma but have been suppressed by the armed forces and the authoritarian government. In 1962, the government cracked down on demonstrations at Rangoon University, resulting in 15 students being killed and many others in need of medical attention. The military government has taken serious action against any anti-government protest activities.

By 1988, the people of Burma were taking to the streets with widespread demonstrations and protests against the government over claims of oppression, mismanagement, and lack of democratic reforms. A total crackdown on the people was implemented, with thousands of protesters killed. A new council led by a military general created the State Law and Order Restoration Council a year later. Martial law was imposed and even harsher policies were imposed on anyone opposing the government. This is when the name of Myanmar was first used for the country.

The name change and the military rule have not been universally accepted. The United States still refers to the capital city as Rangoon, not as Yangon. In 2006, military rulers moved the capital north to the city of Naypyidaw. The purpose of the move was to establish a *forward capital* and shift development and political energy more toward the center of the country, rather than along the coast.

World nations are divided on the issues of how to deal with the changes and the military regime in Burma. The governments of some countries believe more sanctions should be implemented to force the leadership into compliance. Other countries believe sanctions are not effective against the government; that is, sanctions harm the people and do not affect the military leadership. Countries on this side of the equation believe that open trade is the best policy.



The banner refers to a national movement to promote nonviolence.

Anti-government protests erupted in 2007 when the military-ruled government allowed prices on fuel and energy to double and triple in price. Protesters were quickly and violently dealt with and many were arrested and jailed. Later that year, thousands of Buddhist monks led a peaceful protest to gain the government's attention to make democratic changes. The demonstration ended in a renewed government crackdown.

Another voice in the anti-government demonstrations has been that of opposition leader Aung San Suu Kyi, a United Nation's worker in the early 1960s and a Nobel Peace Prize winner in 1991. Her opposition to the military rule has led to imprisonment and house arrest for decades. She has been a symbol of the opposition and hope for democratic reforms. In 2010, Aung San Suu Kyi was at long last released from house arrest and allowed more freedom of movement under government restrictions.

Burma has been placed in the same category as North Korea and Somalia in terms of authoritarian rule, lack of human rights, and stagnant economy. Economic conditions are poor. The military rulers have gained control of the main income-generating enterprises in the country, including the lucrative drug trade from the opium growing region of the northern Golden Triangle, where Burma borders Laos and Thailand. All factors seem to indicate an increase in opium production in recent years.

Precious gemstones such as rubies, sapphires, and jade are abundant in Burma. Rubies bring the highest incomes. Burma produces about 90 percent of the world's supply. The Valley of Rubies in the north is noted for quality gem production of both rubies and sapphires. Most of the gems are sold to buyers in Thailand. All the profits go to Burma's military rulers in the government. Since there is a high level of corruption within the government and business, the income from the gems produces limited economic development for the main population and discourages foreign investment in the country.

Burma has become one of the poorest countries in Southeast Asia. China has emerged as the main trading partner with Burma and has been propping up the dictatorial military regime. China supplies the regime with arms, constructs many of the infrastructure projects, and supplies natural gas to the country.

Burma is ethnically diverse. Though it is difficult to verify, the government of Burma recognizes one 135 distinct ethnic groups within its borders. It is estimated that there are over 100 different ethnolinguistic groups in Burma. About 90 percent of the population is Buddhist. This high level of diversity can allow for strong centrifugal forces that are not generally conducive to unity and nationalism. The heavy emphasis on the national military is one of the only centripetal forces within the population, even though the military leadership is also looked at with distain by those desiring more openness and democratic conditions.

Key Takeaways

France and Britain colonized the mainland region of Southeast Asia. Burma was a British colony and the rest was under French colonial rule. The Japanese took control of the region briefly before World War II ended in 1945. Siam was the only area not colonized. Siam became the country of Thailand.

Vietnam was divided by a Communist north and a capitalist south during the Cold War. Vietnam is emerging from decades of isolation to provide the global economy with a large low-cost labor pool that has been attracting foreign investments by multinational corporations.

The rural and landlocked nation of Laos has strong Buddhist traditions and an agrarian society.

Cambodia was impacted by the Vietnam War and then by the devastation of Pol Pot's Khmer Rouge radical experiment in agrarian socialism, which killed as many as 2.5 million people. Recovery has been slow, but the textile industry and tourism have contributed to economic growth.

The Buddhist country of Thailand has been experiencing major economic development in recent decades and has established itself as a major economic power in the region. The modern capital city of Bangkok is a major center of manufacturing and cultural activities.

The people of Burma (Myanmar) continue to suffer under an authoritarian regime that offers few civil rights or democratic processes to its people. Poor, isolated, and militarily controlled, Burma has been at the center of many human rights violations in recent decades with little response from the international community.

Vocabulary Terms

https://k12.libretexts.org/@go/page/8258

Chapter 10.7 Mainland Countries: Vietnam, Laos, Cambodia, Thailand, and Myanmar

	A temple built in the Khmer Empire and dedicated to the Hindu God, Vishnu
	An alliance that promotes economic growth and peace in Southeast Asia: Association of South East Asian Nations
	A system in which the government holds nearly all political power and the means of production
	The political theory that if one nation comes under Communist control then neighboring nations will also come under communist control
	In Southeast Asia, it includes Vietnam, Cambodia and Laos
	A river in central Myanmar formed by the confluence of the Mali and Nmai Rivers; rice is grown here
	Formed in 1968, it was the name given to the followers of the Communist Party of Kampuchea in Cambodia

Applying Knowledge

Discussion and Study Questions

1. What are the main physical features and qualities of the mainland region of Southeast Asia?
2. What are the two main core areas of Vietnam? Which river is associated with each city?
3. What prompted the United States to enter into the conflict in Vietnam? Did Vietnam attack the United States?
4. What river flows through parts of Laos? What is the main economic activity in Laos?
5. What geographic aspect isolates the country of Laos and restricts its globalization efforts?
6. Who was Pol Pot? What type of society did he attempt to create? What were some of his methods?
7. What were the Killing Fields? What people were targeted to be eliminated? Why were these people killed?
8. What attracts tourism to Cambodia, Laos, or Thailand? Why aren't more tourists going to Burma?
9. What is the main religion in Southeast Asia? Who is considered the defender of this faith?
10. Who is Aung San Suu Kyi? How is she a reflection of conditions in her country?

Real-World Geography Exercise

1. Using Google Maps, complete the following activities:
    a. Locate each place on the bulleted list below.
    b. Find the nearest city with an international airport in proximity to each location on the bulleted list below.
    c. Calculate the distance and travel time by plane to each city from the Logan International Airport in Boston, Massachusetts.
2. Using NASA Latitude and Longitude Finder, determine the latitude and longitude for each location on the bulleted list below.
3. Be prepared to share and discuss your answers.

- Andaman Sea
- Malay Peninsula
- Mandalay
- Naypyidaw


etnam War: a brief history [Studen
Armstrong
Watch on YouTube


etnam on a bumpy road to econon
dfocusonline
Watch on YouTube


os Vacation Travel Video Guide
oza Travel
EXPOZA TRAVEL
LAOS
Watch on YouTube







https://k12.libretexts.org/@go/page/8258







Helpful Websites for the Study of Geography

Canadian Encyclopedia is an encyclopedia funded by the Canadian government covering all branches of knowledge. Their scholarly collection includes interactive materials.

CIA World Factbook provides information on the people, history, government, economy, energy, geography, communications, transportation, military, and transnational issues for the world's entities.

Congress.gov is a US government website where you can find federal legislation, past and present, as well as information about the US legal system.

Drug Enforcement Administration (DEA) is a government agency website that provides current news, resources, topics of interest, information about drugs, careers in the DEA, and a tip hotline.

Library of Congress is the largest library in the world and provides manuscripts, files, information, pictures, and videos.

NASA Earth Observatory (NEO) is a US government agency website that allows users to search for and retrieve satellite images of Earth.

National Archives is a US government website that provides historical documents, photos, records, publications, and educator resources.

National Oceanic and Atmospheric Association (NOAA) is a US government agency website that provides weather-related information and ocean research.

National Map is a website by the United States Geological Survey and other federal, state, and local agencies that delivers topographic information for the United States.

NationMaster is a massive central data source and a handy way to graphically compare nations.

Real-Time World Air Quality Index is a website that measures most locations in the world for air pollution in real time.

StateMaster is a unique statistical database, which allows you to research and compare a multitude of different data on US states.

United Nations (UN) is an international organization founded in 1945 and made up of 193 member states. The UN maintains international peace and security, protects human rights, delivers humanitarian aid, promotes sustainable development, and upholds international law.

United States Census Bureau is a US government agency that provides a population clock, data, surveys, statistics, a library with information and infographics, news about the economy, and much more.

United States Geological Survey (USGS) is a US government agency website that provides scientific information about the natural hazards that threaten lives, the natural resources we rely on, the health of our ecosystems and environment, and the impacts of climate and land-use change.

Whitehouse.gov is a US government website that provides the latest presidential news, information about the budget, policy, defense, and many more topics.

World Health Organization (WHO) is under the United Nations and provides leadership on matters critical to health, shapes the research agenda on health, and monitors the health situation and assessing health trends around the world. Their website provides information on the state of health around the world, outbreaks, current health news, and more.

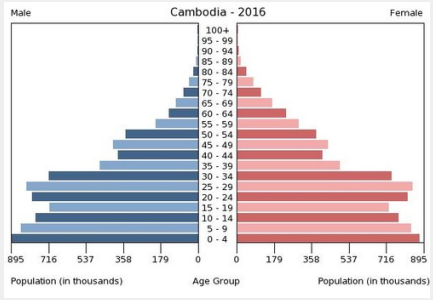
World Trade Organization (WTO) is an intergovernmental organization that regulates international trade. The website provides

LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

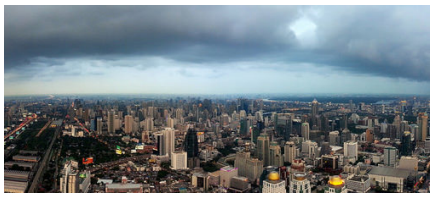
information on the history of the multilateral trading system, featured videos, news and events, trade topics, and more.

Image	Reference	Attributions
	[Figure 1]	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/vm.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 2]	**Credit:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeograp...and-countries/ **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/a11155f865ca7428b3b6eaa45f74a960.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 3]	**Credit:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeograp...and-countries/ **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/d1f5c85bb84d4bdddc3c265a66df9386.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

	[Figure 4]	**Credit:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeograp...and-countries/ **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/ae6bab076c7eed2e850ff5418202bb59.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 5]	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/la.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 6]	**Credit:** https://en.Wikipedia.org/wiki/Vat_Phou **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:WatPhouwholesite.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 7]	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/cb.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

	[Figure 8]	**Credit:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeograp...and-countries/ **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/35404466ae6abeae6c76c228ce7fb248.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 9]	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/cb.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 10]	**Credit:** By sam garza (originally posted to Flickr as Angkor Wat) [CC BY 2.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/2.0)], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Buddhist_monks_in_front_of_the_Angkor_Wat.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 11]	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/th.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

https://k12.libretexts.org/@go/page/8258

	[Figure 12]	**Credit:** Efendi Kwok – Bangkok Skyline – CC BY-NC 2.0. **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/chapter/11-2-the-mainland-countries/ **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 13]	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/bm.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 14]	**Credit:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeograp...and-countries/ **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/b946d25f3d61c742eb43aaa76b0481e6.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

10.7: The Mainland Countries- Vietnam, Laos, Cambodia, Thailand, and Myanmar (1 day) is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

11: Oceania (10 days)

11.1: Australia and New Zealand- Introducing the Realm (1 Day)

11.2: Australia (3 Days)

11.3: New Zealand (2 Days)

11.4: The Pacific Islands (2 Days)

11.5: Antarctica (2 Days)

This page titled 11: Oceania (10 days) is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by CK12 via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

11.1: Australia and New Zealand- Introducing the Realm (1 Day)

Chapter Challenges

1. Summarize how colonialism has affected the development and socioeconomic conditions of Australia and New Zealand.
2. Understand how isolation has allowed for the high level of biodiversity.
3. Outline how colonialism impacted the Maori and the Aboriginal populations.

Learning Objectives

TEKS Regional Unit 11 Oceania: Chapter 11.1 Australia and New Zealand; Introducing the Realm

- WG.2A Describe the human and physical characteristics of the same regions at different periods of time to evaluate relationships between past events and current conditions.
- WG.4C Explain the influence of climate on the distribution of biomes in different regions.
- WG.6A Locate and describe human and physical features that influence the size and distribution of settlements.
- WG.6B Explain the processes that have caused changes in settlement patterns, including urbanization, transportation, access to and availability of resources, and economic activities.
- WG.7B Explain how political, economic, social, and environmental push and pull factors and physical geography affect the routes and flows of human migration.
- WG.7D Examine the benefits and challenges of globalization, including connectivity, standard of living, pandemics, and loss of local culture.
- WG.8A Compare ways that humans depend on, adapt to, and modify the physical environment, including the influences of culture and technology.
- WG.22C Use geographic terminology correctly.
- WG.22D Use standard grammar, spelling, sentence structure, and punctuation.

TEKS and ELPS for Regional World Geography Unit 11--Oceana from TEKS Resource System.

Australia and New Zealand: Introducing the Realm

Isolation Geography



Wallace's and Weber's Lines were developed independently to account for the differences in biodiversity between the Austral realm and the Asian realm.

The historic isolation of New Zealand and Australia from the rest of the world has caused animals and organisms that are not found anywhere else to develop in these two countries. The unique biodiversity includes marsupials, such as kangaroos, wallabies, koalas, and bandicoots. It is believed that these creatures developed separately after the continents broke away from each other more than 200 million years ago.

Many plant species are also unique to this realm. The biodiversity found here is separate from that of Asia. This has been explained by various bio-geographers by drawing imaginary lines just north of Australia to indicate the line of division between the Asian realm and the Austral realm. Wallace's Line and Weber's Line are two such examples. Both examples attempt to establish the correct line of demarcation for the differences in species development between the two sides.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

During the ice ages, sea level was lower, and the many islands of Southeast Asia were connected by land to the mainland. Papua New Guinea was connected to Australia. Wallace and Weber believed that no land bridge connected the Asian side with the Austral side for animals to cross over. This separation caused the organisms to the south to develop independently of those in the north. For example, marsupials are not found on the Asian side of these lines but are found on the Australian side.

Colonialism

New Zealand and Australia were both inhabited before the era of European colonialism. Aboriginal people are said to have migrated to Australia across Southeast Asia from the mainland of Asia more than 40,000 years ago. They made Australia their home and adapted to the physical geography of the continent. For tens of thousands of years before the Europeans arrived, the Aboriginal people carved out an existence in Australia and developed their cultural ways. The arrival of the Europeans had caused a serious demise in the Aboriginal population. Aborigines were completely decimated in Tasmania. Only about 450,000 Aboriginal peoples remain in Australia today.

New Zealand was inhabited by the Polynesian group called the Maori, who established themselves on the islands in the 10th century. For hundreds of years, they established their culture and traditions in the region before the Europeans arrived. The Aborigines in Australia and the Maori in New Zealand were both confronted with the European invaders.

From their standpoint, there was much to lose by the arrival of the Europeans. Lands were lost, new diseases killed many, and control of their methods of livelihood were taken over by Europeans. The Maori initiated a number of wars against British colonizers, but in the end the greater military power gained the advantage. At the present time, the Maori are approximately 14 percent of the population of New Zealand.

The sighting of Australia by the Dutch dates to 1606. Portuguese explorers may have discovered Australia earlier, but there are no written records. In the early 1700s, the northern and western coastlines of Australia were known as “New Holland.” There were no established colonies. James Cook, a naval officer working for the British navy, commanded the ship *Endeavor* and mapped Australia’s eastern coast in 1770. He made port at Botany Bay, just south of the current city of Sydney and claimed the region for Britain. He named the land New South Wales. The charting of the coast resulted in continued attention being paid to the region.

Meanwhile, England had a severe problem with overcrowding of its prisons. This problem was made worse by the loss of Britain’s American colonies. Upon Cook’s return to England, interest was generated in the concept of relieving prison overcrowding by sending prisoners to Australia. In 1787, eleven ships with 750 convicts sailed from Great Britain to Botany Bay.

Penal colonies were established in Australia. By the end of the 17th century, the entire Australian continent was under the British Crown. At the same time that the movement of prisoners from England to Australia was getting smaller, the next wave of immigration was being fueled by the discovery of gold in the 1850s. The practice of transferring prisoners to Australia ended in 1868.

In 1901, the various territories and states of Australia came together under one federation called the **Commonwealth of Australia**. A new federal capital city of Canberra was proposed. By 1927, Canberra was ready for government activity. This commonwealth government still allowed for individual state differences. The British monarch is considered the head of state, though it is mainly a ceremonial position. There have been movements within Australia in recent years to separate from the British Crown, but they have not been approved. Australia has a democratically elected government.



Two of Canberra's best-known landmarks, Parliament House and Old Parliament House.

British naval officer James Cook mapped the coastline of New Zealand in 1769. As the colonial era emerged, Great Britain took possession of New Zealand and included it with its colony of New South Wales. In the 1840s, New Zealand became a separate crown colony. The colony developed a local parliament and a representative government. By 1893, New Zealand made headlines as

the first country in the world granting all women the right to vote. As a part of the British Empire, the country was made a commonwealth nation in 1947 and has been functioning independently ever since.

Key Takeaways

- Australia is an island continent that was home to aboriginal people who have lived there for tens of thousands of years.
- The British colonized Australia by first creating prison colonies for convicts from Great Britain.
- New Zealand has two main islands and is home to the Maori, who were originally from Polynesia.
- The British colonized New Zealand and often were in conflict with the Maori.
- Australia is relatively flat with low elevation highlands and an extensive dry interior, while New Zealand has high mountains and receives adequate rainfall.
- The Austral realm was isolated by physical geography. Weber's Line and the Wallace Line were both attempts to distinguish the location of the separation between biological environments.

Vocabulary Terms

Chapter 11.1 Australia and New Zealand: Introducing the Realm

Aboriginal Peoples	an original inhabitant of Australia.
Great Barrier Reef	a 1,250-mile chain of coral reefs off the coast of Australia.
Great Dividing Range	a range of low mountains in Australia
James Cook	a British explorer who claimed land in Australia
marsupial	an animal with an abdominal pouch to carry its young
	The arid, sparsely populated interior region of Australia
Penal Colony	a settlement that serves as a prison
Treaty of Waitangi	a treaty between the British and the Maori signed in 1840
Biodiversity	Characterized by a variety of plants and animals
Atoll	Islands created from coral
Volcano	A mountain on the Earth's surface that periodically erupts sending rock, ash, and lava onto the surface environment of the Earth

Applying Knowledge

Discussion and Study Questions

1. For what purpose was Australia first colonized? What European country colonized Australia and New Zealand?
2. How did the colonial activity impact the indigenous people?
3. How is the Austral realm isolated from the rest of the world?
4. Who are the main indigenous people of New Zealand and from where did they originally come?
5. Explain how the colonial development of Australia was similar to the colonial development of the United States.

Real-World Geography Exercise

1. Using Google Maps, complete the following activities:
   a. Locate each place on the bulleted list below.
   b. Find the nearest city with an international airport in proximity to each location on the bulleted list below.

c. Calculate the distance and travel time by plane to each city from the Minneapolis-St. Paul International Airport in Minneapolis-St. Paul, Minnesota

2. Using NASA Latitude and Longitude Finder, determine the latitude and longitude for each location on the bulleted list below.
3. Be prepared to share and discuss your answers.

- Arafura Sea
- Cape York
- Coral Sea
- Great Australian Bight
- Great Barrier Reef
- Gulf of Carpentaria
- New South Wales
- Sydney
- Tasman Sea
- Tasmania

Videos for Geography Enrichment





Helpful Websites for the Study of Geography

Canadian Encyclopedia is an encyclopedia funded by the Canadian government covering all branches of knowledge. Their scholarly collection includes interactive materials.

CIA World Factbook provides information on the people, history, government, economy, energy, geography, communications, transportation, military, and transnational issues for the world's entities.

Congress.gov is a US government website where you can find federal legislation, past and present, as well as information about the US legal system.

Drug Enforcement Administration (DEA) is a government agency website that provides current news, resources, topics of interest, information about drugs, careers in the DEA, and a tip hotline.

Library of Congress is the largest library in the world and provides manuscripts, files, information, pictures, and videos.

NASA Earth Observatory (NEO) is a US government agency website that allows users to search for and retrieve satellite images of Earth.

National Archives is a US government website that provides historical documents, photos, records, publications, and educator resources.

National Oceanic and Atmospheric Association (NOAA) is a US government agency website that provides weather-related information and ocean research.

National Map is a website by the United States Geological Survey and other federal, state, and local agencies that delivers topographic information for the United States.

NationMaster is a massive central data source and a handy way to graphically compare nations.

Real-Time World Air Quality Index is a website that measures most locations in the world for air pollution in real time.

StateMaster is a unique statistical database, which allows you to research and compare a multitude of different data on US states.

United Nations (UN) is an international organization founded in 1945 and made up of 193 member states. The UN maintains international peace and security, protects human rights, delivers humanitarian aid, promotes sustainable development, and upholds international law.

United States Census Bureau is a US government agency that provides a population clock, data, surveys, statistics, a library with information and infographics, news about the economy, and much more.

United States Geological Survey (USGS) is a US government agency website that provides scientific information about the natural hazards that threaten lives, the natural resources we rely on, the health of our ecosystems and environment, and the impacts of climate and land-use change.

Whitehouse.gov is a US government website that provides the latest presidential news, information about the budget, policy, defense, and many more topics.

World Health Organization (WHO) is under the United Nations and provides leadership on matters critical to health, shapes the research agenda on health, and monitors the health situation and assessing health trends around the world. Their website provides information on the state of health around the world, outbreaks, current health news, and more.

World Trade Organization (WTO) is an intergovernmental organization that regulates international trade. The website provides information on the history of the multilateral trading system, featured videos, news and events, trade topics, and more.

Image	Reference	Attributions
	[Figure 1]	**Credit:** open.lib.umn.edu **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/b5c18b60a7b06917ede5a0f7b6760da2.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 2]	**Credit:** CC BY-SA 3.0, https://commons.wikimedia.org/w/inde...p?curid=984891 **Source:** https://en.Wikipedia.org/wiki/Canberra#/media/File:Lake-ParlHouse.JPG **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

This page titled 11.1: Australia and New Zealand- Introducing the Realm (1 Day) is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by CK12 via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

11.2: Australia (3 Days)

Chapter Challenges

1. Summarize the colonial exploitation and development of Australia.
2. Understand the basic characteristics of Australia's physical geography.
3. Outline how the core-periphery spatial relationship applies to Australia.
4. Describe the country's general cultural attributes.
5. Summarize the methods used for the country to gain national wealth.

Learning Objectives

TEKS Regional Unit 11 Oceania: Chapter 11.2 Australia

WG.1A Analyze the effects of physical and human geographic patterns and processes on the past and describe their impact on the present, including significant physical features and environmental conditions that influenced migration patterns and shaped the distribution of culture groups today.

WG.2A Describe the human and physical characteristics of the same regions at different periods of time to evaluate relationships between past events and current conditions.

WG.3A Explain weather conditions and climate in relation to annual changes in Earth-Sun relationships.

WG.3B Describe the physical processes that affect the environments of regions, including weather, tectonic forces.

WG.4A Explain how elevation, latitude, wind systems, ocean currents, position on a continent, and mountain barriers influence temperature, precipitation, and distribution of climate regions.

WG.4B Describe different landforms and the physical processes that cause their development.

WG.4C Explain the influence of climate on the distribution of biomes in different regions.

WG.5A Analyze how the character of a place is related to its political, economic, social, and cultural elements.

WG.6A Locate and describe human and physical features that influence the size and distribution of settlements.

WG.6B Explain the processes that have caused changes in settlement patterns, including urbanization, transportation, access to and availability of resources, and economic activities.

WG.8A Compare ways that humans depend on, adapt to, and modify the physical environment, including the influences of culture and technology.

WG.8B Describe the interaction between humans and the physical environment and analyze the consequences of extreme weather and other natural disasters such as El Nino, floods. tsunamis, and volcanoes.

WG.8C Evaluate the economic and political relationships between settlements and the environments, including sustainable development and renewable/non-renewable resources.

WG.9A Identify physical and/or human factors such as climate, vegetation, language, trade networks, political units, river systems, and religion that constitute a region.

WG.10C Compare the ways people satisfy their basic needs through the production of goods and services such as subsistence agriculture versus commercial agriculture or cottage industries versus commercial industries.

WG.10D Compare global trade patterns over time and examine the implications of globalization, including outsourcing and free trade zones.

WG.11B Identify factors affecting the location of different types of economic activities, including subsistence and commercial agriculture manufacturing, and service industries.

WG.11C Assess how changes in climate, resources, and infrastructure (technology, transportation, and communication) affect the location and patterns of economic activities.

WG.18A Analyze cultural changes in specific regions caused by migration, war, trade, innovations, and diffusion.

WG.18C Identify examples of cultures that maintain traditional ways, including traditional economies.

WG.18D Evaluate the spread of cultural traits to find examples of cultural convergence and divergence such as the spread of democratic ideas, US-based fast-food franchises, the English langue, technology, or global sports.

WG.21A Analyze and evaluate the validity and utility of multiple sources of geographic information such as primary and secondary sources, aerial photographs, and maps.

WG.21C Create and interpret different types of maps to answer geographic questions, infer relationships, and analyze change.

WG.22A Design and draw appropriate graphics such as maps, diagrams tables, and graphs to communicate geographic features, distributions, and relationships.

WG.22B Generate summaries, generalizations, and thesis statements supported by evidence.

WG.22E Create original work using proper citations and understanding and avoiding plagiarism.

TEKS and ELPS for Regional World Geography Unit 11--Oceania from TEKS Resource System.

Australia



Map of Australia

Physical Geography

There is an international attraction to the island continent of Australia, and the attraction has grown in intensity in the past few decades. Tourism is now the number one economic activity in Australia. Just slightly smaller in physical area than the continental United States, Australia is a large country with many resources but few people relative to its size. The Tropic of Capricorn runs right through the middle of this country.

Australia hosts many unique species of plants and animals, including marsupials, snakes, and insects. With the advent of European colonialism, new species were introduced to the country, which caused the extinction of some of the native species but also gave Australia a wide diversity of organisms.

Australia is a relatively low-lying island with low relief. It is the flattest of all the continents. The various highland ranges are pronounced, but are not high in elevation. The Great Dividing Range is a mountain chain extending from Melbourne in the south to Cape York in the north. This low-lying range of highlands averages about 4,000 feet and reaches an elevation of just over 7,000 feet at its highest peaks in the south. The largest river in Australia is the Darling-Murray River system that starts in the highland of the Great Dividing Range and flows inward through New South Wales, Queensland, Victoria, and South Australia.



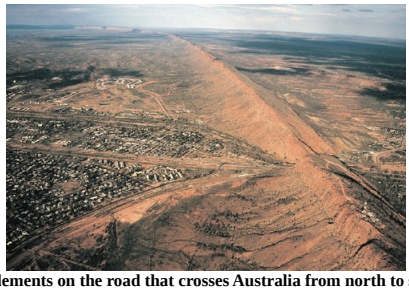
The Great Dividing Range. The view from the peak of Mount Feathertop, facing north-east, showing the Fainters and other mountains.



The confluence of the Darling and Murray Rivers at Wentworth, New South Wales.

The great interior of the country is home to the massive outback. Extending west from the Great Dividing Range, the outback encompasses most of the interior. This region receives less rainfall than along the coast and its terrain consists of deserts and semi-arid plateaus with rough grasses and scrublands. The outback is sparsely populated, but it is home to a number of aboriginal groups.

Many of the school-age children in the outback have traditionally received their school lessons through television or radio broadcasts because of their isolation. Mining and some agricultural activities can be found in the outback. Alice Springs is located in the center of the continent and has been given the designation of the middle of nowhere, or the center of everything.



One of the larger settlements on the road that crosses Australia from north to south is Alice Springs.

The deserts of Australia's interior make up a large portion of the continent. Western Australia has three large deserts: the Gibson Desert, Great Victoria Desert, and Great Sandy Desert. The Simpson Desert is located in the border region between the Northern Territory, Queensland, and South Australia. These deserts are not all sand. Coarse grasses and various species of Spinifex, a short plant that grows in sandy soil, also grow in the deserts.



Dunes in the Simpson Desert near Andado, Northern Territory, Australia.

The Great Artesian Basin on the western edge of the Great Dividing Range receives very little rainfall. It would be classified as a desert but for its underground water resources, which support extensive farming operations. Large livestock businesses exist in Australia's interior with massive herds of cattle and sheep. The grassy plateaus and scrublands provide grazing for domesticated livestock and even wild camels.

The Great Barrier Reef, the largest barrier reef in the world, extends for 1,600 miles off the northeastern coast of Australia. It is home to a host of sea creatures and fish that draw millions of tourists each year. The reef attracts scuba divers and water enthusiasts from around the world. The reef is a main tourist attraction and brings income to the Australian economy. The Great Barrier Reef has been designated as a United Nations World Heritage Site. Brisbane is located on the Gold Coast, which gets its name from the beautiful sandy beaches. The beaches attract an important tourism market for the country.

A couple of large physical features of interest and significance to Australia are the two largest monoliths in the world. In Western Australia, more than 500 miles to the northeast of Perth, is Mount Augustus National Park, which features the rock known as Mount Augustus. It is considered to be the largest single rock in the world. Mount Augustus rises 2,352 feet above the desert landscape. The single structure is about five miles long.



Mount Augustus is located in the Mount Augustus National Park in Western Australia.

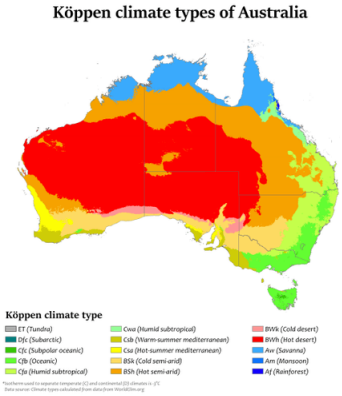
LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

Uluru, also known as Ayers Rock, is located about 200 miles southwest of Alice Springs in the Northern Territory and is a well-known tourist attraction. Uluru rises 1,142 feet above the outback and is about 2.2 miles long. Both rocks hold significant cultural value to the aboriginal populations in Australia. They both have ancient petroglyphs, and both are considered sacred sites. Uluru has been more popularized through tourism promotions.



Uluru, also known as Ayers Rock, is a large sandstone rock formation in the southern part of the Northern Territory in central Australia.

Climate Regions



Central and Western Australia are sparsely populated. Large areas of the Northern Territory and the desert regions are uninhabited. Approximately 40 percent of Australia's interior is desert, where Type B climates dominate. The large land mass can heat up during the summer months, triggering high temperatures. Low humidity allows heat to escape into the atmosphere after the sun goes down, so there is a wide temperature variation between day and night.

Along the northern coastal region there are more tropical type A climates. Closer to the equator and with the sea to moderate temperatures, the northern areas around Darwin and Cape York have little temperature variation. Temperatures in Darwin average about 90 °F in the summer and 86 °F in the winter. Spring monsoons bring additional rainfall from February to March.



A wet season storm at night in Darwin, Australia.

Tasmania, Victoria, and the core region of the southeast have a more moderate and temperate type C climate. The main cities, such as Sydney, Melbourne, and Adelaide, are within this area. It is not surprising that there is a direct correlation between Type C climates and the major population areas. The Tropic of Capricorn cuts across the continent, indicating that the cities are not that far south of the tropics. Average winter temperatures in June and July do not usually fall below 50 °F and average summer temperatures in January and February remain around 70 °F. Since the seasons are reversed from that of the Northern Hemisphere, many Australians go to the beach for Christmas.



Sydney Harbour seen from Sydney Harbour Bridge, Australia

Population, Urbanization, and the Core-Periphery Spatial Relationship

Australia is divided politically into six states and two territories. They are the Northern Territory, Australian Capital Territory, Western Australia, Tasmania, South Australia, Queensland, and New South Wales. Australian protectorates are composed of a number of small islands around Australia. Australian core areas are conducive to large human populations. To locate the core population areas in Australia, simply find the moderate Type C climates. Australia has two core regions. There is a small core region in the west, anchored by the city of Perth. Most of Australia's people live in the large core region in the east along the coast. This region extends from Brisbane to Adelaide and holds most of the country's population.

LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org



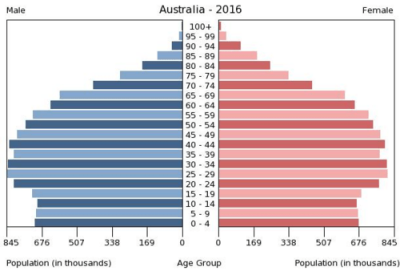
Australian States and Territories

States and territories of Australia

Flag	State/territory name	Abbreviation	Type	Capital (or largest settlement)	Population
	New South Wales	NSW	State	Sydney	7,704,300
	Queensland	Qld	State	Brisbane	4,827,000
	South Australia	TO	State	Adelaide	1,706,500
	Tasmania	That	State	Hobart	518,500
	Victoria	Vic	State	Melbourne	6,039,100
	Western Australia	WA	State	Perth	2,613,700
	Australian Capital Territory	ACT	Territory	Canberra	397,397
	Jervis Bay Territory	JBT	Territory	(Jervis Bay Village)	391
	Northern Territory	NT	Territory	Darwin	244,000
	Ashmore and Cartier Islands		External	*(Offshore)*	0
	Australian Antarctic Territory	AAT	External	Davis Station	1,000
	Christmas Island		External	Flying Fish Cove	2,072
	Cocos (Keeling) Islands		External	West Island / Pulu Panjang	596
	Coral Sea Islands		External	(Willis Island)	4
	Heard Island and McDonald Islands	HIMI	External	(Atlas Cove)	0
	Norfolk Island		External	Kingston	2,302

Source

The total population of Australia in 2017 was approximately 23 million. There are more people living in Mexico City than in all of Australia. More than 90 percent of this population has European heritage, and most of this percentage is from the British Isles. English is the dominant language. Christianity is the dominant religion. The makeup of the people is a product of European colonialism and immigration.



Age Structure of Australia: 0-14 years: 17.8% (male 2,122,139/female 2,012,670); 15-24 years: 12.79 percent (male 1,524,368/female 1,446,663); 25-54 years: 41.45 percent (male 4,903,130/female 4,725,976); 55-64 years: 11.83 percent (male 1,363,331/female 1,384,036); 65 years and over: 16.14 percent (male 1,736,951/female 2,013,149)

Only about two percent of the current population consists of Aboriginal people, the original people of Australia. Australia's population has seen periodic growth spurts as waves of immigrants responded to national policies encouraging immigration. This was especially true after World War II. About 24 percent of the current population was born outside of Australia; most come from the United Kingdom, and another large percentage comes from New Zealand. Asian countries have also contributed to the Australian population, with measurable numbers of immigrants from China, Vietnam, and the Philippines. And lastly, people from Italy and India also make up a notable proportion of Australia's immigrant population.

Australia's population is not spread evenly across the landscape, since a large portion of the country is desert. The population is concentrated mostly in the urban areas. About 90 percent of the population live in cities, which are mostly in coastal areas. The largest city, Sydney, is often referred to as the New York of Australia. Sydney is positioned at the heart of the main core area, the state

LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

of New South Wales. To the south of Sydney is the Australian Capital Territory, home to the capital city of Canberra. Other major Australian cities include Melbourne, Perth, Adelaide, and Brisbane. Hobart is the largest city on the island of Tasmania and Darwin is the largest city in the Northern Territory.

The Top 10 Most Populated Cities in Australia

Rank	Cities	State/Territory	**June 2017 Census Population**	Percentage of national population (June 2017)
1	Sydney	New South Wales	5,131,326	20.86%
2	Melbourne	Victoria	4,850,740	19.72%
3	Brisbane	Queensland	2,408,223	9.79%
4	Perth	Western Australia	2,043,138	8.31%
5	Adelaide	South Australia	1,333,927	5.42%
6	Gold Coast/Tweed Heads	Queensland/New South Wales	693,321	2.70%
7	Newcastle/Maitland	New South Wales	491,183	1.96%
8	Canberra/Queanbeyan	Australian Capital Territory/New South Wales	447,457	1.82%
9	Sunshine Coast	Queensland	375,399	1.32%
10	Wollongong	New South Wales	299,203	1.22%

Source

All of the large cities of Australia—except the planned capital city of Canberra—are located on the coast. This pattern of urban distribution was a product of European colonial development. Most of Australia's population lives in the two economic core regions, so Australia exhibits a distinct core-periphery spatial pattern. The core areas hold the power, wealth, and influence while the periphery region supplies all the food, raw materials, and goods needed in the core. Australia has never had a majority rural population since its Aboriginal times. There has been little rural-to-urban shift in Australia's population.

English is the first language of the vast majority of the population. Recently, enacted policies and changing attitudes toward multiculturalism have spurred growth in the number of immigrants and their descendants who speak two languages fluently—English and the language of their birthplace or national heritage. Indigenous languages have not fared so well. As many as 300 indigenous languages were spoken by Aborigines before the Europeans arrived, and just a few hundred years later, that number now stands at about 70. Most aboriginal languages are in danger of dying out.

Languages of Australia

Main languages	Australian English
Indigenous languages	Australian Aboriginal languages, Tasmanian languages, Torres Strait Island languages
Main immigrant languages	Mandarin (2.5%), Arabic (1.4%), Cantonese (1.2%), Vietnamese (1.2%), Italian (1.2%)

Source

Culture and Immigration

Until 1973, Australia had a collection of laws and policies known as the White Australia policy, which served to limit the immigration of nonwhite persons to Australia. While the White Australia policies limited immigration from some areas, other policies sought to expand immigration from the United Kingdom. Subsidies were offered to British citizens to relocate to Australia. Between 1830 and 1940, more than one million British citizens took advantage of the offer.

Recent census data indicate that 22.6 percent of the population identifies itself as Roman Catholic, and over 29 percent identify with other Christian faiths. Islam comprises 2.6 percent of the Australian population, followed by Buddhists at 2.4 percent and Hindus at 1.9%. Over 30 percent of Australians do not identify with any religion. Regular church attendance is claimed by at about 7.5 percent of the population. Despite modern Australia having been settled by the British, Australian law decrees that Australia will have no national religion and guarantees freedom of religion.

Sports are an important part of Australian culture, perhaps owing to a climate that allows for year-round outdoor activity. About one-fourth of the population is involved in some kind of organized sports team. Soccer is popular, rugby, and cricket are the most popular sports. The most popular spectator sport in Australia is Australian Rules Football, also known as Aussie Rules Football, or simply "footy." This uniquely Australian game has codified rules that date back to 1858 and is a variant of football and rugby.



A North East Australian Football League (NEAFL) match on July 4, 2015, at TIO Stadium in Darwin, Northern Territory.

Other forms of entertainment include television, film, and live performances of many kinds. Although Australia has a number of its own television stations, there are concerns that popular culture is beginning to be dominated by American influences. Australia's large cities have extensive programs in the arts. Sydney is becoming a center for world-class performances in dance, opera, music, and theater.

Education is well-funded and internationally respected. School attendance is compulsory between the ages of 6 and 15, and the adult literacy rate has held steady at about 99 percent. Most students attend publicly funded schools, which are secular. Private schools, which charge tuition fees, do exist and are typically run by religious organizations, predominantly the Catholic Church.

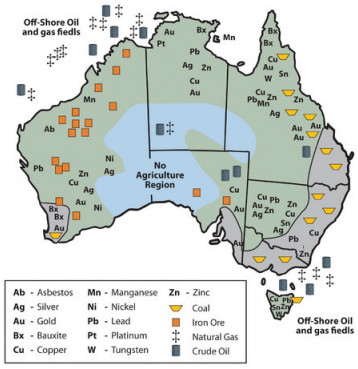
Economic Geography

Most of Australia—especially the wide expanse of the arid interior known as the outback—has immense open spaces, agricultural potential or excellent resource extraction possibilities. The extensive grasslands support tens of millions of domesticated animals—mainly cattle and sheep—which accounts for up to one-fifth of the world's wool production. Large agricultural businesses include thousands of acres under one operation.

The western sector of the Great Dividing Range in New South Wales is an excellent region for commercial grain operations. The coastal region in Queensland, since it is warmer and receives more rainfall, is good for sugarcane and similar crops. Sheep and cattle ranches are common in central Queensland and Western Australia. Various regions of southern Australia are excellent for grape and fruit production. Australian wine production has risen to compete with the US and European markets. Only the dry central desert regions in the center of the continent are not favorable for agriculture.

In the early portion of the 20th century, Australia gained enormous wealth by exporting food products to the rest of the world. This is still true, but the profit margin on food goods is no longer what it used to be. The country has had to look elsewhere to gain wealth.

Australia has excellent food production capabilities. It also has an excellent mineral resource base. Different types of minerals can be found in different regions throughout Australia. Western Australia has iron ore mines. The eastern region of Queensland and New South Wales has abundant coal reserves. Minerals such as zinc, copper, gold, silver, tungsten, and nickel can be found in various parts of the country, including Tasmania. Oil and gas fields can be found in the northwestern coastal waters and in the Tasman Sea east of Melbourne. The country is self-sufficient in natural gas but does have to import some petroleum products.



Australia does not export many manufactured goods. Its main exports are food and raw materials. Though Australia is a former British colony, Great Britain is not considered Australia's largest trading partner. Australia is closer geographically to the Asian economic community than to the European Union. Japan has become Australia's biggest trading partner. When Australia is viewed in the news, in television programs, and in Hollywood movies, it is portrayed as a country with a similar standard of living to the United States or Europe.

How do Australians have such a high standard of living if they don't manufacture anything for export? To evaluate this, think about the size of the population of Australia and consider the distribution of wealth. They export an immense amount of raw materials and have a relatively small population to share the wealth.

As of the year 2002, tourism has become Australia's number one means of economic income. From the Great Barrier Reef and the Gold Coast to the vast expanse of the outback, Australia has been marketing itself as an attractive place to visit with great success. Tourism from Japan provides a large percentage of tourist activity. Australia has moved through the initial stages of the index of economic development to become a society that is about 90 percent urban with small families and high incomes.

Mining and Aboriginal Lands

Territorial control of Australian lands has become a major issue in recent years. Large portions of Western Australia and the outback have traditionally been Aboriginal lands. European colonialism on the Australian continent displaced many of the native people. Large sections of land once used by the Aborigines were taken over by the government or by private interests. Large agricultural operations and mining operations have used the lands without adequate compensation to the Aboriginal people who once controlled them. Court rulings aimed at reparation for native people have had mixed results.

There are as many as 400 different groups of Aborigines currently in Australia that make up a total population of about 450,000. This is a small percentage of Australia's population but involves a large part of the physical area of the country. Their land claims include all of the Northern Territory, a large portion of Western Australia, and parts of South Australia and Queensland. This is in addition to claims located within many urban areas, such as the largest city, Sydney.

Mining operations on Aboriginal lands have become highly regulated. Concerns have arisen that Australia's extractive industries will diminish, causing a decline in the economy. The concern for the Aboriginal population has increased in the past few decades and the government has made attempts to mediate their political and economic issues as well as strengthen programs that address their social welfare.

Australia's Future

The economic future of Australia is complex. Though tourism has become a viable means of providing income, Australia must import manufactured products that it does not produce locally, including electronic goods, computers, and automobiles. Import dependence has increased its trade deficit. Trade agreements and protectionism have become a part of the economic puzzle of how to sustain a competitive standard of living.

Australia is located next to the Asian realm. Its economy, culture, and future are becoming more Asian. Immigration has been an issue in that the government has always restricted immigration to ensure a European majority. Millions of Asian people would like to migrate to Australia to seek greater opportunities and advantages, but they are legally restricted. It is becoming more difficult for Australians to hold to their European connections with a growing Asian presence.

Key Takeaways

- Australia is an island continent that was home to aboriginal people before the British colonized it by first creating prison colonies for convicts from Great Britain.
- Australia is a relatively flat continent with low elevation highlands, including the Great Dividing Range along its eastern coast. The interior outback lacks precipitation and has numerous deserts.
- Two main core areas exist where Type C climates prevail and where most of the population lives: a large core area on the southeastern coast and a small core area around Perth on the western coast. The sparsely populated outback makes up the vast periphery, which has large amounts of mineral and agricultural resources.
- Aboriginal people were in Australia for 40,000 years. The British colonial activity didn't heat up until the late 1700s. Today, most of the 22 million people are from the British Isles and Europe. Only about four hundred 50,000 Aborigines remain.
- Australia has few manufacturing enterprises for export profits. Tourism has become the number one method of gaining wealth, with the export of raw materials the second-largest method.

Vocabulary Terms

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

Chapter 11.2 Australia

Aboriginal people	an original inhabitant of Australia
Cultural convergence	The theory that two cultures will be more and more like each other as their interactions increase. Basically, the more that cultures interact, the more that their customs will start to reflect each other.
Cultural divergence	Is the tendency for cultures to become dissimilar over time
indigenous	Originating or occurring naturally in a particular place; native
Oceania	A geographic region which includes Australasia, Melanesia, Micronesia, and Polynesia. Spanning the eastern and western hemispheres, Oceania covers an area of has a population of 40 million
Colonial exploitation	The national economic policy of conquering a country to exploit its population as labor and its natural resources as raw material
Core-periphery spatial relationship	Shows spatially how economic political, and cultural authority is dispersed in core or dominant regions and the surrounding peripheral and semi-peripheral regions
Cultural attributes	Characteristics that define a culture
Scrublands	A plant community characterized by vegetation dominated by shrubs, often also including grasses, herbs, and geophytes. Scrubland may occur naturally or may be
Great Barrier Reef	The world's largest coral reef system composed of over 2,900 individual reefs and 900 islands and stretching for over 1,400 miles. It is located in the Coral Sea, off
The Great Artesian Basin	One of the largest underground fresh-water reservoirs in the world. It underlies 22% of Australia, occupying an area of over 1.7 million square kilometers be Queensland, New South Wales, South Australia, and the Northern Territory.

Applying Knowledge

Interactive Notebook Activities

1. Summarize the colonial exploitation and development of Australia.
2. Describe the basic characteristics of Australia's physical geography.
3. Outline how the core-periphery spatial relationship applies to Australia.
4. Describe the country's general cultural attributes.
5. Summarize the methods used for the country to gain national wealth.

Discussion and Study Questions

1. Name the European country that colonized Australia. What was the original reason for colonizing Australia?
2. What are Australia's main political divisions? What is the vast interior called?
3. What are some of Australia's main physical features? How are they developed for tourism?
4. What are the main climate types in Australia? How does climate relate to the population?
5. What type of government does Australia have? What is its capital city? Who is the head of state?
6. Outline the core-periphery relationship in Australia. What distinguishes the core areas?
7. How does Australia compare with the Asian economic tigers? How do they support each other?
8. How does Australia maintain a high standard of living when it exports a few manufactured products?
9. What are Australia's main exports? Who is their main trading partner?
10. What stage is the country in with regard to the index of economic development?

Real-World Geography Exercise

Using Google Maps, locate each of the places on the list below. Next, choose one of these areas and create a SWAY or a PowerPoint presentation. Find important facts, maps, images and videos to use in your presentation. Be prepared to share your project.

- Adelaide
- Arafura Sea
- Australian Capital Territory
- Brisbane
- Canberra
- Cape York
- Coral Sea
- Darling-Murray River
- Darwin
- Gibson Desert
- Gold Coast
- Great Artesian Basin
- Great Australian Bight
- Great Barrier Reef
- Great Dividing Range
- Great Sandy Desert
- Great Victoria Desert
- Gulf of Carpentaria
- Hobart
- Melbourne
- New South Wales
- Northern Territory
- Outback
- Perth
- Queensland
- Sydney
- Simpson Desert
- South Australia
- Tasman Sea

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

- Tasmania
- Timor Sea
- Victoria
- Western Australia

Current Events

Geography Education Scoop It

Top 20 Australian Baby Names That Have Nothing To Do With Kangaroos, Koalas, Or Vegemite

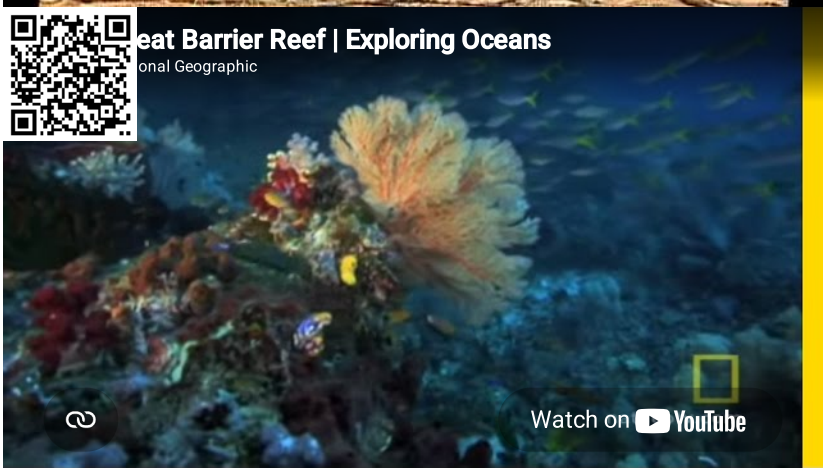
Australia Starts Importing U.S. Light Crude

Health Professionals Threatened With Disciplinary Action If They Spread Anti-Vaccination Messages

Australia: Fishmongers & Academics Hope Modern Slavery Act Will Help Stamp Out Slavery From Seafood Supply Chains

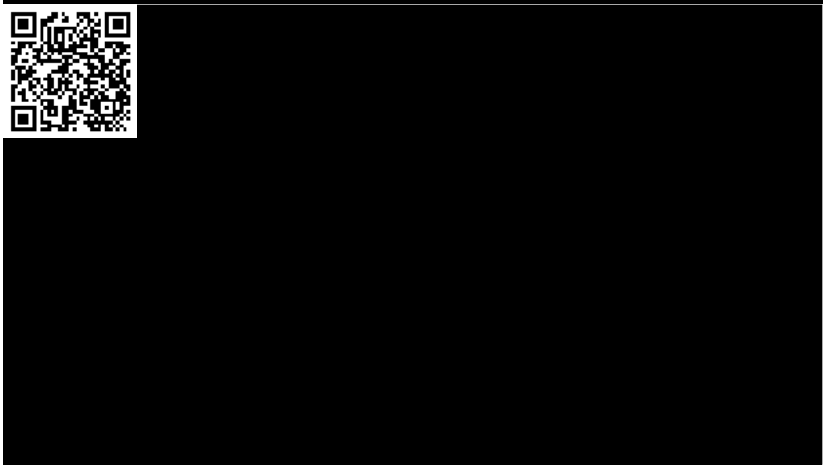
Videos for Geography Enrichment

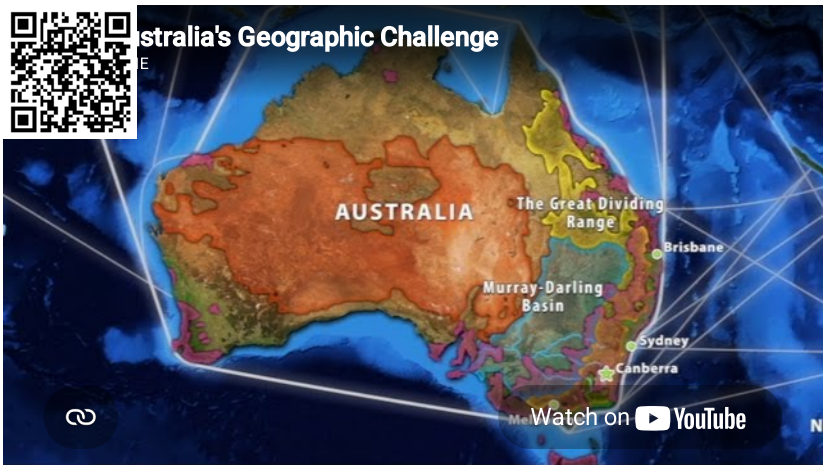





pulation of Australia: 23 million, 23 April, 2013 | Mark
rindle
THE MORNING SHOW
AUSTRALIA'S POPULATION
Watch on YouTube


plained: Australia's current economic position
News (Australia)
an Australian public broadcast service.
Explained:
State of the economy
Watch on YouTube





Helpful Websites for the Study of Geography

Canadian Encyclopedia is an encyclopedia funded by the Canadian government covering all branches of knowledge. Their scholarly collection includes interactive materials.

CIA World Factbook provides information on the people, history, government, economy, energy, geography, communications, transportation, military, and transnational issues for the world's entities.

Congress.gov is a US government website where you can find federal legislation, past and present, as well as information about the US legal system.

Drug Enforcement Administration (DEA) is a government agency website that provides current news, resources, topics of interest, information about drugs, careers in the DEA, and a tip hotline.

Library of Congress is the largest library in the world and provides manuscripts, files, information, pictures, and videos.

NASA Earth Observatory (NEO) is a US government agency website that allows users to search for and retrieve satellite images of Earth.

National Archives is a US government website that provides historical documents, photos, records, publications, and educator resources.

National Oceanic and Atmospheric Association (NOAA) is a US government agency website that provides weather-related information and ocean research.

National Map is a website by the United States Geological Survey and other federal, state, and local agencies that delivers topographic information for the United States.

NationMaster is a massive central data source and a handy way to graphically compare nations.

Real-Time World Air Quality Index is a website that measures most locations in the world for air pollution in real time.

StateMaster is a unique statistical database, which allows you to research and compare a multitude of different data on US states.

United Nations (UN) is an international organization founded in 1945 and made up of 193 member states. The UN maintains international peace and security, protects human rights, delivers humanitarian aid, promotes sustainable development, and upholds international law.

United States Census Bureau is a US government agency that provides a population clock, data, surveys, statistics, a library with information and infographics, news about the economy, and much more.

United States Geological Survey (USGS) is a US government agency website that provides scientific information about the natural hazards that threaten lives, the natural resources we rely on, the health of our ecosystems and environment, and the impacts of climate and land-use change.

Whitehouse.gov is a US government website that provides the latest presidential news, information about the budget, policy, defense, and many more topics.

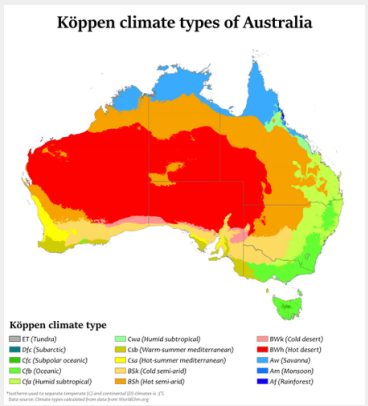
World Health Organization (WHO) is under the United Nations and provides leadership on matters critical to health, shapes the research agenda on health, and monitors the health situation and assessing health trends around the world. Their website provides information on the state of health around the world, outbreaks, current health news, and more.

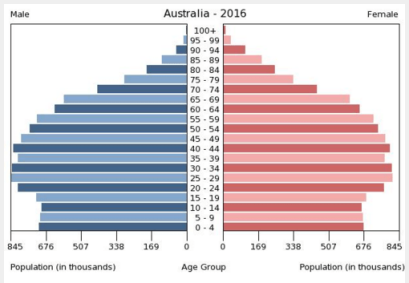
LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

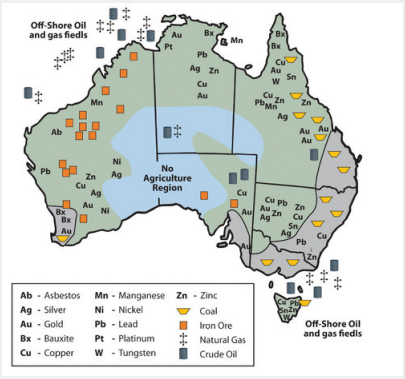
World Trade Organization (WTO) is an intergovernmental organization that regulates international trade. The website provides information on the history of the multilateral trading system, featured

LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

videos, news and events, trade topics, and more.

Image	Reference	Attributions
	[Figure 1]	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** By United States Central Intelligence Agency [Public domain] ; via Wikimedia Commons **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 2]	**Credit:** Fir0002/Flagstaffotos **Source:** https://en.Wikipedia.org/wiki/Great_Dividing_Range#/media/File:Mt_hotham_alpine_range_scenery.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 4]	**Credit:** Stephen Codrington **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Alice_Springs_ridge.jpeg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 5]	**Creturns;** Christopher Watson **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Andado2_-_Christopher_Watson.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 8]	**Credit:** By Adam Peterson [CC BY-SA 4.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0)], from Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Australia_K%C3%B6ppen.svg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

	[Figure 9]	**Credit:** By Tourism NT (with the link where possible), Attribution, https://commons.wikimedia.org/w/inde...?curid=1566929 **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Darwin_1824.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 10]	**Credit:** By Bernard Gagnon [GFDL (http://www.gnu.org/copyleft/fdl.html) or CC BY-SA 4.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0)], from Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://en.Wikipedia.org/wiki/Sydney#/media/File:Sydney_Harbour_01.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 11]	**Credit:** By Lasunncty [CC BY-SA 4.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0)], from Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Australia_states_and_territories_labeled.svg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 12]	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/as.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 13]	**Credit:** By Flickerd [CC BY-SA 4.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0)], from Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Archie_Smith.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0



[Figure 14]

Credit: http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeograp...2-2-australia/
Source: http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/25b24aa3e82f25118bf84afcde99349a.jpg
License: CC BY-NC 3.0

This page titled 11.2: Australia (3 Days) is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by CK12 via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

11.3: New Zealand (2 Days)

Chapter Challenges

1. Outline New Zealand's main physical features explain how the North Island is different from the South Island.
2. Describe how tectonic plate activity has helped to isolate New Zealand from the rest of the world and still affects the island today.
3. Summarize the situation of the Maori in New Zealand and their relationship with the dominant culture in New Zealand.
4. Describe the economic geography of New Zealand and how the country gains wealth.

Learning Objectives

TEKS Regional Unit 11 Oceania: Chapter 11.3 New Zealand

WG.1A Analyze the effects of physical and human geographic patterns and processes on the past and describe their impact on the present, including significant physical features and environmental conditions that influenced migration patterns and shaped the distribution of culture groups today.

WG.2A Describe the human and physical characteristics of the same regions at different periods of time to evaluate relationships between past events and current conditions.

WG.3A Explain weather conditions and climate in relation to annual changes in Earth-Sun relationships.

WG.3B Describe the physical processes that affect the environments of regions, including weather, tectonic forces.

WG.4A Explain how elevation, latitude, wind systems, ocean currents, position on a continent, and mountain barriers influence temperature, precipitation, and distribution of climate regions.

WG.4B Describe different landforms and the physical processes that cause their development.

WG.4C Explain the influence of climate on the distribution of biomes in different regions.

WG.5A Analyze how the character of a place is related to its political, economic, social, and cultural elements.

WG.6A Locate and describe human and physical features that influence the size and distribution of settlements.

WG.6B Explain the processes that have caused changes in settlement patterns, including urbanization, transportation, access to and availability of resources, and economic activities.

WG.8A Compare ways that humans depend on, adapt to, and modify the physical environment, including the influences of culture and technology.

WG.8B Describe the interaction between humans and the physical environment and analyze the consequences of extreme weather and other natural disasters such as El Nino, floods. tsunamis, and volcanoes.

WG.8C Evaluate the economic and political relationships between settlements and the environments, including sustainable development and renewable/non-renewable resources.

WG.9A Identify physical and/or human factors such as climate, vegetation, language, trade networks, political units, river systems, and religion that constitute a region.

WG.10C Compare the ways people satisfy their basic needs through the production of goods and services such as subsistence agriculture versus commercial agriculture or cottage industries versus commercial industries.

WG.10D Compare global trade patterns over time and examine the implications of globalization, including outsourcing and free trade zones.

WG.11B Identify factors affecting the location of different types of economic activities, including subsistence and commercial agriculture manufacturing, and service industries.

WG.11C Assess how changes in climate, resources, and infrastructure (technology, transportation, and communication) affect the location and patterns of economic activities.

WG.18A Analyze cultural changes in specific regions caused by migration, war, trade, innovations, and diffusion.

WG.18C Identify examples of cultures that maintain traditional ways, including traditional economies.

WG.18D Evaluate the spread of cultural traits to find examples of cultural convergence and divergence such as the spread of democratic ideas, US-based fast-food franchises, the English langue, technology, or global sports.

WG.21A Analyze and evaluate the validity and utility of multiple sources of geographic information such as primary and secondary sources, aerial photographs, and maps.

WG.21C Create and interpret different types of maps to answer geographic questions, infer relationships, and analyze change.

WG.22A Design and draw appropriate graphics such as maps, diagrams tables, and graphs to communicate geographic features, distributions, and relationships.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

WG.22B Generate summaries, generalizations, and thesis statements supported by evidence.

WG.22E Create original work using proper citations and understanding and avoiding plagiarism.

TEKS and ELPS for Regional World Geography Unit 11--Oceania from TEKS Resource System.

New Zealand



New Zealand Map

Physical Geography

To the east of Australia across the Tasman Sea is the country of New Zealand. New Zealand is one of a number of sets of islands that make up Oceania, also referred to as the Pacific Islands, a region occupying the western and central Pacific Ocean. The Pacific Islands region is generally divided into three sub-regions: Micronesia, Melanesia, and Polynesia, with New Zealand being part of Polynesia.

The Pacific Island region includes more than 25,000 individual small islands representing 25 nations and territories. Most of these islands are very small. The South and North islands of New Zealand are the second- and third-largest islands, respectively. The North and South Islands of New Zealand are separated by a body of water known as the Cook Strait, which is only about 13 miles wide at its narrowest point. The North and South Islands together are about the same size as the US state of Colorado. New Zealand also includes a number of smaller nearby islands.

New Zealand, like Australia, is in the Southern Hemisphere, which means that its seasons are expressed at the opposite times of the seasons in North America. In other words, the warmest summer months are January and February and the cooler winter months are June and July. New Zealand lies within the Temperate Zone. There are only very moderate seasonal differences, which are slightly more pronounced in the inland areas because the inland areas lack the moderating influence of the ocean.

In general, the North Island has somewhat warmer average temperatures than the South Island. In summer, average low temperatures are about 50 °F, with daytime highs around 75 °F. In the winter months, low temperatures average about 35 °F and high temperatures are about 50 °F. The occurrence of more extreme temperatures is limited to the mountainous peaks of the Southern Alps. Snow is common in these mountainous regions but rarely occurs in coastal regions.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org



The Southern Alps is a mountain range extending along much of the length of New Zealand's South Island, reaching its greatest elevations near the range's western side.

Rainfall is heaviest on the western coasts of both islands, but especially on the South Island. The prevailing westerly winds, carrying moisture from the ocean, come in contact with the mountains of the Southern Alps and high precipitation results. The mountains also have the opposite effect. On the eastern side of the mountains is a rain shadow where the westerly winds blow hot, dry air and the eastern coasts are therefore substantially drier than the western coasts. Therefore, the average precipitation rates vary widely across the country.

The average annual rainfall in Christchurch, which is on the eastern coast of the South Island, is about 25 inches per year. Auckland, in the mid-portion of the North Island, receives twice that amount and areas on the wetter western coast receive as much as 115 inches per year.

As an island nation, New Zealand's coastlines and oceans are some of its most important geographic features. New Zealand has one of the world's largest exclusive economic zones, an oceanic zone over which a nation has exclusive rights of exploration and exploitation of marine resources. New Zealand's exclusive economic zone covers more than one million square miles. The dramatic nature of New Zealand's landscape is well known to many moviegoers as the landscape of Middle Earth, as depicted in New Zealand film director Peter Jackson's version of J. R. R. Tolkein's *Lord of the Rings*.



Lake Gunn is a small lake between Lake Te Anau and Milford Sound. It lies close to the New Zealand State Highway 94 and the Divide of the Southern Alps.

Tectonic Plates and Gondwanaland

The North Island of New Zealand features a rugged coastline with numerous harbors, bays, and inlets. The port cities of Auckland and Wellington are located on two of the largest bays. The coastline of the South Island is somewhat more regular, except along the southern portion of the eastern coastline, which has deep fjords. Though the North Island has lower relief than its southern counterpart, its few mountains are volcanic in origin.

The two main islands are accompanied by smaller islands around their shores. The North Island's highest peak is Mount Ruapehu, which reaches almost 9,175 feet, and is an active cone volcano. It is located in the south central part of the island. A range of highlands runs along its eastern side. The volcanism associated with Mount Ruapehu results from New Zealand's location atop two tectonic plates: the Pacific Plate and the Indo-Australian Plate.

The boundary of these two plates forms a subduction zone under the North Island. Consequently, New Zealand experiences tens of thousands of earthquakes per year. Though most of the earthquakes do not greatly disrupt human activity, some have registered higher than 7 on the Richter scale. New Zealanders have made use of the geothermal power generated by this and the tectonic features of this area and hence, New Zealand is home to several hydrothermal power plants.

A range of mountains, the Southern Alps, divides the South Island lengthwise. Many of the peaks reach over 10,000 feet. The highest peak is Mount Cook, which reaches higher than 12,000 feet. These mountains are also formed by the area's tectonic situation. However, the two plates meet in a

different way under the South Island. Rather than creating a subduction zone, the plates move laterally.

The lateral movement created the South Alps. New Zealand's location places it along one of the edges of the Ring of Fire**,** which encircles the Pacific Ocean basin. The positions and activity of the tectonic plates in this zone cause most of the world's earthquakes and have formed more than 75 percent of the world's volcanoes.



The southern portion was called Gondwana (Gondwanaland). New Zealand and Australia come from Gondwana; their origin explains why their fauna and flora are so unique.

New Zealand has a fascinating ecological history. New Zealand was once part of Gondwana, also known as Gondwanaland. About 200 to 500 million years ago, Gondwana was the southern portion of the supercontinent of Pangaea. Gondwana included most of the land in what is the Southern Hemisphere today, including Australia and New Zealand. Over time, through various forms of tectonic activity, the earth's plates shifted and the supercontinent of Gondwana broke apart, leaving New Zealand geographically isolated for millennia. The species of flora and fauna found in New Zealand either descended from the species found on Gondwana, flew there, floated there via the ocean, or were brought by people.

Biodiversity in New Zealand

New Zealand's geological history has laid the groundwork for more than 2,000 indigenous plant species, about 1,500 of which are found nowhere else in the world. The biomes of the North Island include a subtropical area, including mangrove swamps, an evergreen forest with dense undergrowth of mosses and ferns, and a small grasslands area in the central volcanic plain. The South Island biomes include extensive grasslands in the east, which are excellent for agricultural pursuits; forest areas, dominated by native beech trees in the west; and an alpine vegetation zone in the Southern Alps.

In terms of fauna, the most influential factor may be the relative absence of predatory mammals, again related to New Zealand's geological history. With few ground predators and a favorable climate, bats, small reptiles, and birds were able to thrive and flourish. Without predators, many species of birds became flightless, such as the noted Kiwi. New Zealand's most famous bird, the moa, was similar to the ostrich but is now extinct. Moa could grow to more than 12 feet high and weigh more than 500 pounds. New Zealand is known for its large number of species of wild birds. The Kiwi is the most noted and is often used to refer to people from New Zealand, as it is the national symbol of the country.



Kiwis are flightless birds native to New Zealand.

New Zealand has a variety of landscapes that have been attractive for economic activity and tourism. The South Island is larger than the North Island and is more mountainous. The snowcapped peaks of the Southern Alps run the western length of the South Island. Large livestock-raising operations

and agricultural activities can be found on the vast grasslands of the South Island. Millions of sheep and cattle are raised on the grassy highlands and the valley pasturelands. The North Island has more low-lying terrain, which is also good for agriculture and is home to a large dairy industry. The central highlands of the north offer some rugged relief and provide for a diverse physical landscape.

Cultural Dynamics and the Maori

New Zealand is home to many Polynesian groups. Its original inhabitants were the Maori, who came to the islands around the 10th century. They grew crops of gourds and sweet potatoes. Fur seals were hunted regularly, as were moa, which were hunted to extinction before the Europeans arrived. The Maori had created extensive trading networks with other island groups and developed a heritage of traditional rituals and cultural ways. The Maori culture thrived for hundreds of years and was well established in New Zealand before the arrival of the colonial ships from Europe.

Britain was the main colonizer of the islands. The British settled in to establish their presence and gain control. In 1840, the British colonizers and the Maori signed the Treaty of Waitangi, which granted British sovereignty over the islands but allowed the Maori certain rights over tribal lands. The actual language in this treaty has been debated between the English version and the Maori version.

Over time the tribal lands were codified into legal arrangements by the European colonizers. Since the Treaty of Waitangi, the situation has evolved, with subsequent land exchanges, some legal and others questionable. The Maori have complained about unfair treatment and the loss of land and rights in the process. These issues have finally reached a point of negotiation in the past couple of decades. Starting in the 1990s, treaty settlements have been made to help correct the actions of the colonial activity and compensate the Maori for the conditions to which they were subjugated.



Many Maori participate in performances in New Zealand both for tourism and to maintain their heritage and traditions.

Most of the Maori have lived on the North Island. They were a real concern for the European colonizers. Claimed by Great Britain in their colonial empire, the country of New Zealand became independent of Britain in 1901. According to the CIA World Factbook, the estimate of the population in 2017 of the country was at about 4.5 million. According to the New Zealand 2013 census, Europeans are 74 percent of the population and the Maori are 14.09 percent. There are also many people who are of mixed ethnic background, including Maori and other groups. Asians, Polynesians, and other ethnic minorities make up the rest. New Zealand's main religion is Christianity and English is the official language.

The Maori have not been integrated into New Zealand society to the same extent as Europeans have. The Maori now join the ranks of other Pacific Islanders that have moved to New Zealand from Samoa, Tonga, Cook Islands, and many other places in the South Pacific. New Zealand's urban areas reflect diversity in the various cultural landscapes and ethnic communities that have established themselves in specific neighborhoods within the main cities.

A common dilemma with all peoples is the draw to return to their heritage and roots, which typically results in a more traditional lifestyle with stronger cultural ways. At the same time, the modern world pulls people toward a more global and cosmopolitan culture that is steeped in modernity with changing fashions. The Maori and other ethnic groups in New Zealand find themselves facing a challenge to balance their traditional lifestyles and the modern world.

Economic Conditions

Land and climate could be said to be New Zealand's most important natural resources. Fertile soils and a mild climate, complete with thousands of hours of sunshine annually, create ideal conditions for agriculture. Grass continues to grow throughout the year, which means that sheep and other livestock have plenty to graze upon. Wool and other agricultural products, notably meat and butter, are important exports for New Zealand's economy. Healthy forests produce timber products, which are important to the economy as well. Some of New Zealand's natural resources are found underground, including coal, natural gas, gold, and other minerals.

Wellington is the capital of the country and is located on the southern end of the North Island. Wellington is one-fourth the size of the primary city, Auckland, which has 1.45 million people and is located in the north. The major cities are located along the coastal regions and provide a connection to sea transportation. Christchurch is the largest city of the South Island and is located along the eastern seaboard on the productive Canterbury Plain. The soils and conditions on the Canterbury Plain are excellent for productive agriculture of all types. Coastal plains also provide access to building transportation systems of highways and railroads that are more costly to construct in the mountainous regions of the Southern Alps or the northern highlands.



Agricultural products make up a large portion of the nation's exports that contribute to the country's economy.

The modern cities are home to many processing centers that prepare the abundant agricultural products for domestic consumption and for export products. The ever-growing populations of Asia and the rest of the world continue to place a high demand on food products and welcome New Zealand's agricultural exports. In relation to how countries gain wealth, agricultural profits are competitive and normally provide a low profit margin.

New Zealand does not gain a large part of its national income from mining or manufacturing, though these industries do exist. The high standard of living that in New Zealand is similar to that of Australia in that the population is not large. This allows the national wealth to be distributed through the private sector economy to provide a comfortable standard of living.

New Zealand has a market economy. The mainstay of the economy is, and has been for many years, a productive agricultural sector that has been geared toward export profits. New Zealand's climate and soils help give it a place in the economy of the region through agricultural exports. A "wool boom" in the 1950s furthered the emphasis on agricultural products as tremendous profits were made in the wool production and export industry.

Today, New Zealand's economy is still heavily focused on the export of agricultural products, though the economy has diversified into other areas such as tourism and exploitation of natural resources, especially natural gas. The development of hydroelectricity generation in recent years has been important to the economy.

Key Takeaways

- New Zealand has been isolated by the separation of continents through tectonic plate action. Shifting plates continue to create earthquakes and volcanic activity in the region.
- New Zealand has high mountains, with the Southern Alps along the western coast of the South Island and highlands along the eastern side of the North Island. Adequate rainfall and good soils provide for excellent agricultural production, which has been the traditional economic activity.
- The Maori were established in New Zealand before the British colonized it. Various agreements were made to work out common arrangements, with varying degrees of success. The Maori continue to be a minority population and have not acculturated into the mainstream society of the country.
- New Zealand has historically relied on agricultural exports for national income. Shifting global markets and changes in government policies and structures have highly affected the economy of New Zealand. The country continues to work its way through the transition to a more global economy.

Vocabulary Terms

Chapter 11.3 New Zealand

Maori	a Polynesian people who were the first inhabitants of New Zealand
pakeha	a Maori word that means "European white people"
Ring of Fire	A chain of volcanoes that line the Pacific Ocean

Interactive Notebook Activities

1. Outline New Zealand's main physical features explain how the North Island is different from the South Island.
2. Describe how tectonic plate activity has helped to isolate New Zealand from the rest of the world and still affects the island today.
3. Summarize the situation of the Maori in New Zealand and their relationship with the dominant culture in New Zealand.
4. Describe the economic geography of New Zealand and how the country gains wealth.

Discussion and Study Questions

1. What are the main physical features of the South Island and North Island of New Zealand?
2. How is the North Island different from the South Island in population and economic activities?
3. How has physical geography been helpful in the economic development of New Zealand?

4. Where are the main cities of New Zealand? What are the capital and the largest cities on each island?
5. Who were the inhabitants of New Zealand before the colonial era? Where did they come from?
6. What issues do these inhabitants of New Zealand have with the current government?
7. How are the dynamics with the Maori similar to those with the Aborigines in Australia?
8. What are the main methods that New Zealand has used to gain national wealth?
9. How has the economic situation in New Zealand changed over the past few decades?
10. How is New Zealand different in physical and human geography from Australia?

Real-World Geography Exercise

1. Using Google Maps, complete the following activities:
   a. Locate each place on the bulleted list below.
   b. Find the nearest city with an international airport in proximity to each location on the bulleted list below.
   c. Calculate the distance and travel time by plane to each city from the Philadelphia International Airport in Philadelphia, Pennsylvania.
2. Using NASA Latitude and Longitude Finder, determine the latitude and longitude for each location on the bulleted list below.
3. Be prepared to share and discuss your answers.

- Auckland
- Canterbury Plain
- Cook Strait
- Christchurch
- Mount Cook
- Mount Ruapehu
- Southern Alps
- Wellington

Current Events

Geography Education Scoop It

New Zealand Bans Terror Suspect's Racist Manifesto; Citizens Told To 'Destroy Any Copies

New Zealand: 25 Measles Cases Reported In Canterbury

Oceania Tops Vegan List: Australia, New Zealand Seize Top Spots For Veganism Popularity In 2018

New Zealand Passes Law Allowing Broader Access To Medical Marijuana, But Most Patients Will Have To Wait

New Zealand Unveils Food Safety Campaign As Southern Hemisphere Heads Into Summer

Self-Flying Air Taxi Lifts Off In New Zealand

Videos for Geography Enrichment




ori culture in New Zealand
ZealandMedia
Watch on YouTube



Helpful Websites for the Study of Geography

Canadian Encyclopedia is an encyclopedia funded by the Canadian government covering all branches of knowledge. Their scholarly collection includes interactive materials.

CIA World Factbook provides information on the people, history, government, economy, energy, geography, communications, transportation, military, and transnational issues for the world's entities.

Congress.gov is a US government website where you can find federal legislation, past and present, as well as information about the US legal system.

Drug Enforcement Administration (DEA) is a government agency website that provides current news, resources, topics of interest, information about drugs, careers in the DEA, and a tip hotline.

Library of Congress is the largest library in the world and provides manuscripts, files, information, pictures, and videos.

NASA Earth Observatory (NEO) is a US government agency website that allows users to search for and retrieve satellite images of Earth.

National Archives is a US government website that provides historical documents, photos, records, publications, and educator resources.

National Oceanic and Atmospheric Association (NOAA) is a US government agency website that provides weather-related information and ocean research.

National Map is a website by the United States Geological Survey and other federal, state, and local agencies that delivers topographic information for the United States.

NationMaster is a massive central data source and a handy way to graphically compare nations.

Real-Time World Air Quality Index is a website that measures most locations in the world for air pollution in real time.

StateMaster is a unique statistical database, which allows you to research and compare a multitude of different data on US states.

United Nations (UN) is an international organization founded in 1945 and made up of 193 member states. The UN maintains international peace and security, protects human rights, delivers humanitarian aid, promotes sustainable development, and upholds international law.

United States Census Bureau is a US government agency that provides a population clock, data, surveys, statistics, a library with information and infographics, news about the economy, and much more.

United States Geological Survey (USGS) is a US government agency website that provides scientific information about the natural hazards that threaten lives, the natural resources we rely on, the health of our ecosystems and environment, and the impacts of climate and land-use change.

Whitehouse.gov is a US government website that provides the latest presidential news, information about the budget, policy, defense, and many more topics.

World Health Organization (WHO) is under the United Nations and provides leadership on matters critical to health; shapes the research agenda on health; and monitors the health situation and assessing health trends around the world. Their website provides information on the state of health around the world, outbreaks, current health news, and more.

World Trade Organization (WTO) is an intergovernmental organization that regulates international trade. The website provides information on the

https://k12.libretexts.org/@go/page/1989

history of the multilateral trading system, featured videos, news and events, trade topics, and more.

Image	Reference	Attributions
	[Figure 1]	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/nz.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 2]	**Credit:** By Remember [Public domain], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Mountains_in_New_Zealand.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 3]	**Credit:** By Jocey K [CC BY-SA 2.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/2.0)], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://upload.wikimedia.org/Wikipedia/commons/e/e5/Lake_Gunn.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

	[Figure 4]	**Credit:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeograp...3-new-zealand/ **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/a32e44332d5cc33054a886923bd40682.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 5]	**Credit:** By Maungatautari Ecological Island Trust (http://www.maungatrust.org/news/default.asp) [Public domain], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:TeTuatahianui.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 6]	**Credit:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeograp...3-new-zealand/ **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/e1ba5ecb4d812569428d0fa384e6bc35.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 7]	**Credit:** By Phillip Capper from Wellington, New Zealand [CC BY 2.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/2.0)], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Autumn_in_the_Awatere_Valley.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

This page titled 11.3: New Zealand (2 Days) is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by CK12 via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

11.4: The Pacific Islands (2 Days)

Chapter Challenges

1. List the three main areas of the South Pacific.
2. Explain the difference between low islands and high islands.
3. List which islands remain under the control of France, the United Kingdom, New Zealand, or the United States.
4. Describe the primary economic activities of the islands in the realm.
5. Summarize the main environmental concerns of the islands in each region.

Learning Objectives

TEKS Regional Unit 11 Oceania: Chapter 11.4 The Pacific Islands

WG.1A Analyze the effects of physical and human geographic patterns and processes on the past and describe their impact on the present, including significant physical features and environmental conditions that influenced migration patterns and shaped the distribution of culture groups today.

WG.2A Describe the human and physical characteristics of the same regions at different periods of time to evaluate relationships between past events and current conditions.

WG.3A Explain weather conditions and climate in relation to annual changes in Earth-Sun relationships.

WG.3B Describe the physical processes that affect the environments of regions, including weather, tectonic forces.

WG.4A Explain how elevation, latitude, wind systems, ocean currents, position on a continent, and mountain barriers influence temperature, precipitation, and distribution of climate regions.

WG.4B Describe different landforms and the physical processes that cause their development.

WG.4C Explain the influence of climate on the distribution of biomes in different regions.

WG.5A Analyze how the character of a place is related to its political, economic, social, and cultural elements.

WG.6A Locate and describe human and physical features that influence the size and distribution of settlements.

WG.6B Explain the processes that have caused changes in settlement patterns, including urbanization, transportation, access to and availability of resources, and economic activities.

WG.8A Compare ways that humans depend on, adapt to, and modify the physical environment, including the influences of culture and technology.

WG.8B Describe the interaction between humans and the physical environment and analyze the consequences of extreme weather and other natural disasters such as El Nino, floods. tsunamis, and volcanoes.

WG.8C Evaluate the economic and political relationships between settlements and the environments, including sustainable development and renewable/non-renewable resources.

WG.9A Identify physical and/or human factors such as climate, vegetation, language, trade networks, political units, river systems, and religion that constitute a region.

WG.10C Compare the ways people satisfy their basic needs through the production of goods and services such as subsistence agriculture versus commercial agriculture or cottage industries versus commercial industries.

WG.10D Compare global trade patterns over time and examine the implications of globalization, including outsourcing and free trade zones.

WG.11B Identify factors affecting the location of different types of economic activities, including subsistence and commercial agriculture manufacturing, and service industries.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

WG.11C Assess how changes in climate, resources, and infrastructure (technology, transportation, and communication) affect the location and patterns of economic activities.

WG.18A Analyze cultural changes in specific regions caused by migration, war, trade, innovations, and diffusion.

WG.18C Identify examples of cultures that maintain traditional ways, including traditional economies.

WG.18D Evaluate the spread of cultural traits to find examples of cultural convergence and divergence such as the spread of democratic ideas, US-based fast-food franchises, the English langue, technology, or global sports.

WG.21A Analyze and evaluate the validity and utility of multiple sources of geographic information such as primary and secondary sources, aerial photographs, and maps.

WG.21C Create and interpret different types of maps to answer geographic questions, infer relationships, and analyze change.

WG.22A Design and draw appropriate graphics such as maps, diagrams tables, and graphs to communicate geographic features, distributions, and relationships.

WG.22B Generate summaries, generalizations, and thesis statements supported by evidence.

WG.22E Create original work using proper citations and understanding and avoiding plagiarism.

TEKS and ELPS for Regional World Geography Unit 11--Oceania from TEKS Resource System.

The Pacific Islands

Introducing the Realm

The Pacific realm is home to many islands and island groups. The largest island is New Guinea, which is home to most of the realm's population. Many of the Pacific islands have become independent countries, while others remain under the authority of other countries. The Pacific Theater of World War II was a battleground between the Japanese and American forces and had an impact on many of the islands. The Hawaiian Islands became the 50th US state in 1959.

The many islands can be divided into three main groups based on physical geography, local inhabitants, and location: Melanesia, Micronesia, and Polynesia. Indigenous cultural heritage remains strong in the South Pacific, but Western culture has made deep inroads into people's lives. The globalization process bears heavily on the economic conditions that influence the cultural dynamics of the Pacific.

Islands or island groups that remain under outside political jurisdiction are the most influenced by European or American cultural forces. Western trends in fast food, pop music, clothing styles, and social customs often dominate television, radio, and the cinema. Western culture takes the focus away from the traditional indigenous culture and heritage of the people who inhabited these isolated islands for centuries.

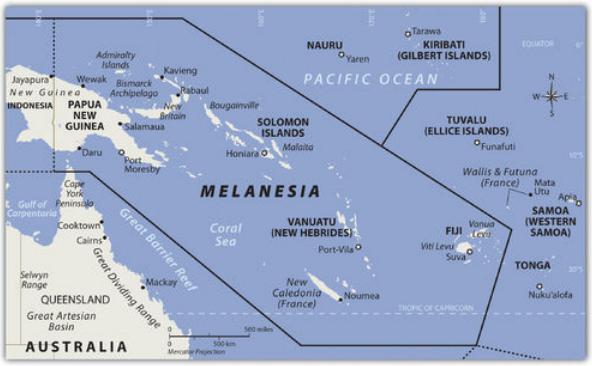
Traditionally, the islands were economically self-sufficient. Fishing and growing crops were the main economic activities, and nearby islands often established trade and exchanged natural resources. Fishing has been one of the most common ways of supporting the economy. There have been changes in the national boundaries to protect offshore fishing rights around each sovereign entity. Many waters have been overfished, consequently reducing the islands' ability to provide food for their people or to gain national wealth. An increase in population and the introduction of modern technologies has brought about a dependency on the world's core areas for economic support.

The Pacific is a peripheral realm with little to offer to the core areas economically. In recent decades, some national wealth has been gained from the mining of substances as phosphates on a few of the islands. The main resources available are a pleasant climate, beautiful beaches, and tropical island terrain, all of which can be attractive to tourists and people from other places.

Tourism is a growing sector of the service industry and a major means of gaining wealth for various island groups. To attract tourism, the islands must invest in the necessary infrastructure, such as airports, hotels, and supporting services. Long distances between islands and remote locations make tourism transportation expensive. Not every island has the funding to support these expenditures to draw tourists to their location.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

Melanesia



Map of Melanesia

The region of the Pacific north of Australia that borders Indonesia to the east is called *Melanesia*. The name originally referred to people with darker skin but does not adequately describe the region's current ethnic diversity. The main island groups include Fiji, New Caledonia, Vanuatu, the Solomon Islands, and Papua New Guinea. All are independent countries except New Caledonia, which is under the French government. The island of New Guinea is shared between Papua New Guinea and Indonesia. Many islands on the eastern side of Indonesia share similar characteristics but are not generally included in the region of Melanesia.

Independent Countries of Melanesia

- Fiji
- Papua New Guinea
- Solomon Islands
- vanuatu

Other Island Groups

- New Caledonia (*France*)

Papua New Guinea



Map of Papua New Guinea

Papua New Guinea is the largest country in the Pacific realm and therefore the largest in Melanesia. It is diverse in both physical terrain and human geography. The high mountains of the interior reach 14,793 feet. Snow has been known to fall in the higher elevations even though they are located near the equator. Many local groups inhabit the island, and more than 700 separate languages are spoken, more than in any other country in the world. Indigenous traditions create strong centripetal forces. Papua New Guinea received independence in 1975 and is working toward fitting into the global community.

https://k12.libretexts.org/@go/page/1986



The New Guinea Highlands, also known as the Central Range or Central Cordillera, is a chain of mountain ranges and intermountain river valleys on Papua New Guinea.

Papua New Guinea is a diverse country that still has many mysteries to be revealed in its little-explored interior. The country's large physical area provides greater opportunities for the exploitation of natural resources for economic gain. The interior of the island has large areas that have not been exploited by large-scale development projects. In the past few decades, oil was discovered and makes up its largest export item. Gold, copper, silver, and other minerals are being extracted in extensive mining operations, often by outside multinational corporations. Subsistence agriculture is the main economic activity of most of the people. Coffee and cocoa are examples of agricultural exports.



The Ok Tedi Mine is an open-pit copper and gold mine in Papua New Guinea.

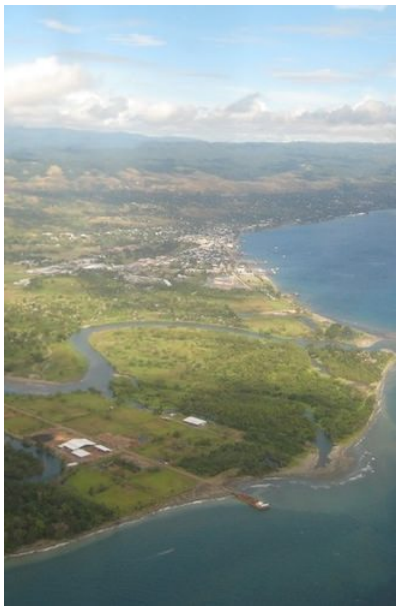
A number of islands off Papua New Guinea's eastern coast—including Bougainville—have valuable mineral deposits. Bougainville and the islands under its jurisdiction are physically a part of the Solomon Island archipelago but are politically an autonomous region of Papua New Guinea. Volcanic vents deep under the sea continue to bring hot magma and minerals to the surface of the ocean floor, creating valuable resources. Papua New Guinea has laid claim to these islands and the underwater resources within their maritime boundaries. Rebel movements have pushed for the independence of the Autonomous Region of Bougainville but have been unsuccessful. The islands remain under the government of Papua New Guinea.



Map of the Solomon Islands

To the east of the island of Guinea are the Solomon Islands, a group of more than 1,000 islands. About 80 of them hold most of the population of more than one-half of a million people. The island of Guadalcanal was the site of some of the fiercest fighting in World War II between Japan and the United States. Honiara, the capital city, is on Guadalcanal.

The Solomon Islands were a colony of Great Britain but gained independence in 1978. Colonialism, World War II, and ethnic conflict on the islands created serious centrifugal cultural forces, divisions, and political tensions over the past few decades. In 2003, military and police troops from other islands and Australia intervened to restore order after ethnic tension erupted into civil unrest.



Honiara is the capital city of the Solomon Islands on the northwestern coast of Guadalcanal.

Shifting tectonic plates are the source of environmental problems. Active seismic activity has created earthquakes and tsunami conditions that have brought devastation to the region. An earthquake of 8.1 magnitude hit the Solomon Islands in 2007, bringing high waves and many aftershocks. The tsunami killed at least 52 people, and as many as 1,000 homes were destroyed. The islands contain several active and dormant volcanoes. Tropical rain forests cover a number of the islands and are home to rare orchids and other organisms. There is a concern that these resources might be harmed by deforestation and the exploitation of resources for economic gain.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org



Map of Vanuatu

The country of Vanuatu was inhabited by a large number of South Pacific groups. As a result, many languages are spoken within a relatively small population. The French and the British both colonized the island archipelago. It was called the New Hebrides before independence in 1980 when the name was changed to Vanuatu. These small volcanic islands have an active volcano and have experienced earthquakes in recent years. One of Vanuatu's means of bringing in business has been to establish offshore banking and financial services, similar to what is found in the Caribbean. Many shipping firms register their ships there because of the advantages of lower taxes and flexible labor laws.



A women's dance from Vanuatu, using bamboo stamping tubes.

https://k12.libretexts.org/@go/page/1986

New Caledonia



Map of New Caledonia

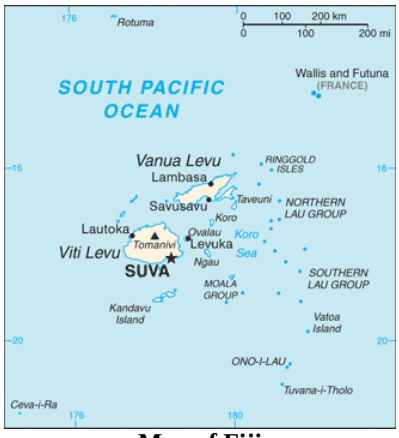
New Caledonia is still a colony of France and was once a French prison colony. Under a current agreement, sovereignty is slowly being turned over to the local island government. Periodic reevaluations of the local government will be conducted to see if independence can be granted.

New Caledonia has historically relied on subsistence agriculture and fishing for its livelihood. About 25 percent of the world's known nickel resources are located here. Nickel resources will substantially affect the economy, bring in foreign investments, and raise the standard of living.



A creek in southern New Caledonia. Red colors reveal the richness of the ground in iron oxides and nickel.

Fiji



Map of Fiji

Fiji is located in the eastern sector of Melanesia and has almost one million people. The country includes more than 100 inhabitable islands, but two are home to most of the population. Colonialism heavily impacted the population's ethnic makeup. During British

colonial rule, thousands of workers from South Asia were brought in by the British to work on the sugar plantations. After a century of British rule, Fiji became independent in 1970.

The people of South Asian descent remained in Fiji and now make up more than one-third of the population. Ethnic conflicts erupted on the political scene between the Melanesian majority and the South Asian minority. Political coups and coalition governments have attempted to work out political solutions with limited success. Fiji is well developed and has a substantial tourism industry that increases the income of the island.



Several bures (one-room Fijian houses) in the village of Navala in the Nausori Highlands.

Micronesia



Map of Micronesia

North of the Solomon Islands and Papua New Guinea is the large region of Micronesia. The “micro” portion of the name refers to the fact that the islands are small in size—often only one square mile or so in physical area. The region has more than 2,000 islands. Most of the islands are composed of coral and do not extend above sea level to any large extent. These low islands dominate the high islands. The high islands are usually of volcanic origin and reach elevations in the thousands of feet.

Guam



Map of Guam

https://k12.libretexts.org/@go/page/1986

The largest island in Micronesia is Guam. It is only 210 square miles in area and reaches an elevation of 1,335 feet at its highest point. Coral reefs surround Guam's volcanic center. Guam is not an independent country but a US possession. The island was a strategic location during World War II, and the United States has major military installations located on the island.



The War in the Pacific National Historical Park is a protected area in the United States territory of Guam.

Northern Mariana Islands



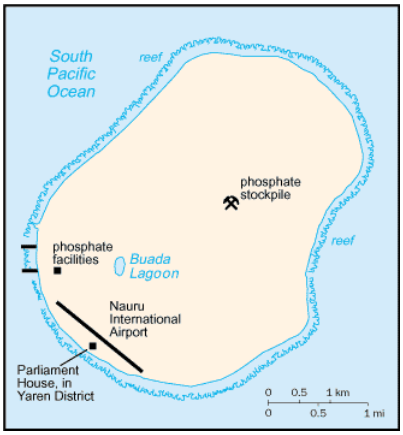
Map of Northern Mariana Islands

The Northern Mariana Islands are next to Guam and are current US possessions, along with Wake Island in the northeast. The US administers the United Nations Trust Territory of the Federated States of Micronesia. Implemented in 1986 and renewed again in 2004, the islands entered into the Compact of Free Association with the United States and established an independent status.



The Northern Mariana Islands, officially the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands is an insular area and commonwealth of the United States.

Nauru



Map of Nauru

The independent island country of Nauru is only about eight square miles in physical area, but its large phosphate deposits created enormous wealth for its small population. Once the phosphates had been mined, however, there were little means to gain wealth on such a small island with a devastated landscape. Many on Nauru are trying to live off the investments from their mining wealth or have moved to find a livelihood elsewhere.



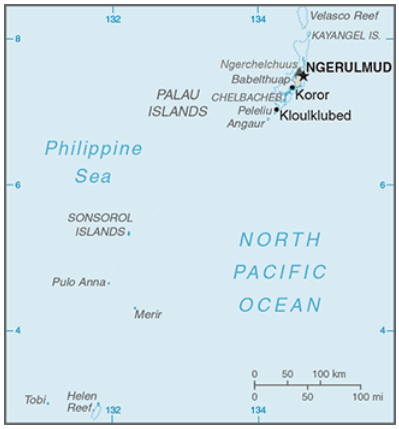
Nauru has no armed forces, though there is a small police force under civilian control.

Independent Countries of Micronesia

- Federated States of Micronesia
- Kiribati (Western)
- Marshall Islands
- Nauru
- Palau

Other Island Groups

- Guam (US)
- Gilbert Islands (Kiribati)
- Northern Mariana Islands (US)
- Wake Island (US)



Map of Palau

Palau, located in western Micronesia, has a population of about 21,000 people and an area of about 177 square miles. Its early inhabitants included people from Asia and from the Pacific realm. British explorers arrived early on the island, but Spain dominated it during the colonial era. After losing the Spanish-American War, Spain sold the island to Germany, which implemented mining operations on the island.



Palauan society follows a very strict matrilineal system.

After its defeat in World War I, Germany lost the island to Japan. Japan used it as a strategic outpost but was defeated in World War II and had to give up all its external possessions. After 1945, Palau was held by the United States and the United Nations. In 1994, the island opted for independence and retained an agreement of free association with the United States. The United States has held strategic military installations on Palau and other islands in Micronesia. Palau's economic and geopolitical dynamics are highly reflective of US activities in the region.



Palau's territory consists of an archipelago located in the Pacific Ocean. Its most populous islands are Angaur, Babeldaob, Koror, and Peleliu.

LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org



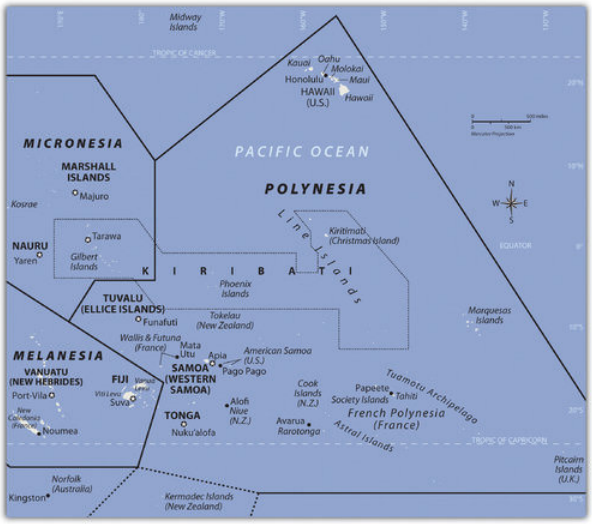
Map of Marshall Islands

Marshall Islands**,** on the eastern side of Micronesia, experienced serious devastation from the conflict between Japan and the United States during World War II. The Marshall Islands became a testing ground for US nuclear weapons. Atomic bombs were tested on various atolls, rendering them uninhabitable. An atoll is a coral island that surrounds a lagoon.



The nuclear testing at Bikini Atoll program was a series of 23 nuclear devices detonated by the United States between 1946 and 1958.

From 1946 to 1958, the United States conducted 67 atmospheric nuclear tests in the Marshall Islands. The largest was known as the Bravo test, which included the detonation of a nuclear device over Bikini Atoll that was 1,000 times more powerful than the atomic bomb dropped on Hiroshima during World War II. There are concerns about radioactive fallout that may still affect the people who inhabit nearby atolls. The Marshall Islands were granted independence in 1986 with an agreement with the United States to provide aid and protection in exchange for the use of US military bases on the islands.



The region of Polynesia has island groups that are high islands with mountainous interiors.

The largest region of the Pacific is Polynesia, a land of many island groups with large distances between them. The root word *poly* means “many.” Numerous groups of islands have come together under separate political arrangements. The region includes the Hawaiian Islands in the north and the Pitcairn Islands and Easter Island to the east. New Zealand is now studied as a part of the Austral realm, but the Maori living there are originally from Polynesia.

Polynesia has a mixture of island types ranging from the high mountains of Hawaii, which are more than 13,800 feet, to low-lying coral atolls that are only a few feet above sea level. Islands that have enough elevation to condense moisture from the clouds receive adequate precipitation, but many islands with low elevations have a shortage of fresh water, making habitation or human development difficult.

Polynesian culture stems from island resources. Fishing, farming, and an understanding of the seas created a way of life that gave Polynesia its identity. Polynesians created innovative maps that provided a means of sailing across large expanses of open seas to connect with distant islands. Their lifestyle revolved around natural resources and the creative use of natural materials. Polynesian art, music, and language reflect a diversity of cultural trends derived from a common heritage. The warm climate and beautiful islands contrast with violent destructive storms and a lack of fresh water or resources, which can make life difficult.

Independent Countries of Polynesia

- Kiribati (eastern)
- Samoa
- Tonga
- Tuvalu

Main Island Possessions

- American Samoa (US)
- Cook Islands (NZ)
- Hawaiian Islands (US)
- Pitcairn Islands (UK)
- French Polynesia (FR)
- Austral Islands
- The Marquesas
- Society Islands and Tahiti
- Tuamotu Islands

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

Hawaii

Island	Nickname	Area	Population (as of 2010)	Highest point	Elevation	Location
Hawaii	The Big Island	4,028.0 sq mi (10,432.5 km^2)	185,079	White Mountain	13,796 ft (4,205 m)	19°34′N 155°30′W / 19.567°N 155.500°W
Maui	The Valley Isle	727.2 sq mi (1,883.4 km^2)	144,444	House Of The Sun	10,023 ft (3,055 m)	20°48′N 156°20′W / 20.800°N 156.333°W
O'ahu	The Gathering Place	596.7 sq mi (1,545.4 km^2)	953,207	Mount Ka'ala	4,003 ft (1,220 m)	21°28′N 157°59′W / 21.467°N 157.983°W
Kaua'i	The Garden Isle	552.3 sq mi (1,430.5 km^2)	66,921	Kawaikini	5,243 ft (1,598 m)	22°05′N 159°30′W / 22.083°N 159.500°W
Moloka'i	The Friendly Isle	260.0 sq mi (673.4 km^2)	7,345	Kamakou	4,961 ft (1,512 m)	21°08′N 157°02′W / 21.133°N 157.033°W
Lāna'i	The Pineapple Isle	140.5 sq mi (363.9 km^2)	3,135	Lāna'ihale	3,366 ft (1,026 m)	20°50′N 156°56′W / 20.833°N 156.933°W
Ni'ihau	The Forbidden Isle	69.5 sq mi (180.0 km^2)	170	Mount Pānī'au	1,250 ft (381 m)	21°54′N 160°10′W / 21.900°N 160.167°W
Kaho'olawe	The Target Isle	44.6 sq mi (115.5 km^2)	0	Commonwealth	1,483 ft (452 m)	20°33′N 156°36′W

Source

At the beginning of the 21st century, Polynesia only had four independent island groups: Kiribati, Samoa, Tonga, and Tuvalu. The rest of the many islands and island groups in Polynesia are claimed by or under the control or jurisdiction of other countries: mainly the United States, France, Great Britain, or New Zealand.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

Hawaii was a sovereign and independent kingdom from 1810 to 1893, when the monarchy was overthrown and the islands became a republic that was annexed as a US territory. Hawaii became the 50th US state in 1959. Hawaii's development pattern is modern, based on tourism from the continental United States and the US military base on Pearl Harbor.

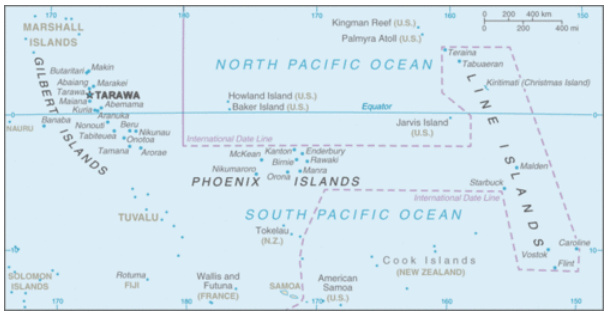
According to the US Census, Hawaii had a population of over 1.4 million in 2017. More than one-third of the people are of Asian descent, and at least 10 percent are native Hawaiians or Pacific Islanders. The United States has a number of additional possessions in Polynesia that include various small islands, atolls, or uninhabited reefs.

The Hawaiian Islands include more islands than the few usually listed in tourist brochures. Approximately 137 islands and atolls are in the Hawaiian chain, which extends about 1,500 miles. Hawaii is one of the most remote island groups in the Pacific. The islands of the Hawaiian archipelago are a product of volcanic activity from an undersea magma source called a hotspot, which remains stationary as the tectonic plate over it continues to shift creating new volcanoes.

Mount Kilauea, an active volcano on Hawaii, the largest island in the Hawaiian chain, is considered by geologists to be one of the most active volcanoes in the world. The active volcano of Mauna Loa and two dormant volcanoes, Mauna Kea and Hualālai, are on the same island. Mauna Kea is Hawaii's tallest mountain at 13,796 feet above sea level, which is taller than Mount Everest if measured from its base on the ocean floor.

Hawaii, like most islands of the Pacific realm, has a tropical type A climate, but snow can be found on the tops of its highest mountains during the winter months. The island of Kauai receives more than 460 inches of rain per year and is one of the wettest places on Earth. The rain shadow effect created by Mount Waialeale is the reason for the high level of precipitation. All the rain falls on the windward side of the mountain, creating a rain shadow on the leeward side of the mountain, which is a semi-desert.

Kiribati



Map of Kiribati

Kiribati includes three sets of islands located in both Micronesia and Polynesia. The main component of Kiribati is the Gilbert Island chain in Micronesia, where the capital city and most of the population are located. The other two minor island chains are the Phoenix Islands and the Line Islands in Polynesia. Both island chains were US possessions before being annexed with the Gilbert Islands to become Kiribati.

The Line Islands were used for testing of British hydrogen bombs starting in 1957. Three atmospheric nuclear tests were conducted by the British on Malden Island, and six were conducted on Christmas Island. There is concern about how radiation affected people present during the tests and thereafter. The Phoenix Islands have few inhabitants. In 2008, Kiribati declared the entire island group a protected environmental area, which made it the largest protected marine habitat in the world. Kiribati is the only country with land in all four hemispheres: north and south of the equator and on both sides of the 180° meridian.



Map of Samoa

After the colonial era, Samoa was divided into Western Samoa and Eastern Samoa. The United States controlled the eastern islands, which are referred to as American Samoa. Before World War I, Germany gained control of the larger, more extensive western islands only to lose them to New Zealand after the war. Western Samoa was under the New Zealand government until 1962, when it gained independence. The name was officially changed from Western Samoa to Samoa in 1997.

The Samoan Islands are volcanic, and the most active volcano last erupted in 1906. In Samoa, three-quarters of more than 200,000 people live on the larger of the two main islands. Colonialism has had a major impact on the culture, especially in the case of religion. Christianity became widespread once it was introduced and is now the religion of about 99 percent of the population.



Samoa lies south of the equator, about halfway between Hawaii and New Zealand.

American music and societal trends are also a major influence on the islands because of migration between Hawaii and the US mainland. Many Samoans have moved to the United States and established communities. Cultural traditions have been preserved and are often integrated into modern society. Samoa has some of the oldest history and traditions of Polynesia.

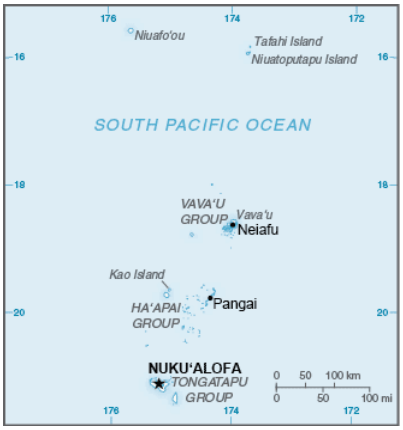
For many years, the United States has held an extensive naval station in the bay of Pago Pago on American Samoa. During World War II, there were more US military personnel on the islands than Samoans. American Samoa became a key military post for the United States. American Samoa remains a US possession. However, Samoans are not US citizens unless one of their parents is a US citizen.

https://k12.libretexts.org/@go/page/1986



92.6% of the population are Samoans, 7 percent Euronesians (people of mixed European and Polynesian ancestry) and 0.4 percent are Europeans, per the CIA World Factbook.

Tonga



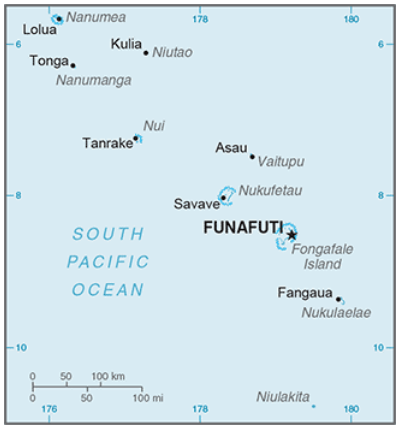
Map of Tonga

South of Samoa is an archipelago that is home to the Kingdom of Tonga. Only about 36 of the 169 islands are inhabited by a total population of about 106,000 people. Tonga is ruled by a monarchy that never lost its governance powers throughout the colonial era. Tonga is the only monarchy in the Pacific. The two main methods of gaining wealth are by remittances from citizens working abroad and tourism.



The ula (dance) is an ancient Tongan group dance, already reported by early European navigators like Captain Cook.

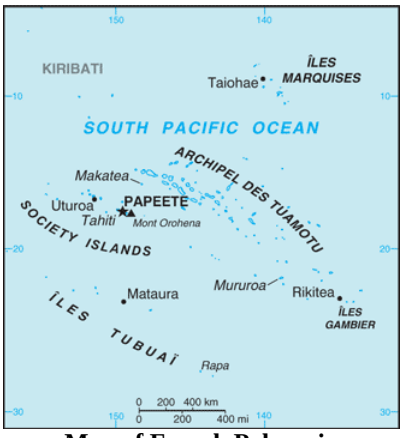
Tuvalu



Map of Tuvalu

The island nation of Tuvalu comprises four reef islands and five atolls for a total land area of about 10 square miles. In 2017, it had a population of about 11,000 people. These statistics indicate that Tuvalu is one of the four smallest countries in the world. Nauru is only about eight square miles in area. Only the Vatican and Monaco are smaller. The low elevation of the islands of Tuvalu make them susceptible to damage from rising sea levels. The highest point is only 15 feet in elevation. Any increase in ocean levels as a result of climate change could threaten the existence of this country.

French Polynesia



Map of French Polynesia

The South Pacific is home to many islands and island groups that are not independent countries. The biggest and most significant group in the southern region is French Polynesia. France colonized a large number of islands in the South Pacific and has continued to hold them in its control or possession as external departments or colonies.

In western Polynesia, the French maintain control over the islands of Wallis and Futuna. French Polynesia consists of four main island groups: the Society Islands, the Austral Islands, the Tuamotu Islands, and the Marquesas. There are around 130 islands in French Polynesia, and many are too small or lack resources to be inhabited.



The only ways to get to the islands are by aircraft or by ship. Transportation costs can be high for imported goods or for tourism development.

Tahiti, located in the Society Islands, is the central hub of French Polynesia. Papeete is the capital and main city with a population of almost 30,000 people. Tahiti is a major tourist destination with a mild climate that stays at 75 °F to 85 °F year-round and receives adequate rainfall to sustain tropical forests. Most of the people live along the coastal areas. The interior is almost uninhabited. The Society Islands include the island of Bora Bora, which is considered by many to be a tropical paradise and one of the most exotic tourist destinations in the world.



Bora Bora is a world-class tourist destination catering to the international traveler.

The volcanic Marquesas Islands to the northeast are the second-most remote islands in the world after the Hawaiian Islands. The weather pattern in the Pacific does not bring enormous amounts of precipitation to the Marquesas, a reality that restricts human expansion in the archipelago. The higher elevations in the mountains—the highest is 4,035 feet—draw some precipitation from the rain shadow effect, giving rise to lush rain forests on portions of the islands.

With less than 10,000 people, the Marquesas do not have a large population to support and rely on financial support from outside to sustain them. French painter Paul Gauguin is buried there, and the islands are remembered as his home during the last years of his life.

The Austral Islands are the southernmost group of islands in French Polynesia and are home to only about 6,500 people. French Polynesia also includes the Tuamotu Archipelago, between the Society Islands and the Marquesas, which comprises about 75 atolls and an uncounted number of coral reefs that extend for about 900 miles. The islands have a population of fewer than 20,000 people. The main economic activity is the cultivation of black pearls and coconuts.

The French government used islands in the Tuamotu Archipelago as test sites for nuclear weapons. From 1966 to 1974, the French tested 41 atomic devices above ground in the atmosphere, and from 1974 to 1996, they tested 137 atomic devices below ground. Radiation concerns are the same here as they are on the Marshall Islands, where the United States tested atomic weapons.

Scientific testing monitored by the World Health Organization has determined the humans living closest to the atolls are not presently in danger of radioactive materials either in the environment or in their food supply. The long-term effects of underground

tests continue to be monitored.

The Pitcairn Islands, Easter Island, and the Cook Islands

To the east of French Polynesia are the four Pitcairn Islands, controlled by Great Britain. The main island, Pitcairn, is the only inhabited island in this chain and is one of the least inhabited islands in the world; the total population is fewer than 50 people. Mutineers from the HMS *Bounty* escaped to Pitcairn in 1790 after taking various Tahitians with them.

Even farther east than Pitcairn, on the edge of Polynesia, is Easter Island. Now under the government of Chile, Easter Island was historically inhabited by Polynesians who built large stone heads that remain somewhat of a mystery. At the center of Polynesia are the 15 small Cook Islands, which are controlled by New Zealand and are home to about 20,000 people, many of whom claim Maori ethnicity.

Key Takeaways

- Melanesia includes the islands from Papua New Guinea to Fiji. Micronesia includes small islands located north of Melanesia. Polynesia includes island groups from the Hawaiian Islands to the Pitcairn Islands. Papua New Guinea is the largest country in the Pacific, approximately seven hundred languages are spoken by the many local groups that live there.
- Low islands in this region are usually composed of coral and low in elevation. High islands are usually volcanic in origin and mountainous with high elevations. Micronesia consists mainly of low islands, while Polynesia consists of many high islands, such as Hawaii.
- Tourism is the main economic activity in the Pacific, but minerals and fossil fuels provide some islands with additional wealth. Fishing and subsistence agriculture have been the traditional livelihoods. Offshore banking has also been established in the region.
- The United States, the United Kingdom, and France used various islands for nuclear testing. Radiation fallout continues to be an environmental concern. Typhoons, tsunamis, volcanic activity, earthquakes, and flooding create devastation on the islands. Fresh water can be a valuable resource, as it is in short supply on many islands.

Vocabulary Terms

Chapter 11.4 The Pacific Islands

archipelago	A series of groups of island chains
atoll	A ring-like coral island or string of small islands surrounding a lagoon
Bikini Atoll	The isolated reef, located in the Marshall Islands of the Central Pacific, that was the site of US nuclear bomb tests, consequently contaminating the atoll with high levels or radiation and riving its inhabitants away
Guadalcanal	Principal island in the Solomon Islands that was the sight of vicious fighting between the American's and Japanese during WWII
high islands	these islands are generally young, homogenous, multiple (altitudinal) environmental zones. Poor in some resources (rock). Many have wet (windward) and dry (leeward) sides with distinct environments
Liliuokalani	The queen and last sovereign ruler of Hawaii until it was annexed by the United States
low islands	Pacific islands made out of coral reefs
Melanesia	A region in Oceania means "black island"
Micronesia	One of three regions in Oceania, meaning "tiny islands"
Oceania	The group of islands in the Pacific, including Melanesia, Micronesia, and Polynesia
ozone depletion	The wearing out or reduction of the earth's Ozone or Stratosphere
Polynesia	Islands of the central and southern Pacific

Applying Knowledge

Interactive Notebook Activities

1. List the three main areas of the South Pacific.
2. Explain the difference between low islands and high islands.
3. List which islands remain under the control of France, the United Kingdom, New Zealand, or the United States.
4. Describe the primary economic activities of the islands in the realm.
5. Summarize the main environmental concerns of the islands in each region.

Discussion and Study Questions

1. What are the three main regions of islands in the Pacific? What island nations belong to each?
2. What are the traditional methods of making a living on the Pacific islands?
3. What is the difference between a low island and a high island? Give examples of each.
4. Why are so many islands in the Pacific governed by the United States?
5. Name three major environmental concerns of these islands.
6. What has been a growing sector of the economy for many of the Pacific islands?
7. Which island group is the largest protected environmental marine habitat in the world?
8. What islands did the United States, Great Britain, and France use for testing nuclear weapons?
9. On which island are more than seven hundred separate languages spoken? Why are so many languages spoken?

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

10. What main factors have determined the economic activities of the Pacific?

Real-World Geography Exercise

1. Using Google Maps, complete the following activities:
   a. Locate each place on the bulleted list below.
   b. Find the nearest city with an international airport in proximity to each location on the bulleted list below.
   c. Calculate the distance and travel time by plane to each city from the Daniel K. Inouye International Airport in Honolulu, Hawaii.
2. Using NASA Latitude and Longitude Finder, determine the latitude and longitude for each location on the bulleted list below.
3. Be prepared to share and discuss your answers.

- American Samoa
- Austral Islands
- Bora Bora
- Cook Islands
- Easter Island
- Fiji
- French Polynesia
- Gilbert Islands
- Guadalcanal
- Guam
- Hawaiian Islands
- Kiribati
- Marquesas
- Marshall Islands
- Melanesia
- Micronesia
- Nauru
- Northern Mariana Islands
- Palau
- Papua New Guinea
- Pitcairn Islands
- Polynesia
- Samoa
- Society Islands
- Solomon Islands
- Tahiti
- Tonga
- Tuamotu Islands
- Tuvalu
- Vanuatu
- Wake Island
- Western Samoa

Current Events

Geography Education Scoop It

DNA Data Offer Evidence Of Unknown Extinct Human Relative; Melanesians Carry Genetic Clues To Hominid Not Revealed By Fossils

5 Reasons Why Educational Laptops Were Doomed in Papua New Guinea

- Tree-Dwelling, Coconut-Cracking Giant Rat Discovered In Solomon Islands
- Dengue In Vanuatu: More Than 200 Cases In 2019 To Date
- New Caledonian Crows Smart Enough To Plan Three Steps Ahead To Solve Tricky Problem
- Paradise In Fiji
- Micronesian Culture Is Part Of My American Culture
- Tiny Pacific Island Finds Itself In The Crosshairs Of North Korea. Why Guam?
- Aerial Photos Show WWII Wrecks In Watery Graves Off Remote Pacific Ocean Tropical Islands
- Lawmaker in Island Nation of Nauru Wants To Make It Illegal To Be Gay—Again: VIDEO
- Sea Level Rise Is Already Driving People From The Marshall Islands
- New Research Predicts The Future Of Coral Reefs Under Climate Change
- Volcano Eruptions Have Deep Origins

Videos for Geography Enrichment



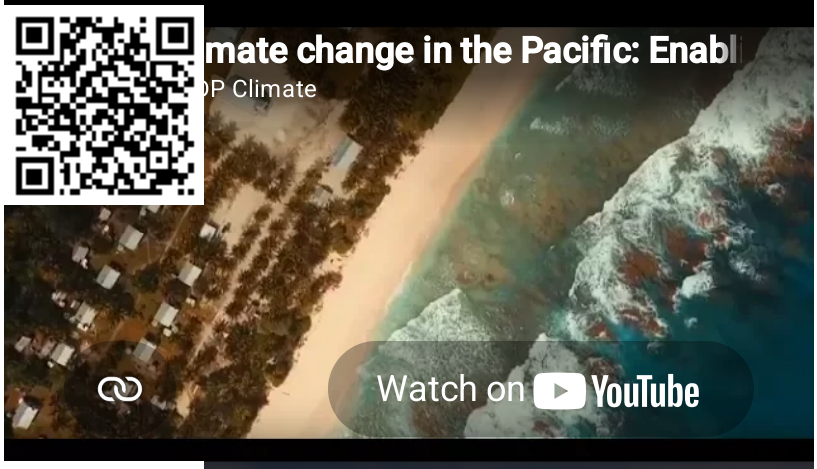



omen of Papua New Guinea: Yeste
menPapuaNewGuinea
Watch on YouTube


nuatu's Broken Dreams
Dateline
an
Australian ...
Broken
Dreams
Watch on YouTube

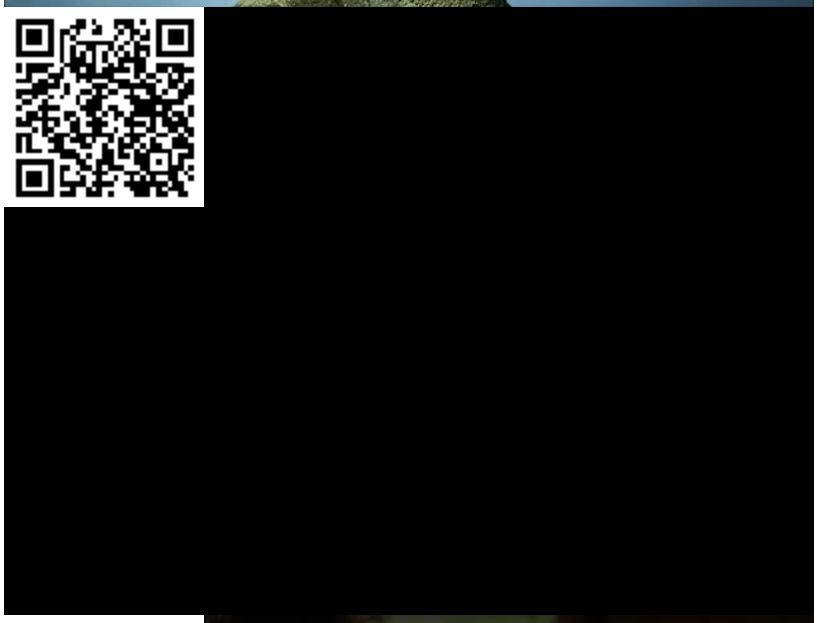

story of Micronesia 1 - Part01
onesianSeminar
Watch on YouTube


'uokalani -- Hawaii's Last Queen (
aiiView
Watch on YouTube


mate change in the Pacific: Enabl
P Climate
Watch on YouTube


plore the South Pacific & French P
GeoExpeditions
SOUTH PACIFIC &
FRENCH POLYNESIA
Watch on YouTube


w Were Easter Island's Gigantic St
thsonian Channel
Watch on YouTube




S in Paradise. Solomon Islands—t
ld Bank Group
Watch on YouTube



Helpful Websites for the Study of Geography

Canadian Encyclopedia is an encyclopedia funded by the Canadian government covering all branches of knowledge. Their scholarly collection includes interactive materials.

CIA World Factbook provides information on the people, history, government, economy, energy, geography, communications, transportation, military, and transnational issues for the world's entities.

Congress.gov is a US government website where you can find federal legislation, past and present, as well as information about the US legal system.

Drug Enforcement Administration (DEA) is a government agency website that provides current news, resources, topics of interest, information about drugs, careers in the DEA, and a tip hotline.

Library of Congress is the largest library in the world and provides manuscripts, files, information, pictures, and videos.

NASA Earth Observatory (NEO) is a US government agency website that allows users to search for and retrieve satellite images of Earth.

National Archives is a US government website that provides historical documents, photos, records, publications, and educator resources.

National Oceanic and Atmospheric Association (NOAA) is a US government agency website that provides weather-related information and ocean research.

National Map is a website by the United States Geological Survey and other federal, state, and local agencies that delivers topographic information for the United States.

NationMaster is a massive central data source and a handy way to graphically compare nations.

Real-Time World Air Quality Index is a website that measures most locations in the world for air pollution in real time.

StateMaster is a unique statistical database which allows you to research and compare a multitude of different data on US states.

United Nations (UN) is an international organization founded in 1945 and made up of 193 member states. The UN maintains international peace and security, protects human rights, delivers humanitarian aid, promotes sustainable development, and upholds international law.

United States Census Bureau is a US government agency that provides a population clock, data, surveys, statistics, a library with information and infographics, news about the economy, and much more.

United States Geological Survey (USGS) is a US government agency website that provides scientific information about the natural hazards that threaten lives, the natural resources we rely on, the health of our ecosystems and environment, and the impacts of climate and land-use change.

Whitehouse.gov is a US government website that provides the latest presidential news, information about the budget, policy, defense, and many more topics.

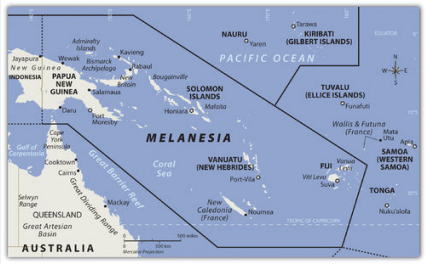
World Health Organization (WHO) is under the United Nations and provides leadership on matters critical to health, shapes the research agenda on health, and monitors the health situation and assessing health trends around the world. Their website provides information on the state of health around the world, outbreaks, current health news, and more.

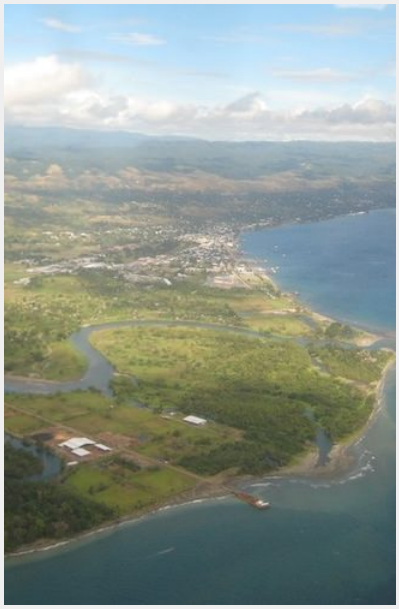
LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

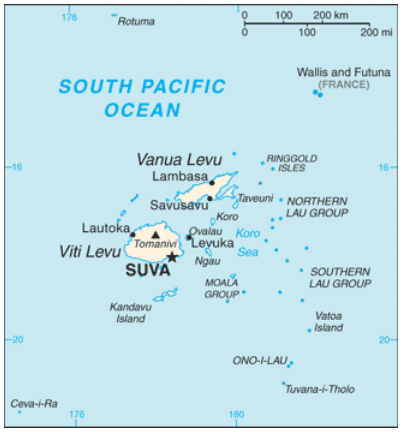
World Trade Organization (WTO) is an intergovernmental organization that regulates international trade. The website provides

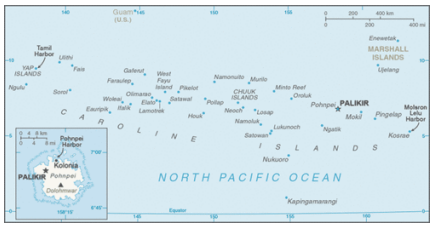
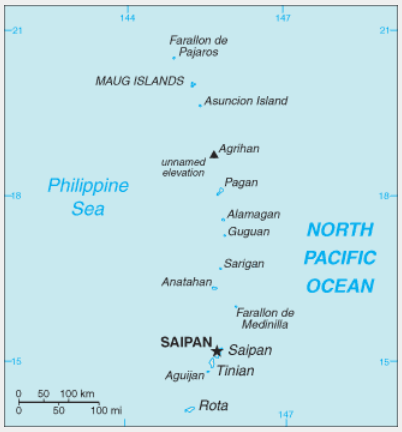
https://k12.libretexts.org/@go/page/1986

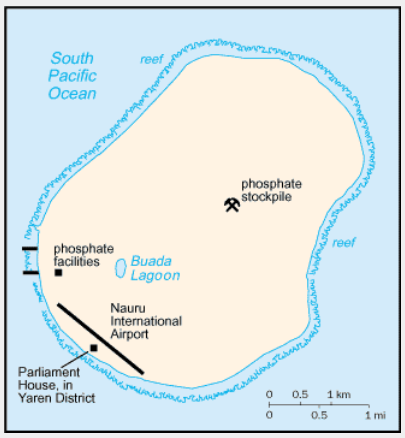
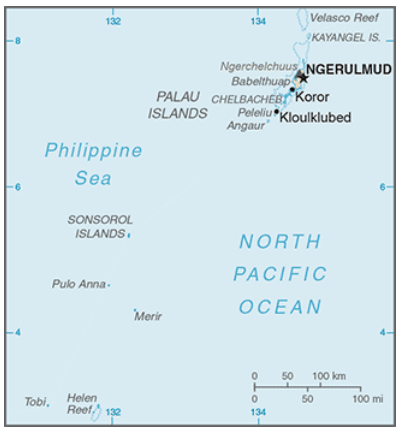
information on the history of the multilateral trading system, featured videos, news and events, trade topics, and more.

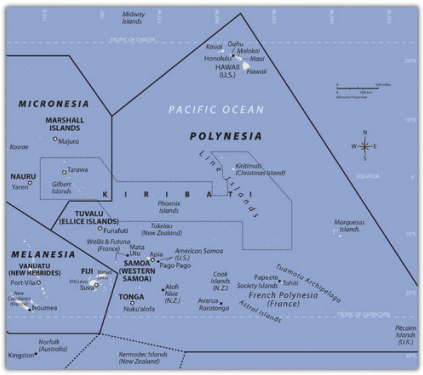
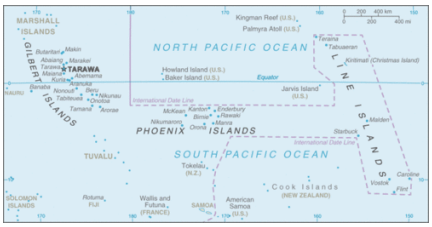
Image	Reference	Attributions
	[Figure 1]	**Credit:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeograp...cific-islands/ **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/008dd4de1a47f143f3adbbed324e48e5.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 2]	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/pp.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 4]	**Credit:** Ok Tedi Mine CMCA Review [Attribution], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:OkTediMine.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 5]	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/bp.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

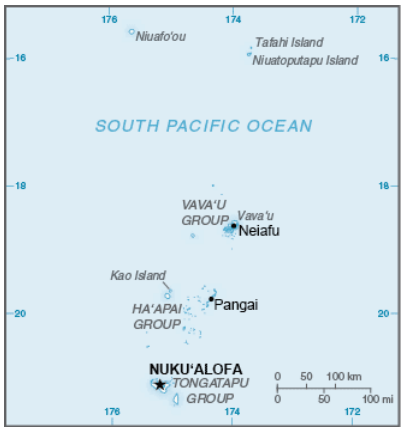
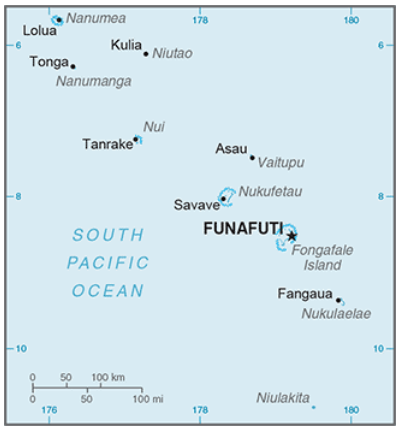
	[Figure 6]	**Credit:** By Xploredive cropped by Dr. Blofeld (Flickr) [CC BY 2.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/2.0)], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Honiara_aerial_crop.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 7]	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/nh.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 8]	**Credit:** Graham Crumb/Imagicity.com [CC BY-SA 3.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0)], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Vanuatu-humans-of-vanuatu-2.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

	[Figure 9]	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/nc.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 10]	**Credit:** By Bananaflo [GFDL (http://www.gnu.org/copyleft/fdl.html), CC-BY-SA-3.0 (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0/) or CC BY 2.5 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/2.5)], from Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Creek_South_New_Caledonia.JPG **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 11]	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/fj.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 12]	**Credit:** By No machine-readable author provided. Merbabu~commonswiki assumed (based on copyright claims). [GFDL (http://www.gnu.org/copyleft/fdl.html), CC-BY-SA-3.0 (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0/) or CC BY-SA 2.5 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/2.5)], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:BureNavala2.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

	[Figure 13]	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/fm.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 14]	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/gq.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 15]	**Credit:** By English: US Department of the Interior, Office of Insular Affairs Japanese: United States Department of the Interior [Public domain], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:War_in_the_Pacific_National_Historical_Park.jpg **License :** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 16]	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/cq.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 17]	**Credit:** By P. Miller, (Pdmiller) [Public domain], from Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Saipan.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

	[Figure 18]	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/nr.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 20]	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/ps.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 23]	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/rm.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 24]	**Credit:** By Ron Van Oers [CC BY-SA 3.0-igo (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0-igo)], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Bikini_Atoll_Nuclear_Test_Site-115017.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

	[Figure 25]	**Credit:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeograp...cific-islands/ **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/c5cb584fd59af5ba35809d86cf402deb.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 26]	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/resources/the-world-factbook/geos/kr.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 27]	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/resources/the-world-factbook/geos/ws.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 28]	**Credit:** Kronocide 13:43, 6 March 2006 (UTC) **Source:** https://upload.wikimedia.org/Wikipedia/commons/thumb/6/69/Samoa_upolu.jpg/640px-Samoa_upolu.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 29]	**Credit:** By Plenz [CC BY-SA 2.5 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/2.5)], from Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Samoa_Familie.JPG **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

	[Figure 30]	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/resources/the-world-factbook/geos/tn.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 31]	**Credit:** By Tauʻolunga [GFDL (http://www.gnu.org/copyleft/fdl.html), CC-BY-SA-3.0 (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0/) or CC BY-SA 2.5 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/2.5)], from Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Ula_fu.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 32]	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/resources/the-world-factbook/geos/tv.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 33]	**Credit:** cia world factbook **Source:** https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/resources/the-world-factbook/geos/fp.html **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

	[Figure 34]	**Credit:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeograp...cific-islands/ **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/b9100bc01a9c296bed05ae27ad907f97.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 35]	**Credit:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeograp...cific-islands/ **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/4456e15a4ef702af6cf75098fcf91de1.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

This page titled 11.4: The Pacific Islands (2 Days) is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by CK12 via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

11.5: Antarctica (2 Days)

Chapter Challenges

1. Describe the layout of the continent's main physical features, including the ice shelves and volcanic activity.
2. List the political nature of the various claims held on sections of Antarctica and explain how the continent is managed by the international community.
3. Summarize the dynamics of the principle of global warming and describe what changes would occur in Antarctica and the rest of the world if the ice sheet covering Antarctica were to melt.
4. Describe how good ozone is depleted and explain the role Antarctica plays in the seasonal cycle of changes in the amount of ozone in the atmosphere above the South Pole.

Learning Objectives

TEKS Regional Unit 11 Oceania: Chapter 11.5 Antarctica

WG,3A Explain weather conditions and climate in relation to annual changes in Earth-Sun relationships.

WG.4A Explain how elevation, latitude, wind systems, ocean currents, position on a continent, and mountain barriers influence temperature, precipitation, and distribution of climate regions.

WG.4B Describe different landforms and the physical processes that cause their development.

WG.4C Explain the influence of climate on the distribution of biomes in different regions.

WG.14C Analyze the human and physical factors that influence the power to control territory and resources.

WG.19A Evaluate the significance of major technological innovations in the areas of transportation and energy that have been used to modify the physical environment.

WG.19C Examine the environmental, economic, and social impacts of advances in technology on agriculture and natural resources.

WG.21A Analyze and evaluate the validity and utility of multiple sources of geographic information such as primary and secondary sources, aerial photographs, and maps.

WG.21B Locate places of contemporary geopolitical significance on a map.

WG.21C Create and interpret different types of maps to answer geographic questions, infer relationships, and analyze change.

WG.22A Design and draw appropriate graphics such as maps, diagrams, tables, and graphs to communicate geographic features, distributions, and relationships. features, distributions, and relationships.

WG.22C Use geographic terminology correctly.

WG.22D Use standard grammar, spelling, sentence structure, and punctuation.

WG.22E Create original work using proper citations and understanding and avoiding plagiarism

TEKS and ELPS for Regional World Geography Unit 11--Oceana from TEKS Resource System.

Antarctica



Antarctica is Earth's southernmost continent. It contains the geographic South Pole and is situated in the Antarctic region of the Southern Hemisphere, almost entirely south of the Antarctic Circle, and is surrounded by the Southern Ocean.

The Southern Ocean

The Southern Ocean, which surrounds the continent of Antarctica, is often misunderstood or not included on many maps of the Southern Hemisphere. The cold waters off the coast of Antarctica move from west to east in a clockwise rotation around the continent in a movement called the West Wind Drift, or the Antarctic Circumpolar Current.

The Southern Ocean's northern boundary does not border a land mass but meets up with the Atlantic, Pacific, and Indian Oceans. Most geographers accept the northern boundary of the Southern Ocean to be located south of 60° latitude even though the actual limit has not yet been firmly agreed upon.

The Southern Ocean's northern boundary has more to do with the marine conditions of the realm. There is a transition called the Subtropical Convergence in which the cold, dense waters of the Southern Ocean meet up with the warmer waters of the Pacific, Atlantic, and Indian Oceans. The cold, dense water from the south sinks below the warm waters from the north to create a zone of upwelling and mixing that is conducive to high levels of productivity for organisms such as phytoplankton and krill.

The zone of Subtropical Convergence can be visually observed by the grayish, cold southern waters meeting up with the bluish-green, warm northern waters. The krill, which thrive on phytoplankton, are an important link in the food chain for marine organism such as fish, penguins, seals, albatrosses, and whales in the Southern Ocean.

Physical Geography

The world has seven focal continents. Rated by physical area from the largest to the smallest, they are Asia, Africa, North America, South America, Antarctica, Australia, and Europe. Antarctica, which is larger than Australia and 1.3 times larger than Europe, is located entirely south of 60° latitude and is surrounded by the Southern Ocean. Antarctica has the highest average elevation of any continent; there are many mountain ranges. The 2,000-mile-long Trans-Antarctic Mountain range divides Antarctica into a small western region and a larger eastern region.

At both ends of the Trans-Antarctic Mountains are the two main ice shelves: the Ross Ice Shelf and the Ronne Ice Shelf. The Ellsworth Mountains are located in the western region and are home to Mount Vinson (or the Vinson Massif), which is the highest peak on the continent, reaching an elevation of 16,050 feet. This is higher than any mountain in the contiguous, continental United States, Europe, or Australia.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org



Rank of 7 Continents in Square Miles	
1. Asia	17,139,445
2. Africa	11,677,239
3. North America	9,361,791
4. South America	6,880,706
5. Antarctica (with ice sheet)	5,400,000
6. Europe (with Russian region)	3,997,929
7. Australia	2,967,124
The United States (*land area*)	3,537,438

Antarctica without the ice sheet would be considerably smaller; some estimate it would be only about 100,000 square miles in land area, or the equivalent of the physical area of the US state of Colorado.

The Antarctic Peninsula is actually an extension of the Andes Mountains of South America and is home to active volcanoes. The peninsula is the location of a volcano on Deception Island that erupted in the late 1960s and destroyed research stations in the area. There was an additional large eruption in 1970. The volcano continues to show activity, and sightings of lava flow continue to be reported.

There may be more volcanic activity than what has been recorded. An underwater volcano in the Antarctic Peninsula was discovered in 2004. Mount Erebus (12,448 feet), located on Ross Island on the other side of Antarctica from the Antarctic Peninsula, is the world's southernmost active volcano. Mount Erebus has been active since 1972 and has a large lava lake in its inner crater.

About 98 percent of Antarctica is covered by an ice sheet that is, on average, up to a mile deep. In some areas, it is nearly three miles deep. In the winter season, the ice sheet's area might double as it extends out from the coastline. The Antarctic ice sheet holds about 70 percent of the earth's fresh water. If the ice sheet were to melt, the sea level could rise considerably and cover many of the earth's low-lying islands, peninsulas, and coastal regions with low elevations.

Antarctica is considered a desert because it usually averages fewer than 10 inches of precipitation per year. Coastal regions annually receive as much as four feet of snow, while the interior near the South Pole might only receive a few inches.



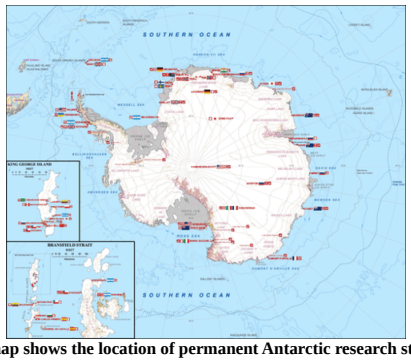
Glaciers and rock outcrops in Marie Byrd Land seen from NASA's DC-8 aircraft.

There are areas in Antarctica that are not covered with ice but have a landscape of bare ground. This nonice portion of the continent protrudes above the ice sheet and only covers a combined physical area equivalent to about half the US state of Kentucky. The only plant life that exists here are the many different mosses and lichens that grow during short periods of the year.

Below the giant ice sheet are dozens of sub-glacial lakes. Lake Vostok, the largest lake discovered in the Antarctic so far, was found two miles below the ice sheet and is the size of Lake Ontario. It is unknown what aquatic life might exist in these lakes. If all the ice and snow were removed from the continent, the total land area would be considerably smaller and would consist mainly of mountain ranges and islands.

Some estimate that this land area altogether would only equate to about 100,000 square miles, roughly equivalent to the physical area of the US state of Colorado. This does not account for the fact that if all the ice were to melt, the sea level would rise and cover more land area. The land portion of the continent would also expand upward because of the loss of the weight of the ice, which has been compressing the continent.

Not only is Antarctica the driest continent with the least average annual precipitation and the highest continent in average elevation; it is also the coldest of the continents. The lowest temperature ever recorded on Earth was −128 °F in 1983 at a Russian research station in Antarctica. Temperatures reach a minimum of less than −110 °F in winter in the interior and greater than 55 °F near the coast in summer. No permanent human settlements exist in Antarctica other than research stations from a number of countries.



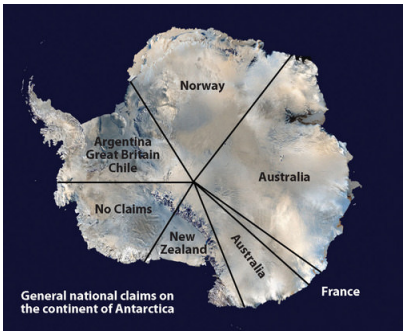
This map shows the location of permanent Antarctic research stations.

The Antarctic Treaty

The continent is not politically controlled by any one government. Early seafaring explorers sailed in these waters, and various countries laid claim to sections of the continent. The continent was first sighted by explorers in 1820, and the South Pole was first reached in 1911. Land claims to the continent were established by the home countries of early explorers.

Forty-six countries are now included in the Antarctic Treaty, which was originally signed by 12 countries in 1959. The treaty, designed to protect the environment and encourage scientific research, prohibits military activities, mineral mining, and the disposal of waste products. All land claims were suspended when the Antarctic Treaty was initiated, but the claims are not without political consequences.

LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org



Antarctica is divided into pie-shaped sections, and each of the original claimant countries is allocated a portion, according to their claim. The countries with original claims are Norway, New Zealand, France, Chile, Australia, and Argentina. Other countries, including Brazil, Peru, Russia, South Africa, Spain, and the United States, have reserved their right to submit claims on the continent in the future if the issue of territorial claims becomes significant. A large sector of West Antarctica called Marie Byrd Land remains unclaimed.

Research stations account for the entire human population in Antarctica. Approximately 1,000 people live in Antarctica year-round, and up to 5,000 or more live there during the summer months. Many of the research stations rotate their personnel, and tours of duty last anywhere from a few months to a year or more. Various family groups have worked there as well as other service workers, including Russian Orthodox priests, who have rotated every year at one of the Russian research stations.



The Omond House was the first permanent base built in 1903 by the Scottish National Antarctic Expedition.

Tourism brings the largest number of additional people to the continent. Tourists come for short-term visits to experience the conditions or see the many species of penguins or fauna that exist here. More than 45,000 tourists visit the Antarctic Treaty area yearly. Most arrive on commercial ships that specialize in tours of the region. Tours only last one or two weeks.

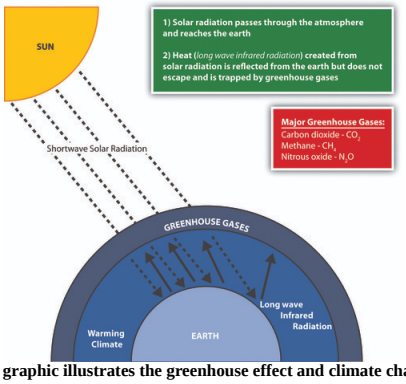


The National Geographic Explorer in fast ice, Antarctica.

Research has revealed that mineral resources are to be found under the ice in Antarctica, and oil and natural gas are found in offshore deposits. Antarctica is a frontier for economic development that is not under the jurisdiction of any one government. The Antarctic Treaty has been the determinant of the level of human activity. The current treaty restricts any extractive activity.

Fishing is also regulated within the treaty, but without enforcement procedures, there have been questions about its effectiveness. Whaling was once a major industry in this realm. Whaling stations were established on the Antarctic Peninsula and nearby South Georgia Island. However, the increased use and extraction of petroleum reduced the need for whale oil and the industry collapsed.

Some whaling continues in the waters of the Southern Ocean, which has led to questions about how to manage these natural resources. In 1998, negotiations between interested countries met in Madrid, Spain, and created the Protocol on Environmental Protection to the Antarctic Treaty (known as the Madrid Protocol). The protocol designates Antarctica as a natural reserve that can only be used for peaceful purposes and for science. All mining or economic activity is banned.



This graphic illustrates the greenhouse effect and climate change.

Climate changes on Earth have varied widely during the planet's history. There have been long periods of heating or cooling. The last ice age, which ended about 10,000 years ago, created large ice sheets that covered much of the Northern Hemisphere. The earth then entered into the current inter-glacial period with warmer temperatures that melted the ice sheets.

The polar regions have the last remaining ice on the planet. The earth has experienced large fluctuations in its temperature at various times in its past. Natural changes in the conditions that affect climate can include but are not limited to the dynamics of the sun, changes in the earth's orbit, and volcanic eruptions.

Human activity has impacted conditions both locally and globally. Since the Industrial Revolution, humans have been pumping enormous amounts of carbon dioxide into the atmosphere, which affects the planet's climate and temperature. The Industrial Revolution introduced the burning of coal as a fuel to boil water to operate steam engines. This allowed power to become more versatile and mobile. The introduction of the automobile increased the burning of petroleum, which released carbon dioxide into the atmosphere in the form of engine exhaust.

Large-scale deforestation and the burning of fossil fuels have increased the quantity of heat-trapping "greenhouse gases" in the atmosphere. Nitrous oxide, methane, carbon dioxide, and similar gases act like the glass panels of a greenhouse that allow short-wave radiation from the sun to enter but do not allow the long-wave radiation of heat to escape into space.

Deforestation reduces the number of trees that use carbon dioxide and store carbon in plant fibers. The burning of wood or carbon-based energy sources such as oil or coal releases the carbon back into the atmosphere. Fossil fuels are created when dead plant and animal life have been under pressure and decay for long periods and have retained their carbon component. This all leads to a rise in the activity of the carbon cycle. Carbon is a key component to the regulation of the earth's temperature. Life on Earth is dependent on temperature conditions that are regulated by the atmosphere. This natural cycle has been changed by human activity.

Changing global temperatures is one aspect of climate change that has received attention in recent years. Global warming is an average increase in the temperature of the atmosphere near the earth's surface. Few environmental effects could impact Antarctica as much as the phenomenon of changing temperatures. There would be serious consequences for the entire world if temperatures would increase to the extent that the Antarctic ice sheet would melt and dissolve away.

Sea levels would rise, and many areas of the planet with large urban populations would be flooded. For instance, many of the largest urban centers in the world are port cities that rely on the import and export of goods and materials. These cities would be in danger of being under water if the sea level were to rise even a few feet, let alone up to 200 feet (approximated to be equivalent to the volume of water in the polar ice caps).

Light-colored surfaces such as snow and ice reflect more radiation than do darker surfaces. If the Antarctic ice sheet were to melt, this would certainly worsen global climate change, as more radiation would be absorbed at the surface (land and water).

Climate change might also affect agricultural production. Global changes in temperature would alter ecosystems and the habitats of organisms, changing the balance of nature in many biomes. The scientific community continues to study the dynamics of climate change. In the last decade, some of the warmest annual temperatures in the past century have been documented.

Data gathered from both the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) and the National Aeronautics and Space Administration (NASA) indicate that the earth's surface temperatures have increased by more than one degree in the past 100 years.

Ozone Depletion

Climate change can have a major impact on atmospheric conditions. Good ozone depletion in the stratosphere (the second layer of the earth's atmosphere) has different causes and conditions than temperature change in the troposphere (the layer just above the earth's surface). The two concepts have separate and distinct dynamics that are not directly related. Ozone (O_3) is a simple molecule consisting of three oxygen atoms. Common oxygen gas molecules have two oxygen atoms (O_2).

Depending on where ozone is located in the atmosphere, it can be either a protective safeguard from ultraviolet (UV) radiation from the sun or an element in smog that causes health problems. Good ozone in the stratosphere provides a protective shield preventing harmful UV radiation from reaching the earth. UV rays from the sun are known to cause skin cancers, eye damage, and harm to organisms such as plankton.

Bad ozone molecules in the troposphere mix with various chemicals to create smog, which reduces visibility and can cause respiratory health problems. Tropospheric smog might contribute to climate change but does not serve the same function as ozone molecules in the stratosphere. The depletion of good ozone in the stratosphere is a different chemical process than the creation of bad ozone in the troposphere.

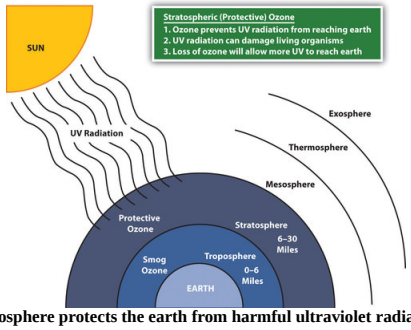
Ozone in the stratosphere is vital to the protection of living organisms from damaging UV radiation from the sun. In the stratosphere, UV radiation is absorbed in a continuous cycle in which oxygen molecules are turned into ozone molecules and then back into oxygen molecules. Oxygen molecules (O_2) absorb UV radiation in the stratosphere and separate into two oxygen atoms ($O_2 \rightarrow 2\ O$).

Each of these oxygen atoms (O) will attach to another oxygen molecule to create an ozone molecule ($O + O_2 \rightarrow O_3$). Each ozone molecule (O_3) will absorb UV radiation, which separates it back into an oxygen molecule and an atomic oxygen atom ($O_3 \rightarrow O_2 + O$). The separate oxygen (O) atom will attach to another separate oxygen atom (O) to become an oxygen molecule (O_2) again ($O + O \rightarrow O_2$). This cycle will continue to absorb UV radiation and keep UV radiation from reaching the earth's surface. It is a chemical reaction that gives off heat and increases the stratosphere's temperature.

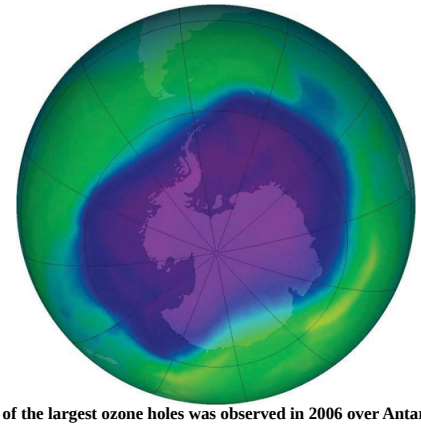
Chemicals such as chlorine and bromine interact with protective ozone molecules in the stratosphere and break them down in a chain reaction that depletes the stratosphere of ozone molecules and stops the cycle that absorbs the UV radiation. One chlorine molecule can destroy 100,000 ozone molecules, and bromine atoms can destroy ozone molecules at a rate of many times that of chlorine.

Chlorine and bromine enter the stratosphere through the discharge of chlorofluorocarbons (CFCs), hydrofluorocarbons (HCFCs), and other chemicals that deplete ozone molecules. These chemicals have been mainly used in industrial processes such as refrigeration and air conditioning and in solvents and insulation foam. In the stratosphere, radiation from the sun breaks HCFCs and CFCs apart, releasing chlorine atoms that destroy ozone molecules.

LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org



Ozone in the stratosphere protects the earth from harmful ultraviolet radiation from the sun.



One of the largest ozone holes was observed in 2006 over Antarctica.

This process also occurs naturally when volcanoes erupt and emit sulfur aerosols into the atmosphere. The sulfur aerosols break down CFCs and halon. This results in the release of chlorine and bromine, which deplete ozone molecules. In recent years, nitrous oxide has become a major chemical that can reach the stratosphere to act as an agent in the ozone depletion process.

Nitrous oxide can be released into the atmosphere from human activities such as the use of nitrogen fertilizers in agriculture or from vehicle exhaust from burning fossil fuels. Nitrous oxide is also released naturally from the soil or from ocean water.

Ozone depletion has been especially noticeable over Antarctica. A large area of ozone depletion in the upper atmosphere is often called an ozone hole. The ozone hole over Antarctica is not exactly a total depletion of ozone but a major reduction in the amount of ozone found in the stratosphere over the South Pole. Recent ozone levels in the stratosphere over Antarctica have decreased and are lower than they were in 1975.

Polar stratospheric clouds, which sometimes develop over Antarctica during the extremely cold winter months, severely reduce ozone levels. The clouds trap chlorine and nitric acid in their ice crystals. As the circulation of westerly winds starts in the spring, an atmospheric vortex is created over the polar area. The ozone hole increases during the spring when sunlight increases—from September to early December. The sunlight speeds up the chemical reactions that deplete the ozone molecules. During this time, as much as half of the lower stratospheric ozone can be destroyed, creating an ozone hole.

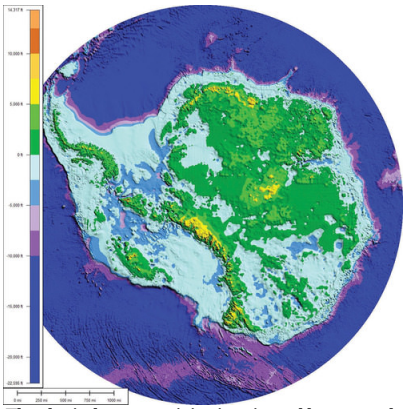
Global Impacts and Organizations

Many governments around the world have established agencies to address environmental issues and have invested resources in continued research and scientific discovery. Many nongovernmental agencies and organizations such as Greenpeace International have also been established to address the development or management of Antarctica and to address environmental concerns.

International organizations such as the United Nations Environment Program (UNEP) have been formed to enhance cooperation between countries and concerned entities. In 1998, the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC) was established by the UNEP and the World Meteorological Organization to address the work of the United Nations Framework Convention on Climate Change (UNFCCC).

Through an international treaty, the agency focuses on the harmful effects of climate change. One outcome of the UNFCCC's work was the Kyoto Protocol developed in 1997 in Kyoto, Japan, which created a legal commitment by participants to reduce greenhouse gases and address climate change issues. Enforcing the Kyoto Protocol is a matter of debate. The 2009 United Nations Climate Change Conference (also referred to as the Copenhagen Summit) was held in Denmark to address some of the same issues that were discussed in the Kyoto Protocol.

Depletion of the stratospheric ozone over the polar regions or the thinning of the ozone layer over the mid-latitudes would have worldwide implications for human activity and environmental conditions. Climate change is not restricted to one country or one government; these and other environmental issues affect the whole planet and impact everyone, whether they are contributing to the problem or not.



This is what Antarctica might look like if all the ice were removed. The physical area remaining is estimated by some to be about one hundred thousand square miles, which is about the same physical area as the US state of Colorado. It is unclear what the actual physical area would be if the ice melted.

If the sea level were to rise to the level predicted because of global warming, it would impact every country with a coastline in the world. It would not be restricted to any one category of country, developed or undeveloped. Issues of increased UV radiation or climate change are not restricted by political boundaries or economic conditions. They require global thinking and awareness and cannot be solved by one country alone.

Key Takeaways

- Antarctica has the highest average elevation of any continent and has many mountains. The continent includes active volcanoes, high mountains, and the Trans-Antarctic Mountain range. The continent is surrounded by the Southern Ocean.
- The ice sheet that covers Antarctica is more than a mile thick and holds about 70 percent of the earth's fresh water. Antarctica is still considered a desert because it receives so little precipitation on an average basis. Large bodies of water are also located below the ice sheet.
- The concept of global warming is one aspect of climate change that indicates an increase in greenhouse gasses such as carbon dioxide, which help regulate the temperature of the earth's atmosphere. The end result is warmer temperatures on the earth's surface. The burning of fossil fuels is a main source of carbon dioxide that enters the atmosphere. Climate change may result in the melting of the polar ice sheet over Antarctica, which could raise sea levels considerably.
- Ozone in the stratosphere protects the earth from harmful UV radiation from the sun. Various chemicals reduce the amount of protective ozone in the stratosphere, which allows more UV radiation to reach the earth. A seasonal cycle varies the amount of ozone in the stratosphere over the South Pole, causing an ozone hole when ozone is not abundant.

Vocabulary Terms

Chapter 11.5 Antarctica

Antarctic Treaty	Treaty signed in 1959 the makes Antarctica a scientific preserve and prevents conflict from any nation from happening on the continent
ice shelfs	A floating sheet of ice permanently attached to a landmass
Wallace line	a faunal boundary line drawn in 1859 by the British naturalist Alfred Russel Wallace that separates the ecozones of Asia and Wallace, a transitional zone between Asia and
climate change	a long-term change in the earth's climate, especially a change due to an increase in the average atmospheric temperature
El Niño Southern Oscillation	A systematic shift in atmospheric pressure, sea-surface temperature, and ocean circulation in the tropical Pacific Ocean. ENSO cycles give rise to El Nino and La Nino cc atmosphere phenomenon and the effect on climate in the southern hemisphere is profound

Applying Knowledge

Interactive Notebook Activities

1. Describe the layout of the continent's main physical features, including the ice shelves and volcanic activity.
2. List the political nature of the various claims held on sections of Antarctica and explain how the continent is managed by the international community.
3. Summarize briefly the dynamics of the principle of global warming and describe what changes would occur in Antarctica and the rest of the world if the ice sheet covering Antarctica were to melt.
4. Describe how good ozone is depleted and explain the role Antarctica plays in the seasonal cycle of changes in the amount of ozone in the atmosphere above the South Pole.

Discussion and Study Questions

1. Where are the main mountain ranges in Antarctica? What is significant about Mt. Erebus?
2. How can Antarctica be considered a desert region with all that ice? How thick is the ice sheet?
3. What percentage of the world's fresh water is located in Antarctica?
4. What was the Antarctic Treaty designed to accomplish? Who agreed to the treaty?
5. What seven countries have laid claims to the territory of Antarctica?
6. How does the burning of fossil fuels contribute to climate change?
7. How would continued global warming affect Antarctica and the rest of the planet?
8. How does ozone protect the planet? What damage would ozone depletion cause?
9. Why is there an ozone hole over the South Pole during certain months?
10. What does the Kyoto Protocol attempt to accomplish?

Real-World Geography Exercise

Using NASA Latitude and Longitude Finder, determine the latitude and longitude for each location on the list below.

- Antarctic Peninsula
- East Antarctica
- Ellsworth Mountains
- Lake Vostok
- Mount Erebus
- Mount Vinson

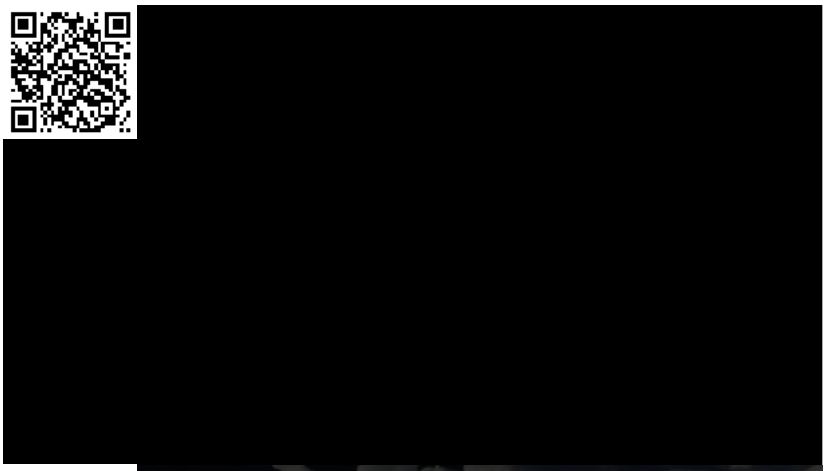
CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

- Ronne Ice Shelf
- Ross Ice Shelf
- Southern Ocean
- South Pole
- Transantarctic Mountains
- West Antarctica

Videos for Geography Enrichment











Helpful Websites for the Study of Geography

Canadian Encyclopedia is an encyclopedia funded by the Canadian government covering all branches of knowledge. Their scholarly collection includes interactive materials.

CIA World Factbook provides information on the people, history, government, economy, energy, geography, communications, transportation, military, and transnational issues for the world's entities.

Congress.gov is a US government website where you can find federal legislation, past and present, as well as information about the US legal system.

Drug Enforcement Administration (DEA) is a government agency website that provides current news, resources, topics of interest, information about drugs, careers in the DEA, and a tip hotline.

Library of Congress is the largest library in the world and provides manuscripts, files, information, pictures, and videos.

NASA Earth Observatory (NEO) is a US government agency website that allows users to search for and retrieve satellite images of Earth.

National Archives is a US government website that provides historical documents, photos, records, publications, and educator resources.

National Oceanic and Atmospheric Association (NOAA) is a US government agency website that provides weather-related information and ocean research.

National Map is a website by the United States Geological Survey and other federal, state, and local agencies that delivers topographic information for the United States.

NationMaster is a massive central data source and a handy way to graphically compare nations.

Real-Time World Air Quality Index is a website that measures most locations in the world for air pollution in real time.

StateMaster is a unique statistical database, which allows you to research and compare a multitude of different data on US states.

United Nations (UN) is an international organization founded in 1945 and made up of 193 member states. The UN maintains international peace and security, protects human rights, delivers humanitarian aid, promotes sustainable development, and upholds international law.

United States Census Bureau is a US government agency that provides a population clock, data, surveys, statistics, a library with information and infographics, news about the economy, and much more.

United States Geological Survey (USGS) is a US government agency website that provides scientific information about the natural hazards that threaten lives, the natural resources we rely on, the health of our ecosystems and environment, and the impacts of climate and land-use change.

Whitehouse.gov is a US government website that provides the latest presidential news, information about the budget, policy, defense, and many more topics.

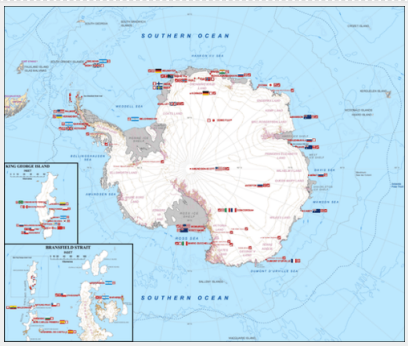
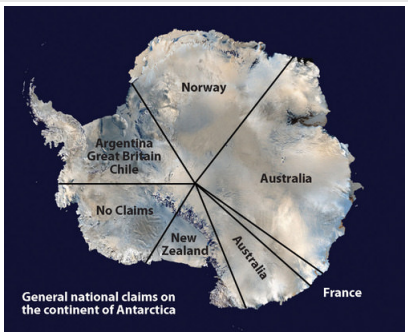
World Health Organization (WHO) is under the United Nations and provides leadership on matters critical to health; shapes the research agenda on health; and monitors the health situation and assessing health trends around the world. Their website provides information on the state of health around the world, outbreaks, current health news, and more.

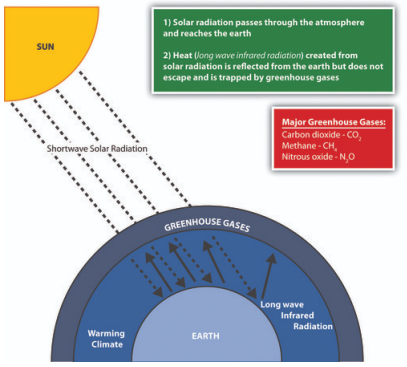
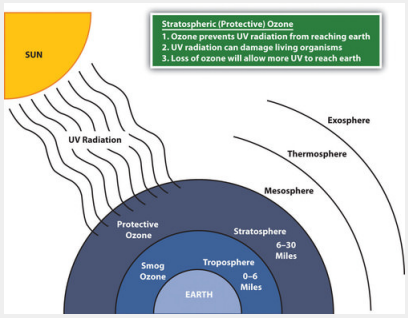
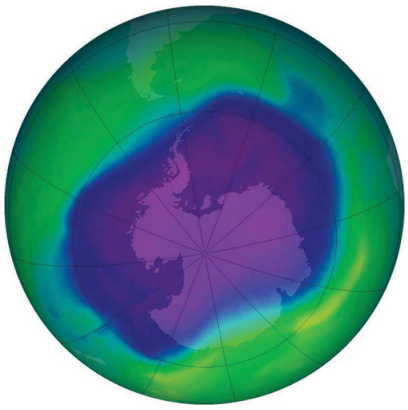
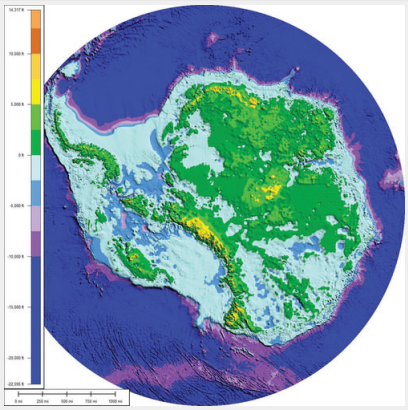
LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

World Trade Organization (WTO) is an intergovernmental organization that regulates international trade. The website provides information on the history of the multilateral trading system, featured

LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

videos, news and events, trade topics, and more.

Image	Reference	Attributions
	[Figure 1]	**Credit:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeograp...-2-antarctica/ **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/90e38d8428192f2ad84a73ff8a406938.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 2]	**Credit:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeograp...-2-antarctica/ **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/fbf181567b66a3c63c8244f8bbc1956f.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 4]	**Credit:** By Teetaweepo [CC BY-SA 3.0 (https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0) or GFDL (http://www.gnu.org/copyleft/fdl.html)], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Antarctica_Station_Map.png **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 5]	**Credit:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeograp...-2-antarctica/ **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/b833ca109a25f1aeab9b8c31c193a42a.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 6]	**Credit:** By Probably William Speirs Bruce, 1867-1921 [Public domain], via Wikimedia Commons **Source:** https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Omond_House_-_Laurie_Island.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

	[Figure 8]	**Credit:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeograp...-2-antarctica/ **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/3f21ff388f1eb2b0a83bed2ea1b2297c.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 9]	**Credit:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeograp...-2-antarctica/ **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/6f92edca7d9c02dea591ebec2c7a1d97.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 10]	**Credit:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeograp...-2-antarctica/ **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/fe71ebfd78592186fbb9b761bc5df0ed.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0
	[Figure 11]	**Credit:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeograp...-2-antarctica/ **Source:** http://open.lib.umn.edu/worldgeography/wp-content/uploads/sites/181/2016/04/7db522cf542267d2dc3a655e15e63a88.jpg **License:** CC BY-NC 3.0

This page titled 11.5: Antarctica (2 Days) is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by CK12 via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

Index

A

Aral sea
6.4: Central Asia (2 Days)

Glossary

Sample Word 1 | Sample Definition 1

LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

Detailed Licensing

Overview

Title: Geography

Webpages: 77

Applicable Restrictions: Noncommercial

All licenses found:

- CK-12 License: 96.1% (74 pages)
- Undeclared: 3.9% (3 pages)

By Page

- Geography - *CK-12 License*
  - Front Matter - *CK-12 License*
    - TitlePage - *CK-12 License*
    - InfoPage - *CK-12 License*
    - Table of Contents - *Undeclared*
    - Licensing - *Undeclared*
  - 1: Physical Patterns and Processes (15 days) - *CK-12 License*
    - 1.1: Geography Basics (8 Days) - *CK-12 License*
    - 1.2: Human Activity and the Environment (7 Days) - *CK-12 License*
  - 2: Human Geographic Systems (15 days) - *CK-12 License*
    - 2.1: Population and Culture (5 Days) - *CK-12 License*
    - 2.2: Globalization and Development (5 Days) - *CK-12 License*
    - 2.3: Celebrate Freedom Week- Foundations of the United States (5 Days) - *CK-12 License*
  - 3: United States and Canada (10 days) - *CK-12 License*
    - 3.1: Physical Geography of the United States and Canada (2 Days) - *CK-12 License*
    - 3.2: Early Development and Globalization (2 days) - *CK-12 License*
    - 3.3: Regions of the United States and Canada (2 Days) - *CK-12 License*
    - 3.4: United States- Population and Religion (2 Days) - *CK-12 License*
    - 3.5: Canada (2 Days) - *CK-12 License*
  - 4: Latin America (10 days) - *CK-12 License*
    - 4.1: Pre-Colonial and Post-Colonial Middle America (1 Day) - *CK-12 License*
    - 4.2: Mexico (2 Days) - *CK-12 License*
    - 4.3: Central America (1 Day) - *CK-12 License*
    - 4.4: The Caribbean (1 Day) - *CK-12 License*
    - 4.5: South America- Physical Geography (1 Day) - *CK-12 License*
    - 4.6: South America- The Urban North and Andean West (1 Day) - *CK-12 License*
    - 4.7: Brazil (2 Days) - *CK-12 License*
    - 4.8: South America- The Southern Cone (1 Day) - *CK-12 License*
  - 5: Europe (10 days) - *CK-12 License*
    - 5.1: Europe- Physical Location and Climate (2 Days) - *CK-12 License*
    - 5.2: European Historical Development Patterns (2 Days) - *CK-12 License*
    - 5.3: European Union and Supranationalism (2 Days) - *CK-12 License*
    - 5.4: Western Europe (2 Days) - *CK-12 License*
    - 5.5: Eastern Europe (2 Days) - *CK-12 License*
  - 6: Russia, the Caucasus and Central Asia (10 days) - *CK-12 License*
    - 6.1: Russia- Physical Characteristics (2 Days) - *CK-12 License*
    - 6.2: The USSR and the Russian Federation (3 Day) - *CK-12 License*
    - 6.3: Exploring the Regions of Russia (3 Days) - *CK-12 License*
    - 6.4: Central Asia (2 Days) - *CK-12 License*
  - 7: Southwest Asia (10 days) - *CK-12 License*
    - 7.1: Southwest Asia- Introducing the Realm (2 Days) - *CK-12 License*
    - 7.2: The Prophet Muhammad and Islam (2 Days) - *CK-12 License*
    - 7.3: Israel and Its Neighbors (2 Days) - *CK-12 License*
    - 7.4: Arabs, Islam, and Oil (2 Days) - *CK-12 License*
    - 7.5: Iraq, Turkey, and Iran (2 Days) - *CK-12 License*
  - 8: Africa (10 days) - *CK-12 License*

- 8.1: Africa- Introducing the Realm (1 Day) - *CK-12 License*
- 8.2: North Africa and the African Transition Zone (1 day) - *CK-12 License*
- 8.3: Human Geography of Sub-Saharan Africa (2 Days) - *CK-12 License*
- 8.4: West Africa (2 Days) - *CK-12 License*
- 8.5: Central Africa (1 Day) - *CK-12 License*
- 8.6: East Africa (1 Day) - *CK-12 License*
- 8.7: Southern Africa (2 Days) - *CK-12 License*

9: South Asia (10 days) - *CK-12 License*

- 9.1: South Asia- Introducing the Realm (2 Days) - *CK-12 License*
- 9.2: South Asia- The Peripheral States (2 Days) - *CK-12 License*
- 9.3: Pakistan and Bangladesh (2 Days) - *CK-12 License*
- 9.4: India (2 Days) - *CK-12 License*
- 9.5: Religions of South Asia (2 Days) - *CK-12 License*

10: Southeast Asia (10 days) - *CK-12 License*

- 10.1: East Asia- Introducing the Realm (1 Day) - *CK-12 License*
- 10.2: Emergence of Modern China (2 Days) - *CK-12 License*
- 10.3: China's Periphery (2 Days) - *CK-12 License*
- 10.4: Japan, North Korea, and South Korea (2 Days) - *CK-12 License*
- 10.5: Southeast Asia- Introducing the Realm (1 Day) - *CK-12 License*
- 10.6: Islands of Southeast Asia (1 Day) - *CK-12 License*
- 10.7: The Mainland Countries- Vietnam, Laos, Cambodia, Thailand, and Myanmar (1 day) - *CK-12 License*

11: Oceania (10 days) - *CK-12 License*

- 11.1: Australia and New Zealand- Introducing the Realm (1 Day) - *CK-12 License*
- 11.2: Australia (3 Days) - *CK-12 License*
- 11.3: New Zealand (2 Days) - *CK-12 License*
- 11.4: The Pacific Islands (2 Days) - *CK-12 License*
- 11.5: Antarctica (2 Days) - *CK-12 License*

Back Matter - *CK-12 License*

- Index - *CK-12 License*
- Glossary - *CK-12 License*
- Detailed Licensing - *Undeclared*